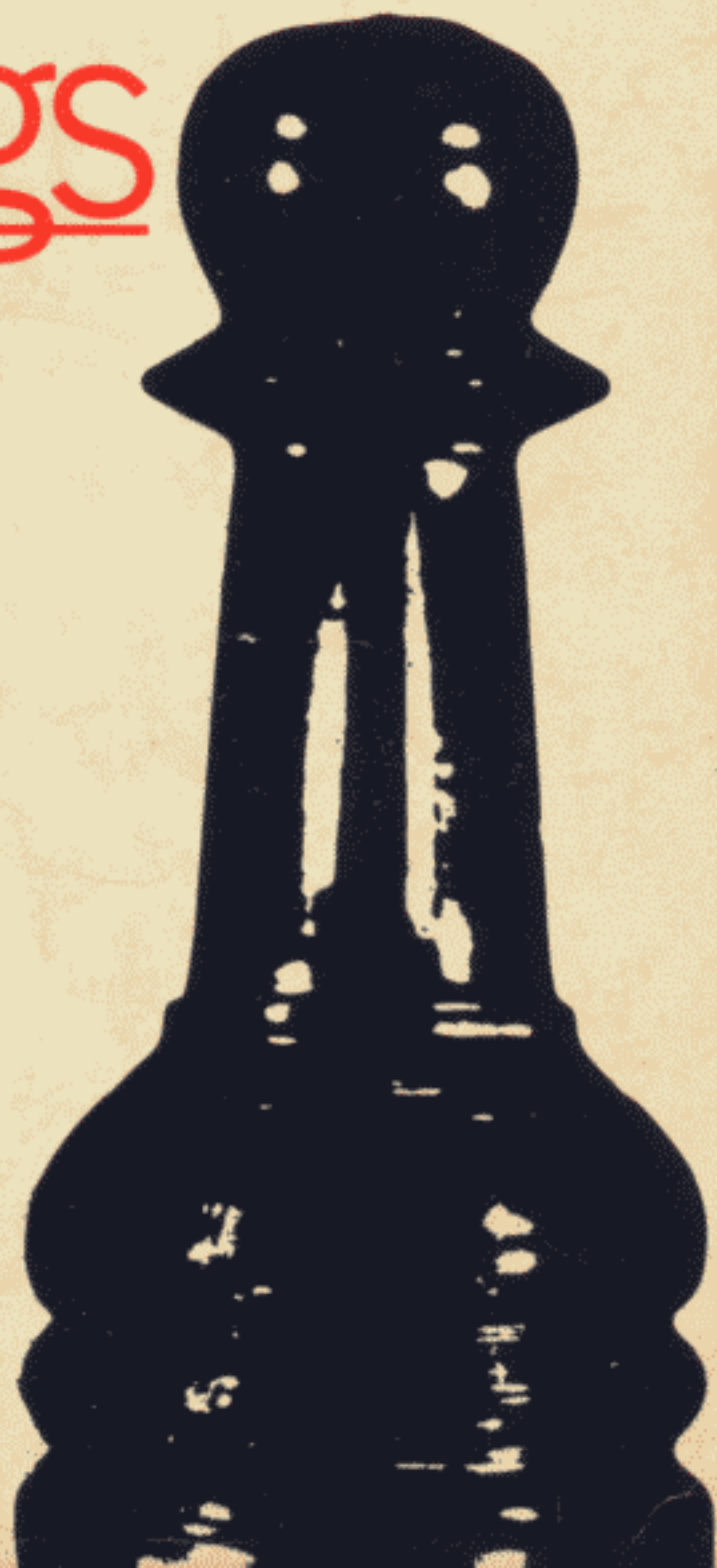


\$3.95



Practical  
Chess  
Openings  
Reuben  
Fine

International  
Chess  
Champion



GAMES

CHESS



Tartan  
BOOKS

# Practical Chess Openings Reuben Fine

Reuben Fine is the world's leading authority on chess. In addition to being one of the foremost grandmasters of our time, his writings have done more than those of any other man to make the knowledge of the masters available to all chess players. He has that rarest of all gifts, the ability to be both lucid and profound.

In this book, a sequel to *Modern Chess Openings*, all the theoretical and practical discoveries of the past few years have been incorporated. A welcome innovation is the inclusion of about 200 diagrams.

David McKay Company, Inc., New York

# PRACTICAL CHESS OPENINGS

by

Reuben Fine

David McKay Company, Inc.  
New York

PRACTICAL CHESS OPENINGS

COPYRIGHT © 1948 BY DAVID MCKAY COMPANY, INC.

All rights reserved, including the right to reproduce this book, or parts thereof, in any form, except for the inclusion of brief quotations in a review.

First Paperback Edition, 1973  
Reprinted July 1973

## PREFACE

It has been my purpose in this book to present a compact guide to the chess openings. I have attempted on the one hand to include everything that is important for current play, and on the other to exclude material which is too specialized to be of any practical value. While the task of summarizing the best thought in contemporary opening theory has been quite difficult, I hope that the reader may derive as much stimulation and benefit from my efforts as I have.

I wish to express my thanks to my friend Mr. Charles Jarrell for aid with some parts of the manuscript, to the University of Southern California and the Cleveland Public Library for their cooperation in providing the necessary literature, and to my friends Fred Reinfeld, Sidney Bernstein and Paul Little for their assistance in the reading of the proofs and the preparation of the work in the final form.

REUBEN FINE

LIBRARY OF CONGRESS CATALOG CARD NUMBER: 73-76571

MANUFACTURED IN THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA

## INTRODUCTION

The alphabetical arrangement of the openings is the traditional one, and has been adhered to. A schematic overview is provided in the introduction to show the interrelations of the different openings more clearly. The order of variations within each opening is determined by main and sub lines. All the main lines are described in the introductions, together with any of the sub-variations that are particularly relevant.

No attention has been paid to transpositions unless they affect the final position reached. In some openings, such as the English and Queen's Gambit, almost any order of moves may be adopted; in others, such as the Ruy Lopez, the choice is more narrow. In any comparison of games quoted here with published scores this point should be borne in mind.

Those unfamiliar with an opening are best advised to read the introduction and confine themselves to the main variations at first. Reference to the relevant passages in my *THE IDEAS BEHIND THE CHESS OPENINGS* will also be found helpful.

All the variations have been carefully evaluated. The symbols used are those current in all chess publications; we include a glossary for those who are unacquainted with them. In those few rare cases where no symbol ends a variation, the final position is one which is extremely complex and offers both sides good practical chances.

### EXPLANATION OF SYMBOLS USED

- + + (after White move) White has a winning advantage
- + + (after Black move) Black has a winning advantage
- + (after White move) White's position is distinctly superior, but a forced win is not yet demonstrable
- + (after Black move) Black's position is distinctly superior, but a forced win is not yet demonstrable
- ± (after White move) White has a clear positional advantage
- ± (after Black move) Black has a clear positional advantage
- ± (after White move) White's position is slightly more comfortable

≡ (after Black move) Black's position is slightly more comfortable  
 = The position is even—

## NOTATION

For the benefit of those readers who are unfamiliar with the English notation we give a diagram of the board with the names of the squares in the English (descriptive) and algebraic notations, together with the names of the pieces and their equivalents in various foreign languages. For further information on notation the reader is advised to consult any standard introductory work, such as my CHESS THE EASY WAY.

		(BLACK)									
		A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H		
8	1R8	1K8	1Q8	1B8	1N8	1K8	1B8	1N8	1K8	8	
7	2R7	2K7	2Q7	2B7	2N7	2K7	2B7	2N7	2K7	7	
6	3R6	3K6	3Q6	3B6	3N6	3K6	3B6	3N6	3K6	6	
5	4R5	4K5	4Q5	4B5	4N5	4K5	4B5	4N5	4K5	5	
4	5R4	5K4	5Q4	5B4	5N4	5K4	5B4	5N4	5K4	4	
3	6R3	6K3	6Q3	6B3	6N3	6K3	6B3	6N3	6K3	3	
2	7R2	7K2	7Q2	7B2	7N2	7K2	7B2	7N2	7K2	2	
1	8R1	8K1	8Q1	8B1	8N1	8K1	8B1	8N1	8K1	1	
		A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H		
		(WHITE)									

	Eng	French	Ital	Span	Germ	Dutch	Russ	Czech	Polish	Hung
King	K	R	R	R	K	K	Kp	K	K	K
Queen	Q	D	D	D	D	D	Φ	D	H	V
Rook	R	T	T	T	T	T	Λ	V	W	B
Bishop	B	F	A	A	L	L (or R)	C	S	G	F
Knight	Kt (or N)	C	C	C	S	P	K	J	S	H
Pawn	P	P	P	P	B	P	Π	P	P	G

SCHEMATIC OVERVIEW  
OF THE OPENINGS

1 P—K4 King's Pawn Openings  
 1 P—Q4 Queen's Pawn Openings  
 1 P—QB4 English Opening  
 1 Kt—KB3 Réti Opening  
 Other moves Variously named, Irregular

## I. King's Pawn Openings

1 P—K4  
 1 . . . P—K4 No name; see various subdivisions  
 1 . . . P—K3 French Defense  
 1 . . . P—QB3 Caro-Kann Defense  
 1 . . . P—QB4 Sicilian Defense  
 1 . . . Kt—KB3 Alekhine's Defense  
 1 . . . Kt—QB3 Nimzovitch's Defense  
 1 . . . P—Q4 Center Counter Game  
 Other replies Irregular

1 P—K4, P—K4  
 2 Kt—KB3 King's Knight's Opening; further name depends on Black's reply  
 2 Kt—QB3 Vienna Game  
 2 P—KB4 King's Gambit  
 2 P—Q4 Center Game  
 2 B—B4 Bishop's Opening  
 Other moves Irregular

1 P—K4, P—K4; 2 Kt—KB3  
 2 . . . Kt—QB3 No name; depends on further moves  
 2 . . . Kt—KB3 Petroff's Defense  
 2 . . . P—Q3 Philidor's Defense  
 2 . . . P—KB4 Latvian Counter Gambit (or Greco Counter Gambit)  
 Other moves Irregular

1 P—K4, P—K4; 2 Kt—KB3, Kt—QB3  
 3 B—Kt5 Ruy Lopez

3 B—B <sub>4</sub>	Name depends on Black's reply
3 P—Q <sub>4</sub>	Scotch Game
3 P—B <sub>3</sub>	Ponziani's Opening
3 Kt—B <sub>3</sub>	Name depends on Black's reply
Other moves	Irregular

1 P—K<sub>4</sub>, P—K<sub>4</sub>; 2 Kt—KB<sub>3</sub>, Kt—QB<sub>3</sub>; 3 B—B<sub>4</sub>

3 . . . B—B <sub>4</sub>	Giuoco Piano
3 . . . B—B <sub>4</sub> ; 4 P—QKt <sub>4</sub>	Evans Gambit
3 . . . Kt—B <sub>3</sub>	Two Knights' Defense
3 . . . B—K <sub>2</sub>	Hungarian Defense
Other moves	Irregular

1 P—K<sub>4</sub>, P—K<sub>4</sub>; 2 Kt—KB<sub>3</sub>, Kt—QB<sub>3</sub>; 3 Kt—B<sub>3</sub>

3 . . . Kt—B <sub>3</sub>	Four Knights' Game
3 . . . B—Kt <sub>5</sub>	Three Knights' Game
Other moves	Transposition or Irregular

## II. Queen's Pawn Openings

1 P—Q<sub>4</sub>

1 . . . P—Q <sub>4</sub> ; 2 P—QB <sub>4</sub>	Queen's Gambit
Other moves	Queen's Pawn Game

### Queen's Gambit

1 P—Q<sub>4</sub>, P—Q<sub>4</sub>; 2 P—QB<sub>4</sub>

2 . . . P×P	Queen's Gambit Accepted
2 . . . P—K <sub>3</sub>	Queen's Gambit Declined
2 . . . P—QB <sub>3</sub>	Slav Defense
2 . . . P—K <sub>4</sub>	Albin's Counter-Gambit
Other moves	Irregular

For further discussion see the introduction to the Queen's Gambit.

### Queen's Pawn Game:

1 P—Q<sub>4</sub>

1 . . . P—Q <sub>4</sub>	and White omits an immediate P—QB <sub>4</sub> —Queen's Pawn Game
1 . . . Kt—KB <sub>3</sub>	Indian Defenses
1 . . . P—QB <sub>4</sub>	Benoni Counter Gambit
1 . . . P—KB <sub>4</sub>	Dutch Defense
Other moves	Irregular

For further discussion see the introduction to the Queen's Pawn Game

## III. English Opening

1 P—QB<sub>4</sub>

The independent variations are those which do not transpose to the Queen's Pawn or the Réti.

## IV. Réti Opening

1 Kt—KB<sub>3</sub>

The independent variations are those which do not transpose to the English or the Queen's Pawn.

## V. Other Openings

1 P—KB<sub>4</sub>

Bird's Opening

1 Kt—QB<sub>3</sub>

Queen's Knight's Opening

1 P—K<sub>3</sub>

van't Kruijs Opening

1 P—QB<sub>3</sub>

Saragossa Opening

Other moves

included in irregular openings

## ALEKHINE'S DEFENSE

**T**HIS DEFENSE was introduced to master play by Alekhine at Budapest in 1921. During the thirties it was a favorite with many of the leading masters, including Euwe, Flohr, Reshevsky and Fine, but in the present decade it has fallen off considerably in popularity.

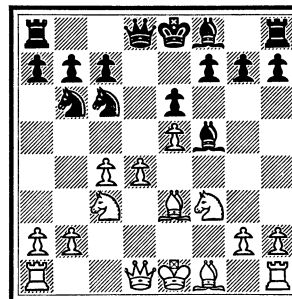
The main strategical idea underlying the opening is that of provoking the advance of the White center Pawns, on the theory that they will eventually become weak. This theory was in line with the tenets of the hyper-modern school, but is no longer adhered to by most present-day masters.

Recent analysis, especially the improvement in col. 2, indicates that White can afford to accept Black's challenge. Black can obtain equality with the line in col. 1, but other variations are unfavorable for him.

Alternatives to the Four Pawn Attack at times lead to an advantage for White, but by and large Black gets off with a playable game. However, his lack of development inevitably exposes him to a number of sacrificial attempts, of which that in col. 14 is most promising.

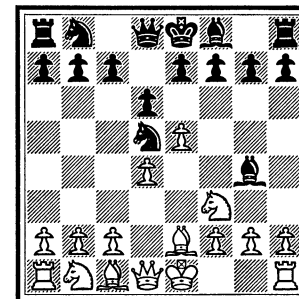
Against moves other than  $2 P-K5$ , Black can transpose to more regular lines with  $\dots P-K4$ . If he persists in keeping the center mobile, he may again have to withstand such dangerous attacks as that seen in col. 19.

DIAGRAM 1  
*Page 2, cols. 1-4*



[After 9 Kt-B3]

DIAGRAM 2  
*Page 5, col. 13*



[After 5 B-K2]



1 P—K4, Kt—KB3; 2 P—K5, Kt—Q4; 3 P—QB4, Kt—Kt3; 4 P—Q4, P—Q3; 5 P—B4, P × P; 6 BP × P

1	2	3	4	5
6 Kt—B3				P—QB4 (o)
7 B—K3 (a) B—B4				P—Q5! P—K3
8 Kt—QB3 P—K3				Kt—QB3 P × P
9 Kt—B3* Kt—Kt5	Q—Q2	B—K2	B—KKt5	P × P Q—R5ch
10 R—B1 P—B4	B—K2 O—O—O	B—K2 O—O	B—K2 B × Kt	P—Kt3 Q—Q5
11 B—K2 (b) P × P (c)	O—O P—B3 (f)	O—O P—B3	P × B (m) Q—R5ch	B—KB4 P—Kt4
12 Kt × P B—Kt3	P × P P × P	P × P! (j) B × P	B—B2 Q—B5	B × P Q × Pch
13 P—QR3 Kt—B3	P—Q5! Kt—K4	Q—Q2 Q—K2	Q—B1! Q × Qch	Q—K2 B—Kt2
14 Kt × Kt P × Kt	B × Kt Kt × Ktch	QR—Q1 QR—Q1	R × Q O—O—O	B—Kt2 O—O
15 Q × Qch K × Q (d)	B × Kt! (g) BP × B (h)	Q—B1! (k) B—Kt3	R—Q1 B—Kt5	Q × Q B × Q
16 B × Ktch P × B = (e)	P—QR3 ± (i)	K—R1 ± (l)	P—QR3 ± (n)	KKt—K2 ±

\* See p. 1, Diagram 1

(a) If 7 Kt—KB3, B—Kt5; 8 P—K6!?, P × P; 9 P—B5, Kt—Q4 (the speculative 9... P—K4!); 10 P × Kt, P—K5; is dubious because of 11 P—Q5!, e.g., 11... P × Kt; 12 KKtP × P, B—R4; 13 P × BP, Q—Q3; 14 P × Kt!, Q × Qch; 15 K × Q, B × Pch; 16 K—B2, B × R; 17 B—R3 ++; 18 B—Qkt5, Q—Q2; 19 Qkt—Q2, P—KKt4!; 20 Q—R4, B—Kt2 =. Ilyin—Zhenevsky—Loevenfisch, Leningrad, 1936.  
(b) 11 P—QR3, P × P; 12 B—Kt5! (12 P × Kt and 12 Kt × P are both probably better), P × Kt!; 13 B × Q, R × B; 14 Q—Kt3, P × P+ although the game ended in a draw. Znosko-Borovsky—Alekhine, Paris, 1925.  
(c) 11... B—K2; 12 O—O, O—O; 13 P—QR3, P × P; 14 Kt × P, Kt—B3; 15 Kt × B, P × Kt; 16 R × P, P—Kt3; 17 R—B1, B—Kt4 =. Petrow—Fine, Kemer, 1937.

(d) 15... R × Q is bad: 16 B × Kt, P × B; 17 B—B3, R—B1; 18 Kt—R4+. Kmoch.  
(e) 17 B—B3, R—B1; 18 Kt—R4, K—B2. Negyesy—Lokvenc, Vienna, 1925.  
(f) An unsatisfactory alternative is 11... B—KKt5; 12 P—B5! (not 12 Kt—KKt5?, Kt × BP!), Kt—Q4; 13 Kt × Kt, Q × Kt; 14 Kt—Kt5!+. 11... B—K2? is refuted by 12 P—Q5!, P × P; 13 B × Kt, RP × B; 14 P × P, Kt—Kt5; 15 Kt—Q4!, P—Kt3 (or 15... B—B4; 16 R × B!!, Kt × QP; 17 Kt—Kt5! and wins); 16 Kt × B, P × Kt; 17 R × P!, Kt × QP (or 17... K—Kt1; 18 B—Kt4, Kt × QP; 19 P—K6! and wins); 18 P—K6!, P × P; 19 R × Kt! and if 19... P × R; 20 B—Kt4 wins the Queen. Analysis by Znosko-Borovsky and Gruenfeld.  
(g) Not 15 R × Kt, RP × B; 16 P × P, B × P; 17 Q × Qch, B × Q; 18 R × P, B—Kt2 ≠. Lafora—Treer, correspondence, 1927.

Notes continued on p. 4

1 P—K4, Kt—KB3; 2 P—K5, Kt—Q4; 3 P—QB4, Kt—Kt3

6	7	8	9	10
4 (P—Q4) (P—Q3)				P—B5 Kt—Q4
5 P × P KP × P	BP × P (c)	Kt—KB3 B—Kt5		Kt—QB3 Kt × Kt
6 Kt—QB3 (a) Kt—B3	Kt—QB3 P—Kt3	B—K2 P × P	P × P KP × P (j)	QP × Kt P—Q3 (m)
7 B—K3 B—K2	B—K3 B—Kt2	P—B5 (g) P—K5!	B—K2 (k) B—K2	BP × P KP × P
8 B—Q3 O—O	Kt—B3 B—Kt5 (d)	P × Kt P × Kt	Kt—B3 O—O	Kt—B3 Kt—B3 (n)
9 KKt—K2 B—Kt5	B—K2 Kt—B3	B × P Q × B	P—QKt3 R—K1	B—QB4 B—K2
10 O—O R—K1	P—QKt3 O—O	Q × B RP × P (h)	O—O B—B3	B—B4 O—O
11 P—KR3 B—R4	O—O P—KR3 (e)	Q × P Kt—Q2	B—K3 Kt—B3	O—O P × P
12 Q—Q2 B—Kt3	Q—Q2 K—R2	B—B4 P—K4!	R—B1 P—Q4	Kt × P (o) B—Q3
13 B × B RP × B	Kt—K1 B × B	B × P Kt × B	P—B5 Kt—B1	Kt × Kt P × Kt
14 P—QKt3 B—B1 = (b)	Kt × B P—K4 = (f)	P × Kt B—Kt5ch = (i)	P—KR3 ± (l)	Q—B3 B—K3 =

(a) If instead 6 P—Q5, B—K2 (or 6... B—B4; 7 Kt—KB3, Kt[Kt3]—Q2; 8 Kt—B3, B—Kt5; 9 P—KR3, B × Kt; 10 Q × B, Kt—K4; 11 Q—K4, Q—K2; 12 P—QKt3, P—KB4; 13 Q—K3, P—KKt3; 14 B—K2, B—Kt2; 15 B—Q2, P—B5 ≠. Tarrasch—Vukovic, Vienna, 1922); 7 Kt—QB3, O—O; 8 B—Q3, R—K1; 9 KKt—K2, QKt—Q2; 10 P—QKt3, Kt—B4; 11 B—B2, B—Kt5; 12 O—O, B—B3; 13 P—B3, B—R4; 14 Kt—Q4, P—QR4 =. Horowitz—Kashdan, 1926.  
(b) 15 P—Q5, Kt—K2; 16 B—Kt5, Q—Q2; 17 Kt—Q4, P—QB4; 18 Kt—B3, Kt—B4; 19 QR—K1, P—R3. Petrow—Flohr, Kemer, 1937.  
(c) 5... Q × P is inferior but tricky: 6 Kt—QB3 (6 P—B5, Q—K3ch is not convincing); 6 B—K3, Q—Q1; 7 B—Q3, P—Kt3; 8 Kt—KB3, B—Kt2; 9 Kt—B3, O—O; 10 P—KR3 ± is also good—Zubarev—

Gruenfeld, Moscow, 1925), Q—Q1; 7 Kt—B3, B—Kt5; 8 P—B5, Kt (3)—Q2; 9 P—KR3, B—R4; 10 P—KKt4, B—Kt3; 11 B—Kt2, P—QB3; 12 B—B4 ±. Kashdan—Fine, Hollywood, 1945.  
(d) If 8... Kt—B3; 9 P—KR3, O—O; 10 Q—Q2, P—Q4 (better is 10... P—K4! and if 11 P × P, Kt × KP!; 12 Kt × Kt, B × Kt =); 11 P—B5, Kt—B5; 12 B × Kt, P × B; 13 O—O, Kt—Kt5; 14 B—R6 ±. Yates—Alekhine, Dresden, 1926.  
(e) On 11... P—K4; 12 P × P is best; if instead 12 P—Q5, Kt—K2; 13 Kt—K4, Kt—B4; 14 B—Kt5, P—B3; 15 B—Q2, Kt—Q2; 16 B—Kt4, Q—K2 ≠. Seidman—Fine, Hollywood, 1945.  
(f) 15 P—B4, P × QP; 16 Kt × P, P—Q4!. Alexander—Tartakower, Buenos Aires, 1939.

Notes continued on p. 4

## Notes continued from p. 2

(h) The point. 15...RP × B?; 16 Kt—Kt5 / loses at once for Black.

(i) 16...B—B4ch; 17 K—R1. If 17...P—K4; 18 P—QKt4 /, B—Q5; 19 Kt—Kt5 /, B × R; 20 Kt × Pch, K—Kt1; 21 Kt—Kt5+, Euwe.

(j) A good alternative is 12 Kt—KR4, P × P; 13 Kt × B, P × Kt; 14 P—Q5, Kt—Q5 /; 15 B × Kt, P × B; 16 Q × P, Kt—Q2; 17 K—R1±. Znosko-Borovsky—Colle, Paris, 1929.

(k) An improvement on 15 Q—K1, Kt—Kt5; 16 P—QR3 /, Kt—B7; 17 Q—B2, Kt × B; 18 Q × Kt (Rausser—Fine, Leningrad, 1937), P—B3 =.

(l) 16...RQ—2; 17 P—Q5 /, Kt—Kt5 (17

...Kt—Q1 with a cramped position is best); 18 P—QR3, Kt—R3; 19 P—QKt4, KR—Q1; 20 B—Q4 /. Bronstein—Rudakovsky, Moscow, 1945.

(m) Weaker is 11 B × B, Kt × BP; 12 B × Ktch, P × B; 13 B—B2 /, Q—Q2 /≠.

(n) 16...B × Ktch; 17 P × B. Prins—Tartakower, Hastings, 1945–46.

(o) Marshall suggests 6...P—Kt3 with the following main possibilities: (1) 7 Kt—QB3, B—Kt2; 8 B—K2, P—QB4; 9 P × P, Q × Qch; 10 K × Q, KKt—Q2. (2) 7 Kt—KB3, B—Kt5; 8 B—K2, P—QB4; 9 B—K3, P × P; 10 Kt × P, B × B; 11 Q × B, B—Kt2; 12 Kt—KB3, Kt—B3≠.

## Notes continued from p. 3

(g) The sacrificial variation 7 Kt × P?, B × B; 8 Q × B, Q × P; 9 O—O, QKt—Q2; 10 Kt × Kt is refuted by 10...Q × Kt! (and not 10...Kt × Kt; 11 Kt—B3, P—QB3; 12 B—K3, Q—K4; 13 QR—Q1, P—K3; 14 Q—B3, O—O—O; 15 B × P, Q—QR4; 16 B—Q4, Q—KB4; 17 Q—Kt3, P—K4; 18 B—K3±. Alekhine—Reshevsky, Kemer, 1937); 11 Kt—B3, P—K3; 12 B—K3, B—K2; 13 QR—Q1, Q—B3; 14 Q—Kt4, O—O; 15 P—QKt3, P—B4+. Thomas—Floh, Antwerp, 1932.

(h) This is good enough to draw, but 10...Kt—B3 was better. Alekhine maintains that after 11 O—O, Kt × P; 12 Q × P, RP × P; 13 B—K3 Black has only slight drawing chances, but after 13...R—QKt1; 14 Q—K4, Kt—Kt4! Black has a solid position and White may have to fight for a draw.

(i) 15 Kt—B3, B × Ktch; 16 P × B, O—O. Alekhine—Euwe, 29th match game, 1935. Black drew fairly easily, despite the Pawn minus.

(j) 6...BP × P, transposing into col. 7, is a good possibility.

(k) Or 7 P—KR3, B—R4; 8 B—K2, Kt—

B3; 9 P—Q5, B × Kt; 10 B × B, Kt—K4; 11 B—K2, Q—R5; 12 O—O, P—Kt4; 13 Kt—Q2, R—KKt1; 14 Q—B2, P—Kt5; 15 P × P, Kt × KtP (Kashdan—Euwe, Hastings, 1931–32) and now 16 Kt—B3, Q—R4; 17 B—B4! ± (Kashdan).

(l) 14...B—R4; 15 P—R3, B—Kt3; 16 P—QKt4, P—QR3; 17 Q—Kt3. Maroczy—Keres, Dresden, 1936.

(m) Black must liquidate at least one of the advanced White Pawns quickly to equalize. E.g. 6...P—K3; 7 B—K3, P—QKt3; 8 P × P, RP × P; 9 Kt—B3, Kt—B3; 10 B—Q3, B—R3; 11 O—O, B—K2 =. Maroczy—Colle, Bled, 1931. But if 6...Kt—B3; 7 Kt—B3, P—KKt3; 8 B—QB4, B—Kt2; 9 B—B4, O—O; 10 Q—Q2, P—Kt3; 11 P—KR4, P—KR4; 12 O—O—O, P—K3; 13 B—KKt5 ±. Stoltz—Colle, Bled, 1931.

(n) Better than 8...B—K2; 9 B—KB4, P × P; 10 Kt × P, Q × Qch; 11 R × Q, B—K3 and now 12 B—B4 /, B × B; 13 Kt × B, Kt—R3; 14 Kt—R5! ±. Tartakower.

(o) Golombek—Tylor, London, 1932.

## 1 P—K4, Kt—KB3; 2 P—K5, Kt—Q4

	11	12	13	14	15
3 (P—QB4).....			P—Q4 (g)		
(Kt—Kt3)			P—Q3		
4 (P—B5).....	P—QKt3		Kt—KB3 (h)		
(Kt—Q4)	P—QB4 (d)		B—Kt5 (i)		
5 B—B4	B—Kt2		B—K2 (j)*		
P—K3	Kt—B3		P—QB3 (k).....	Kt—QB3	
6 Kt—QB3 (a)	Kt—KB3		O—O.....	Kt—Kt5 /	O—O
Kt × Kt	P—Q4		B × Kt (l)	B—B4	P—K3
7 QP × Kt (b)	P × P e.p.		B × B	P—K6 / (n)	P—B4
B × P	Q × P		P × P	P × P	Kt—Kt3
8 Q—Kt4	P—Q4		P × P	P—KKt4 /	P × P
K—B1	B—Kt5? (e)		P—K3	B—Kt3	P × P
9 B—B4	P—Q5		Q—K2	B—Q3! ± (o)	P—QKt3
P—Q4	O—O—O		Q—B2		B—K2
10 O—O—O	B—K2		P—B4		B—K3 (p)
Kt—Q2	Q—B5?		Kt—K2!		O—O
11 B—Q3	QKt—Q2		B—Kt4		Kt—B3
B—K2	B × Kt		Kt—Q2		P—Q4
12 P—KR4	B × B		P—B4		P—B5
P—QB4	Kt—K4		P—KR4		Kt—Q2
13 R—R3 ± (c)	B—K4 ± (f)		B—R3		P—Kt4 ±
			O—O—O = (m)		

## \* See p. 1, Diagram 2

(a) 6 Q—Kt4 /, P—Q3; 7 BP × P, P × P; 8 P—Q4, P × P; 9 P × P, Kt—Kt5; 10 Q—K2 ±. Prins—Llorens, Sitges, 1934.

(b) 7 KtP × Kt, P—Q3 (7...B × P; 8 Q—Kt4, K—B1; 9 P—Q4 gives White a strong attack); 8 BP × P, P × P; 9 P × P, B × P; 10 P—Q4, O—O; 11 Kt—B3, Q—B2 =. Sergeant—Tartakower, Hastings, 1945–46.

(c) White has a strong attack. Schwarz—Herzog, correspondence, 1926–28.

(d) Or 4...P—KKt3; 5 B—Kt2 (5 P—B5, Kt—Q4; 6 B—B4, P—K3; 7 P—Q4, P—Kt3; 8 P × P, Kt × P; 9 B—Q3, B—Kt5ch; 10 B—Q2, Kt—B3; 11 Kt—KB3 =. A. Steiner—Pikler, Budapest, 1931), B—

Kt2; 6 Q—B3, P—K3; 7 P—KR4, Kt—B3; 8 Q—K3, P—Q3; 9 Kt—KB3, Kt × KP; 10 Kt × Kt, B × Kt; 11 B × B ±. Richter—Daniellson, Zoppot, 1935.

(e) Better is 8...QKt × P; 9 Kt × Kt, P × Kt; 10 Q × P, Q × Q; 11 B × Q, B—B4; 12 Kt—B3?, P—K4 /; 13 B × P, O—O; 14 B—K2, P—B3; 15 B—B4, B—QKt5+. Tartakower—Colle, Bled, 1931.

(f) 13...P—K3; 14 P—Kt3, Q—B3; 15 Q—B2. L. Steiner—Pikler, Budapest, 1931.

(g) 3 B—B4 is inferior: 3...Kt—Kt3; 4 B—Kt3, P—QB4; 5 Q—K2, Kt—B3; 6 Kt—KB3, P—Q4; 7 P × P e.p., P—K3; 8 Kt—B3, B × P; 9 Kt—K4, B—K2; 10 P—Q3, Kt—Q5≠. Yates—Rubinstein, Dresden, 1926.

## Notes continued on p. 7

## 1 P-K4, Kt-KB3

	16	17	18	19	20
2	(P-K5) . . . . .	Kt-QB3 . . . . .			P-Q3
	(Kt-Q4)	P-Q4			P-K4 (m)
3	Kt-QB3	P × P . . . . .	P-K5		P-KB4
	Kt × Kt (a)	Kt × P	KKt-Q2 (f)		Kt-B3 (n)
4	KtP × Kt (b)	B-B4	Kt × P	P-K6! (j)	P × P
	P-Q3	Kt-Kt3 (c)	Kt × P	P × P	QKt × P
5	P-KB4	B-Kt3	Kt-K3	P-Q4	Kt-KB3
	P-KKt3	P-QB4	P-QB4	Kt-KB3 (k)	Kt × Ktch
6	Kt-B3	P-Q3 (d)	P-QKt3 (g)	Kt-B3	Q × Kt
	B-Kt2	P-K3	P-KKt3	P-B4	P-Q4
7	P-Q4	Kt-B3	B-Kt2	P × P	P-K5
	P-QB4	Kt-B3	B-Kt2	Kt-B3	Q-K2
8	B-Q3	O-O	Kt-B4	B-QKt5!	P-Q4
	O-O	B-K2	QKt-B3	B-Q2	Kt-K5
9	O-O	Kt-K4	P-B4	O-O	B-Q3
	Q-B2	O-O	Kt × Kt	Q-B2	Q-R5ch
10	Q-K1	B-K3	B × B	R-K1	P-Kt3
	BP × P	Kt-Q2? (e)	R-KKt1	P-KR3	Q-Kt5
11	BP × P	P-Q4	B-B3	B × Kt	Kt-Q2
	Kt-B3	P-QKt3	Kt-Kt3	P × B	Q × Q
12	P-B3	P × P ±	B-Kt5 (h)	Kt-K5 ± (l)	Kt × Q = (o)
	Kt-R4 =		B-Q2 = (i)		

(a) 3... P-K3; 4 Kt × Kt, P × Kt; 5 P-Q4, P-Q3; 6 Kt-B3, Kt-B3; 7 B-K2, B-K2; 8 B-KB4, O-O; 9 O-O, P-B3; 10 P × QP, B × P =. Saemisch-Alekhine, Budapest, 1921.

(b) Or 4 QP × Kt, P-Q3 (4... P-Q4; 5 Kt-B3, P-QB4; 6 B-KB4, Kt-B3 = is also good. Yates-Capablanca, Moscow, 1925); 5 Kt-B3, P × P; 6 Q × Qch, K × Q; 7 Kt × P, K-K1; 8 B-QB4, P-K3; 9 B-B4, B-Q3; 10 B-KKt3, Kt-Q2 =. Tarrasch-Réti, Baden-Baden, 1925. The column is Grob-Gruenfeld, Meran, 1926.

(c) Or 4... P-K3; 5 Kt-B3, P-QB4; 6 O-O, B-K2; 7 P-Q4, Kt × Kt; 8 P × Kt, O-O; 9 Kt-K5, Q-B2 =. Hromadka-Gruenfeld, Maehrisch-Ostrau, 1923. Or 4... Kt × Kt; 5 Q-B3, P-K3 =.

(d) Rarely played, but nevertheless strong, is 6 Q-R5, e.g., 6... P-K3; 7 P-Q3, Kt-B3; 8 B-K3, Kt-Q5; 9 KKt-K2, Kt × B; 10 RP × Kt, Kt-Q4; 11 Kt × Kt, Q × Kt; 12 Q × Q, P × Q; 13 P-Q4,

P-B5; 14 Kt-B4 ±. Maroczy-Landau, Zandvoort, 1936.

(e) 10... Kt-Q5 equalizes. The column is Vajda-Kmoch, Budapest, 1926.

(f) Safest is 3... P-Q5; 4 QKt-K2 (4 P × Kt, P × Kt; 5 P × KtP, P × Pch =. Opocensky-Abramavicius, Folkestone, 1933), Kt-Kt1! (not 4... KKt-Q2; 5 P-K6! =).

(g) 6 Kt-B3, Kt × Ktch; 7 Q × Kt, Kt-B3; 8 B-Kt5, B-Q2 ±. von Holzhausen-Kmoch, Giessen, 1928. Or 6 P-KB4, KKt-B3; 7 Kt-B3, Q-B2; 8 P-KKt3, P-K3; 9 P-Kt3, B-K2; 10 B-QKt2, O-O; 11 B-Kt2, Kt-Q2 =. Tartakower-Landau, Rotterdam, 1930.

(h) Better is 12 Kt-B3 and if 12... Kt-Q4; 13 Kt-Kt5! ±.

(i) 13 Kt-B3, P-QR3; 14 B × Kt, B × B; 15 Q-K2, Kt-Q4. Romanovsky-Tolush, Moscow, 1945.

Notes continued on p. 7

## Notes continued from p. 5

(h) 4 P × P, as usual, leads to nothing: 4... KP × P (4... BP × P is also possible. Most aggressive is 4... Q × P; 5 Kt-KB3, B-Kt5; 6 B-K2, Kt-QB3; 7 Kt-B3, O-O-O; 8 Kt × Kt, Q × Kt; 9 B-K3, P-K4; 10 P × P?, B × Kt; 11 P × B, Q-R4ch; 12 B-Q2, Q × KP+. Ilyin-Zhenevsky-Réti, Moscow, 1925); 5 Kt-KB3, B-Kt5; 6 B-K2, B-K2; 7 O-O, Kt-KB3; 8 R-K1, O-O; 9 QKt-Q2, QKt-Q2; 10 Kt-B1, P-Q4 =. Yates-Sacconi, Meran, 1926.

(i) Or 4... P × P; 5 Kt × P, P-K3; 6 B-Q3, Kt-Q2; 7 O-O, Kt × Kt; 8 P × Kt, B-Q2; 9 Kt-K2, Q-R5; 10 P-QB3, O-O-O. R. P. Michell-Réti, Margate, 1923. Inferior is 4... B-B4 because of 5 B-Q3, Q-Q2 (5... B-Kt3?; 6 P-B4, Kt-Kt3; 7 B × B, RP × B; 8 P-K6! ±. Bogoljubow-Tarrasch, Breslau, 1925); 6 O-O, Kt-QB3; 7 P-B4, B × B; 8 Q × B, Kt-Kt3; 9 P × P, KP × P; 10 R-K1ch, Kt-K2; 11 P-QR4!, Q-B3; 12 P-QKt3, P-KR3; 13 Kt-B3, O-O-O; 14 P-R5+. Becker-Gruenfeld, Vienna, 1927.

(j) A promising alternative is 5 P-KR3, B × Kt; 6 Q × B, P × P, 7 P × P, P-K3; 8 P-R3! (an improvement on the older 8 P-KKt3, Kt-QB3; 9 B-QKt5, Q-Q2+), Kt-QB3; 9 B-QKt5, Q-Q2; 10 P-B4, Kt (Q4)-K2; 11 O-O, R-Q1; 12 Kt-B3 ±. Boleslavsky-Khavin, Moscow, 1944.

## Notes continued from p. 6

(j) 4 P-B4, P-K3; 5 Kt-B3, P-QB4; 6 P-KKt3, Kt-QB3 is similar to the French Defense, p. 91, col. 58. See Nimzovitch-Alekhine, Semmering, 1926.

(k) No entirely satisfactory defense for Black is known. If 5... P-B4; 6 P × P, Kt-QB3; 7 Kt-B3 (not 7 B-Q3, Kt-B3; 8 Kt-B3, P-KKt3; 9 O-O, B-Kt2; 10 Q-K2, O-O; 11 B-KKt5, K-R1; 12 P-QR3?, P-K4! ±. Khavin-Mikenas, Moscow, 1944), P-KKt3 (or 7... Kt × P; 8 B-QKt5, Kt-Q2; 9 Kt-Q4+); 8 P-KR4, B-Kt2; 9 P-R5, Q-R4; 10 B-Q2, Q × BP; 11 P × P, P × P; 12 R × Rch, B × R; 13 Kt-KR4+. A Steiner-Hansen, Munich, 1936. For a good sum-

(k) Theoretically satisfactory is 5... P-K3; 6 P-B4, Kt-K2; 7 Kt-B3, Kt-B4; 8 P-KR3, B × Kt; 9 B × B, Kt-B3 =. Sir G. A. Thomas-Fine, Hastings, 1937-38.

(l) If 6... P × P; 7 Kt × P, B × B; 8 Q × B, P-K3 (or 8... Kt-Q2; 9 P-KB4, P-K3; 10 P-B4, KKt-Kt3; 11 B-K3, B-K2; 12 QKt-B3, O-O; 13 R-B3 ±. Botvinnik-Flohr, Moscow, 1936); 9 P-QKt3, Kt-Q2; 10 P-QB4, KKt-B3; 11 Kt-QB3, B-Kt5; 12 B-Kt2, O-O; 13 KR-Q1, Q-B2; 14 R-Q3 ±. Thomas-Euwe, Nottingham, 1936.

(m) Botvinnik-Flohr, Nottingham, 1936. (n) Less aggressive but also hard to meet is 7 B-Q3, B × B; 8 Q × B, P-KR3; 9 Kt-KB3, P-K3; 10 O-O, P × P; 11 P × P, Kt-Q2; 12 R-Q1 ±. Book-Reshnevsky, Kemer, 1937.

(o) If instead 9 Kt × KP?, Q-Q2; 10 Kt-B4, B-B2; 11 P-B4, Kt-Kt3; 12 P-Kt3, P-K4 ±. Turn-Keres, Tallinn, 1945. White's 9th move is suggested by Keres.

(p) Or 10 Kt-B3, B-B3; 11 B-K3, P-Q4; 12 P-B5, Kt-Q2; 13 R-B1, O-O; 14 Kt-QKt5! ±. But not here 14 P-QR3?, Kt × BP!; 15 P × Kt, QB × Kt; 16 B × B, P-Q5 =. Boleslavsky-Mikenas, Moscow, 1944. The column is Tartakower-Takacs, Budapest, 1926.

mary of the possibilities see article by Marchisotti in *Caïssa*, November, 1943.

(l) 12... P-Kt4; 13 Q-Q3, R-KKt1; 14 P-QKt4. Spielmann-Landau, 3rd match game, 1933.

(m) Or 2... P-B4; 3 P-QB4, Kt-B3; 4 P-B4, P-Q3; 5 Kt-QB3, P-KKt3; 6 B-K2, B-Kt2; 7 B-K3, Kt-Q5; 8 Q-Q2, Kt-Kt5; 9 KB × Kt, B × B; 10 B × Kt, B × B; 11 KKt-K2, B-Kt2; 12 O-O, O-O =. Nimzovitch-Vukovich, Kecskemet, 1927.

(n) Or 3... P-Q4; 4 BP × P, Kt-Kt5 (Alekhine).

(o) Nimzovitch-Alekhine, New York, 1927.

BIRD'S OPENING

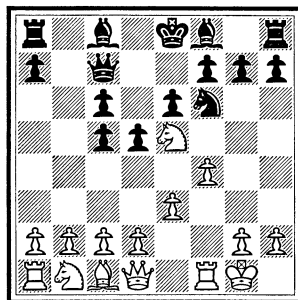
**T**HIS OPENING was popularized by the English master Bird towards the end of the last century, but it is rarely tried by modern masters because it affords White too little hold on the center. In Germany and Holland it is known as the Dutch Defense with White.

In the main variations Black can develop rapidly and equalize in a variety of ways. The simplest is Schlechter's line in col. 1, but other replies are equally satisfactory. A trap to be avoided is the center bind exemplified in col. 3, note (g); this is quite similar to Nimzovitch's Attack (see Réti Opening, p. 322).

The Czechoslovakian master Pelikan has recently attempted to conduct the opening as a pure Dutch Defense with an extra tempo, and has had some success. However, Black can easily avoid a disadvantage (cols. 6-7).

From's Gambit (cols. 8-9) is a violent effort to get the initiative. Unlike the Staunton Gambit, its counterpart in the Dutch Defense, it is unsound. The defense by White is unusual in that he can afford to hold on to the extra Pawn.

DIAGRAM 3  
Page 11, note (g)

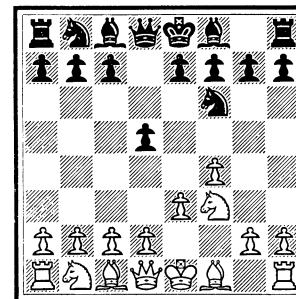


[After 7... P-K3]  
White's ideal position

1 P-KB4, P-Q4; 2 P-K3

	1	2	3	4	5
2	Kt-KB3			P-KKt3	
3	Kt-KB3 (a)* B-Kt5 (b)		P-B4	P-B4 Kt-KB3	Kt-KB3 P-QB4 (m)
4	B-K2 B x Kt	P-KR3 (e) B x Kt	P-QKt3 (g) P-K3	Kt-QB3 B-Kt2	B-Kt5ch B-Q2
5	B x B QKt-Q2 (c)	Q x B QKt-Q2	B-Kt2 B-Q3 (h)	Kt-B3 O-O	B x Bch Kt x B
6	P-B4 P-K3	P-Q4 Kt-K5	B-Q3 P-QR3	Q-Kt3 P x P (j)	Kt-B3 P-K3
7	P x P P x P	B-Q3 P-KB4 (f)	O-O Kt-B3	B x P Kt-B3	P-K4 ? P-Q5
8	Kt-B3 P-B3	O-O P-K3	P-B4 P x P	Kt-K5 P-K3 (k)	Kt-K2 KKt-B3
9	O-O B-K2	P-B4 P-B3	B x BP O-O	Kt x Kt P x Kt	Kt-Kt3 P-KR4 !
10	P-Q3 Kt-Kt3	B-Q2 B-Q3	Kt-K5 Kt-K2	P-Q4 Q-Q3	P-Q3 B-R3
11	P-K4 P x P	P-B5 B-B2	Kt-QB3 Kt-Kt3	B-Q2 P-B4	O-O P-R5
12	P x P B-B4ch = (d)	P-QKt4 Q-B3 =	P-Q4 P x P = (i)	Kt-R4 Kt-K5 = (l)	Kt-K2 B-Kt2 ≠ (n)

\* DIAGRAM 4  
cols. 1-3



[After 3 Kt-KB3]

(a) 3 P-QKt3 is premature; Black gets the better endgame with P-Q5 !; 4 B-Q3, P x P; 5 P x P, P-K4 !; 6 P x P, Kt-Kt5; 7 B-Kt5ch, P-B3; 8 Q x Qch, K x Q; 9 B-K2, Kt x P(K4) ≠. Nimzovitch—Steiner, Kecskemet, 1927.

(b) Schlechter's Variation, threatening B x Kt and an early advance of the KP.

(c) 5... P-B3; 6 O-O, QKt-Q2; 7 P-Q4, P-K3; 8 B-Q2, B-K2; 9 P-B4, O-O; 10 Q-B2, R-B1; 11 P-QB5, Kt-K1; 12 P-QKt4, P-B4; 13 P-Kt4, P-KKt3 =. Réti—Kaufmann, Vienna, 1914.

(d) Tartakower—Gruenfeld, Vienna, 1917.

Notes continued on p. 11

## 1 P-KB4

	6	7	8	9	10
1	Kt-KB3		P-K4 (g)		P-KB4
2	P-K3		P × P		P-K4
	P-KKt3		P-Q3		P × P
3	Kt-KB3		P × P		P-Q3 (o)
	P-Q4	P-Q3	B × P		P-K6
4	B-K2	P-QKt3	Kt-KB3		B × P
	B-Kt2	B-Kt2	P-KKt4 ! (h)		Kt-KB3
5	O-O	B-Kt2	P-Q4	P-KKt3	P-Q4
	P-B4	O-O	P-Kt5	P-KR4 (m)	P-K3
6	P-Q3	B-K2	Kt-Kt5 ! (i)	P-Q4	B-Q3
	Kt-B3	QKt-Q2 (e)	Q-K2 (j)	P-Kt5	Kt-B3
7	Q-K1	O-O	Q-Q3	Kt-R4	P-QR3
	O-O	P-B4	P-KB4	B-K2	Kt-K2
8	Q-R4 (a)	P-B4	P-KR3	Kt-Kt2	Kt-R3
	Q-Kt3 (b)	P-Kt3	Kt-QB3 (k)	P-R5	P-QKt3
9	K-R1 (c)	Q-B1	P × P	B-B4	O-O
	B-Kt5	B-Kt2	Kt-Kt5	B-KB4	B-Kt2
10	QKt-Q2 !	P-Q3	Q-QKt3	Kt-B3	Kt-Q2
	QR-Q1	R-K1	P-B5	P × P	P-Kt3
11	P-KR3 ± (d)	Kt-B3	R × P+ (l)	B × KtP+ (n)	B-B2 ± (p)
		P-QR3 = (f)			

(a) Weaker is 8 B-Q1, Q-B2; 9 P-K4, P × P; 10 P × P, P-K4 !; 11 P × P, QKt × P ≠. Tartakower—Maroczy, Zandvoort, 1936.

(b) 8... Q-B2 followed by ... P-K4 is more logical, but compare Dutch Defense, page 299, cols. 199-200.

(c) If 9 Kt-B3, P-Q5 !; 10 Kt-Q1, Kt-QKt5; 11 Kt-K1, P × P; 12 Kt × P, Kt (5)-Q4 ≠. Pelikan—Maderna, Mar del Plata, 1943.

(d) 11... B × Kt; 12 B × B, P-B5; 13 P-Q4, Kt-QKt5; 14 B-Q1, Q-B2; 15 P-R3, Kt-B3; 16 P-B3, P-K3; 17 B-B2. Pelikan—Guimard, Mar del Plata, 1943.

(e) 6... P-B4 (6... Kt-B3; 7 Q-B1 ?, P-K4 !; 8 O-O, P × P; 9 P × P, R-K1; 10 Kt-B3, P-Q4; 11 B-Kt5, B-Q2; 12 B × Kt, B × B; 13 Kt-K5 ?, P-Q5; 14 Kt-K2, Kt-Kt5 !+. Menchik—Roma-

novsky, Moscow, 1935; 7 O-O, Kt-B3; 8 P-B4, Q-B2; 9 Q-B1, P-K4; 10 P × P, P × P; 11 P-Q3, B-Kt5; 12 Kt-B3, QR-Q1; 13 P-KR3, B-B1; 14 P-K4, Kt-Q5; 15 R-B2, Q-Q3 =. Eliskases—Menchik, Hastings, 1933-34.

(f) 12 P-K4, P-K4; 13 P × P, QKt × P; 14 Kt × Kt, P × Kt; 15 Kt-Q5, B-QB1. Eliskases—Gruenfeld, Vienna, 1933.

(g) The From Gambit.

(h) If 4... Kt-KR3; 5 P-Q4, Kt-Kt5; 6 Q-Q3 !+. Lipke—Ed, Breslau, 1889. Or 4... Kt-KB3; 5 P-Q4, Kt-Kt5; 6 Q-Q3, O-O; 7 P-K4, P-QB4; 8 P-K5, B-K2; 9 P-Q5, R-K1; 10 B-K2, B-R5ch; 11 Kt × B, Q × Ktch; 12 Q-Kt3, Q × Qch; 13 P × Q, R × P; 14 Kt-B3, Kt-K6; 15 B × Kt+. Pirc—Tylor, Hastings, 1938-39.

Notes continued on p. 11

## Notes continued from p. 9

(e) Other continuations are: (1) 4 P-B4, P-K3; 5 Kt-B3, P-B3; 6 P-QKt3, P-Q5; 7 P × P, B × Kt; 8 Q × B, Q × P =. F. Becker—J. Mihalek, correspondence, 1931. (2) 4 P-QKt3, P-K3; 5 B-Kt2, B-K2; 6 B-Q3, QKt-Q2; 7 P-KR3, B × Kt; 8 Q × B, Kt-B4; 9 O-O, O-O; 10 Kt-B3, P-Q5 =. Tartakower—Schlechter, Vienna, 1917.

(f) The position has become a Stonewall Defense to the Queen's Pawn. Compare page 214. The column is Brinckmann—Knoch, Kecskemet, 1927.

(g) On 4 B-Kt5ch, B-Q2 equalizes most easily for Black, but 4... Kt-B3; 5 B × Ktch, P × B; 6 Kt-K5, Q-B2; 7 O-O, P-K3 (Bird—Janowski, Hastings, 1895) leads to White's ideal position in this opening. See p. 8, Diagram 3.

(h) 5... Kt-B3; 6 B-Kt5, Q-Kt3; 7 Q-K2; B-Q2; 8 KB × Kt, B × B; 9 Kt-K5, B-K2; 10 O-O ±. Eliskases—Lichtenstein, Vienna, 1935.

(i) 13 P × P, P-Kt4; 14 B-Q3, B-Kt2; 15 Q-K2, Q-Kt3; 16 Kt-K4, Kt

× Kt; 17 B × Kt, QR-Q1 and the game was soon drawn. Tartakower—Lasker, Nottingham, 1936.

(j) Both 6... P-K3 and 6... P-B3 are good alternatives.

(k) Capablanca suggested later the continuation 8... Kt × Kt; 9 P × Kt, Kt-Q2; 10 B × Pch, K-R1; 11 P-Q4, P-K3; 12 B × KP, Kt-B4 (or Kt × P); 13 P × Kt, B × P.

(l) 13 Kt × P, Kt × Kt; 14 P × Kt, Q-B3 !; 15 B-B3, B × Bch; 16 Q × B, R-Q1; 17 O-O, B-Kt2; 18 R-B2, Q × BP. Tartakower—Capablanca, Carlsbad, 1929.

(m) 3... B-Kt2; 4 P-Q4, Kt-KB3; 5 B-Q3, O-O; 6 QKt-Q2, P-B4; 7 P-B3, P-Kt3; 8 Q-K2, B-Kt2; 9 Kt-K5, Q-B2; 10 O-O, Kt-B3; 11 QKt-B3, Kt-K5; 12 B-Q2, Kt × Kt; 13 QP × Kt, P-B3; 14 P × P, P × P; 15 P-B4, KR-K1 ≠. Lilienthal—Tartakower, 3rd match game, 1933.

(n) 13 P-B3, P × P; 14 Kt × BP, P-R6. Capablanca—Turover, New York, 1931.

## Notes continued from p. 10

(f) Stronger than 6 Kt-K5, B × Kt; 7 P × B, Q × Qch; 8 K × Q, Kt-QB3; 9 B-Kt5, Kt × P; 10 Kt-B3, B-K3; 11 P-K3; P-KB3; 12 B-R4 (Brinckmann—Tartakower, Kecskemet, 1927) and now 12... O-O—Och equalizes.

(j) If 6... P-KB4; 7 P-K4 ! (but not 7 P-Q5 ?, Q-K2; 8 Q-Q4, B-K4; 9 Q-QB4, P-KR3; 10 Kt-K6, B × Kt+. Bird and Lee—Mason and Cook, 1890), P-KR3; 8 P-K5, B-K2; 9 Kt-KR3, P × Kt; 10 Q-R5ch, K-B1; 11 B-QB4, Q-K1 (or 11... R-R2; 12 Q-Kt6, R-Kt2; 13 B × P+. Hromadka—Gilg, Podebrady, 1936); 12 Q × P(R3) and White has a strong attack (Smirnov—Jacobson, 1926).

(k) Or 8... Kt-KB3; 9 P-B3, Kt-B3; 10 P × P, Kt × P; 11 Kt-QR3 !, B × Kt; 12 P × B, B-Q2; 13 P-Kt3, O-O-O; 14 B-KKt2+. Hromadka—Danielsen, Munich, 1936.

(l) 11... R × R; 12 Q × Ktch, K-Q2;

13 Kt × R, Kt × Pch; 14 K-Q1, Kt × R; 15 P-K4, P × P e.p.; 16 B × P. Analysis by Alekhine.

(m) 5... P-Kt5; 6 Kt-R4, P-KB4 (for 6... B-K2; 7 Kt-Kt2, P-KR4 see the column); 7 P-K3, Kt-K2; 8 B-Q3, QKt-B3; 9 O-O, Kt-K4; 10 Kt × P, Kt × Kt; 11 B × Kt, Kt-B6ch; 12 R × Kt, P × R; 13 Q × P, O-O; 14 Q-Kt4ch+. Chekhover—Rabinovitch, 1934.

(n) 11... Kt-KB3; 12 Kt-B4, Kt-K5; 13 Kt × Kt, B × Kt; 14 B-Kt2. Hellman—Strautmanis, The Hague, 1928.

(o) The alternative is 3 Kt-QB3, Kt-KB3; 4 P-KKt4 (the Swiss Gambit), P-KKt3 (4... P-KR3 is also good); 5 P-Kt5, Kt-R4; 6 P-Q3, P-Q4; 7 B-K2, Kt-Kt2; 8 P × P, P × P; 9 Q × Qch, K × Q; 10 Kt × P, B-B4; 11 B-Q3, Kt-Q2 =. Hold—Mueni, 1913.

(p) 11... B-Kt2; 12 P-B3, O-O; 13 Q-K2, P-QR4; 14 P-QR4, P, Kt-Q4. Pelikan—Alekhine, Podebrady, 1936.

BISHOP'S OPENING

THE PURPOSE of the Bishop's Opening is to develop quickly and institute an attack against the Black King position without weakening the White King as in other KP openings such as the King's Gambit. At one time the American master Weaver Adams claimed that it is a forced win for White; while he was alone in his claim (and later abandoned it in favor of the Vienna) his games and analysis helped to clarify the theory of the opening.

After the initial moves 1 P-K4, P-K4; 2 B-B4 Black has three good defenses, of which the most aggressive is the Berlin Defense 2... Kt-KB3 (cols. 1-6). The strength of the Berlin Defense lies in the fact that Black threatens an immediate counter-attack in the center, which White cannot afford to ignore. In the main variations (cols. 1-2) White accordingly changes his plan and sacrifices a Pawn for rapid development. Acceptance of the sacrifice leads to a difficult game where White's well-placed pieces are adequate compensation for the Pawn, but where Black's position is so solid that he can defend himself satisfactorily. Attempts by White to avoid this sacrifice and lead to a favorable variation of the King's Gambit Declined have been refuted, although best play (col. 6) is tricky for both sides.

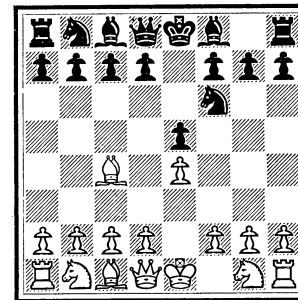
The alternative defenses (2... B-B4 and 2... P-QB3) both likewise lead to equality, but without the potential counterplay the Berlin Defense offers.

1 P-K4, P-K4; 2 B-B4

	1	2	3	4	5
2	Kt-KB3 (a)*				
3	P-Q4..... P x P			P-B4..... Kt x P (k)	P-Q3 P-B3 (m)
4	Kt-KB3 Kt x P.....		Kt-B3 (i)	P-Q3 Kt-Q3 (l)	Q-K2 (n) B-K2
5	Q x P (b) Kt-KB3 (c)		B-KKt5 (j) P-KR3	B-Kt3 Kt-B3	P-B4 P-Q4! (o)
6	B-KKt5 (d) B-K2		B-R4 P-KKt4	Kt-KB3 P x P	P x QP KP x P
7	Kt-B3 Kt-B3.....	P-B3 (g)	B-KKt3 P-Q3	B x P B-K2	P x P Kt x P
8	Q-R4 P-Q3	O-O-O P-Q4	O-O B-Kt5	O-O O-O	B x P O-O
9	O-O-O B-K3	Q-R4 B-K3	P-B3 P x P	Kt-B3 Kt-B4	Kt-QB3 Kt-Q5
10	B-Q3 (e) Q-Q2	B-Q3 QKt-Q2	QKt x P B-Kt2	P-Q4 P-Q3	Q-Q2 B-QKt5
11	B-Kt5 O-O	Kt-Q4 Kt-B4	P-KR4 Q-Q2	P-Q5 Kt-R4	P-QR3 R-K1ch
12	Kt-Q4 P-QR3 = (f)	P-B4 Kt-Kt1 = (h)	R-K1 O-O-O 7	B-R4 B-Q2 7	K-B1 B-R4 7 (p)

\* DIAGRAM 5

cols. 1-5



[After 2... Kt-KB3]

- (a) The Berlin Defense.
- (b) If 5 O-O, B-K2!; 6 R-K1, P-Q4 =.
- (c) 5... Kt-B4! is an unexplored possibility, e.g., 6 O-O, Kt-K3; 7 R-K1, P-QB3; 8 Kt-B3, P-Q4; 9 B-Q3, B-K2 7.
- (d) Or 6 Kt-B3, Kt-B3; 7 Q-R4, B-Kt5; 8 O-O, B x Kt; 9 P x B, O-O; 10 B-Q3, Kt-K2; 11 B-KKt5, Kt-Kt3; 12 Q-Kt3, P-QR4 7. Marshall-Torre, New York, 1925.
- (e) An alternative is 10 KR-K1, B x B; 11 Q x B, O-O; 12 R-K3, Kt-Q2; 13 P-KR4, R-K1 =. Berlin-Budapest, correspondence, 1938.
- (f) 13 B-Q3, Kt-K4; 14 P-B4, Kt x Bch. Mieses-Rubinstein, Breslau, 1912.

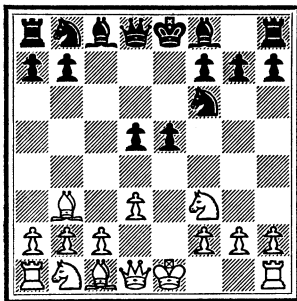
Notes continued on p. 15

1 P-K4, P-K4; 2 B-B4

	6	7	8	9	10
2 (Kt-KB3)...	B-B4 (d)			P-QB3	
3 (P-Q3) (a)	P-QB3 (e)			P-Q4	Q-K2
	(P-B3)	P-Q4 (f)	Kt-KB3	P-Q4	B-B4
4 Kt-KB3!	B × P	P-Q4		KP × P	B × Pch (i)
	P × P	Kt-KB3	P × P	BP × P	K × B
5 P-Q4	Q-B3	P-K5		B-Kt5ch	Q-B4ch
	P × P	O-O	P-Q4	B-Q2	P-Q4
6 B-Kt3!*	P-Q4 (g)	P × Kt		B × Bch	Q × B
	B-Kt5ch (b)	P × P	P × B	Kt × B	P × P
7 P-B3	B-Kt5	Q-R5!		P × P	Q × KP
	B-Q3	P × P	O-O	Kt × P	Kt-B3
8 B-Kt5	B × Kt	Q × B		Kt-K2! (h)	Kt-K2
	B-K3	P-B7!	R-K1ch	Kt-KB3	B-Kt5
9 P-Q4	Kt-B3	Kt-K2		O-O	QKt-B3
	P-K5	Q × QB	P-Q6	B-K2	R-K1
10 Kt-K5	Q × Q	B-K3		QKt-B3	Q-KKt5
	QKt-Q2	P × Q	P × Kt	O-O	QKt-Q2
11 P-KB4	Kt-B3	Kt-Q2		Kt-Q4	O-O
	P × P e.p.	P-B3	Kt-R3	R-B1	Kt-K4
12 Kt × P (B3)	B-Kt3	Q × P (B4)		R-K1 ±	P-QKt3
	Q-B2 = (c)	P-B4 =	Q × P =		P-Kt4 ±

## \* DIAGRAM 6

col. 6



[After 6 B-Kt3!]

(a) On 3 Kt-KB3?, Kt × P equalizes very easily, since the Boden Kieseritzky

Gambit 4 Kt-B3 (4 P-Q3 =) is unsound: 4...Kt × Kt; 5 QP × Kt, P-KB3!; 6 Kt-R4, P-KKt3; 7 P-B4, P-B3; 8 P-B5, P-Q4; 9 P × P, P × B; 10 Q-R5, K-Q2; 11 P × P, Q-K1+. Analysis by Mlotkowski.

(b) The Kt must be kept off QB3. If 6... B-Q3; 7 O-O, O-O; 8 B-Kt5, B-K3; 9 Kt-B3, B-B2; 10 R-K1, Kt-B3; 11 B-QR4 ±.

(c) 13 QKt-Q2, O-O; 14 O-O, P-KR3. Adams-Steiner, St. Louis, 1941.

(d) 2...P-KB4 (The Calabrese Counter Gambit) is refuted by 3 P-Q3, Kt-KB3; 4 P-B4, P-Q3; 5 Kt-KB3, BP × P; 6 QP × P, B-Kt5; 7 P × P, B × Kt; 8 Q × B, P × P; 9 Q-QKt3, Q-B1; 10 B-KKt5+. The text is the Classical Defense.

Notes continued on p. 15

Notes continued from p. 13

(g) The older 7...O-O is too dangerous because of 8 O-O-O, P-B3; 9 KR-K1, P-Q4; 10 B-Q3, QKt-Q2; 11 Q-KR4, P-KKt3; 12 R-K2!, R-K1; 13 QR-K1+, for if 13...Kt-K5; 14 B × B, Q × B; 15 Kt-KKt5!.

(h) 13 KR-K1, K-B1 (Torre-Tholfesen, New York, 1924); 14 P-QKt4, Kt × Bch; 15 R × Kt, Q-Q3.

(i) 4...B-B4; 5 P-K5, P-Q4 is weak: 6 P × Kt, P × B; 7 Q-K2ch, B-K3; 8 P × P, R-Ktr; 9 B-Kt5, B-K2!; 10 B × B, K × B; 11 Kt-R4!, Q-Q4; 12 P-B4, Kt-B3; 13 P-B5, P-Q6; 14 Q-K3, Kt-Q5; 15 O-O, Kt × QBP; 16 Q-Kt3+. Analysis by J. H. Morrison.

(j) For 5 Kt-Kt5 see Two Knights' Defense, p. 456. If 5 P-K5, P-Q4; 6 B-QKt5, Kt-K5; 7 Kt × P, B-QB4; 8 B-K3, B-Q2; 9 B × Kt, P × B ≠. Torre-Bigelow, New York, 1925. The column is Marshall-Smirka, New York, 1925.

(k) A good alternative is 3...P-Q4; 4 KP × P, Kt × P (not 4...P-K5; 5 P-Q3, B-Kt5; 6 Kt-K2, B-QB4; 7 P-Q4, B-Q3; 8 O-O ±); 5 B × Kt (if 5 Q-K2, Kt × P; 6 Q × Pch, Kt-K3; 7 Kt-KB3, Kt-B3; 8 Q-K2, B-Q3; 9 O-O, O-O; 10 P-B3, Kt-R4 ±), Q × B; 6 Q-K2,

Kt-B3; 7 Kt-QB3, Q-K3; 8 P × P, B-B4; 9 Kt-B3, O-O; 10 Kt-K4, B-Kt3; 11 P-B3, Kt × P; 12 Kt × Kt, Q × Kt =.

(l) But not 4...Q-R5ch?; 5 P-Kt3, Kt × P; 6 Kt-KB3, Q-R4; 7 R-Kt1!, Kt-B4; 8 R-Kt5, Q-R6; 9 B × Pch!, K × B; 10 R-R5!, Q-Kt7; 11 R × Ktch+.

(m) Also good is 3...Kt-B3; 4 P-B4, P × P! (but not 4...P-Q4; 5 KP × P, Kt × P; 6 P × P, Kt × P; 7 Q-K2, B-Kt5ch; 8 K-B1+); 5 B × P, P-Q4; 6 P × P, Kt × P =. 3...P-Q4 transposes to the Two Knights' Defense, p. 456, note (j).

(n) If 4 P-B4, P × P; 5 B × P, P-Q4; 6 P × P, Kt × P ≠. Adams-Fine, Dallas, 1940.

(o) Weak is 5...P-Q3; 6 Kt-KB3, QKt-Q2; 7 Kt-B3, Q-B2; 8 P-QR4, O-O; 9 P-B5!, P-Q4; 10 B-R2, P-QR3; 11 P-KKt4!, B-Kt5; 12 P-Kt5, Kt-R4; 13 O-O, P-KKt3; 14 K-R1, Kt-B4; 15 B-Q2, P-Q5; 16 Kt-R4!+. Spielmann-Gruber, Vienna, 1929.

(p) 13 P-QKt4, B-Kt3; 14 Kt-R4, Kt-R4+. Adams-Levin, Ventnor City, 1941.

Notes continued from p. 14

(e) White has a variety of transpositions at his disposal but all other independent moves are disadvantageous. 3 Kt-QB3 and 3 Q-Kt4 transpose into the Vienna Game, 3 Kt-KB3, Kt-QB3 into the Giuoco Piano. The most important independent line is 3 P-QKt4, B × P; 4 P-B4 (4 P-QB3, B-R4; 5 Kt-B3, Kt-QB3 leads to the Evans Gambit), P-Q4 (4...P × P, known as M'Donnell's Double Gambit, gives White a very strong attack by 5 Kt-KB3, B-K2; 6 P-Q4, B-R5ch; 7 P-Kt3, P × P; 8 O-O, P × Pch; 9 K-R1, P-Q4); 5 KP × P, P-K5; 6 Kt-K2, Kt-KB3; 7 O-O, O-O; 8 QKt-B3, P-B3; 9 P × P, Kt × P; 10 K-R1, B-Kt5; 11 Q-K1, P-K6!+. MacDonnell-Labourdonnais, 1834 (!).

If 3 P-Q4, B × P!+ but not 3...P × P?; 4 B × Pch!

(f) The Lewis Counter Gambit. If 4 P × P, B × Pch!.

(g) *Handbuch*, 1913, gives 6 B-B4, B-KKt5; 7 Q-Q3, Q-K2; 8 Q-B2, B-K3; 9 B × B, P × B; 10 Kt-B3, Kt-B3; 11 P-Q3, Kt-KKt5; 12 R-B1 (if 12 O-O, R × Kt; 13 P × R, Q-R5 draws) as in White's favor, but Black gets the better game with 12...R × Kt; 13 P × R, Kt × RP; 14 R-R1, Q-R5!; 15 Q-K2, B × Pch; 16 K-Q1, Q-Kt6.

(h) Lissitsin's move. The older 8 Q-K2 is too levelling.

(i) 4 Kt-KB3 = is safest. The column is analysis in the *Handbuch*, 1913.

## CARO-KANN DEFENSE

THE CARO-KANN, although it was originated in the latter part of the 19th century, did not become popular until the advent of the hypermodern school in the 1920's. It has been championed by Nimzovitch, Capablanca (on occasion) and Flohr. In contemporary practise Flohr is its most ardent advocate, although one sometimes has the feeling that the games he wins with it are won in spite of the opening rather than because of it.

Like the Sicilian, its main advantage is that it sets up an imbalance in the center in order to avoid the drawing possibilities of more symmetrical variations. This, however, is at the same time its most serious disadvantage, because White has much greater freedom in the center all the way through. As a result, if White plays aggressively Black must spend so much time countering White's bind that he is given little opportunity to further his own plans.

Most masters today seem to feel that the disadvantages outweigh the advantages, and the defense is accordingly declining in popularity.

After 1 P—K4, P—QB3; the usual continuation is 2 P—Q4, P—Q4, when White has four moves at his disposal: (1) 3 Kt—QB3; (2) 3 P × P; (3) 3 P—K5; (4) 3 P—KB3.

(1) 3 Kt—QB3 yields White a secure if somewhat slight advantage in all variations except that in col. 8, note (i). Its strength lies in the fact that Black is compelled to give up the center with 3... P × P, since 3... P—K3 transposes to the French Defense with a lost tempo. After the further 3... P × P; 4 Kt × P Black's game is full of problems. On 4... Kt—B3 (cols. 1-6) the exchange of Knights weakens Black's Pawn position seriously. It used to be thought that Black could recapture with the KP and content himself with a solid, if cramped development. But the introduction of the new move Q—R5! at White's seventh or eighth move (cols. 1-2) demolishes this plan completely. In fact, unless Black can find an adequate counter to this attack the variation can hardly be played. That the recapture with the KtP is also not to be recommended has been shown by several recent encounters; especially noteworthy is Horowitz's line in col. 4. 4... B—B4 leads to positions which offer less counterplay than 4... Kt—B3 but the main variation in col. 8 is not so disadvantageous for Black, who has a careful equalizing line at his disposal in note (i).

(2) 3 P × P leads after 3... P × P; 4 P—QB4 to the Panov-Botvinnik

Attack which created a sensation when Botvinnik demonstrated its great strength in his match with Flohr in 1933 and has since consistently challenged theoreticians to find a suitable defense. After the further 4... Kt—KB3; 5 Kt—QB3 Black is best advised to play 5... P × P or 5... P—K3 and ... P × P shortly thereafter, transposing to positions similar to the Queen's Gambit Accepted. In the older variations with 5... Kt—B3, 6 B—Kt5 (cols. 11-16) gives White a severe bind which is very difficult to meet, especially if P—QB5 can be played under favorable circumstances (see col. 15). However, after an early ... P × P Black's disadvantage is minimal, as in the analogous variations of the Queen's Gambit Accepted.

3 P × P without the Panov-Botvinnik push (P—QB4) leads to no advantage for White (cols. 24-26). Here one of the main points of superiority of the Caro-Kann (easy development of the QB) comes to the fore.

(3) 3 P—K5 (col. 27) is a weak line which, unlike its analogue in the French Defense, does not shut in the Black QB.

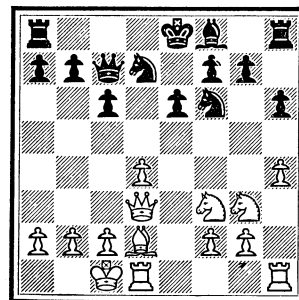
(4) 3 P—KB3 (the Fantasy Variation) involves some complicated traps but is essentially unsound. The line in col. 28 is noteworthy because Black's Pawn-hunting was successful.

Alternatives on White's second move are of little importance. 2 P—QB4 can transpose to the Panov-Botvinnik Attack; careless play by Black however can expose him to a serious disadvantage (cols. 30-31).

2 Kt—QB3 is adopted more for the sake of variety than anything else. Normal development assures Black easy equality unless White elects to transpose back to the more regular lines.

DIAGRAM 7

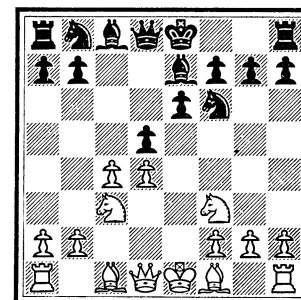
Page 19, cols. 8-9



[After 11... Q—B2]

DIAGRAM 8

Page 24, cols. 21-23



[After 6... B—K2]

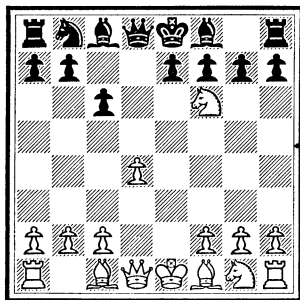


1 P-K4, P-QB3; 2 P-Q4, P-Q4; 3 Kt-QB3, P × P; 4 Kt × P, Kt-B3; 5 Kt × Ktch (a)\*

	1	2	3	4	5
5	KP × Kt			KtP × Kt	
6	B-QB4		Kt-B3 (h)	Kt-K2 /	P-QB3 (m)
	B-Q3		B-Q3	B-B4	B-B4
7	Q-R5 /	Q-K2ch	B-K2 (i)	Kt-Kt3	Kt-B3
	O-O (b)	B-K2 (e)	O-O	B-Kt3	Q-B2
8	Kt-K2	Q-R5 / (f)	O-O	P-KR4	B-QB4
	P-KKt3	P-KKt3	R-K1	P-KR3	P-K3
9	Q-B3	Q-Q1 /	B-K3	P-R5 (k)	Q-K2
	R-K1	O-O	B-KKt5	B-R2	Kt-Q2
10	B-KR6	Kt-B3	R-K1	P-QB3	Kt-R4
	B-KB4 (c)	Kt-Q2	Kt-Q2	Q-Kt3	B-Kt3
11	O-O-O	O-O	Q-Q3	B-QB4	P-B4
	B-K5	Kt-Kt3	Q-B2	Kt-Q2	O-O-O
12	Q-QKt3	B-Kt3	P-KKt3	P-R4	O-O
	Q-B2	R-K1	Kt-B1	P-R4	P-KB4
13	P-KB3	P-KR3 /	Kt-Q2	Q-B3	P-R4
	B-Q4	B-B1	Q-Q2	P-K3	B-Q3
14	B × B	R-K1	P-Q5	O-O	P-R5
	R × Kt	B-KB4	B × B	B-B7	K-Kt1
15	KR-K1 / ± (d)	R × R ± (g)	R × B	B-B4 ± (l)	P-R6
			Kt-Kt3 = (j)	P-Kt3 = (n)	

## \* DIAGRAM 9

cols. 1-5



[After 5 Kt × Ktch]

(a) A gambit alternative which is difficult for Black to meet is 5 B-Q3 /, Q × P; 6 Kt-KB3, Q-Q1; 7 Q-K2, Kt × Kt; 8 B × Kt, Kt-Q2 (better is 8... B-B4; 9 B × B, Q-R4ch; 10 B-Q2, Q × B; 11 O-O-O, Kt-Q2); 9 O-O, Kt-B4; 10 R-Q1, Q-B2; 11 Kt-K5. Alekhine-Winter, Hastings, 1936-37.

(b) On 7... P-KKt3; 8 Q-B3 is strong, or 8 Q-Q1, with lines similar to col. 2. The point is that Black's QB has been deprived of the square KKt3.

(c) Better 10... B-K3; 11 B × B, with a minimal positional advantage.

(d) 15... R × R; 16 R × R, Kt-R3; 17 B-QB4, P-QKt4; 18 Q-K3 /, Q-Q2; 19 B-Kt3. Keres-Mikenas, Buenos Aires, 1939.

Notes continued on p. 20

1 P-K4, P-QB3; 2 P-Q4, P-Q4; 3 Kt-QB3, P × P; 4 Kt × P (a)

	6	7	8	9	10
4	(Kt-B3)....	P-K3.....	B-B4		
5	Kt-Kt3	Kt-KB3	Kt-Kt3		
	P-K4 / (b)	Kt-B3	B-Kt3		
6	Kt-B3	Kt-Kt3	P-KR4 /		Kt-R3 (l)
	P × P	QKt-Q2	P-KR3		P-K3 (m)
7	Kt × P (c)	B-Q3	Kt-B3 (g)		Kt-B4
	B-K2 (d)	P-B4	Kt-Q2		Q-R5
8	B-K2	O-O	B-Q3 (h)		Kt × B (n)
	O-O	P-QKt3 (f)	B × B		RP × Kt
9	O-O	R-K1	Q × B		Q-Q3
	B-QB4	B-K2	P-K3		Kt-Q2
10	Kt-Kt3	P-B4	B-Q2		Kt-K4
	Q × Q	P × P	KKt-B3		Q-Q1 /
11	R × Q	Kt × P	O-O-O		B-K2
	B-Kt3 (e)	B-Kt2	Q-B2*		QKt-B3
12	P-KR3	P-QR3	K-Kt1.....	KR-K1	Kt × Ktch (o)
	B-K3	O-O	B-Q3 (i)	B-Q3	P × Kt /
13	B-KKt5	P-Kt3	Kt-K4	Kt-K4	B-Q2
	QKt-Q2	Kt-B4	Kt × Kt	Kt × Kt	Q-B2
14	R-Q2	B-B2 ±	Q × Kt ± (j)	Q × Kt	P-KKt3
	QR-Q1 =		Kt-B3 = (k)	O-O-O ± (p)	

## \* See p. 17, Diagram 7

(a) A gambit possibility is 4 B-QB4, Kt-B3; 5 P-B3, P-K6; 6 B × KP, B-B4; 7 KKt-K2, P-K3; 8 P-KKt4, B-Kt3; 9 P-KR4, P-KR3. v.d. Bosch-Flohr, match, 1932.

(b) Another satisfactory defense is 5... P-B4; 6 Kt-B3, Kt-B3; 7 B-K3, Q-Kt3; 8 B-Q3, P-K3; 9 O-O, B-Q2 =. Tarasch-Réti, Bad Kissingen, 1928. Unsatisfactory alternatives are (1) 5... B-Kt5, 6 Q-Q3, QKt-Q2; 7 P-KR3, B-R4; 8 Kt × B, Kt × Kt; 9 Kt-B3, P-K3; 10 P-KKt3, B-Q3; 11 B-Kt2 ±. Spielmann-Capablanca, New York, 1927.

(2) 5... P-KR4; 6 P-KR4, B-Kt5; 7 B-K2, B × B; 8 KKt × B, QKt-Q2; 9 Q-Q3 ±. Spielmann-Alekhine, Carlsbad, 1911. Not, however, here 6 B-KKt5, P-R5; 7 B × Kt, P × Kt; 8 B-K5, R × P; 9 R × R, Q-R4ch; 10 P-B3, Q × Bch; 11 P × Q, P × R + +. 5... P-K3 transposes to col. 7.

(c) 7 Q × P, Q × Q; 8 Kt × Q, B-B4 =. Alekhine-Capablanca, New York, 1927.

(d) But not 7... B-QB4?; 8 Q-K2ch, B-K2; 9 B-K3, P-B4 (best is 9... O-O; 10 O-O-O, Q-R4); 10 KKt-B5, O-O; 11 Q-B4+. Alekhine-Tartakower, Kecskemet, 1927.

(e) Von Holzhausen-Saemisch, Berlin, 1926.

(f) Or 8... B-K2; 9 P-B3, P × P; 10 P × P, O-O; 11 Kt-K5, Kt-Kt3; 12 B-KKt5, QKt-Q4; 13 R-B1 ±. Becker-Doery, Vienna, 1928. Black is playing a variation of the French Defense with a tempo behind. For similar positions see French Defense, p. 87, col. 46 and Queen's Gambit Accepted, p. 160, cols. 12-13. The column is Spielmann-Hoeningler, 4th match game, 1929.

(g) 7 Kt-R3, threatening 8 Kt-B4, is refuted by 7... P-K4 / (Capablanca).

Notes continued on p. 20

## Notes continued from p. 18

(e) The exchange of Queens leads to a much superior ending for White because of his majority of Pawns on the Queen's side.

(f) The older lines are too tame: 8 Kt-B3, O-O; 9 O-O, B-KKt5; 10 R-K1, B-Q3; 11 Q-Q3, Kt-Q2; 12 P-KR3, B-R4; 13 B-Kt3, P-R4; 14 P-B3, Kt-B4! =. Belavienetz-Flohr, Leningrad-Moscow, 1939.

(g) 15...Q×R; 16 P-B4, R-Q1; 17 B-K3. White won the endgame. Najdorf-Stahlberg, Bodas de Plata, 1941.

(h) Another possibility is 6 P-QB3, B-Q3; 7 B-Q3, O-O (better now 7...Q-K2ch); 8 Q-B2 (or 8 Q-R5, P-KKt3; 9 Q-R4, P-QB4; 10 Kt-K2, Kt-B3; 11 B-KR6 with a strong attack. Pilnik-Najdorf, Mar del Plata, 1942), P-KKt3; 9 Kt-K2, Q-B2; 10 P-KR4, R-K1; 11 P-R5+. Znosko-Borovsky-Tartakower, Paris, 1925.

(i) More aggressive is 7 B-K3, O-O; 8 Q-Q2, B-K3; 9 B-K2, Kt-Q2; 10 P-B4, Q-B2; 11 QR-B1, B-KKt5; 12 P-KR3, B-R4; 13 O-O, QR-Q1;

14 KR-Q1, KR-K1; 15 P-QKt4 ±. Mieses-Flohr, Bournemouth, 1939.

(j) Keres-Flohr, AVRO tournament, 1938.

(k) An improvement on 9 P-QB3, P-K3; 10 B-Q3, B×B; 11 Q×B, Kt-Q2; 12 Q-B3, Q-R4; 13 Kt-K4, Q-Q4; 14 B-B4, O-O-O! =. Loevenfisch-Zubarev, Moscow, 1925.

(l) Horowitz-Flohr, match U.S.A.—U.S.S.R., 1945.

(m) 6 P-KKt3 is premature because of 6...Q-Q4! (6...B-B4?; 7 B-Kt2, P-K3; 8 Kt-K2, Kt-Q2; 9 O-O, Kt-Kt3; 10 P-Kt3+. Cole-Winter, Hastings, 1919); 7 Kt-B3, B-B4; 8 P-B4, Q-K5ch; 9 Q-K2, Kt-R3; 10 P-QR3, O-O-O; 11 B-Kt2, P-K4! ≠. Lilienthal-Tolush, U.S.S.R. championship, 1945.

(n) 16 Kt-B3, B-R4; 17 Q-K3, B×Kt; 18 Q×B, KR-Kt1; 19 B-Q3, R-Kt5. Lilienthal-Konstantinopolsky, U.S.S.R. championship, 1945.

## Notes continued from p. 19

(h) An almost forgotten line, which is nevertheless quite strong, is 8 P-R5, B-R2; 9 B-Q3, B×B; 10 Q×B, P-K3; 11 B-Q2, KKt-B3; 12 O-O-O, B-Q3; 13 QR-K1, B×Kt; 14 P×B, O-O; 15 R-R4 ±. Chajes-Réti, Carlsbad, 1923.

(i) Better is 12...O-O-O; 13 P-B4, P-B4; 14 B-B3, P-QR3; 15 Q-K2, B-Q3; 16 Kt-K4, Kt×Kt; 17 Q×Kt, Kt-B3; 18 Q-K2, P×P; 19 Kt×P, B-B4 =.

(j) 14...Kt-B3; 15 Q-K2, O-O-O; 16 P-B4, P-B4; 17 B-B3, K-Kt1; 18 KR-K1, P×P; 19 Kt×P. Maroczy-Keres, Zandvoort, 1936.

(k) 15 Q-K2, B-B5; 16 Kt-K5, B×Bch. Spielmann-Capablanca, New York, 1927.

(l) Alternatives are: (1) 6 Kt-B3, Kt-Q2; 7 B-Q3, P-K3; 8 O-O, KKt-B3; 9 R-K1, Q-B2; 10 P-B4, B-Kt5; 11 R-K2, B×B; 12 Q×B, O-O; 13 P-B5, B-R4; 14 R-Kt1, Q-Q1 =. Kashdan-Flohr, London, 1932. (2) 6 P-

KB4, P-K3; 7 Kt-B3, B-Q3; 8 B-Q3, Kt-K2; 9 O-O, Kt-Q2; 10 K-R1, Q-B2; 11 Kt-K5, R-Q1; 12 Q-K2, B×B =. Marshall-Capablanca, New York, 1927.

(m) Or 6...Kt-Q2; 7 Kt-B4, P-K4! (Also good is 7...KKt-B3; 8 P-KR4, P-K4 for if 9 P×P, Kt×P; 10 Q-K2, Q-K2; 11 P-R5?, B×BP!+); 8 Kt×B, RP×Kt; 9 P×P, Q-R5!; 10 P-K6!, P×P; 11 Q-K2?, O-O-O!; 12 B-Q2, KKt-B3; 13 O-O-O, B-B4!; 14 B-K3, Kt-Kt5+. Steiner-Opocensky, Lodz, 1935.

(n) If 8 Q-K2, Kt-Q2!; 9 P-QB3, O-O-O; 10 Kt×B, RP×Kt; 11 Kt-K4, Q-K2; 12 B-Kt5, QKt-B3; 13 O-O-O, Q-B2; 14 Q-B3, Q-R4; 15 B-QB4, B-K2 =. Ragosin-Flohr, Moscow, 1935.

(o) Better was 12 Kt-Kt5, Q-B2; 13 Kt-B3, with a slight advantage for White (Bogatyrchuk).

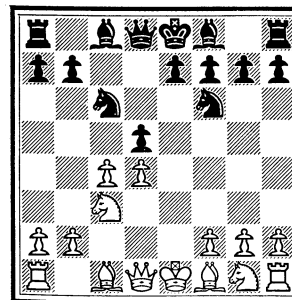
(p) 15 Q-B4, B-R3!. Bogatyrchuk-Flohr, Moscow, 1935.

1 P-K4, P-QB3; 2 P-Q4, P-Q4; 3 P×P, P×P; 4 P-QB4 (a), Kt-KB3; 5 Kt-QB3, Kt-B3\*

	11	12	13	14	15
6	B-Kt5!				
	P×P.....		P-K3 (g)		
7	P-Q5		Kt-B3 (h)		
	Kt-K4.....	Kt-QR4	P×P.....		B-K2
8	Q-Q4	Kt-B3! (e)	B×P		R-B1 (l)
	Kt-Q6ch	P-K3 (f)	B-K2		O-O (m)
9	B×Kt	Kt-K5!	O-O		P-B5!
	P×B	P×P	O-O		Kt-K5
10	Kt-B3	Q-R4ch	R-B1		B×B
	P-KKt3 (b)	Kt-B3	P-QR3		Q×B
11	B×Kt	O-O-O	B-Q3.....	P-QR3	B-K2
	P×B	B-K2	P-R3	P-Kt4	B-Q2
12	O-O	Kt×Kt	B-R4 (i)	B-R2	P-QR3
	B-K2 (c)	P×Kt	R-K1	B-Kt2	P-B4?
13	QR-Q1	B×Kt	P-QR3	Q-Q3	B-Kt5!
	O-O	B×B	Kt-Q4	Kt-Q4	Kt-Kt4
14	R×P	Q×Pch	B-Kt3	B-Kt1 (j)	B×Kt
	B-KB4	B-Q2	Kt×Kt	P-Kt3	Kt×Ktch
15	R-Q2	Q×QP+	R×Kt	B×B	Q×Kt
	B-Q3		B-B3	QKt×B	P×B
16	P-KKt4!+(d)		B-K5! ±	Kt-K4	O-O+(n)
				R-R2 = (k)	

## \* DIAGRAM 10

cols. 11-15



[After 5...Kt-B3]

(a) The Panov-Botvinnik attack, which almost demolished the whole defense in 1931-35.

(b) Other possibilities are likewise unsatisfactory, e.g., 10...P-KR3; 11 B×Kt, KP×B; 12 O-O, B-K2; 13 Kt-K4, Q-Kt3; 14 Q×QP+. Znosko-Borovsky-Reilly, Nice, 1934. Or 10...P-K3; 11 B×Kt, Q×B; 12 Kt-K5! with a great advantage in development for White.

(c) Easier to refute is 12...Q-Kt3; 13 KR-K1ch, K-Q1; 14 Q-KR4!+. Botvinnik-Flohr, 9th match game, 1933.

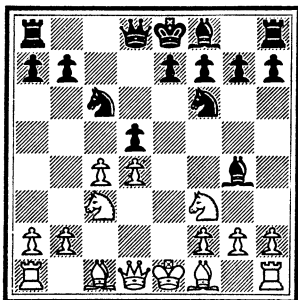
(d) 16...B-B1; 17 Kt-K4 with an overwhelming position. Analysis by Botvinnik.

Notes continued on p. 23

1 P-K4, P-QB3; 2 P-Q4, P-Q4; 3 P x P, P x P; 4 P-QB4, Kt-KB3; 5 Kt-QB3

	16	17	18	19	20
5 (Kt-B3).....					P x P (l)
6 (B-Kt5)....	Kt-B3				B x P
(P-K3)	B-Kt5 (d)*				P-K3
7 P-B5	B-K2.....	P x P			Kt-B3
B-K2	P-K3 (e)	KKt x P			P-QR3
8 B-Kt5	P-B5	B-QKt5.....	Q-Kt3		P-QR4 (m)
O-O	Kt-K5! (f)	R-B1 (g)	B x Kt		Kt-B3
9 Kt-B3 (a)	P-KR3	P-KR3	P x B		O-O
Kt-K5	B x Kt	B x Kt	P-K3 (i)		B-K2
10 B x B	B x B	Q x B	Q x P		B-K3
Kt x B (b)	Kt x Kt	P-K3	Kt x P		O-O
11 R-QB1	P x Kt	O-O	B-Kt5ch		R-B1
P-QKt3!	B-K2	P-QR3	Kt x B		Kt-QKt5
12 P-QKt4	O-O	Kt x Kt	Q-B6ch		Kt-K5
P-QR4	O-O	Q x Kt	K-K2		KKt-Q4
13 P-QR3	R-K1	Q x Q	Q x Kt (Kt5)		Q-B3
P x KtP	P-QKt3	P x Q	Kt x Kt (j)		P-B3
14 RP x P	P x P	B-R4	P x Kt		Kt-Q3
P x P	P x P	B-K2	Q-Q4		Kt(Kt5) x Kt=
15 QP x P	B-K2	B-K3	Q x Q ± (k)		
Kt x Kt+(c)	B-Q3 =	B-Q3 = (h)			

\* DIAGRAM 11  
cols. 17-19



[After 6... B-Kt5]

(a) Better is 9 KKt-K2 and if 9... Kt-K5; 10 B x B, Kt x B; 11 O-O, P-QKt3; 12 P-QKt4, P-QR4; 13 P-QR3 with a good game. Compare cols. 15 and 17.

(b) Much stronger than 10... Q x B?; 11 Q-B2, Kt-Kt4; 12 Kt x Kt, Q x Kt; 13 B x Kt, P x B; 14 O-O, P-K4; 15 P x P+. Keres-Alekhine, AVRO tournament, 1938.

(c) 16 R x Kt, R-Kt1!; 17 Q-K2, B-Q2; 18 B x B, Q x B; 19 R-Kt3, Q-R5 and Black wins a Pawn. Analysis by Lajos Steiner.

(d) 6... B-K3; 7 P-B5, P-KKt3; 8 B-QKt5, B-Kt2; 9 Kt-K5, Q-B1; 10 Q-R4, B-Q2; 11 O-O, O-O; 12 B-KB4, P-QR3; 13 B x Kt ±. Dake-Alekhine, Pasadena, 1932.

Notes continued on p. 23

Notes continued from p. 21

(e) 8 B x P is too indecisive: 8... Kt x B; 9 Q-R4ch, B-Q2; 10 Q x Kt, P-Kt4!; 11 Q-K2, Q-Kt3!; 12 R-Q1, P-Kt5; 13 Kt-K4, Kt x Kt; 14 Q x Kt, P-K3 =. Pitschak-Herzog, Lieberwerda, 1934. If 8 P-QKt4, P x P e.p.; 9 P x P, P-K4! (not 9... P-K3?; 10 B-Kt5ch, B-Q2, 11 B x Kt, P x B; 12 P x P, P x P; 13 Q-R5ch!++) with unclear complications.

(f) The improvement 8... P-QR3 is best met by 9 Kt-K5, P-QKt4; 10 B-K2 and White has enough for his Pawn. The column is analysis by Yudovitch.

(g) 6... Q-Kt3 is met by 7 P x P, QKt x P!; 8 KKt-K2! with the better development. If now 8... Kt-B4, as in a correspondence game Nightingale-Korn, 9 Q-Q2, Kt-Q3; 10 B-K3, Q-R4; 11 Kt-Kt3 ± is best. 6... B-Kt5 is refuted by 7 P-B3, B-K3; 8 P-B5!; P-KKt3; 9 B-Kt5, B-Kt2; 10 KKt-K2, O-O; 11 Q-Q2, P-QR3; 12 B x QKt, P x B; 13 P-KKt4 ±. Marchisotti-Diegluz, correspondence, 1944-45. 6... Q-R4 is answered by 7 Q-Q2, P x P; 8 B x P, P-K4; 9 P-Q5, Kt-Q5; 10 P-B4, B-Q3; 11 KKt-K2+. Keres-Czerniak,

Buenos Aires, 1939.

(h) If 7 P x P, P x P; 8 B x Kt, Q x B; 9 Kt x P, Q-Q1; 10 Kt-QB3, Q x P =.

(i) Better than 12 B-K3, when the game Botvinnik-Euwe, Hastings, 1934-35, continued 12... QKt-Kt5; 13 B-Kt, P-QKt4; 14 Kt-K5, B-Kt2; 15 Q-Q2, R-K1; 16 P-B4 (16 P-B3 is safer), QKt-Q4; 17 Kt x Kt, Q x Kt; 18 P-B5, B-Q3!+. The column is Weiss-Podhorzer, Vienna, 1934.

(j) But not 14 Kt-K4?, Kt(B3)-Kt5!+. Hasenfuss-Flohr, Kemer, 1937.

(k) Book-Flohr, Kemer-Riga, 1939. Columns 13 and 14 should be compared with the Queen's Gambit Accepted, p. 160.

(l) Unusual treatment for White was seen in Cornforth-Schenck, Oxfordshire Championship, 1944 which ran 8 B-Q3, P x P; 9 B x BP, O-O; 10 Q-Q2!, P-QR3; 11 O-O, P-Kt4; 12 B-Q3, P-Kt3; 13 B-K4!, B-Kt2; 14 KR-Q1 ±.

(m) 8... P x P, transposing to previous columns, was necessary.

(n) Botvinnik-Konstantinopolsky, Sverdlovsk, 1943. This game is a model for perfect play by White.

Notes continued from p. 22

(e) 7... P x P; 8 P-Q5, B x Kt; 9 B x B, Kt-K4; 10 O-O with a strong attack: 10... Q-Q2; 11 Q-K2, Kt x Bch; 12 Q x Kt, O-O-O; 13 P-QKt3!, P-K3; 14 KtP x P+. Mikenas-Flohr, Folkestone, 1933.

(f) Weaker is 8... B-K2; 9 O-O, O-O; 10 B-K3, Kt-K5; 11 Q-Kt3!, Q-Q2; 12 KR-Q1, P-B4; 13 P-KR3 ±. Alekhine-Turover and Wimsatt, Washington, 1933. The column is Nimzovitch-Gygli, Zurich, 1934.

(g) In the sensational game Nimzovitch-Alekhine, Bled, 1931, 8... Q-R4 led to a quick victory for Black after 9 Q-Kt3, B x Kt; 10 P x B, Kt x Kt; 11 B x Ktch?, P x B; 12 Q-Kt7?, Kt-Q4 disch; 13 B-Q2, Q-Kt3; 14 Q x Rch, K-Q2 followed by ... Kt-B2. But Alekhine himself later refuted 8... Q-R4 by 9 Q-Kt3, B x Kt; 10 P x B, Kt x Kt; 11 P x Kt, P-K3; 12 O-O+. Alekhine-Winter, London, 1932.

(h) 16 B-Kt3, Kt-K2. Krause-Nimzovitch, correspondence, 1924-25.

(i) 9... Kt x Kt; 10 Q x P!, Kt x QP; 11 P x Kt+ (Panov). If 9... Kt x P?; 10 B-Kt5ch wins a piece.

(j) If 13... Q-Q2; 14 Kt x Ktch, P x Kt; 15 Q-K2ch, Q-K3; 16 B-K3, P-B3; 17 R-QB1 with the better ending. Panov-Sergeiev, Moscow, 1930.

(k) 15... P x Q; 16 R-QKt. Analysis by Becker.

(l) Weak is 5... P-KKt3; 6 Q-Kt3!, B-Kt2; 7 P x P, O-O; 8 B-K2-B3 with advantage to White. If here 8 B-QB4, QKt-Q2; 9 KKt-K2, Kt-Kt3; 10 O-O, Kt x B; 11 Q x Kt, P-Kt3; 12 B-Kt5, B-Kt2; 13 Kt-B4, Q-Q2; 14 KR-K1, KR-Q1 =. Alekhine-Euwe, Berne, 1932.

(m) The opening transposes to a Queen's Gambit Accepted. Compare also cols. 13-14. The column is Alekhine-Tartakower, Paris, 1925.

1 P-K4, P-QB3; 2 P-Q4, P-Q4; 3 P x P, P x P

21	22	23	24	25
4 (P-QB4)..... (Kt-KB3)			B-Q3 (k) Kt-QB3	
5 (Kt-QB3) P-K3			P-QB3 Kt-B3	
6 Kt-B3 (a) B-K2*			B-KB4 (l) B-Kt5	
7 P x P! Kt x P	B-Q3 (h) P x P (i)		Kt-B3 (m) P-K3..... Q-Kt3	
8 B-QB4..... Kt-QB3 (b)	B-Kt5ch B-Q2 (f)	B x BP O-O	Q-Kt3 Q-B1	Q-Kt3 B x Kt
9 O-O O-O (c)	B x Bch Kt x B (g)	O-O QKt-Q2	QKt-Q2 B-K2	P x B P-K3
10 R-K1 P-QKt3? (d)	Kt x Kt P x Kt	B-B4 P-QR3	O-O O-O	Kt-Q2 Kt-Q2
11 Kt x Kt P x Kt	Q-Kt3 Kt-Kt3	R-B1 P-QKt4	P-KR3 B-R4 (n)	R-KKtr P-Kt3
12 B-QKt5! B-Q2	O-O O-O	B-Q3 B-Kt2	Q-B2 B-Kt3	P-QR4 O-O-O
13 Q-R4 Kt-Kt1	B-B4 B-Q3	Kt-K5 Kt-Kt3	Kt-K5 (o) B x B	O-O-O B-Kt2 = (p)
14 B x B ± (e)	B x B ±	R-K1 R-B1 ± (j)	Q x B Kt-Q2 / =	

\* See p. 17, Diagram 8

(a) 6 P-B5 is premature: 6...B-K2; 7 Kt-B3, O-O; 8 B-Q3, P-QKt3; 9 P-QKt4, P-QR4; 10 Kt-QR4, KKt-Q2; 11 P-QR3, P x KtP; 12 RP x P, P-K4!; 13 Kt x KP, Kt x Kt; 14 P x Kt, Kt-Q2; 15 B-Kt2, P x P ≠. Yudovitch-Kasparyan, Moscow, 1931.

(b) The simplest road to equality is 8...Kt x Kt; 9 P x Kt, Q-B2; 10 Q-Kt3, P-QR3.

(c) 9...P-QR3; 10 R-K1, P-QKt4; 11 B x Kt, P x B; 12 B-Kt5, O-O; 13 B x B, Kt x B; 14 Kt-Q2, R-R2; 15 Kt-Kt3 ±. Botvinnik-Khavin, U.S.S.R. championship, 1944.

(d) Euwe recommends 10...Kt-Kt3; 11 B-Kt3, B-B3.

(e) An improvement on 14 B-KB4, B x B; 15 Q x B, P-QR3; 16 Q-R4, B-Q3; 17 B x B ±. Botvinnik-Alekhine, AVRO tournament, 1938. After 14 B x B, Kt x B; 15 B-B4 Black's difficulties are more pronounced (Euwe). The position after Black's 7th move can also come out of the Queen's Gambit Declined, p. 190, col. 90.

(f) Also good is 8...Kt-B3; 9 Q-R4, O-O; 10 B x Kt, Kt-Kt3; 11 Q-R5, P x B; 12 O-O, Kt-Q4 =. Pachman-Kotov, match Prague-Moscow, 1946.

(g) Better is 9...Q x B for if 10 Kt-K5, Kt x Kt; 11 P x Kt (11 Q-B3, Q x P), Q-B2; 12 Q-R4ch, Kt-Q2 =. The column is Alekhine-Eliskases, Buenos Aires, 1939.

Notes continued on p. 27

1 P-K4, P-QB3

26	27	28	29	30
2 (P-Q4)..... (P-Q4)				P-QB4 P-Q4
3 (P x P)..... (P x P)	P-K5..... B-B4	P-KB3 P-K3 (g)		KP x P P x P
4 (B-Q3) (Kt-QB3)	B-Q3 (d) B x B	B-K3 Q-Kt3.....	Kt-B3	P x P Kt-KB3 (n)
5 (P-QB3) (Kt-B3)	Q x B P-K3	Kt-Q2 Kt-Q2	B-Q3 (j) P-B4 (k)	B-Kt5ch QKt-Q2
6 (B-KB4) P-KKt3	Kt-QB3 (e) Q-Kt3	B-Q3 P-QB4	P-B3 (l) BP x P	QKt-B3 P-KKt3
7 Kt-B3 B-Kt2	KKt-K2 P-QB4	P-B3 P-B5	BP x P P x P	Kt-B3 B-Kt2
8 P-KR3 (a) B-B4! (b)	P x P B x P	B-QB2 Q x KtP	P x P Kt x P	P-Q6! P x P
9 O-O Q x B	O-O Kt-K2	Kt-K2 Q-R6	Kt-KB3 B-Kt5ch	O-O O-O
10 Q x B O-O	Kt-R4 Q-B3	O-O Kt-Kt3	QKt-Q2 Kt x Kt	P-Q4 P-KR3
11 QKt-Q2 Q-Kt3!	Kt x B Q x Kt	P x P (h) P x P	Kt x Kt B x Ktch	B-KB4 Kt-Kt3
12 QR-Kt1 QR-B1 = (c)	B-K3 Q-B2 = (f)	R-K1 B-Q2 ± (i)	Q x B Kt-B3 ± (m)	Q-Q2 ± (o)

(a) Or 8 QKt-Q2, B-B4; 9 B x B, P x B; 10 Kt-K5, Q-Kt3; 11 O-O, O-O; 12 Kt-Kt3, P-K3; 13 Q-K2, KR-Q1; 14 Kt-B5, Kt x Kt; 15 B x Kt, Kt-K5! ≠. Spielmann-Saemisch, Berlin, 1920.

(b) 8...O-O; 9 QKt-Q2, P-QR3; 10 O-O, Kt-KR4; 11 B-R2 is not advisable for Black (H. Steiner-Kashdan, Győr, 1930). Similarly 8...Kt-K5 is weak because of 9 QKt-Q2, P-B4; 10 O-O, O-O; 11 Kt-K5!, QKt x Kt; 12 QB x Kt, B x B; 13 P x B, Kt x Kt; 14 Q x Kt, P-B5; 15 QR-Q1 ±. Lasker-Tartakower, Maehrisch-Ostrau, 1923.

(c) Bogatyrychuk-Tartakower, Moscow, 1925.

(d) On 4 P-KKt4! the safest reply is 4...B-Q2 followed by...P-K3, ...P-QB4,

Kt-QB3, ...P-KR4 etc., when White's weakened Pawn position will be a liability. On 4...B-Kt3; 5 P-KR4, P-KR4; 6 P-K6!, P x P; 7 B-Q3, B x B; 8 Q x B gives White some attack, although the game Mieses-Speyer, Scheveningen, 1923 continued in Black's favor: 8...P x P; 9 Q-Kt6ch, K-Q2; 10 Q x P (Kt4), Kt-B3; 11 Q-R3, R-R4!.

(e) Or 6 Kt-K2, Q-Kt3; 7 O-O, P-QB4; 8 P-QB3, QKt-B3; 9 Kt-Q2, R-B1; 10 Kt-B3, P x P!; 11 KKt x P, B-B4; 12 Kt-Kt3, KKt-K2; 13 Kt x B, Q x Kt =. Saemisch-Tartakower, Pistvan, 1922.

(f) Nimzovitch-Capablanca, New York, 1927.

Notes continued on p. 27

## 1 P-K4, P-QB3

	31	32	33	34	35
2 (P-QB4).... Kt-QB3 (c)					
P-K4	P-Q4				
3 Kt-KB3 (a)	Kt-B3				
P-Q3	P × P.....		B-Kt5 (i)		
4 P-Q4	Kt × P		P-KR3		
B-Kt5	B-Kt5.....	Kt-B3 (e)	B-R4.....	B × Kt	
5 Kt-B3	Kt-Kt3	Kt-Kt3 (f)	P × P	Q × B	
Kt-Q2	Kt-B3	P-B4	P × P	P-K3	
6 B-K2	B-K2	P-Q4 (g)	B-Kt5ch	P-QKt3	
KKt-B3	P-K3	P × P	Kt-B3	Kt-B3	
7 O-O	Kt-Kt5	Q × P	P-KKt4 !	B-Kt2	
B-K2	B × B	Q × Q	B-Kt3	B-K2	
8 B-K3	Q × B	Kt × Q	Kt-K5	P-K5	
O-O	Q-Q4	P-QR3	Q-Q3	KKt-Q2	
9 Kt-Q2	Kt-B3	B-K2	P-Q4	Q-Kt3 (k)	
B × B	P-B4	B-Kt5	P-B3	O-O	
10 Q × B	P-Q3	B-Q3	Kt × B	B-K2	
Q-R4	Kt-B3	P-K4	P × Kt	P-QB4	
11 P-KKt4	O-O	Kt (Q4)-B5	Q-Q3	O-O	
P × P	B-K2	P-KKt3	O-O-O	B-R5	
12 Kt-Kt3 ± (b)	B-Q2	Kt-K3	B × Kt+ (j)	Q-R2	
	O-O = (d)	QKt-Q2 = (h)		Kt-QB3 ± (l)	

(a) Or 3 P-Q4, P-Q3; 4 Kt-QB3, Q-B2; 5 B-K2, B-K2; 6 B-K3, Kt-B3; 7 P-KR3, O-O; 8 Kt-B3, QKt-Q2; 9 O-O, R-K1; 10 R-B1, B-B1; 11 Q-B2, P-KKt3; 12 P-Q5, Kt-R4; 13 Q-Q2, Kt-Kt2; 14 P-KKt4 ±. Alexander-Flohr, Hastings, 1937-38.

(b) 12... Q-R3; 13 Kt × P, Kt-K4; 14 P-Kt5. Mikenas-Flohr, Hastings, 1937-38.

(c) 2 Kt-KB3, P-Q4; 3 P-K5, B-B4; 4 Kt-Q4 !? (4 P-Q4 transposes to col. 27), B-Kt3; 5 P-K6, Q-Kt3; 6 Q-Kt4 (better 6 P × Pch, B × P; 7 Kt-KB3, B-R4; 8 P-Q4 with interesting complications), P-QB4; 7 P × Pch, K × P; 8 Kt-KB3, Kt-KB3; 9 Q-B8, Q-K3ch; 10 Q × Qch, K × Q ±. Tolush-Kotov, U.S.S.R. championship, 1939.

(d) Flohr-Lasker, Zurich, 1934.

(e) Weaker is 4... B-B4; 5 Kt-Kt3, B-Kt5 ! (but not 5... B-Kt3; 6 P-KR4,

P-KR3; 7 Kt-K5, B-R2; 8 Q-R5, P-KKt3; 9 Q-B3, Kt-B3. Lasker-Mueller, Zurich, 1934, and now 10 B-B4, P-K3; 11 P-Q4 ! is overwhelming; 6 B-B4, P-K3; 7 P-KR3, B × Kt; 8 Q × B, Kt-B3; 9 O-O, B-Q3; 10 R-K1, O-O; 11 P-Kt3, QKt-Q2; 12 B-Kt2 ±. Loevenfisch-Konstantinopolsky, Leningrad-Moscow, 1939.

(f) 5 Kt × Ktch usually transposes to better known lines. An exception is 5... KtP × Kt; 6 P-KKt3 (compare col. 5 note (m)), B-Kt5; 7 B-Kt2, P-K3; 8 P-Q4, Kt-Q2; 9 O-O, B-Kt2; 10 R-K1, O-O; 11 B-K3, R-K1; 12 Q-B1, Kt-B1; 13 P-B3, P-K4; 14 Q-B2 ±. Konstantinopolsky-Flohr, U.S.S.R. championship, 1945.

(g) This position may also arise from col. 6.

(h) Thomas-Nimzovitch, Frankfurt 1930.

Notes continued on p. 27

## Notes continued from p. 24

(h) After 7 B-Kt5, O-O; 8 P-B5 is again premature: 8... P-QKt3; 9 P-QKt4, P-QR4; 10 P-QR3, Kt-K5; 11 R × B, Q × B; 12 Kt-QR4, RP × P; 13 RP × P, P × P; 14 KtP × P, Q-R2; 15 B-Q3, Q-R4ch; 16 Kt-Q2, B-Q2; 17 B-B2, B-Kt4 ±. Kan-Makogonov, U.S.S.R. championship, 1939.

(i) Or 7... P-QKt3; 8 B-Kt5, B-Kt2; 9 P × P, Kt × P; 10 Q-R4ch, B-B3; 11 B-Kt5, O-O !; 12 KB × B, Kt × B; 13 Q × Kt, B × B; 14 Kt × Kt, R-B1; 15 Q-R4, P × Kt =. Stoltz-Alekhine, Orebro, 1935. Better here 15... Q × Kt.

(j) Shouvaloff and Sain-Alekhine, Lisbon, 1941.

(k) This must be played as soon as possible. Inferior, e.g., is 4 P-QB3, Kt-QB3; 5 B-KB4, B-B4; 6 Kt-B3, P-K3; 7 Q-Kt3 (better 7 B-Q3), Q-Q2; 8 QKt-Q2, P-B3; 9 B-K2, P-KKt4 !; 10 B-Kt3, P-KR4; 11 P-KR3, KKt-K2; 12

O-O, B-R3 ±. Spielmann-Nimzovitch, Carlsbad, 1923.

(l) If 6 Kt-K2, B-Kt5; 7 O-O, P-K3; 8 P-B3, B-R4; 9 Kt-Kt3, B-Kt3; 10 P-KB4, B × B; 11 Q × B, B-Q3; 12 Q-K2, Q-B2 ±. Lilienthal-Flohr, Ujpest, 1934. And if 6 P-KR3, P-K4 !; 7 P × P, Kt × P; 8 Q-K2, Q-K2 =.

(m) Or 7 Q-Kt3, Kt-QR4; 8 Q-R4ch, B-Q2; 9 Q-B2, Q-Kt3; 10 Kt-B3, P-K3; 11 O-O, B-Kt4; 12 QKt-Q2, B × B =. Maroczy-Capablanca, Lake Hopatcong, 1926.

(n) 11... B-KB4 is a good alternative. The column is Milner-Barry-Flohr, Margate, 1939.

(o) 13 B × B first is a bit stronger. Compare Milner-Barry-Znosko-Borovsky, Tenby, 1928.

(p) Milner-Barry-Flohr, Hastings, 1934-35.

## Notes continued from p. 25

(g) 3... P × P ? is a mistake because it gives White an overwhelming attack, e.g., 4 P × P, P-K4; 5 Kt-KB3, P × P; 6 B-QB4, B-K2; 7 O-O !, Kt-B3; 8 Kt-Kt5, O-O; 9 Kt × BP, R × Kt; 10 B × Rch, K × B; 11 P-K5, K-Kt1; 12 P × Kt, B × P; 13 Kt-Q2, B-K3; 14 Kt-K4+, Teichmann-Mieses, match, 1913.

(h) Or 11 P-B4, Kt-B3; 12 Kt-Kt3, P-KR4 !. White's attack is speculative.

(i) 13 Kt-KB1, O-O-O; 14 B-B1, Q-R4; 15 P-QR4, B-Q3; 16 Kt-K3, Kt-K2. Smyslov-Makogonov, U.S.S.R. championship, 1944.

(j) Or 5 Kt-B3, B-K2; 6 P-K5, KKt-Q2; 7 P-B4, P-QB4; 8 Kt-B3, Kt-QB3; 9 B-Kt5, Q-Kt3; 10 O-O, O-O; 11 K-R1, P-QR3 =. Torre-Fine, Monterey, 1934.

(k) 5... Q-Kt3 is also good.

## Notes continued from p. 26

(i) 3... Kt-B3; 4 P-K5, Kt-K5; 5 Q-K2, Kt × Kt; 6 QP × Kt, P-QKt3; 7 Kt-Q4, P-QB4 ? (7... P-K3 is necessary); 8 P-K6 ! and wins. Spielmann-Walter, Trentschin-Teplitz, 1928.

(j) 12... Q × B; 13 Q × P, P-K4; 14 B-Q2 !, Kt-K2; 15 Q-Q3, P-K5; 16 Q-K2, Kt-Kt3; 17 O-O-O, Kt-R5;

(l) Or 6 P-K5, KKt-Q2; 7 P-KB4, Kt-QB3; 8 Kt-KB3, Q-Kt3 ±.

(m) White's attack is not worth the Pawn. Tartakower-Sultan Khan, match, 1931.

(n) 4... Q × P; 5 Kt-QB3, Q-QR4 (5... Q-Q1 is simpler, leading to a variation of the Q.G.A.); 6 B-B4, Kt-KB3; 7 Kt-B3, P-K3; 8 O-O, B-K2; 9 P-Q4, O-O; 10 B-B4 ±. L. Steiner-Carls, The Hague, 1928. A strong alternative is 4... P-QR3; 5 Q-Kt3, Kt-KB3; 6 Kt-QB3, QKt-Q2; 7 B-K2 (L. Steiner-Flohr, Hastings, 1932-33) and now 7... Kt-B4 !; 8 Q-B4, P-K3; 9 B-B3, P × P; 10 Kt × P, B-K3 with a good attack (Flohr).

(o) 12... P-R3; 13 B-Q3, K-R2; 14 P-KR3, B-K3; 15 KR-K1, Q-Q2; 16 B-R2. Alekhine-Feigin, Kemer, 1937.

18 Kt-Kt5, Q-Kt3; 19 P-QB4 and Black has no real compensation for the Pawn. Boleslavsky-Bondarevsky, Leningrad-Moscow, 1941.

(k) Better 9 Q-K2, and if 9... O-O; 10 P-Kt3.

(l) Christoffel-Ekstrom, Hastings, 1945-46.

CENTER GAME

**T**HE CENTER GAME is one of the oldest and most logical continuations of White's attack. Despite its inherent logic, however, the early development of the White Queen is such a serious breach of sound opening principles that it is a rarity in current tournament play. In modern times it has been championed only by Spielmann, Tartakower and Mises.

In the main variation (1 P-K4, P-K4; 2 P-Q4, P x P; 3 Q x P) quick development by Black, favored by the exposed position of the White Queen, assures the second player at least equality and usually more.

After 3... Kt-QB3; 4 Q-K3, Black can choose either 4... Kt-B3, 4... B-Kt5ch, or 4... P-KKt3. The first is the most common; however the line in col. 5 promises some improvement of White's fate and deserves investigation.

The major alternative to the immediate recapture with the Queen is the Danish Gambit (cols. 8-19), 3 P-QB3. In this interesting gambit, favored by Marshall, White sacrifices one or two Pawns for the sake of rapid development and a strong attack. The traditionally safe reply is Schlechter's line in col. 8 which leads to a materially even ending where Black has a considerable positional advantage. However, an examination of older games and analysis reveals that even without this counter-attack Black can afford to accept the two Pawns and submit to the storm (see col. 10).

Alekhine recommended after 3 P-QB3, P x P; 4 Kt x P (instead of the older 4 B-QB4) and maintained that White's attack is fully as strong as in the older lines. Unfortunately the defense in the games where he tried this theory was sadly lacking, and a final opinion on his recommendation is still wanting (see cols. 13-14).

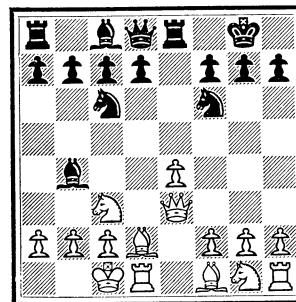
Black can safely decline the Danish with 3... P-Q4 (cols. 15-17) but has less counterplay than when he accepts. Other methods of declining the gambit (cols. 18-19) are somewhat dubious, although the old line in col. 19 appears to be satisfactory.

Alternatives other than the Danish Gambit on White's third move (col. 20) are easy for Black to meet.

1 P-K4, P-K4; 2 P-Q4, P x P; 3 Q x P, Kt-QB3; 4 Q-K3 (a), Kt-B3

	1	2	3	4	5
5	Kt-QB3..... B-K2.....	B-Kt5			P-K5 (l) Kt-KKt5
6	B-Q2 P-Q4	B-Q2 O-O (d)			Q-K2 (m) P-Q3
7	P x P Kt x P	O-O-O R-K1*			P-KB3 KKt x KP? (n)
8	Kt x Kt Q x Kt	Q-Kt3..... Kt x P! (e)	B-B4 (h) B x Kt.....	P-Q3	P-KB4 Kt-Q5
9	Kt-K2 (b) B-Kt5	Kt x Kt R x Kt	B x B Kt x P	Kt-B3 (j) B-K3	Q-K4 P-QB4
10	Kt-B4 Q-Q2	B-KB4 Q-B3!	Q-B4 Kt-B3	B x B R x B	Kt-QR3 B-B4
11	P-KB3 O-O-O!	Kt-R3 P-Q3	Kt-B3 P-Q3	KKt-Kt5 R-K1	Q-K3 Q-R4ch
12	O-O-O (c) B-KB4	B-Q3 Kt-Q5!	Kt-Kt5 B-K3	P-B4 P-KR3	K-B2! O-O-O!
13	B-Q3 B-B3	B-K3 R-Kt5 (f)	B-Q3 P-KR3	P-KR4 Q-B1!	P x Kt P x P
14	B x B Q x B	B x Kt R x B	P-KR4 Kt-Q4	Q-B3 K-B1!	P-B3 Kt-B3
15	KR-K1 Kt-Q5 ±	P-QB3 B x P+(g)	B-R7ch K-R1 = (i)	Kt-Q5 Kt x Kt ± (k)	Kt-B4+

\* DIAGRAM 12  
cols. 2-4



[After 7... R-K1]

Kt5 ±. Mises-Leonhardt, Berlin, 1920. 4 Q-R4 leads to a variation of the Center Counter with colors reversed, where White has a move in hand.

(b) 9 B-B3, O-O; 10 Q-Kt3, P-KKt3; 11 B-Q3, B-Q3 ±. Edinburgh-Liverpool, correspondence, 1901. 9 P-QB4?, Q-QB4; 10 O-O-O, B-B4!; 11 Q x Q, B x Q; 12 R-K1ch, B-K3; 13 B-K3, B-K2; 14 Kt-B3, O-O-O; 15 Kt-Kt5 (better is 15 B-K2), B-KB4!+. Meller-Kashdan, Győr, 1930.

(c) If 12 P x B, B-R5ch! (not 12... KR-K1??); 13 O-O-O!+ +. Sultan-Khan-Marshall, Liege, 1930; 13 K-Q1, KR-K1; 14 Q-Q3, Q x Pch; 15 B-K2, R x B; 16 Q x R, Q x Kt; 17 K-B1, Kt-Q5!+.

(a) If 4 Q-B4, Kt-B3; 5 Kt-QB3, P-Q4!; 6 Kt x P, Kt x Kt; 7 P x Kt, Kt-

Notes continued on p. 30

Notes continued from p. 29

(d) Or 6... P-Q3; 7 P-B4, B-QB4; 8 Q-Kt3, Kt-KR4; 9 Q-B3, Kt-B3; 10 B-B4, B-KKt5 ♣. Mieses-Englund, Scheveningen, 1913.

(e) Weak is 8... P-Q3; 9 P-B3, B-K3; 10 Kt-R3, Q-K2; 11 Kt-B4, QR-Q1; 12 K-Kt1, P-QR3; 13 B-Q3, Kt-K4; 14 QKt-Q5, B × Kt; 15 B × B, B-K3; 16 KR-K1 ±. Mieses-Spielmann, Berlin, 1914.

(f) 13... B-Kt5 ? instead is a mistake because of 14 Kt-Kt5 !, R × B; 15 Q × B !, Kt-K7ch; 16 B × Kt, R × B; 17 Kt-K4 !, R × Kt; 18 Q × R+. Mieses-Capablanca, Berlin, 1913.

(g) 16 P × B, R-KKt5; 17 Q-K3, Q × Pch; 18 B-B2, Q × Qch; 19 P × Q, R × P with a winning endgame. Analysis by Capablanca.

(h) White has no really good continuation. If 8 P-B3, P-Q4; 9 Q-B2, P × P; 10 Kt × P, B × Bch; 11 R × B, Q-K2; 12 Kt × Ktch, Q × Kt; 13 B-B4, Kt-K4; 14 B-Kt3, P-QR4 ♣. Meisling-Dr. Lasker, 1920.

(i) 16 R × Kt, B × R; 17 B-K4 (Wina-

wer-Steinitz, Nuremberg, 1896) and now, as recommended by Tarrasch, 17... R × B !; 18 Kt × R, Kt-K4; 19 Kt × P, Q × Kt; 20 B × Kt, Q-QB3; 21 R-Q1, B × RP ? (21... B-K5 =); 22 R-Q6 !+++. de Greef-Seibold, correspondence, 1931.

(j) Or 9 P-B3, Kt-K4; 10 B-Kt3, B-K3; 11 P-Kt4, P-B3; 12 P-Kt5, KKt-Q2 ♣. Spielmann-Eliskases, 1st match game, 1937.

(k) Tartakower-Reshevsky, Stockholm, 1937.

(l) 5 B-Q2, Kt-KKt5 (5... B-K2; 6 Kt-QB3 transposes into col. 1); 6 Q-KKt3, P-Q4 !; 7 P-KR3, Kt-B3; 8 P × P, Kt × P; 9 Kt-QB3, B-K3; 10 O-O-O, Q-Q3 =. Analysis by Dr. Landau.

(m) 6 Q-K4, P-Q4 !; 7 P × P e.p.ch, B-K3; 8 P × P, Q-Q8ch; 9 K × Q, Kt × Pch+. Or 8 B-QR6, Q × P; 9 B × P, Q-Kt5ch+. Mieses-Burn, Breslau, 1912.

(n) Speculative. Best is 7... Kt-R3; 8 P × P e.p.ch, B-K3; 9 B × Kt, Q-R5ch with an attack worth the Pawn (Loevenfisch).

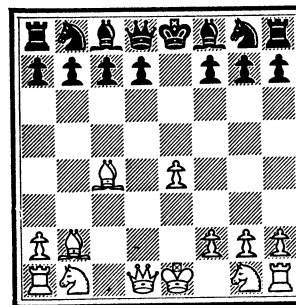
1 P-K4, P-K4; 2 P-Q4, P × P

DANISH GAMBIT

	6	7	8	9	10
3 (Q × P).....			P-QB3 ! (f)		
(Kt-QB3)			P × P		
4 (Q-K3)			B-QB4		
B-Kt5ch.....		P-KKt3	P × P		
5 P-B3 (a)	B-Q2		B × P*		
B-K2 (b)	B-Kt2		P-Q4 ! (g).....		P-Q3 (l)
6 Kt-B3	Kt-QB3		KB × P	P × P	Kt-K2 (m)
Kt-B3	Kt-B3 ! (d)		Kt-KB3	Kt-KB3	Kt-QB3
7 B-Kt5	O-O-O		B × Pch (h)	Kt-KB3 (j)	O-O
O-O	O-O		K × B	B-Q3	B-K3
8 O-O	P-B3 (e)		Q × Q	O-O	B-Q5
P-Q4	P-Q4		B-Kt5ch	O-O	Kt-B3
9 P × P	Q-B5		Q-Q2	Kt-B3	Q-Kt3
Kt × P	P × P		B × Qch	B-KKt5	Q-B1
10 Q-K2	B-KKt5		Kt × B	Q-Q4	Kt-B4
B-Q3	Q-K1		P-B4 ♣ (i)	QKt-Q2	B × B
11 R-Q1	B × Kt			KR-K1	P × B
R-K1	B × B			R-K1	Kt-K4
12 Q-B2	Kt × P			Kt-KKt5	R-K1
B-KKt5 ♣ (c)	B-Kt2			R-K4	B-K2
13	B-Kt5			KKt-K4	B × Kt
	Q-K4 ♣			Q-K2+ (k)	P × B+ (n)

\* DIAGRAM 13

cols. 8-10



[After 5 B × P]

(a) 5 B-Q2 is safer. 5 Kt-B3, Kt-B3 transposes to columns 2-4. Weak after 5 Kt-B3 is 5... KKt-K2; 6 B-Q2, O-O; 7 O-O-O, P-Q3; 8 Q-Kt3, K-R1; 9 P-B4 ±. Tolush-Botvinnik, U.S.S.R. championship, 1944.

(b) Charousek's improvement on the older 5... B-R4.

(c) Winawer-Charousek, Berlin, 1897. 13 QKt-Q2 is best for White; neither 13 R × Kt nor 13 Kt-Kt5 will do.

(d) Inferior is 6... KKt-K2; 7 O-O-O, O-O; 8 B-B4, P-Q3; 9 P-KR4 ! ±. Mieses-Spielmann, Breslau, 1912.

(e) 8 B-B4, P-Q3; 9 P-B3, Kt-K4; 10 B-Kt3, B-K3 = suffices, but 8... Kt-QR4 !; 9 B-K2, P-Q4 ! is also feasible. The column is Blackburne-Lasker, match, 1892.

Notes continued on p. 34

## DANISH GAMBIT

1 P-K4, P-K4; 2 P-Q4, P x P; 3 P-QB3

	11	12	13	14	15
3 (P x P).....					P-Q4 (o)
4 (B-QB4).....			Kt x P (g)		KP x P
P-Q3.....		Kt-QB3 (c)	B-Kt5 (h)...	Kt-QB3	Kt-KB3 /
5 Kt x P	Kt-B3	B-QB4	B-QB4	P x P (p)	
Kt-QB3	B-B4	P-Q3	P-Q3	B-Kt5ch	
6 Kt-B3	Kt x P (d)	Kt-B3	Kt-B3	B-Q2	
B-K3 /	P-Q3	B x Ktch	Kt-B3 (l)	B x Bch	
7 B-Q5	Q-Kt3 (e)	P x B	Q-Kt3 (m)	Q x B	
B x B? (a)	Q-Q2	Kt-QB3	Q-Q2	O-O	
8 P x B	Kt-Q5	O-O	Kt-KKt5	Kt-KB3	
Kt-K4	KKt-K2	Kt-B3	Kt-K4 (n)	Kt-K5	
9 O-O /	Q-B3	B-R3 (i)	B-Kt5	Q-B4	
Kt-KB3	O-O	O-O (j)	P-B3	Q x P	
10 Q-K2	O-O	P-K5	P-B4 /	B-Q3	
B-K2	Kt x Kt (f)	Kt-KKt5	P x B	Q-R4ch	
11 Kt x Kt	P x Kt	P x P	P x Kt	QKt-Q2	
P x Kt	Kt-K4	P x P	P x P	Kt x Kt	
12 Q x P	Kt x Kt	B x P	B-K3+	Q x Kt	
O-O	P x Kt	R-K1		R-K1ch	
13 B-Kt5	Q x P	R-K1+ (k)		Kt-K5	
P-KR3 = (b)	B-Q3 =			Q x Qch 7 (q)	

(a) But this is not the logical continuation. Correct was 7...Kt-B3; 8 O-O, B-K2 7. 9 B x B, P x B; 10 Q-Kt3 would be met by ...Q-B1.

(b) 14 B-R4, Q-Q2. Opocensky-Fahrni, Baden, 1914.

(c) 4...B-Kt5 is inferior: 5 P x P, Q-B3; 6 Kt-K2, B-B4 (White threatens to trap the Queen by 7 P x B, Q x R; 8 Kt-B3); 7 O-O, P-Q3; 8 Kt-B4, Kt-K2; 9 Kt-R5 7. Johner-Breyer, Baden, 1914. 4...Kt-KB3 leads to approximate equality after 5 Kt x P, Kt-B3; 6 Kt-B3, B-Kt5; 7 P-K5, P-Q4; 8 P x Kt, P x B; 9 Q x Qch, Kt x Q; 10 P x P, R-KKt1 (Analysis by R. J. Loman).

(d) If 6 B x Pch, K x B; 7 Q-Q5ch, K-B1; 8 Q x Bch, Q-K2; 9 Q x Qch, KKt x Q; 10 Kt x P, P-Q4 / = Schlechter-Spielmann, Baden, 1914.

(e) For 7 B-KKt5 see Scotch Game, p. 405, col. 16.

(f) Better than 10...Kt-Kt3; 11 P-

QKt4, B-Kt3 (Schlechter-Hromadka, Baden, 1914), 12 B-Kt2 7, e.g., 12...QKt-K4; 13 Kt x B, RP x Kt; 14 Kt x Kt, P x Kt; 15 P-B4 /+ (Marco).

(g) Alekhine warmly recommends this and feels that it gives White fully as strong an attack as 4 B-QB4.

(h) Better is 4...P-Q3 transposing into column 11.

(i) More in harmony with the opening is 9 P-K5, P x P; 10 Q-Kt3, with a strong attack (Alekhine).

(j) 9...B-Kt5 /; 10 Q-Kt3, Kt-QR4; 11 B x Pch, K-B1; 12 Q-R4, B x Kt; 13 P x B, K x B; 14 Q x Kt, R-K1 with a satisfactory game (Alekhine).

(k) Alekhine-Issakov, Moscow, 1919.

(l) 6...B-K3 again transposes into column 11.

(m) 7 Kt-KKt5, Kt-K4; 8 B-Kt5ch, P-B3; 9 P-B4, QKt-Kt5; 10 B-B4, P-Q4 = Selman-Ford, New York, 1932.

Notes continued on p. 34

1 P-K4, P-K4; 2 P-Q4, P x P

## DANISH GAMBIT DECLINED

	16	17	18	19	20
3 (P-QB3).....					Kt-KB3 (i)
(P-Q4).....			P-Q6.....	Q-K2 (e)	B-B4 (j)
4 (KP x P)			B x P	P x P (f)	Kt x P (k)
Q x P			B-B4	Q x Pch	Kt-KB3
5 P x P			Kt-KB3	B-K2 /	Kt-QB3 (l)
Kt-QB3 (a)			P-Q3	Q x KtP	P-Q4 /
6 Kt-KB3			Q-B2	B-B3	P x P
B-Kt5			Kt-QB3	Q-Kt3	O-O
7 B-K2.....	Kt-B3		QKt-Q2	Kt-B3	B-KKt5
Kt-B3	B-Kt5		P-QR3	B-Kt5	Q-Q3 /
8 Kt-B3	B-K2		Kt-Kt3	Kt-K2	B x Kt
Q-QR4 (b)	B x Kt		B-R2	Kt-K2	Q x B
9 O-O	B x B		QKt-Q4	Kt-B4	Kt-B3
O-O-O	Q-QR4		KKt-K2 (d)	Q-B4	B-KKt5
10 B-K3	B-K3		O-O	B-K3	B-K2
B-QB4	B x Ktch		O-O	P-Q4	B x Kt
11 Q-Kt3	P x B		B-KKt5	R-KKt1	B x B
B x P	Q x Pch		P-B3	O-O	R-K1ch
12 Kt x B	K-B1		B-K3	Kt-R5 (g)	K-B1
Kt x Kt	Q-B5ch		K-R1	Kt-Kt3	Kt-Q2 (m)
13 B x Bch	K-Kt1		P-KR3 7	R-Kt5	P-KKt3
Kt x B =	KKt-K2 = (c)		Q-R6 (h)	Kt-K4 7	

(a) 5...P-QB4; 6 Kt-QB3, Q x QP; 7 B-Kt5ch /, Kt-B3; 8 Q-K2ch, B-K3; 9 Kt-B3+ (Mieses).

(b) This is a better square for the Queen than KR4 (Mieses). If 8...B-Kt5; 9 O-O 7. The column is Schlechter-Opocensky, Baden, 1914. The position after White's 5th move can also come out of the Scotch Game (see p. 405, col. 20).

(c) 14 R-B1, Q x RP; 15 R-R1, Q-B5; 16 R-B1, Q-R7; 17 R-R1, Q-B5; 18 R-B1, Q-R7. Drawn. Marshall-Capablanca, Lake Hopatcong, 1926.

(d) Better than 9...Kt-B3; 10 B-KKt5, P-R3; 11 B-R4, B-Kt5; 12 Kt x Kt, P x Kt; 13 O-O-O 7. Nyholm-Schlechter, Baden, 1914.

(e) Or 3...Kt-K2; 4 Kt-B3, P-Q4; 5 Q x P, QKt-B3; 6 B-QKt5, B-Q2; 7 Q-K3 =.

(f) If 4 B-Q3, P-Q4; 5 Q-K2 (5 P-K5,

Kt-QB3 /), P x KP; 6 B x P, Kt-KB3; 7 B-B3, Q x Qch; 8 Kt x Q, P x P+. Or 4 Kt-B3, Q x Pch; 5 K-Q2, Kt-KB3; 6 B-Q3, Q-Q4; 7 R-K1ch, B-K2; 8 K-K2, P-Q3+. Or 4 Q-K2, Kt-KB3; 5 Kt-Q2, P-Q4; 6 P-K5, P-Q6 /+. Réti-Spielmann, Baden, 1914. If 4 Q x P Black can equalize by 4...P-KB4.

(g) A speculative sacrifice; White's safest course is to take a draw with 12 B-Kt4, Q-K5; 13 B-B3, Q-B4; 14 B-Kt4, Q-K5; 15 B-B3.

(h) 14 B x P, P-B3; 15 B-Kt2, Q x P; 16 Q-B3, P-KR3; 17 R-Kt3, B-Q3; 18 O-O-O (Analysis by Rosentreter) and now 18...B x R /; 19 P x B (or 19 R-R1, B-Kt5 / or 19 Kt x B, Q-R5), B-Kt5 /; 20 Q x B, Q x B with unclear complications.

Notes continued on p. 34



## Notes continued from p. 31

(f) The Danish Gambit.

(g) Introduced by Schlechter.

(h) 7 Kt—KB<sub>3</sub>, B—Kt<sub>5</sub>ch; 8 K—B<sub>1</sub>, O—O; 9 Q—Kt<sub>3</sub> (9 B × Pch, K—R<sub>1</sub>!; 10 Q × Q, R × Q+), Kt—B<sub>3</sub>; 10 Kt—B<sub>3</sub>, Q—K<sub>2</sub>; 11 P—QR<sub>3</sub>, B—Q<sub>3</sub>+. Nyholm—Réti, Baden, 1914.

(i) Followed by ... B—K<sub>3</sub> and ... R—Q<sub>1</sub> with the better endgame (Schlechter). Marco gives the alternative 10... R—K<sub>1</sub>; 11 P—B<sub>3</sub>, P—B<sub>4</sub>; 12 Kt—B<sub>4</sub>, R—Q<sub>1</sub>; 13 P—K<sub>5</sub>, Kt—K<sub>1</sub> ♯. If 10... R—K<sub>1</sub>; 11 P—B<sub>3</sub>, Kt—B<sub>3</sub> ♯; 12 R—B<sub>1</sub>!, B—K<sub>3</sub>; 13 P—QR<sub>3</sub>, QR—Q<sub>1</sub>; 14 Kt—K<sub>2</sub>, R—K<sub>2</sub>; 15 QKt—B<sub>4</sub> (15 KKt—B<sub>4</sub> was even stronger) ±. Nyholm—Tartakower, Baden, 1914.

(j) Or 7 Kt—QB<sub>3</sub>, QKt—Q<sub>2</sub> (or 7... B—Q<sub>3</sub>; 8 Q—B<sub>2</sub>, Q—K<sub>2</sub>ch; 9 KKt—K<sub>2</sub>, O—O; 10 O—O—O, B—QR<sub>6</sub>+). Tartakower); 8 Kt—B<sub>3</sub>, B—Kt<sub>5</sub>; 9 O—O, O—O ♯. Nyholm—Spielmann, Baden, 1914.

(k) Opocensky—Réti, Baden, 1914.

(l) Alternatives are: (1) 5... Q—K<sub>2</sub>; 6 Kt—QB<sub>3</sub>, P—QB<sub>3</sub>; 7 Q—B<sub>2</sub>, (or 7 KKt—K<sub>2</sub>, P—QKt<sub>4</sub>!; 8 B—Kt<sub>3</sub>, P—QR<sub>4</sub>; 9 R—QB<sub>1</sub>, Kt—QR<sub>3</sub>; 10 O—O, Kt—B<sub>4</sub>; 11 Kt—Q<sub>4</sub>, Kt × B+). Mieses—Tchigorin, Cambridge Springs, 1904), P—Q<sub>3</sub>; 8 O—O—O,

B—K<sub>3</sub>; 9 Kt—Q<sub>5</sub>!, P × Kt; 10 P × P, Q—Kt<sub>4</sub>ch; 11 R—Q<sub>2</sub>, B—B<sub>4</sub>; 12 Q—Kt<sub>3</sub>, Kt—Q<sub>2</sub>; 13 Kt—B<sub>3</sub> with a strong attack. *Lärobok*, 1921. (2) 5... Kt—KB<sub>3</sub>; 6 Kt—QB<sub>3</sub> (6 P—K<sub>5</sub>, Kt—Kt<sub>5</sub>!; 7 P—K<sub>6</sub>, P—KB<sub>4</sub>; 8 P × Pch, B × P; 9 Kt—KB<sub>3</sub>, Q—K<sub>2</sub>ch+. Alapin), Kt—B<sub>3</sub>; 7 Kt—B<sub>3</sub>, B—Kt<sub>5</sub> (if 7... P—Q<sub>3</sub>; 8 Q—Kt<sub>3</sub>, B—K<sub>3</sub>; 9 B × B, P × B; 10 Q × Pch, Q—K<sub>2</sub>; 11 Q—B<sub>4</sub>!), 8 Q—B<sub>2</sub>, P—Q<sub>3</sub>; 9 O—O—O, B × Kt; 10 Q × B, B—K<sub>3</sub>; 11 KR—K<sub>1</sub>, B × B; 12 Q × B, O—O; 13 P—K<sub>5</sub>, Kt—K<sub>1</sub>; 14 R—K<sub>3</sub> and White's excellent development is sufficient to counter-balance Black's extra Pawns. (3) 5... B—Kt<sub>5</sub>ch; 6 Kt—B<sub>3</sub>, Kt—QB<sub>3</sub> (Mieses says that the best answer to 6... Q—K<sub>2</sub> or 6... Kt—KB<sub>3</sub> is 7 Q—B<sub>2</sub>); 7 Kt—B<sub>3</sub>, P—Q<sub>3</sub>; 8 Q—Kt<sub>3</sub>, Kt—R<sub>3</sub>; 9 O—O—O, O—O; 10 P—Kt<sub>4</sub>, B × P; 11 KR—Kt with a powerful attack (11... B × KKt?; 12 Kt—Q<sub>5</sub>!+).

(m) Or 6 Q—Kt<sub>3</sub>, Q—Q<sub>2</sub>; 7 Kt—QB<sub>3</sub>, Kt—QB<sub>3</sub>; 8 Kt—Q<sub>5</sub>, Kt—R<sub>4</sub>; 9 Q—Kt<sub>3</sub>!, P—KB<sub>3</sub>!; 10 B—K<sub>2</sub>, P—B<sub>3</sub>; 11 Kt—B<sub>4</sub>, Kt—R<sub>3</sub>; 12 Q—QB<sub>3</sub>, P—QKt<sub>3</sub>+. Mieses—Marshall, Hannover, 1902.

(n) 14 R × P, Q—Q<sub>2</sub>!; 15 Q—Kt<sub>3</sub>, O—O—O!. Mieses—Maroczy, Monte Carlo, 1903. Black won quickly.

## Notes continued from p. 32

(n) Better 8... Kt—Q<sub>1</sub> (Alekhine). The column is Alekhine—Verlinsky, Odessa, 1918.

(o) The Danish Declined.

(p) Opinions are divided on White's best move here. 5 Kt—B<sub>3</sub>, Q × P! (5... Kt × P; 6 Q × P, Kt—QB<sub>3</sub>; 7 B—QKt<sub>5</sub>, B—K<sub>2</sub>; 8 Kt—K<sub>5</sub>! ±); 6 Kt × P (6 P × P

transposes into columns 16-17), B—K<sub>2</sub> ♯. *Lärobok* considers 5 B—QB<sub>4</sub> best. 5 Q—R<sub>4</sub>ch (or 5 P—QB<sub>4</sub>, P—B<sub>4</sub>!), P—B<sub>3</sub>; 6 QP × P, Kt × P; 7 B—QKt<sub>5</sub>, B—Q<sub>2</sub>; 8 Kt—B<sub>3</sub>, Q—K<sub>2</sub>ch; 9 K—B<sub>1</sub>, P—Q<sub>6</sub>!+ is Nyholm—Breyer, Baden, 1914. Marshall recommends 5 B—Kt<sub>5</sub>ch.

(q) Réti—Schlechter, Baden, 1914.

## Notes continued from p. 33

(i) Inferior is 3 P—KB<sub>4</sub>, B—B<sub>4</sub>; 4 Kt—KB<sub>3</sub>, Kt—QB<sub>3</sub>; 5 B—Q<sub>3</sub>, Kt—B<sub>3</sub>; 6 QKt—Q<sub>2</sub>, P—Q<sub>3</sub>; 7 P—QR<sub>3</sub>, P—QR<sub>4</sub>; 8 Q—K<sub>2</sub>, O—O; 9 O—O, B—Q<sub>2</sub>+. Analysis by Marshall.

(j) 3... Kt—KB<sub>3</sub> transposes into Petroff's Defense, 3... P—Q<sub>3</sub> into Philidor's Defense, 3... Kt—QB<sub>3</sub> or 3... B—Kt<sub>5</sub>ch into the Scotch Game.

(k) For 4 B—QB<sub>4</sub>, Kt—KB<sub>3</sub> see Bishop's Opening, col. 3, note (i).

(l) Or 5 B—KKt<sub>5</sub>, P—KR<sub>3</sub>; 6 B × Kt, Q × B; 7 P—QB<sub>3</sub>, Kt—B<sub>3</sub>; 8 Kt—B<sub>3</sub>, O—O ♯. Mieses—Alekhine, The Hague, 1921.

(m) Blumenfeld and Klyatskin—Alekhine, Moscow, 1920.

## CENTER COUNTER DEFENSE

THE CENTER COUNTER is of largely theoretical interest since no important examples of it have appeared in master chess for almost twenty-five years. Some years ago the noted American analyst Fred Reinfeld attempted to prove its theoretical adequacy, but he found no support among tournament players.

After 1 P—K<sub>4</sub>, P—Q<sub>4</sub>; 2 P × P Black has two main replies, immediate recapture with 2... Q × P and development with 2... Kt—KB<sub>3</sub>. In the first, Black's Queen is harried to such distraction that he cannot develop properly. White can secure an advantage in a variety of ways (cols. 1-6).

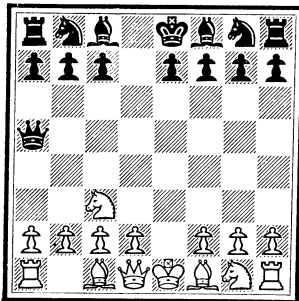
In the second choice (2... Kt—KB<sub>3</sub>) the situation is different. Here White's somewhat more adequate development assures him no permanent advantage (cols. 7-10), although he can obtain a slightly more comfortable position in many lines. To refute this line, unless some strengthening of the traditional continuations is found, White should adopt one of the suggestions in col. 10, note (k).

1 P-K4, P-Q4; 2 P x P, Q x P; 3 Kt-QB3, Q-QR4\*

	1	2	3	4	5
4	P-Q4			Kt-B3	P-QKt4 (i)
	Kt-KB3		P-K4	Kt-QB3	Q x KtP
5	Kt-B3		Kt-B3 (f)	B-QKt5	R-Kt1
	B-Kt5		B-QKt5	B-Q2	Q-Q3
6	B-K2	P-KR3!	B-Q2	O-O	Kt-B3
	Kt-B3	B-R4	B-Kt5	P-K3	Kt-KB3
7	B-K3 (a)	P-KKt4	B-K2	P-Q4	P-Q4
	O-O-O	B-Kt3	P x P	B-Kt5	P-QR3 (j)
8	Kt-Q2	Kt-K5	Kt x P	Q-Q3	Q-Q3 (k)
	B x B	P-B3	Q-K4	B x Kt	Kt-B3
9	Q x B	P-KR4	QKt-Kt5!	P x B	B-K2
	Q-KB4	Kt-K5 (c)	QB x B	P-QR3	P-KKt3
10	Kt-Kt3	B-Q2 (d)	Q x B	B-QB4	Kt-Q1
	P-K3 (b)	Q-Kt3 (e)	B x Bch	KKt-K2	B-B4
11	P-QR3	Kt x B	K x B	R-Kt1	Q-Kt3
	B-Q3	Kt x Kt	Q x Qch	R-QKt1	P-QKt4
12	O-O-O	B x Kt	K x Q	Kt-Kt5	B-R3
	Kt-Q4	RP x Kt	Kt-QR3	Q-KB4	Q-K3
13	Kt-R4	Q-Q2	KR-K1	Q-Kt3	Q-Kt2
	P-K4	P-K3	O-O-O	Q x QBp	B-R3
14	P x P	O-O-O	Kt x Pch	B-Q3	Kt-B3
	B x KP	Q-B2	K-Kt1	Q x QBp	O-O
15	QKt-B5 ±	R-K1 ±	QKt-B6ch!+(g)	Kt x BP!+(h)	O-O
					Kt-Q4 ± (l)

\* DIAGRAM 14

cols. 1-5



[After 3... Q-QR4]

(a) If 7 O-O, O-O-O; 8 Kt-KKt5! ? (8 B-K3, P-K4!; 9 P-Q5, Kt x P; 10 Kt x P?, Kt x B!; 11 B x Bch, P-B4! and wins. Cohn-Tartakower, Ostend, 1907), and now 8... R x P gives Black the better of it, e.g., 9 B x Bch, Kt x B; 10 Q-B3, Q-K4; 11 P-KKt3, P-B3! and if 12 Kt-B7?, Q-KR4 wins.

(b) Better is 10... P-K4. The column is Duras-Spielmann, Vienna, 1907.

(c) Or (1) 9... B-K5; 10 Kt-B4, Q-Q1; 11 Kt x B, Kt x Kt; 12 P-QB3, P-K3; 13 B-Q3, Kt-Q3; 14 Kt-K5 ±. Balogh-Fahrni, correspondence, 1928-29. (2) 9... QKt-Q2; 10 Kt-B4, Q-B2; 11 P-R5, B-K5; 12 Kt x B, Kt x Kt; 13 Q-Q3 ±. Analysis by Dr. Lasker.

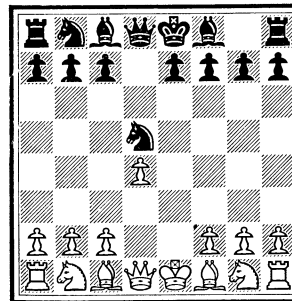
Notes continued on p. 38

1 P-K4, P-Q4; 2 P x P

	6	7	8	9	10
2	(Q x P)....	Kt-KB3			
3	(Kt-QB3)	P-Q4			B-Kt5ch (k)
	Q-Q1	Kt x P*			B-Q2
4	P-Q4	P-QB4 (d)		Kt-KB3	B-B4 (l)
	Kt-KB3 (a)	Kt-KB3		Kt-Kt3	B-Kt5
5	B-K3 (b)	Kt-KB3		Kt-QB3 (f)	P-B3
	P-B3	P-B3		P-K4 (g)	P-QB3
6	B-Q3	Kt-B3		P-Q5 (h)	QKt-Q2
	B-Kt5	B-Kt5		B-QKt5	Kt-Q2
7	KKt-K2	B-K3		B-Q2	B-B4
	P-K3	P-K3		P-QB3	P-K3
8	Q-Q2	Q-Kt3		Kt-K4	Kt-K4
	B-Q3	Q-Kt3		B x Bch	B-K2
9	Kt-Kt3	Kt-K5		Q x B	Kt-Kt3
	Q-B2	Q x Q		P x P	KKt-Kt3
10	P-KR3	P x Q		P x P	B-K2
	B x Kt	QKt-Q2		O-O	O-O
11	RP x B	B-Q3		R-Q1	O-O
	Kt x P	Kt x Kt		B-B4 = (i)	Q-B2
12	P x B ± (c)	P x Kt (e)		P-KR3	KKt-K2 =
		Kt-Q2 =		B x Kt = (j)	

\* DIAGRAM 15

cols. 7-9



[After 3... Kt x P]

(a) Or 4... P-QB3; 5 Kt-B3, B-Kt5; 6 B-K2, B x Kt; 7 B x B, P-K3; 8 O-O, Kt-B3; 9 R-K1, B-K2; 10 Q-Q3 ±. Teichmann-Lee, match, 1901.

(b) An equally strong alternative is 5 B-

QB4, P-K3; 6 Kt-B3, B-K2; 7 O-O, O-O; 8 Q-K2, QKt-Q2; 9 R-K1, Kt-Kt3; 10 B-Kt3 ±. Alekhine-Schlechter, Carlsbad, 1911.

(c) 12... Q x Pch; 13 B-B2. Tarrasch-Pillsbury, Monte Carlo, 1903.

(d) For a more detailed treatment of the variations in columns 7-8 see The Chess Correspondent, May-June, 1946.

(e) Réti-Tartakower, match, 1920.

(f) Somewhat stronger is 5 Kt-KB3, B-Kt5; 6 Kt-B3, P-K4; 7 P-B5, P x P? (better 7... KKt-Q2-Tarrasch); 8 Kt-K4, KKt-Q2; 9 Q x P, Q-K2; 10 B-QKt5 ±. Lasker-Alekhine, St. Petersburg, 1914. 10... P-B4; 11 O-O gives White a winning attack now. The game continued 10... Kt-B3; 11 B x Kt, P x B; 12 O-O, B x Kt; 13 P x B, O-O-O; 14 Q-R4 ±.

Notes continued on p. 38

## Notes continued from p. 36

(d) Inferior is 10 Q—B3, Kt × Kt; 11 B—Q2, Kt—Q2; 12 Kt × Kt, K × Kt; 13 B—QB4, B—K5; 14 Q × B, Kt × Q; 15 B × Q, P—K3; 16 P—KB3, Kt—B3 = (Fred Reinfeld). The column to the 14th move is analysis by C. J. S. Purdy.

(e) Or 10...Kt × Kt; 11 B × Kt, Q—Q4; 12 P—B3 ±. Or 10...Kt × B; 11 Q × Kt, P—B3; 12 Kt × B, P × Kt; 13 B—Q3, P—KKt4; 14 P—R5, Kt—Q2; 15 B—Kt6ch ±.

(f) If 5 P × P, B—QKt5; 6 Kt—B3, B—Kt5; 7 B—K2, Kt—QB3; 8 O—O, KKt—K2 =.

(g) White won the ending. Tarrasch—Mieses, Gothenburg, 1920.

(h) Réti—Rubinstein, Teplitz—Schoenau, 1922.

(i) 4 B—B4, Kt—KB3; 5 P—Q3 leads only to equality, since Black has a safe continuation in 5...P—B3.

(j) Weaker is 7...P—B3; 8 B—Q3, P—QKt3; 9 O—O, P—K3; 10 Q—K2, B—K2; 11 Kt—K4, Kt × Kt; 12 Q × Kt, Q—Q4 ?; 13 Q—Kt4, B—B3; 14 P—B4 with an overwhelming attack. Mieses—Leonhardt, Prague, 1908.

(k) If instead 8 B—QB4, P—K3; 9 O—O, B—K2; 10 R—K1, P—QKt4; 11 B—Kt3, B—Kt2; 12 B—Kt5, QKt—Q2; 13 Q—K2, R—QB1 ≠. Thomas—du Mont, Tunbridge Wells, 1912.

(l) Schumer—Thomas, City of London championship, 1912.

## Notes continued from p. 37

(g) The Kiel Variation.

(h) If 6 P × P, Q × Qch; 7 Kt × Q, Kt—B3; 8 P—B4, B—K3; 9 P—QKt3, O—O—O; 10 Kt—K3, B—QB4; 11 P—QR3, KR—K1 ≠. Treybal—Bogoljubow, Pistyán, 1922.

(i) Spielmann—Walter, Maehrisch—Osttrau, 1923.

(j) Bogatyrchuk—Rabinovitch, Moscow, 1925.

(k) 3 P—QB4 deserves more attention than it has received, if only for the reason that after 3...P—B3; 4 P—Q4, P × P; 5 Kt—QB3 White has transposed to the Panov Attack against the Caro—Kann. The continuation 3 P—QB4, P—B3; 4 P ×

P, Kt × P; 5 Kt—QB3, P—K4; 6 P—Q3, B—QB4; 7 B—K3, B × B; 8 P × B, Q—Kt3; 9 Q—Q2, B—K3; 10 P—K4 ! ± is suggested by Dr. Lasker.

(l) 4 B × Bch, Q × B; 5 Kt—QB3, Kt × P; 6 Kt × Kt, Q × Kt; 7 Q—B3, P—QB3; 8 Q × Q, P × Q =. Krejčík—Rethy, Vienna—Budapest match, 1931.

(m) Somewhat better is 7 KKt—K2, Kt—Kt3; 8 B—Kt3, QKt × P; 9 Kt × Kt, Kt × Kt; 10 Kt—Kt3, B—Kt3; 11 O—O, P—K3; 12 P—KB4, Kt—K2; 13 P—Q4 ±. Maroczy—Walter, Győr, 1924.

(n) Best. If 8...P—QR3; 9 P—Kt4, B—Kt3; 10 P—B4+. The column is Bogatyrchuk—Torre, Moscow, 1925.

## ENGLISH OPENING

THE ENGLISH OPENING is a typical product of the reversal in chess ideology produced by the hypermodern revolution. Initially White makes no attempt to build up a Pawn center, but concentrates on speedy development. The theory is that if Black plays in the center White will counter there effectively, if not, a center advance after both sides are fully developed will not be easy for Black to meet. In addition, the numerous transposition possibilities require a deep and thorough grasp of opening theory where even a first-class master can easily go wrong. Among its adherents are many of the greatest contemporary masters, including Botvinnik and Keres.

The most important reply on Black's first move is 1...P—K4, which leads to a Sicilian Defense with colors reversed. After the subsequent development of all the Kt's (2 Kt—KB3, Kt—QB3; 3 Kt—B3, Kt—B3) White has four moves at his disposal: (1) 4 P—Q4; (2) 4 P—K4; (3) 4 P—Q3; (4) 4 P—K3.

(1) 4 P—Q4 is the most common and the most logical. In the Sicilian Defense Black must ordinarily fight hard for ...P—Q4; once he plays it he has almost certain equality. Here the extra tempo allows White to advance his QP immediately; this is one reason why the English is better for White than the corresponding lines in the straight Sicilian are for Black. However, Black can achieve full equality here with the line in col. 2, where White's superior development is offset by his weak Pawn structure. Various traps must be avoided by Black (cols. 1—5).

(2) 4 P—K4 was one of Nimzovitch's favorite lines. White hopes to play P—Q4 soon and remain with strong Pawns at K4 and QB4 against a weak one at Q3. But the temporary hole at Black's Q5 can be utilized in several ways to equalize (cols. 6—7).

(3) 4 P—Q3 transposes to cols. 13—15 with best play by Black. As played in the column, Black submits to an inferior variation of the Dragon.

(4) 4 P—K3 is a tame line which promises no advantage.

The order in which White develops his Kt's is of considerable theoretical importance. If the KKt comes out first (2 Kt—KB3), 2...P—K5! forces equality (cols. 11—12). It is therefore better for White to develop his QKt first (the order in cols. 6—10 has been adopted to simplify classification). Similarly, it is necessary for Black to develop his Kt's in the correct order; specifically he should be prepared to counter with an early ...P—Q4.

Thus after 2 Kt—QB3, 2... Kt—KB3 (cols. 13-15) is better than 2... Kt—QB3, cols. 16-19.

After 2 Kt—QB3, Kt—KB3 White can vary from the main lines in cols. 1-9 with 3 P—KKt3 (a Dragon Variation with colors reversed). Here a new idea has been introduced by some American masters in the main variation: to continue with ... P—KB4 as in the analogous lines of the Sicilian. This plan appears to be much stronger than the more routine continuations (see col. 15 and col. 13 note (i)).

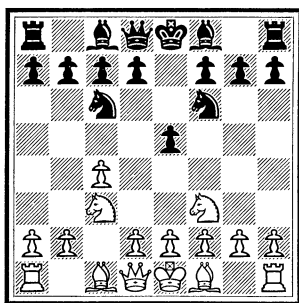
When Black chooses a reply other than 1... P—K4, White usually transposes to a variation of the QP or Q.G.D. The lines considered in cols. 20-30 are those which do not readily transpose.

In the symmetrical variations with ... P—QB4 Black achieves equality with an early ... P—Q4, but is at a disadvantage if he omits this center break (cols. 20-23 and notes).

The interesting variations in cols. 26-28 represent an attempt to avoid this transposition to the QP openings. Of particular importance is the new line in col. 28. There are however various good alternatives for Black before this position is reached (col. 26 note (b) and cols. 29-30).

DIAGRAM 16

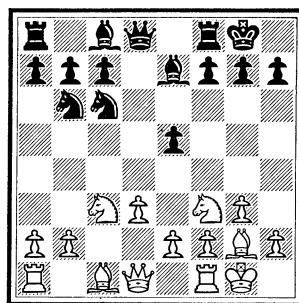
Pages 41-42, cols. 1-9



[After 3... Kt—B3]

DIAGRAM 17

Page 44, cols. 13-15



[After 8... O—O]

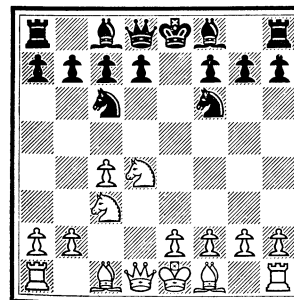
1 P—QB4, P—K4; 2 Kt—QB3, Kt—KB3; 3 Kt—B3, Kt—B3\*

	1	2	3	4	5
4	P—Q4 P × P.....				P—K5
5	Kt × P** B—Kt5.....			Kt—Q2 (i) Kt × P.....	B—Kt5 (l)
6	B—Kt5 (a) O—O.....	P—KR3	Kt × Kt KtP × Kt	KKt × P Kt—K3	P—K3 O—O
7	R—B1 R—K1	B—R4 B × Ktch (c)	P—KKt3 O—O (g)	P—KKt3 Kt × Kt	B—K2 R—K1
8	P—K3 P—Q3	P × B Kt—K4 (d)	B—Kt2 R—K1	Kt × Kt B—Kt5ch	O—O B × Kt
9	B—K2 Kt—K4	P—K3 P—Q3! (e)	O—O B—B1	B—Q2 B × Bch	P × B P—Q3
10	O—O B × Kt	B—K2 Kt—Kt3	B—B4 R—Kt1	Q × B O—O	P—B3! P × P? (m)
11	R × B Kt—Kt3 (b)	B—Kt3 Kt—K5	Q—B2 B—Kt2	B—Kt2 P—Q3 (j)	B × P! R × P
12	Kt—Kt5! B—Q2	Q—B2 Q—K2 (f)	KR—Q1 P—QR3	O—O B—Q2	Kt—Kt3 R—K1
13	B × Kt P × B	B—Q3 Kt × B	R—Q2 P—B4	Kt—B3 B—B3	B—Kt5 Kt—K2
14	B—Q3 ±	RP × Kt Kt—K4 =	B × B ± (h)	Kt—Q5 ± (k)	Q—Q2 ± (n)

\* See p. 40, Diagram 16

\*\* DIAGRAM 18

cols. 1-3



[After 5 Kt × P]

(a) If 6 Kt × Kt, B × Ktch (better than 6... KtP × Kt; 7 Q—Kt3, B—B4; 8 P—K3, O—O; 9 B—K2, R—K1; 10 O—O, Q—K2; 11 Q—B2, Q—K4; 12 Kt—R4 ±. Tartakower—Gruenfeld, match, 1922. Or 6... QP × Kt; 7 Q × Qch, K × Q; 8 B—Q2+); 7 P × B, QP × Kt (7... KtP × Kt; 8 B—R3, P—Q3; 9 P—B5, P—Q4; 10 P—K3, O—O; 11 P—QB4 ±); 8 Q × Qch (8 Q—Q4?, Q—K2; 9 B—Kt5, O—O; 10 B × Kt, P × B; 11 P—K3, R—Q1; 12 Q—B4, Q—R6! and wins. Golombek—Flohr, Hastings, 1935-36, K × Q =. Hanauer—Reinfeld, New York, 1938.

(b) 11... P—KR3; 12 B—R4, Kt—Kt3 (best is 12... P—KKt4; 13 B—Kt3, Kt—K5); 13 B × Kt ± transposes into Flohr—H. Johner, Zurich, 1934. The column is Alekhine—Yates, Semmering, 1926.

Notes continued on p. 43

1 P—QB4, P—K4; 2 Kt—KB3, Kt—QB3

	6	7	8	9	10
3 (Kt—B3).....					P—Q4
(Kt—B3)*.....					P—Q3 (j)
4 P—K4.....		P—Q3.....	P—K3.....		Kt—B3
B—Kt5 (a).....		P—Q4 (e).....	B—Kt5 (h).....		B—Kt5
5 P—Q3.....		P × P.....	Q—B2 (i).....		P—Q5
P—Q3.....		Kt × P.....	O—O.....		Kt—Kt1
6 P—KR3.....	B—K2 (c).....	P—KKt3.....	B—K2.....		P—KKt3
P—KR3.....	O—O.....	B—K3 (f).....	R—K1.....		Kt—KB3
7 B—K3.....	O—O.....	B—Kt2.....	O—O.....		B—Kt2
B—Q2.....	B × Kt.....	B—K2.....	P—Q3.....		B—K2
8 P—R3.....	P × B.....	O—O.....	Kt—K1.....		O—O
B × Ktch.....	Q—K2.....	O—O.....	B—K3.....		O—O (k)
9 P × B.....	Kt—K1.....	P—QR3.....	P—QR3.....		P—KR3
Kt—K2.....	Kt—K1.....	Q—Q2.....	B × Kt.....		B × Kt
10 R—QKt1.....	Kt—B2.....	B—Q2.....	Q × B.....		P × B/
P—QKt3.....	P—B4.....	QR—Q1.....	P—QR4.....		P—QR4
11 P—Kt3.....	P × P.....	P—QKt4.....	P—QKt3.....		P—R3
O—O.....	B × P.....	Kt × Kt.....	Q—Q2.....		Kt—R3
12 B—Kt2.....	Kt—K3.....	B × Kt.....	P—Q3.....		P—B4
Q—B1 (b).....	B—K3.....	B—B3.....	P—Q4.....		Kt—Q2
13 Kt—Kt1.....	P—Q4.....	Q—B2 ± (g).....	Q—B2.....		B—K3 ±
Kt—K1 =.....	B—B2 = (d).....		QR—Q1 =.....		

\* See p. 40, Diagram 16

(a) On 4...B—B4; 5 Kt × P is met by 5...Kt × Kt; 6 P—Q4, B—Kt5; 7 P × Kt, Kt × P; 8 Q—Q4, P—KB4; 9 P × P e.p., Kt × P (B3); 10 P—B5, Q—K2ch; 11 B—K3, B × Ktch; 12 P × B, O—O =. List—Colle, Berlin, 1926. A better idea on 4...B—B4 is 5 B—K2, P—Q3; 6 O—O, B—KKt5; 7 P—Q3, O—O; 8 B—Kt5, P—KR3; 9 B—K3, B—Kt3; 10 K—R1, Kt—KR4?; 11 Kt—Q5, P—B4; 12 P × P, B × P; 13 P—Q4 ±. Fine—Adams, New York, 1936.

(b) Nimzovitch—Naegeli, exhibition game, Berne, 1931.

(c) Or 6 P—KKt3, O—O; 7 B—Kt2, Kt—Q5; 8 Kt × Kt, P × Kt; 9 P—QR3, B × Ktch; 10 P × B, P × P; 11 Q—B2, Kt—Kt5; 12 Q × P, Q—B3; 13 Q × Q, Kt × Q =. Nimzovitch—Spielmann, Bled, 1931.

(d) Fine—Dake, Mexico City, 1935.

(e) 4...B—Kt5; 5 B—Q2, P—Q4; 6 P × P, Kt × P; 7 P—KKt3, O—O; 8 B—Kt2, Kt—Kt3; 9 O—O, P—KR3; 10 R—K1, Q—K2; 11 P—QR3, B—Q3; 12 Kt—QKt5, B—K3; 13 P—QKt4, P—R3; 14 Kt × B, P × Kt; 15 P—K4 ! ±. Capablanca—Reshevsky, Semmering—Baden, 1937.

(f) Removing the Kt from Q4 transposes to cols. 13—15. If 6...P—B3; 7 B—Kt2, B—K3; 8 P—QR3, Kt—Kt3; 9 O—O, B—K2; 10 B—K3, Kt—Q5?; 11 P—QKt4, Q—Q2; 12 B × Kt, P × B; 13 Kt—K4, Kt—R5 !?; 14 Kt × QP ! ±. Ragosin—Keres, Semmering—Baden, 1937.

(g) 13...Kt—Q5; 14 B × Kt, P × B; 15 Kt—Q2, B—K2; 16 QR—Kt1. Ragosin—Petrow, Semmering—Baden, 1937.

Notes continued on p. 43

Notes continued from p. 41

(c) 7...P—Q3; 8 P—K3 (8 Kt × Kt, P × Kt; 9 Q—R4, B × Ktch; 10 P × B, O—O ! =. Botvinnik), Q—K2; 9 B—K2, P—KKt4; 10 B—Kt3, Kt—K5; 11 Kt × Kt (11 QR—B1 !, O—O; 12 O—O, B × Kt; 13 P × B, Kt × B; 14 RP × Kt, Kt—K4; 15 Q—B2 ±. Botvinnik), P × Kt; 12 QR—B1, O—O; 13 O—O, B × Kt; 14 P × B, Kt × B; 15 RP × Kt, B—B4 ! =. Botvinnik—Flohr, 7th match game, 1933. A remarkable defense here is 7...P—KKt4; 8 B—Kt3, P—Q3; 9 R—B1, Kt × Kt; 10 Q × Kt, B—KB4; 11 P—KR4, K—Q2 !; 12 R—Q1, Kt—K5; 13 Q—K5, B × Ktch; 14 P × B, Kt × B; 15 P × Kt, B—Kt3; 16 P × P, Q × P ≠. Keres—Richter, Munich, 1942.

(d) Weaker is 8...P—Q3; 9 P—B3, O—O; 10 P—K4, Kt—K4 !; 11 B—K2, Kt—Kt3; 12 B—B2, Kt—Q2; 13 Q—Q2, Kt—Kt3; 14 Kt—Kt3, B—K3; 15 P—B5 ±. Botvinnik—Pirc, Moscow, 1935.

(e) More precise than 9...Kt—Kt3; 10 B—Kt3, Kt—K5; 11 Q—B2, Kt × B; 12 RP × Kt, P—Q3; 13 P—B4 !, Q—K2?; 14 K—B2 !, Kt—B1?; 15 P—QB5 !, P × P; 16 B—Kt5ch, Kt—Q2; 17 Kt—B5, Q—B3; 18 QR—Q1+. Botvinnik—Loevenfisch, Moscow, 1940. Black had to prevent P—QB5 by varying at either move 13 or 14.

(f) Now Black need not be in a hurry to exchange his Kt. The column is Lasker—

Lissitsin, Moscow, 1935.

(g) Inferior is 7...P—Q4; 8 B—Kt2, B—K3; 9 O—O, O—O; 10 Q—R4, B—Q2; 11 B—Kt5 !, B—K2; 12 KR—Q1 ±. Réti—Przepiorka, Marienbad, 1925.

(h) Réti—Gruenfeld, Baden—Baden, 1925.

(i) Stronger than either (1) 5 Kt—K5, B—Kt5; 6 B—Kt5, P—KR3; 7 B × Kt, Q × B; 8 Kt × Kt, P—K6 !; 9 P × P, QP × Kt; 10 Q—Kt3, Q—R5ch; 11 K—Q2, P—QB4; 12 P—Kt3, Q—Kt4+. Bigelow—Alekhine, Bradley Beach, 1929, or (2) 5 Kt—KKt5, P—KR3; 6 P—Q5, P × Kt; 7 P × Kt, B—B4; 8 P × KtP, B × P; 9 P—K3, Q—K2; 10 P—QR3, P—QR4; 11 B—K2, B—B3; 12 B—Q2, Q—K4; 13 P—R3, P—R5 =. Kostich—Opocensky, Prague, 1931.

(j) Violent but ineffective is 11...R—Kt1; 12 O—O, P—QKt4; 13 P × P, R × P; 14 P—QR4, R—Kt1; 15 KR—Q1, P—Q3; 16 P—QKt4+. Czerniak—Villegas, Mar del Plata, 1943.

(k) Botvinnik—Flohr, 5th match game, 1933.

(l) 5...P—K6 is worth a try: compare Alekhine's Defense, p. 6, col. 19.

(m) Better 10...B—B4 with a difficult position.

(n) 14...P—B3; 15 QR—K1, B—B4; 16 B × Kt, P × B; 17 P—KR4. Botvinnik—Ragosin, 5th match game, 1940.

Notes continued from p. 42

(h) The most energetic. If 4...P—Q4; 5 P × P, Kt × P; 6 B—Kt5, Kt × Kt; 7 KtP × Kt, B—Q2; 8 P—Q4, B—Q3; 9 B × Kt, B × B; 10 P × P, B × Kt; 11 Q × B, B × P; 12 O—O, P—QB3; 13 B—R3 ±. Flohr—Petrow, Semmering—Baden, 1937. Or 4...B—K2; 5 Q—B2, O—O; 6 P—QR3, P—Q3; 7 B—K2, R—K1; 8 O—O, B—B1; 9 P—Q4, B—Kt5; 10 P—Q5, Kt—K2 (Tartakower—Dr. Em. Lasker, New York, 1924) and now 11 P—K4 followed by B—K3 with a promising position for White (Tartakower).

(i) If 5 Kt—Q5, P—K5 !; 6 Kt × B, Kt × Kt; 7 Kt—Q4, O—O; 8 B—K2, P—Q4; 9 P—QR3, Kt—Q6ch; 10 B × Kt, P × B;

11 P—B5, Kt—K5 ≠. Eliskases—L. Steiner, Budapest, 1933. The column is Flohr—Fine, Nottingham, 1936.

(j) If 3...P × P; 4 Kt × P, B—Kt5ch; 5 B—Q2, B × Bch; 6 Q × B, KKt—K2; 7 P—KKt3, O—O; 8 B—Kt2, P—Q3 (stronger than 8...Kt—K4; 9 P—Kt3, P—Q4; 10 P × P, Kt × P; 11 Kt—QB3, Kt × Kt; 12 Q × Kt, P—QB3; 13 O—O, P—KB4; 14 P—B4+. Fine—Berg, Kemer, 1937); 9 O—O, B—Q2; 10 Kt—QB3, R—K1; 11 QR—B1, Kt × Kt; 12 Q × Kt, B—B3; 13 P—K4 ±. Chekhover—Rabinovitch, Tiflis, 1937.

(k) Nimzovitch—Tarrasch, Baden—Baden, 1925.

## 1 P—QB4, P—K4

I1	I2	I3	I4	I5
2 (Kt—KB3).....		Kt—QB3		
P—K5		Kt—KB3		
3 Kt—Q4		P—KKt3 (g)		
Kt—QB3		P—Q4		
4 Kt—B2 (a)		P × P		
Kt—B3 (b)		Kt × P		
5 Kt—B3		B—Kt2		
B—B4		Kt—Kt3 (h)		
6 P—QKt3		Kt—B3		
O—O		Kt—B3		
7 P—Kt3 (c)		O—O		
P—Q4 !.....	R—K1 ?	B—K2		
8 P × P	B—KKt2	P—Q3		
QKt—Kt5 ? (d)	P—QR4	O—O*		
9 Kt × Kt	O—O	B—K3.....	P—QR3 (l)	
B × Kt	P—Q3	B—KKt5 ! (i)	P—B4 ! (m)	
10 KB—Kt2	Kt—K3	P—QR4 !.....	Kt—QR4	P—QKt4
R—K1	Kt—Q5	P—QR4	Q—Q2	B—B3
11 O—O	P—Q3	R—B1	R—B1	B—Kt2
B—KB4	P × P	R—B1 ?	P—B3	Q—K2
12 B—Kt2	Q × P ± (f)	Kt—QKt5 ± (j)	B—B5	Kt—Q2
Kt × P = (e)			Kt—Q1 = (k)	R—Q1 ≠ (n)

\* See p. 40, Diagram 17

(a) Or 4 Kt × Kt, QP × Kt; 5 P—Q4 (5 Kt—B3, Kt—B3; 6 P—KKt3, B—QB4; 7 B—Kt2, B—B4; 8 O—O, O—O; 9 K—R1, Q—Q5 ! ≠. Réti—Torre, Marienbad, 1925), P × P e.p.; 6 Q × P, Q × Q; 7 P × Q, B—KB4; 8 P—Q4, O—O—O =. Tartakower—Alekhine, Warsaw, 1935. Inferior is 4 Kt—Kt3, P—QR4; 5 P—QR4, Kt—B3; 6 Kt—B3, B—K2; 7 P—Kt3, P—Q4; 8 P × P, Kt—QKt5; 9 B—Kt2, B—KB4; 10 O—O, QKt × P; 11 Kt × Kt, Q × Kt ≠. Chekhover—Kan, U.S.S.R. championship, 1939. With these variations compare Alekhine's Defense, p. 6, col. 16.

(b) A strong alternative is 4...P—Q4 !; 5 P × P, Q × P; 6 Kt—B3, Q—K4; 7 P—Q4, P × P e.p.; 8 Q × P, Kt—Kt5; 9 Kt × Kt, B × Kt; 10 Q—B4, B × Ktch; 11 Q × B, Q × Qch; 12 P × Q, B—K3 =. Fine—Shainswit, New York, 1938.

(c) Better was 7 B—Kt2, e.g., 7...R—K1; 8 P—Q4, P × P e.p.; 9 Q × P, Kt—K4;

10 Q—Q2. (Alekhine).

(d) Correct was 8...KKt—Kt5 ! with a strong attack, e.g., (1) 9 Kt × P, Q × P; 10 B—KKt2 (10 P—B3, Q × Kt !), B × Pch; 11 K—B1, Q—KB4 ≠. (2) 9 P—K3, QKt—K4; 10 Kt × P, Q × P; 11 P—B3, P—KB4 !; 12 Kt × B, Kt × Pch; 13 K—K2, Q × Kt ≠. (3) 9 Kt—K3, B × Kt; 10 BP × B, Q—B3; 11 Q—B2, Q—B7ch; 12 K—Q1, Q—B4; 13 K—K1, Kt—Kt5 ≠. Analysis by Alekhine.

(e) 13 Kt × Kt, Q × Kt; 14 P—Q3, QR—Q1; 15 P × P, B × P; 16 Q × Q. Drawn. Euwe—Alekhine, 13th match game, 1935.

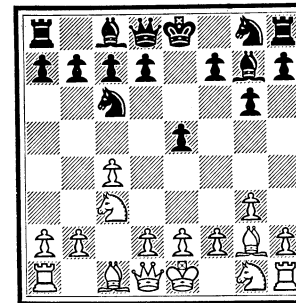
(f) Rubinstein—Saemisch, Breslau, 1925. (g) 3 P—K4 !, Kt—B3; 4 P—B4, P—Q3; 5 P—Q3, B—Kt5; 6 B—K2, P—KR4; 7 Kt—B3, B—K2; 8 B—K3, Q—Q2; 9 P—KR3, B × Kt; 10 B × B, P × P; 11 B × BP, Kt—Q5; 12 B—K3 ! ±. Alekhine—Lilienthal, Hastings, 1933-34.

Notes continued on p. 46

## 1 P—QB4

I6	I7	I8	I9	I10	I11	I12
1 (P—K4).....						Kt—KB3
2 (Kt—QB3)						Kt—KB3
Kt—QB3 (a)						P—B4
3 Kt—B3.....	P—KKt3					P—KKt3
P—B4 (b)	P—KKt3 (f)					P—QKt3
4 P—Q4	B—Kt2					Kt—B3 (m)
P—K5	B—Kt2 *					Kt—B3
5 Kt—Q2 (c)	P—Q3.....	P—K3				B—Kt2
Kt—B3 (d)	P—Q3	P—Q3				B—Kt2
6 P—K3	P—B4 (g)	KKt—K2				O—O
B—Kt5	KKt—K2	KKt—K2				P—K3
7 Q—Kt3	Kt—B3	P—Q4.....	O—O			P—Kt3
O—O	B—Kt5	P × P	P—KR4 ! (k)			B—K2
8 P—Q5	O—O	P × P	P—KR3			B—Kt2
B × Kt	O—O	O—O	P—R5			O—O
9 Q × B	P—KR3	O—O	P—KKt4			P—Q4
Kt—K2	B × Kt	Kt—B4 (i)	P—B4			Kt × P
10 P—QKt3	B × B	P—Q5	P × P			Kt × Kt
P—Q3	Kt—B4	Kt—K4	B × P			B × B
11 B—Kt2	K—R2	P—Kt3 !	P—Q4			K × B
Kt—Kt3	P × P	P—QR4	P × P			P × Kt
12 O—O—O ± (e)	B × P ± (h)	B—Kt2 ± (j)	Kt × P			Q × P ± (n)
			Kt × Kt = (l)			

\* DIAGRAM 19  
cols. 17-19



[After 4...B—Kt2]

(a) Another possibility is 2...P—KB4; 3 P—K3, Kt—KB3; 4 P—Q4, P—K5; 5 Kt—R3, B—Kt5; 6 B—Q2, O—O; 7 Q—Kt3, B × Kt; 8 B × B, P—Q3; 9 Kt—B4, P—B3; 10 P—KR4, Q—Kt3; 11 Q—R3, Q—B2; 12 B—K2 ±. Friedmann—Wood, London, 1945.

(b) 3...Kt—B3 transposes to previous columns.

(c) 5 Kt—K5 !, P—Q3; 6 Kt × Kt, P × Kt; 7 P—B3, P—Q4; 8 P × KP, BP × P; 9 Q—R4, B—Q2; 10 Q—R5, R—Kt1; 11 P—QR3, Kt—B3; 12 P × P ±. Kevitz—Marshall, New York, 1935.

(d) If 5...B—Kt5; 6 Kt—Q5 !, B × Ktch; 7 Q × B ±. Pollard—Morton, Boston, 1938.

(e) 12...Q—K2; 13 B—K2, P—QR4; 14 QR—Kt1, P—B3; 15 P × P, P × P; 16 P—B4, R—B2; 17 P—KR3, with a strong attack. Fine—Steiner, Mexico City, 1934.

Notes continued on p. 46

## Notes continued from p. 44

(h) A simple continuation is  $5...Kt \times Kt$ ;  $6 KtP \times Kt$ ,  $P-QB4$ ;  $7 R-Kt1$ ,  $Kt-B3$ ;  $8 P-Q3$ ,  $B-K2$ ;  $9 Kt-B3$ ,  $O-O$ ;  $10 O-O$ ,  $Q-B2$ ;  $11 B-K3$ ,  $B-B4 =$ . Kan—Ratner, Moscow, 1945. The retention of the  $Kt$  at  $Q4$  is poor because White gets  $P-Q4$  too early: e.g.,  $5...B-K3$ ;  $6 Kt-B3$ ,  $P-KB3$ ;  $7 O-O$ ,  $Kt-B3$ ;  $8 P-Q4!$ ,  $P \times P$ ;  $9 Kt-QKt5$ ,  $B-QB4$ ;  $10 KKt \times P$ ,  $Kt \times Kt$ ;  $11 Kt \times Kt$ ,  $B-B2$ ;  $12 Q-R4ch \pm$ . Alekhine—Dus-Chotimirski, Carlsbad, 1911.

(i) To reserve  $...B \times Kt$  when necessary. The less aggressive  $...B-K3$  is apt to turn out poorly, e.g.,  $10 R-B1$ ,  $Kt-Q4$  (better  $...P-B3$ );  $11 Kt \times Kt$ ,  $B \times Kt$ ;  $12 Q-R4$ ,  $P-B3$ ;  $13 B-B5$ ,  $B \times B$ ;  $14 R \times B$ ,  $Kt-K2$ ;  $15 KR-B1$ ,  $P-B3$ ;  $16 P-K4!$   $\pm$ . Kan—Chekhover, Moscow, 1936. Of considerable interest here is the new move  $9...P-B4!$  (as in the analogous variations of the Sicilian). If then  $10 P-QR4$ ,  $P-QR4$ ;  $11 B \times Kt$  (better  $11 R-B1$  as in the column),  $P \times B$ ;  $12 Q-Kt3ch$ ,  $K-R1$ ;  $13 P-K3!$ ,  $P-B5!$   $\mp$ . Hanauer—Green, New York, 1940. Or

## Notes continued from p. 45

(f) Best. Alternatives are: (1)  $3...B-B4$ ;  $4 B-Kt2$ ,  $Kt-B3$  ( $4...P-Q3$ );  $5 P-K3$ ,  $KKt-K2$ ;  $6 P-QR3$ ,  $P-QR4$ ;  $7 KKt-K2$ ,  $O-O$ ;  $8 P-Q4$ ,  $B-Kt3$ ;  $9 O-O$ ,  $B-Q2$ ;  $10 P-Kt3$ ,  $Q-B1$ ;  $11 B-Kt2$ ,  $B-R6 =$ . Nimzovitch—Alekhine, Baden-Baden, 1925);  $5 Kt-B3$ ,  $P-QR3$ ;  $6 O-O$ ,  $P-Q3$ ;  $7 P-K3$ ,  $O-O$ ;  $8 P-Q4$ ,  $B-R2$ ;  $9 P-KR3$ ,  $P-R3$ ;  $10 P-Kt3$ ,  $B-KB4$ ;  $11 B-R3 \pm$ . Tartakower—Gruenfeld, Marienbad, 1925. (2)  $3...P-Q3$ ;  $4 B-Kt2$ ,  $B-K3$ ;  $5 P-Q3$ ,  $Q-Q2$ ;  $6 P-B4$ ,  $P-B3$ ;  $7 Kt-B3$ ,  $KKt-K2$ ;  $8 P-K4$ ,  $B-R6$ ;  $9 O-O$ ,  $B \times B$ ;  $10 K \times B$ ,  $P-KR4$ ;  $11 P-KB5!$   $\pm$ . Dake—Fine, 4th match game, 1933.

(g) Weaker is  $6 B-Q2$ ,  $P-B4$ ;  $7 R-QKt1$  ( $7 Kt-B3$ ,  $Kt-Q5$ ;  $8 O-O$ ,  $P-B3$ ;  $9 R-B1$ ,  $Kt-K2$ ;  $10 P-QKt4$ ,  $Kt \times Ktch =$ . Lasker—Alexander, Nottingham, 1936),  $Kt-B3$ ;  $8 P-QKt4$ ,  $O-O$ ;  $9 P-Kt5$ ,  $Kt-K2$ ;  $10 Q-B2$ ,  $P-KR3$ ;  $11 P-K3$ ,  $P-R3$ ;  $12 P-QR4$ ,  $P-B4$ ;  $13 P \times P$ ,  $R \times P$ ;  $14 KKt-K2$ ,  $Kt-B3 \mp$ . Capablanca—Bogoljubow, Nottingham, 1936.

here  $10 R-B1$ ,  $B-K3$  (more logical is  $10...B-B3$  as in col. 15);  $11 Kt-QR4$ ,  $Kt-Q4$ ;  $12 B-B5$ ,  $B-Q3$  (Marshall—Hanauer, New York, 1939) and now  $13 P-Q4!$   $\pm$ .

(j)  $12...Kt-Q4$ ;  $13 B-B5$ ,  $B \times B$ ;  $14 R \times B$ ,  $B \times Kt$ ;  $15 B \times B$ ,  $Kt(Q4)-Kt5$ ;  $16 Q-B1$ ,  $Q-Q2$ ;  $17 Q-K3$ . Szabo—Pirc, Hastings, 1938-39.

(k) Alexander—Euwe, Nottingham, 1936.

(l) Inferior is  $9 P-Kt3$ ,  $B-K3$ ;  $10 B-Kt2$ ,  $P-B3$ ;  $11 R-B1$ ,  $P-QR4$ ;  $12 Kt-Q2$ ,  $P-R5$ ;  $13 Kt \times P$ ,  $Kt \times Kt$ ;  $14 P \times Kt$ ,  $Q-Q2$ ;  $15 Kt-K4$ ,  $R-R4$ ;  $16 B-QB3$ ,  $R-R3$ ;  $17 B-Q2$ ,  $Kt-Q5 \mp$ . Goglidse—Reshevsky, Leningrad—Moscow, 1939.

(m) Much stronger than  $9...P-QR4$ ;  $10 B-K3$ ,  $B-K3$ ;  $11 B \times Kt$ ,  $P \times B$ ;  $12 Kt-Q2 \pm$ . Opocensky—Floh, Podebrady, 1936.

(n)  $13 P-Kt5$ ,  $Kt-R4!$ ;  $14 Q-B2$ ,  $P-B4!$ ;  $15 Kt-R4$ ,  $B-K3$ ;  $16 B-B3$ ,  $Kt-Kt6!$  Santasiere—Horowitz, New York, 1939.

(h)  $12...R-K1$ ;  $13 Q-Q2$ . Flohr—Euwe, 3rd match game, 1932.

(i) Better  $9...B-Kt5$ ;  $10 P-KR3$ ,  $B \times Kt$ ;  $11 Kt \times B$ ,  $Kt-B4$ ;  $12 P-Q5$ ,  $QKt-Q5$  but White's game is still preferable.

(j)  $12...Kt-Q2$ ;  $13 P-QR3$ ,  $Kt-B4$ ;  $14 P-QKt4$ . Botvinnik—Reshevsky, AVRO tournament, 1938.

(k) Simpler is  $7...O-O$ ;  $8 P-Q4$ ,  $P \times P$ ;  $9 Kt \times P$ ,  $Kt \times Kt$ ;  $10 P \times Kt$ ,  $Kt-B4$ ;  $11 P-Q5$ ,  $R-K1$ ;  $12 Kt-K4$ ,  $P-KR3 =$ . Kan—Yudovitch, Tiflis, 1937.

(l)  $13 P \times Kt$ ,  $Q-Q2$ ;  $14 K-R2$ ,  $O-O$ ;  $15 B-K3$ ,  $K-Kt1$ ;  $16 P-Kt4$ ,  $B-K3$ . Koblentz—Ragosin, U.S.S.R. championship, 1945.

(m)  $4 B-Kt2$ ,  $B-Kt2$ ;  $5 O-O$ ,  $P-K3$ ;  $6 Kt-B3$ ,  $B-K2$ ;  $7 P-Q4$ ,  $P \times P$ ;  $8 Kt \times P$ ,  $B \times B$ ;  $9 K \times B$ ,  $Q-B1$ ;  $10 Q-Q3$ ,  $Kt-B3$ ;  $11 Kt \times Kt$ ,  $Q \times Ktch$ ;  $12 P-K4$ ,  $R-QB1$ ;  $13 P-Kt3$ ,  $B-Kt5 =$ . Stahlberg—Pilnik, Mar del Plata, 1944.

(n)  $12...Q-B2$ ;  $13 P-K4$ . Botvinnik—Capablanca, Moscow, 1936.

## 1 P-QB4, Kt-KB3; 2 Kt-KB3

	21	22	23	24	25
2 (P-B4).....				P-K3	
3 Kt-B3.....			P-Q4!	Kt-B3	
P-Q4!			P x P	P-Q4.....	B-Kt5
4 P x P			Kt x P	P-K3	Q-B2
Kt x P			P-Q4 (f)	P-B4 (j)	P-B4
5 P-K4.....	P-KKt3		P x P	P x P	P-QR3 (m)
Kt-Kt5 (a)	Kt-QB3		Kt x P	Kt x P (k)	B-R4
6 B-B4	B-Kt2		P-K4	B-K2	P-K3
Kt-Q6ch (b)	Kt-B2		Kt-KB3! (g)	B-K2	Kt-B3
7 K-K2	O-O		Kt-QB3	O-O	P-Q4
Kt x Bch	P-K4 (e)		P-K4	O-O	P-Q3
8 R x Kt	P-Q3		Kt-B2 (h)	P-Q3	B-K2
P-QR3 (c)	B-K2		Q x Qch	P-QKt3	O-O
9 P-Q4	B-K3		K x Q	B-Q2	O-O
P x P	O-O		Kt-B3	Kt-QB3	Q-K2
10 Q x P	R-B1		B-QKt5	R-B1	P-QKt3
Q x Q	R-Kt1		B-Q2	B-Kt2	B x Kt
11 Kt x Q	Kt-QR4		B x Kt	P-QR3	Q x B
P-K3	P-QKt3		B x B	Kt x Kt	P-QKt3
12 Kt-R4	P-QKt4!		P-B3	B x Kt	B-Kt2
Kt-Q2	Kt x P		O-O-Och	B-B3	Kt-K5
13 KR-Q1! $\pm$ (d)	Kt x KP		K-K2	Q-B2 = (l)	Q-B2
	B-B3 $\mp$		B-B4 = (i)		P-B4 = (n)

(a) Better is  $5...Kt \times Kt$ ;  $6 KtP \times Kt$ ,  $P-KKt3$ ; with a position analogous to the Gruenfeld Defense in the QP opening, or  $6...P-K3$ ;  $7 P-Q4$ ,  $P \times P$ ;  $8 P \times P$ ,  $B-Kt5ch$  with a satisfactory variation of the QGD.

(b)  $6...P-K3$ ;  $7 O-O$ ,  $QKt-B3$ ;  $8 P-Q3$ ,  $Kt-Q5$ ;  $9 Kt \times Kt$ ,  $P \times Kt$ ;  $10 Kt-K2 \pm$ . Nimzovitch—Rubinstein, Dresden, 1926.

(c) If  $8...Kt-B3$ ;  $9 Q-Kt3$ ,  $P-K3$ ;  $10 B-Kt5$ ,  $B-Q2$ ;  $11 B \times Kt$ ,  $B \times B$ ;  $12 KR-Q1$  followed by  $P-Q4 \pm$ . (Becker.)

(d)  $13...P-QKt4?$ ;  $14 Kt \times KP$ ,  $BP \times Kt$ ;  $15 B \times KP$ ,  $P \times Kt$ ;  $16 R \times Bch$ ,  $R \times R$ ;  $17 B \times Ktch$ ,  $K-Q1$ ;  $18 B-Kt4ch++$ . Takacs—Rubinstein, Rogaska-Slatina, 1929 (1st brilliancy prize).

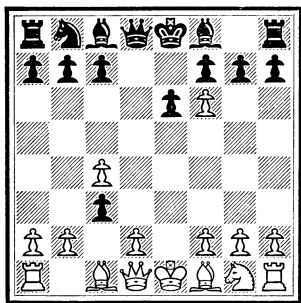
(e) Compare Réti Opening, p. 310, col. 3. The column is Kashdan—Reshevsky, New York, 1942.

(f)  $4...Kt-QB3$ ;  $5 Kt-QB3$ ,  $P-KKt3$ ;  $6 P-K4$  transposes to a variation of the Sicilian Defense which is in White's favor. Three unusual alternatives are: (1)  $4...P-K4!$ ?;  $5 Kt-Kt5$ ,  $B-Kt5ch$ ;  $6 B-Q2$  (better  $6 QKt-B3$  and if  $6...O-O$ ;  $7 B-Kt5 \pm$ ),  $B-B4$ ;  $7 B-B3$ ,  $Q-Kt3$ ;  $8 P-K3$ ,  $P-QR3$ ;  $9 KKt-R3?$  ( $9 P-QKt4$  was essential),  $Kt-B3$ ;  $10 B-Q3$ ,  $O-O$ ;  $11 O-O$ ,  $P-Q3$ ;  $12 Kt-B2$ ,  $B-K3 \mp$ . Dake—Fine, 6th match game, 1933. (2)  $4...P-K3$ ;  $5 Kt-QB3$ ,  $B-Kt5$ ;  $6 KKt-Kt5$ ,  $P-Q4$ ;  $7 B-B4$ ,  $Kt-R3$ ;  $8 P-K3$ ,  $O-O$ ;  $9 Q-B2$ ,  $B-Q2$ ;  $10 O-O$ ,  $O, QB \times Kt$ ;  $11 Kt \times B$ ,  $Q-Kt3$ ;  $12 K-Kt1$ ,  $QR-B1$ ;  $13 B-Q3$ ,  $Kt-B4 \mp$ . Navarro—Keres, Madrid, 1943. (3)  $4...P-QKt3$ ;  $5 Kt-QB3$ ,  $B-Kt2$ ;  $6 B-Kt5!$ ,  $Kt-K5$ ;  $7 Kt \times Kt$ ,  $B \times Kt$ ;  $8 P-B3$ ,

## 1 P—QB4, Kt—KB3(a); 2 Kt—QB3

	26	27	28	29	30
2	P—K3			P—B3	P—Q4! (m)
3	P—K4 P—Q4 (b)			P—K4 P—Q4	P × P Kt × P
4	P—K5 P—Q5 (c)			P—K5 P—Q5	Kt—B3 (n) Kt × Kt
5	P × Kt P × Kt*			P × Kt P × Kt	KtP × Kt P—QB4
6	KtP × P Q × P	P × KtP P × Pch		P × KtP (k) P × Pch	P—KKt3 P—KKt3
7	P—Q4 P—QKt3 (d)	B × P B × P		B × P B × P	B—KKt2 B—Kt2
8	Kt—B3 B—Kt2	Q—B2 P—QB4		Q—B2 Q—B2	P—KR4!? B—Q2
9	B—K2 Kt—Q2	P—KR3	Kt—B3 (i) Kt—B3	P—B4 Kt—R3	Kt—Kt5 B—QB3
10	O—O B—Q3	Kt—K5! (f) B—Q3	O—O—O Q—K2	Kt—B3 B—Kt5	Q—Kt3 O—O
11	B—Kt5 Q—B4	Q—R4ch K—K2 (g)	P—Q3 P—KR3	B—K2 O—O—O	B × B Kt × B
12	Q—R4 P—QB3	B—B3 B × B	B—B3 Kt—Q5	O—O—O P—K3! ≠ (l)	Q × KtP!? Q—Q4!
13	P—B5! ± (e) R—Q1 = (h)	Kt × B R—Q1 = (h)	B × Kt ± (j)		O—O P—KR3 ≠ (o)

\* DIAGRAM 20  
cols. 26—28



[After 5... P × Kt]

(a) 1... P—QB3; 2 P—K4, P—Q4; transposes to the Caro-Kann.

(b) A good alternative is 3... P—B4; 4 P—KKt3, P—Q4; 5 P—K5, P—Q5; 6 P × Kt, P × Kt; 7 Q × P (Nimzovitch prefers 7 KtP × P, Q × P; 8 P—Q4, since Black cannot win a Pawn by 8... P × P; 9 P × P, B—Kt5ch; 10 B—Q2, Q × P; 11 B × B, Q—K5ch; 12 B—K2, Q × R; 13 Q—Q6, Kt—B3; 14 B—KB3! + +), Q × P; 8 Kt—B3, P—KR3; 9 B—Kt2, B—Q2; 10 Kt—Q2, B—B3; 11 Kt—K4, Q—Kt3; 12 Q—K2, B—K2 =. Bogoljubow—Nimzovitch, London, 1927. Here 4 P—B4?, Kt—B3; 5 Kt—B3, P—Q4; 6 P—K5, KKt—Kt5; 7 P × P?, P × P; 8 Q—Kt3, Kt—Kt5!; 9 P—QR3, P—B5; 10 Q—R4ch, B—Q2; 11 Q—Q1, Q—Kt3; 12 resigns in Mazel—Botvinnik, Leningrad, 1940.

Notes continued on p. 49

## Notes continued from p. 47

B—Kt2; 9 P—K4 ±. Alekhine—Saemisch, Baden-Baden, 1925.

(g) Weaker is 6... Kt—Kt5; 7 Q—R4ch, QKt—B3; 8 Kt × Kt, Kt × Kt; 9 Kt—B3, B—Q2; 10 B—K3, P—K3; 11 R—B1, B—Q3; 12 B—K2 ±. Dake—Mueller, Folkestone, 1933.

(h) Or 8 B—Kt5ch, B—Q2; 9 Kt—KB3, B—QKt5; 10 Q—R4, Q—R4!; 11 Q × Q, B × Q; 12 B—Q3, Kt—B3 =. Raud—Michel, Mar del Plata, 1943.

(i) Bolbochan—Michel, Mar del Plata, 1943.

(j) Also playable is 4... Kt—K5; 5 Q—B2, P—KB4; 6 P—Q3, Kt × Kt; 7 P ×

Kt, P—B3; 8 P—Q4, B—Q3; 9 P × P, KP × P; 10 B—Q3, O—O; 11 O—O ±. Flohr—Tartakower, Nottingham, 1936.

(k) Better than 5... P × P; 6 P—Q4, Kt—B3; 7 B—Kt5, P—QR3; 8 B × Ktch, P × B; 9 Kt—K5, B—Q3; 10 P—B4 ±. Opocensky—Alekhine, Podesbrady, 1936.

(l) Flohr—Thomas, Nottingham, 1936.

(m) 5 P—K4, P—Q3; 6 P—QR3, B—R4; 7 P—Q3, Kt—B3; 8 B—K3, O—O; 9 O—O—O, Kt—KKt5; 10 B—Kt5, P—B3; 11 B—R4, KKt—K4 =. Bogoljubow—Ahues, Berlin, 1927.

(n) 14 Kt—Q2, Kt—B3. Kmoch—Alekhine, Kecskemet, 1927.

## Notes continued from p. 48

(c) If 4... Kt—K5; 5 Kt × Kt, P × Kt; 6 Q—Kt4, P—KB4; 7 P × P e.p., Q × P; 8 Q × P(K4), B—B4; 9 Kt—B3, Kt—B3; 10 B—K2, B—Q2; 11 O—O, O—O—O; 12 P—Q3, Kt—Q5? (... P—KR3 was necessary); 13 B—Kt5! +. Flohr—Thomas, Hastings, 1930—1931.

(d) 7... P—B4; 8 Kt—B3, P—KR3; 9 B—K2, P × P; 10 P × P, B—Kt5ch; 11 B—Q2, B × Bch; 12 Q × B, O—O =. Eliskases—Kessner, Vienna, 1932.

(e) Flohr—Kashdan, Folkestone, 1933.

(f) Or 10 O—O, B—Q3; 11 Q—R4ch, B—B3; 12 Q—B2, O—O; 13 B—K3, Kt—Q2; 14 QR—Q1, QR—Q1; 15 Kt—Q2, P—K4 =. Kevitz—Fine, New York, 1933.

(g) If 11... K—B1; 12 B—B3, B × B and Black has one tempo less than in the text.

(h) 14 O—O, K—B1; 15 R—K1, Kt—Q2; 16 Q—B6, P—K4; 17 Q—K4, K—Kt1 (Alexander—Fine, Nottingham, 1936) and now 18 Q—Kt4! is quite strong.

(i) Weaker is 9 B—B3, B × Bch; 10 Q × B, R—Kt1; 11 R—Q1, Q—K2; 12 B—Q3, P—B4; 13 B—K2, Kt—B3; 14 B—R5ch, K—B1; 15 Kt—K2, P—K4; 16 O—O, B—K3; 17 P—B4 =. Ragosin—Makogonov, Leningrad—Moscow, 1939.

(j) 13... P × B; 14 Q—Kt3!, Q—B2; 15

K—Kt1, B—Q2; 16 B—K4, B—QB3; 17 B × Bch, P × B; 18 Kt × P, O—O; 19 Q—Kt3! Ragosin—Dubinin, U.S.S.R. Championship, 1939. The manner in which White restrained his opponent's development is noteworthy.

(k) Stronger is 6 KtP × P, KtP × P; 7 P—Q4, P—K3 (better 7... B—B4); 8 B—Q3, R—Kt1; 9 P—B3, P—KB4; 10 Kt—K2, P—Kt3; 11 P—KR3!, B—QKt2; 12 P—Kt4, P × P; 13 P × P, P—KR3; 14 B × P+. Kashdan—Simonson, 1st match game, 1938.

(l) Flohr—Betbeder, Folkestone, 1933. White now played 13 P—Kt4? upon which 13... Q—K2 (instead of the doubtful sacrifice 13... Kt × P which occurred in the game); 14 P—QB5, Q—B3; 15 B × Kt, P × B! would have given Black an overwhelming attack (Kashdan).

(m) Or 2... P—B4; 3 P—KKt3, P—Q4 as in the previous columns. On 2... P—KKt3; 3 P—Q4 or 3 P—K4, transposing to the King's Indian Defense, is best.

(n) If 4 P—K4, Kt × Kt followed by ... P—KKt3 equalizes most easily (compare Gruenfeld Defense, p. 279, col. 141).

(o) 14 Kt—B3, P—B5; 15 B—R3, KR—Kt1; 16 Q—R6, R—Kt3. Bogoljubow—Mikenas, Kemer—Riga, 1939.



EVANS GAMBIT

**T**HIS INTERESTING branch of the Giuoco Piano still retains much of its vigor, although most modern tournament players are reluctant to adopt it. However, it has always been a favorite with analysts who have recently uncovered some new material which opens new perspectives for the first player.

In the **Evans Gambit Accepted**, the traditional refutation has been Lasker's Defense in col. 1 (1 P-K4, P-K4; 2 Kt-KB3, Kt-QB3; 3 B-B4, B-B4; 4 P-QKt4, B x P; 5 P-B3, B-R4; 6 P-Q4, P-Q3; 7 O-O, B-Kt3!) although here White can draw with relative ease. More important, the attack has been strengthened in the variation with 7 Q-Kt3, and the variations in col. 2 and notes are still a problem for the second player.

Theoretically, at the present stage Black does better to play the Normal Position (cols. 4-8) and avoid Lasker's Defense, unless he is content with a somewhat barren equality. In the old line in col. 4, which was analyzed extensively by the greatest masters of the day some fifty years ago, Black can maintain his extra Pawn and stave off the attack. It may be that the difficulties of the Normal Position are too much for tournament play, but analysis reveals no really strong continuation for White against the best defense.

The Compromised Defense (col. 9) leaves Black's development too backward and is not to be recommended.

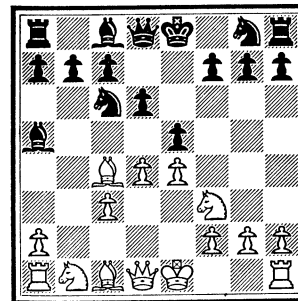
Replies other than 5...B-R4 have always been considered bad. But Euwe and some Soviet masters have recently revived 5...B-K2 with considerable success (col. 10, note (k)).

The **Evans Gambit Declined** with 4...B-Kt3 is theoretically inferior to the Accepted version. While Black is not so exposed, his positive counter-chances are meager. White cannot obtain an attack as glamorous as the customary one, but the new improvements in cols. 1 and 2 indicate that he can at any rate often obtain a somewhat more comfortable game and a slight positional advantage in some cases.

1 P-K4, P-K4; 2 Kt-KB3, Kt-QB3; 3 B-B4, B-B4; 4 P-QKt4, B x P; 5 P-B3, B-R4; 6 P-Q4

	1	2	3	4	5
6	P-Q3 *			P x P (j)	
7	O-O	Q-Kt3 (e)		O-O	
	B-Kt3! (a)	Q-Q2! (f)		B-Kt3	
8	P x P (b)	P x P!		P x P	
	P x P	P x P.....	B-Kt3	P-Q3 (k) **	
9	Q x Qch (c)	O-O	B-QKt5! (i)	Kt-B3!	
	Kt x Q	B-Kt3	P-QR3	Kt-R4	
10	Kt x P	R-Q1	B-R4	B-KKt5!	
	B-K3	Q-K2	B-B4	Q-Q2! / .....	P-KB3
11	P-QR4! (d)	R-Q5!?	P-B4	B-Q3	B-R4 (n)
	P-KB3	P-QR3!	KKt-K2	P-KR3	Kt x B
12	B x B	QKt-Q2	O-O	B-R4	Q-R4ch
	Kt x B	Q-B3	O-O	Kt-K2	Q-Q2
13	Kt-B4	Kt-B1	Kt-B3	B x Kt	Q x Kt
	Kt-K2	B-K3	Q-Q1	Q x B	Q-B2
14	P-R5	Kt-Kt3! (g)	P x P	R-K1	Kt-Q5
	B-B4	KKt-K2	P x P	P-QB3	B-K3
15	Kt-Q2	B-KKt5	Kt-Q5	P-Q5	Q-R4ch!
	K-B2	Q-Kt3	Kt x Kt	B-Kt5	B-Q2
16	Kt-Kt3	B x Kt! ± (h)	KP x Kt ±	P-K5! (l)	Q-B2! ± (o)
	QR-Q1 =			O-O! ∓ (m)	

\* DIAGRAM 21  
cols. 1-3



[After 6...P-Q3]

\*\* See p. 53, Diagram 22

(a) Lasker's Defense, the major reason for the virtual disappearance of the Evans Gambit from tournament play.

(b) The best chance. If instead 8 P-QR4, P x P; 9 P x P, B-Kt5; 10 B-Kt2, Q-B3; 11 B-Kt5, B x Kt; 12 P x B, P-QR3; 13 B x Ktch, P x B; 14 Kt-R3, Kt-K2+. Charousek-Blackburne, Nuremberg, 1896; or 8 B-KKt5, P-B3; 9 B-K3, B-Q2; 10 Kt-R4, P-Kt3; 11 Kt-R3, Q-K2; 12 Kt-B2, P-B4!; 13 P-Kt3, P-B5; 14 B-B1, O-O-O; 15 P-QR4, P-Kt4+. Analysis by Loevenfisch.

(c) Or (1) 9 Q-Kt3, Q-B3!; 10 B-KKt5, Q-Kt3; 11 B-Q5, KKt-K2; 12 QB x Kt, K x B; 13 B x Kt, Q x B; 14 Kt x P, Q-K3; 15 Q-R3ch, Q-Q3!+. (2) 9 QKt-Q2, Q-B3; 10 B-Q5, KKt-K2; 11 P-KR3, P-KR3; 12 Kt-B4, O-O; 13 Kt-R2, R-Q1; 14 Kt-K3, B-K3+.

Notes continued on p. 52

## Notes continued from p. 51

(d) Weaker is 11 Kt—Q2, Kt—K2; 12 B—R3, P—KB3; 13 Kt—Q3, Kt—Kt3; 14 R—Kt1, K—B2; 15 B—Q5, R—K1; 16 P—B4, P—B3; 17 B × Bch, Kt × B ♯. Tchigorin—Pillsbury, London, 1899.

(e) A new try is Shteinsapir's move 7 B—KKt5, but a good reply is Q—Q2; 8 O—O, P—KR3; 9 B—R4, Kkt—K2; 10 B × Kt, Kt × B; 11 P × P, O—O ♯. Shteinsapir—Romanovsky, Leningrad, 1937.

(f) Forced. 7... Q—K2?; 8 P—Q5! wins a piece. 7... Kt—R3!/? is not sufficient but not quite as bad as it looks: 8 B × Kt, P × B; 9 B × Pch, K—B1; 10 P × P, Q—K2; 11 B—Q5, Kt × P; 12 Kt × Kt, Q × Kt; 13 Q—R3, B—Kt3; 14 Kt—Q2, B—QB4; 15 Q—Kt2, P—B3; 16 B—Kt3, P—Kt4; 17 O—O, K—K2; 18 Kt—B3+. Ragosin—Bronstein, U.S.S.R. Championship. 1945. After the text ... B—Kt3 threatens, e.g., 8 O—O, B—Kt3; 9 B—QKt5, P—QR3; 10 B—R4, B—R2; 11 P—Q5, P—QKt4+.

(g) Weak is 14 B—KKt5, Q—Kt3; 15 Q—R4, Kt—B3; 16 B × Kt, Q × B; 17 R × P, O—O; 18 R—KR5, Q × P!; 19 B × B, Q × R; 20 B—B5, P—Kt3++. Lissitsin—Rabinovitch, Leningrad, 1940.

(h) 16... B × R; 17 B × B! and White preserves a strong attack, e.g., 17... K × B; 18 Kt—B5ch, K—K1; 19 B × Ktch, P × B; 20 Kt × P, Q—B3; 21 Kt—Kt4, Q—Kt3; 22 Q—R3!

(i) Stronger than 9 QKt—Q2, Kt—R3; 10 O—O, O—O; 11 P × P, Q × P; 12 B—Q5, Kt—R4; 13 Q—Kt4, Q—Kt3 ♯. Alexander—Tylor, Hastings, 1935—36. The column is analysis in *Schachmatny Journal*, 1902, quoted by Loevenfisch.

(j) 6... P—QKt4 (Leonhardt's Defense) is theoretically quite strong: 7 B × P, P × P; 8 O—O (8 Kt × P, Q—B3), P × P; 9 B × Kt, P × B; 10 Q—R4, B—Kt3; 11 Q × Pch, B—Q2; 12 Q × P(B3), Q—B3; 13 P—K5, Q—Kt3 = Tartakower—P. Johner, Baden, 1914. 6... B—Kt3 is refuted by 7 P × P, P—KR3? (either 7... P—Q3 or 7... Kkt—K2 is playable); 8 Q—Q5, Q—K2; 9 B—R3, Q—K3; 10 Q—Q3, Kt × P; 11 Kt × Kt, Q × Kt; 12 P—B4, Q—KR4; 13 Kt—Q2, P—Q3; 14 B—Kt5ch, B—Q2; 15 B × Bch+. Tartakower—Chajes, Carlsbad, 1923.

(k) The normal position.

(l) Minckwitz—Steinitz, Baden-Baden, 1870. Continued 16... QP × P?; 17 Q—Q2, B × Kt; 18 R × P!, Q × R; 19 R—K1 with a winning attack.

(m) 17 P × BP, KtP × P; 18 P × P, Q—B3; 19 Kt—K4, Q—B5.

(n) 11 B—K3, Kt—K2; 12 P—KR3, B—Q2; 13 B—Kt3, Kt × B; 14 Q × Kt is also good.

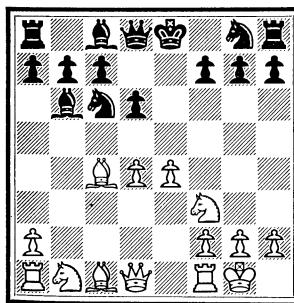
(o) 16... R—B1; 17 P—R4.

1 P—K4, P—K4; 2 Kt—KB3, Kt—QB3; 3 B—B4, B—B4; 4 P—QKt4, B × P; 5 P—B3

	6	7	8	9	10
5 (B—R4).....					B—B4 (k)
6 (P—Q4) (P × P)					P—Q4 P × P
7 (O—O) (B—Kt3).....				P × P (h)	O—O (l) P—Q6 (m)
8 (P × P)* (P—Q3)				Q—Kt3 Q—B3	Kt—Kt5 Kt—R3
9 (Kt—B3)..... Kt—B3? (a)	P—Q5 (d) Kt—R4			P—K5 Q—Kt3	Kt × BP Kt × Kt
10 P—K5! P × P	B—Kt2 Kt—K2!			Kt × P KKt—K2 (i)	B × Ktch K × B
11 B—R3! B × P	B—Q3! (e) O—O			B—R3 B × Kt (j)	Q—R5ch P—Kt3
12 Q—Kt3 B—K3 (b)	Kt—B3 Kt—Kt3!			Q × B O—O	Q × B P—Q3
13 B × B P × B	Kt—K2 P—QB4!			QR—Q1 R—K1	Q—Q5ch B—K3
14 Q × Pch Kt—K2	Q—Q2 P—B3			KR—K1 R—Kt1	Q × P (Q3) R—K1
15 Kt × B+ (c)	K—R1..... B—B2 ♯ (f)	QR—B1 Kt—K4 ♯ (g)		B—Q3 ±	P—KB4 ± (n)

## \* DIAGRAM 22

cols. 4-8



[After 8... P—Q3]

(a) Also weak is 9... B—Kt5; 10 B—QKt5!+, e.g., 10... B × Kt; 11 P × B, K—B1; 12 B—K3, QKt—K2 (better 12... KKt—K2; 13 P—Q5, Kt—QKt1; 14 K—R1 ±); 13 K—R1, P—QB3; 14 B—R4, P—Q4; 15 R—QKt1, R—Kt1; 16 Q—Q3+. Morphy—Schulten, New York, 1857.

(b) Or 12... Q—Q2; 13 Kt × B, Kt × Kt; 14 Q—Kt2, Q—B3; 15 B—Kt3!+. Sokolsky.

(c) Morphy—Stanley, New York, 1857.

(d) 9 B—Kt2 followed by P—Q5 transposes to cols. 7-8. After 9 B—Kt2, Kt—B3 if 10 Q—Kt3 (best is 10 P—Q5), O—O; 11 P—K5, Kt—QR4; 12 Q—B2, Kt × B; 13 P × Kt, Kt × B; 14 P × P, R—K1; 15 Q × Kt, Q—B3+. Analysis by Sokolsky.

Notes continued on p. 55

1 P—K4, P—K4; 2 Kt—KB3, Kt—QB3; 3 B—B4, B—B4; 4 P—QKt4,  
B—Kt3 (a)

1	2	3	4	5
5 P—QR4! (b) P—QR3			B—Kt2 P—Q3	P—Kt5? Kt—R4
6 Kt—B3! Kt—B3	P—B3 P—Q3		P—QR4 P—QR3	Kt × P (o) Kt—R3! (p)
7 Kt—Q5! (c) Kt × Kt (d)	Q—Kt3 Q—K2	P—R5 (i) B—R2	P—Kt5! P × P (k)	P—Q4 P—Q3!
8 P × Kt P—K5!	P—Q3 Kt—B3	P—Kt5? P × P	P × P R × R	B × Kt P × Kt!
9 P × Kt O—O!	B—KKt5 (g) O—O	B × P Kt—B3	B × R Kt—Q5 (l)	B × P R—KKt1
10 B—Kt2! (e) P × Kt	QKt—Q2 P—QR4	P—R6 O—O	B × Kt (m) P × B	B × Pch K × B
11 Q × P QP × P	P—Kt5 Kt—Q1	P—Q3 Kt—K2	O—O Kt—B3	B × P Q—Kt4 (q)
12 Q—B3 R—K1ch	O—O Kt—K3	P × P B × P	P—Q3 O—O	Kt—B3 Kt—B5
13 K—B1 Q—Kt4	B—K3 Kt—B4	Kt—R3 P—Q4!	QKt—Q2 P—B4	B—Kt3 B—Kt5
14 P—R4 Q—R3	Q—B2 B—K3	O—O Kt—Kt3	P × Pe.p. P × P	Q—Q3 Kt—Kt7
15 P—QR5 ± (f)	P—KR3 ± (h)	P × P Kt × P ≠ (j)	Q—R1 ± (n)	Q—K3 QR—Q1! ++ (r)

(a) 4... P—Q4; 5 P × P, Kt × P; 6 O—O (Maroczy recommends 6 B—R3), Kt—KB3; 7 Kt × P, QKt × QP; 8 P—Q4, B—Q3; 9 B—KKt5, P—B3; 10 Kt—Q2 ±. Schiffers—Pillsbury, Nuremberg, 1896.

(b) More accurate than 5 P—B3, Kt—B3; 6 P—Q3, P—Q3; and if now 7 P—QR4, P—QR4!; 8 P—Kt5, Kt—K2; 9 O—O, O—O; 10 B—Kt5, Kt—Kt3; 11 Kt—R4, Kt—B5 =. Albin—Schlechter, Monte Carlo, 1902.

(c) Inadequate is 7 P—Q3, P—Q3; 8 P—R5, B—R2; 9 P—Kt5, Kt—Q5; 10 P × P, P × P; 11 P—R3, Kt × Ktch; 12 Q × Kt, B—Q5; 13 B—Q2, B—K3 ≠. Mikenas—Alatorstev, Moscow, 1944.

(d) Weak is 7... Kt × KP; 8 O—O, O—O!; 9 P—Q3, Kt—B3; 10 B—KKt5, P—Q3; 11 Kt—Q2+. Kan—Botvinnik, U.S.S.R. championship, 1929.

(e) The Kt cannot safely leave. The text

is an improvement on 10 O—O, P × Kt; 11 Q × P, QP × P; 12 P—R5, B—R2; 13 P—B3, B—K3 =. Sokolsky—Lilienthal, Moscow, 1944.

(f) 15... B—R2; 16 P—R5!, B—K3; 17 R—KR4!, QR—Q1; 18 P—Q3, B × B?; 19 P × B, P—QB4; 20 R—Kt4 and wins. Sokolsky—Goldenov, Kiev, 1945.

(g) An unexplored possibility is 9 B—R3, O—O; 10 QKt—Q2, B—K3; 11 O—O, Kt—KR4; 12 P—Kt3 with good attacking chances.

(h) Rojahn—Capablanca, Buenos Aires, 1939.

(i) Or 7 O—O, B—Kt5; 8 P—Q3, Q—B3; 9 B—K3, KKt—K2; 10 QKt—Q2, Kt—Kt3 =.

(j) Pollock—Lasker, Hastings, 1895.

Notes continued on p. 55

Notes continued from p. 53

(e) 11 B × P? is a mistake because of 11 R—KKt1; 12 B—B6, Kt × B; 13 Q—R4ch, Q—Q2; 14 Q × Kt, R × Pch! and wins (Anderssen!).

(f) 16 QR—B1, R—Kt1; 17 Kt—Kt3, P—Kt4; 18 Kt—B5, P—B5; 19 B—K2, R—K1; 20 Q—B2, Kt—B5.

(g) 16 K—R1, Kt × B; 17 Q × KKt, Q—Kt1; 18 Kt—R4, B—Q1; 19 Kt—B5, B × Kt.

(h) The Compromised Defense. A good alternative is 7... KKt—K2; 8 P × P, P—Q4; 9 P × P, KKt × P (F. J. Wallis suggests 9... P—QKt4; 10 B × P, Q × P; 11 Q—R4, B—Q2; 12 B—R3, P—QR3!+); 10 B—R3, B—K3; 11 B—Kt5, KB—Kt5!+. Inferior alternatives are (1) 7... P—Q3; 8 Q—Kt3 (Waller's Attack), Q—B3; 9 P—K5, QP × P; 10 R—K1, B—Q2; 11 B—KKt5+. (2) 7... P—Q6; 8 Q—Kt3, Q—B3; 9 P—K5+. (3) 7... Kt—B3; 8 B—R3, P—Q3; 9 P—K5, Kt—KKt5; 10 KP × P, BP × P; 11 R—K1ch, KKt—K4; 12 Kt × Kt, P × Kt; 13 Kt—Q2 ±.

(i) 10... B × Kt; 11 Q × B, P—QKt3 (or 11... KKt—K2; 12 Kt—Kt5, O—O; 13 B—Q3+); 12 P—K6!+. Or 10... P—

Kt4; 11 Kt × P, R—Kt1; 12 Q—K3, KKt—K2; 13 Q—K2!, Q—R4; 14 B—R3, B—Kt2; 15 QR—Q1, Kt—B4; 16 R × P!, K × R; 17 P—K6ch, K—B1; 18 P × P+. Kolisch—Anderssen, London, 1861.

(j) 11... O—O; 12 QR—Q1, P—Kt4 (or 12... R—K1; 13 B—Q3, Q—R4; 14 Kt—K4+); 13 B—Q3!, Q—R4; 14 Kt—K4, P—Kt5; 15 Kt—Kt3, Q—Kt5; 16 B—Kt2+.

(k) A little-known alternative is 5... B—K2; 6 P—Q4, Kt—R4!; 7 Kt × P, Kt × B; 8 Kt × Kt, P—Q4; 9 P × P, Q × P ≠. Steinsapir—Noack, Leningrad, 1937. Or here 7 B—Q3, P—Q3!; 8 Q—R4ch, P—B3; 9 B—R3, P—QKt4; 10 Q—B2 (Alexander—Euwe, Maastricht, 1946) and now 10... P—B3!+ (Euwe). All other Bishop moves are bad.

(l) 7 P × P, B—Kt3; 8 O—O, P—Q3 transposes to the normal position, cols. 4-8. If here 7... B—Kt5ch?; 8 K—B1!, Q—K2; 9 Q—R4+.

(m) 7... P—Q3 transposes to the Normal Position.

(n) 15... K—Kt1; 16 B—Kt2, P—Q4; 17 P—B4!. Dührssen—Kramer, Ebensee, 1930.

Notes continued from p. 54

(k) Better than 7... Kt—R4; 8 B—K2, Kt—KB3; 9 Kt—B3, B—Kt5; 10 Kt—Q5, Kt × Kt; 11 P × Kt ±. Tartakower—Fahri, Baden, 1914.

(l) 9... Kt—Kt1; 10 P—Q4, P × P; 11 B × P, B × B; 12 Q × B, Kt—KB3 (... Q—B3!); 13 Kt—B3, O—O; 14 O—O, QKt—Q2; 15 P—R3, R—K1; 16 R—R1, P—R3; 17 Kt—KR4, Kt—K4; 18 R—R8! ±. Tartakower—Yates, Carlsbad, 1929.

(m) Stronger than 10 Kt × Kt, P × Kt; 11 P—QB3, Kt—B3; 12 O—O, O—O; 13 P—Q3, P—Q4 =. Tartakower—Rubinstein, The Hague, 1921. Also possible here is Purdy's suggestion 13... P—B3; 14 KtP × P, KtP × P; 15 P × P, P—Q4; 16 P × P, P × P; 17 B—Kt3, B—K3; 18 Kt—R3 =.

(n) 15... P—B4; 16 R—Kt1, B—R4 (better is 16... Kt—R4; as in Ragošin—Panov, Leningrad—Moscow, 1939, but 17 Q—R3, Kt—B5; 18 B—Q5, B—R4; 19

Kt—B4 preserves some pressure); 17 R—Kt5, B—B2; 18 Q—R7. P. Johner—Hromadka, Baden, 1914.

(o) 6 B—K2, P—Q4; 7 P—Q3, P × P; 8 P × P, Q × Qch; 9 B × Q, Kt—KB3; 10 Kt—B3, Kt—B5 ≠.

(p) Another good continuation is 6... Q—B3; 7 B × Pch, K—B1; 8 P—Q4, P—Q3; 9 B × Kt, P × Kt; 10 B—Q5, B × P; 11 P—KB4, B × R; 12 P × P, Q—KKt3; 13 R—B1ch, K—K1; 14 B—B7ch, Q × B; 15 R × Q, K × R; 16 Q—R5ch, P—Kt3; 17 Q—B3ch, K—K1+. Analysis by Lange.

(q) Less convincing is 11... B—Kt5; 12 Q—Q3, P—B4; 13 Kt—B3, P × P; 14 Kt—Q5, Q—K1. (Whitaker—Thomas, London—Washington cable match, 1930) and now 15 B × P should have been played.

(r) 16 Q × Q, R × Q; 17 B—R4, B × P; 18 Kt—K2, B × Kt; 19 B × R, B × P!; 20 P—KB3, R—KKt1; 21 P—KR4, P—KR3; 22 resigns. Réti—Perlis, Vienna, 1913.

## FOUR KNIGHTS' GAME

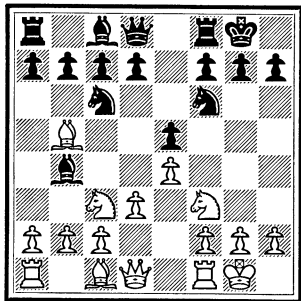
THE FOUR KNIGHTS' is one of the most solid openings at White's disposal. If he is not anxious to win, White can draw more easily with this opening than with any other. But it offers little hope of an advantage, since Black can choose one of a number of equalizing lines.

After the usual 4 B—Kt5, Black can defend with either 4... B—Kt5, or 4... Kt—Q5 (The Rubinstein Defense).

In the symmetrical lines with 4 B—Kt5, B—Kt5, the most important is the Metger Variation (cols. 1-7), which arises after 5 O—O, O—O; 6 P—Q3 (see Diagram 23), B × Kt; 7 P × B, P—Q3; 8 B—Kt5, Q—K2. This leads to rather cramped positions where White's two Bishops and superior development are offset by his inferior Pawn structure. The traditional lines lead to fairly easy equality (cols. 2-4). A new idea for the defense is seen in col. 2, note (f). Black cannot avoid the Metger Variation very well after 6... B × Kt; the alternatives on his eighth move (cols. 8-11) are not particularly to be recommended, while the Svenonius Variation (cols. 14-15) is theoretically unsound. Nor can White vary with advantage; equalizing lines are pointed out in the notes to cols. 12 and 13.

DIAGRAM 23

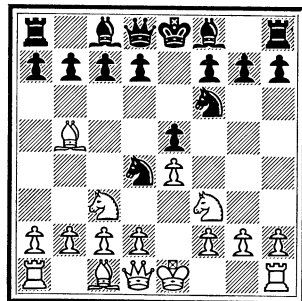
Pages 58-64, cols. 1-22



[After 6 P—Q3]

DIAGRAM 24

Pages 65-68, cols. 26-40



[After 4... Kt—Q5]

But Black does have a good alternative to the Metger Variation on his sixth move with 6... P—Q3 (instead of 6... B × Kt), seen in cols. 16-22. The normal 7 B—Kt5 then leads to no advantage against 7... Kt—K2; the weakening of the Pawn position is of no consequence (cols. 16-19). The purely symmetrical continuation 7 B—Kt5, B—Kt5 is bad for Black (col. 20).

In an important game against Euwe in 1936 Alekhine tried to revive an old line with 7 Kt—K2 (instead of the more usual 7 B—Kt5). By breaking the symmetry early Black obtains a satisfactory game (cols. 21-22).

The Nimzovitch Variation, 6 B × Kt (col. 23) practically guarantees White a draw but promises little more.

The other main line, the Rubinstein Defense, 4... Kt—Q5! (cols. 26-40) is probably the chief reason the Four Knights' has become scarce as an aggressive tournament weapon. Against it White has six replies, none of which yield any advantage (5 Kt × Kt, 5 O—O, 5 B—K2, 5 B—R4, 5 B—B4, 5 Kt × P).

(1) 5 Kt × Kt (cols. 26-27) is an equalizing line which leads to a quick draw.

(2) 5 O—O (col. 28) is inadequate because it leaves Black the two Bishops.

(3) 5 B—K2 (col. 29) leads to nothing against straight development.

(4) 5 B—R4 (cols. 30-33) looks promising at first sight because the Black KP is under attack. But Black can continue in gambit style and sacrifice the KP with 5... B—B4!. He always obtains enough compensation for the Pawn.

(5) 5 B—B4 (cols. 34-36) looks even stronger, since Black's KP is threatened and White's B has an eye on Black's KB2. But again the sacrifice of the KP is entirely adequate in all variations.

(6) 5 Kt × P (cols. 37-40) carries out the threat but is likewise insufficient. With 5... Q—K2 Black not only regains the Pawn but gets a winning attack in some variations. The line in col. 37 is especially striking.

Alternatives other than 4... B—Kt5 or 4... Kt—Q5 are of little value. It should be noted that 4... P—QR3 can transpose to the Ruy Lopez (cols. 41-43).

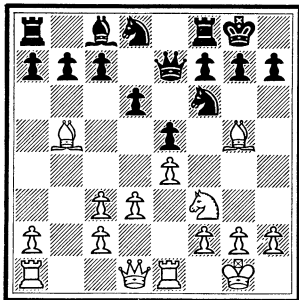
Alternatives on White's fourth move are compendium curiosities (cols. 44-45).

1 P-K4, P-K4; 2 Kt-KB3, Kt-QB3; 3 Kt-B3, Kt-B3; 4 B-Kt5, B-Kt5; 5 O-O, O-O; 6 P-Q3\*, B x Kt; 7 P x B, P-Q3; 8 B-Kt5, Q-K2 (a); 9 R-K1, Kt-Q1\*\*

	1	2	3	4	5
10	P-Q4 B-Kt5.....Kt-K3!				
11	P-KR3 B-R4 (b)	B-QB1 P-B4 (e).....		P-B3.....	R-Q1
12	P-Kt4! B-Kt3	P-Kt3 Kt-B2 (f)		B-B1 Q-B2	Kt-R4! (k) P-KKt3 (l)
13	P-Q5! (c) P-B3	B-B1 B-Kt5		P-Kt3 R-Q1	P-Kt3 K-Kt2
14	B-KB1 P x P	P-KR3 B-R4.....	B-Q2	Kt-R4 (i) P-Q4!	B-B1 P-KR4 (m)
15	P x P R-B1	B-KKt2 QR-Q1	B-KKt2 QR-B1	P-KB4 Kt x KP! (j)	B-KKt2 Kt-R2
16	P-B4 P-Kt3	P-Q5 Q-Q2	B-Kt2 B-R5	BP x P Kt x BP	R-B1 B-Q2
17	P-QR4 ± (d) B-Kt3 = (g)	Q-Q3 Kt-Q2 = (h)	Q-K2 Kt-Q2 = (h)	Q-Q3 Kt-K5 ±	R-Ktr ±

\* See p. 56, Diagram 23

\*\* DIAGRAM 25  
cols. 1-5



[After 9... Kt-Q1]

(a) The Metger Variation.

(b) 11... B x Kt; 12 Q x B, P-KR3; 13 B-KR4, P-Kt4; 14 B-Kt3, P-B3; 15 B-QB4, K-Kt2; 16 P x P, P x P; 17 Q-B5+. Tarrasch-Kostich, Gothenburg, 1920.

(c) Stronger than (1) 13 Kt-R4, P-KR3; 14 B-QB4! (weak is 14 Kt x B, P x Kt; 15 B-B4ch, K-R2; 16 B-R4, P-KKt4 ±. Wolf-Rubinstein, Teplitz-Schoenau, 1922), Kt-K3; 15 Kt x B, P x Kt; 16 P-B4!, P x B; 17 P-B5, KtP x P; 18 KtP x P, P-KKt3 =. Kmoch. (2) 13 B-Q3, Kt-K3; 14 B-QB1, Kt-Q2; 15 R-Ktr, P-Kt3; 16 K-Kt2, P-QB4; 17 P-Q5, Kt-B5ch =. Bogoljubow-Rubinstein, Hastings, 1922.

(d) Wolf-Cohn, Nuremberg, 1906.

(e) The most energetic. If in reply 12 P x KP, P x P; 13 Kt x P?, Kt-B2 wins a piece.

(f) An unusual way to equalize is 12... Q-B2; 13 P-Q5 (13 B-B1 is essential), P-B5!; 14 P x Kt, B x P; 15 B-Kt5, P-QR3; 16 B x Kt, P x B; 17 B-R4, P-Kt4; 18 Kt-R4, P x B; 19 Q-R5!, KR-Ktr! =. Goldstein-Purdy, Australian correspondence championship, 1939.

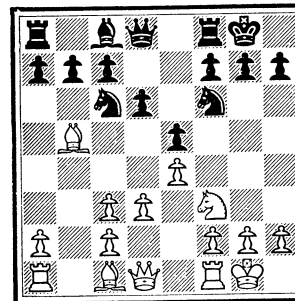
(g) Spielmann-Krejick, Vienna, 1929.

Notes continued on p. 60

1 P-K4, P-K4; 2 Kt-KB3, Kt-QB3; 3 Kt-B3, Kt-B3; 4 B-Kt5, B-Kt5; 5 O-O, O-O; 6 P-Q3, B x Kt; 7 P x B, P-Q3\*

	6	7	8	9	10
8	(B-Kt5) (Q-K2).....			P-KR3.....	Kt-K2 (i)
9	(R-K1).....	B x QKt (b) P x B	B-KR4 B-Kt5.....	Q-K2 (f)	Kt-R4 Kt-Kt3 (j)
10	B-QB4 Kt-QR4	P-KR3 P-KR3	P-KR3 B x Kt	Q-Q2! (g) Kt-Q1	Kt x Kt BP x Kt (k)
11	Kt-Q2 P-R3	B-K3 B-K3 (c)	Q x B P-Kt4	P-Q4 Kt-K3	B-B4ch K-R1
12	B-R4 B-K3	P-B4 P-B4	B-Kt3 Kt-Q2	P x P P x P	P-B4 P-KR3
13	B-QKt3 Kt x B	R-Ktr QR-Ktr	P-Q4 P-B3	Kt x P Kt-B4	P x P P x P
14	RP x Kt P-KKt4	Kt-Q2 P-Kt4	Q-Kt4 K-R1	Q-B4! P-Kt4	B-R4 P-KKt4
15	B-Kt3 Kt-K1	Q-K2 K-R2 = (d)	P-KR4 R-B2	B x P P x B	B-KKt3 Q-K2
16	P-Q4 P-KB3		RP x P? (e) RP x P	Q x Pch K-R2	P-Q4 B-Kt5
17	Kt-B1 ± (a)		P-B3 Kt-B1 =	B-B4+ (h)	Q-Q3 ± (l)

\* DIAGRAM 26  
cols. 6-10



[After 7... P-Q3]

(a) Bogatyrczuk-Botvinnik, Moscow, 1935.

(b) One of the most effective drawing lines

at White's disposal. An unusual possibility is 9 P-Q4, Kt-Q1; 10 P-Q5!, P-KR3; 11 B-KR4, P-B3; 12 B-R4?, B-Kt5?; 13 Q-Q3, P x P; 14 P x P, R-B1; 15 B-QKt3, K-R1; 16 Q-K3 ±. Apscheneek-Fine, Stockholm, 1937.

(c) Black cannot afford to vary too much, e.g., 11... Kt-Q2; 12 Kt-R2, P-KB4?; 13 P x P, R x P; 14 P-KB4!, P x P; 15 B x BP, Q-B2; 16 Q-Q2, Kt-Kt3; 17 P-B4!, B-K3?; 18 B x RP!+. Korchmar-Polyak, Ukrainian championship, 1937.

(d) Lilienthal-Capablanca, Moscow, 1936.

(e) Premature. Tarrasch maintained that White would have the better game by deferring this move until his Rooks are on the KR file. The column is Capablanca-Lasker, St. Petersburg, 1914.

Notes continued on p. 60

## Notes continued from p. 58

(h) 18 P × KP, P × P; 19 Kt—R2, Kt—Kt3; 20 P—QB4!, Q—K3!; 21 B—KB1, Kt—K1; 22 Kt—Kt4, P—B3; 23 Kt—K3, Kt—Q3. Belavienetz—Tolush, U.S.S.R. championship, 1939.

(i) 14 B—KKt2, preventing 14...P—Q4, followed by 15 Kt—R4 is stronger (Lasker).

(j) If 15...P × BP; 16 P—K5!, Kt—K5; 17 P × P, P—KB4; 18 P × P e.p. (18 Kt × P, Kt × BP), Kt × P(B3); 19 P—B5+. Spielmann—Rubinstein, Carlsbad, 1911. The column continuation is

## Notes continued from p. 59

(f) 9...K—R1 leads to equality, e.g., 10 P—Q4, Q—K2; 11 P—Q5? (better 11 R—K1), Kt—QKt1; 12 Kt—Q2, QKt—Q2; 13 P—B3, Kt—B4; 14 Kt—Kt3, B—Q2; 15 B—K2, P—QKt3 ♣. Treybal—Thomas, Carlsbad, 1929. 9...P—Kt4? is refuted by 10 Kt × KtP!, Kt × P (10...P × Kt; 11 B × P, Q—K2; 12 Q—Q2++); 11 P—KB4, P × P (Yates—Speyer, Hamburg, 1910); 12 P × Kt, P × Kt; 13 Q—R5, P × B; 14 R × P++.

(g) Better than 10 R—K1, Kt—Q1 as in cols. 2-5.

(h) 17...B—K3; 18 Kt—Kt4!, B × Kt; 19 P—K5, Kt—Kt1; 20 Q × B+. Tarasch—Spielmann, Berlin, 1920.

(i) 8...B—Q2 usually transposes into better known lines. An attempted refutation is 9 B × QKt, B × B; 10 Q—Q2, P—KR3; 11 B—R4, Q—K2; 12 P—Kt3!, B—Q2; 13 Kt—K1, P—KKt4; 14 B × P, P × B; 15 Q × Pch, K—R2; 16 Q—R4ch, K—Kt3; 17 P—KB4, P × P; 18 Kt—Kt2!

suggested by *Deutsche Schachzeitung*.

(k) Stronger than 12 P—Kt3, P—B4!; 13 P—Q5, Kt—B1; 14 Kt—R4, P—KR3; 15 P—B3, Q—B2; 16 B—B1, Kt—Kt3; 17 Kt × Kt, P × Kt ♣. Wolf—Bogoljubow, Maehrisch—Ostrau, 1923.

(l) If 12...P—Q4; 13 Kt—B5, Q—B1; 14 P × QP, KKt × P; 15 Q—B3 ±.

(m) Essential is 14...P—B4 to clarify the center. The column is Rauser—Ragozin, match Kiev—Leningrad, 1932.

and White has a powerful attack (game Riemann—Berger).

(j) Alternatives are: (1) 9...Kt—K1; 10 B—QB4, B—K3; 11 B × B, P × B; 12 Q—Kt4, Q—Q2; 13 P—KB4 ±. (2) 9...P—B3; 10 B—QB4, Kt—K1 (if 10...P—Q4; 11 B—Kt3, P × P; 12 P × P, Q × Q; 13 QR × Q, Kt—Kt3; 14 Kt × Kt, P × Kt; 15 B × Kt, P × B; 16 P—KB4+. Yates); 11 P—B4!, P—Q4; 12 B—Kt3, P—B3 (Teichmann prefers ...P—KR3); 13 BP × P, P × B; 14 R × Rch, K × R; 15 Q—B3ch, K—Kt1; 16 R—KB1, Kt—B2; 17 Q—B7ch, K—R1; 18 Q—B8ch, Q × Q; 19 R × Qch, Kt—Kt1; 20 P × P, P × P; 21 Kt—B3+. Schlechter—Duras, San Sebastian, 1911.

(k) Worse is 10...RP × Kt; 11 P—B4 and if now 11...P—B3; 12 B—QB4, Q—Kt3ch; 13 K—R1, Kt—Kt5; 14 Q—B3! Kt—K6; 15 P—B5!, Kt × R; 16 P—B6++.

(l) Janowski—Spielmann, Nuremberg, 1906.

1 P—K4, P—K4; 2 Kt—KB3, Kt—QB3; 3 Kt—B3, Kt—B3; 4 B—Kt5, B—Kt5; 5 O—O, O—O; 6 P—Q3, B × Kt; 7 P × B

	11	12	13	14	15
7 (P—Q3).....				P—Q4 (k)	
8 (B—Kt5).....	R—K1	P—KR3	B × Kt	P × P (o)	
(Kt—K2)	Q—K2 (e)	Kt—K2 (h)	P × B	Q × P (p)	
9 B × Kt (a)	Q—K2 (f)	Kt—R4	Kt × P	P—B4 (q)	
P × B	Kt—Q1	Kt—Kt3 (i)	Q—Q3	Q—Q3	
10 Kt—R4	P—Q4	Kt × Kt	B—B4	B × Kt	
P—B3 (b)	P—B4	RP × Kt	R—K1	P × B	
11 B—B4	B—Q3	B—Kt5	P × P! (l)	B—Kt2	
P—Q4	K—R1	P—B3	R × Kt	R—K1	
12 B—Kt3	P—KR3	B—QR4	P—Q4	R—K1	
Kt—Kt3	Kt—Kt1	Q—B2	R—K8!	B—Kt5	
13 Kt × Kt	B—Kt2	B—Kt3	B × Q	P—KR3	
RP × Kt	Kt—K3	Kt—R2	R × Q	B × Kt	
14 P—KB4	P—Kt3	B—K3	KR × R	Q × B	
KP × P (c)	P—B3	P—KKt4	P × B	Kt—Q2 (r)	
15 R × P	K—Kt2	P—Q4	P × P	R—K2	
K—Kt2	B—Q2	Q—K2	B—K3! (m)	QR—Kt1	
16 Q—B3 ± (d)	P—Q5 ± (g)	P × P ± (j)	QR—Ktr++ (n)	B—B3	
				P—QB4 =	

(a) Inferior is 9 B—QB4, Kt—Kt3; 10 Kt—R4, Kt—B5; 11 B × QKt, P × B; 12 Kt—B3, B—Kt5; 13 Q—Q2, B × Kt; 14 P × B, Kt—R4 ♣. Janowski—Lasker, match, 1909.

(b) Or 10...P—KB4; 11 P—KB4!, Kt—Kt3; 12 Kt × P!, B × Kt; 13 P × B, Kt × P; 14 P—Kt3, Q—Kt4; 15 Q—B3, P—QB3 (Leonhardt—Johner, Vienna, 1908); 16 B—B4, P—Q4; 17 B—Kt3, P—B3; 18 K—R1 ±.

(c) 14...QP × P?; 15 QP × P, Q × Q; 16 QR × Q, P × P; 17 R × P, B—K3; 18 B × B, P × B; 19 P—K5!, P × P; 20 R × Rch, R × R; 21 R—Q7, R—B2; 22 R × R followed by P—KR4 and wins. A game won by Em. Lasker.

(d) Maroczy—Bernstein, Ostend, 1906.

(e) A simple way to equalize is 8...B—Kt5; 9 P—Q4, Kt—Q2; 10 P—KR3, B × Kt; 11 Q × B, P × P; 12 B × Kt, Kt—

(f) A novel idea is 9 P—Q4, Kt—Q1 (9...B—Kt5 or 9...Kt—Q2 would have been better); 10 B—R3!, P—B4; 11 Kt × P!, Q—B2; 12 Kt—B4!, Kt—K3 (12...P—QR3; 13 Kt × P!); 13 P—Q5, Kt—B5; 14 B—B1, Kt—Kt3; 15 Kt—Kt2+. Simonson—Suesman, New York, 1938.

(g) Tylor—Vidmar, Nottingham, 1936.

(h) Weaker is 8...P—KR3; 9 R—K1, P—R3; 10 B—R4, B—Q2; 11 B—Kt3, QKt—R4; 12 Kt—R2, Kt × B; 13 RP × Kt, Kt—R2; 14 P—KB4 ±. Bogoljubow—Gruenfeld, Moscow, 1925.

(i) Better 9...P—B3; 10 B—R4, Kt—Q2; 11 P—KB4, Kt—QB4; 12 B—Kt3, Kt × B; 13 RP × Kt, Kt—Q4 =. (Loevenfisch).

(j) Maroczy—Salwe, Carlsbad, 1907.

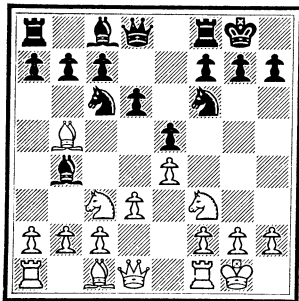
(k) The Svenonius Variation.

Notes continued on p. 63

1 P-K4, P-K4; 2 Kt-KB3, Kt-QB3; 3 Kt-B3, Kt-B3; 4 B-Kt5  
B-Kt5; 5 O-O, O-O; 6 P-Q3, P-Q3\*

	16	17	18	19	20
7	B-Kt5 Kt-K2 (a)				B-Kt5
8	Kt-KR4 P-B3 (b)		B × Kt P × B	Kt-Q5 Kt-Q5	
9	B-QB4 P-Q4	Kt-Kt3	K-R1 (g)	Kt-KR4 (j) Kt-Kt3 (k)	Kt × B (o) Kt × B
10	B-Kt3 (c) Q-Q3	Kt × Kt P × Kt	P-B4 P × P!	Kt × Kt RP × Kt (l)	Kt-Q5 Kt-Q5
11	P-KR3 (d) P-KR3	P-B4 B-B4ch!	B × Kt (h) P × B	P-B4 B-B4ch	Q-Q2! Kt × Ktch (p)
12	B × Kt Q × B	K-R1 B-K6	R × P Kt-Kt3	K-R1 K-Kt2	P × Kt B × P
13	Q-R5! P-Q5 (e)	Q-B3! B × P	Kt × Ktch RP × Kt	P-B5 (m) P × P	P-KR3! P-B3
14	Kt-K2 B-Q3	B × B P × B	B-Kt3 Q-K2	P × P R-R1	Kt × Ktch P × Kt
15	P-B4 P × P	Q × P Q-K2	Kt-K2 B-R4	Q-Kt4ch K-B1 (n)	B-R4 K-R1
16	Kt-KB3 ±	Q-Kt3 B-K3 = (f)	P-B3 B-Q2 † (i)	Kt-K4 B-Kt3 =	K-R2++ (q)

\* DIAGRAM 27  
cols. 16-20



[After 6... P-Q3]

(a) For 7... B × Kt see cols. 1-15. Tarrasch suggests 7... B-K3; 8 P-Q4, P × P; 9 Kt × P, P-KR3; 10 B-KR4, Kt-K4; 11 P-B4, B-QB4 (so far Tarrasch—

Lasker, 16th match game, 1908); 12 K-R1, Kt-Kt3; 13 B × Kt, Q × B; 14 KKt-K2 =.

(b) If 8... Kt-Kt3; 9 Kt × Kt, RP × Kt; 10 Kt-Q5, B-QB4?; 11 Kt × Ktch, P × Kt; 12 B-KR6++.

(c) 10 P × P, B × Kt; 11 P × B, KKt × P; 12 Q-K1, K-R1; 13 P-Q4, P-B3; 14 B-Q2 (Apschenek—Euwe, Paris, 1924), Kt-B4 =.

(d) Or 11 P × P, B × Kt; 12 P × B, QKt × P; 13 Q-Q2, B-Q2; 14 QR-K1, QR-K1; 15 K-R1, Kt-R4 =. Atkins—Blake, Glasgow, 1911. 11 Q-B3 and 11 P-B4 have also been played.

(e) 13... B × Kt?; 14 P × B, K-R2; 15 Kt-B3, Kt-Kt3; 16 P × P+. Tarrasch—Yates, Hastings, 1922.

(f) Buchmann—Marron, Correspondence, 1930.

Notes continued on p. 63

Notes continued from p. 61

(l) 11 Q-B3 leads to nothing: 11... P × P; 12 P × P, R × Kt; 13 QR-Q1 (13 KR-Q1, B-Kt5; 14 Q-Kt3?!, B × R; 15 B × R, Q-Q7++). Capablanca—Tarrasch, St. Petersburg, 1914), B-Kt5; 14 R × Q (or 14 Q-Kt3, Kt × P!; 15 Q × B, Q-K3 =. Tarrasch), B × Q; 15 R × Kt, P × R; 16 B × R, P × B; 17 P × B, R-Kt1 =.

(m) All other moves lose immediately, e.g., 15... P-Q4; 16 P-QB4!, B-K3; Kt-Q2; 19 R × P, B-K3; 20 R-Kt1; if 16... Kt-Q4; 17 R-Kt7, Kt × P; 18 R-K1, R-QB1 (18... B-Q4; 19 R × RP!); 19 P-B7, Kt-Q4; 20 R-Kt8,

Kt × P; 21 R × Rch, B × R; 22 R-K7. Euwe recommends 16 KR-Kt1, which is also good but not quite as vigorous as the text.

(o) 8 Q-K2, P × P; 9 P × P, B-Kt5; 10 B-R3, R-K1; 11 P-R3, B-R4; 12 KR-Q1, Q-B1; 13 Q-K3, B-Kt3 =. Janowski—Sergeant, Hastings, 1925-26.

(p) 8... Kt × P; 9 B × Kt, P × B; 10 Kt × P, Kt × P; 11 Q-Q2 ±.

(q) On 9 B-QB4, Q-R4; 10 R-Kt1, P-QR3; 11 R-K1, P-QKt3; 12 Q-K2, B-Kt5 =. Lasker—Réti, Moscow, 1925. If now 13 B-KKt5?, P-K5!; 14 B × Kt, P × Kt; 15 P × P, B-Q2; 16 B-R4, QR-K1; 17 Q-Q2, Kt-K4 †. (Loevenfisch.)

(r) Lundin—Krause, 1936.

Notes continued from p. 62

(g) Alternatives are: (1) 9... Kt-K1; 10 P-B4 (if 10 Q-R5, Kt-B2; 11 Kt-B5, QB × Kt; 12 P × B, P-Q4; 13 P-B6, P-KKt3!; 14 P × Kt, B × P =. Euwe), B × Kt; 11 P × B, P-Q4; 12 B-Kt3, P-B3; 13 P × KP!, P × B; 14 R × Rch, K × R; 15 Q-B3ch+. White transposed into col. 10 note (j), (2). (2) 9... B-K3?; 10 B × Kt, P × B; 11 B × B, P × B; 12 Q-Kt4ch, K-B2; 13 P-B4+.

(h) 11 R × P is met by 11... Q-R4!

(i) Tylor—Lasker, Nottingham, 1936.

(j) White must prevent ... P-KB4.

(k) Also good is 9... P-B3; 10 B-B4, Kt-Kt3; 11 Kt × Kt, P × Kt; 12 P-B4, K-Kt2; 13 Q-B3, B-B4ch (stronger than 13... Q-K2; 14 Kt-K2, B-K3?; 15 B × B ±. Tarrasch—Spielmann, Hamburg, 1910); 14 K-R1, R-R1 and Black's attack is a bit more promising than White's.

(l) 10... BP × Kt is likewise strong.

(m) 13 Q-B3?, P × P!; 14 Q × P, B-Q5!; 15 B-B4, R-R1; 16 P-KKt3? (16 P-KR3, Q-K2 † was the only defense), R × Pch!; 17 K × R, P-KKt4! and either wins the Queen or mates. Schories—Gunston, Hamburg, 1910.

(n) Krueger—Schories, Hamburg, 1921.

(o) A good positional alternative is 9 P—

B3, Kt × B; 10 Kt × B, P-B3; 11 Kt-B2, P-KR3; 12 B-R4, P-Kt4; 13 B-Kt3, Kt-Q2; 14 Kt-K3+. Chajes—Marshall, New York, 1915. Less forceful than the text is 9 B-QB4, Q-Q2!; 10 Kt × Ktch, P × Kt; 11 B × P, P-KR3; 12 P-B3, Kt × Ktch; 13 P × Kt, B-KR4; 14 K-R1, K-R2; 15 R-KKt1, R-KKt1; 16 R-Kt3, B-B4 and White cannot win easily. Analysis by Dr. B. and Ed. Lasker.

(p) Black is lost. The alternatives are: (1) 11... Q-Q2; 12 B × Kt, B × Kt; 13 Kt-K7ch, K-R1; 14 B × Pch, K × B; 15 Q-Kt5ch and mates. (2) 11... P-B3; 12 Kt × Ktch, P × Kt; 13 B-R4, B × Kt; 14 Q-R6, Kt-K7ch; 15 K-R1, B × Pch; 16 K × B, Kt-B5ch; 17 K-R1, Kt-Kt3; 18 P-KB4, Kt × B; 19 Q × Kt, K-R1; 20 R-B3!, R-KKt1; 21 R-R3, R-Kt2; 22 R-KKt1!; R × Rch; 23 K × R, Q-Kt1ch; 24 R-Kt3 and wins. (Euwe). (3) 11... B × Kt; 12 B × Kt, P × B; 13 Q-R6, Kt-K7ch; 14 K-R1, B × Pch; 15 K × B, Kt-B5ch; 16 Kt × Kt, P × Kt; 17 K-R1 and wins.

(q) 16... R-KKt1; 17 R-KKt1, R-Kt3; 18 Q-K3, B-R4; 19 P-KB4 and the threat of P-B5 is decisive. Analysis by Euwe.

1 P-K4, P-K4; 2 Kt-KB3, Kt-QB3; 3 Kt-B3, Kt-B3; 4 B-Kt5, B-Kt5

	21	22	23	24	25
5	(O-O).....				Kt-Q5 (n)
	(O-O).....			P-Q3? (l)	Kt × Kt!
6	(P-Q3).....		B × Kt (f)	Kt-Q5!	P × Kt
	(P-Q3) (a)		QP × B (g)	B-QB4	P-K5!
7	Kt-K2		P-Q3 (h)	P-Q4	P × Kt
	B-QB4.....	Kt-K2 (c)	B-Kt5 (i)	P × P	QP × P
8	P-B3	P-B3	P-KR3	Kt × P	B-K2
	B-Kt3	B-R4	B-KR4 (j)	B × Kt	P × Kt
9	Kt-Kt3	Kt-Kt3	B-Kt5	Q × B	B × P
	K-R1	P-B3	Q-Q3	O-O	O-O
10	B-K3	B-R4	B × Kt	Kt × Ktch	O-O
	Kt-KKt5	Kt-Kt3	Q × B	Q × Kt	B-Q3
11	B × B	P-Q4	P-Kt4	Q × Q	P-Q4
	RP × B	R-K1? (d)	B-Kt3	P × Q	P-KB4!
12	P-Q4	B-Kt3	K-Kt2	B-KR6	P-B4?
	P-B3	P × P	QR-Q1	R-K1	B-K2
13	P-KR3	P × P	Q-K2	KR-K1	P-Q5
	Kt-R3	B-K3	B × Kt	P-R3	P-B4
14	B × Kt	Kt-Kt5!	P × B	B-KB1	B-Q2
	P × B ♯ (b)	B × B	P-B4	K-R1	B-Q3
15		Q × B ± (e)	Kt-Q2 ± (k)	B-Q2 ± (m)	R-K1
					Q-B3 ♯ (o)

(a) 6...P-Q4?; 7 QKt × P, Kt × Kt; 8 P × Kt, Q × P; 9 B-QB4, Q-Q3; 10 P-B3, B-QB4; 11 P-QKt4, B-Kt3; 12 P-QR4, P-QR4; 13 P-Kt5, Kt-K2; 14 Kt-Kt5+. Sterk-Marshall, Pistyán, 1912.

(b) Maroczy-Bogoljubow, London, 1922.

(c) Another equalizing line is 7...B-Kt5; 8 P-B3, B-QB4; 9 B-K3, B-Kt3; 10 K-R1, Kt-K2; 11 Kt-Kt3, Kt-R4; 12 P-Q4, K-R1; 13 Kt × Kt, P × P; 14 B × P, B × QKt; 15 B-K2, Kt-B3 =. Maroczy-Taylor, Ramsgate, 1929.

(d) Simpler was 11...P-Q4; 12 KP × P, P-K5; 13 Kt-K5, P × P; 14 B-KKt5, P-KR3 =. Schlechter-Duras, Vienna, 1908. Or 11...P × P; 12 Kt × P, P-Q4!; 13 B-KKt5, P-KR3; 14 B × Kt,

Q × B; 15 P × P, P × P; 16 B-Kt3, B-Kt3; 17 B × P, R-Q1 =. Maroczy-Canal, Bad Sliac, 1932.

(e) 15...Q-Q2; 16 P-B3. Alekhine-Euwe, Amsterdam, 1936.

(f) The Nimzovitch Variation.

(g) Or 6...KtP × B; 7 Kt × P, Q-K1 (if 7...R-K1; 8 P-Q4, B × Kt; 9 P × B, Kt × P; 10 Q-B3 ±); 8 Kt-Q3, B × Kt; 9 QP × B, Q × P; 10 R-K1, Q-KR5; 11 Q-B3, B-R3; 12 Kt-B5 ±. Nimzovitch-Vidmar, Carlsbad, 1911.

(h) White can obtain an easily drawn position by 7 Kt × P, R-K1; 8 Kt-Q3, B × Kt; 9 QP × B, Kt × P; 10 Q-B3, Kt-Q3; 11 B-B4, Q-B3.

Notes continued on p. 67

## RUBINSTEIN DEFENSE

1 P-K4, P-K4; 2 Kt-KB3, Kt-QB3; 3 Kt-B3, Kt-B3; 4 B-Kt5, Kt-Q5!

	26	27	28	29	30
5	Kt × Kt.....		O-O.....	B-K2.....	B-R4
	P × Kt		Kt × B! (f)	P-Q3! (j)	B-B4
6	P-K5!.....	Kt-Q5?	Kt × Kt	P-Q3	P-Q3
	P × Kt	Kt × Kt	P-B3	P-B4!	O-O
7	P × Kt	P × Kt	Kt-B3	O-O	O-O (l)
	Q × P (a)	Q-B3!	P-Q3	B-K2	P-Q3
8	QP × P	O-O	P-Q4	Kt-K1	P-KR4
	B-B4 (b)	B-K2	Q-B2! (g)	O-O	P-B3
9	Q-K2ch (c)	P-KB4	Kt-K1 (h)	P-B4	Kt × Kt
	Q-K3	O-O	B-K2	P × P	B × Kt
10	B-QB4	Q-B3	K-R1	B × P	Kt-K2
	Q × Qch	P-B4	P-QKt4	P-Q4!	B-Kt3
11	K × Q	P-QKt3	P-QR3	P × P	Kt-Kt3
	P-Q3	P-Q3	B-Kt2	Kt × QP	Kt-K1
12	B-K3	B-Kt2	P-B4	Kt × Kt	B-Kt3
	B × B	B-B4	P × QP	Q × Kt	Kt-B2
13	K × B	QR-B1	Q × P	B-B3	B-K3
	B-K3	B-Q1!	P-B4!	Kt × Bch	Kt-K3
14	B × B	B-Q3	Q-Q3	Kt × Kt	P-QB3
	P × B = (d)	B-R4 ♯ (e)	P-QR3 ♯ (i)	B-B3 ♯ (k)	P-Kt3 ♯ (m)

(a) If 7...P × Pch; 8 B × P, Q × P; 9 O-O, B-K2; 10 B-B3, Q-Kt4; 11 R-K1!, O-O (11...Q × B; 12 Q-Kt4++); 12 R-K5, P-KB4; 13 Q-Q5ch, K-R1; 14 QR-K1+ (Dr. Olland).

(b) Or 8...Q-K4ch; 9 Q-K2, Q × Qch; 10 B × Q, P-Q3; 11 B-K3, B-B4; 12 B-Q3, B × B; 13 P × B, P-Q4; 14 P-Q4, K-Q2 =. Maroczy-Kmoch, San Remo, 1930.

(c) 9 O-O, O-O; 10 Q-R5, P-Q3; 11 B-Q3, P-KR3 =.

(d) Kashdan-Alekhine, Bled, 1931.

(e) Wolf-Alekhine, Carlsbad, 1923.

(f) Best. If (1) 5...P-B3; 6 B-B4, P-QKt4; 7 B-K2! (not 7 B-Kt3, P-Q3; 8 P-Q3, P-QR4 ♯), P-Q3; 8 P-Q3, B-K2; 8 Kt × Kt, P × Kt; 9 Kt-Kt1 ±. Or (2) 5...B-Kt5; 6 B-R4, O-O; 7 Kt × P, P-Q3; 8 Kt-Q3, B-

R4; 9 P-K5, P × P; 10 Kt × P ±. (Analysis by Henneberger).

(g) Weak is 8...B-Kt5; 9 P × P, B × Kt; 10 Q × B, P × P; 11 B-Kt5 ±.

(h) If 9 P-KR3, P-QKt4; 10 P-R3, P-QR4 ♯ (Krause).

(i) 15 Kt-B3, R-Q1; 16 B-Q2, O-O; 17 QR-Q1, KR-K1; 18 Kt-Kt5, P-R3; 19 Kt-R3, Q-B3. Euwe-Bogoljubow, 10th match game, 1929.

(j) Better than 5...Kt × Ktch; 6 B × Kt, B-B4; 7 O-O, O-O; 8 P-Q3, P-Q3; 9 B-K3, B-K3 (9...B × B is simpler); 10 P-Q4!, B-Kt3; 11 P-QKt3, P × P; 12 B × P, Kt-Q2; 13 B × B, RP × B; 14 P-K5! ±. Alekhine-van den Bosch, Nauheim, 1936.

(k) Maroczy-Stoltz, Bled, 1931.

Notes continued on p. 67



## RUBINSTEIN DEFENSE

1 P-K4, P-K4; 2 Kt-KB3, Kt-QB3; 3 Kt-B3, Kt-B3; 4 B-Kt5,  
Kt-Q5!

	31	32	33	34	35
5	(B-R4).....			B-B4	
	(B-B4).....		Kt × Ktch (e)	B-B4	
6	Kt × P		Q × Kt	Kt × P (i)	
	O-O		B-K2	Q-K2	
7	P-Q3.....	Kt-Q3 (b)	Q-Kt3 (f)	Kt-B3 (j)	
	P-Q4	B-Kt3	O-O!	P-Q4	
8	B-KKt5	Kt-B4 (c)	Q × P (g)	B × P.....	Kt × P
	P-B3	P-Q4!	R-K1	B-KKt5	Kt × Kt (m)
9	Q-Q2	P-Q3	Q-B4	P-Q3	B × Kt
	R-K1	B-Kt5	B-Kt5	P-B3	P-QB3
10	P-B4	P-B3	P-K5 (h)	B-Kt3	Kt × Kt
	P-Kt4	Kt-R4!	Q-K2	Kt-Q2 (k)	P × B
11	B-Kt3	Kt × Kt	O-O	B-Kt5	Kt-Kt3
	P-KR3	B × Kt	B × Kt	Kt × Ktch (l)	P × P
12	B-KR4	Kt × P	QP × B	P × Kt	Kt × B
	Kt × KP!	Q-R5ch	Q × P	Q × B	Q × Kt
13	B × Q	P-Kt3	Q × Q	P × B	P-Q4
	Kt × Q	Kt × KBPch	R × Q	Kt-K4	P × P e.p.
14	K × Kt	Q × Kt	B-K3	P-KR3	Q × P
	R × B ≠ (a)	B × Q+ (d)	P-Q3 =	Q-B5+	O-O = (n)

(a) Tarrasch—Rubinstein, San Sebastian, 1912.

(b) After 7 Kt-B3, P-Q4! White can at best draw: 8 Kt × Kt, B × Kt; 9 O-O, Kt × P (better 9... P × P); 10 Kt × Kt, P × Kt; 11 P-Q3, P × P; 12 Q × P, B-K3 =. Havasi—Knoch, Vienna, 1930. The text leads to great complications where White holds on to his Pawn but must submit to a strong attack.

(c) Von Claparède recommended 8 P-K5, Kt-K1; 9 O-O, P-Q3; 10 P × P, Kt × QP; 11 K-R1. After 11... P-QB3; 12 P-B4, Kt(Q3)-B4 Black's attack retains its force. If 8 P-K5, Kt-K1; 9 Kt-Q5, P-Q3; 10 P-QB3, Q-R5!; 11 Kt-K3, Q-K5!; 12 Kt-Kt4, P × P; 13 P × Kt, P × P; 14 Q-B2, Q-K4; 15 P-B4?, Q × P; 16 Kt-B4, Q-R5ch; 17 K-B1, P-Q6!; 18 Kt × P, B-KB4; 19 Kt × B, RP × Kt; 20 B-Kt3, R-Q1; 21 resigns. Tylor—Milner-Barry, Hastings, 1938-39.

(d) 15 P × Q, B × R; 16 K-K2, P-QB3; 17 Kt-B4. Canal—Eliskases, Kecskemet, 1933. Now 17... KR-K1! keeps the exchange and the game: 18 B-Kt3 (if 18 B-Q2, B × P!), B-B2; 19 B-K3, B × Kt; 20 B × B, B-Kt7+. Knoch. In the game there occurred instead 17... B-B2?; 18 B-K3, B × Kt; 19 B × B, B-Kt7; 20 R-KKt1, B-R6; 21 B-R6 and White wins the exchange and the game.

(e) Another playable alternative is 5... P-B3; 6 O-O, P-Q3; 7 Kt × Kt, P × Kt; 8 Kt-K2, Kt × P; 9 Kt × P, Kt-B4; 10 R-K1ch, B-K3 =. Schlechter—Marshall, Ostend, 1906.

(f) Or 7 P-Q3, P-B3; 8 O-O, P-Q3; 9 P-KR3, P-KR3; 10 B-Kt3, B-K3; 11 Kt-K2, Q-Q2; 12 P-Q4, O-O-O =. Maroczy—Rohacek, Bad Sliac, 1932.

(g) 8 O-O, P-Q3; 9 P-Q3, P-B3 =.

Notes continued on p. 67

Notes continued from p. 64

(i) Alternatives are: (1) 7... Q-K2; 8 Kt-K2, B-Kt5; 9 Kt-Kt3, QR-Q1; 10 P-KR3, B-B1; 11 Q-K2, KR-K1; 12 P-R3, B-Q3; 13 Kt-R4, K-R1; 14 QKt-B5, Q-K3 =. Goldstein—Blake, London, 1923. (2) 7... R-K1; 8 P-KR3, B-Q3; 9 Kt-R2, P-B4; 10 Q-K2, Kt-Q2; 11 Kt-Q5, Kt-B1; 12 P-QB3, P-B4; 13 Kt-B3?, P-KB5!; 14 P-Q4, P-B3; 15 P × BP, B × BP; 16 Q-B4, Kt-K3 ≠. Tolush—Alatortsev, Moscow, 1945. (3) 7... B × Kt; 8 P × B, R-K1; 9 P-KR3, Q-Q3; 10 B-K3, P-B4; 11 Kt-Q2, Kt-Q2; 12 P-KB4, P-QKt3; 13 Kt-B4, Q-K2; 14 Q-B3 ±. Consultants—Bogoljubow, U.S.S.R., 1924.

(j) 8... QB × Kt; 9 Q × B, B × Kt; 10 P × B, Kt-Q2 gives Black complete

equality.

(k) Nimzovitch—Leonhardt, San Sebastian, 1911.

(l) Another bad variation is 5... Kt-Q5?; 6 Kt × Kt, P × Kt; 7 P-K5, P × Kt; 8 KtP × P, B-K2; 9 P × Kt, P × P; 10 P-Q4, P-B3; 11 P-Q5!+. Wildschutz—Engert, 1935.

(m) Tarrasch—Lasker, 12th match game, 1908.

(n) Or 5 P-Q3, Kt-Q5; 6 B-R4, O-O; 7 O-O, P-B3; 8 Kt × Kt, P × Kt; 9 Kt-K2, P-Q4 =. Wainwright—Yates, Malvern, 1921.

(o) Schiffers—Steinitz, Hastings, 1895. Compare col. 26.

Notes continued from p. 65

(l) 7 Kt × P, P-Q4 transposes to col. 31. If 7 B-KKt5, P-B3; 8 O-O, P-KR3; 9 B-R4, P-KKt4! (but not 9... P-Q3; 10 Kt × Kt, B × Kt; 11 Kt-K2, B × P; 12 R-Kt1, B-QR6; 13 P-KB4! ±. Te Kolste—Loman, Holland, 1934); 10 B-

KKt3, Kt × Ktch; 11 Q × Kt, P-Q3; 12 Q-Q1, B-KKt5 ≠. Sorokin—Rausser, 1933.

(m) Botvinnik—Fine, AVRO tournament, 1938.

Notes continued from p. 66

(h) If 10 P-B3?, P-QKt4!; 11 B × P, P-B3; 12 B-R4, Q-R4; 13 B-Kt3, B-R3; 14 K-Q1, P-Q4+. Nimzovitch—Perlis, San Sebastian, 1912. The column is analysis by Loevenfisch.

(i) Too tame is 6 P-Q3, P-Q3; 7 Kt-QR4!, P-QKt4!; 8 Kt × Kt, P × B; 9 Kt-K2, P × P; 10 Q × P, B-Kt3; 11 O-O, O-O =. Post—Flamberg, Mannheim, 1914.

(j) 7 Kt-Q3, P-Q4; 8 B × P, Kt × B; 9 Kt × Kt, Q × Pch; 10 Kt-K3, B-Q3; 11 O-O, B-K3; 12 Kt-K1, O-O-O ≠. Nimzovitch—Alekhine, tie match,

St. Petersburg, 1914.

(k) Bernstein—Rubinstein, Vilna, 1912. The rest of the column is analysis by Tarrasch.

(l) Also strong is 11... Q-Q3; 12 Kt-QKt1, Kt-K4; 13 QKt-Q2, B-Kt5; 14 P-B3, Kt × Pch+. Spielmann.

(m) An alternative is 8... Q × Pch; 9 Kt-K3, B-KKt5; 10 B-K2, Kt × B; 11 Q × Kt, O-O-O; 12 P-Q3, Q-K3; 13 O-O, Kt-Q4 and Black has enough for his Pawn. Analysis by Krause.

(n) Janowski—Marshall, Paris, 1905.

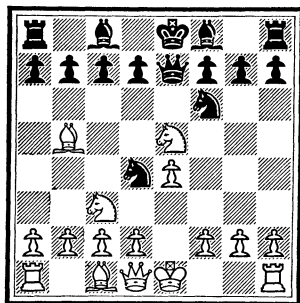
## RUBINSTEIN DEFENSE

1 P-K4, P-K4; 2 Kt-KB3, Kt-QB3; 3 Kt-B3, Kt-B3; 4 B-Kt5, Kt-Q5!

	36	37	38	39	40
5	(B-B4).....	Kt × P			
	P-B3 (a)	Q-K2!*			Kt × P? (l)
6	Kt × P	P-B4.....		Kt-B3 (j)	Kt × Kt
	P-Q4	Kt × B		Kt × B	Kt × B
7	P × P	Kt × Kt		Kt × Kt	Kt × BP!
	P × P	P-Q3		Q × Pch	Q-K2
8	B-Kt5ch	Kt-KB3		Q-K2	Kt × R
	Kt × B	Q × Pch (c)		Q × Qch	Q × Ktch
9	Kt × Kt	K-B2		K × Q	K-B1
	P-QR3	Kt-Kt5ch		Kt-Q4	Kt-Q5
10	Q-K2	K-Kt3 (d)		R-K1	P-Q3
	B-K2	Q-Kt3!.....	K-Q1	P-KB3	Q-B4
11	Kt-Q4	Kt-R4 (e)	P-KR3	P-Q3	P-KR4!
	O-O	Q-R4	Kt-R3	K-B2	P-QKt3
12	O-O	Kt × BPch? (f)	P-Q4	B-Q2	B-Kt5
	R-K1	K-Q1	B-K2	P-QR3	P-Kt3
13	Kt(Q4)-B3	Kt × R	R-K1	Kt-B3	Q-Q2
	Q-B2	P-KKt4	Q-Kt3ch	Kt-Kt5!	B-KKt2
14	P-Q4	P × P (g)	K-R2 ± (i)	QR-B1	R-K1ch+ (m)
	B-KB4 = (b)	Q × P++ (h)		P-QKt3 ± (k)	

## \* DIAGRAM 28

cols. 37-39



[After 5... Q-K2]

(a) Also feasible is 5... P-Q3; 6 Kt-KKt5, Kt-K3; 7 P-Q4, Kt × Kt; 8 B × Kt, B-K2; 9 O-O, O-O; 10 Q-

Q3, P-B3; 11 P-QR4, Q-Kt3 =. Panov—Yudovitch, Trade Unions Championship, U.S.S.R., 1936.

(b) Nimzovitch—Loevenfisch, St. Petersburg, 1914.

(c) 8... P-B3; 9 Kt-B3, Kt × P; 10 O-O, Kt × Kt; 11 QP × Kt, Q-B2; 12 R-K1ch (12 Kt-Q4, B-K2; 13 Q-R5. Bogoljubow), B-K2; 13 Q-K2, B-Kt5 (Rubinstein) is doubtful for Black.

(d) Or 10 K-Kt1, Q-B3; 11 Q-K2ch, B-K2; 12 P-KR3, Q-Kt3ch; 13 P-Q4, Kt-B3; 14 K-R2, B-Q2; 15 R-K1, O-O ≠. Bogoljubow.

(e) 11 Q-K2ch, K-Q1; 12 R-K1, B-Q2; 13 QKt-Q4, Kt-K6 dis ch; 14 K-B2, Kt × BP; 15 Kt × Kt, Q × Kt; 16 P-QKt4, P-QR4; 17 B-R3, P × P; 18 B × P, Q-KB4 ≠. Spielmann—Rubinstein, Baden-Baden, 1925.

Notes continued on p. 70

1 P-K4, P-K4; 2 Kt-KB3, Kt-QB3; 3 Kt-B3, Kt-B3

	41	42	43	44	45
4	(B-Kt5).....			P-Q4.....	P-KKt3 (p)
	B-B4.....		P-QR3 (h)	B-Kt5 (m)	P-Q4
5	O-O! (a)		B × Kt (i)	Kt × P	P × P
	P-Q3.....	O-O	QP × B	KKt × P (n)	Kt × P
6	P-Q4	Kt × P	Kt × P	Q-Kt4!	B-Kt2
	P × P	R-K1 (e)	Kt × P	KKt × Kt	Kt × Kt
7	Kt × P	Kt-B3! (f)	Kt × Kt (j)	Q × P	KtP × Kt
	B-Q2	Kt × P	Q-Q5	R-B1	B-Q3
8	Kt-B5! (b)	P-Q4	O-O	P-QR3	O-O
	O-O (c)	Kt × Kt	Q × KKt	B-R4	O-O
9	B-Kt5	P × Kt	R-K1	Kt × Kt	P-Q3
	B × Kt (d)	B-K2	B-K3	QP × Kt	B-KKt5
10	P × B	P-Q5	P-Q4	Q-K5ch	P-KR3
	Kt-Q5	Kt-Kt1	Q-KB4 (k)	Q-K2	B-Q2
11	B-Q3	B-KB4	B-Kt5	Q × Qch	R-Kt1
	P-Q4	P-QR3	P-R3 (l)	K × Q	R-Kt1
12	B × Kt	B-R4	Q-Q3	B-Q2	R-K1
	P × B	B-B3	K-Q2	B-B4	R-K1 = (q)
13	Kt-R4	P-Q6!	B-R4	B × Kt	
	Q-Q3	P-B3	Q-QKt4!	B × Bch	
14	Q-Kt4ch ±	B-QKt3 ± (g)	Q-Q2	P × B ± (o)	
			R-K1 =		

(a) 5 Kt × P is met by 5... Kt × Kt; 6 P-Q4, B-Q3!; 7 P-B4 (Euwe recommends 7 P × Kt), Kt-B3; 8 P-K5, B-Kt5!; 9 P-Q5, Kt-K5; 10 Q-Q3, Kt × Kt; 11 KtP × Kt, B-K2; 12 P × Kt, QP × P =. Analysis by Bardeleben.

(b) Weaker is 8 B-K3, B-Kt3 (or 8... O-O; 9 Kt × Kt, P × Kt; 10 B × B, P × KB =. See Ruy Lopez, Classical Defense); 9 P-KR3, O-O; 10 B × Kt, P × B; 11 B-Kt5, R-K1; 12 Q-Q3 =. Muffang—Goldstein, London, 1922.

(c) 8... B × Kt; 9 P × B, Q-Q2; 10 R-K1ch, K-B1; 11 B-Q3, R-K1; 12 B-KKt5 ±.

(d) Or 9... P-KR3; 10 B-KR4, Kt-K4; 11 B × B, QKt × B; 12 Kt-Q5 ±.

(e) On Marshall's 6... Kt-Q5; 7 B-B4 transposes to column 40 note (l). If 6...

B-Q5; 7 Kt-B3, B × Kt; 8 QP × B, Kt × P; 9 R-K1, Kt-B4 (or 9... P-Q4; 10 P-B4!+); 10 Q-Q5, Kt-K3; 11 Q-R5, Q-B3; 12 B-Q3, P-KR3; 13 R-K4 ±. Rosenkranz—Levitzky, All Russian Tournament, 1906.

(f) If 7 Kt × Kt, QP × Kt; 8 B-B4, Kt-Kt5!+. Tattersall's attack.

(g) Maroczy—Pillsbury, Nuremberg, 1896.

(h) 4... P-Q3 and 4... B-K2 transpose into the Ruy Lopez.

(i) For 5 B-R4 see Ruy Lopez.

(j) A novel suggestion is 7 Q-R5!, e.g., 7... Kt-Q3; 8 P-Q4, B-K3; 9 B-B4, B-K2; 10 O-O-O, O-O; 11 KR-K1 ±. Analysis by Emory and Marshall.

Notes continued on p. 70

## Notes continued from p. 68

- (f) If 12 P—KR3, Kt—B3; 13 Kt × BPch? (13 Q × Q, Kt × Qch; 14 K—B2, K—Q1 = is forced), K—Q1; 14 Kt × R, Q × Ktch 1!; 15 K × Q, Kt—K5; 16 Q—R5, B—K2ch; 17 Q—Kt5, B × Qch; 18 P × B, P—KR3; 19 P—Kt6, P × P; 20 R—B1, B—K3; 21 P—Q3, P—Kt4ch; 22 K—R5, Kt—Kt6ch; 23 K—Kt6, Kt × R++.
- (g) Another way to lose is 14 Q—Kt1, B—Kt2; 15 Q × P, P × Ktch; 16 K—B3, Q—Q4ch; 17 K—K2, Q × KtPch; 18 K—Q3, Q—Q4ch; 19 K—K2, R—K1ch; 20 resigns. Redhall—Paffley, correspondence, 1944-45.
- (h) 15 Kt—B3, Q—Kt2 and wins. Teichmann's analysis.
- (i) Bogoljubow—Rubinstein, match, 1920.
- (j) If 6 Kt—Kt4, Kt × Kt; 7 Q × Kt, Kt × Pch; 8 K—Q1, Kt × R; 9 Kt—Q5, Q—K4!; 10 P—Q4 (or 10 P—Q3, P—KB4; 11 Q—Kt5, B—K2), Q × Pch; 11 K—K2, B—B4; 12 B—Q2, O—O; 13 R—QB1, P—B4+. Réti—Balla, Pistyan, 1922.
- (k) Kubbel—Grigoriev, Moscow, 1920.
- (l) 5... B—B4? is refuted by 6 O—O!, O—O; 7 B—B4, P—Q3; 8 Kt—B3, B—KKt5; 9 B—K2!, Kt × Bch; 10 Q × Kt, R—K1; 11 P—Q3, Kt—Q2; 12 B—B4+. Analysis by Schlechter.
- (m) 14... Kt—K3; 15 P—R5. Bogoljubow—Rubinstein, match, 1920.

## Notes continued from p. 69

- (k) 10... Q—Q4 is refuted by 11 Kt—Kt5, O—O—O; 12 Kt × B, P × Kt; 13 Q—Kt4, Q × QP; 14 Q × Pch, Q—Q2; 15 Q × Qch, R × Q; 16 R—K8ch, R—Q1; 17 R × Rch followed by 18 P—QKt3 and 19 B—Kt2 with the better endgame position. If 14... K—Kt1?; 15 B—Kt5, R—B1; 16 Q × Rch 1++.
- (l) 11... B—Q3?; 12 P—KKt4, Q—Kt3; 13 P—KB4, P—KB4; 14 Kt × Bch, P × Kt; 15 P—Q5+. Znosko-Borovsky—Rubinstein, Ostend, 1907.
- (m) For 4... P × P see Scotch Game, cols. 1-9.
- (n) If 5... Q—K2; 6 Q—Q3!, Kt × Kt; 7 P × Kt, Q × P; 8 B—Q2, O—O; 9 O—O—O, B × Kt; 10 B × B, Q × KP; 11 Q—Kt3+. Spielmann—Bogoljubow, Stockholm, 1919.
- (o) 14... B × P; 15 K—Q2. Analysis by Krause.
- (p) For 4 B—B4, B—B4 see Giuoco Piano and for 4 B—B4, Kt × P see Two Knights' Defense.
- (q) Nimzovitch—Gruenfeld, Carlsbad, 1923.

## FRENCH DEFENSE

OF THE defenses to 1 P—K4 other than 1... P—K4 none is more important than the French. It has always been one of the most common defenses in every tournament. Among its adherents have been such illustrious names as Steinitz, Rubinstein, Nimzovitch and Réti and, among the leading masters today, Botvinnik and Stahlberg.

The great virtue of the defense is that it combines solidity with hidden resources for the second player. It tempts White to attack, but many of the most tempting attacks turn out to be premature.

After the customary 1 P—K4, P—K3; 2 P—Q4, P—Q4 White has the choice of four main lines: 3 P × P, 3 Kt—QB3, 3 P—K5 and 3 Kt—Q2.

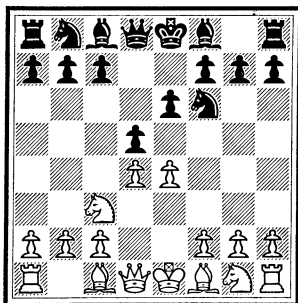
(1) 3 P × P (**Exchange Variation**, cols. 1-5) is rarely adopted except with a view to a draw. The liquidation of the center solves most of Black's problem.

(2) 3 Kt—QB3 (cols. 6-47) is the line preferred by most masters; it maintains the tension in the center and is aggressive. Black can choose one of three main replies: 3... Kt—KB3, 3... B—Kt5 and 3... P × P.

a) 3... Kt—KB3 (cols. 6-30) has been analyzed most extensively and now appears to be somewhat less promising than was once thought. The main line is that seen in cols. 6-10, where normal development by White assures him a slight but significant advantage (col. 7). But there are many ways in which White can go wrong (see especially col. 10). A new idea for Black which is worth more attention is that in col. 7, note (f). **Alekhine's Attack** (cols. 11-15) is a strong alternative for White. Black's only good reply, it is now generally agreed, is 6... P—KB3 (cols. 13-14), when the suggestion in col. 14 may still give White a little the better of it. The attack in cols. 17-18 has been tried with success lately, but the old line in col. 18 is still theoretically sufficient. The **McCutcheon Variation** (cols. 19-24) has long been considered one of Black's excellent alternatives. For the first time in a long while some doubt has been cast on this opinion by the new line in col. 21. Some improvement will have to be found for Black before the McCutcheon is fully rehabilitated. The **Rubinstein Variation Deferred** (cols. 25-28) has also met a new threat in the line in col. 28. Except for this continuation it is entirely satisfactory. The old 4 P—K5 (cols. 29-30) has been tried by Spielmann but does not yield any advantage against accurate defense.

DIAGRAM 29

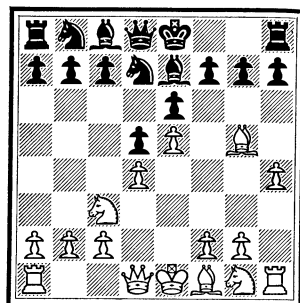
Pages 74-80, cols. 6-30



[After 3... Kt-KB3]

DIAGRAM 30

Page 76, cols. 11-15



[After 6 P-KR4]

b) 3... B-Kt5 (cols. 31-44) is the move favored by Botvinnik and most of the other Soviet masters and is currently the most important variation of the French. It leads to terrifically complicated positions where White has control of more terrain but finds it hard to locate a point at which he can attack. Col. 32 is typical; White has a theoretically sounder position but in practise his advantage often evaporates.

c) **The Rubinstein Variation** 3... P x P (cols. 45-47) is open to the theoretical objection that it gives up the center without exacting any compensation. Straight development leaves White with the better of it.

(3) 3 P-K5 (cols. 48-51) one of Nimzovitch's favorite lines and once championed by Keres has done poorly in recent tournaments. The release of the tension in the center leaves Black with a variety of good defenses.

(4) 3 Kt-Q2 (cols. 52-57) once praised by Tarrasch and later forgotten has recently been played with increasing frequency. It attempts to save the good points of 3 Kt-QB3 (keeping the tension in the center) and avoid the bad ones (pin with ... B-QKt5, lack of support for the QP). Against the most obvious reply, 3... P-QB4, White can maintain the pressure with the line in col. 54. Of some interest are the paradoxical defenses in cols. 55 and 57, which are reminiscent of Nimzovitch.

Alternatives to P-Q4 on White's 2nd move (cols. 58-60) are not difficult for Black.

## EXCHANGE VARIATION

1 P-K4, P-K3; 2 P-Q4, P-Q4; 3 P x P, P x P

	1	2	3	4	5
4	Kt-KB3.....	B-Q3	B-Q3.....	Kt-QB3	
	Kt-KB3.....	B-Q3	Kt-QB3 (i)	Kt-KB3	
5	B-Q3	B-Q3	Kt-K2	B-KKt5	
	B-Q3 (a)	Kt-QB3	B-Q3	B-K2 (l)....	Kt-B3
6	O-O	P-B3	P-QB3	B-Q3	B-Kt5 (o)
	O-O	KKt-K2	Q-R5 / (j)	O-O	B-K2
7	Kt-B3 (b)	O-O	Kt-Q2	KKt-K2	KKt-K2
	P-B3 (c)	B-KKt5	B-KKt5	Kt-B3 (m)	O-O
8	B-KKt5	R-K1	Q-B2	O-O	O-O
	B-KKt5	Q-Q2	O-O-O	Kt-K1 !	Kt-K5 / (p)
9	P-KR3	B-KKt5 (g)	Kt-B1	B x B	B x Kt
	B-R4 (d)	P-B3	P-KKt3	Kt x B	P x B
10	P-KKt4 !	B-R4	B-K3	Q-Q2	B x B
	B-Kt3	P-KR4 !	KKt-K2	P-QB3	Q x B
11	Kt-K5	QKt-Q2	O-O-O	QR-K1	R-K1
	Q-Kt3 (e)	P-KKt4	B-KB4	B-B4	Q-Kt4
12	B x Kt	B-Kt3	Kt(B1)-Kt3	Kt-B4	Kt x Kt
	P x B	B x B	B x B	Kt-Q3	P x Kt
13	Kt-B3 ± (f)	BP x B	Q x B	P-QKt3	Kt-Kt3
		O-O-O = (h)	P-KR3 ≠ (k)	Kt-Kt3 = (n)	P-KB4 = (q)

(a) 5... B-K2 is safer. The pin on the KKt becomes embarrassing.

(b) Better than 7 B-KKt5, B-KKt5; 8 QKt-Q2, QKt-Q2; 9 P-B3, P-B3; 10 Q-B2, Q-B2; 11 KR-K1, KR-K1 with a very drawish position.

(c) If 7... Kt-B3; 8 B-KKt5, B-KKt5; 9 K-R1 ! ± (Maroczy).

(d) Preferable is 9... B x Kt; 10 Q x B, QKt-Q2 =. 10... P-KR3; 11 B-R4, QKt-Q2; 12 B-B5, Q-B2; 13 QR-K1 is Morphy-Loewenthal, 2nd match game, 1858 !

(e) Or 11... B-K2; 12 P-B4, B x B; 13 Q x B, QKt-Q2; 14 QR-K1 ±. Maroczy-Rubinstein, Prague, 1908.

(f) 13... Q x KtP; 14 Kt-K2. White's position is worth more than the Pawn. Maroczy-Réti, London, 1927.

(g) Weak. Correct is 9 QKt-Q2, O-O-O; 10 P-Kt4, Kt-Kt3; 11 Kt-Kt3, QR-K1 =. Maroczy-Spielmann, Bad Sliac, 1932.

(h) Enoch-Nimzovitch, Berlin, 1927.

(i) A line similar to that in the text is 4... B-Q3; 5 Kt-K2, Q-R5 !; 6 QKt-B3, P-QB3; 7 B-K3, Kt-B3; 8 Q-Q2, Kt-Kt5; 9 P-KR3, Kt x B; 10 Q x Ktch, Q-K2 ≠ (Maroczy-Nimzovitch, Carlsbad, 1929), while an alternative for Black is 4... B-Q3; 5 Kt-K2, Kt-K2; 6 P-QB3, O-O; 7 Q-B2, P-KR3; 8 Kt-Q2, P-QKt3; 9 P-QKt4, Kt-Q2; 10 QKt-Kt3, P-QB4; 11 KtP x P, P x P; 12 P x P =. Reshevsky-Fine, New York, 1936.

(j) Or 6... KKt-K2; 7 Q-B2, B-KKt5; 8 O-O, Q-Q2; 9 R-K1, O-O-O; 10 P-Kt4, B-KB4; 11 P-QR4, QR-K1 =. Berndtsson-Tartakower, Hamburg, 1930.

(k) Winter-Alekhine, Nottingham, 1936.

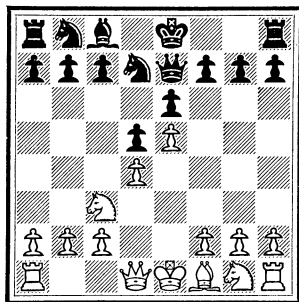
Notes continued on p. 75

1 P-K4, P-K3; 2 P-Q4, P-Q4; 3 Kt-QB3, Kt-KB3; 4 B-KKt5, B-K2; 5 P-K5, KKt-Q2; 6 B x B, Q x B\*

	6	7	8	9	10
7	Kt-Kt5	P-B4			Q-Q2 (o)
	Kt-Kt3 (a)	O-O		P-QR3	O-O
8	P-QB3 (b)	Q-Q2 (e)		Kt-B3	Kt-Q1 (p)
	P-QR3	P-QB4		P-QB4	P-QB4 (q)
9	Kt-QR3	Kt-B3		P x P	P-QB3
	P-QB4	Kt-QB3		Kt-QB3 (l)	Kt-QB3
10	Kt-B2	O-O-O !	P-KKt3 (i)	Kt-K2 ! (m)	P-KB4
	Kt-R5	P-B3 (f)	P-B3	Q x P	P-B3
11	R-Kt1	KP x P	P x KBP	Q-Q2	Kt-B3
	P-QKt4	Q x P (g)	Kt x BP (j)	P-QKt4	P x QP
12	P-KB4	P-KKt3	B-Kt2	QKt-Q4	BP x P
	Kt-B3	P x P	P x P	Kt x Kt	P x P
13	Kt-B3	KKt x P	KKt x P	Kt x Kt	BP x P ? (r)
	B-Q2	Kt-B4	P-K4 !	Kt-Kt3	R x Kt !
14	Q-Q2 (c)	B-Kt2	Kt x P	P-QKt3	P x R
	R-QB1	B-Q2	KKt x Kt	B-Q2	Q-R5ch
15	B-Q3	KR-K1	B x Ktch	Q-K3 !	Kt-B2
	Kt-Kt3	QR-B1	K-R1	R-QB1	Kt x QP
16	O-O	Kt x Kt ! ± (h)	Kt-K2	B-Q3 ± (n)	O-O-O
	Kt-B5 = (d)		B-Kt5 ≠ (k)		Kt x BP+

## \* DIAGRAM 31

cols. 6-10



[After 6... Q x B]

(a) Playable is 7... Q-Q1 ! ?; 8 P-KB4, P-QR3; 9 Kt-QR3, P-QB4; 10 P-B3, P x P; 11 P x P, Q-R4ch; 12 Q-Q2, Q x Qch; 13 K x Q, Kt-QB3; 14 Kt-

B3 ±. Pazo—Pilnik, Buenos Aires, 1942.

(b) 8 P-QR4, P-QR3; 9 P-R5, P x Kt; 10 P x Kt, R x R; 11 Q x R, O-O !; 12 P x P, Q x P; 13 B-Q3, Kt-B3 =.

(c) Not 14 Kt-K3, P x P; 15 P x P, QR-B1; 16 P-QR3, Kt-R4 ≠. L. Steiner—Lilienthal, Ujpest, 1934.

(d) Lasker—Lilienthal, Moscow, 1936.

(e) An interesting try is 8 Kt-B3, P-QB4; 9 P x P, Q x P; 10 B-Q3, P-B3; 11 Kt-Q4 !, Q-Kt3 !; 12 Q-R5, P-B4; 13 QKt-K2, Kt-B4; 14 R-Q1, Kt-B3 ≠. Corte—Stahlberg, Parana, 1946.

(f) A novel idea is 10... P-B5 ! ?; 11 P-KKt4, R-Kt1; 12 B-R3, P-QKt4; 13 P-B5, P-Kt5; 14 Kt-K2, P-Kt6; 15 RP x P, P x P; 16 P-B3, Kt-R4; 17 P-B6, P x P ≠. Bezrutschko—Stahlberg, Kemer—Riga, 1939.

Notes continued on p. 75

Notes continued from p. 73

(l) It is advisable for Black to break the pin as soon as he can. 5... P-B3 may transpose to col. 1, or, after 6 B-Q3, B-Q3 to Rubinstein—Danischewsky, Lodz, 1907; 7 KKt-K2, O-O; 8 Q-Q2, B-KKt5 ?; 9 O-O (or 9 O-O-O, as in col. 2 with colors reversed), QKt-Q2; 10 Kt-Kt3, Q-B2; 11 P-KR3, B x Kt; 12 BP x B, B-R4; 13 Q-B4 ! ±.

(m) Again too passive play is bad, e.g., 7... P-B3; 8 Q-Q2, R-K1 ? (best 8... Kt-K1 as in the column); 9 O-O, QKt-Q2; 10 Kt-Kt3 !, Kt-Kt3; 11 QR-K1, Kt-B5; 12 Q-B1, B-Q2 and now 13 R x B !, R x R; 14 QB x Kt, P x B; 15 Q-R6, P-KB4; 16 Kt-R5, P-B3;

17 Kt x Pch, K-R1; 18 P-QKt3, Kt-Q3; 19 Kt x RP+. Blake—Maroczy, Liverpool, 1923.

(n) Teichmann—Maroczy, Carlsbad, 1923.

(o) 6 B x Kt, Q x B; 7 Q-Kach, B-K3; 8 Kt x P, Q-Q1 !; 9 Kt-K3, Q x P; 10 P-QB3, Q-B4; 11 P-KKt3, O-O =. Mieses—Bogoljubow, Berlin, 1926.

(p) More aggressive than 8... P-QR3; 9 KB x Kt, P x B; 10 Kt-Kt3, P-R3 (Spielmann—Tarrasch, Teplitz—Schoenau, 1922); 11 B x Kt !, B x B; 12 Kt-R4 ! ± (Gruenfeld).

(q) Spielmann—Vajda, Semmering, 1926.

Notes continued from p. 74

(g) Better 11... Kt x BP; 12 B-Q3, P x P; 13 Kt-QKt5, Q-Kt5, but after 14 QKt x QP White retains the upper hand.

(h) Stahlberg—Keres, Kemer, 1937. After 16... R x Kt; 17 B x P ! White eventually won the endgame.

(i) If instead 10 P x P, Kt x BP; 11 B-Q3, P-B3; 12 P x P, Q x P; 13 P-KKt3 (Capablanca—Réti, New York, 1924) and now 13... Kt x Bch; 14 P x Kt, P-K4; 15 O-O, B-R6 followed by QR-K1 = (Alekhine).

(j) If 11... Q x P; 12 O-O-O, P-QR3; 13 B-Kt2, Kt-Kt3; 14 KR-K1, Kt-B5; 15 Q-B2 ±. Rubinstein—Loewenfish, Carlsbad, 1911. Compare col. 7.

(k) 17 O-O-O, QR-Q1; 18 P-B4, Kt-Kt5; 19 P-QR3, Kt x B. L. Steiner—Stahlberg, Ujpest, 1934.

(l) Or (1) 9... Kt x BP; 10 B-Q3 !, Kt-B3; 11 Q-Q2, B-Q2; 12 O-O, P-R3; 13 QR-K1 ±. Kan—Lilienthal, Moscow, 1936. (2) 9... Q x P; 10 Q-Q4 !, Kt-QB3; 11 Q x Q, Kt x Q; 12 B-Q3, K-K2; 13 K-Q2, P-R3; 14 Kt-K2 ±. Konstantinopolsky—Lilienthal, Moscow, 1936.

(m) The square Q4 must be held firmly. If, e.g., 10 B-Q3, Q x P; 11 Q-Q2, P-QKt4; 12 Q-B2, B-Kt2; 13 Q x Q, Kt x Q; 14 Kt-K2, P-Q5 !; 15 QKt x P,

Kt x Kt; 16 Kt x Kt, O-O-O =. Stahlberg—Alekhine, Warsaw, 1935.

(n) Eliskases—Stahlberg, Podebrady, 1936.

(o) Alternatives are: (1) 7 Q-Kt4 (Pollock's Variation), O-O; 8 B-Q3, P-KB4 ! (but not 8... P-QB4; 9 Kt-B3, P-B4; 10 P x P e.p., Kt x P; 11 Q-R4, Kt-B3; 12 P x P, Q x P; 13 O-O-O ±. Pilnik—Guimard, Buenos Aires, 1942); 9 P x P e.p., R x P !; 10 Kt-B3, P-B4; 11 Q-R4, Kt-B1; 12 P x P, Q x P =. Bernstein—Lasker, Zurich, 1934. (2) 7 B-Q3, O-O (weak is 7... P-QR3; 8 QKt-K2, P-QB4; 9 P-QB3, Kt-QB3; 10 Q-Q2, O-O; 11 P-KB4, P-B4; 12 Kt-B3, P-QKt4; 13 O-O, B-Kt2; 14 P-KR3 ±. Adams—Kashdan, New York, 1940); 8 P-B4, P-QB4; 9 Kt-B3, P-B3; 10 O-O ?, Kt-B3; 11 Kt-QKt5, P-QR3; 12 Kt-Q6, P x QP; 13 Q-K2, Kt-B4; 14 QR-K1, B-Q2+. Spielmann—Tarrasch, San Sebastian, 1911.

(p) 8 P-B4 transposes to columns 7-8.

(q) Or 8... P-KB3; 9 P x P, Kt x P; 10 B-Q3, Kt-B3 !; 11 Kt-KB3, P-K4; 12 P x P, Kt x P =. Lasker—Eliskases, Moscow, 1936.

(r) Correct is 13 QP x P, Q-Kt5; 14 P-KKt3, Kt-B4; 15 Q x Q =. Thomas—Lilienthal, Ujpest, 1934. The column is analysis by Tarrasch.

1 P—K4, P—K3; 2 P—Q4, P—Q4; 3 Kt—QB3, Kt—KB3; 4 B—KKt5, B—K2; 5 P—K5, KKt—Q2; 6 P—KR4 (a)

11	12	13	14	15
6 B × B	P—QB4	P—KB3 !		P—QR3 (o)
7 P × B	B × B (e)	B—Q3	Q—R5ch (m)	Q—Kt4
Q × P	K × B ! (f)	P—QB4 ! (i)	K—B1	K—B1
8 Kt—R3	P—B4 (g)	Q—R5ch	P × P	P—B4 (p)
Q—K2 (b)	Kt—QB3 (h)	K—B1	Kt × P	P—QB4
9 Kt—B4	P × P	Kt × P !? (j)	Q—B3	Kt—B3
P—QR3 (c)	Kt × BP	P × B	P—B4	Kt—QB3
10 Q—Kt4	Q—Kt4 !	R—R3	P × P	O—O—O
P—KKt3	K—B1	P—Kt5 !	Kt—Q2	P—Kt4
11 O—O—O	O—O—O	Kt—B4	O—O—O	B × Bch (q)
P—QB4	B—Q2	Kt × P !	Kt × P	Q × B
12 Q—Kt3	Kt—B3	P × Kt	Kt—R3	P—R5
Kt—Kt3	R—B1	P × R	B—Q2	P—R3
13 P × P	R—R3	B × P (k)	Q—K3	R—R3
Q × P	P—KR4	R × B	R—B1 (n)	B—Kt2
14 B—Q3+(d)	Q—Kt3 ±	Q × R	P—B3 ±	R—Kt3 ±
		P—R7 !+(l)		

(a) Alekhine's Attack, sometimes also called Chatard's or Albin—Chatard's Attack. See p. 72, Diagram 30.

(b) Or 8... Q—R3; 9 P—KKt3, P—R3; 10 B—Kt2, P—QB4; 11 P—B4+.

(c) Or 9... Kt—B1; 10 Q—Kt4, P—KB4; 11 P × P e.p., P × P; 12 O—O—O, P—B3; 13 R—K1, K—Q1; 14 R—R6+. Alekhine—Fahri, Mannheim, 1914.

(d) 14... Q—B1; 15 B—K4 !. Bogoljubow—Spielmann, Stockholm, 1919.

(e) If 7 Kt—Kt5, P—B3 ! (on the sacrificial variation 7... P × P; 8 Kt—Q6ch, K—B1; 9 B × Bch, Q × B; 10 Kt × B, Q—Kt5ch; 11 Q—Q2, Q × P; 12 R—Q1, Kt—QB3; 13 Kt—Q6, KKt × P; 14 Kt—Kt5 the most probable outcome is a draw); 8 B—Q3 ? (better 8 KP × P, Kt × P =), P—QR3; 9 Kt—Q6ch, B × Kt; 10 P × B, P × P; 11 Q—R5ch, K—B1; 12 Kt—B3, Kt—B3+. Kluger—Szabo, Tata-Tovaras, 1935. On 7 Q—Kt4, Kt—QB3 equalizes.

(f) Better than 7... Q × B when Black

loses the exchange without adequate compensation: 8 Kt—Kt5, O—O; 9 Kt—B7, Kt × P (or 9... P × P; 10 Kt × R, P—B3; 11 Kt—B7, P × P; 12 Kt—Kt5, P—QR3 and now not 13 Kt × P, P × Kt; 14 Q × P, Kt—QB3; 15 Q—Q2, Kt—B3 ≠ as in Gilg—Petrow, Maehrisch-Ostrau, 1933, but 13 Kt—R7 !, Q—Kt5ch; 14 Q—Q2 !+. Kashdan); 10 Kt × R, P × P; 11 Q × P, QKt—B3; 12 Q—Q2, P—QKt3; 13 B—K2+. Ryumin—Lilienthal, Moscow, 1935.

(g) Better than 8 Q—Kt4, K—B1; 9 Kt—B3, P × P; 10 Q × QP, Q—Kt3; 11 Q × Q, P × Q (but not 11... Kt × Q; 12 Kt—Q2, Kt—B3; 13 P—B4, B—Q2; 14 O—O—O ±. Bogoljubow—Spielmann, Baden-Baden, 1925); 12 O—O—O (Euwe's recommendation), Kt—QB3; 13 R—K1, P—Q5; 14 Kt—QKt5, R × P; 15 K—Kt1, R—R4; 16 P—R5, K—K2; 17 R—R4, R—Q1 and Black's position is tenable.

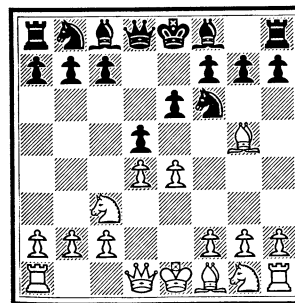
Notes continued on p. 78

1 P—K4, P—K3; 2 P—Q4, P—Q4; 3 Kt—QB3, Kt—KB3; 4 B—Kt5\*

16	17	18	19	20
4 (B—K2).....			B—Kt5 (j)	
5 (P—K5).....	B × Kt		P × P.....	P—K5
Kt—K5	B × B		Q × P	P—KR3
6 Kt × Kt (a)	P—K5 (f)		B × Kt	P × Kt
P × Kt (b)	B—K2		P × B ! (k)	P × B
7 B × B	Q—Kt4		Q—Q2	P × P
Q × B	O—O		Q—QR4	R—Kt1
8 Q—K2	B—Q3		KKt—K2	P—KR4
Kt—Q2 (c)	P—QB4		Kt—Q2	P × P
9 O—O—O	P × P		Kt—B1	Q—R5 (m)
P—KB4	Kt—B3 (g)....	P—KKt3 !	Kt—Kt3	Q—B3
10 P × P e.p.	P—B4	Q—R3	Kt—Kt3	Kt—B3
Kt × P	P—B4	Kt—B3	Q—KKt4	Kt—B3
11 P—KB4 ! (d)	Q—R3	P—B4	P—QR3	R × P
P × P e.p. (e)	P—QKt3 !	B × P	Q × Qch	Q × KtP
12 Kt × P	O—O—O	Kt—B3	K × Q	O—O—O
P—QKt3	P × P	P—B3 !	B—K2	B—Q2
13 P—KKt3	P—KKt4	Q—R6	B—Kt5ch	Q—R7
B—Kt2	P—B5	R—B2	P—B3	O—O—O
14 B—Kt2 ±	B × QBP	P × P	B—Q3	Q × Q
	P × P = (h)	Q × P ≠ (i)	B—Q2 = (l)	R × Q = (n)

\* DIAGRAM 32

cols. 16-20



[After 4 B—Kt5]

(a) The most precise. If 6 B × B, Kt × Kt; 7 B × Q, Kt × Q; 8 B × P, Kt × KtP =.

(b) 6... B × B; 7 Kt × B, Q × Kt; 8 P—KKt3, P—QB4; 9 P—QB3, Kt—B3; 10 P—KB4, Q—K2; 11 Kt—B3, B—Q2; 12 Q—Q2, O—O; 13 B—Q3+. Forgacs—Tartakower, St. Petersburg, 1909.

(c) If 8... P—QKt3; 9 O—O—O, B—Kt2; 10 P—KKt3, P—QB4; 11 B—Kt2, P × P; 12 B × P, Kt—B3; 13 P—KB4, O—O—O; 14 Kt—B3 and White eventually wins a Pawn (Euwe).

(d) Weak is 11 P—KKt3 ?, O—O; 12 B—Kt2, P—K4 !; 13 B × P, Kt × B; 14 Q × Kt, R × P ≠. Spielmann—van den Bosch, Soest, 1935. White's 11th move is suggested by Euwe.

(e) If 11... O—O; 12 P—KKt3, P—QKt3; 12 B—Kt2, B—Kt2; 13 Kt—R3 White wins a Pawn.

Notes continued on p. 78

Notes continued from p. 76

(h) If 8...P x P; 9 Q x P, Kt-QB3; 10 Q-Q2, Q-R4 (10...Q-Kt3; 11 O-O, Kt-B4; 12 Kt-B3, B-Q2; 13 P-B5!+); 11 Kt-B3, R-Q1; 12 R-R3, K-B1; 13 B-Q3, Kt-Kt3; 14 Kt-QKt5 ±. Loevenfisch-Menchik, Moscow, 1935. The column is Ryumin-Stahlberg, Moscow, 1935.

(i) On 7...P x B Alekhine gives 8 Q-R5ch, K-B1; 9 R-R3, P x P; 10 R-B3ch, Kt-B3; 11 Kt-R3, Q-K1; 12 Q x P(R4), K-Kt1; 13 P x Kt, B x P; 14 R x B, P x R; 15 Q x BP with at least a draw.

(j) Best is 9 KP x P, Kt x P; 10 B x Kt, B x B; 11 P x P (Crakanthorp-Purdy, 1927), when Black's uncomfortable K position may still occasion him difficulties.

(k) The only chance was 13 KKt x P!, K-Kt1; 14 B-B4! (Becker), but after 14...P-KKt3; 15 Q-Kt4, K-Kt2! (15...Q-Q5; 16 B x Pch, B x B; 17 Q x Bch, K-B1; 18 Q-B8ch, K-Kt2; 19 Kt-K6ch, K-R3; 20 Q x R, Q-K5ch; 21 K-B1, Q-B5ch; 22 K-Kt1, Q x Kt; 23 P-KB3! with a winning attack-Becker) Black's defensive resources are adequate, e.g., 16 P-R5, P-KKt4; 17 Kt x Pch, B x Kt; 18 Q x B, R-B1; 19 P-R6ch,

K-R1; 20 R-Q1, Q-K1+.

(l) 15 K-K2, P-R8(Q); 16 Kt-Kt6ch, K-B2; 17 Kt-R8ch, Q x Kt; 18 Q x Q, Kt-B3; 19 Q-R5ch, K-Kt1 and Black won. Panov-Yudovitch, Tiflis, 1937.

(m) 7 P x P leads to equality at best after 7...Kt x P; 8 B-Q3, P-B4; 9 P x P, Kt-B3; 10 Kt-R3, Q-R4; 11 Q-Q2!, Q x BP; 12 O-O, O-O; 13 QR-K1, P-K4!; 14 B x Kt, B x B =. Yates-Maroczy, New York, 1924.

(n) Alexander-Taylor, Brighton, 1938.

(o) Inferior alternatives are: (1) 6...P-KR3; 7 B-K3!, P-QB4; 8 Q-Kt4, K-B1; 9 Kt-B3, Kt-QB3; 10 O-O-O, P x P; 11 B x QP, Q-R4; 12 R-R3, Kt-B4; 13 R-Kt3 ±. Dubinin-Rabinovitch, Leningrad, 1934. (2) 6...O-O; 7 B-Q3, P-QB4; 8 Kt-R3, R-K1; 9 Kt-Kt5, P-B4; 10 Kt-Q6+. Bogoljubow-Spielmann, Vienna, 1922.

(p) Stronger is 8 Q-B4, P-QB4; 9 P x P!, Kt-QB3; 10 Kt-B3 ±.

(q) Better than 11 R-R3, P-KR4!; 12 B x Bch, Kt x B; 13 Q-Kt3, Q-R4; 14 K-Kt1, P-Kt5 ±. Lasker-Koyalovitch, Leningrad, 1924. The text is suggested by Euwe.

Notes continued from p. 77

(f) 6 Kt-B3?, O-O; 7 B-Q3, P-B4; 8 P-K5, B-K2; 9 P x P, Kt-Q2; 10 P-KR4, P-B4; 11 P x P e.p., B x P(B3); 12 Q-Q2, Kt x P ±. Foltys-Keres, Prague, 1937.

(g) 9...P-B4; 10 Q-R3, Kt-Q2; 11 P-B4, Kt x BP; 12 O-O-O, B-Q2; 13 KKt-K2 and White's attack was successful. Richter-Stahlberg, Zoppot, 1935.

(h) 15 Q-Kt2 and now 15...R x P! should have been played. After 15 Q-Kt2, Kt-R4?; 16 R x P! White won quickly. Pilnik-Stahlberg, Mar del Plata, 1942.

(i) Charousek-Maroczy, Nagy-Teteny, 1897.

(j) The McCutcheon Variation.

(k) Better than 6...B x Ktch; 7 P x B, P x B; 8 Q-Q2!, Kt-Q2; 9 P-QB4, Q-K5ch; 10 Kt-K2, Kt-Kt3 (Tarrasch suggests 10...P-Kt3 followed by...B-Kt2 and...O-O-O); 11 P-KB3, Q-B3; 12 P-B5, Kt-Q4; 13 P-QB4, Kt-K2; 14 Kt-B3 ±. Capablanca-Alekhine, New York, 1924.

(l) Capablanca-Bogoljubow, New York, 1924.

(m) On 9 Q-Kt4, Q-B3 is again best, but not 9...B-K2; 10 P-KKt3!, B-B3; 11 P x P, R x P; 12 Q-B4, P-R3; 13 Kt-B3, P-B4; 14 O-O-O, P x P; 15 KKt x P ±. Romanovsky-Chistyakov, U.S.S.R. championship, 1939.

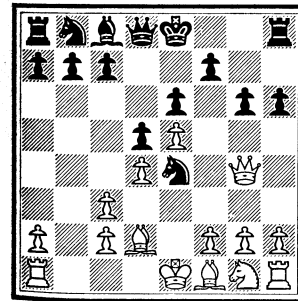
(n) Rotlevy-Kostich, Carlsbad, 1911.

1 P-K4, P-K3; 2 P-Q4, P-Q4; 3 Kt-QB3, Kt-KB3; 4 B-Kt5

	21	22	23	24	25
4 (B-Kt5).....					P x P (p)
5 (P-K5).....				Kt-K2	B x Kt
(P-KR3)				P x P	Q x B (q)
6 B-Q2 (a)				P-QR3	Kt x P
B x Kt (b)				B-K2	Q-Q1
7 P x B				B x Kt	Kt-KB3
Kt-K5				P x B (m)	Kt-Q2
8 Q-Kt4				Kt x P	B-Q3
P-KKt3! (c)*				P-Kt3 (n)	B-K2
9 B-Q3.....	B-B1 (j)			Q-Q2	Q-K2
Kt x B	Kt x QBP (k)			B-K2	P-QB4
10 K x Kt		B-Q3		KKt-B3	P x P
P-QB4 (d)		P-QB4		P-KB4	B x P
11 Kt-B3!.....	P-KR4	B-Q2 (l)		Kt-Kt3	Kt x B
P x P (e)	Kt-B3	Kt-R5		P-KR4!	Q-R4ch
12 P x P	R-R3	B-Kt5ch		O-O-O	P-B3
Kt-B3	P x P! (h)	B-Q2		R-R5	Q x Kt
13 QR-Kt1!	P x P	B x Kt		Kt(Kt3)-K2	O-O
Q-R4ch? (f)	Q-Kt3 ± (i)	B x B		P-QB3	O-O
14 K-K3 ± (g)		P x P		Kt-B4	QR-Q1
		Q-Q2 =		Q-Q3 ± (o)	Q-KR4 =

\* DIAGRAM 33

cols. 21-23



[After 8...P-KKt3!]

(a) If 6 B-R4 (an old move recently revived by Lajos Steiner), P-KKt4; 7 B-Kt3, Kt-K5; 8 Kt-K2 and now the best line for Black is 8...P-QB4 (8...P-

KB4; 9 P x P e.p., Q x P; 10 Q-Q3! ± -Purdy); 9 P-QR3, B x Ktch; 10 Kt x B, Kt x Kt (or 10...P x P; 11 Q x P, Kt-QB3; 12 B-Kt5, B-Q2; 13 B x Kt, B x B =); 11 P x Kt, Q-R4; 12 Q-Q3, P x P; 13 Q-Kt5ch, Q x Q; 14 B x Qch, B-Q2 =.

(b) If 6...KKt-Q2; 7 Q-Kt4, B-B1; 8 P-B4, P-QB4; 9 B-Q3, P-B5; 10 B-Kt6!, Kt-Kt3; 11 P-B5, Q-K2; 12 P-B6, P x P; 13 B-R5 ±. L. Steiner-Tartakower, Hastings, 1927-1928.

(c) Inferior is 8...K-B1; 9 B-Q3, Kt x B; 10 K x Kt, P-QB4; 11 P-KR4, P-B5; 12 B-K2, P-KR4; 13 Q-B4, Kt-B3; 14 Kt-B3, Kt-K2; 15 Kt-Kt5 ±. Bogoljubow-Réti, Breslau, 1925.

(d) Inferior is 10...Q-Kt4ch; 11 Q x Q, P x Q; 12 P-KB4, P x P; 13 R-KB1 ±. Bogatyrychuk-Zubarev, Moscow, 1925.

Notes continued on p. 81

1 P-K4, P-K3; 2 P-Q4, P-Q4; 3 Kt-QB3, Kt-KB3

	26	27	28	29	30
4 (B-KKt5).....				P-K5 (j)	
(P × P)				KKt-Q2	
5 Kt × P				QKt-K2.....	P-B4 (n)
B-K2				P-QB4	P-QB4
6 B × Kt				P-QB3	P × P
B × B.....	P × B			Kt-QB3	Kt-QB3
7 Kt-KB3 (a).....	Q-Q2.....		Kt-KB3 (f)	P-KB4	P-QR3
Kt-Q2	P-KB4		P-Kt3	Q-Kt3	B × P (o)
8 P-B3 (b)	Kt-QB3		B-Kt5ch	Kt-B3	Q-Kt4
Q-K2 (c)	P-QB3		P-B3	P-B3	P-KKt3 (p)
9 Q-B2	O-O-O		B-Q3! (g)	P-QR3! (k)	Kt-B3
P-B4	Kt-Q2		B-Kt2	KBP × P? (l)	P-QR3
10 P × P	P-KKt3		Q-K2	BP × P	B-Q3
Kt × P	P-Kt3		Q-B2	P × P	P-QKt4
11 B-Kt5ch	B-Kt2		O-O-O	P × P	P-Kt4
B-Q2	B-Kt2		Kt-Q2 (h)	B-K2	B-R2
12 B × Bch	Kt-R3		K-Kt1	Kt-B4	P-KR4
Kt × B	Kt-B3		O-O-O	O-O	P-KR4
13 O-O-O	KR-K1		B-R6!	B-Q3 ± (m)	Q-Kt3
O-O-O	Q-Q3		KR-K1		Q-K2 (q)
14 Q-R4 ± (d)	Kt-KKt5		B × Bch ± (i)		Kt-K2
	P-KR3 = (e)				Kt-Kt3 =

(a) 7 Kt × Bch leads to a quick draw. If 7 P-QB3, Kt-Q2; 8 P-KB4!, P-QKt3 (8...B-K2; 9 Q-Kt3, P-QKt3; 10 B-K2, B-Kt2; 11 B-B3 ±); 9 Q-B3, R-QKt1; 11 Kt-K2, O-O; 12 O-O-O, B-K2 =. Alekhine—Landau, Amsterdam, 1936.

(b) To prevent ...P-B4. If 8 B-Q3, P-B4!; 9 P × P, Kt × P; 10 B-Kt5ch, K-K2!; 11 Q × Qch, R × Q; 12 Kt × Kt, R-Q4; 13 Kt-R6, B × P; 14 R-QKt1, R × B; 15 Kt-B7, B-B6ch; 16 K-K2, R × R; 17 R × R, R-Kt1; 18 Kt-R6 draws.

(c) Or 8...O-O; 9 Q-B2, P-K4; 10 O-O-O, P × P; 11 Kt × P, B × Kt; 12 R × B, Q-K2; 13 P-KR4, R-K1; 14 Kt-Kt5, P-KKt3; 15 R-K4, Q-B1; 16 P-R5+. Ilyin-Zhenevsky—Rausser, Leningrad, 1936.

(d) Alekhine—Petrow, Warsaw, 1935.

(e) Euwe—Flohr, 14th match game, 1932.

(f) On 7 P-KKt3, the correct reply is 7...P-B3; 8 Kt-K2, P-KB4; 9 Kt(K4)-B3, P-Kt3; 10 B-Kt2, B-Kt2; 11 Kt-B4, Q-Q3; 12 Q-K2, Kt-Q2 =. Opocensky—Flohr, Bad Sliac, 1932.

(g) Weaker is 9 B-B4, B-Kt2; 10 Q-K2, Q-B2; 11 O-O-O, Kt-Q2; 12 KR-K1, O-O-O; 13 K-Kt1, K-Kt1; 14 B-Kt3 =. L. Steiner—Flohr, Ujpest, 1934. White should try to exchange the Black QB.

(h) Or 11...P-QR3; 12 KR-K1, Kt-Q2; 13 K-Kt1, P-QB4; 14 P × P ±. Asztalos—Alekhine, Bled, 1931.

(i) 14...K × B; 15 R-Q3, R-KKt1; 16 P-KKt3, P-KB4; 17 Kt(K4)-Q2, Kt-B3; 18 Kt-K5. Eliskases—Luckis, Montevideo, 1941.

(j) 4 P × P, P × P transposes to cols. 4-5.

Notes continued on p. 81

Notes continued from p. 79

(e) If instead 11...Kt-B3?; 12 P × P!, Q-K2; 13 Q-KB4; Q × P; 14 Kt-Q4, P-R3; 15 QR-Kt1, Kt-Q1; 16 P-KR4, B-Q2; 17 P-R5+. Yudovitch—Chistyakov, U.S.S.R. championship, 1939.

(f) The best move is 13...P-Kt3! and if 14 B-Kt5, B-Q2.

(g) 14...Kt-Kt5; 15 R-Kt2, Q-R5; 16 KR-QKt1, P-QR4; 17 Kt-K1. Pilnik—Flores, Mar del Plata, 1944.

(h) If 12...Q-R4; 13 B × P+.

(i) Lillenthal—Bondarevsky, Moscow, 1937. The older line is 13...B-Q2; 14 P-QB3, Q-K2; 15 Kt-K2, Kt-R4; or 14 R-B3, Q-Kt3; 15 Q-B4, Q-Kt5ch; 16 K-Q1, Q × P; 17 Q × Pch, K-Q1;

18 R-Kt1, P-Kt3; 19 R-B4, Q × KP; 20 Kt-B3, Q-Q3 and Black is safe. Yates—Knoch, Kecskemet, 1927. After the text White is at a loss for a good continuation, for if 14 B × P?, P × B; 15 Q × KtPch, K-Q1; 16 Q-B6ch, K-B2;

17 Q × R, Q × Pch+!, while if 14 Kt-K2, Q-Kt5ch; 15 K-Q1, Kt × KP+.

There remains the game continuation: 14 Kt-B3, B-Q2; 15 Q-B4, O-O-O!; 16 P-Kt4, Q-Kt5ch; 17 K-K2, P-B3!/+.

(j) An old move which has experienced a sudden revival. On Maroczy's 9 B-K3,

Kt × QBP; 10 B-Q3, Q-K2! is sufficient (Spielmann).

(k) Alternatives are inferior: e.g. 9...P-QB4; 10 Kt-K2, Q-R4; 11 P-B3, Kt × P; 12 B-Q2, P × P; 13 Kt × P, Q-B2; 14 Q-B4, P-R3; 15 P-QR4, B-Q2; 16 B-Q3 ±. Bolbochan—Rossetto, Mar del Plata, 1942. Or here 10 B-Q3, P × P; 11 Kt-K2, Q-R4; 12 O-O, P × P; 13 B × Kt, P × B; 14 Kt-Kt3, Kt-B3; 15 Kt × P, Kt × P; 16 Q-Kt3, B-Q2; 17 Kt-Q6ch+. Boleslavsky—Lissitsin, Moscow, 1944.

(l) Or 11 P × P, Q-B2; 12 Kt-B3, Kt-Q2; 13 B-K3, Kt × BP =.

(m) Less aggressive is 7...B × B; 8 Kt × P, O-O; 9 Q-Q3, P-K4; 10 P-Q5, B-K2; 11 O-O-O, P-KB4.

(n) 8...P-KB4; 9 QKt-B3, B-Q2; 10 Q-Q2, B-Q3; 11 O-O-O, Q-K2; 12 Kt-Kt3 ±. Lasker—Réti, New York, 1924.

(o) Panov—Loevenfisch, Tiflis, 1937.

(p) The Rubinstein Variation Deferred.

(q) Or 5...P × B; 6 Kt × P, P-KB4; 7 Kt-QB3, B-Kt2; 8 Kt-B3, O-O; 9 Q-Q2, P-B4; 10 P × P, Q-R4; 11 Kt-QKt5, Q × Qch =. Alekhine—Tartakower, Vienna, 1922. The column is Tartakower—Maroczy, Gothenburg, 1920.

Notes continued from p. 80

(k) Stronger than 9 P-KKt3, P × QP; 10 BP × P, P × P; 11 BP × P, B-Kt5ch; 12 K-B2, O-O; 13 B-K3, Kt(Q2) × P; 14 P × Kt, R × Ktch!/++. Whitehead—Maroczy, London, 1923. Best here is 12 Kt-B3, O-O; 13 B-KB4, B-K2!; 14 Q-Q2, P-Kt4; 15 Kt × KtP, B × Kt; 16 B × B, Kt × QP ±. Alapin—Maroczy, Vienna, 1908.

(l) Best is 9...B-K2; 10 P-KKt3, O-O; 11 B-Kt2, P-QR4 with a difficult game.

(m) Spielmann—Menchik, Margate, 1938.

(n) The Gledhill Attack, 5 Q-Kt4?, is inferior: 5...P-QB4 and now: (1) 6 Kt-Kt5, P × P; 7 Kt-KB3, Kt-QB3; 8 Kt-Q6ch, B × Kt; 9 Q × P, B × P!; 10 Kt × B, Q-B3; 11 Q × Q, Kt × Q; 12 B-QKt5, B-Q2; 13 Kt-B3, Kt-K5+. Bogoljubow—Réti, Maehrisch—Ostrau, 1923. (2) 6 Kt-B3, P × P (or

6...Kt-QB3; 7 P × P, P-B4!; 8 P × P e.p., Kt × KBP; 9 Q-Kt3, B × P!; 10 B-KKt5, O-O ±. Stoltz—Flohr, 3rd match game, 1931); 7 KKt × P, Kt × P; 8 Q-Kt3, Kt-Kt3; 9 Kkt-Kt5, Kt-R3; 10 P-KR4, B-K2!; 11 P-R5, Kt-R5!; 12 B-Q3, Kt-B4+. Em. Lasker. (3) 6 B-K3, P × P; 7 B × P, Kt-QB3; 8 O-O-O, Kt × B; 9 Q × Kt, P-QR3; 10 Kt-B3, Kt-B4; 11 P-KR4, P-QKt4; 12 K-Kt1, B-Q2; 13 Q-KB4, P-R3 =. Becker—Glass, Vienna, 1933.

(o) Weaker is 7...Kt × BP; 8 P-QKt4, Kt-Q2; 9 B-Q3, P-QR4; 10 P-Kt5 ±. Pillsbury—Lasker, Nuremberg, 1896.

(p) Also sufficient is 8...O-O; 9 B-Q3, P-B4; 10 Q-R3, B × Kt; 11 R × B, Q-Kt3; 12 Kt-K2, Kt-B4 =.

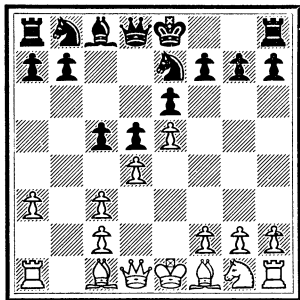
(q) Spielmann—Keres, Noordwijk, 1938. The game continued 14 P-B5!?, B-Kt1!/+.



1 P—K4, P—K3; 2 P—Q4, P—Q4; 3 Kt—QB3, B—Kt5; 4 P—K5, P—QB4; 5 P—QR3, B × Ktch; 6 P × B, Kt—K2\*

	31	32	33	34	35
7	Kt—B3 Q—R4		Q—B2	P—QR4 (h) ... Q—R4	Q—Kt4 Kt—B4! (n)
8	Q—Q2 Q—R5 (a)		B—Q3 (e) QKt—B3 (f)	B—Q2 (i) P—B5	B—Q3 P—KR4
9	B—Q3 P—B5	R—Kt1 P—B5	O—O B—Q2	Kt—B3 (j) Kt—Q2! (k)	Q—B4 P × P
10	B—K2 QKt—B3	P—Kt3 QKt—B3	P—QR4 P—QKt3	B—K2? (l) QKt—Kt3	P × P Q—R5!
11	P—R4 (b) B—Q2	B—R3 O—O	Q—Q2 P—KR3	O—O Kt × P	Kt—B3 Q × Q
12	P—R5 P—KR3	O—O P—B3	Q—B4 P—B5	Kt—R4 KKt—Kt3	B × Q Kt—B3
13	Kt—R4 Kt—B4	P × P R × P	B—K2 O—O	Kt × Kt RP × Kt	P—B3 B—Q2
14	Kt × Kt P × Kt	Q—K2 Kt—B4	B—R3 P—B3	R—K1 B—Q2	P—R3 = (o)
15	R—KKt1 Kt—K2	P—Kt4 Kt(B4)—K2	B—Q6 Q—Q1	B—KB1 P—QKt4	
16	P—Kt4 P × P = (c)	P—Kt5 ± (d)	P × P ± (g)	Q—B3 R—QKt1 ≠ (m)	

\* DIAGRAM 34  
cols. 31-35



[After 6... Kt—K2]

(a) Necessary. If instead 8... QKt—B3; 9 P—QR4!, B—Q2; 10 B—Q3, P—B5; 11 B—K2, P—B3; 12 B—R3, O—O—O; 13 O—O, Kt—B4; 14 P—Kt4, Kt(B4)—K2; 15 KR—Kt1, Q—R3?; 16 P—R5, QR—B1; 17 Kt—K1, P × P; 18 Kt—Q3! ±. Rabinovitch—Botvinnik, U.S.S.R. championship, 1939.

(b) 11 O—O, B—Q2; 12 Kt—Kt5, P—KR3; 13 Kt—R3, O—O—O; 14 P—B4, P—B3; 15 Kt—B2, P—KR4; 16 Kt—Q1, Kt—B4; 17 Kt—Kt2, Q—R4; 18 P—QR4, P—KKt4! ≠. Pogrebiskiy—Botvinnik, U.S.S.R. championship, 1939.

(c) 17 B × KtP, B × B; 18 R × B, Kt—B4; 19 Q—K2, Q—Q2. Smyslov—Botvinnik, Leningrad—Moscow, 1941.

Notes continued on p. 83

Notes continued from p. 82

(d) Bondarevsky—Boleslavsky, Leningrad—Moscow, 1941.

(e) 8 P—KR4!, P—QKt3; 9 P—R5, P—KR3; 10 P—R4, B—R3? (10... QKt—B3 as in the column); 11 B—Kt5sch, B × B; 12 P × B, P × P; 13 P × P ±. L. Steiner—Foltys, Lodz, 1938. Another possibility is 8 P—QR4, B—Q2; 9 B—K2, QKt—B3; 10 O—O, P—QKt3; 11 B—R3, Kt—R4; 12 Kt—Q2, B × P; 13 P—QB4!, B—Q2; 14 BP × P, KP × P; 15 P—QB4, O—O; 16 QP × P, Q × KP (Tolush—Botvinnik, Moscow, 1944) and now 17 P × QP! ±, for if 17... P × P; 18 B × P, Kt—Kt2; 19 Kt—B4+ (Botvinnik).

(f) If instead 8... P—B5; 9 B—K2, B—Q2; 10 P—QR4, Q—R4; 11 O—O, B × P; 12 B—R3, P—QKt4; 13 Q—Q2, Q—Q1; 14 P—Kt3, P—QR4; 15 Kt—R4, P—R3; 16 P—B4 ±. Belavienetz—Batyrynsky, Moscow, 1938.

(g) 16... R × P; 17 Q—Q2. Belavienetz—Botvinnik, U.S.S.R. championship, 1939.

(h) Adopted early to keep the Black Q out of R5.

(i) Better 8 Q—Q2 as in cols. 31-33, e.g., 8... QKt—B3; 9 Kt—B3, P—B5; 10 P—Kt3, O—O; 11 B—Kt2, P—B3; 12 P × P, R × P; 13 O—O, B—Q2; 14 B—QR3, R—K1; 15 Kt—R4, Kt—B1; 16 P—B4 ±. Smyslov—Boleslavsky, Leningrad—Moscow, 1941.

(j) An idea here is 9 Kt—K2, Kt—Q2; 10 Kt—B4, Kt—KKt3; 11 Kt—R5, O—O; 12 Q—Kt4, P—B4; 13 Q—R3, Kt—Kt3; 14 B—K2 ±. Furman—Shamkovitch, First Category championship tournament, U.S.S.R., 1945. Weaker is 9 P—Kt3, B—Q2; 10 B—R3, QKt—B3; 11 Kt—K2, Kt—Kt3; 12 B—Kt2, O—O—O; 13 B—QB1, P—B3; 14 P × P, P × P =. Keres—Boleslavsky, Leningrad—Moscow, 1941.

(k) An improvement on 9... B—Q2; 10 Kt—Kt5, P—KR3; 11 Kt—R3, QKt—B3; 12 Q—B3, Kt—Kt3; 13 Kt—B4, Kt × Kt; 14 Q × Kt, Kt—K2; 15 P—R4, B × P!; 16 P—R5 with a strong attack, although Black won. Smyslov—Botvinnik, U.S.S.R. championship, 1944.

(l) White's plan is too tame. A strong aggressive line is 10 P—Kt3, QKt—Kt3; 11 B—R3, B—Q2; 12 O—O, B—B3; 13 Kt—R4, Kt × P; 14 P—B4, P—KKt3; 15 P—B5, KP × P; 16 P—Kt4 ±. Lillenthal—Ragosin, U.S.S.R. championship, 1944. Another good line is 10 Kt—Kt5, P—KR3; 11 Kt—R3, QKt—Kt3; 12 Kt—B4, P—Kt3; 13 P—R4, B—Q2; 14 P—R5, P—Kt4; 15 Kt—K2, O—O—O; 16 P—Kt4!, QR—Kt1; 17 B—R3, Kt × P; 18 P—B4, P × P; 19 O—O ±. Bronstein—Saigin, Moscow, 1945.

(m) 17 KR—Kt1, Q—B2; 18 B—B1, P—R4; 19 B—R3, R—Kt3. Tolush—Botvinnik, U.S.S.R. championship, 1945.

(n) 7... P × P? is very bad after 8 Q × KtP, R—Kt1; 9 Q × P, Q—R4 (or 9... Q—B2; 10 Kt—K2!, QKt—B3; 11 P—KB4, B—Q2; 12 Q—Q3, P × P; 13 Kt × P, P—R3; 14 R—QKt1, R—QB1; 15 B—Q2+. Lillenthal—Loevenfisch, Moscow, 1936); 10 R—Kt1, Q × Pch; 11 B—Q2, Q—B2; 12 P—KB4, QKt—B3; 13 Kt—B3, B—Q2; 14 Kt—Kt5, R × Kt; 15 P × R, O—O—O; 16 Q × P+. Alexander—Botvinnik, match Great Britain—U.S.S.R., 1946. 7... Q—R4? is refuted by 8 B—Q2, Q—R5; 9 Q × KtP, R—Kt1; 10 Q × RP, P × P; 11 Kt—K2!, QKt—B3; 12 P—KB4, R—Kt3; 13 P—R4, B—Q2; 14 P—R5, R—KKt1; 15 P—R6+. Bogatyrchuk—Alatortsev, U.S.S.R. championship, 1934.

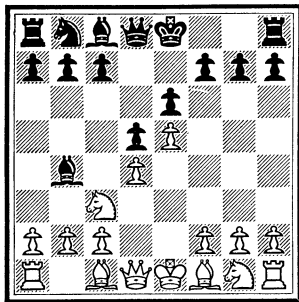
(o) Bogoljubov—Flohr, Nottingham, 1936.

1 P-K4, P-K3; 2 P-Q4, P-Q4; 3 Kt-QB3, B-Kt5

	36	37	38	39	40
4	(P-K5)* (P-QB4)				Kt-K2 (m)
5	(P-QR3) ... P × P	B-Q2 Kt-K2	Q-Kt4 (i) QKt-B3! (f)	Q-Kt4 (i) Kt-K2 (j)	P-QR3 B-R4
6	P × B P × Kt	Kt-B3 (c) Kt-B4? (d)	Kt-Kt5 (g) B × Bch	Kt-B3 P × P (k)	B-Q2 (n) Kt-Q2
7	Q-Kt4! (a) P-KKt3	P × P B × P	Q × B Kt × QP!	Kt × P Q-B2	Kt-B3 P-QB4
8	Kt-B3 Q-B2	B-Q3 Kt-R5	Kt × Kt P × Kt	Q-Kt3 P-QR3	P × P P-QR3 (o)
9	B-Q3 Kt-QB3	O-O Kt-B3	Kt-B3 Kt-K2	P-QR3 B × Ktch	P-QKt4 B-B2
10	O-O KKt-K2	R-K1 P-KR3	Kt × P Kt-B3	P × B Kt-Q2	B-KB4 P-B3!
11	R-K1 B-Q2	Kt-R4 B-B1	Kt × Kt P × Kt	P-KB4 O-O	P × P B × B
12	P × P O-O-O	R-QB1 B-Q2	B-Q3 Q-Kt3	B-Q2 Kt-KB4	P × Kt Q × P
13	P-Kt5 Kt-QKt1	Kt × Kt Q × Kt	QR-Kt1 O-O	Kt × Kt P × Kt	Q-Q4 P-K4
14	Q-Kt4+(b)	P-QB4 ± (e)	O-O = (h)	Q-B3 ± (l)	Q × QP Kt-B3 = (p)

\* DIAGRAM 35

cols. 36-40



[After 4 P-K5]

(a) Bogoljubow's move. Also good is 7 Kt-B3, Q-B2; 8 Q-Q4, Kt-K2; 9 B-Q3, Kt-Q2; 10 O-O, Kt-QB3; 11 Q ×

BP, Q-Kt3; 12 P-Kt5 ±. Rausser—Alartortsev, U.S.S.R. championship, 1933. Weak is the older 7 P × P?, Q-B2; 8 Kt-B3, Kt-K2; 9 B-Q3, Kt-Kt3; 10 O-O, Kt-Q2; 11 R-K1, Q × BP ≠. Em. Lasker—Maroczy, New York, 1924.

(b) 14... B-K1; 15 B-Kt5, R-Q2; 16 R × P, Q-Kt3; 17 R-R8, Q-Q1; 18 Kt-Q4, P-R3; 19 B-B6, R-Kt1; 20 P-Kt6, resigns. Bogoljubow—Danielsson, Zoppot, 1935.

(c) 6 P-QR3, B × Kt; 7 P × B transposes into lines similar to cols. 31-34. If 6 Kt-Kt5, B × Bch; 7 Q × B, O-O; 8 P-QB3, Kt-B4 (better than 8... P-QKt3; 9 P-KB4, B-R3; 10 Kt-B3, Kt-Q2; 11 P-QR4, Kt-QB3; 12 P-QKt4 ±. Alekhine—Nimzovitch, San Remo, 1930); 9 B-Q3, B-Q2; 10 Kt-B3 (better 10 P × P), B × Kt; 11 B × B, Q-Kt3; 12 B-Q3, Kt-B3 =. Stoltz—Nimzovitch, match, 1934.

Notes continued on p. 86

1 P-K4, P-K3; 2 P-Q4, P-Q4; 3 Kt-QB3

	41	42	43	44	45
3	(B-Kt5)				P × P (m)
4	Kt-K2 P × P		P × P P × P	P-QR3 (j) B × Ktch	Kt × P Kt-KB3
5	P-QR3 B-K2		B-QB3 B × Ktch	P × B P × P	Kt × Ktch P × Kt!
6	Kt × P Kt-QB3! (a)	Kt × B P-KB4 (d)	Kt-K2 KKt-K2	Q-Kt4 Kt-KB3	Kt-B3 (n) P-Kt3
7	B-K3 (b) Kt-B3	B-KB4 (e) Kt-KB3	O-O B-KB4	Q × KtP R-Kt1	B-Kt5ch P-B3
8	KKt-B3 O-O	Q-Q2 O-O	B × B (h) Kt × B	Q-R6 P-B4	B-Q3 B-QKt2
9	Kt-Kt3 P-QKt3	O-O-O Kt-R4	Q-Q3 Q-Q2	Kt-K2 (k) QKt-Q2	B-K3 Q-B2
10	B-K2 B-Kt2	B-B4 Kt-QB3 (f)	Kt-Q1 O-O	Kt-Kt3 R-Kt3? (l)	Q-K2 Kt-Q2
11	O-O Q-Q2	P-B3! P × P (g)	Kt-K3 Kt × Kt	Q-K3 Kt-Q4	B-QR6 B × B
12	Q-Q2 QR-Q1	P × P Kt × B	B × Kt B-Q3 (i)	Q × P Kt × P	Q × B B-Q3
13	KR-Q1 Q-B1 = (c)	Q × Kt ±	P-QB3 Kt-K2 =	Q-Q3+	O-O-O P-Kt4 = (o)

(a) More accurate than 6... Kt-KB3; 7 KKt-B3, QKt-Q2?; 8 B-KB4, Kt × Kt (better 8... Kt-Q4); 9 Kt × Kt, Kt-B3; 10 B-Q3, O-O; 11 Kt × Ktch, B × Kt; 12 P-QB3, Q-Q4; 13 Q-K2, P-B3; 14 O-O ±. Lasker—Capablanca, Moscow, 1935.

(b) If 7 P-KKt4, P-K4!; 8 P-Q5, Kt-Q5!; 9 KKt-B3, P-KB4; 10 P × P, B × BP; 11 B-K3 =.

(c) Alekhine—Euwe, 5th match game, 1935.

(d) Sufficient for equality is 6... Kt-QB3; 7 B-QKt5, Kt-K2; 8 O-O, O-O; 9 B × Kt, Kt × B; 10 P-Q5, P × P; 11 Q × P, Kt-Q5!; 12 B-Kt5, Q × Q; 13 Kt × Q, Kt-K3; 14 B-R4 =. Lasker—Kan, Moscow, 1935.

(e) Other continuations which give White some attack for the Pawn are: (1) 7 P-B3, P × P; 8 Q × P, Q × P (better 8... Q-R5ch; 9 P-Kt3, Q × QP; 10 B-KB4, P-B3); 9 Q-Kt3!, Kt-KB3? (necessary was 9... Kt-K2; 10 Kt-Kt5, Q-

K5ch; 11 B-K2, QKt-B3; 12 Kt × Pch, K-B2 with a difficult position); 10 Q × KtP, Q-K4ch; 11 B-K2, R-Kt1; 12 Q-R6, R-Kt3; 13 Q-R4, B-Q2; 14 B-KKt5+. Alekhine—Nimzovitch, Bled, 1931. (2) 7 B-QB4, Kt-KB3; 8 B-KKt5, O-O; 9 Q-K2, Kt-B3; 10 O-O-O, K-R1; 11 P-B3, P × P; 12 P × P. Maroczy—Seitz, Győr, 1924.

(f) Pilnik—Stahlberg, Mar del Plata, 1942, which continued 11 Kt-K2?, Kt-K2!+.

(g) If 11... Kt × B; 12 Q × Kt, Kt × P; 13 Kt-Kt5, P-B4; 14 P-B3+, or 11... Q × P; 12 Q × Q, Kt × Q; 13 B × BP ±.

(h) Better 8 Kt-Kt3, B-Kt3; 9 QKt-K2, Q-Q2 =. Spielmann—Nimzovitch, Copenhagen, 1923.

(i) Capablanca—Alekhine, 1st match game, 1927, which continued 13 KR-K1, Kt-Kt5; 14 Q-Kt3, Q-B4 ≠.

Notes continued on p. 86

## Notes continued from p. 84

(d) Best is  $\delta \dots QKt-B3$ ;  $7 P-QR3$  with positions similar to cols. 31-34.

(e) Fine—Flohr, AVRO tournament, 1938.

(f)  $5 \dots P \times P$ ;  $6 Kt-Kt5$ ,  $B \times Bch$ ;  $7 Q \times B$ ,  $Kt-QB3$ ;  $8 Kt-KB3$ ,  $P-B3$ ;  $9 Q-B4$ ,  $Kt-R3$ !;  $10 Kt-Q6ch$ ,  $K-B1$ ;  $11 B-Kt5$  (Fine—Capablanca, AVRO tournament, 1938) and now Capablanca suggested  $11 \dots Kt \times P$ !;  $12 Kt \times Kt$ ,  $K-K2$ !;  $13 Kt \times Bch$ ,  $R \times Kt$  and regains the piece satisfactorily.

(g) An alternative is  $6 Q-Kt4$ ,  $K-B1$ ;  $7 P \times P$ ,  $P-Q5$ ;  $8 Kt-K4$ ,  $B \times Bch$ ;  $9 Kt \times B$ ,  $Kt \times P$ ;  $10 Q-Kt3$ ,  $Kt-QB3$ ;  $11 O-O-O$ ,  $KKt-K2$ . Kashdan—Simonson, match, 1938.

(h) Lasker—Bogatyrychuk, Moscow, 1935.

(i) If  $5 P \times P$ ,  $Kt-QB3$ ;  $6 Kt-B3$ ,  $KKt-K2$ ;  $7 B-Q3$ ,  $P-Q5$ ;  $8 P-QR3$ ,  $B-R4$ ;  $9 P-QKt4$ ,  $Kt \times KtP$ ;  $10 P \times Kt$ ,  $B \times P$ ;  $11 B-Kt5ch$  (Fine—Botvinnik, AVRO tournament, 1938),  $B-Q2$ !;  $12 Q \times P$ ,  $B \times Ktch$ ;  $13 Q \times B$ ,  $B \times B =$ .

(j)  $5 \dots K-B1$ ;  $6 Kt-B3$ ,  $P \times P$ ;  $7 Kt \times P$ ,  $Q-R4$ ;  $8 B-Q2$ ,  $Kt-QB3$ ;  $9 P-QR3$ ,  $P-B4$  (Bogatyrychuk—Botvinnik,

Moscow, 1927);  $10 Kt \times Kt$ ,  $P \times Q$ ;  $11 Kt \times Q$ ,  $B \times Kt(4)$ ;  $12 B-K2$ ,  $P-R4$ ;  $13 P-R3$ !  $\pm$ .

(k) Better  $\delta \dots Kt-B4$  as in col. 35.

(l)  $14 \dots Kt-B4$ ;  $15 P-B4$ ! L. Steiner—Koshnitsky, New South Wales championship, 1941.

(m) Alternatives are: (1)  $4 \dots P-QKt3$ ;  $5 Q-Kt4$ !,  $B-B1$ !;  $6 B-KKt5$ ,  $Q-Q2$ ;  $7 O-O-O$ ,  $B-R3$ ;  $8 Kt-R3$ ,  $B \times B$ ;  $9 KR \times B$ ,  $Kt-QB3$ ;  $10 P-B4$ ,  $KKt-K2$ ;  $11 B \times Kt$ ,  $Kt \times B$ ;  $12 Q-K2$ ,  $P-KR4$ ;  $13 Kt-KKt5 \pm$ . Alexander—Alekhine, Margate, 1938. (2)  $4 \dots P-KB3$ ;  $5 Kt-B3$ ,  $P-QB4$ ;  $6 P-QR3$ ,  $B-R4$ ;  $7 P-QKt4$ ,  $P \times KtP$ ;  $8 Kt-QKt5$ ,  $Kt-B3$ ;  $9 RP \times P$ ,  $B-B2$ ;  $10 P-B3$ ,  $KKt-K2$ ;  $11 P \times P$ ,  $P \times P$ ;  $12 B-Q3 \pm$ . Botvinnik—Ragosin, Moscow, 1927.

(n)  $6 P-QKt4$ ,  $B-Kt3$ ;  $7 Kt-R4$ ,  $B-Q2$ ;  $8 P-QB3 \pm$  is simplest.

(o) Better than  $\delta \dots B-B2$ ;  $9 B-QKt5$ ,  $O-O$ ;  $10 B \times Kt$ ,  $B \times B$ ;  $11 O-O \pm$ .

(p) Belavienetz—Ragosin, Leningrad—Moscow, 1939.

## Notes continued from p. 85

(j) Warmly recommended by Alekhine. Inferior alternatives are: (1)  $4 Q-Kt4$ ,  $Kt-KB3$  ( $4 \dots K-B1$ ;  $5 P-K5$ ,  $P-QB4$ ;  $6 P-QR3$ ,  $Q-R4$ ;  $7 B-Q2$ ,  $P \times P$ ;  $8 Q \times QP =$ );  $5 Q \times P$ ,  $R-Kt1$ ;  $6 Q-R6$ ,  $R-Kt3$  ( $6 \dots P-B4$ ! is feasible);  $7 Q-K3$ ,  $P-B4$ ! (better than  $7 \dots P-K4$ ;  $8 B-Q2$ ,  $P \times QP$ ;  $9 Q \times P$ ,  $P-B4$ ;  $10 Q-K5ch$ , or  $7 \dots Kt \times P$ ;  $8 B-Q3$ ,  $P-KB4$ ;  $9 Kt-K2$ ,  $P-B4$ ;  $10 B \times Kt+$ . Alekhine—Euwe, 9th match game, 1935);  $8 B-Q2$ ,  $Kt-Kt5$ ;  $9 Q-Q3$ ,  $Kt-QB3+$  (Alekhine). (2)  $4 B-Q3$ ,  $P \times P$ ;  $5 B \times P$ ,  $P-QB4$  (or  $5 \dots Kt-KB3$ ;  $6 B-Q3$ ,  $P-B4$ ;  $7 P-QR3$ ,  $B \times Ktch$ ;  $8 P \times B$ ,  $QKt-Q2$ ;  $9 Kt-B3$ ,  $Q-B2$ ;  $10 O-O$ ,  $P-B5$ ;  $11 B-K2$ ,  $Kt-Q4$ ;  $12 P-QR4$ ,  $Kt \times P$ ;  $13 Q-Q2$ ,  $Kt \times Bch$ ;  $14 Q \times Kt$ ,  $O-O$ ;  $15 B-R3$ ,  $R-Q1 \mp$ . Lilienthal—Boleslavsky, Leningrad—Moscow, 1941);  $6 P-QR3$ ,  $B \times Ktch$ ;  $7 P \times B$ ,  $Kt-KB3$ ;  $8 B-Q3$ ,  $O-O$ ;  $9 Kt-B3$ ,  $QKt-Q2$ ;  $10 O-O$ ,  $P-QKt3$ ;  $11 Q-K2$ ,  $B-Kt2$ ;  $12 Kt-K5$ ,  $R-B1 =$ . Tarta-

kower—Przepiorka, Debreczen, 1925. (3)  $4 B-Q2$ ,  $Kt-K2$ !;  $5 P \times P$ ,  $P \times P$ ;  $6 Q-B3$ ,  $QKt-B3$ ;  $7 B-QKt5$ ,  $O-O$ ;  $8 KKt-K2$ ,  $B-KB4$ ;  $9 O-O-O$ ,  $P-QR3$ !;  $10 B-Q3$ ,  $B \times B$ ;  $11 Q \times B$ ,  $Kt-R4$ !  $\mp$ . Speyer—Alekhine, Hamburg, 1910.

(k) Also strong is  $9 B-Kt2$ ,  $QKt-Q2$ ;  $10 O-O-O$ ,  $Q-R4$ ;  $11 P-B3$ !,  $P-Kt3$ ;  $12 BP \times P$ ,  $P \times P$ ;  $13 P \times P+$ . A. Steiner—Book, Kemer, 1937.

(l) Necessary was  $10 \dots Q-R4$ ;  $11 B-Q2$ ,  $Q-R5$ ;  $12 P \times P$  but Alekhine still prefers White's game. The column is Alekhine—Euwe, 3rd match game, 1935.

(m) The Rubinstein Variation.

(n) A possibility here is  $6 B-K3$ ,  $Kt-Q2$ ;  $7 Q-Q2$ ,  $P-Kt3$ ;  $8 B-K2$ ,  $B-QKt2$ ;  $9 B-B3$ ,  $Q-B1$ ;  $10 P-Q5 \pm$ . Tartakower—Brinckmann, Kecskemet, 1927.

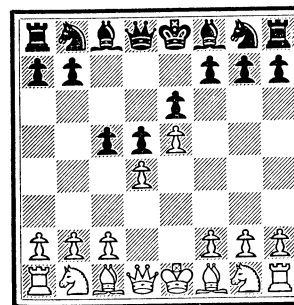
(o) L. Steiner—Knoch, Niendorf, 1927. Compare cols. 27-28.

## 1 P-K4, P-K3; 2 P-Q4, P-Q4

	46	47	48	49	50
3 (Kt-QB3).....			P-K5		
(P x P) (a)			P-QB4*		
4 (Kt x P)			P-QB3.....	Kt-KB3	
Kt-Q2			Kt-QB3	Kt-QB3 (m)	
5 Kt-KB3			Kt-KB3	B-Q3	
KKt-B3 (b)			Q-Kt3	P x P	
6 Kt x Ktch			B-K2 (h)	O-O	
Kt x Kt			P x P	P-B3.....	B-B4 (o)
7 B-Q3 (c)			P x P	B-QKt5	P-QR3
B-K2.....	P-B4		KKt-K2	B-Q2	KKt-K2
8 Q-K2	P x P		P-QKt3	B x Kt	QKt-Q2
O-O (d)	B x P		Kt-B4	P x B	Kt-Kt3
9 B-KKt5	B-KKt5 (f)		B-Kt2	Q x P	Kt-Kt3
P-B4	B-K2		B-Kt5ch	P x P	B-Kt3
10 P x P	Q-K2		K-B1	Q x KP	R-K1
Q-R4ch	O-O		P-KR4 (i)	Kt-B3	B-Q2
11 P-B3	O-O-O $\pm$ (g)		P-KR4 (j)	B-B4	P-Kt3
Q x P(B4)			B-Q2	B-B4	P-B3!
12 O-O			Kt-B3	Kt-B3	B x Ktch
R-Q1			B x Kt! (k)	O-O = (n)	P x B
13 Kt-K5! $\pm$ (e)			B x B		Q-Q3
			R-QB1 $\mp$ (l)		K-B2! $\mp$ (p)

## \* DIAGRAM 36

cols. 48-50



[After 3... P-QB4]

(a) 3... P-QB4 (Marshall's Variation) is refuted by  $4 KP \times P$ ,  $KP \times P$ ;  $5 B-$

$Kt5ch$ ,  $Kt-B3$ ;  $6 Kt-B3$ ,  $Kt-B3$ ;  $7 O-O \pm$ .

(b) If  $5 \dots B-K2$  the most energetic is  $6 B-QB4$ ,  $KKt-B3$ ;  $7 Kt \times Ktch$ ,  $B \times Kt$ ;  $8 Q-K2$ ,  $O-O$ ;  $9 B-B4$ ,  $P-B4$ ;  $10 O-O-O$ !,  $P \times P$ ;  $11 B-Q6$ ,  $R-K1$ ;  $12 Kt \times P$ ,  $P-QR3$ ;  $13 Kt-B3 \pm$ . Ragosin—Makogonov, Leningrad, 1934.

(c)  $7 Kt-K5$ !,  $B-Q3$ ;  $8 Q-B3$ ,  $P-B3$ ;  $9 P-B3$ ,  $O-O$ ;  $10 B-KKt5$ ,  $B-K2$ ;  $11 B-Q3$  led to a brilliant victory in Capablanca—Blanco, Havana, 1913. But in reply to  $7 Kt-K5$ ,  $Q-Q4$ ! equalizes, e.g.,  $8 B-K3$ ,  $B-Q3$ ;  $9 Kt-B3$ ,  $B-Q2$ ;  $10 B-K2$ ,  $P-QKt4$ !;  $11 O-O$ ,  $B-B3$ ;  $12 P-QR4$ ,  $P-QR3$ ;  $13 Kt-K1$ ,  $P-K4$ ! =. Fine—Snethlage, correspondence, 1940.

Notes continued on p. 88

Notes continued from p. 87

(d) The older  $\delta$ ... P-QKt3 is equally unsatisfactory:  $\rho$  B-KKt5, B-Kt2;  $10$  O-O, O-O;  $11$  QR-Q1, P-Kt3 (or  $11$ ... B  $\times$  Kt;  $12$  Q  $\times$  B, Q-Q4;  $13$  Q-K3  $\pm$ . Or  $11$ ... P-KR3;  $12$  B-KB4, Q-Q4;  $13$  P-B4, Q-QR4;  $13$  B  $\times$  P+. Tarrasch-Mieses, match, 1916;  $12$  KR-K1, Kt-R4;  $13$  B-KR6  $\pm$ . Tarrasch-Mieses, 11th match game, 1916.

(e) If now  $13$ ... R  $\times$  B?;  $14$  P-QKt4!, Q-Q4;  $15$  P-QB4, Q-K5;  $16$  Q  $\times$  Q, Kt  $\times$  Q;  $17$  B  $\times$  B, R-Q7;  $18$  QR-Q1 and won quickly. Euwe-Landau, 2nd match game, 1939. If  $13$ ... B-Q2;  $14$  QR-Q1, B-K1;  $15$  KR-K1, Kt-Q4;  $16$  B-B1, B-B1;  $17$  P-QR3, P-QKt4;  $18$  Q-K4, P-KKt3;  $19$  Q-KR4. Bronstein-Zita, match Moscow-Prague, 1946.

(f) More precise than  $\rho$  O-O, O-O;  $10$  B-KKt5, P-QKt3;  $11$  Q-K2, B-Kt2;  $12$  QR-Q1, Q-B2! and analysis in the *Deutsche Schachzeitung*, December, 1930, showed that Black has a playable game.

(g) Spielmann-Petrow, Margate, 1938.

(h) If  $6$  B-Q3, P  $\times$  P;  $7$  P  $\times$  P, B-Q2 compels  $8$  B-K2. An instructive mistake after  $6$  B-Q3 is  $6$ ... B-Q2?;  $7$  P  $\times$  P!, B  $\times$  P;  $8$  O-O, P-B3;  $9$  P-QKt4, B-K2;  $10$  B-KB4, P  $\times$  P;  $11$  Kt  $\times$  P  $\pm$ . Nimzovitch-Salwe, Carlsbad, 1911.

(i) Another good reply is  $10$ ... O-O and if  $11$  P-Kt4, Kt-R3;  $12$  R-Kt1, P-B3!;  $13$  P  $\times$  P, R  $\times$  P;  $14$  P-Kt5, R  $\times$  Kt;  $15$  B  $\times$  R, Kt-B4;  $16$  R-Kt4, B-Q2 with enough attack for Black (Nimzovitch).

(j) Nimzovitch preferred P-Kt3 but

Black can always proceed as in the column.

(k) Much better than  $12$ ... P-R3;  $13$  Kt-R4, Q-R2;  $14$  R-B1, R-QB1;  $15$  P-R3, B-K2;  $16$  P-QKt4  $\pm$ . Aitken-Christoffel, Hastings, 1945-46.

(l)  $14$  R-R3, QKt-K2;  $15$  Q-Q2, B-Kt4;  $16$  Kt-Kt1, Kt-Kt3;  $17$  Q-Kt5, O-O;  $18$  R-K1, P-B3!;  $19$  P  $\times$  P, R  $\times$  P. Aitken-Bondarevsky, match Great Britain-U.S.S.R., 1946.

(m) Good alternatives for Black are: (1)  $4$ ... P  $\times$  P;  $5$  Q  $\times$  P, Kt-QB3 (or  $5$ ... Kt-K2;  $6$  B-Q3, KKt-B3;  $7$  Q-KB4, Kt-Q2;  $8$  O-O, P-B3;  $9$  P  $\times$  P, Q  $\times$  P;  $10$  Kt-B3, B-K2 =. Petrow-Opoensky, Podesbrady, 1936);  $6$  Q-KB4, P-B4;  $7$  B-Q3, KKt-K2;  $8$  O-O, Kt-Kt3;  $9$  Q-Kt3, B-K2;  $10$  R-K1, O-O;  $11$  P-QR3, Kt-Kt1;  $12$  QKt-Q2, P-QR4;  $13$  Kt-Kt3, Kt-R3  $\mp$ . Keres-Euwe, Zandvoort, 1936. (2)  $4$ ... Kt-K2;  $5$  P  $\times$  P, KKt-B3;  $6$  B-KB4, Kt-Q2;  $7$  P-QR3, Q-B2;  $8$  P-QKt4, P-QR4;  $9$  P-B4, RP  $\times$  P;  $10$  BP  $\times$  P, KP  $\times$  P;  $11$  Q  $\times$  P, Kt  $\times$  BP;  $12$  Kt-Q4, Kt  $\times$  Kt;  $13$  Q  $\times$  Kt(4), Kt-K3;  $14$  Q-Q2, B-B4+. Keres-Stahlberg, Dresden, 1936.

(n) Alekhine-Euwe, Nottingham, 1936. (o) Weak is  $6$ ... KKt-K2;  $7$  B-KB4, Kt-Kt3;  $8$  B-Kt3, B-K2;  $9$  R-K1, Q-Kt3;  $10$  QKt-Q2, B-Q2;  $11$  Kt-Kt3, QR-B1;  $12$  P-QR3, P-QR3;  $13$  P-KR4  $\pm$ . Keres-Hasenfuss, Kemer, 1937.

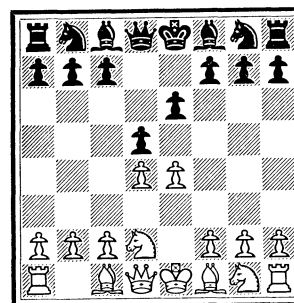
(p)  $14$  P-KR4, Q-KKt1;  $15$  B-Q2, Q-R2;  $16$  B-Kt4, P-Kt4!. Bondarevsky-Botvinnik, Leningrad-Moscow, 1941.

1 P-K4, P-K3; 2 P-Q4, P-Q4

	51	52	53	54	55
3	(P-K5)..... (P-QB4)	Kt-Q2 (d)* P-QB4.....			Kt-QB3
4	Q-Kt4 (a) Kt-QB3 (b)	KP $\times$ P..... KP $\times$ P.....	Q $\times$ P!	KKt-B3 / (j) Kt-QB3	KKt-B3 Kt-B3
5	Kt-KB3 KKt-K2	B-Kt5ch B-Q2 (e)	KKt-B3 Kt-QB3	P $\times$ QP KP $\times$ P (k)	P-K5 Kt-Q2
6	P-B3? Kt-B4	Q-K2ch Q-K2	B-B4 Q-Q1	B-Kt5 (l) B-Q3 (m)	Kt-Kt3 (p) P-B3 (q)
7	B-Q3 P $\times$ P!	Q $\times$ Qch (f) B $\times$ Q	Kt-Kt3 P $\times$ P	O-O Kt-K2	B-QKt5! B-K2 (r)
8	O-O B-Q2	B $\times$ Bch Kt $\times$ B	QKt $\times$ P (h) Kt $\times$ Kt	P $\times$ P B $\times$ P	B-KB4 O-O
9	R-K1 P $\times$ P	P $\times$ P Kt $\times$ P	Kt $\times$ Kt Kt-B3	Kt-Kt3 B-Kt3	P $\times$ P P $\times$ P
10	Kt $\times$ P P-KKt3	Kt-Kt3 Kt-R5!	O-O B-K2	B-K3 B $\times$ B	O-O Kt-Kt3
11	B-KKt5 B-K2	Kt-K2 B-B3	P-QKt3 O-O	B $\times$ Ktch (n) P $\times$ B	R-K1 B-Q3
12	Q-KB4 QKt-Q5!+(c)	P-QB3 Kt-K2	B-Kt2 P-QR3	P $\times$ B O-O	B-Kt3 P-QR3
13		O-O O-O = (g)	Q-K2 Q-B2 = (i)	Q-Q2 $\pm$ (o)	B-Q3 $\pm$ (s)

## \* DIAGRAM 37

cols. 52-57



[After 3 Kt-Q2]

(a) If  $4$  P  $\times$  P, Kt-QB3;  $5$  Kt-KB3, B  $\times$  P;  $6$  B-Q3, P-B4;  $7$  P-B3, P-QR3;  $8$  QKt-Q2, KKt-K2;  $9$  Kt-Kt3,

B-R2;  $10$  O-O, O-O;  $11$  R-K1, Kt-Kt3 =. Tarrasch-Lasker, St. Petersburg, 1914.

(b)  $4$ ... P  $\times$  P is an equally good reply:  $5$  Kt-KB3, Kt-QB3;  $6$  B-Q3, Q-B2! (Best. If instead (1)  $6$ ... KKt-K2;  $7$  O-O, Kt-Kt3;  $8$  R-K1, Q-B2;  $9$  Q-Kt3, B-B4;  $10$  P-KR4, K-B1;  $11$  P-R5, KKt-K2;  $12$  P-R6+. Nimzovitch-Szekely, Kecskemet, 1927. (2)  $6$ ... P-KKt3;  $7$  P-KR4, P-KR4;  $8$  Q-Kt3, KKt-K2;  $9$  O-O, Q-Kt3;  $10$  P-R4, Kt-Kt5;  $11$  B-Kt5ch, B-Q2;  $12$  B  $\times$  Bch  $\pm$ . Batik-Duehrssen, correspondence, 1931);  $7$  Q-Kt3 (or  $7$  B-KB4, Kt-Kt5), P-B3;  $8$  P  $\times$  P (8 B-KB4?, P-KKt4;  $9$  B-Q2, Kt  $\times$  P;  $10$  Kt  $\times$  Kt, Q  $\times$  Ktch+. Araiza-Fine, Syracuse, 1934), Q  $\times$  Q;  $9$  P-B7ch, K  $\times$  P;  $10$  RP  $\times$  Q, P-K4!  $\mp$ .

Notes continued on p. 90

Notes continued from p. 89

(c) Canepa—Alekhine, Montevideo, 1938.

(d) Introduced originally by Tarrasch, recently revived and now one of the most popular variations.

(e) 5...Kt-B3; 6 KKt-B3 transposes to col. 54.

(f) More precise is 7 B × Bch, Kt × B; 8 P × P, Q × Qch; 9 Kt × Q, for if 9... B × P?; 10 Kt-QKt3, B-Kt3; 11 QKt-Q4, KKt-B3; 12 B-Kt5, O-O; 13 O-O, Kt-Kt5; 14 B-R4 ± (Kan-Bondarevsky, Tiflis, 1937) but Black should reply 9...Kt × P and continue as in the text.

(g) Flohr—Botvinnik, 8th match game, 1933.

(h) Or 8 O-O, B-K2; 9 Q-K2, Kt-B3; 10 R-Q1, O-O =. Keres—Eliskases, Noordwijk, 1938.

(i) Bondarevsky—Yudovitch, U.S.S.R. championship, 1939.

(j) 4 QP × P, B × P is very drawish, e.g., 5 B-Q3, Kt-QB3; 6 P × P, P × P; 7 Kt-Kt3, B-Kt3; 8 Kt-B3, KKt-K2; 9 O-O, O-O; 10 P-B3, Q-Q3; 11 R-K1, Kt-Kt3 =. Spielmann—Alekhine, New York, 1927.

(k) 5...Q × P, as in col. 53, is feasible.

(l) Weak is 6 B-K2, Kt-B3; 7 O-O, B-K3; 8 R-K1, Q-Kt3; 9 Kt-B1, P × P; 10 P-QR3, B-Q3; 11 B-Q3, O-O; 12 Kt-Kt3, QR-K1 ≠. Konstantinopolsky—Botvinnik, U.S.S.R. championship, 1945.

(m) Inferior alternatives are: (1) 6...Q-K2ch; 7 B-K21, P × P; 8 O-O, Q-B2; 9 Kt-Kt3, B-Q3; 10 QKt × P, P-QR3; 11 P-QKt3, KKt-K2; 12 B-Kt2, O-O; 13 Kt × Kt, P × Kt; 14 P-B4 ±. Keres—Capablanca, AVRO tournament, 1938. (2) 6...P-B5; 7 O-O, B-Q3; 8 P-QKt3, P × P; 9 RP × P, KKt-K2; 10 R-K1, O-O; 11 Kt-B1, B-KKt5; 12 P-B3, Q-B2; 13 B-R3, KR-Q1; 14 B-Q3 ±. Keres—Stahlberg, Buenos Aires, 1939.

(n) An improvement on the first-round game between the same opponents: 11 P × B, O-O; 12 Q-Q2, Q-Kt3; 13 P-QR4, B-B4; 14 KKt-Q4, Kt × Kt; 15 P × Kt and now 15...Q-KKt3; 16 P-B3, B-K5 was in order (Botvinnik).

(o) Botvinnik—Boleslavsky, Leningrad—Moscow, 1941.

(p) The most convincing. A good alternative is: (1) 6 P-B3, P-B3; 7 Kt-R4 / (or 7 P × P, Q × P; 8 B-Kt5, B-Q3 and now (1) 9 Q-K2?, O-O; 10 Kt-B1, P-K4; 11 B × Kt, P × B; 12 P × P, Kt × P; 13 Kt × Kt, B × Kt; 14 B-Q2, P-QR4; 15 O-O-O, B-R3 ≠. Smyslov—Serebrisky, Tallinn, 1945. (2) 9 Kt-B1!, P-K4?; 10 Kt-K3!, P-K5; 11 Kt × P, Q-K3; 12 Kt-K5!!, Kt(Q2) × Kt; 13 P × Kt, B × P; 14 O-O, B-Q2?; 15 B-Kt5, O-O; 16 B-QB4+. Ekstrom—Vaitonis, Stockholm, 1944-45), Q-K2; 8 B-Q3, Q-B2 (better 8...P-KKt3); 9 P-KB4, B-K2; 10 O-O, P-B4; 11 Kt(Q2)-B3, Kt-B1; 12 Kt-Kt5, B × Kt; 13 P × B, Kt-Kt3; 14 Kt-B3 ±. Boleslavsky—Rudakovsky, U.S.S.R. championship, 1945. Weaker alternatives are: (2) 6 P-B4, P × P; 7 Kt × P, B-Kt5ch (better 7...B-K2); 8 B-Q2, O-O; 9 B-Q3, Kt-Kt3?; 10 Kt × Kt ±. Luckis—Stahlberg, Buenos Aires, 1942. (3) 6 B-Q3, Kt-Kt5 (not 6...P-B3?; 7 Kt-Kt5!+. Luckis—Stahlberg, Mar del Plata, 1942); 7 B-K2, P-QB4; 8 P-B3, Kt-QB3; 9 O-O, P × P / (not 9...P-B3; 10 KP × P, Q × P; 11 P-B4!, BP × P; 12 P × P, P × P; 13 R-K1, B-K2; 14 Kt-Kt3+. Bungalat—Marini, Buenos Aires, 1942); 10 P × P, P-B3 =.

(q) A thought here is 6...P-QKt3, to play for ...P-QB4.

(r) If 7...P × P; 8 P × P, B-K2; 9 O-O, O-O; 10 P-QK2 ±.

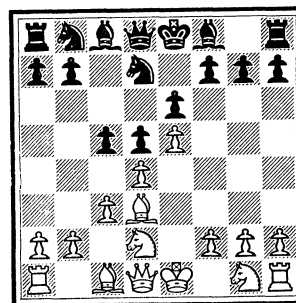
(s) 13...Kt-R5; 14 R-Kt1. Botvinnik—Boleslavsky, Moscow, 1944.

1 P-K4, P-K3

	56	57	58	59	60
2	(P-Q4)..... (P-Q4)		Q-K2 (j)..... P-QB4 (k)	Kt-K2..... P-Q4	P-QKt3 (p) P-Q4 (q)
3	(Kt-Q2) (a) Kt-KB3 (b)		P-KB4 Kt-QB3	P × P P × P	B-Kt2! P × P
4	P-K5 KKt-Q2		Kt-KB3 KKt-K2	Kt-Kt3 Kt-KB3 (n)	Kt-QB3 Kt-KB3
5	B-Q3 P-QB4		P-KKt3 P-KKt3 (l)	P-Q4 B-Q3	Q-K2 B-Kt5 (r)
6	P-QB3* Kt-QB3.....	P-QKt3! (f)	P-Q3 B-Kt2	B-Q3 O-O	O-O-O Q-K2
7	Kt-K2 Q-Kt3 (c)	Kt-K2 (g) B-R3	Kt-B3 Kt-Q5	O-O R-K1	Kt × P B-R6
8	Kt-B3 P × P	B × B Kt × B	Kt × Kt P × Kt	Kt-B3 Kt-B3	Kt-KB3 B × Bch
9	P × P B-Kt5ch	O-O P-Kt3 (h)	Kt-Q1 P-Kt3	Kt-B5 Kt-K5?	K × B QKt-Q2
10	K-B1! (d) B-K2	Kt-B3 B-Kt2	B-Kt2 B-Kt2	Kt × B Q × Kt	P-Q4 O-O
11	P-QR3 Kt-B1 (e)	B-Kt5 Q-B1	O-O O-O	Kt-Kt5 Q-Q1	Kt-K5 P-B4
12	P-QKt4 ±	Q-Q2 P-R3 = (i)	P-Kt3 Q-B2 = (m)	B-KB4 ± (o)	Kt × Kt ± (s)

## \* DIAGRAM 38

cols. 56-57



[After 6 P-QB3]

(a) Alternatives are: (1) 3 B-K3, P × P; 4 Kt-Q2, Kt-KB3; 5 Kt-K2, P-QKt3; 6 P-QR3, B-Kt2; 7 P-QB4, P-B4 ≠. Euwe. (2) 3 B-Q3, P × P; 4

B × P, Kt-KB3; 5 B-Q3, P-B4; 6 P × P, B × P; 7 Kt-KB3, Kt-B3; 8 O-O, Q-B2 =. Tartakower—Torre, Moscow, 1925.

(b) A curious defense which has not been adequately refuted theoretically is 3...P-KB4! (first seen in Schweinberger—Haberditz, Vienna, 1939). If 4 P × BP (or 4 P-K5, P-B4; 5 P-QB3, Kt-QB3; 6 QKt-B3, Q-Kt3; 7 B-Q3, P × P; 8 P × P, B-Q2; 9 Kt-K2, Kt-Kt5; 10 B-Kt1, Q-R3; 11 O-O, B-Kt4; 12 R-K1, B × Kt; 13 R × B, R-B1; 14 B-Q2, Kt-R3; 15 B × QKt, B × B =. Mikenas—Hasenfuss, Kemerli—Riga, 1939), P × P; 5 Q-R5ch, P-Kt3; 6 Q-K2ch, B-K2; 7 P-KR4, Kt-KB3; 8 KKt-B3, O-O; 9 Kt-K5, Kt-B3; 10 QKt-B3, R-K1; 11 B-B4, Kt × Kt; 12 B × Kt, P-B5!; 13 Q-Q2, Kt-R4;

Notes continued on p. 92

## Notes continued from p. 91

14 O—O—O, B—KKt5; 15 R—K1, B × Kt; 16 P × B, B × P; 17 B—Q3, B—B3 =. Bolbochan—Stahlberg, La Plata, 1944.

(c) 7...P—B3 !?; 8 Kt—B4, Q—K2; 9 Kt—B3, P × KP and now not 10 Kt × P(K5), KKt × Kt; 11 P × Kt, P—KKt3; 12 O—O, Kt × P; 13 R—K1, B—Kt2 ≠ (Keres—Fine, Margate, 1937), but 10 Kt—Kt6 !, P × Kt; 11 B × Pch, K—Q1; 12 B—Kt5, Kt—B3; 13 P × P ±.

(d) More aggressive than 10 B—Q2, B × Bch; 11 Q × B, Q—Kt5; 12 R—QB1, Q × Qch; 13 K × Q, Kt—Kt3 when however 14 P—QKt3, K—K2; 15 P—KR4, B—Q2; 16 R—R3 retains winning chances for White. Keres—Flores, Buenos Aires, 1939.

(e) Better 11...P—QR4. The column is Alekhine—Capablanca, AVRO tournament, 1938.

(f) This may also be played on the 5th move, usually transposes into the column.

(g) Or 7 Q—R4, P—QR4; 8 Q—B2, B—R3; 9 QKt—B3, Q—B1; 10 Kt—R3, B × B; 11 Q × B, Q—R3; 12 Q × Q, Kt × Q; 13 B—K3, B—K2; 14 K—K2, O—O; 15 KR—QB1, KR—B1 =. Keres—Mikenas, match Estonia—Lithuania, 1940.

(h) Black must solidify his K-side. If 9...P—QKt4; 10 P—KB4, P—Kt3; 11 Kt—B3, Kt—Kt3, 12 P—QR4 !, P—Kt5; 13 P—R5, Kt—Q2; 14 P—Kt4, P—R4; 15 P—B5 ±. Yudovitch—Tolush, Moscow, 1943.

(i) 13 B—K3, Q—Kt2; 14 Kt—K1 (better 14 P—KR4), QKt—Kt1; 15 P—KB4, Kt—QB3; 16 P—QKt3, Kt—K2. Ragosin—Botvinnik, 6th match game, 1940.

(j) Tchigorin's Attack.

(k) Good alternatives are: (1) 2...B—K2; 3 P—QKt3, P—Q4; 4 B—Kt2, B—B3; 5 P—K5, B—K2; 6 Q—Kt4, B—B1; 7 Kt—KR3, P—QB4; 8 P—KB4, Kt—QB3; 9 P—R3, Kt—R3 =. Tchigorin—Tarrasch, match, 1893. (2) 2...P—K4; 3 P—KB4, P—Q3; 4 Kt—KB3, Kt—

QB3; 5 P—KKt3, B—Kt5; 6 P—B3, P × P, 7 P × P, P—B4 !; 8 P—Q3, B—K2; 9 B—K3, B—R5ch; 10 B—B2, B × Bch; 11 Q × B, P × P; 12 P × P, Kt—B3; 13 QKt—Q2, Q—K2; 14 O—O—O, O—O—O; 15 R—K1, KR—B1 ≠. Konstantinopolsky—Bondarevsky, Leningrad—Moscow, 1939.

(l) Inferior is 5...P—Q4; 6 P—Q3, P—QKt3; 7 B—Kt2, P × P; 8 P × P, Kt—Kt5; 9 Kt—R3, B—R3; 10 Kt—B4, KKt—B3; 11 P—QR3 !, Kt—Q5; 12 Kt × Kt, Q × Kt; 13 P × Kt, B × Kt; 14 Q—K3 ±. Keres—Mikenas, Kemer, 1937.

(m) Tartakower—Selesniev, Pistyan, 1922.

(n) 4...Q—R5 was preferable.

(o) 12...R—K2; 13 P—KB3, Kt—B3; 14 R—K1, Kt—K1; 15 Q—Q2. Tartakower—Fine, Kemer, 1937.

(p) Other unusual alternatives are: (1) 2 P—KKt3 (Tartakower's Attack), P—Q4; 3 Kt—QB3, Kt—QB3; 4 P × P, P × P; 5 P—Q4, B—KB4; 6 P—QR3, Q—Q2; 7 B—Kt2, O—O—O; 8 KKt—K2, QKt—K2; 9 Kt—B4, Kt—KB3; 10 P—R3, P—KR4; 11 Kt—Q3, Kt—K5; 12 B—K3, Kt × Kt ≠. Morrison—Nimzovitch, London, 1927. (2) 2 P—QB4, P—Q4; 3 KP × P, P × P; 4 Q—R4ch, B—Q2; 5 Q—Kt3, B—B3; 6 P—Q4, Q—K2ch; 7 B—K3, P × P; 8 Q × BP, Kt—Q2; 9 Kt—QB3, Kt—Kt3; 10 Q—Kt3, Q—Kt5; 11 Q—B2, Kt—B3; 12 P—QR3, Q—Q3; 13 Kt—B3, B × Kt ≠. Tolush—Makogonov, Leningrad—Moscow, 1939. (3) 2 P—K5, P—Q3 =.

(q) Better 2...P—QB4 (Tartakower).

(r) 5...B—K2; 6 O—O—O, QKt—Q2; 7 P—KKt4 !, P—KR3; 8 B—Kt2, P—B3; 9 P—KR4 ±. Réti—Maroczy, Gothenburg, 1920.

(s) Spielmann—Grau, San Remo, 1930.

## GIUOCO PIANO

THIS OLD opening dates from the time when Italy was the ruling chess power. Unlike the more impetuous gambits in vogue then, White deferred the center advance for a while; hence the name, which is Italian for "quiet game." In modern tournaments it is not often seen because Black has too much defensive latitude.

The strongest try for White after the initial moves is 4 P—B3, to set up a Pawn center (cols. 1–21). Black then has three replies: 4...Kt—B3, 4...Q—K2 and 4...P—Q3.

(1) 4...Kt—B3 (cols. 1–14) meets the White center advance with a counter-attack. The main variations where White gives up a Pawn for an attack in col. 1–7 have been exhaustively analyzed and it has been shown that Black's defensive resources are adequate. Black's most solid line is that seen in col. 6, where he wins a Pawn at the expense of a somewhat cramped position. In the alternative line with 8...Kt × Kt the ancient Greco line has been completely demolished (col. 8) but Black still has an adequate defense in an immediate ...P—Q4 (col. 9). White need not sacrifice a Pawn, but Black then develops quickly and equalizes immediately (col. 11). Col. 12 is another illustration of the principle that ...P—Q4 is always a strong reply by Black to P—K5 by White. The Giuoco Pianissimo ("most quiet game") is too tame to lead to an advantage; however White may transpose to a variation of the Evans Gambit Declined (col. 14 note (m)).

(2) 4...Q—K2 (cols. 15–17), reintroduced by Alekhine, is a solid defense which offers fewer possibilities for counterplay than the alternative 4...Kt—B3.

(3) 4...P—Q3 (cols. 18–21) is inadequate because White gets too strong a Pawn center.

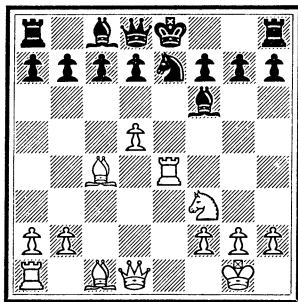
4 O—O is easily met by straight development (col. 22, note (f)).

4 P—Q3 leads to two main branches, depending on whether White develops his QB to K3 or to KKt5. The development at K3 (cols. 23–25) has some merit but the lack of pressure in the center makes Black's game easy. The *Canal Variation* (cols. 26–30) is one of White's most popular lines in the Giuoco, but is met by any one of a number of defenses which prevent White from building up a strong Pawn center. The little-known line in col. 30 is especially to be recommended.

1 P-K4, P-K4; 2 Kt-KB3, Kt-QB3; 3 B-B4, B-B4; 4 P-B3, Kt-B3; 5 P-Q4, P x P; 6 P x P, B-Kt5ch; 7 Kt-B3, Kt x KP; 8 O-O, B x Kt; 9 P-Q5! (a), B-B3; 10 R-K1, Kt-K2; 11 R x Kt\*

	1	2	3	4	5
11	P-Q3				O-O
12	B-Kt5			P-KKt4	P-Q6
	B x B			O-O (l)	P x P
13	Kt x B			P-Kt5	B-B4 (m)
	O-O (h)			B-K4	P-Q4!
14	Kt x RP! (c)			Kt x B	B x P
	K x Kt			P x Kt	Kt x B
15	Q-R5ch			R x P	Q x Kt
	K-Kt1			Kt-Kt3	P-Q3!
16	R-R4			R-K1	B x P
	P-KB4	P-KB3		Q-Q2!	B-K3
17	R-R3 (d) ... Q-R7ch (h)	P-KKt4!	B-K3	Q-Q2	
	B-Q2! (e)	K-B2	R-K1 (j)	P-Kt4	R-K1
18	R-K1 (f)	R-R6	B-Q3!	B-Q3	QR-K1
	R-B3	R-KKt1	K-B1	B-Kt2	Q-Kt3!
19	Q-R7ch	R-K1	Q-R8ch	B-K4	B-R3
	K-B1 ≠ (g)	Q-B1 = (i)	Kt-Kt1 = (k)	KR-K1 ≠	QR-Q1 ≠

\* DIAGRAM 39  
cols. 1-5



[After 11 R x Kt]

(a) The Moeller Attack.

(b) Alternatives are bad, e.g., 13...B-B4; 14 Q-B3, Q-Q2; 15 B-Kt5!, Q x B; 16 Q x B, P-KB3; 17 QR-K1++ or 13...P-KR3; 14 B-Kt5ch, P-B3; 15 Kt x P!, K x Kt; 16 Q-B3ch, Kt-

B4; 17 P x P, P x P; 18 B x P, R-QKt1; 19 P-KKt4+.

(c) The Therkatz Variation.

(d) Keres' move.

(e) 17...P-B5; 18 P-KKt4, P x P e.p.!; 19 Q-R7ch, K-B2; 20 Q-R5ch and both sides must take the draw by perpetual check. Keres.

(f) 18 Q-R7ch, K-B2; 19 Q-R5ch, K-B3; 20 Q-R4ch, P-KKt4; 21 Q-Q4ch, K-Kt3; 22 R-K1, P-B5!+.

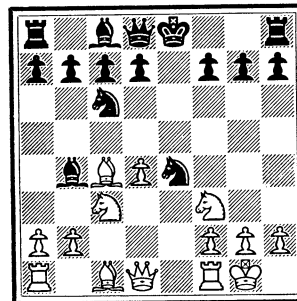
(g) 20 R-KKt3, P-KKt3; 21 P-KR4, P-B5!; 22 R-Kt5, B-B4; 23 P-R5, R-B2! (not 23...Kt-Kt1; 24 P x P, Q-Q2; 25 P-Kt7ch++); 24 Q-R6ch, K-Kt1; 25 P x P, R-Kt2!; 26 R x Kt (if 26 R-R5, B x P!—Steinbrueck—Helbra, quoted in *Deutsche Schachzeitung*, 1938), Q x R; 27 R x B, Q-K5; 28 R-Kt5, R-K1 (not 28...R-KB1; 29 Q-R3!) with an unclear position which seems to be in Black's favor.

Notes continued on p. 98

1 P-K4, P-K4; 2 Kt-KB3, Kt-QB3; 3 B-B4, B-B4; 4 P-B3, Kt-B3; 5 P-Q4, P x P; 6 P x P, B-Kt5ch

	6	7	8	9	10
7	(Kt-B3).....				K-B1 (o)
	(Kt x KP) (a)				P-Q4! (p)
8	(O-O)*				P x P
	(B x Kt).....		Kt x Kt		KKt x P
9	(P-Q5).....	P x B	P x Kt		Kt-B3!
	Kt-K4 (b)	P-Q4!	B x P.....	P-Q4! (l)	B-K3!
10	P x B (c)	B-R3 (f)	B-R3! (i)	P x B	Q-K2
	Kt x B	P x B	Kt-K2 (j)	P x B	B x Kt
11	Q-Q4	R-K1	Q-Kt3!	R-K1ch (m)	P x B
	P-KB4! (d)	B-K3 (g)	P-Q4	Kt-K2	Kt x BP!
12	Q x Kt (e)	R x Kt	Q x B	Q-K2	Q-K1
	P-Q3	Q-Q4	P x B	B-K3	Kt-Q4
13	Kt-Q4	Q-K2	KR-K1	B-Kt5!	B-R3
	O-O	O-O-O	B-K3	Q-Q4	P-QR3
14	P-B3	Kt-K5	B x Kt!	B x Kt	R-B1
	Kt-B4	KR-K1	K x B	K x B	Q-Q2
15	R-K1	Kt x Kt	P-Q5!	Q-B2!	Q-K2
	Q-B3	Q x Kt	Q x P	P-KB3	K-Q1!
16	B-Q2	R-K1	QR-Q1++ (k)	Kt-Kt5!	Kt-K5
	P-QKt3 ≠	R-Kt1+(h)		P x Kt = (n)	Kt x Kt ≠ (q)

\* DIAGRAM 40  
cols. 6-9



[After 8 O-O]

(a) 7...P-Q4; 8 P x P, KKt x P; 9 O-O, B x Kt; 10 P x B, O-O; 11 R-

K1 (or 11 Q-B2, B-K3; 12 Kt-Kt5, P-KKt3), B-K3; 12 Kt-Kt5, Q-Q2; 13 Q-B3, P-KR3; 14 Kt-K4 gives White a very strong attack.

(b) The most solid continuation. Weaker alternatives are: (1) 9...B-R4; 10 P x Kt, KtP x P; 11 Kt-K5, Kt-Q3; 12 Q-Kt4, Q-B3; 13 P-Kt4, B x P; 14 B-Kt2, Kt x B; 15 Kt x Kt, Q-Kt3; 16 KR-K1ch!+. (2) 9...Kt-R4; 10 B-Q3, P-KB4; 11 P x B, O-O; 12 Q-R4 ±. (3) 9...Kt-K2; 10 P x B, Kt-Q3; 11 B-Kt3, O-O; 12 P-B4, P-QKt3; 13 B-Kt2, Kt-K1; 14 B-B2, Kt-Kt3; 15 Q-Q3 ±. Leonhardt—Berger, Carlsbad, 1907.

(c) If 10 Q-K2, Kt x Ktch; 11 P x Kt, B-B3; 12 P x Kt, P-Q3; 13 P-B4, O-O ≠.

Notes continued on p. 98

1 P-K4, P-K4; 2 Kt-KB3, Kt-QB3; 3 B-B4, B-B4

	I1	I2	I3	I4	I5
4 (P-B3) (Kt-B3).....					Q-K2
5 (P-Q4)..... (P x P)		P-Q3 (j) P-Q3		P-Q4 B-Kt3 /	
6 (P x P)..... (B-Kt5ch)	P-K5 P-Q4! (f)	B-K3 B-Kt3	QKt-Q2 (m) O-O	O-O Kt-B3	
7 B-Q2 B x Bch (a)	B-QKt5 (g) Kt-K5	QKt-Q2 Kt-K2	Kt-B1 P-Q4!	R-K1 P-Q3	
8 QKt x B P-Q4 (b)	P x P B-Kt3 (h)	P-Q4 (k) Kt-Kt3	P x P Kt x P	P-QR4 P-QR3	
9 P x P KKt x P	Kt-B3 O-O	P-KR4! Q-K2	B-K3 Kt x B	P-R3! O-O	
10 Q-Kt3 QKt-K2	B-K3 Kt-K2	P-R5 Kt-B5	P x Kt (n) P-K5!	P-QKt4 (p) P-R3 (q)	
11 O-O O-O	B-Q3 P-KB4	B x Kt P x B	P x P Q-K2	B-R3 Kt-Q2	
12 KR-K1 P-QB3	P x P e.p. Kt x P (B3)	Q-K2 Kt-Kt5	Q-B2 Kt-K4	P-Kt5 Kt-Q1	
13 Kt-K4 (c) Q-Kt3 (d)	Kt-K5 Kt-B4	O-O-O O-O	Kt x Kt Q x Kt	QKt-Q2 Q-B3	
14 Kt-B3 Q x Q = (e)	B x Kt B x B7 (i)	P-R6 P-Kt3 = (l)	O-O-O P-B3 7 (o)	Kt-B1 ± (r)	

(a) Also sufficient is 7...KKt x P; 8 B x B, Kt x B; 9 Q-Kt3, P-Q4; 10 Q x Kt, P x B; 11 O-O, Q-Q4; 12 Kt-R3 =.

(b) Or 8...KKt x P; 9 Kt x Kt, P-Q4; 10 B x P, Q x B; 11 O-O, B-Kt5; 12 Kt-B3, B x Kt; 13 Kt x Q, B x Q; 14 R-K1ch, K-Q2 =. Miliani-Rubin-stein, Meran, 1924.

(c) Or 13 P-QR4, Q-Kt3; 14 Q-R3, B-K3; 15 P-R5, Q-B2; 16 Kt-K4, QR-Q1; 17 Kt-B5, B-B1 =. Tarrasch-Capablanca, San Sebastian, 1911.

(d) Equally good is 13...Kt-QKt3; 14 Kt-B5, Kt x B; 15 Q x Kt, P-QKt3; 16 Kt-Q3, B-Kt2 =. (Tartakower)

(e) 15 B x Q, B-K3. Bogoljubow-Euwe, 7th match game, 1941.

(f) 6...Kt-K5 is refuted by 7 B-Q5!, Kt x KBP; 8 K x Kt, P x P dis ch; 9 K-Kt3, P x P; 10 B x P+. Handbuch.

(g) Weak is 7 P x Kt, P x B; 8 Q-K2ch,

B-K3; 9 P x KtP, R-KKt1; 10 P x P, Kt x P 7. 7 B-K2 may be best, e.g., 7...Kt-K5; 8 P x P, B-Kt3; 9 O-O, O-O; 10 Kt-B3, B-Kt5 (better 10...P-B4!); 11 B-K3, Kt-K2; 12 Q-B2, Kt x Kt; 13 P x Kt, Kt-Kt3; 14 Kt-Kt5! ±. A game Charousek-Schlechter.

(h) If 8...B-Kt5ch; 9 B-Q2 (not 9 K-B1, O-O; 10 Q-Kt3, B-K2; 11 Kt-B3, B-K3; 12 B-K3, Q-Q2 7. Steinitz-Janowski, Vienna, 1898), Kt x B; 10 QKt x Kt, O-O; 11 O-O, Kt-K2; 12 P-QR3, B-R4; 13 R-B1 ±. A good alternative is 8...B-K2; 9 Kt-B3, O-O; 10 B-Q3, P-B4; 11 P x P e.p., Kt x P(B3); 12 B-K3, Kt-QKt5 7. Steinitz-Lasker, match, 1894.

(i) Steinitz-Pillsbury, Vienna, 1898.

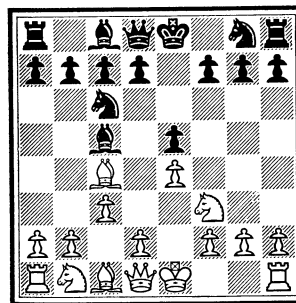
(j) The Giuoco Pianissimo.

Notes continued on p. 99

1 P-K4, P-K4; 2 Kt-KB3, Kt-QB3; 3 B-B4, B-B4

	I6	I7	I8	I9	I10
4 (P-B3) * (Q-K2).....					P-Q3
5 (P-Q4) (B-Kt3) (a)			P-Q4 P x P		
6 (O-O) (b) (Kt-B3).....		P-Q3	P x P B-Kt3		
7 P-Q5 Kt-QKt1	P-QR4 P-QR3 (d)		Kt-B3 Kt-B3 (h)		
8 B-Q3 P-Q3	B-K3 (e) B-R2! (f)	O-O..... O-O.....	Q-Q3! B-Kt5!	(m) B-Kt5	
9 QKt-Q2 P-QR3	P-Q5 Kt-Kt1	B-Kt3 B-Kt5	B-K3 Q-K2	B-K3 O-O	
10 Kt-B4 B-R2	B x B R x B	B-K3 R-K1	Q-Q3 O-O-O	P-QR3 R-K1	
11 P-QR4 O-O	QKt-Q2 Kt-KB3	Q-Q3 B-KR4 (i)	P-QR3 KR-K1	Kt-Q2 Q-Q2	
12 P-QKt4 Kt-K1	P-KR3 O-O	QR-K1 (j) B-Kt3	Kt-Q2 B-KR4	B-R2 R-K2	
13 Q-B2 P-KKt3	Kt-R2 QKt-Q2	B-Kt5 P-KR3	P-B3 P-Q4!	O-O QR-K1	
14 B-R6 ± (c)	B-Q3 R-K1 = (g)	B-KR4 ± (k)	B x P Kt x B 7 (l)	P-B3 ± (n)	

\* DIAGRAM 41  
cols. 16-20



[After 4 P-B3]

(a) 5...P x P; 6 O-O gives White too strong an attack, e.g., 6...Kt-K4; 7 Kt x Kt, Q x Kt; 8 P-B4!, P x P dis

ch; 9 K-R1, P x P; 10 P x Q, P x R(Q); 11 Q-Q5! ++ (Handbuch).

(b) 6 P-Q5, Kt-Q1!; 7 P-Q6, Q x P (also playable is 7...P x P; 8 Kt-R3, Kt-KB3; 9 Q-Q3, P-QR3; 10 B-KKt5, P-R3; 11 B x Kt, Q x B; 12 R-Q1, B-B2; 13 B-Q5, Kt-K3; 14 P-KKt3, QR-Kt1; 15 Kt-B4, O-O 7. Medina-Alekhine, Gijon, 1944); 8 Q x Q, P x Q; 9 Kt-R3, Kt-K3; 10 B-Q5, Kt-B3; 11 Kt-B4, B-B2; 12 Kt-R4, P-KKt3; 13 B-R6, Kt x B; 14 P x Kt, Kt-B4 7. Chekhover-Polyak, Leningrad, 1938.

(c) Eliskses-Gruenfeld, Maehrisch-Os-  
trau, 1933.

(d) Better than 7...P-QR4; 8 B-K3, B-R2; 9 QKt-Q2, Kt-B3; 10 Q-B2, O-O; 11 KR-Q1, K-R1; 12 P-Q5, Kt-Q1; 13 Kt-B1 ±. Tchigorin-Marco, Budapest, 1896.

Notes continued on p. 99



## Notes continued from p. 94

(h) Exhaustive analysis has shown no clear win for either side. Alternatives are: (1) 17 R—K1, Kt—Kt3; 18 R—R3, R—B3!; 19 Q—R7ch, K—B2; 20 R—K6, B × R!; 21 P × Bch, R × P; 22 B × Rch, K × B; 23 Q × Ktch, Q—B3 with a likely draw (Keres). (2) 17 B—K2, R—K1; 18 R—K1, K—B1; 19 B—Kt5, P—B3; 20 R—K6, P × B; 21 R—B6ch, P × R; 22 Q—R6ch, K—B2; 23 Q—R7ch. Draw. (3) 17 P—KKt3?, Q—K1!; 18 Q—R7ch, K—B2; 19 R—K1, B—Q2; 20 B—K2, Kt—Kt3; 21 B—R5, Q × Rch; 22 K—Kt2, Q—K2!; 23 Q × Ktch, K—Kt1; 24 R—R3, Q—B3+.

(i) 20 B—Kt5, R—R1; 21 Q × R, P × R; 22 Q—R7ch, K—B3; 23 R × Kt, Q × R; 24 Q × RPch, K—K4; 25 Q—K3ch, K—B3; 26 Q—R6ch. Draw. 19... K—B1 (Bogoljubow); 20 R—R3 is dangerous but playable.

## Notes continued from p. 95

(d) Not 11... QKt—Q3?; 12 Q × KtP, Q—B3; 13 Q × Q, Kt × Q; 14 R—K1ch, K—B1; 15 B—R6ch, K—Kt1; 16 R—K5, Kt(B3)—K5 (or 16... Kt(Q3)—K5; 17 Kt—Q2, P—Q3; 18 Kt × Kt+); 17 R—K1, P—KB3; 18 R—K7, P—Kt3; 19 Kt—R4+.

11... O—O; 12 Q × Kt(K4), Kt—Q3; 13 Q—Q3, Kt—Kt1 (Mieses—Suchting, Vienna, 1908) is playable but not as good as the text.

(e) 12 Q × KtP?, R—B1; 13 B—Kt5, Kt × B; 14 Kt × Kt, Q—B3; 15 R—K1ch, K—Q1+.

(f) Steinitz's Variation. If 10 B—Q3, O—O; 11 B × Kt, P × B; 12 Kt—Kt5, Q—Q4+.

(g) Also playable is 11... P—B4; 12 Kt—Q2, K—B2; 13 Kt × Kt, P × Kt; 14 R × P, Q—B3!. Steinitz—Lasker, 1st match game, 1896. But the text is simpler.

(h) Steinitz—Lasker, 3rd match game, 1896.

(i) An improvement on the ancient 10 Q—Kt3, P—Q4! (Bernstein's move. If 10... B × R?; 11 B × Pch, K—B1; 12 B—KKt5, Kt—K2; 13 R—K1+); 11 B × P (or 11 Q × B, P × B; 12 P—Q5, Kt—K2; 13 R—K1, O—O; 14 B—R3, Kt × P; 15 Q × P, Kt—Kt3; 16 Q—K2, P—QB3 =. Bernstein), O—O; 12 B × Pch,

(j) Weak is 17... P—KB4?; 18 P—Kt5, P—B5; 19 Q—R7ch, K—B2; 20 B—Q3, Kt—B4; 21 R—R5, Kt—K2; 22 R—R6, R—KKt1; 23 R—B6ch, K—K1; 24 R—K1, resigns. Flad—von Feilitzsch, correspondence, 1939.

(k) 20 B—R7, K—B2; 21 B—Kt6chl, K—B1; 22 B—R7. Loevenfisch.

(l) If 12... P—KR3; 13 P—KR4, Q—Q2; 14 Q—K2, B—K4!; 15 Kt × B, P × Kt; 16 P—B4! ±.

(m) White's best course is to take the draw with 13 Q × P, Kt—B4; 14 Q—Q5, Kt—K2 (not 14... P—Q3?; 15 Kt—Kt5, B × Kt; 16 B × B, Q—B2; 17 Q—Q3, B—Q2; 18 P—KKt4!, P—KR3; 19 B—B4+. Rydberg—Jensen, Gothenburg, 1910); 15 Q—Q6, Kt—B4; 16 Q—Q5, Kt—K2.

K—R1; 13 Q × B (if 13 B—R3?, B × R; 14 B × R, Kt × P!; 15 Kt × Kt, B × Kt; 16 R—K1, Q—B3+). Spielmann—Eliskases, 1st match game, 1936), R × B; 14 Kt—K5, Kt × Kt; 15 P × Kt, B—K3 =.

(j) Or (1) 10... P—Q4; 11 B—Kt5, B × R; 12 R—K1ch, B—K3; 13 Q—R4, P—QKt1; 14 Kt—K5, Q—B1; 15 B × Ktch, P × B; 16 Q × Pch, resigns, for if 16... K—Q1; 17 Kt × Pch, B × Kt; 18 B—K7 mate. Corte—Bolbochan, Parana, 1946.

(2) 10... P—Q3; 11 R—B1, B—R4; 12 Q—R4, P—QR3; 13 B—Q5, B—Kt3; 14 R × Kt!, B—Q2; 15 R—K1ch, K—B1; 16 R × QP!, P × R; 17 B × Pch, K—Kt1; 18 Kt—Kt5!, P—Kt3; 19 B × Pch, K—Kt2; 20 B—K5ch, K—R3; 21 Kt—K6, B × Q; 22 B—Kt7ch, K—R4; 23 R—K5ch, K—R5; 24 P—Kt3ch, K—Kt5; 25 P—R3ch, K × P; 26 Kt—B4ch, K—Kt5; 27 B—K6ch, K—B6; 28 R—K3 mate. Analysis by Rosselli.

(k) 16... Q—QB4; 17 R—K5, Q—Kt3; 18 R × Bch!, Q × R; 19 R—K1 and wins. Analysis by Keres.

(l) If 9... B—K2; 10 P—Q5, Kt—Kt1; 11 P—Q6!, P × P; 12 B × Pch, K × B; 13 Q—Q5ch, K—B1; 14 Kt—Kt5, Q—K1; 15 R—K1+.

(m) Weaker is 11 P—Kt5, Kt—K2; 12

## Additional notes continued from p. 95

B—R3, O—O!; 13 Q—K2, R—K1; 14 KR—K1, B—K3; 15 Kt—Kt5, Kt—Q4 ≠.

(n) 17 R—K5, Q × P; 18 QR—K1, QR—K1 with a probable draw. Analysis by Bogoljubow.

(o) The Cracow Variation.

(p) The most energetic. 7... Kt × KP wins a Pawn at the expense of an attack,

## Notes continued from p. 96

(k) Also playable is the older continuation 8 Kt—B1, e.g., 8... P—B3; 9 Q—B2, Kt—Kt3; 10 O—O—O, O—O; 11 P—Q4, Q—K2 =. Blackburne—Zukertort, London, 1883.

(l) Alekhine, Znosko-Borovsky, etc.—Bogoljubow, Kmoch, etc., Wiesbaden, 1925.

(m) Or 6 B—KKt5, B—K3; 7 QKt—Q2, Q—K2; 8 Q—K2, P—KR3; 9 B—K3, B—Kt3; 10 KB × B, Q × B; 11 Kt—B4, Kt—K2 =. Tchigorin—Tarrasch, Nuremberg, 1896. 6 P—QKt4, B—Kt3; 7 P—QR4, P—QR3 (more aggressive 7... P—QR4); 9 Q—Kt3 transposes into the Evans Gambit Declined, p. 54, col. 2.

(n) Or 10 Kt × Kt, Q—Q3; 11 Q—K2,

## Notes continued from p. 97

(e) 8 P—QKt4, Kt—B3; 9 B—R3? (9 P—R3 transposes to col. 15), B—Kt5; 10 P—Kt5, Kt—QR4 ≠.

(f) If 8... B—Kt5; 9 P—Q5, Kt—Kt1; 10 P—R5!, B × B; 11 P × B, KKt—B3; 12 QKt—Q2 ±. Alekhine—Tarrasch, Mannheim, 1914.

(g) Tartakower—Lilienthal, match, 1933.

(h) If 7... B—Kt5; 8 B—QKt5, B × Kt; 9 P × B, Q—R5; 10 O—O!, O—O—O; 11 B × Kt, P × B; 12 P—R4, P—QR4; 13 R—Kt1+ (Handbuch).

(i) Or 11... B × Kt; 12 P × B, Kt—KR4; 13 Kt—K2, Q—B3; 14 K—Kt2,

e.g., 8 P—Q5, Kt—K2; 9 Q—Q4, Kt—KB3; 10 B—KKt5, P—B4!; 11 Q—K3, Kt—Kt5; 12 Q—K4, P—Q3; 13 B—Kt5ch, K—B1; 14 P—KR3, Kt—KB3; 15 B × Kt ±. Mihalek—von Feilitzsch, correspondence, 1928.

(q) 17 P × Kt, R—K1. Bartmanský—Batik, correspondence.

B—K3 ≠ (if 12 Kt—Kt5, B × Kt! is correct).

(o) Tchigorin—Lasker, St. Petersburg, 1895-96.

(p) Inferior is 10 B—KKt5, P—R3; 11 B—K3, Q—Q1!; 12 B—Q3, R—K1; 13 QKt—Q2, B—R2! ≠. Tarrasch—Alekhine, Baden-Baden, 1925.

(m) A novel defensive idea is 10... K—R1; 11 B—R3, Kt—KKt1, e.g., 12 P—Kt5?, Kt—R4; 13 Kt × P?, P—KB3; 14 B × Kt, BP × Kt; 15 B—R2, KP × P+. van Scheltinga—Euwe, Maastricht, 1946.

(r) Spielmann—Eliskases, 5th match game, 1936-37.

Q—Kt3ch; 15 K—R1, Q—B3; 16 P—B4 ±. Euwe—Muffang, Paris, 1924.

(j) Or 12 Kt—Q2, Kt—KKt5; 13 Kt—B3, Kt × B; 14 P × Kt ±. Becker—Mattison, Carlsbad, 1929.

(k) Leonhardt—Maroczy, Carlsbad, 1907.

(l) 15 Kt × Kt, R × Kt; 16 P × R, Q × Bch; 17 Q × Q, R × Q; 18 K—B2, B × QP. Maroczy—Perlis, Vienna, 1908.

(m) Weaker is 8 P—KR3, O—O; 9 O—O, Kt × KP!; 10 Kt × Kt, P—Q4 =.

(n) 14... B—KR4; 15 Kt—B4, B—Kt3; 16 Q—Q2. Goldstein—Rennie, City of London championship, 1922.

1 P-K4, P-K4; 2 Kt-KB3, Kt-QB3; 3 B-B4, B-B4

21	22	23	24	25
4 (P-B3).....O-O (e)....P-Q3 (P-Q3) P-Q3 (f) Kt-B3				
5 (P-Q4) P-B3 Kt-B3 (i) (P×P) B-KKt5! P-Q3				
6 (P×P) P-Q4 P-KR3.....B-K3 (l) B-Kt5ch P×P B-K3 (j) B×B?.....B-Kt3! (p)				
7 K-B1! (a) Q-Kt3! B-Kt3 P×B Q-Q2! (q) B-R4 (b) Q-Q2 (g) Q-Q2 Kt-QR4 B-Kt5 (r)				
8 P-QKt4 (c) B×Pch B-K3 B-Kt3 Kt-KKt5 (s) B-Kt3 Q×B B-Kt3 Kt×B O-O				
9 P-QR4 Q×P Q-Q2 RP×Kt P-B3 P-QR3 K-Q2 O-O Kt-Kt5 (m) B-Q2!				
10 B-Kt2 Q×R Kt-K2 Q-K2 (n) P-KKt4 Kt-B3 B×Kt P-Q4 P-B3 B×B				
11 QKt-Q2 P×B P×P P-Q4 Q×B B-Kt5 Kt-K4 (h) B×QP P-B3 Kt-Q5				
12 Q-Kt3 Kt-Q2 KB×B O-O-O O-O-O O-O Kt×Pch Kt×B Q-K2 P-Kt4!				
13 P-R3 Kt×Kt B×B P-R3 B-Kt3 B-KR4 Q×Kt RP×B Kt-R3 P-QR4				
14 P-Q5 ± (d) Q-Q5 O-O P-KKt4 ± (o) P-QR4 Q-Kt5ch = KR-K1 = (k) Kt×Bch ±				

(a) Also feasible is 7 Kt-B3, Kt-B3; 8 O-O, B×Kt; 9 P×B, P-KR3; 10 P-K5, P×P; 11 B-R3, B-K3; 12 B×B, P×B; 13 Q-Kt3, Q-B1; 14 QR-K1+. Loevenborg-Nilsson, 1917.

(b) Best. If 7...B-Kt5; 8 Q-R4 (not 8 P-Q5, Kt-K4; 9 Q-R4ch, Q-Q2; 10 Q×B?, B×Kt; 11 P×B, Q-R6ch+), P-QR3; 9 Kt-Kt5, Q-B3; 10 B-K3, B-Q2; 11 P-K5, P×P; 12 B×Pch, K-Q1; 13 P×P, Q-B4; 14 Q-Kt3+. Analysis by Pierce. Or 7...Q-Q2; 8 Q-R4, B-R4; 9 P-Q5, Kt-K4; 10 B-QKt5, P-QB3; 11 Kt×Kt, P×B; 12 Q×B, P×Kt; 13 Kt-B3, P-QR3; 14 P-QR4/+.

(c) If 8 Q-R4 (the move usually recommended), P-QR3 and White has no really good continuation.

(d) 14...Kt-Ktr; 15 Kt-Q4, QKt-Q2; 16 Q-Kt3.

(e) 4 P-Q4, P×P transposes into the

Scotch Gambit, but 4...B×P! is even stronger. See also note (f).

(f) 4...Kt-B3; 5 P-B3, Kt×P!; 6 B-Q5, Kt×KB3!; 7 R×Kt, B×Rch; 8 K×B, Kt-K2; 9 B-Kt3, Kt-Kt3; 10 Q-K2, Q-K2; 11 P-Q4, P×P; 12 Q×Qch, Kt×Q; 13 P×P, P-Q4 ±. Consultants—Schlechter, Dresden, 1896. If here 5 P-Q4, B×P! (5...P×P; 6 P-K5 transposes into the Max Lange); 6 Kt×B, Kt×Kt; 7 P-B4, P-Q3; 8 P×P, P×P; 9 B-KKt5, B-K3!; 10 Kt-Q2, Q-Q2!; 11 B×Kt, P×B; 12 R×P, O-O-O; 13 B×B, Kt×B; 14 R-B2, KR-Kt1+. van Scheltinga—Alexander, Maastricht, 1946.

(g) Or 7...B×Kt; 8 B×Pch, K-B1; 9 P×B!, Kt-B3!; 10 B-KB4, P×P; 11 P×P, Kt-QR4; 12 Q-K6, Q-K2 =. von Feilitzsch—Ritzen, correspondence.

Notes continued on p. 102

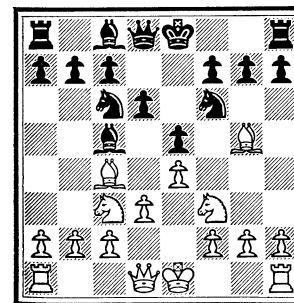
CANAL VARIATION

1 P-K4, P-K4; 2 Kt-KB3, Kt-QB3; 3 B-B4, B-B4; 4 P-Q3, Kt-B3; 5 Kt-B3 (a), P-Q3; 6 B-KKt5\*

26	27	28	29	30
6 P-KR3.....				Kt-QR4! (o)
7 B×Kt! (b) Q×B				B-Kt3 P-B3
8 Kt-Q5 Q-Q1 (c)				Kt-Q2 P-KR3
9 P-B3 Kt-K2.....		O-O.....	P-R3! (m)	B×Kt Q×B
10 P-Q4..... Kt-K3! P×P (d) B-K3? (h)		P-QR4 (j) P-R3 (k)	P-Q4 P×P!	Q-B3 Q×Q
11 KKt×P (e) Kt×Kt	B×B P×B	O-O B-R2	P×P B-R2	Kt×Q P-QKt4
12 B×Kt O-O	Q-Kt3 Q-B1	Kt-K3 Kt-K2	P-KR3 O-O	Kt-K2 O-O
13 Q-Q3 B×Kt (f)	P-Q4 P×P	P-Q4 Kt-Kt3	O-O B-K3	P-B3 Kt×B
14 P×B P-B3	Kt×P! B×Kt	R-K1 P-B3	R-B1 (n) Kt-R4	P×Kt P-B4
15 B-Kt3 Q-R4ch = (g)	P×B ± (i)	P×P Kt×P = (l)	B-Q3 P-QB4 ±	P×P B×P ± (p)

\* DIAGRAM 42

cols. 26-30



[After 6 B-KKt5]

(a) If 5 O-O, P-Q3; 6 B-KKt5?, P-KR3; 7 B-R4?, P-KKt4; 8 B-KKt3, P-KR4!; 9 Kt×KtP (best is 9 P-KR4, B-KKt5 ±), P-R5; 10 Kt×P, P×B!; 11 Kt×Q, B-KKt5; 12 Q-

Q2, Kt-Q5; 13 Kt-B7, R×P; 14 Kt-Kt5, O-O-O followed by QR-R1 and Kt5, O-O-O followed by ... QR-R1 and mates. Steinitz's Trap.

(b) Nimzovitch suggested 7 B-R4, P-KKt4 (7...B-KKt5 =); 8 B-KKt3, P-R3; 9 Kt-Q5, B-K3; 10 P-B3, B×Kt; 11 P×B, Kt-K2; 12 P-Q4, P×P; 13 Kt×QP ±.

(c) If 8...Q-Kt3; 9 Q-K2! (9 Kt×Pch, K-Q1; 10 Kt×R, Q×KtP; 11 R-KB1, B-KKt5 ±), B-KKt5; 10 P-B3, B-Kt3; 11 P-QR4, Kt-R4 (11...P-B4; 12 P-R3 ±); 12 B-R2, P-QB4; 13 P-R3, B×Kt; 14 Q×B ±. Gilg—Zobel, 1930.

(d) Or 10...Kt×Kt; 11 P×B, Kt-B5; 12 B-Kt5ch, B-Q2; 13 B×Bch, Q×B; 14 P-KKt3, Kt-K3; 15 P×P, Q×P =. Tartakower—Fine, Hastings, 1935-36.

Notes continued on p. 102

## Notes continued from p. 100

(h) Black has enough to draw but no more. If 11... P × P; 12 P × P, Q × BP; 13 Kt—Q2, Q—R6; 14 Q—B8, Kt—B3; 15 Q × R, Kt—KKt5; 16 Q × Pch, Kt—K2; 17 Kt—B3!, Q × Kt; 18 B—K3, Kt × B; 19 Q—Kt3! =.

(i) 5 P—B3 transposes to cols. 13—14. If 5 B—K3, B—Kt3 (not 5... P—Q3?), 6 B × B, P × B; 7 B—Kt5+; 6 QKt—Q2, P—Q4; 7 P × P, Kt × P; 8 Q—K2, B—K3; 9 O—O =. Tartakower—Réti, Pistyan, 1922.

(j) Also good is 6... Kt—QR4; 7 B—Kt3, P—B3; 8 P—Q4, P × P =.

(k) Maroczy—Lasker, Nuremberg, 1896.

(l) Inferior is 6 O—O, B—KKt5; 7 Kt—QR4? (7 B—K3, B—Kt3; 8 K—R1, Kt—K2 ♣ is necessary), Kt—Q5; 8 Kt × B, P × Kt; 9 B × Pch, K—K2!; 10 B—Kt3, Q—K1; 11 P—B3, Kt × Ktch; 12 P × Kt, Q—R4!; 13 Q—Q2, B × P; 14 Q—Kt5, Q × Q; 15 B × Q, B—K7+. Jacobs—Thomas, City of London championship, 1924.

(m) 9... P—B3; 10 O—O, O—O; 11 Q—K1, B—K3; 12 P—KR3, Kt—Q2; 13 Q—Kt3 ±. Tchigorin and Seibodt—Levin and

Schiffers, St. Petersburg, 1900.

(n) Or 10 Q—Q2, P—KB4; 11 P × P, B × P; 12 O—O, O—O; 13 P—R3 ±. Salwe—Schlechter, Carlsbad, 1907.

(o) Lasker—Steinitz, match, 1896.

(p) Also sufficient is 6... O—O; 7 P—KR3, Q—K2; 8 O—O, B—K3; 9 B—Kt3, QR—Q1 =. Schlechter—Tarrasch, Berlin, 1918.

(q) Most promising. Alternatives are: (1) 7 O—O, B—Kt5; 8 Kt—Q5, Kt × Kt; 9 B × Kt, O—O; 10 P—KR3, B—KR4; 11 P—KKt4, B—Kt3; 12 K—Kt2, K—R1; 13 Q—K2, Q—K2 ♣. Salwe—Rubinstein, match, 1907. (2) 7 P—KR3, B—K3; 8 B—Kt3, P—KR3 =.

(r) Or 7... O—O; 8 O—O—O, B—K3; 9 Kt—Q5, B × Kt; 10 P × B, B × B; 11 P × B, Kt—K2; 12 P—K4 =. Kostich—Capablanca, match, 1919.

(s) A possibility is 8 O—O—O, Kt—Q5?; 9 B × Kt, B × B; 10 Kt × B!, B × R (10... P × Kt =); 11 Kt—B5, B—Kt5; 12 Kt × Pch, K—Q2; 13 P—Q4 ±. Bier and Diemer—Tarrasch, Hamburg, 1913. The column is Prokes—Ahues, Hamburg, 1930.

## Notes continued from p. 101

(e) Or 11 P × P, B—Kt3; 12 Kt × B, RP × Kt; 13 Q—Kt3, O—O; 14 O—O, B—Kt5; 15 P—KR3, B × Kt =.

(f) Necessary. If 13... Q—B3; 14 B—Kt3, R—K1; 15 O—O, B—K3 (or 15... B—Q2; 16 B—B2, P—KKt3; 17 P—KB4 ±. Foltys—Eliskases, Maehrisch—Os-trau, 1933); 16 B—B2, P—KKt3; 17 K—R1, QR—Q1; 18 P—KB4 ±. Canal—P. Johner, Carlsbad, 1929—a game which won a brilliancy prize.

(g) Tartakower—Rubinstein, Budapest, 1929.

(h) Weak. Best is 10... O—O (Capablanca).

(i) Capablanca—Eliskases, Moscow, 1936.

(j) The tournament book recommends 10 P—QKt4, B—Kt3; 11 P—QR4, P—R3; 12 Kt × B ±.

(k) Or 10... P—QR4; 11 O—O, Kt—K2; 12 P—Q4, P × P; 13 KKt × P, Kt × Kt; 14 B × Kt, Q—B3 =. Canal—Capablanca, Carlsbad, 1929.

(l) Keres—Botvinnik, Leningrad—Moscow, 1941.

(m) Another good defense is 9... Kt—R4; 10 P—QKt4, Kt × B; 11 P × B, Kt—R4; 12 P × P, Q × P; 13 P—Q4, Kt—B3 =. Tartakower—Araiza, Nice, 1930.

(n) Canal—Treybal, Carlsbad, 1929. The continuation is suggested by Loevenfisch.

(o) Alternatives are: (1) 6... Kt—K2; 7 P—Q4, P × P; 8 Kt × P, Kt—Kt3; 9 O—O, P—KR3; 10 B × Kt, Q × B; 11 Kt(Q4)—Kt5, Q—Q1; 12 K—R1, P—R3; 13 Kt—Q4, Kt—K4 ♣. Maroczy—Janowski, Vienna, 1898. (2) 6... B—KKt5; 7 Kt—Q5, Kt—Q5; 8 B × Kt, B × Kt; 9 B × Q, B × Q; 10 B × P, B × P; 11 P—QKt4, P—QKt4; 12 B—R5, B—R5; 13 B × Pch+. (3) 6... B—K3; 7 B—Kt5, P—KR3; 8 B—KR4, B—QKt5; 9 P—Q4?, B—Q2; 10 O—O, B × Kt; 11 P × B, P—Kt4; 12 B—Kt3, Kt × KP ♣. Nimzovitch—Capablanca, Riga, 1913.

(p) Becker—Bogoljubow, Carlsbad, 1929,

## IRREGULAR OPENINGS

THIS comprises all those variations which do not come under more regular headings. In particular, it includes all continuations after 1 P—K4 not found elsewhere (cols. 1—15) and all other opening moves on White's first move (cols. 16—20). Irregular replies to 1 P—Q4 will be found under the Queen's Pawn Game or the Queen's Gambit.

Of the openings with 1 P—K4, P—K4 the most important are the Hungarian Defense and the Latvian Gambit (Greco Counter Gambit).

The **Hungarian Defense** (cols. 6—8) is a rather passive alternative to the Giuoco Piano or Two Knights' Defense. Straight development assures White an advantage.

The **Latvian Gambit** (cols. 11—15) was once noteworthy for its analytical soundness. It has been analyzed a good deal by Latvian masters (hence the name which currently replaces the older Greco Counter Gambit) but the most recent analysis does not confirm its soundness. White can, in fact, get the better of it in several ways and the opening must therefore be considered theoretically inadequate. The line in col. 15 is of some interest because White is playing a good variation of the King's Gambit with colors reversed.

Alternatives on White's first move (cols. 16—20) are of purely theoretical interest; most lead to an advantage for Black.

## 1 P-K4

1	2	3	4	5
1 P-KKt3			P-QKt3	P-Q3
2 P-Q4			P-Q4	P-Q4
B-Kt2		P-Q3	B-Kt2 (h)	Kt-KB3
3 Kt-KB3 (a)		B-QB4	B-Q3	Kt-QB3
P-Q3		B-Kt2	P-K3	P-KKt3
4 Kt-B3		Kt-KB3	B-K3 (i)	Kt-B3
Kt-KB3	Kt-Q2	Kt-KB3	P-Kt3 (j)	B-Kt2
5 B-QB4 (b)	B-QB4	Q-K2 (f)	Kt-Q2	B-KKt5
O-O	P-K3	Kt-B3	B-Kt2	P-KR3
6 O-O (c)	O-O	P-KR3	KKt-B3	B-KB4
Kt-B3	Kt-K2	O-O	Kt-K2	QKt-Q2
7 P-KR3	P-QR4	Kt-B3	Q-K2	Q-Q2
Kt-Q2	O-O	P-K4	P-Q3	P-KKt4
8 B-K3	B-K3	P × P	P-KR4	B-Kt3
P-KR3	P-KR3	P × P	P-KR4	Kt-R4
9 Q-Q2	Q-Q2	B-K3	Kt-Kt5	B-QB4
K-R2	K-R2	Q-K2	P-Kt5	P-Kt5
10 Kt-R2	P-R3	O-O-O	O-O-O	Kt-KKt1
P-K4	P-QB3	B-K3	P-K4	P-QB4
11 P × P ± (d)	B-B4+(e)	Kt-KKt5 ± (g)	B-QB4+(k)	P × P ± (l)

(a) 3 P-KB4, P-Q3 transposes to the King's Indian Defense, p. 275, col. 127. The Four Pawn Attack does not usually turn out well against energetic counterplay.

(b) 5 B-KKt5 transposes into col. 5. Also good is 5 P-KR3, O-O; 6 B-K3, P-B3 (6...Kt-B3, on the lines of col. 3, is preferable); 7 Q-Q2, R-K1; 8 B-Q3, P-QKt4; 9 O-O, B-Kt2; 10 KR-Q1+. Rubinstein-Selesniev, Triberg, 1921.

(c) Weaker is 6 Q-K2, P-B3; 7 O-O, B-Kt5; 8 P-KR3, B × Kt; 9 Q × B, P-K4; 10 P × P, P × P; 11 B-KKt5, QKt-Q2; 12 QR-Q1, Q-B2 =. Shapiro-Buerger, Anglo-American Universities cable match, 1924.

(d) 11...KKt × P; 12 B-K2, B-K3; 13 P-QKt3. Olland-Yates, Scheveningen, 1923.

(e) 11...P-Q4; 12 B-Q3, P-R3; 13 B-Q6. Alekhine-Mikenas, Folkestone, 1933.

(f) Not 5 Kt-B3?, Kt × P! =.

(g) 11...B × B; 12 Q × B, KR-Q1; 13 B-B5, Q-K1; 14 Kt-Kt5!, R × Rch; 15 R × R, R-B1; 16 B × P, P-Kt3; 17 K-Kt1, Kt-QR4; 18 Q × Pch!, Q × Q; 19 Kt × Q, K × Kt; 20 B × P!, R-QKt1; 21 B × Kt, R × Kt; 22 B × P. Alekhine-Allies, Montreal, 1923.

(h) 2...P-K3; 3 Kt-KB3, B-Kt2; 4 B-Q3, P-QB4; 5 P-B3, P-Q3; 6 O-O, Kt-Q2; 7 R-K1, Kt-K2; 8 B-KKt5, Q-B2; 9 Kt-R3, Kt-Kt3; 10 P-R4+. Mattison-Tartakower, Carlsbad, 1929.

(i) Also good is 4 P-QB4, Kt-KB3; 5 Kt-QB3, B-Kt5; 6 Q-K2, Kt-B3; 7 Kt-B3, P-Q3; 8 P-K5 ±.

(j) The Double Fianchetto Defense.

(k) Janowski-Delmar, Cambridge Springs, 1904.

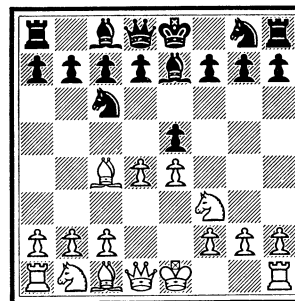
(l) 11...Kt × B; 12 RP × Kt, Kt × P; 13 KKt-K2, B-Q2; 14 O-O-O, R-QB1; 15 Q-K3. Boleslavsky-Bondarevsky, Leningrad-Moscow, 1941.

## 1 P-K4, P-K4

6	7	8	9	10
2 Kt-KB3				Kt-K2 (r)
Kt-QB3			P-Q4 (m)	Kt-QB3 (s)
3 B-B4 (a)			P × P (n)	QKt-B3
B-K2 (b)			P-K5 (o)	B-B4
4 P-Q4 (c)*			Q-K2	Kt-R4
P-Q3		P × P	Kt-KB3	B-K2
5 Kt-B3	P-Q5! (f)	Kt × P (j)	P-Q3	P-Q4
B-Kt5 (d)	Kt-Kt1	P-Q3	Q × P (p)	P-Q3
6 P-KR3!	B-Q3! (g)	O-O	KKt-Q2	P-Q5
B × Kt	Kt-KB3	Kt-B3	B-K2	Kt-Kt1
7 Q × B	P-B4	Kt-QB3	Kt × P	Q-Q3
Kt-B3	QKt-Q2	O-O	O-O	P-KB4
8 P-Q5	Kt-B3	P-KR3 (k)	QKt-B3	P × P
Kt-QKt1	O-O	Kt × Kt	Q-QR4	Q-Q2
9 B-K3	P-KR3	Q × Kt	B-Q2	QKt-B3
QKt-Q2	Kt-B4 (h)	B-K3	Kt-B3	Q × P
10 P-KKt4	B-B2	B × B	Kt × Ktch	Kt-Kt3
Kt-B1	P-QR4	P × B	B × Kt	Q-B2
11 P-KR4	B-K3	P-K5!	Kt-K4	B-K2
Q-Q2	P-QKt3	Kt-Q2	Q-KB4	Kt-KB3
12 B-QKt5 ± (e)	P-KKt4 ± (i)	P × P ± (l)	O-O-O+(q)	B-K3 ±

## \* DIAGRAM 43

cols. 6-8



[After 4 P-Q4]

(a) 3 B-K2 is met by 3...Kt-B3; 4 P-Q3, P-Q4; 5 QKt-Q2, P-KKt3; 6 P-B3, B-Kt2; 7 Q-B2, O-O; 8 Kt-B1, P-Kt3; 9 Kt-Kt3, B-Kt2; 10 P-KR4,

P-KR4; 11 B-Kt5, Q-Q3 ≠. Tartakower-Bogoljubow, London, 1922.

(b) The Hungarian Defense.

(c) Best. Alternatives are: (1) 4 P-B3, Kt-B3; 5 P-Q4, Kt × KP; 6 P × P, O-O; 7 P-QKt4, K-R1; 8 Q-Q5, P-B4; 9 B-Q3, P-Q3; 10 B × Kt, P × B; 11 Q × P(K4), B-B4 ≠. Grob-Bogoljubow, Zurich, 1934. (2) 4 O-O, P-Q3; 5 P-B3, Kt-B3; 6 R-K1, O-O; 7 P-Q3, B-Q2; 8 B-Kt3, P-QR3; 9 QKt-Q2, R-K1; 10 Kt-B1, B-KB1; 11 Kt-Kt3, P-KKt3; 12 B-K3, Q-K2 =. Evensohn-Nimzovitch, St. Petersburg, 1914.

(d) On 5...Kt-B3; 6 P-KR3 ± is best, but not now 6 P-Q5?, Kt-QKt1; 7 P-KR3, P-B3; 8 P × P, P × P; 9 Q-K2, O-O; 10 O-O, B-K3; 11 R-Q1, B × B; 12 Q × B, KKt-Q2 =. Chekhover-Rabinovitch, Leningrad, 1938.

Notes continued on p. 106

Notes continued from p. 105

- (e) Alekhine—Breyer, Mannheim, 1914.  
 (f) Forced sooner or later, it might as well be now. If 5 P—KR3, Kt—B3; 6 Kt—B3, and now (1) 6... P—QR3; 7 B—K3 (better 7 P—QR4), P—QKt4; 8 B—Q5, Kt × B; 9 Kt × Kt, O—O; 10 O—O, B—Kt2; 11 Q—Q3; P × P; 12 B × P, Kt × B; 13 Kt × Kt, B—KB3 =. Tylor—Thomas, Nottingham, 1936. (2) 6... O—O; 7 B—K3, P × P; 8 Kt × P, Kt × P (better 8... Kt × Kt; 9 Q × Kt, B—K3 when White's advantage is minimal); 9 QKt × Kt, P—Q4; 10 Kt × Kt, P × Kt; 11 B—Q3, P × Kt; 12 B × P ±. Tartakower—Davidson, The Hague, 1921.  
 (g) 7 P—KR3 with the continuation of note (d) is inferior.  
 (h) 9... Kt—R4; 10 P—KKt3, Kt(R4)—B3; 11 Q—K2, P—B3; 12 B—K3, Q—B2; 13 O—O—O, Kt—B4; 14 K—Kt1, Kt × B; 15 Q × Kt ±. Sokolsky—Lissitsin, Moscow, 1944.  
 (i) Leonhardt—Hromadka, Pistyan, 1912. Compare Tchigorin's Defense to the QP, p. 288, col. 167.  
 (j) On 5 P—B3 Tartakower recommends 5... Kt—B3!; 6 P—K5, Kt—K5! =.  
 (k) White can maintain his advantage in a variety of ways. Another possibility is 8 R—K1, B—Q2; 9 P—B4, Kt × Kt; 10 Q × Kt, P—B3; 11 P—KR3, Q—B2; 12 Q—B2, P—QKt4; 13 B—Q3, Kt—K1; 14 P—K5, P—Kt5; 15 Kt—K4 ±. Tolush—Kopaev, Trade Unions Championship,

U.S.S.R., 1938.

- (l) Tarrasch—Taubenhaus, Ostend, 1905.  
 (m) The Queen's Pawn Counter Gambit.  
 (n) Also good is 3 Kt × P, Q—K2 (or 3... P × P; 4 B—B4, Q—Kt4; 5 B × Pch, K—K2; 6 P—Q4, Q × P; 7 R—B1, B—KR6; 8 B—QB4, Kt—KB3; 9 B—B4, QKt—Q2; 10 Q—Q2 ±. Von Feilitzsch—Keres, correspondence, 1934-35); 4 P—Q4, P—KB3; 5 Kt—Q3, P × P; 6 Kt—B4, Q—B2; 7 Kt—Q2, B—KB4; 8 P—KKt4!, B—Kt3; 9 B—B4, Q—Q2; 10 Q—K2, Q × QP; 11 Kt—K6, Q—Kt3; 12 Kt × KP+++. Boleslavsky—Lilienthal, Leningrad—Moscow, 1941.  
 (o) Black must give up a Pawn to avoid an excessive loss of time.  
 (p) Or 5... B—K2; 6 P × P, O—O and now 7 QKt—Q2, R—K1; 8 Q—B4 is strongest, though 7 Kt—B3, R—K1; 8 Q—Q3, Kt × KP; 9 Kt × Kt, B—Kt5ch; 10 B—Q2, P—KB4; 11 O—O—O (Bardeleben—Bekker, correspondence, 1922-23) is also good enough.  
 (q) Keres—de Agustin, Madrid, 1943.  
 (r) Alapin's opening.  
 (s) Or 2... Kt—KB3; 3 P—KB4, Kt × P; 4 P—Q3, Kt—B4; 5 P × P, P—Q4; 6 P—Q4, Kt—K5 (better 6... Kt—K3); 7 Kt—Q2, P—KB4; 8 Kt × Kt, BP × Kt; 9 Kt—B4 ±. Alapin—Schwartz, Vienna, 1898. The column is Alapin—Marco, Vienna, 1898.

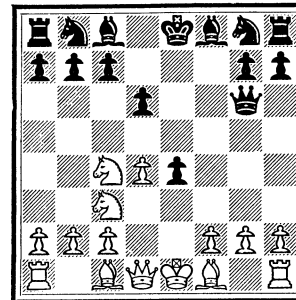
## LATVIAN GAMBIT (GRECO COUNTER GAMBIT)

1 P—K4, P—K4; 2 Kt—KB3, P—KB4 (a)

	I1	I2	I3	I4	I5
3	Kt × P Q—B3!			P—Q4 (o)..... BP × P	P × P (r) Kt—QB3
4	P—Q4 (b) P—Q3 (c)			Kt × P Kt—KB3	P—Q4! P × P
5	Kt—B4 (d) P × P			B—KKt5 (p) P—Q3	Kt × P Kt—B3
6	Kt—B3 (e) Q—Kt3! (f)*			Kt—B4 B—K2	Kt × Kt KtP × Kt
7	B—B4..... Kt—KB3	P—B3..... P × P	Kt—K3 (l) Kt—KB3 (m)	B—K2 O—O	B—K2 Q—K2
8	Kt—K3 B—K2 (g)	Q × P Kt—QB3	Kt(K3)—Q5 Kt × Kt	O—O P—B3	O—O Q—B2
9	B—B4 P—B3 (h)	B—Q3 Q—Kt5	Kt × Kt Q—B2	P—QB3 B—K3	B—KB4 P—Q4
10	P—Q5 P—Kt4	Q—K3ch B—K2	B—QB4 P—B3	QKt—Q2 QKt—Q2	B—Q3 B—K2
11	B—K2 P—Kt5	O—O (j) Kt—B3	Kt—K3 P—Q4	Kt—K3 P—Q4	Kt—Q2 O—O
12	Kt—R4+(i)	P—Q5 Kt—Kt5 = (k)	B—Kt3 ± (n)	P—QKt4 P—QR4 = (q)	R—K1+(s)

## \* DIAGRAM 44

cols. 11-13



[After 6... Q—Kt3!]

(a) If 2... P—KB3? (Damiano's Defense); 3 Kt × P, Q—K2; 4 Kt—KB3, P—Q4; 5 P—Q3, P × P; 6 P × P+.

(b) Also good is Leonhardt's 4 Kt—B4, P × P (4... Q—K3; 5 P—Q4); 5 Kt—B3, Q—KKt3; 6 P—Q3! (6 P—B3, B—K2! =), B—Kt5; 7 P × P, Q × Pch; 8 Kt—K3, B × Ktch; 9 P × B, Kt—K2 (9... Kt—KB3; 10 B—B4, P—B3; 11 O—O, P—Q4; 12 Kt × P!, Q × B; 13 R—K1ch, K—B2; 14 Kt × Kt++). Trifunovich—Apscheneek, Stockholm, 1937; 10 B—B4, P—Q3; 11 O—O, B—K3 and now 12 Q—R5ch! (Lomma's suggestion), P—Kt3; 13 Q—Kt5ch, B—Q2; 14 Q—Kt3, B—B3; 15 P—B3, Q—K4; 16 Kt—Kt4+.

(c) 4... P × P; 5 B—QB4+.

(d) An alternative is 5 Kt—KB3!, P × P; 6 Kt—Kt5, P—Q4; 7 P—QB4, P—KR3; 8 Kt—KR3, B × Kt; 9 P × B, Kt—B3; 10 B—K3, O—O—O; 11 P × P+. A. Steiner—Apscheneek, Kemer, 1937.

Notes continued on p. 109

	16	17	18	19	20
1	P-QB <sub>3</sub> (a) . . . Kt-KB <sub>3</sub> (b)	P-QKt <sub>3</sub> . . . . . P-K <sub>4</sub>	P-QKt <sub>4</sub> (f) . . . . . P-K <sub>4</sub>	P-K <sub>3</sub> (i) . . . . . P-K <sub>4</sub> (j)	Kt-QB <sub>3</sub> (n) P-Q <sub>4</sub> (o)
2	P-Q <sub>4</sub> P-QKt <sub>3</sub>	B-Kt <sub>2</sub> P-KB <sub>3</sub>	B-Kt <sub>2</sub> P-KB <sub>3</sub>	Kt-QB <sub>3</sub> P-Q <sub>4</sub>	P-K <sub>4</sub> (p) P-Q <sub>5</sub>
3	Kt-B <sub>3</sub> B-Kt <sub>2</sub>	P-K <sub>4</sub> B-B <sub>4</sub>	P-K <sub>4</sub> (g) B × P	P-Q <sub>4</sub> P × P	QKt-K <sub>2</sub> P-K <sub>4</sub>
4	P-KKt <sub>3</sub> P-K <sub>4</sub> ! (c)	B-B <sub>4</sub> Kt-K <sub>2</sub>	B-B <sub>4</sub> Kt-K <sub>2</sub>	Q × P (k) Kt-KB <sub>3</sub>	Kt-Kt <sub>3</sub> B-K <sub>3</sub>
5	P × P Kt-Kt <sub>5</sub>	Q-R <sub>5</sub> ch P-Kt <sub>3</sub>	P-B <sub>4</sub> P-Q <sub>4</sub>	P-K <sub>4</sub> Kt-B <sub>3</sub> (l)	P-Q <sub>3</sub> Kt-QB <sub>3</sub>
6	B-Kt <sub>5</sub> ? B-K <sub>2</sub>	Q-B <sub>3</sub> QKt-B <sub>3</sub>	P × QP P × P	B-QKt <sub>5</sub> B-Q <sub>2</sub>	P-QR <sub>3</sub> P-KKt <sub>3</sub>
7	B × B Q × B	Kt-K <sub>2</sub> R-B <sub>1</sub>	Q-B <sub>3</sub> B-Q <sub>3</sub>	B × Kt B × B	P-KB <sub>4</sub> P × P
8	B-Kt <sub>2</sub> Kt × KP	P-KKt <sub>4</sub> P-B <sub>4</sub> !	Kt-K <sub>2</sub> Kt-Kt <sub>3</sub>	P-K <sub>5</sub> Kt-K <sub>5</sub>	B × P B-Q <sub>3</sub>
9	O-O Kt × Ktch	KtP × P P-Q <sub>4</sub> !	P-Q <sub>4</sub> Q-K <sub>2</sub>	Kt × Kt P × Kt	Q-Q <sub>2</sub> Q-K <sub>2</sub>
10	P × Kt O-O	P × QP R × P	B-B <sub>1</sub> B-KB <sub>4</sub>	Kt-K <sub>2</sub> B-K <sub>2</sub>	Kt-B <sub>3</sub> O-O-O
11	R-K <sub>1</sub> Q-B <sub>3</sub> ≠ (d)	Q-K <sub>4</sub> Kt-Kt <sub>5</sub> ≠ (e)	B-Q <sub>3</sub> B × B = (h)	B-K <sub>3</sub> Q × Q = (m)	Kt-Kt <sub>5</sub> P-KR <sub>4</sub> = (q)

(a) The Saragossa Opening.

(b) The most elastic. 1...P-QB<sub>4</sub>; 2 P-Q<sub>4</sub>, P-K<sub>3</sub>; 3 P-K<sub>4</sub>, Kt-KB<sub>3</sub>; 4 P-K<sub>5</sub>, Kt-Q<sub>4</sub>; 5 Kt-B<sub>3</sub>, P-Q<sub>3</sub>; 6 KP × P, B × P; 7 P × P, B × BP; 8 B-Kt<sub>5</sub>ch, B-Q<sub>2</sub>; 9 B × Bch, Kt × B; 10 O-O. Tartakower-Réti, Baden-Baden, 1925.

(c) Or 4...P-B<sub>4</sub>; 5 B-Kt<sub>2</sub>, P-Q<sub>3</sub>; 6 O-O, QKt-Q<sub>2</sub>; 7 QKt-Q<sub>2</sub>, Q-B<sub>2</sub>; 8 R-K<sub>1</sub>, Kt-K<sub>5</sub>; 9 Kt × Kt, B × Kt; 10 Kt-Kt<sub>5</sub>, B × B; 11 K × B, P-KR<sub>3</sub> = Juncosa-Znosko-Borovsky, Pau, 1936.

(d) Juncosa-Alekhine, Saragossa, 1922.

(e) Nimzovitch-Winter, London, 1927.

(f) The Polish Opening.

(g) An interesting gambit, favored by Tartakower. 3 P-QR<sub>3</sub> is safe, but makes the opening pointless. If 3 P-Kt<sub>5</sub>, P-Q<sub>4</sub>; 4 P-K<sub>3</sub>, B-K<sub>3</sub>; 5 Kt-KB<sub>3</sub>, P-

QB<sub>4</sub>; 6 P-B<sub>4</sub>, P-Q<sub>5</sub>; 7 P-Q<sub>3</sub>, Kt-KR<sub>3</sub>; 8 P-K<sub>4</sub>, P-KKt<sub>3</sub>; 9 P-Kt<sub>3</sub>, Q-B<sub>1</sub>; 10 B-Kt<sub>2</sub>, B-R<sub>6</sub>; 11 O-O, B-Kt<sub>2</sub>; 12 Kt-R<sub>4</sub>, O-O; 13 Kt-Q<sub>2</sub>, B × B; 14 K × B, Q-K<sub>3</sub> ≠. Sokolsky-Veressov, Moscow, 1944.

(h) Tartakower-Colle, Bartfeld, 1926.

(i) Van't Kruids Opening.

(j) We now have a French Defense with colors reversed.

(k) 4 P × P unreverses the color reversal.

(l) Better than 5...P × P; 6 Q × Qch, K × Q; 7 B-KKt<sub>5</sub>, B-KB<sub>4</sub>; 8 O-O-Och, Kt-Q<sub>2</sub>; 9 KKt-K<sub>2</sub> ±. Compare Nimzovitch's Defense, p. 127, col. 4.

(m) Nimzovitch-Tarrasch, Kissingen, 1928.

Notes continued on p. 109

Notes continued from p. 107

(e) 6 Kt-K<sub>3</sub> is adequately met by 6... Kt-B<sub>3</sub>!; 7 Kt-Q<sub>5</sub>, Q-B<sub>2</sub>; 8 QKt-B<sub>3</sub>, B-K<sub>3</sub>; 9 Kt × Pch, Q × Kt; 10 P-Q<sub>5</sub>, Kt-B<sub>3</sub>; 11 P × B, P-Q<sub>4</sub>!; 12 B-QKt<sub>5</sub>, O-O-O; 13 B-Kt<sub>5</sub>, P-Q<sub>5</sub>! ≠. Stockholm-Riga, correspondence, 1934-36.

(f) Best. If, e.g., 6...P-B<sub>3</sub>; 7 Kt × P, Q-K<sub>3</sub>; 8 Q-K<sub>2</sub>, P-Q<sub>4</sub>; 9 Kt(K<sub>4</sub>)-Q<sub>6</sub>ch, K-Q<sub>2</sub>; 10 Kt-B<sub>7</sub>!, P × Kt; 11 Q × Qch, K × Q; 12 B × Pch, K-K<sub>2</sub>; 13 Kt × R, B-K<sub>3</sub>; 14 B-Q<sub>3</sub>+ (Lärobok).

(g) A possibility is 8...B-K<sub>3</sub> (Korn), but 9 P-Q<sub>5</sub>, B-B<sub>2</sub>; 10 Kt-Kt<sub>5</sub>, Kt-R<sub>3</sub>; 11 Q-Q<sub>4</sub> ±.

(h) If 9...Kt-B<sub>3</sub>(Sosin); 10 Q-Q<sub>2</sub>, B-Q<sub>2</sub>; 11 O-O-O, O-O-O; 12 Kt(K<sub>3</sub>)-Q<sub>5</sub> ±.

(i) 12...B-Q<sub>2</sub>; 13 P-QR<sub>3</sub>! Thomas-Tartakower, Spa, 1926.

(j) 11 Kt-Kt<sub>5</sub>, Q × KtP; 12 R-KKt<sub>1</sub>, Q × RP; 13 P-B<sub>3</sub>, K-Q<sub>1</sub>; 14 R × P, P-KR<sub>4</sub>! ≠. Ilyin-Zhenevsky-Behting, correspondence, 1921-25.

(k) 13 R-B<sub>4</sub>, Q-Q<sub>2</sub>; 14 Kt-Kt<sub>6</sub>. Analysis by Nimzovitch.

(l) The position after Black's sixth move is critical for the theory of the opening. Alternatives less satisfactory than those given are: (1) 7 P-Q<sub>5</sub>, Kt-KB<sub>3</sub>; 8 B-K<sub>3</sub>, B-K<sub>2</sub>; 9 Q-Q<sub>4</sub>, O-O; 10 Kt-Q<sub>2</sub>, P-B<sub>4</sub>; 11 P × P e.p., Kt × P; 12 Q-B<sub>4</sub>ch, K-R<sub>1</sub>; 13 O-O-O, B-Kt<sub>5</sub>; 14 P-B<sub>3</sub>, P-Q<sub>4</sub>; 15 Kt × QP, Kt × Kt; 16 Q × KKt, P × P; 17 P × P (Spielmann

-Nimzovitch, Semmering, 1926) and now 17...Kt-Kt<sub>5</sub>; 18 Q-Kt<sub>3</sub>, QR-B<sub>1</sub> ≠ (Alekhine). (2) 7 P-KR<sub>3</sub>, Kt-KB<sub>3</sub>; 8 P-KKt<sub>4</sub>, B-K<sub>2</sub>; 9 B-Kt<sub>2</sub>, O-O; 10 B-K<sub>3</sub>, P-B<sub>3</sub>; 11 P-Q<sub>5</sub>, P-QKt<sub>4</sub>; 12 Kt-R<sub>5</sub>, P-Kt<sub>5</sub>; 13 Kt-K<sub>2</sub>, P-B<sub>4</sub>; 14 Q-Q<sub>2</sub>, Q-K<sub>1</sub> ≠. Rauser-Ilyin-Zhenevsky, Leningrad, 1936.

(m) If 7...B-K<sub>2</sub> (Sosin); 8 Kt(K<sub>3</sub>)-Q<sub>5</sub>, B-Q<sub>1</sub>; 9 Kt-B<sub>4</sub>, Q-B<sub>4</sub>; 10 P-KKt<sub>3</sub>+

(n) 12...B-K<sub>3</sub>; 13 O-O, B-Q<sub>3</sub>; 14 P-KB<sub>4</sub>, Q-B<sub>2</sub>; 15 P-B<sub>4</sub>. A. Steiner-Apscheneck, Hamburg, 1929.

(o) A good continuation is 3 Kt-B<sub>3</sub> and if 3...P-Q<sub>3</sub>; 4 P-Q<sub>4</sub> (see Philidor's Defense, p. 137, col. 10). Weak is 3 B-B<sub>4</sub>, P × P!; 4 Kt × P, Q-Kt<sub>4</sub>; 5 P-Q<sub>4</sub> (both 5 B-B<sub>7</sub>ch and 5 Kt-B<sub>7</sub> are inferior), Q × P; 6 Q-R<sub>5</sub>ch, P-Kt<sub>3</sub>; 7 B-B<sub>7</sub>ch, K-Q<sub>1</sub>; 8 B × P, Q × Rch; 9 K-K<sub>2</sub>, Q × B; 10 Kt-B<sub>7</sub>ch, K-K<sub>1</sub>; 11 Kt-Q<sub>6</sub>ch and neither side can win. Mueller-Keres, correspondence.

(p) If 5 B-QB<sub>4</sub>, P-Q<sub>4</sub>; 6 B-Kt<sub>3</sub>, B-K<sub>3</sub>; 7 O-O, B-K<sub>2</sub> ≠. Stockholm-Riga, correspondence.

(q) Wolf-Apscheneck, Hamburg, 1930.

(r) This logical continuation has been sadly neglected: White is now playing a good variation of the King's Gambit (colors reversed) with an extra tempo.

(s) 12...B-B<sub>4</sub>; 13 Q-B<sub>3</sub>. Richter-Petrow, Podebrady, 1936.

Notes continued from p. 108

(n) The Queen's Knight's Opening. Other first moves seldom encountered are: (1) 1 P-QR<sub>3</sub> (Anderssen's Opening), best met by 1...P-Q<sub>4</sub>. If 1...P-K<sub>4</sub>; 2 P-QB<sub>4</sub> leads into the English Opening. (2) 1 P-KKt<sub>3</sub>, P-K<sub>4</sub>; 2 Kt-KB<sub>3</sub> (Alekhine's Defense with colors reversed), P-K<sub>5</sub>; 3 Kt-Q<sub>4</sub>, P-Q<sub>4</sub>; 4 P-Q<sub>3</sub>, P × P; 5 Q × P, Kt-KB<sub>3</sub>; 6 B-Kt<sub>2</sub>, B-Kt<sub>5</sub>ch; 7 B-Q<sub>2</sub>, B × Bch; 8 Kt × B, O-O; 9 P-QB<sub>4</sub>!, Kt-R<sub>3</sub>; 10 P × P, Kt-QKt<sub>5</sub>; 11 Q-B<sub>4</sub>, QKt × QP =. Réti-Alekhine, Baden-Baden, 1925. (3) 1 P-KKt<sub>4</sub> (The "Spike"), P-Q<sub>4</sub>; 2 B-Kt<sub>2</sub>, B × P?; 3 P-QB<sub>4</sub>, P-QB<sub>3</sub>; 4 P × P, Kt-B<sub>3</sub>; 5 Kt-QB<sub>3</sub>, P-K<sub>4</sub>; 6 P × P e.p., B × P (K<sub>3</sub>); 7 P-Q<sub>4</sub>, QKt-Q<sub>2</sub>; 8 P-K<sub>4</sub>, Kt-

Kt<sub>3</sub>; 9 KKt-K<sub>2</sub>+. Keres-Niemann, correspondence, 1934-35.

(o) Better than 1...P-K<sub>4</sub> when 2 P-Q<sub>4</sub> transposes into a Center Counter with colors reversed, an opening which verges on decency. An example is 2...P × P; 3 Q × P, Kt-QB<sub>3</sub>; 4 Q-QR<sub>4</sub>, Kt-B<sub>3</sub>; 5 B-Kt<sub>5</sub>, B-K<sub>2</sub>; 6 P-K<sub>4</sub>, P-KR<sub>3</sub>; 7 B-R<sub>4</sub>, P-Q<sub>3</sub>; 8 O-O-O, B-Q<sub>2</sub>; 9 B-K<sub>2</sub>. Steele-Wainwright, Southsea, 1923.

(p) 2 P-Q<sub>4</sub> transposes to a poor variation of the QP Opening.

(q) Petrow-Ragosin, Semmering-Baden, 1937.

## KING'S GAMBIT

**T**HE KING'S GAMBIT was the classic weapon of attack in the days of the romantic school. After tournaments became more frequent, at the turn of the century, the gambits gradually began to fall out of fashion. But no clear theory was in sight until the Gambit tournaments at Abbazia in 1912 and Baden in 1914. There it was shown that by returning the extra material Black can obtain a slight positional advantage and avoid all dangerous attacks. Ever since there have been sporadic attempts to revive the gambit by such noted masters as Tartakower, Stoltz, Spielmann and Keres, but without any permanent success. Today the King's Gambit is no longer a major tournament opening, although many of its variations are still the subject of important theoretical discussions.

## KING'S GAMBIT ACCEPTED

Here the two major branches are the King's Knight's Gambit (3 Kt—KB<sub>3</sub>) and the Bishop's Gambit (3 B—B<sub>4</sub>).

Against the **King's Knight's Gambit** 3 Kt—KB<sub>3</sub> Black has at least five possible replies: 3...P—Q<sub>4</sub>, 3...Kt—KB<sub>3</sub>, 3...P—KKt<sub>4</sub>, 3...B—K<sub>2</sub> and 3...P—KR<sub>3</sub>.

(1) 3...P—Q<sub>4</sub> (cols. 1–5) is the most common reply when the gambit is adopted today. In the most recent try Black again succeeded in returning the extra material and obtaining the better endgame (col. 1). But col. 4 shows an improvement for White which has never been satisfactorily refuted. Unless Black's play can be improved upon here this defense cannot be considered theoretically adequate.

(2) 3...Kt—KB<sub>3</sub> (cols. 6–7) is not quite sufficient against the analysis in col. 6.

(3) 3...P—KKt<sub>4</sub> (cols. 8–14) is the traditional defense, rarely encountered in serious tournament play now. Against it the Kieseritzky Gambit (cols. 8–9), re-established by Rubinstein's analysis, is still theoretically strong. The Allgaier Gambit (cols. 10–11) is unsound for White. The continuation 4 B—B<sub>4</sub>, which leads to equality, is important because Black can transpose to it via Becker's Defense.

(4) The **Cunningham Gambit** 3...B—K<sub>2</sub> is unsound in the customary continuation shown in col. 15, but can be considerably strengthened by Euwe's suggestion in note (o).

(5) **Becker's Defense** 3...P—KR<sub>3</sub> (col. 15 note (n)) may be Black's best line; it leads to the equal positions of cols. 12–13.

Against the **Bishop's Gambit** 3 B—B<sub>4</sub> Black's defense is on the whole much easier, thereby vindicating the beginner's rule that Kt's should be developed before B's. At least four defenses are strong: 3...P—Q<sub>4</sub>, 3...Kt—KB<sub>3</sub>, 3...Kt—QB<sub>3</sub> and 3...P—KB<sub>4</sub>.

(1) 3...P—Q<sub>4</sub> (cols. 16–18) gains the initiative by blocking the diagonal of White's KB.

(2) 3...Kt—KB<sub>3</sub> (cols. 19–20) equalizes by an early destruction of the White center.

(3) 3...Kt—QB<sub>3</sub> (col. 21) is likewise based on an early ...P—Q<sub>4</sub>.

(4) 3...P—KB<sub>4</sub> (col. 21 note (2)) is also theoretically adequate.

Alternatives other than the King's Knight's Gambit or the Bishop's Gambit offer no particular problems for Black: in all cases an early ...P—Q<sub>4</sub> gives him at least equality (cols. 22–25). Of some interest is the recent refutation of the Keres Gambit shown in col. 24.

## KING'S GAMBIT DECLINED

In view of the numerous traps involved in the acceptance of the gambit, Black often chooses to decline. As is to be expected, the resulting positions are safer but less promising than when the gambit is accepted.

Again there are two major branches, 2...B—B<sub>4</sub> and the Falkbeer Counter Gambit 2...P—Q<sub>4</sub>.

After 2...B—B<sub>4</sub>; 3 Kt—KB<sub>3</sub>, P—Q<sub>3</sub> White has three main lines, 4 Kt—B<sub>3</sub>, 4 B—B<sub>4</sub> and 4 P—B<sub>3</sub>, none of which give him better than equality against accurate defense.

(1) 4 Kt—B<sub>3</sub> (cols. 1–6) is the classical continuation. Black can equalize in a number of ways. The curious move ...KP × BP, which comes in in both cols. 3 and 5 is worthy of mention.

(2) 4 B—B<sub>4</sub> (col. 7) is played not to block the QBP with Kt—QB<sub>3</sub>. An early ...B—K<sub>3</sub> is satisfactory for Black.

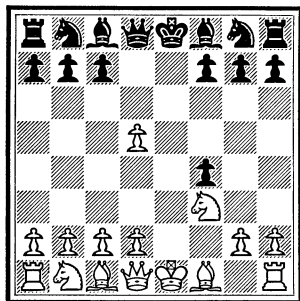
(3) 4 P—B<sub>3</sub> (cols. 8–10) is best met by the aggressive 4...P—B<sub>4</sub>. 4...Kt—KB<sub>3</sub> is sufficient for equality.

The **Falkbeer Counter Gambit** 2...P—Q<sub>4</sub> (cols. 11–20) is theoretically inadequate against the line shown in col. 11, but has met all other threats. Keres' line (cols. 13–14) has had the sting taken out of it by the strong reply of col. 13. Milner-Barry's interesting variation in col. 20 is suggestive but does not lead to an advantage.

1 P-K4, P-K4; 2 P-KB4, P x P; 3 Kt-KB3, P-Q4

	1	2	3	4	5
4	P x P*				
	Kt-KB3.....				Q x P (j)
5	Kt-B3.....			B-Kt5ch	Kt-B3
	Kt x P			P-B3 (h)	Q-KR4 (k)
6	Kt x Kt.....		B-Kt5ch (f)	P x P	B-K2
	Q x Kt		P-B3	P x P	B-KKt5
7	P-Q4		Q-K2ch	B-B4	P-Q4
	B-K2! (a)		B-K3	B-Q3	B x Kt
8	P-B4! (b)		B-B4	Q-K2ch	B x B
	Q-K5ch		B-K2	Q-K2	Q-R5ch
9	K-B2!		Kt x Kt	Q x Qch	K-B1
	B-KB4		P x Kt	K x Q	P-QB3
10	P-B5!		B-Kt5ch	P-Q4	P-KKt3!
	Kt-B3!.....	O-O (d)	Kt-B3	B-KB4	P x P
11	B-Kt5	B-B4	P-Q4	Kt-K5	K-Kt2!
	Q-Q4	B-B3	Q-B2	B x Kt	P x P (l)
12	B x P	R-K1	B x Ktch	P x B	R-K1ch
	O-O-O	Q-B7ch	P x B	Kt-Q4	B-K2
13	B-K3	Q x Q	O-O	B x Kt ± (i)	K-R1! ± (m)
	B-B3 ≠ (c)	B x Q = (e)	O-O ≠ (g)		

\* DIAGRAM 45  
cols. 1-5



[After 4 P x P]

(a) Best. Inferior defenses are: (1) 7... B-Q3; 8 P-B4, Q-K3ch; 9 K-B2, P-QB4; 10 B-Q3, Q-R3; 11 R-K1ch, K-B1; 12 Q-K2, B-Q2; 13 P-QKt4!, P-QKt3; 14 B-K4 ±. Réti-Nyholm, Baden, 1914. (2) 7... Kt-B3; 8 B x P, B-Kt5; 9 B x P, K-Q2; 10 B-Kt3, R-

K1ch; 11 K-B2+. Spielmann-Eliskases, third match game, 1937.

(b) Weaker is 8 B-Q3, P-KKt4; 9 Q-K2, B-KB4; 10 B x B, Q x B; 11 P-KKt4, Q-Q2+. Rubinstein-Yates, Hastings, 1922.

(c) 14 Q-R4, B-K5!; 15 B x Kt, Q x B; 16 Q x Q, B x Q with a superior endgame. Kieninger-Eliskases, Stuttgart, 1939. If here 16 Q x P (instead of 16 Q x Q), B x Kt; 17 P x B, B x P!; 18 B x B, R x B; 19 Q-R8ch, K-Q2; 20 Q x R, Q x QBP+.

(d) If 10... P-KKt4; 11 B-Kt5ch, P-B3; 12 R-K1, Q-B7ch; 13 Q x Q, B x Q; 14 B-B4, P-KR3; 15 R-K2, B-B4; 16 QB x P!+. Spielmann.

(e) 14 B x P, Kt-B3; 15 Kt-K5, QR-Q1; 16 P-Q5, Kt-R4; 17 QR-B1, B x Kt; 18 B x B, Kt x B; 19 R x B, Kt x B. Milner-Barry-Sergeant, Margate, 1939.

Notes continued on p. 114

1 P-K4, P-K4; 2 P-KB4, P x P; 3 Kt-KB3

	6	7	8	9	10
3	Kt-KB3.....				P-KKt4
4	P-K5 (a)				P-KR4
	Kt-R4				P-Kt5
5	P-Q4.....	Q-K2 (g)		Kt-K5 (j).....	Kt-Kt5 (r)
	P-Q4 (b)	B-K2		Kt-KB3.....	B-Kt2 (m)
6	Kt-B3! (c)	P-Q4		P-Q4 (k)	P-Q4 (n)
	P-KKt4 (d)	O-O		P-Q3	Kt-KB3
7	B-K2	P-KKt4		Kt-Q3	Kt x KtP! (o)
	P-Kt5	P x P e.p.		Kt x P	Q-K2
8	O-O!	Kt-B3 (h)		B x P	B x P
	R-Kt!	P-Q4		Q-K2	Q-K2
9	Kt-K1	B-Q2		Q-K2	Q-K2
	B-R3	Kt-QB3		B-Kt2	B x P
10	B-Q3	O-O-O		P-B3	P-B3
	B-K3	B-KKt5		P-KR4	B-Kt2 (p)
11	Kt-K2! (e)	B-K3		Kt-Q2	Kt-K3
	Q-R5	P-B3!		Kt x Kt	Q-K3
12	B x BP ± (f)	P-KR3		K x Kt ± (l)	P-KKt3 ± (q)
		B-K3 ≠ (i)			Kt x Q
					B x Kt = (t)

(a) 4 Kt-B3, P-Q4 transposes to cols. 1-3 for if now 5 P-K5?, Kt-K5!; 6 B-K2, P-KKt4; 7 O-O, Kt-QB3; 8 B-Kt5, P-QR3; 9 B x Ktch, P x B; 10 P-Q3, B-B4ch; 11 P-Q4, B-K2+. Spielmann-Bogoljubow, Berlin, 1919.

(b) 5... P-Q3; 6 Kt-B3, P-KKt3; 7 B-B4 gives White more attacking chances. If here 6... P x P; 7 Q-K2!, B-KKt5; 8 Q x Pch, Q-K2; 9 Kt-Q5, Kt-QB3; 10 Kt x Q, Kt x Q; 11 Kt x Kt, B-K3; 12 P-Q5!+. Réti-Szekely, Abbazia, 1912.

(c) Less satisfactory are: (1) 6 P x P e.p., B x P; 7 P-B4, P-QB4; 8 P-Q5, B-Kt5; 9 B-K2, B x Kt; 10 B x B, Q-R5ch+. Grob-Naegeli, match, 1933-34. (2) 6 P-B4, Kt-QB3; 7 P x P, Q x P; 8 Kt-B3, B-QKt5; 9 K-B2, B x Kt; 10 P x B, B-Kt5; 11 B-K2, O-O; 12 Kt-Kt5, B x B; 13 Q x B, P-B3!; 14 Q x Kt, P x Kt; 15 Q-B3 (Réti-Nyholm, Abbazia, 1912), Q-B5!; 16 B-R3, R-B2; 17 KR-K1, R-K1+.

(d) If 6... P-KKt3; 7 B-K2, B-R3; 8 O-O, B-Kt5; 9 Kt-K1, B x B; 10 Kt x B ±.

(e) Not 11 B x RP?, R-R1; 12 Q-Q3, Kt-QB3; 13 P-QR3, Q-R5; 14 B-B5, O-O-O; 15 B x Bch, P x B; 16 Kt-R4, B-Kt4+. Lowtzky-Nyholm, Abbazia, 1912.

(f) 12... Kt x B; 13 Kt x Kt, P-Kt6; 14 Q-R5!, P x Pch; 15 K-R1, Q x Q; 16 Kt x Q, Kt-Q2; 17 B x P, R-R1; 18 B-B5, O-O-O; 19 B x B, P x B; 20 Kt-B6, Kt x Kt; 21 R x Kt with the better endgame.

(g) The latest try.

(h) Or 8 Q-Kt2, P-Q3; 9 P x KtP, B-Kt5; 10 B-K3 (Spielmann recommended Kt-R2), Kt-QB3; 11 Kt-B3, P x P; 12 P-Q5, Kt-Kt5; 13 Kt x P, Q-B1!; 14 K-Q2, Q-B4!; 15 Kt x B, Q x Pch++. Raudvir-Tolush, Tallinn, 1945.

(i) 13 Kt-KKt5, P x Kt. Keres-Alekhhine, Salzburg, 1942.

(j) The Kieseritzky Gambit.

Notes continued on p. 114



Notes continued from p. 112

(f) Or 6 B-K2, Kt x Kt; 7 KtP x Kt, B-Q3 (even stronger is 7...P-QB4); 8 P-Q4, O-O; 9 O-O, Kt-B3; 10 P-B4, P-QKt3; 11 P-B3, B-KKt5; 12 Kt-K1, B x B =. Spielmann-Nyholm, Abbazia, 1912.

(g) 14 Kt-K5, Q-Kt3. Rubinstein-Tarrasch, Meran, 1924.

(h) If 5...B-Q2; 6 Q-K2ch, B-K2 (6...Q-K2; 7 B x Bch, QKt x B; 8 P-B4 ±); 7 P-Q6!, P x P; 8 P-Q4, O-O; 9 B x B, QKt x B; 10 B x P ±.

(i) Nimzovitch-Schweingurg, 1934.

(j) If 4...P-KKt4; 5 B-B4!, P-Kt5; 6 Q-K2ch, Q-K2; 7 Kt-Q4 ±, while if 4...B-K2; 5 B-Kt5ch, P-B3; 6 P x P, P x P; 7 B-B4, B-R5ch; 8 K-B1 ±.

Notes continued from p. 113

(k) 6 Kt x KtP is refuted by 6...Kt x P; 7 Q-K2, Q-K2; 8 Kt-B3, Kt-Kt6; 9 Q x Qch, B x Q; 10 R-R2, P-Q4; 11 Kt-K5, P-QB3; 12 P-Q4, Kt-B4; 13 Kt-B3, B-Q3 =. If 6 B-B4, P-Q4; 7 P x P, B-Q3; 8 O-O (The Rice Gambit. If 8 P-Q4, Kt-R4! =), B x Kt; 9 R-K1, Q-K2; 10 P-B3, Kt-R4!; 11 P-Q4, Kt-Q2; 12 P x B, Kt x P; 13 P-QKt3, O-O!; 14 B-R3, Kt-B6ch; 15 P x Kt, Q x P; 16 R-K5, B-B4!; 17 Kt-Q2, Q-Kt6ch; 18 K-B1, Q-R7; 19 B x R, P-Kt6; 20 B-B5, P-Kt7ch; 21 K-K1 (Analysis by Capablanca, Burn and Edward Lasker) and now Black is best advised to take the draw with 21...Q-R5ch; 22 K-K2, Kt-Kt6ch; 23 K-B2!.

(l) 12...Q x Qch; 13 B x Q. White won. Stoltz-Saemisch, Swinemuende, 1932.

(m) Paulsen's Defense. All other defenses are inferior, e.g., 5...P-KR4; 6 B-B4, R-R2; 7 P-Q4, P-B6; 8 P x P, P-Q3; 9 Kt-Q3, B-K2; 10 B-K3, B x

(k) There is no altogether satisfactory square for the Queen. If 5...Q-K3ch; 6 K-B2 (threatening B-Kt5ch and R-K1). If 5...Q-Q1; 6 P-Q4, B-Q3; 7 B-Q3, Kt-KB3; 8 Q-K2ch!, Q-K2; 9 Q x Qch, K x Q; 10 Kt-QKt5!+.

(l) If 11...B-Q3; 12 Kt-K4, B-B2; 13 P x P, Q-Q1; 14 Q-K2, K-B1; 15 R-B1 and White's attack is worth far more than the Pawn.

(m) From a game Krause-Petersen which continued 13...Kt-Q2; 14 P-Q5, P x P; 15 B x P, O-O-O; 16 B-K3, Kt(Q2)-B3; 17 Q-B3, Kt x B; 18 Kt x Kt, K-Kt1; and now 19 B-B4ch, B-Q3; 20 B x Bch, R x B; 21 R-K8ch, R-Q1; 22 Q-B4ch!+++.

Pch; 11 K-Q2, B-Kt4; 12 P-B4, B-R3; 13 Kt-B2, B-Kt2; 14 P-B5+. A game Anderssen-Kolisch.

(n) If 6 Kt x KtP, P-Q4!; 7 P-Q4, P x P; 8 B x P, Q x P; 9 Q x Q, B x Q; 10 P-B3, B x Kt; 11 P x B, Kt-QB3; 12 B-QKt5, KKt-K2; 13 B x P, O-O =.

(o) 7 B-B4, P-Q4; 8 P x P, Kt-R4 =.

(p) Or 10...B-Kt3; 11 Kt-Q2, Kt x Kt; 12 Kt-B6ch, K-Q1; 13 K x Kt, Q x Qch; 14 B x Q ±.

(q) Charousek-Burn, Cologne, 1898.

(r) The Allgaier Gambit.

(s) 9...Q x Pch; 10 B-K2, Kt x R; 11 Q x Pch, K-Q1; 12 P-Q4, Q-Kt2; 13 B x BP, Q x Q; 14 Kt x Qch, K-K1; 15 Kt x R+. L'arobok.

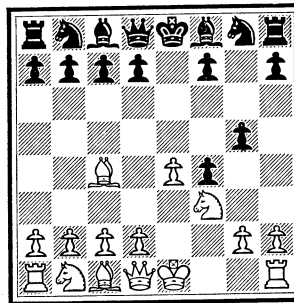
(t) 13 Q x P, Kt-B3 (Analysis by Nena-rokov); 14 P-Q5 and now Black does best to take the perpetual...B-Q1; 15 Q-Q6, B-K2; 16 Q-B7, B-Q1.

1 P-K4, P-K4; 2 P-KB4, P x P; 3 Kt-KB3

	11	12	13	14	15
3 (P-KKt4).....					B-K2 (n)
4 (P-KR4).....		B-B4 *			B-B4
(P-Kt5)		B-Kt2.....		P-Kt5	B-R5ch?(o)
5 (Kt-Kt5)		O-O (d)		O-O (k)	K-B1!
P-KR3		P-Q3		P x Kt	P-Q4 (p)
6 Kt x P		P-Q4		Q x P	B x P
K x Kt		P-KR3		Q-B3!	Kt-KB3
7 B-B4ch (a)		P-B3 (e)		P-K5	Kt-B3
P-Q4		Kt-QB3 (f)		Q x P	O-O
8 B x Pch		P-KKt3		P-Q3	P-Q4
K-K1 (b)		B-R6.....	P-Kt5	B-R3	P-B3
9 P-Q4		P x P	Kt-R4	Kt-B3	B-Kt3
Kt-KB3		B x R	P-B6	Kt-K2	B-Kt5 (q)
10 Kt-B3		Q x B	Q-Kt3 (h)	B-Q2	B x P
B-Kt5		P x P	Q-K2	QKt-B3 (l)	Kt-R4
11 B x BP		B x P	Kt-B5	QR-K1	Q-Q2
Kt x B		Q-B3	B x Kt	Q-B4	B x Kt
12 P x Kt		B-KKt3	Q x P! (i)	Kt-Q5	P x B+
Q x P+(c)		O-O-O = (g)	Q x P = (j)	K-Q1 = (m)	

\* DIAGRAM 46

cols. 12-14



[After 4 B-B4]

Q3; 9 Q-B3, Kt-B3; 9 P-B3, Kt-K4+.

(b) Also good is 8...K-Kt2; 9 P-Q4, P-B6; 10 P x P, Kt-KB3; 11 Kt-B3, B-Kt5; 12 B-QB4, P x P; 13 R-Ktrch, Kt-Kt5; 14 Q x P, Q x Pch; 15 R-Kt3, R-B1; 16 B-B4, B-K2+.

(c) 13 O-O, B x Kt; 14 P x B, Kt-B3; 15 Q-Q2, B-K3; 16 QR-K1, K-Q2. Mieses-Pillsbury, Vienna, 1903. White's best chance now is 17 B-K5, R-R2; 18 R-B6, P-KR4; 19 B x P, K x B; 20 R(K1) x B but Black has little to fear.

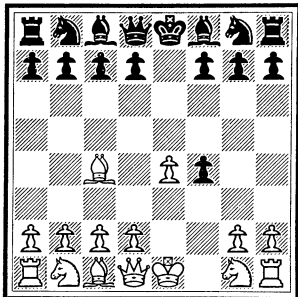
(d) 5 P-KR4 (the Calabrese-Philidor Gambit) is inferior: 5...P-KR3; 6 P-Q4, P-Q3; 7 Kt-B3, Kt-QB3; 8 Kt-K2, Q-K2; 9 Q-Q3, B-Q2; 10 B-Q2, O-O-O; 11 B-B3, R-K1; 12 P-Q5, Kt-K4; 13 Kt x Kt, P x Kt; 14 O-O-O, Kt-B3+. Anderssen-Neumann, 1866.

(a) 7 P-Q4, P-B6; 8 B-B4ch, P-Q4; 9 B x Pch, K-Kt2 transposes to note (b). If 7 Q x P, Kt-KB3; 8 Q x P, B-

Notes continued on p. 119

1 P-K4, P-K4; 2 P-KB4, P x P; 3 B-B4\*

	16	17	18	19	20
3	P-Q4!			Kt-KB3	
4	B x P Kt-KB3	Q-R5ch	P x P Q-R5ch (d)	Kt-QB3 P-B3! (f) ... B-Kt5 (i)	
5	Kt-QB3 B-QKt5	K-B1 Kt-KB3 (b)	K-B1 P-Q3	Q-B3 (g) P-Q4!	KKt-K2 (j) P-Q4
6	Kt-B3 (a) B x Kt	Kt-QB3 B-QKt5!	Kt-KB3 Q-R4	P x P B-Q3	P x P (k) O-O (l)
7	QP x B P-B3	B-Kt3 Kt-B3	Kt-B3 Kt-K2	P-Q3 B-KKt5	O-O B-Kt5
8	B-B4 Q x Qch	Kt-B3 Q-R4	P-Q4 (e) O-O	Q-B2 O-O	R x P B x QKt
9	K x Q O-O	P-K5 B x Kt	Kt-K4 Kt x P	B x P R-K1ch	QP x B R-K1
10	B x P Kt x P	KtP x B Kt-K5	Kt x B P x Kt	K-B1 P-QKt4	Q-B1 B x Kt
11	R-K1 B-B4	P-Q4 Kt-Kt6ch	B x Kt Q x B	B-QKt3 P-Kt5	B x B Q x P
12	B-Q3 Kt-B7ch =	K-Kt1 Kt x R ♯ (c)	B x P Kt-B3 =	QKt-K2 Kt x P ♯ (h)	B-B4 Q-B4ch =

\* DIAGRAM 47  
cols. 16-20

[After 3 B-B4]

- (a) If 6 KKt-K2, B x Kt; 7 QP x B (7 Kt x B, B-Kt5 or 7 KtP x B, Kt x B; 8 P x Kt, P-B6), P-B3 =.  
(b) On 5... P-KKt4 White has a variety

of favorable continuations, of which the most forceful is 6 Kt-KB3, Q-R4; 7 P-KR4, P-KR3; 8 B x Pch!, Q x B; 9 Kt-K5, Q-B3; 10 Q-R5ch, K-Q1; 11 Kt-B7ch, K-K2; 12 Kt x R, Q x Kt; 13 P x P, Q-K4; 14 P x P, Q x Q; 15 R x Q, B x P; 16 P-Q4!, Kt-QB3; 17 P-B3, B-Kt5; 18 R-R4, B-Q2; 19 B x P, R-KB1; 20 P-KKt3, B-Kt4; 21 R-R7ch, K-Q1; 22 Kt-Q2 and White should win the endgame. Another good line is 6 Kt-QB3, Kt-KB3; 7 P-Q4, P-B3; 8 B-Kt3, B-Kt2; 9 Kt-B3, Q-R4; 10 P-KR4, B-Kt5; 11 P-K5, B x Kt; 12 Q x B, Q x Qch; 13 P x Q, Kt-R4; 14 Kt-K4+. Spielmann-Loevenfisch, Moscow, 1925.

(c) 13 B x P, Kt-K2; 14 K x Kt, P-QB3; 15 P-B4, O-O; 16 Q-Q2, P-KR3; 17 R-KB1, B-K3. Spielmann-Jacobson, Copenhagen, 1923.

Notes continued on p. 119

1 P-K4, P-K4; 2 P-KB4, P x P

	21	22	23	24	25
3	(B-B4)..... Kt-QB3 (a)	B-K2 (f).... P-Q4 (g)	Q-B3 (k)..... Kt-QB3	Kt-QB3 (o).. Q-R5ch	P-Q4 Q-R5ch
4	P-Q4 (b) Kt-B3	P x P Kt-KB3	P-B3 (l) Kt-B3 (m)	K-K2 P-Q4! (p)	K-K2 P-QKt3?? (s)
5	P-K5 (c) P-Q4	P-B4 P-B3	P-Q4 P-Q4	Kt x P B-Kt5ch	P-B4 P-KKt4
6	B-Kt3 Kt-K5	P-Q4 B-Kt5ch	P-K5 Kt-K5	Kt-B3 Kt-QB3!	Kt-KB3 Q-R3
7	QB x P (d) Q-R5ch	K-B1 (h) P x P	B x P P-B3	P-Q4 (q) O-O-O	P-KKt3 Kt-KB3
8	P-Kt3 Kt x KtP	B x P (i) P x P!	B-QKt5 B-K2	P-B3 (r) P-B4!	Kt-B3 B-R3
9	B x Kt Q-K5ch	B x Kt Kt-Q4!	P x P B x P	K-Q2! Q-B7ch	K-B2 P x Pch
10	K-B2 Q x R	K-B2 R x B	Kt-K2 O-O	B-K2 B x Kt!	K-Kt2 Q-Kt3
11	Kt-QB3 Kt-K2	B x P O-O	O-O P-Kt4	P x B Kt x P!	P x P P-Kt5
12	Q-K2 P-KR4! ♯ (e)	Kt-KB3 Kt-B3+(j)	B x Kt P x KB ♯ (n)	P x Kt P x P+	Kt-K5+(t)

(a) Also playable is the Lopez Counter-gambit 3... P-KB4; 4 Q-K2, Q-R5ch; 5 K-Q1, P x P; 6 Q x Pch, B-K2; 7 P-Q4, Kt-KB3; 8 Q x BP, Q x Q; 9 B x Q, P-Q4; 10 B-Q3, B-Kt5ch; 11 Kt-K2, Kt-B3 =. The Classical Defense, 3... Q-R5ch; 4 K-B1, P-KKt4 is weak: 5 Kt-QB3, B-Kt2; 6 P-Q4, Kt-K2; 7 P-KKt3 (MacDonnell's Attack), P x P; 8 K-Kt2, Q-R3; 9 P x P, Q-KKt3; 10 Kt-B3, P-KR3; 11 Kt-Q5+.

(b) If 4 Kt-KB3, Kt-B3; 5 Q-K2 (5 Kt-B3 transposes back to the column and notes), B-B4; 6 P-K5, O-O!; 7 P-B3, P-Q4! ♯.  
(c) Or 5 Kt-QB3, B-Kt5; 6 Q-Q3, P-Q4; 7 P x P, KKt x P; 8 Kt-B3, O-O; 9 O-O, B x Kt; 10 P x B, R-K1; 11 B x Kt, Q x B ♯. Spielmann-Réti, Baden, 1914.  
(d) On 7 Kt-KB3, P-KKt4 ♯ is feasible.

(e) 13 R-K1, P-R5; 14 B-KB4, Kt-Kt3. Analysis by Kmoch.

(f) The lesser Bishop's Gambit.

(g) Another good defense is 3... Kt-K2; 4 P-Q4, P-Q4; 5 P x P, Kt x P; 6 Kt-KB3, B-Kt5ch; 7 P-B3, B-K2; 8 O-O, O-O; 9 P-B4, Kt-K6; 10 B x Kt, P x B; 11 Q-Q3, B-B3 ♯: 12 Kt-B3 (if 12 Q x P, P-B4!), Kt-B3; 13 Kt-Q5, B-Kt5 (better 13... R-K1); 14 Kt x Bch, Q x Kt; 15 P-Q5. Tartakower—Alekhine, New York, 1924. Euwe recommends 3... P-KB4; 4 P-K5? (best is 4 P x P), P-Q3; 5 Kt-KB3, P x P; 6 Kt x P, Q-R5ch; 7 K-B1, B-Q3 ♯.

(h) Better 7 B-Q2 but Black retains at least equality.

(i) 8 P-B5 should have been played (Tartakower).

(j) Tartakower—Capablanca, New York, 1924.

(k) The Breyer Gambit.

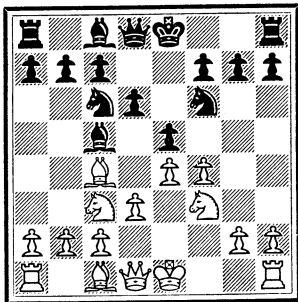
Notes continued on p. 120

1 P-K4, P-K4; 2 P-KB4, B-B4; 3 Kt-KB3, P-Q3; 4 Kt-B3, Kt-KB3; 5 B-B4, Kt-B3; 6 P-Q3\*

1	2	3	4	5
6 B-K3!	.....P-QR3.....	B-KKt5 (e)		
7 B-Kt5 (a)	P × P	Kt-QR4.....	P-KR3	
P-QR3	P × P	B × Kt!	.....Kt-Q5? (k)	B × Kt
8 B × Ktch	B-KKt5	Q × B	Kt × B	Q × B
P × B	Q-Q3	Kt-Q5	P × Kt	P × P!
9 Q-K2 (b)	B × Kt	Q-Kt3 (f)	P-B3! (l)	Q × P (n)
P × P!	Q × B	P × P! (g)	Kt × Ktch	Kt-K4
10 B × P	Kt-Q5	Q × KtP? (h)	P × Kt	R-B1
Q-Kt1	Q-Q3	R-KB1	B-R4	O-O
11 Kt-Q1	Q-Q2	K-Q1 (i)	Q-K2	B-Kt3
O-O	P-R3	P-Kt4!	Q-Q3	Kt-R4
12 P-B3	KR-B1	Kt × B	P × P! (m)	Q-Kt5
R-K1	B-K3 = (d)	P × Kt	Q × KP	Q × Q
13 B-K3		B-Q5	P-B4	B × Q
B × B		P-B3	Q-K2	Kt-Kt6
14 Kt × B		P-B3	Q-Kt2 ±	R-B4
Kt-Kt5 = (c)		P × B+ (j)		B-K6+

\* DIAGRAM 48

cols. 1-5



[After 6 P-Q3]

(a) If 7 Kt-Q5, B × Kt; 8 P × B, Kt-Q5; 9 P × P, P × P ≠. Kmoch.

(b) 9 P-B5 is now met by 9...B-B1; 10 B-Kt5, B-Kt2; 11 Kt-K2, Q-K2;

12 Q-Q2, P-Q4; 13 P-B3, O-O-O ≠. Jellie-Goldstein, 1923.

(c) Spielmann-Tarrasch, Pistyan, 1922. 15 Kt × Kt is now best.

(d) Spielmann-Yates, Moscow, 1925.

(e) The common defense. Three inadequate alternatives are: (1) 6...Kt-Q5; 7 P × P, Kt-Kt5; 8 Kt × Kt, B × Kt; 9 P-K6, Q-R5ch; 10 P-Kt3, B-B7ch; 11 K-K2, Q-R4; 12 P-KR3, Kt-K6ch; 13 P-Kt4+. Milner-Barry-Thomas, Hastings, 1933-34. (2) 6...O-O, 7 P-B5!, P-KR3 (better 7...Kt-QR4); 8 P-KR3, R-K1?; 9 P-KKt4, Kt-Q5; 10 P-Kt5, P-Q4; 11 Kt × QP, Kt × Kt; 12 B × Kt, B × P; 13 P × P, P-QB3; 14 B-Kt3, B-KKt3; 15 Kt × Kt, Q-R5ch; 16 K-B1+. Adams-Blumin, New York, 1930. (3) 6...Kt-KKt5; 7 Kt-KKt5!, P-KR3; 8 P-B5! ±. (4) 6...Kt-QR4 may be good; it has never been tried seriously.

Notes continued on p. 120

Notes continued from p. 115

(e) Alternatives are: (1) 7 P-KKt3, P-Kt5; 8 Kt-R4, P-B6; 9 P-B3, B-B3; (10...Kt-QB3; 11 Q-Kt3 leads to col. 13); 10 Kt × P, P × Kt; 11 Q × P, Q-K2; 12 Kt-Q2, Kt-B3; 13 P-K5, P × P; 14 Kt-K4, B-Kt4; 15 B × Pch, K-Q1; 16 P-Q5, Kt-Kt1; 17 P-Q6, P × P; 18 B × B, P × B; 19 Kt × QP (Rabinovitch), Kt-QB3; 20 QR-Q1, K-B2+. (2) 7 Kt-B3, Kt-K2 (not 7...B-K3; 8 B × B, P × B; 9 P-K5! ±); 8 P-KKt3, P-Kt5; 9 Kt-KR4, P-B6; 10 Kt × P, P × Kt; 11 B × Pch!, K × B; 12 Q × Pch, K-Kt1; 13 Q-B7ch, K-R2; 14 R-B6, Kt-B4; 15 Q-Kt6ch and White just manages to draw by perpetual check. Rabinovitch.

(f) Inferior is 7...Kt-K2; 8 P-KKt3, P-Kt5 (8...Kt-Kt3! is a possibility); 9 Kt-R4, P-B6; 10 B-K3! (10 Kt × P, P × Kt; 11 Q × P, O-O; 12 B × Pch, K-R1+. 10 Kt-R3 is also good.); QKt-B3; 11 Kt-Q2, O-O (the trouble with the variation is that Black cannot castle Q-side); 12 P-KR3, P-KR4; 13 P × P, P × P; 14 QKt × P, P × Kt; 15 Q × P+. Szekely-Freyman, Abbazia, 1912.

(g) 13 QKt-Q2, KKt-K2; 14 Q-R3ch, K-Kt1; 15 R-KB1, Q-Kt3; 16 Kt-R4, Q-Kt4. Spielmann-Gruenfeld, Carlsbad, 1923.

(h) 10 Kt-Q2, B-B3; 11 QKt × P, P × Kt; 12 Q × P (Spielmann-Gruenfeld, Teplitz-Schoenau, 1922), B-R6+.

(i) If instead 12 P × B, O-O-O!; 13 B × P, Q-K7!; 14 Q-K6ch (14 R-B2, Q-K8ch; 15 R-B1, P-B7ch; 16 K-Kt2, Kt × P!; 17 P × Kt, Q-K5ch; 18 K × P, B × Pch+. Rabinovitch), R-Q2!; 15 R-B2, Q-Q8ch; 16 R-B1, Q-

B7; 17 Kt-Q2, Kt-B3 ≠. Analysis by Nimzovitch.

(j) 13 Q × Rch, K-Q2; 14 B-QKt5, KKt-K2; 15 Q-Kt7, B × Pch; 16 P × B, Q × Pch; 17 R-B2, Q-Q8ch. Draw. Handbuch.

(k) The Muzio Gambit. White cannot afford to allow the Salvio Gambit 5 Kt-K5, Q-R5ch; 6 K-B1, Kt-QB3; 7 B × Pch, K-K2; 8 Kt × Ktch, QP × Kt; 9 B × Kt, R × B; 10 Q-K1, P-Kt6; 11 P-Q4, P-B6; 12 P-KR3, B-Kt5; 13 Q-K3, R-Kt3+. Dublin-Cambridge, correspondence, 1892.

(l) 10...P-QB3; 11 QR-K1, Q-B4ch; 12 K-R1, P-Q4; 13 Q-R5, Q-Q3; 14 B × QP, P × B; 15 Kt-Kt5; Q-QKt3; 16 B-Kt4+. Saemisch and others-Gunter and others, Hannover, 1926.

(m) 13 Q-K2, Q-K3; 14 Q-B2 (If 14 Kt × Kt, Q × Q; 15 Kt × Ktch, KtP × Kt; 16 R × Q, P-Q4 ≠. Tchigorin), Q-B4 (14...Q-Kt5; 15 P-KR3, Q-Kt3; 16 B × P+. Znosko-Borovsky); 15 Q-K2, Q-K3. Draw by perpetual inability to win. Neither side can afford to vary from the main variation.

(n) The Cunningham Gambit. On 3...P-KR3 (Becker's Defense) White does best to transpose to cols. 12 and 13 with 4 B-B4, P-KKt4; 5 O-O, B-Kt2; 6 P-Q4, P-Q3, etc.

(o) Much stronger is Euwe's suggestion 4...Kt-KB3!; 5 P-K5, Kt-Kt5!; 6 O-O, P-Q3; 7 P × P, Q × P ≠.

(p) Or 5...P-Q3; 6 P-Q4, B-Kt5; 7 B × P, Q-B3; 8 B-K3, Kt-K2; 9 QKt-Q2, P-KR3; 10 P-KR3 ±.

(q) If 9...Kt-R4; 10 Kt-K2 ±.

Notes continued from p. 116

(d) Better than 4...Kt-KB3; 5 Kt-QB3, B-Q3 (preferable 5...P-B3); 6 Q-K2ch!, Q-K2; 7 Q × Qch, K × Q; 8 KKt-K2, P-QR3; 9 P-Q3, P-QKt4; 10 B-Kt3, P-Kt5 (Bogoljubow-Sosin, U.S.S.R. Championship, 1924); 11 Kt-K4!, Kt × Kt; 12 P × Kt, P-Kt4; 13 P-KR4, P-KB3; 14 P × P, P × P; 15 P-Kt3, P × P; 16 B × Pch+ (Sosin).

(e) Blackburne-Schlechter, Vienna, 1898.

(f) Bogoljubow's Defense.

(g) If 5 B-Kt3, P-Q4; 6 P × P; P × P; 7 P-Q4, B-Q3; 8 KKt-K2, O-O; 9 O-O, P-KKt4+. Spielmann-Bogoljubow, Maehrlich-Ostrau, 1923. And if 5 P-Q4, B-Kt5; 6 Q-B3, P-Q4; 7 P × P, O-O; 8 KKt-K2, P × P; 9 B-Q3, B-Kt5; 10 Q × BP, B × Kt; 11 K × B, Kt-B3; 12 B-K3, R-K1; 13 KR-KB1, Q-K2 ≠. Spielmann-Bogoljubow, Carlsbad, 1923.

## Additional notes continued from p. 116

(h)  $13 B \times Kt, P \times B; 14 Q-Kt3$  (Tartakower),  $B \times Ktch; 15 Kt \times B, Q-B3$ .  
 (i) Weaker is  $4... Kt-B3; 5 Kt-B3, B-Kt5; 6 Kt-Q5!, Kt \times P; 7 O-O, O-O; 8 P-Q4, Kt-B3; 9 Kt \times B, Kt \times Kt; 10 B \times P \pm$ . Spielmann—Bogoljubow, Triberg, 1921.  
 (j) If  $5 P-K5, P-Q4; 6 B-Kt5ch, P-B3; 7 P \times Kt, P \times B; 8 Q-K2ch, B-K3; 9 Q \times Pch, Kt-B3; 10 Kt-B3, B \times Kt; 11 QP \times B, Q \times P \mp$ . Tchigorin and others—Lasker and others, Hamburg, 1904.

## Notes continued from p. 117

(l) Other moves are easily met by  $... P-Q4$ .  
 (m) If now  $4... P-Q4; 5 P \times P, Kt-K4; 6 Q-K4, Q-K2; 7 P-Q4, Kt-Kt3; 8 Q \times Qch, B \times Q; 9 B-Q3 \pm$ . Alexander—Tylor, Chester, 1934.  
 (n) Spielmann—Tarrasch, Gothenburg, 1920.  
 (o) The Keres, Willemson or Pernau Gambit.  
 (p) The refutation. If instead  $4... P-Q3; 5 Kt-B3, B-Kt5; 6 Kt-Q5, B \times Ktch; 7 P \times B, K-Q1; 8 P-Q3, P-KKt4; 9 B-Q2, B-Kt2; 10 B-K1, Q-R4; 11 P-KR4, P-KR3; 12 B-R3, Kt-$

## Notes continued from p. 118

(f) Not  $9 Q-Q1?$ ,  $P-QKt4; 10 Kt \times B, P \times B; 11 BP \times P, P \times Kt; 12 P \times Kt, Q \times P+$ . Spielmann—Leonhardt, match, 1910.  
 (g) If  $9... Kt \times Pch?$ ;  $10 K-Q1, Kt \times R; 11 Q \times P, R-KB1; 12 Kt \times B, P \times Kt; 13 P \times P, Kt \times P; 14 B-KR6, Q-K2; 15 R-B1, O-O-O; 16 Q-Kt4ch, K-Kt1; 17 B \times R, Q \times P; 18 B-Kt7, Q-K2; 19 K-B1+$ . Analysis by Uber.  
 (h) Best is  $10 B \times P, Kt-R4; 11 Q-Kt4, Kt \times B; 12 Q \times Kt, Q-K2; 13 Kt \times B, P \times Kt; 14 Q-B2 =$ .  
 (i) Or  $12 B-Kt3, Q-K2; 13 B \times P, Kt-R4; 14 Q-Kt5, KKt \times B; 15 Q \times Kt, P-KB4 \mp$ . Enivre—Fine, New York, 1940.  
 (j)  $15 P \times Kt, P \times KP; 16 B \times P, Q \times P$ .  
 (k) An unclear possibility is  $7... Kt-Q2;$

1904.

(k)  $6 B \times P, B \times Kt$  transposes to col. 1. If  $6 Kt \times QP, Kt \times Kt; 7 B \times Kt, Q-R5ch; 8 K-B1, P-B6; 9 P \times P, B-R6ch; 10 K-Kt1, Q-Kt4ch; 11 Kt-Kt3, P-KR4 \mp$ .  
 (l) On  $6... P-B6; 7 P \times P, O-O; 8 O-O$  is correct, but not  $8 P-Q4?$ ,  $B-KR6?$  ( $8... Kt \times P$ );  $9 B-KKt5, B-Kt7; 10 R-KKt1, B \times P; 11 Q-Q2 \pm$ . Alekhine—Lewitzky, match, 1913.

$K2; 13 Kt \times Kt \pm$ . Keres—Kunerth, correspondence, 1935.

(g) Not  $7 Kt \times Pch, K-Q1; 8 Kt \times R, Kt-K4; 9 P-KR3, B-R4; 10 R-KKt1, Q-Kt6++$ . Keres—Mencke, correspondence, 1933.

(r) If  $8 K-Q3, P-B4; 9 Q-K2, P \times Pch; 10 Q \times P, B \times Kt; 11 Q \times B, R \times Kt; 12$  resigns. Crowl—Purdy, correspondence. If here  $9 Kt \times Q, P \times Pch; 10 K \times P, B \times Q; 11 B-Q3, R-K1ch; 12 K \times P, P-KKt4ch++$ .

(s) Best is  $4... P-Q4$  as in column 24.

(t) Keres—Feldsepp, 1932. Black's defense was peculiarly weak.

and if  $8 Kt \times B, P \times Kt; 9 O-O, P \times P; 10 B \times P, Kt(B3)-K4; 11 Kt \times Kt!, B \times Q; 12 Kt \times P, Q-B3; 13 QR \times B, R-KB1; 14 B \times P! \pm$ . Spielmann—Maroczy, Vienna, 1907.

(l) Weak is  $9 P \times P, Kt-Q2; 10 B-B4, Q-K2; 11 O-O, O-O-O; 12 Q-Q2, B \times Kt; 13 P \times B, P-KKt4; 14 B-KKt3, P-KR4; 15 P-B3, P-R5 \mp$ . Spielmann—Rabinovitch, Moscow, 1925.

(m) Not  $12 P-B5?$ ,  $P-KKt3; 13 P \times P, B \times KtP =$ . Spielmann—Bogatyrchuk, Moscow, 1925.

(n) If  $9 B \times P, Kt-Q5; 10 Q-Kt3, Kt-R4; 11 Q-Kt4, Kt \times B; 12 Q \times Kt, Kt \times Pch; 13 K-Q1, Kt-K6ch!; 14 K-Q2, Kt \times B+$ . Svenonius. Rubinstein recommended  $9 B-Kt5!$ . If  $9 B \times P, Kt-Q5; 10 Q-Q1, Kt-Q2!$   $\mp$ .

## 1 P-K4, P-K4; 2 P-KB4, B-B4 (a); 3 Kt-KB3, P-Q3

	6	7	8	9	10
4	(Kt-B3) . . . . .	B-B4 . . . . .	P-B3 (g)		
	(Kt-KB3)	Kt-KB3	Kt-KB3 . . . . .	B-KKt5 . . . . .	P-B4!
5	(B-B4)	P-Q3	P \times P	P \times P	P \times KP
	(Kt-B3)	B-K3!	P \times P	P \times P	QP \times P
6	(P-Q3)	B \times B	P-Q4 (h)	Q-R4ch (k)	P-Q4
	(B-KKt5)	P \times B	P \times P (i)	B-Q2 (l)	KP \times P
7	(P-KR3)	P \times P (e)	P \times P	Q-B2	B-QB4
	(B \times Kt)	P \times P	B-Kt3 (j)	Kt-QB3 (m)	Kt-KB3 (o)
8	(Q \times B)	Kt-B3	P-K5	P-QKt4	P-K5
	Kt-Q5	Kt-B3	Kt-Q4	B-Q3	Kt-K5
9	Q-Kt3!	B-Kt5	B-QB4	B-B4	P \times P
	Q-K2 (b)	P-KR3	B-K3	Kt-B3	B-Kt5ch (p)
10	P \times P	B-R4	Q-Kt3	P-Q3	K-K2
	P \times P	Q-Q3	O-O	Kt-K2	P-B3
11	K-Q1	Q-Q2	Kt-B3	O-O	Q-Kt3
	P-B3	O-O-O	P-QB3	Kt-Kt3 (n)	Q-K2
12	P-QR4	O-O-O	O-O	P-QR4!	Kt-B3
	R-KKt1? (c)	P-KKt4	Kt-B2	O-O	B \times Kt
13	R-B1 \pm (d)	B-B2	B-K3	QKt-Q2 \pm	P \times B
		B-Kt5 \mp (f)	Kt-Q2 =		P-QKt4 \mp (q)

(a) If  $2... P-Q3; 3 Kt-KB3, Kt-QB3; 4 P-Q4$  Black has no compensation for his backward development.

(b)  $9... Kt \times Pch; 10 K-Q1, Kt \times iR; 11 Q \times P, R-KB1; 12 P \times P, P \times P; 13 R-B1$  (Tchigorin—Pillsbury, Hastings, 1895) gives White too strong an attack, e.g.,  $13... B-K2; 14 B-KKt5, P-B3; 15 R \times Kt, B \times R; 16 B \times B, Q-Q3; 17 Kt-Kt5!+$  (Blake). Playable is  $9... P \times P!$ , and if  $10 Q \times KtP, R-KB1; 11 K-Q1, Q-K2; 12 R-B1, R-KKt1; 13 Q-R6, R \times P \mp$ .

(c) Correct is  $12... O-O-O$  and if  $13 Q \times KtP?$  ( $13 R-B1 =$ ),  $KR-Kt1; 14 Q \times BP, Q \times Q; 15 B \times Q, R \times P \mp$ .

(d)  $13... P-KR3; 14 Kt-K2, O-O-O; 15 Kt \times Kt, B \times Kt; 16 P-B3, B-Kt3; 17 P-R5$ . Rubinstein—Hromadka, Macherisch—Ostrau, 1923.

(e) Or  $7 Kt-B3, O-O; 8 Kt-QR4, B-Kt3; 9 Kt \times B, RP \times Kt; 10 P \times P, P \times P; 11 Kt \times P, Kt \times P!$   $\mp$ . Tchigorin

—Wolf, Ostend, 1905.

(f) Spielmann—Nimzovitch, match, 1907.

(g) Two inferior continuations are: (1)  $4 P \times P$  (the Soldatenkoff attack),  $P \times P; 5 P-B3, Kt-QB3; 6 P-QKt4, B-Kt3; 7 B-Kt5, Kt-B3; 8 Kt \times P, O-O; 9 Kt \times Kt, P \times Kt; 10 B \times P, Kt \times P+$ . Tartakower—Burn, Carlsbad, 1911. (2)  $4 P-QKt4$  (Heath's Variation),  $B \times P!; 5 B-Kt2, Kt-QB3; 6 P \times P, P \times P; 7 B-Kt5, B-Q2; 8 O-O, Kt-B3; 9 P-Q3, B-B4ch; 10 K-R1, Kt-Q5; 11 B \times Bch, Kt \times B \mp$ . Heath—Fairhurst, 1930.

(h)  $6 Kt \times P, Q-K2; 7 P-Q4, B-Q3; 8 Kt-B3, Kt \times P; 9 B-K2, O-O; 10 O-O, P-QB4; 11 QKt-Q2, Kt \times Kt \mp$ . Charousek—Janowski, Berlin, 1897.

(i) If  $6... B-Kt3; 7 Kt \times P, P-B4; 8 B-Kt5ch, QKt-Q2; 9 B-Kt5$  (Spielmann—Karlin, Lund, 1939),  $P \times P; 10 P \times P, O-O; 11 Kt-B3 \pm$ .

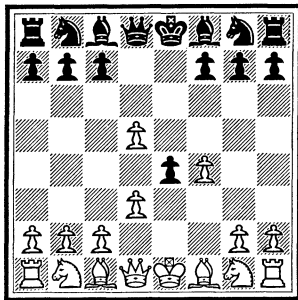
## Notes continued on p. 124

FALKBEER COUNTER GAMBIT

1 P-K4, P-K4; 2 P-KB4, P-Q4; 3 KP x P, P-K5; 4 P-Q3 \*

	11	12	13	14	15
4	Kt-KB3				P x P (s)
5	Q-K2! Q x P (a)	P x P Kt x KP	Kt-Q2 (j) P x P!	B-KB4 (n)	Q x P (t) Kt-KB3
6	Kt-QB3 B-QKt5	Kt-KB3 (d) B-QB4 (e)	B x P Kt x P (k)	P x P Kt x KP	Kt-QB3 B-QB4 (u)
7	B-Q2 B x Kt	Q-K2 B-B4! (f)	Kt-K4 Kt-Kt5! (l)	KKt-B3 (o) P-QB3 (p)	B-Q2 O-O
8	B x B B-Kt5 (b)	Kt-B3! (g) Q-K2	B-Kt5ch B-Q2	Kt-Q4 B-Kt3 (q)	O-O-O QKt-Q2
9	P x P Q x KP	B-K3 B x B	B x Bch (m) Kt x B	Q-K2 B-Kt5	P-KKt3! Kt-Kt3
10	Q x Qch Kt x Q	Q x B Kt x Kt	P-B3 Q-K2	P-B3 O-O	B-Kt2 B-KKt5
11	B x P R-Kt1	Q x Qch K x Q	Q-K2 Kt-QB3	Kt x Kt B x Kt	Kt-B3 QKt x P
12	B-K5 Kt-QB3	P x Kt B-K5! (h)	Kt-B3 O-O-O	P x B R-K1	P-KR3 Kt x Kt
13	B-Q3+(c) B x Kt = (i)	P-B4 Kt-B3	Kt-Kt3 Kt-B3 ±	B-K3+(r)	Q x Kt+(v)

\* DIAGRAM 49  
cols. 11-15



[After 4 P-Q3]

(a) Or 5... B-KB4; 6 P x P, B x P; 7 Kt-QB3, Q-K2; 8 Kt x B, Kt x Kt; 9 B-K3, Kt-Q2; 10 O-O-O, O-O-O;

11 B x P!+. Or 5... B-QB4; 6 P x P, O-O; 7 Kt-QB3, R-K1; 8 B-Q2+ (Tartakower).

(b) If 8... O-O; 9 B x Kt, P x P; 10 Q-K5, P-Q7ch; 11 K-B2!+, while if 8... QKt-Q2; 9 P x P, Kt x P; 10 B x P, R-KKt1; 11 R-Q1+.

(c) 13... Kt x B; 14 B x Kt, Réti-Tarrasch, Gothenburg, 1920.

(d) The older line is 6 Q-K2, Q x P; 7 Kt-Q2, P-KB4; 8 P-KKt4, Kt-B3!; 9 P-B3, B-K2; 10 B-Kt2, Q-B2; 11 Kt x Kt, P x Kt; 12 B x P, B-R5ch; 13 K-B1, O-O; 14 K-Kt2, B-K3 ±. Bardeleben and others—Pillsbury and others, Berlin, 1902.

(e) Not 6... B-KB4; 7 B-K3, P-QB3; 8 B-B4, P-QKt4; 9 B-Kt3, P-B4; 10 P-Q6!, P-B5; 11 Q-Q5+. Alekhine—Tarrasch, St. Petersburg, 1914.

Notes continued on p. 124

FALKBEER COUNTER GAMBIT

1 P-K4, P-K4; 2 P-KB4, P-Q4

	16	17	18	19	20
3	(KP x P) (P-K5)		Kt-KB3	P-Q4	Kt-QB3 (k) P-Q5
4	B-Kt5ch (a) P-B3	Kt-QB3! KP x P (e)	Kt x P Kt-Q2 (g)	Q x P Kt-KB3 (i)	QKt-K2 B-KKt5
5	P x P Kt x P! (b)	Kt-B3 Kt-B3	P-Q4 P x P e.p.	P x P Q x P	P-Q3 B-Q3
6	P-Q3 Kt-B3	P-Q4 Kt x P	Kt x QP KKt-B3	Kt-KB3 Kt-B3	P x P B x P
7	Kt-QB3 B-QKt5	Kt x Kt Q x Kt	Q-B3 B-K2	Q-K3ch Q-K5	Q-Q2 Kt-QB3
8	B-Q2 B-Kt5	B x P Q-K5ch	B-K3 O-O	Kt-B3 B-QKt5	Kt-KB3 B x Kt
9	KKt-K2 O-O!	Q-K2 Q x Qch	Kt-B3 Kt-Kt3	B-Q3 Q x Qch	P x B Q-R5ch
10	P x P P x QKt	B x Q B-K2	Kt-K5 B-KB4	B x Q Kt-Q4	K-Q1 P-B4 (l)
11	B x B Kt x P	O-O B-K3	B-Q3 B x B	B-Q2 Kt x Kt (j)	Q-Kt5 Q x Q
12	Q x Q QR x Q ± (c)	P-B4 ± (f)	O-O-O ±	P x Kt B-Q3 ±	B x Q P-KR3 = (m)

(a) Other inferior alternatives are: (1) 4 Kt-QB3, Kt-KB3; 5 B-B4, B-QB4; 6 KKt-K2, O-O; 7 P-Q4, P x P e.p.; 8 Q x P, Kt-Kt5!; 9 Kt-Q1, R-K1; 10 P-KR3, Kt-KR3; 11 Kt-K3, P-QB3 ±. Andersen—Jacobstadt, Stockholm, 1934. (2) 4 P-Q4, Kt-KB3; 5 P-B4, B-K2; 6 Kt-K2, O-O; 7 Kt-Kt3, P-B3; 8 P x P, Kt x P; 9 P-Q5, Kt-QKt5; 10 B-K2, R-K1 ±. Weninger—Henning, Ems, 1932.

(b) Weaker is 5... P x P; 6 B-B4, Kt-B3; 7 P-Q4 (7 P-Q3, B-QB4; 8 Kt-K2, B-KKt5; 9 QKt-B3, P x P; 10 Q x P, Q-Kt3; 11 B-Q2, B-B7ch; 12 K-B1 is also good), B-Q3; 8 Kt-K2, QKt-Q2; 9 Kt-Kt3, Kt-Kt3; 10 B-K2!, QKt-Q4; 11 O-O, Q-B2; 12 Kt-B3! ±. Tchigorin—Pillsbury, Moscow, 1902.

(c) Analysis by Godai, Wiener Schachzeitung, 1930.

(d) Nimzovitch's Variation. If 3... P x P; 4 Q-B3, Kt-KB3; 5 B-Kt5ch, B-

Q2; 6 Kt-B3, B-QKt5; 7 KKt-K2, O-O; 8 B x B, QKt x B; 9 O-O, Kt-Kt3; 10 Kt x P+. Réti—Rubinstein, Stockholm, 1919.

(e) Or (1) 4... B-QKt5; 5 Kt-B3, B x Kt; 6 QP x B, P-K5; 7 Kt-K5, P x P; 8 B-Kt5ch, K-B1; 9 B-K3+. Rubinstein. (2) 4... BP x P; 5 P x P, P-Q5; 6 Kt-K4, Q-Q4; 7 B-Q3, Kt-QB3; 8 Q-K2, Kt-R3; 9 B-B4, Q-R4; 10 Kt-KB3, B-KKt5; 11 Kt-Q6ch+. Opocensky—P. Johner, Baden, 1914.

(f) 12... O-O; 13 Kt-Kt5!. Stoltz—Brinckmann, Swinemunde, 1932.

(g) Probably best is 4... B-Q3, for if 5 Q-K2, Q-K2; 6 Q x P, P-KB3+. Inferior alternatives are: (1) 4... Kt-KB3; 5 B-B4, B-QB4; 6 B x Pch, K-K2; 7 B-Kt3, R-K1; 8 Q-K2, K-B1; 9 Q-B4+. (2) 4... Kt-QB3; 5 B-Kt5, Kt-B3; 6 Q-K2 ±. Tartakower—Gruber, Vienna, 1919.

Notes continued on p. 125

## Notes continued from p. 121

(j) Better than 7... B-Kt5ch; 8 B-Q2, B × Bch; 9 QKt × B, O-O; 10 B-Q3, P-B4; 11 P-Q5, B-Kt5, 12 O-O, QKt-Q2; 13 Q-B2 ±. Spielmann—van Scheltinga, Amsterdam, 1938.

(k) Marshall's variation.

(l) If 6... Kt-B3; 7 Kt × P, Q-R5ch; 8 P-Kt3, B-B7ch; 9 K × B, Q-B3ch; 10 K-Kt1, Q × Kt; 11 B-Kt2+. Spielmann.

(m) 7... Q-K2; 8 P-Q4, P × P; 9 P × P, B-Kt5ch; 10 Kt-B3, B-B3; 11 B-Q3, B × Ktch; 12 P × B, B × P; 13 B ×

B, P-KB4; 14 O-O, P × B; 15 Q-Kt3 !+. Euwe—Maroczy, match, 1921.

(n) Spielmann—Tarrasch, Carlsbad, 1923.

(o) If 7... BP × P; 8 Kt-K5, Kt-KB3; 9 Kt-B7, Q-K2; 10 Kt × R, P-Q6; 11 B-Kt5, B-B7ch; 12 K × B, Q-B4ch; 13 B-K3, Q × B; 14 P-KR3, B-K3; 15 Kt-Q2+. Stoltz—Spielmann, match, 1932.

(p) Weaker is 9... B-Kt3; 10 Kt-B3, Kt-QB3; 11 B-K3, Kt-R4; 12 B-Q3 ±. Réti—Hromadka, Pistyan, 1922.

(q) Stoltz—Flohr, match, 1931.

## Notes continued from p. 122

(f) Best. If instead 7... B-B7ch; 8 K-Q1, Q × Pch; 9 KKt-Q2 (Alapin's Variation), P-KB4; 10 Kt-B3, Q-Q5; 11 Kt × Kt, P × Kt; 12 P-B3, Q-K6; 13 Q-R5ch, K-B1; 14 B-B4+. Réti—Breyer, Budapest, 1918. Or 7... P-B4; 8 KKt-Q2+.

(g) The tempting 8 P-KKt4, is refuted by 8... O-O; 9 P × B, R-K1; 10 B-Kt2, Kt-B7; 11 Kt-K5, Kt × R; 12 B × Kt, Kt-Q2; 13 Kt-QB3, P-KB3+. Spielmann—Tarrasch, Maehrisch—Ostrau, 1923.

(h) 12... B × P; 13 K-Q2!, B-Kt3; 14 R-K1ch, K-Q1; 15 Kt-Q4, P-QB4; 16 Kt-Kt5, Kt-Q2; 17 P-Kt4, P-B3; 18 B-Kt2 ±. Wheatcroft—Keres, Margate, 1939.

(i) Black's excellent Pawn structure is sufficient compensation for the Pawn minus.

(j) The Keres Variation.

(k) Weak is 6... Q × P; 7 KKt-B3, B-QB4 (better 7... B-K2); 8 Q-K2ch, Q-K3; 9 Kt-K5, O-O; 10 Kt-K4, Kt × Kt; 11 Q × Kt, P-KKt3; 12 P-QKt4!, B-K2; 13 B-Kt2, B-B3; 14 O-O-O, Kt-B3; 15 P-KR4+. Keres—Petrow, Moscow, 1940.

(l) Suggested by Marshall, Ulvestad and others.

(m) Not 9 Q-K2, Q-K2; 10 B-B4?, P-KB4+.

(n) Inferior are: (1) 5... P-K6; 6 Kt-B4, Kt × P; 7 Kt × P, Kt × P; 8 P-KKt3, Kt-Kt3; 9 B-Kt2, B-Q3; 10 Kt-B3, O-O; 11 O-O, Kt-B3; 12 K-R1, P-B4; 13 Kt-B4!, P-B5; 14 Kt × B,

P × Kt; 15 B × P ±. Keres—Stalda, correspondence, 1933-34. (2) 5... Q × P?, 6 P × P, Kt × P; 7 B-B4, Q-QB4; 8 Q-K2, P-B4; 9 Kt × Kt, P × Kt; 10 Q × Pch, B-K2; 11 Kt-B3+. Ketting—Van Nuss, Rotterdam, 1933.

(o) Possible is 7 Q-K2, Q-K2; 8 P-KKt4!, Kt × Kt (if 8... Q-R5ch?; 9 K-Q1, B × P; 10 KKt-B3, B × Kt; 11 Kt × B, Q-K2; 12 B-R3 ±); 9 P × B, Kt × B; 10 K × Kt, Kt-Q2; 11 P-B4, O-O-O; 12 Q × Q, B × Q; 13 Kt-K2 ±.

(p) If 7... B-QKt5 (Claparède); 8 P-B3, Q-K2; 9 Q-R4ch!, Kt-B3; 10 Kt-K5 !+.

(q) Or 8... Kt × Kt; 9 Kt × B, Kt-K5; 10 P × P, Q × Qch; 11 K × Q, Kt × P; 12 B-K3+.

(r) Keres—Zirker, correspondence, 1935.

(s) 4... Q × P; 5 Q-K2, Kt-KB3; 6 Kt-QB3 transposes to col. 11.

(t) Also good is 5 B × P and now: (1) 5... Q × P; 6 Kt-QB3, Q-K3ch; 7 KKt-K2, Kt-KB3; 8 O-O, Q-Kt3ch; 9 K-R1, B-K2; 10 Q-K1, Kt-B3; 11 P-QR3, O-O; 12 P-QKt4 ±. Keres—Vidmar, correspondence, 1936. (2) 5... Kt-KB3; 6 Kt-QB3, B-K2; 7 Kt-B3, O-O; 8 O-O, QKt-Q2; 9 B-B4, Kt-Kt3; 10 B-Kt3, P-QR4; 11 P-QR4, B-B4ch; 12 K-R1, B-B4; 13 Kt-K5, B-QKt5; 14 P-Kt4+. Keres—Lilienthal, Leningrad—Moscow, 1941.

(u) If 6... B-QKt5; 7 B-Q2, O-O; 8 O-O-O, QKt-Q2; 9 B-K2? (9 P-

## Additional notes continued from p. 122

KKt3 as in the column gives White an advantage), Kt-Kt3; 10 B-B3, B-Kt5 ±. Leonhardt—Marshall, San Sebastian, 1911.

(v) 13... B × Kt; 14 B × B, Q-Q3; 15 Q-Kt3. Stoltz—Marshall, Folkestone, 1933.

## Notes continued from p. 123

(h) Weak is 3... P × BP; 4 P × P, Q-R5ch; 5 K-K2, Q-K2ch; 6 K-B2, Q-R5ch; 7 P-Kt3, P × Pch; 8 P × P, Q × R; 9 B-Kt2, Q-R7; 10 B-Kt5!, Kt-KB3; 11 Q-K1ch, B-K2; 12 B-R4, B-Kt5; 13 Kt-Q2, P-KKt4; 14 KKt-B3+. Tartakower—Szabo, Llyublyana, 1938.

(i) Also good is 4... Kt-QB3; 5 Q × QP, Q × Q; 6 P × Q, Kt-Kt5; 7 Kt-QR3,

Kt × QP; 8 Kt-B4, B-KB4; 9 P-B3, O-O-O ±. Claparède.

(j) Tartakower—Gruenfeld, Vienna, 1923.

(k) Milner—Barry's Variation.

(l) Weaker is 10... O-O-O; 11 Q-Kt5, Q × Q; 12 B-R3ch, K-Kt1; 13 B × Q, P-B3; 14 B-R4 ±. Milner-Barry—Alexander, Margate, 1937.

(m) Milner-Barry—Keres, Margate, 1937.

NIMZOVITCH'S DEFENSE

**T**HIS DEFENSE is an attempt to avoid the better-analyzed lines of other openings. Black's basic purpose is to lock the Pawn center early on the theory that Black may then undertake a K-side attack. Nimzovitch used to play the defense occasionally, but it has never been popular with any of the other masters.

In the main variations, seen in cols. 1-3, White continues with 2 P-Q4, P-Q4; 3 P-K5 and finds that his Q-side attack is stronger than Black's K-side offensive. Since there are several other good lines which also give White an advantage, the defense is not considered sound.

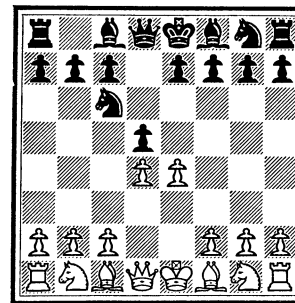
Notes continued from p. 128

- (j) Kmoch—Nimzovitch, Niendorf, 1927. a good variation of the Center Counter.
- (k) Best is 2...P-K4. If 2...P-Q4; 3 P x P, Q x P; 4 Kt-QB3 transposes into (l) Spielmann—Nimzovitch, New York, 1927.

1 P-K4, Kt-QB3; 2 P-Q4, P-Q4\*

	1	2	3	4	5
3	P-K5.....			P x P.....	Kt-QB3
	B-B4.....		P-B3	Q x P	P x P
4	P-QB3		Kt-KB3 (d)	Kt-KB3	P-Q5
	P-B3.....	P-K3	B-Kt5	P-K4	Kt-K4 (i)
5	P-KB4	Kt-K2	B-K2	Kt-B3 (g)	P-B3 (j)
	P-K3	KKt-K2	P-K3	B-QKt5 (h)	P x P
6	Kt-B3 (a)	Kt-Kt3	P x P	B-Q2	Kt x P
	Q-Q2	B-Kt3	Kt x BP	B x Kt	Kt x Ktch
7	B-Q3	B-Q3	P-B3	B x B	Q x Kt
	B-K5	Q-Q2	B-Q3	P x P	Kt-B3
8	Q-K2	Q-B3	B-KKt5	Kt x P	B-KB4
	P-B4	P-Kt3	Q-Q2	Kt x Kt	P-QR3
9	B-K3	Kt-Q2	QKt-Q2	Q x Kt	P-KR3
	Kt-R3	Kt-R4	P-KR3 (e)	Q x Q	P-KKt3
10	QKt-Q2	P-KR4	B-R4	B x Q	P-KKt4
	B-K2	B x B	P-KKt4	Kt-B3	B-Kt2
11	P-KR3 ± (b)	Q x B ± (c)	B-Kt3 ± (f)	B-Q3 ±	O-O-O ± (k)

\* DIAGRAM 50  
cols. 1-6



[After 2...P-Q4]

P-Kt4 l. Duras—Nimzovitch, Ostend, 1907. An early O-O is inferior for White here.

(c) 11...P-QB4; 12 P-Kt4 l. Kashdan—Flohr, Hamburg, 1930.

(d) 4 P-KB4, B-B4; 5 P-B3 transposes to col. 1.

(e) 9...O-O followed by ...Kt-K2 is safer.

(f) Treybal—Spielmann, Carlsbad, 1923.

(g) A mistake is 5 P x P?, Q x Qch; 6 K x Q, B-QB4; 7 K-K1, B-B4; 8 P-B3, O-O-O; 9 B-K2, P-B3; 10 B-KB4, P x P; 11 Kt x P, Kt x Kt+. Loevenborg—Nimzovitch, Copenhagen, 1924.

(h) If 5...Q-R4; 6 P-Q5+.

(a) Better than either 6 Kt-K2, Kt-R3; 7 Kt-Kt3, P x P; 8 BP x P, Q-R5 l; 9 Q-R5ch, Q x Q; 10 Kt x Q, P-KKt3 = (Asztalos—Kostich, Bled, 1931) or 6 Kt-Q2, Kt-R3; 7 P-KKt3, B-K2; 8 B-R3, P x P =. Balla—Breyer, 1919.

(b) 11...O-O; 12 Kt-Kt3, Kt-B2; 13

(i) Or 4...Kt-Kt1; 5 B-QB4 (the speculative sacrifice 5 P-B3 is again available), Kt-KB3; 6 KKt-K2, P-KKt3; 7 O-O, B-Kt2; 8 Kt-Kt3, O-O, 9 Q-K2 ±.

(j) A simple alternative is 5 Q-Q4, Kt-Kt3; 6 Q-R4ch, B-Q2; 7 Q-Kt3 ±.

(k) Milner-Barry—Mieses, Margate, 1935.

## 1 P-K4, Kt-QB3

	6	7	8	9	10
2 (P-Q4).....				Kt-QB3.....	Kt-KB3
(P-Q4).....	P-K4.....	P-Q3	P-K3 (h)	P-K3 (k)	
3 (Kt-QB3)	P × P (c)	Kt-KB3 (f)	P-Q4	P-Q4	
P-K3	Kt × P	B-Kt5	B-Kt5	P-Q4	
4 Kt-B3 (a)	P-KB4 (d)	B-QKt5	Kt-K2 (i)	P-K5	
B-Kt5	Kt-Kt3	P-QR3	P-Q4	P-QKt3	
5 P-K5	B-K3 ! (e)	B-R4	P-K5	P-B3	
B × Ktch	B-Kt5ch	P-QKt4	P-KR4	QKt-K2	
6 P × B	P-B3	B-Kt3	Kt-B4	B-Q3	
Kt-R4	B-R4	Kt-B3	P-KKt3	P-QR4	
7 P-QR4	Q-B3 !	P-B3	B-K3	Q-K2	
Kt-K2	P-Q3	P-K3	B × Ktch	Kt-B4	
8 B-Q3	Kt-Q2	Q-K2	P × B	P-KR4	
P-QKt3	Kt-B3	B-K2	Kt-R4	P-KR4	
9 Kt-Q2 !	P-KR3	O-O	B-Q3	Kt-Kt5	
P-QB4	O-O	O-O	Kt-K2	P-Kt3	
10 Q-Kt4	O-O-O ±	QKt-Q2	Kt-R3	Kt-Q2 !	
P-B5		B-R4	P-QB4	KKt-K2	
11 B-K2 ± (b)		P-QR4 ± (g)	B-KKt5 ± (j)	Kt-B1 + (l)	

(a) Weaker is 4 P-K5, KKt-K2; 5 Kt-B3, P-QKt3; 6 Kt-K2, B-R3 !; 7 P-B3, Q-Q2; 8 Kt-Kt3, B × B; 9 Kt × B, P-KR4; 10 B-Kt5, Kt-R4 ≠. Vajda-Nimzovitch, Kecskemet, 1927. Compare French Defense, p. 89, col. 55.

(b) 11... Kt-B4; 12 Kt-B3, P-KR3; 13 Q-R3, K-Q2; 14 P-Kt4. Becker-Nimzovitch, Breslau, 1925. Compare French Defense, p. 82, cols. 31-35.

(c) Stronger than 3 P-Q5, QKt-K2; 4 Kt-KB3, Kt-Kt3; 5 Kt-B3, Kt-B3; 6 B-Q3, B-B4; 7 Q-K2, O-O; 8 B-K3, P-Q3; 9 P-KR3 !, P-QR3; 10 P-KKt3, P-Kt4; 11 P-QR4, B × B; 12 Q × B, B-Q2 =. Altman-Kevitz, New York, 1946.

(d) White must watch his Pawn pushes. If 4 Kt-QB3, Kt-KB3; 5 P-B4, Kt-B3; 6 P-K5, Kt-KKt1; 7 B-B4, P-Q3; 8 Kt-B3, B-Kt5; 9 O-O, Q-Q2; 10 Q-K1, O-O-O; 11 Kt-KKt5, P × P ! ≠ because the Pawns were weak. Euwe-Breyer, Vienna, 1921.

(e) The column continuation is suggested by S. Bernstein. 5 Kt-QB3, Kt-KB3

transposes to note (d), while 5 Kt-KB3 ? is weak because of 5... B-B4; 6 B-B4, P-Q3; 7 Kt-Kt5, Kt-R3; 8 Kt-QB3, O-O; 9 Kt-R4, Q-B3 !; 10 Q-Q2 (forced, for if 10 Kt × B, Kt × P !; 11 Kt-Q3, Kt × Pch; or 10 Q-B3, B-Kt5; 11 Q-B1, B-Kt5ch; 12 P-B3, B-QR4 ≠), Q-Q5; 11 B-Kt3, B-QKt5 ≠. A. Steiner-Mikenas, Kemer, 1937.

(f) Another possibility is 3 P-Q5, Kt-Kt1; 4 Kt-K2, P-K4; 5 P × P e.p., B × P; 6 QKt-B3, Kt-QB3; 7 Kt-B4, Q-Q2; 8 B-K2, Kt-B3; 9 O-O, O-O-O; 10 Kt(B4)-Q5, B-K2; 11 P-QKt4, Kt-QKt1; 12 B-K3+. Koenig-Mieses, Bournemouth, 1939.

(g) Fine-Mikenas, Hastings, 1937-38.

(h) 2... P-K4 transposes to the Vienna Game and is best.

(i) Superior to 4 Kt-B3, P-Q3; 5 B-KB4, KKt-K2; 6 B-K2, B × Ktch; 7 P × B, O-O; 8 O-O, Kt-Kt3; 9 B-K3, Q-K2; 10 R-K1, B-Q2 =. Maroczy-Nimzovitch, San Remo, 1930.

Notes continued on p. 126

## PETROFF'S DEFENSE

THE PETROFF is an excellent method of avoiding the bind of the Ruy Lopez. Originated by the Russian master Petroff in the last century, it has withstood all the threats of theory and practise ever since. Today it is considered a thoroughly sound alternative to the routine lines. Its main champions have been the American masters Pillsbury, Marshall and Kashdan.

Black's central idea is to counter by an aggressive thrust against the White KP, in line with the well-known principle that if White's KP is captured or exchanged, his attack loses much of its force. Of course, this can only be achieved by Black at the cost of a disruption of development, and the entire theory of the opening is concerned with whether White can transform his better development into a positional advantage.

After the initial 1 P-K4, P-K4; 2 Kt-KB3, Kt-KB3 White has two main lines, 3 Kt × P and 3 P-Q4 (3 Kt-B3 transposes after 3... B-Kt5 to the Three Knights', after 3... Kt-B3 to the Four Knights').

(i) 3 Kt × P (cols. 1-11) is the most common continuation. After 3... P-Q3; 4 Kt-KB3, Kt × P; 5 P-Q4, P-Q4; 6 B-Q3 (all more or less forced except for the alternatives on White's 5th move, which will be considered later), Black has three choices: 6... B-Q3, 6... B-K2 and 6... B-KB4, all satisfactory.

(i) 6... B-Q3 (cols. 1-4) was Marshall's favorite line. His attack in col. 1 has been completely refuted, but the solid alternative in col. 2 is still entirely sufficient for equality.

(ii) 6... B-K2 (cols. 5-7) leads to some very tricky play, especially in the lines in col. 5 and in col. 7, where Maroczy's paradoxical move is essential, but Black can hold everything with best play, and in addition has numerous counter-chances.

(iii) 6... B-KB4 (col. 8) is a little-known alternative which is also playable.

Of the alternatives on White's 5th move 5 Q-K2 (cols. 10-11) is the most important. Here White bases his hopes for a better endgame on the extra tempo, but Black's game is so fundamentally sound that he can equalize with careful play.

(2) 3 P-Q4 (cols. 12-15) was recommended by Steinitz. Recent analysis indicates that 3... P × P (cols. 12-13) is sufficient for equality, but that 3... Kt × P (cols. 14-15) is in favor of White.

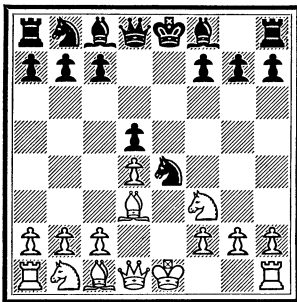


1 P-K4, P-K4; 2 Kt-KB3, Kt-KB3; 3 Kt x P, P-Q3 (a); 4 Kt-KB3, Kt x P; 5 P-Q4, P-Q4

	1	2	3	4	5
6 B-Q3*					
B-Q3.....					B-K2
7 O-O.....				P-B4	O-O
O-O.....				B-Kt5ch!	Kt-QB3!
8 P-B4.....			Kt-B3	QKt-Q2	P-B4
B-KKt5?.....	P-QB3!(f)		Kt x Kt	B x Ktch	Kt-QKt5!(n)
9 P x P!	R-K1(g)	P x Kt	B x B	P x P	
P-KB4	R-K1	B-KKt5(i)	O-O	Kt x B	
10 Kt-B3(b)	Kt-B3	R-Kt1	O-O	Q x Kt	
Kt-Q2	Kt x Kt	Kt-Q2(j)	B-Kt5	Q x P(o)	
11 P-KR3	R x Rch	P-KR3	B-B4	R-K1	
B-R4	Q x R	B-R4	Kt-QB3	B-KB4	
12 Kt x Kt	P x Kt	P-B4	R-K1	Kt-B3	
P x Kt	B-KKt5	P x P	Kt x QP(l)	Kt x Kt	
13 B x P	B-Q2	B x P	B x Kt	Q x Kt	
Kt-B3	Q-Q1	R-K1	P x B	P-QB3	
14 B-B5!	R-Kt1	B-K3	Q x Kt	R-K5(p)	
K-R1	P x P	Kt-Kt3	P x Kt	Q-Q2	
15 P-KKt4!(c)	B x P	B-Kt3	Q x Q	P-Q5!	
Kt x QP(d)	Q-B2	R-QB1	KR x Q	O-O!(q)	
16 B-K6!+(e)	P-KR3	R-K1	B x P	P x P	
	B-KB4 = (h)	Q-Q2 = (k)	R-Q7 = (m)	P x P =	

## \* DIAGRAM 51

cols. 1-8



[After 6 B-Q3]

Q3; 6 P-Q4+); 5 Kt-B6 dis ch++++

(b) Not 10 R-K1, B x Pch; 11 K x B, Kt x P; 12 Q-K2, Kt x B; 13 Q x Kt, B x Kt; 14 Q x B, Q-R5ch++. The Marshall trap.

(c) If 15 Q-Kt3, Kt x P!; 16 B-Kt5, B-K2; 17 B x B, Kt x B; 18 B-K4, B x Kt; 19 B x B, Kt-B4; 20 Q x P, R-QKt1; 21 Q x RP, Kt x P =. Bernstein-Marshall, San Sebastian, 1911. Or 15 B-K6, Kt-K5!; 16 P-KKt4, B-Kt3; 17 Kt-K5, Q-R5, 18 Q-K2, Q x RP =. Michell-Milner-Barry, Hastings, 1934.

(d) Or 15... B-B2; 16 B-K6!+.

(e) 16... B-B2; 17 Kt-Kt5!, B x B; 18 Kt x B, Q-R5; 19 Q-Kt3 with an easy win. Alexander-Mallison, Brighton, 1938.

Notes continued on p. 133

(a) Not 3... Kt x P?; 4 Q-K2, Kt-KB3?; (or 4... Q-K2; 5 Q x Kt, P-

1 P-K4, P-K4; 2 Kt-KB3, Kt-KB3; 3 Kt x P, P-Q3; 4 Kt-KB3, Kt x P

	6	7	8	9	10
5 (P-Q4).....				Kt-B3(j)...	Q-K2
(P-Q4)				Kt x Kt(k)	Q-K2
6 (B-Q3)				QP x Kt	P-Q3
(B-K2).....			B-KB4!	B-K2	Kt-KB3
7 (O-O)			O-O	B-Q3	B-Kt5(m)
(Kt-QB3)(a)			B-K2	Kt-B3	Q x Qch
8 R-K1			R-K1	B-K3	B x Q
B-KKt5			O-O!	B-Kt5	B-K2
9 P-B4.....	P-B3		P-B4	B-K4	Kt-B3
Kt-B3(b)	P-B4!		P-QB3	Q-Q2	P-KR3!
10 P x P!	P-B4!(d)		Q-Kt3	Q-Q2	B-R4(n)
Q x P!(c)	B-R5!!(e)		P x P!	O-O-O	B-Q2
11 Kt-B3	B x Kt(f)		B x P	O-O-O	O-O-O
B x Kt	QP x B		Kt-Q3	KR-K1	Kt-B3
12 Kt x Q	P-Q5		B-B1	Kt-Q4!	P-Q4
B x Q	Kt-K4!(g)		Kt-Q2	P-Q4!	O-O-O
13 Kt x B	Q-R4ch		B-KB4(i)	Kt x Kt	KR-K1(o)
Kt x Kt	P-Kt4		Kt-Kt3	Q x Kt	QR-K1
14 R x B	Q x Pch		Kt-B3	B x QP	B-B4
O-O-O =	P-B3+(h)		B-K3 =	Q-QR3 = (l)	Kt-Q1 = (p)

(a) Best. If 7... Kt-Q2; 8 P-B4, P-QB3; 9 Kt-B3, Kt x Kt; 10 P x Kt, O-O; 11 R-K1, B-B3; 12 B-R3!, R-K1; 13 R x Rch, Q x R; 14 Q-B2 ±. Teichmann-Marco, Cambridge Springs, 1904.

(b) Necessary, for if 9... B x Kt; 10 Q x B, Kt x QP; 11 Q-K3; Kt-KB4; 12 Q-B4, Kt(B4)-Q3; 13 P x P, Kt-QB4; 14 B-K2, O-O; 15 Q-K3 ±. Wolf-Bardeleben, Munich, 1900. 9... Kt x QP?; 10 B x Kt loses a piece.

(c) Better than 10... KKt x P; 11 Kt-B3, O-O; 12 B-K4! and Black's game is not entirely satisfactory, e.g., 12... Kt-B3; 13 P-Q5, Kt x B; 14 R x Kt, B x Kt; 15 Q x B, Kt-Kt5; 16 P-QR3, Kt-R3; 17 B-B4 with the better development, or 12... B-K3; 13 Q-B2, P-KR3; 14 P-QR3, B-B3; 15 B-K3 with pressure.

(d) On other moves Black gets a very strong attack: (i) 10 Q-Kt3, O-O; 11 B-KB4, (11 Q x KtP, R-B3!; 12 Q-

Kt3, R-Kt1; 13 Q-B2, R-KKt3 ±) B x Kt; 12 P x B, Kt-Kt4; 13 K-Kt2, Q-Q2!; 14 Q-B2, Kt-K3; 15 B-QB1, B-Q3! ±. Pillsbury-Lasker, St. Petersburg, 1895-96. (2) 10 QKt-Q2, O-O; 11 Q-Kt3 (or 11 Kt-B1, B-Q3 and if now 12 Kt-K3?, B x Pch!; 13 K x B, Kt x KBP+. Janowski-Schlechter, Carlsbad, 1902), K-R1!; 12 Q x KtP (if 12 Kt-B1, as in a match game Capablanca-Kostich, 12... B x Kt!; 13 P x B, Kt x KBP!; 14 K x Kt, B-R5ch; 15 Kt-Kt3, P-B5 ±), R-B3; 13 Q-Kt3, R-Kt3; 14 K-B1, R-Kt1; 15 Q-B2, B-Q3 ±. Showalter-Pillsbury, Cambridge Springs, 1904.

(e) Maroczy's move. If instead 10... O-O; 11 P x P, Q x P; 12 Kt-B3, Kt x Kt; 13 P x Kt, B x Kt; 14 Q x B, Q x Q; 15 P x Q, B-Q3; 16 R-Kt1 ±. Maroczy-Pillsbury, Monte Carlo, 1902.

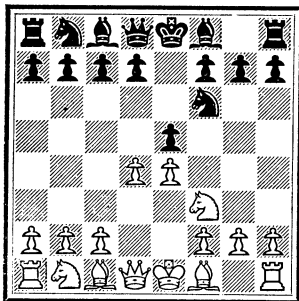
Notes continued on p. 133

1 P-K4, P-K4; 2 Kt-KB3, Kt-KB3

11	12	13	14	15
3 (Kt × P) . . . . . P-Q4 (c) *	P-Q4 (c) *			
(P-Q3)	P × P . . . . .		Kt × P (j)	
4 (Kt-KB3)	P-K5		B-Q3	
(Kt × P)	Kt-K5		P-Q4	
5 (Q-K2)	Q × P (d)		Kt × P	
(Q-K2)	P-Q4 !		B-Q3 (k)	
6 (P-Q3)	P × P e.p.		Kt-QB3 . . . . .	O-O
(Kt-KB3)	Kt × QP		Kt × Kt	O-O
7 (B-Kt5)	B-Kt5 . . . . .	Kt-B3	P × Kt	P-QB4
(Q × Qch)	Kt-B3 ! (e)	Kt-B3	Q-R5 ? (l)	P-QB3 (n)
8 (B × Q)	Q-B3 (f)	Q-KB4	O-O	P × P (o)
(B-K2)	P-B3	P-KKt3 ! (h)	O-O	P × P
9 (Kt-B3)	B-KB4	B-Q2	R-K1	Q-B2
B-Q2 (a)	Q-K2ch	B-Kt2	Kt-Q2	Kt-Q2 ! (p)
10 O-O	B-K2	O-O-O	P-Kt3	B × Kt
O-O	B-K3	O-O	Q-R6	P × B
11 KR-K1	QKt-Q2	B-Q3	B-B1	Q × P
Kt-B3	O-O-O	B-K3	Q-B4	Kt-B3
12 P-Q4 ± (b)	O-O	P-KR4	Kt-Kt4 ± (m)	Q-R4 ± (q)
	Q-B2 = (g)	Q-B3 ! = (i)		

## \* DIAGRAM 52

cols. 12-15



[After 3 P-Q4]

(a) 9...Kt-B3; 10 Kt-Kt5!, K-Q1; 11 O-O, P-QR3; 12 QKt-Q4, Kt × Kt; 13 Kt × Kt, P-B4; 14 Kt-B3, B-K3; 15 B-Q2, P-R3; 16 P-QKt3 ±. Kashdan-Mikenas, Folkestone, 1933. An-

other dubious line is 9...B-Kt5; 10 O-O-O, QKt-Q2; 11 P-KR3, B-R4; 12 P-KKt4, B-Kt3; 13 Kt-Q4, O-O-O; 14 P-B4, P-KR3; 15 B-R4, QR-K1; 16 B-B3, B-Q1; 17 B-Kt3 ±. Kan-Rabinovitch, Moscow, 1935.

(b) 12...KR-K1; 13 B-Kt5!, P-QR3; 14 B-QR4, P-Kt4; 15 B-Kt3, Kt-QR4; 16 R-K3, P-B3; 17 QR-K1. Capablanca-Kostich, match, 1919.

(c) The Steinitz Variation.

(d) Weaker is 5 Q-K2, B-Kt5ch; 6 K-Q1, P-Q4; 7 P × P e.p., P-KB4; 8 Kt-Kt5, O-O; 9 Q-B4ch, K-R1; 10 Q × B, Kt-QB3; 11 Q-R3, Kt × Pch; 12 K-K1, Kt × R ♣. Steinitz-Pillsbury, St. Petersburg, 1895-96.

(e) The most precise, but a playable alternative is 7...P-KB3; 8 B-KB4, Kt-B3; 9 Q-K3ch, Q-K2; 10 Q × Qch, B × Q; 11 Kt-B3, B-B4 =. Zubarev-Marshall, Moscow, 1925.

Notes continued on p. 134

Notes continued from p. 130

(f) Inferior is 8...B-K3; 9 Kt-B3!, Kt × Kt; 10 P × Kt, P × P (if 10...P-KR3; 11 P × P, B × P; 12 P-B4 ±); 11 B-K4, Q-B1; 12 R-Kt1, P-QB3; 13 Kt-Kt5, P-KR3; 14 Kt × B, Q × Kt; 15 R-K1 ±. Analysis by Krause.

(g) The main alternatives are no better: (1) 9 Kt-B3, Kt × Kt; 10 P × Kt, B-KKt5; 11 P-KR3, B-R4; 12 P × P, P × P; 13 Q-Kt3, B × Kt; 14 Q × KtP, Kt-Q2; 15 P × B, Kt-Kt3; 16 R-Kt1, Q-B3 =. Capablanca-Marshall, match, 1909. (2) 9 Q-Kt3, B-KKt5; 10 B × Kt, P × B; 11 Kt-Kt5, B-K2; 12 Kt × KP, Q × P; 13 Q × P, Q × Kt; 14 Q × R, B-Q3; 15 Q × RP, B-KR6!; 16 P × B, Q-K4!; 17 R-Q1, Q × Pch; 18 K-B1, Q × RPch; 19 K-K1, B-Kt5ch; 20 Kt-B3, B × Ktch; 21 P × B, Q × Pch; 22 B-Q2, R-K1ch; 23 K-B1, Q-R6ch with a draw. Duhressen-Batik, correspondence, 1928. (3) 9 Q-B2, Kt-R3!; 10 B × Kt, P × B; 11 Q × P, R-K1; 12 Q-R4, Q × Q; 13 Kt × Q, Kt-Kt5; 14 Kt-R3, R-K5; 15 Kt-B3, B-Kt5 ♣. Analysis by Krause.

(h) Burn-Marshall, Carlsbad, 1911.

(i) Also good is Kmoch's suggestion 9...P-QB4; 10 P-B4, QP × P; 11 B × P, P × P =.

Notes continued from p. 131

(f) Alternatives are no better. If 11 P-KKt3, Kt × QP; 12 B × Kt, QP × B; 13 Q × Kt, B × Kt; 14 Q × KtP, B-B3; 15 Q-R6, Q-K2 (Viloni), while if 11 R-B1, P × P; 12 B × P, Q-B3; 13 Q-K1, O-O-O; 14 Kt × B, Q × Kt; 15 P-B3, Q × Q; 16 R × Q, Kt × P; 17 P × B, Kt-QB7; 18 R-B1, Kt × R; 19 Kt-R3, Kt-Q7!; 20 B × Kt, R × B; 21 R × Kt, P × P = (Krause).

(g) 12...O-O; 13 P × Kt, P × Kt leads to equality. Tarrasch-Maroczy, Monte-Carlo, 1902.

(h) 15 P × P, Kt × Ktch; 16 P × Kt, B × Pch!; 17 K × B, Q-R5ch; 18 K-B1, O-O! with a powerful attack. Analysis by Viloni.

(i) Tarrasch-Walbrodt, match, 1894.

(j) Or 10...P-QKt3; 11 P-B4, P-QB3; 12 R-K1, Kt-Q2 =. Yates-Marshall, London, 1927.

(k) 17 P-B4, B-QKt5. Leonhardt-Marshall, Carlsbad, 1911.

(l) If 12...B × Kt; 13 Q × B, Kt × QP; 14 Q-K3, Kt-KB4; 15 Q-R3+. Tarrasch.

(m) Tarrasch-Marshall, St. Petersburg, 1914.

(n) 8...B-KKt5; 9 R-K1 transposes to col. 6. Inferior are 8...B-K3; 9 R-K1, P-B4; 10 Kt-B3, Kt × Kt; 11 P × Kt, P × P; 12 R × B+ (Steinitz!) and 8...Kt-B3; 9 P-B5!, O-O; 10 Kt-B3, B-Kt5; 11 B-K3, Q-Q2; 12 P-QR3, QR-Q1; 13 P-QKt4 ± (Steinitz).

(o) Not 10...Kt-B3; 11 Q-Kt5ch!, B-Q2; 12 Q-Kt3 ±.

(p) 14 B-Q2?, P-KR3? (14...B-K3!; 15 R-K5, Q-B5; 16 Q-K3, Q-B7! =); 15 R-K5, Q-Q2; 16 QR-K1, B-K3 (Yates-Kashdan, Hastings, 1931-32) and now 17 P-Q5 wins for White: 17...P × P; 18 R × B, P × R; 19 Q × P++ (Sharp).

(q) If 15...P × P; 16 R × Bch!, Q × R; 17 Q × P+.

(j) If 5 P-B4, B-K2; 6 Kt-B3, Kt × Kt; 7 QP × Kt, Kt-B3; 8 B-Q3, Kt-K4; 9 Kt × Kt, P × Kt; 10 Q-B2, B-Kt4 =. Maroczy-Marshall, San Sebastian, 1911.

(k) Weak is 5...P-Q4; 6 Q-K2, B-K2; 7 Kt × Kt, P × Kt; 8 Q × P, O-O; 9 B-B4+. Leonhardt-Schlechter, Barmen, 1905.

(l) Nimzovitch-Marshall, San Sebastian, 1911.

(m) Black must exchange Queens. If 7...B-K3?; 8 Kt-B3, QKt-Q2; 9 O-O-O, P-KR3; 10 B-R4, P-KKt4; 11 B-Kt3, Kt-R4; 12 P-Q4, Kt × B; 13 RP × Kt ±. Lasker-Marshall, St. Petersburg, 1914.

## Additional notes continued from p. 131

(n) If 10 B—K3 the most precise way to equalize is 10... B—K3; 11 P—KR3 (11 O—O—O, Kt—Kt5), Kt—B3; 12 O—O—O, O—O—O; 13 P—Q4, Kt—QKt5!; 14 P—R3, QKt—Q4; 15 Kt × Kt, Kt × Kt; 16 B—Q2, B—B3; 17 P—B4, Kt—K2. But not here 10... B—Q2; 11 P—KR3,

Kt—B3; 12 O—O—O, O—O—O; 13 P—Q4, P—Q4; 14 Kt—K5, B—K1; 15 P—R3 ±. Eliskases—Alexander, Hastings, 1933-34.

(o) 13 B—B4, KR—B1; 14 ER—K1, B—Kt5; 15 R—K3, P—Q4 =.

(p) Fine—Kashdan, New York, 1934.

## Notes continued from p. 132

(f) If 8 Q—K3ch, B—K2; 9 B × B, Q × B =. Kostich—Kashdan, Bled, 1931.

(g) Bogoljubow, Iljin—Zhenevsky and Rabinovitch—Loevenfisch, Romanovsky and Kubbel, Leningrad, 1924.

(h) Better than 8... B—B4; 9 B—Kt5!, B—K2; 10 Kt—Q4, B—Q2; 11 B × Kt, B × B; 12 Kt × B ±. Tchigorin—Pillsbury, St. Petersburg, 1895-96.

(i) 13 Q—R2, Kt—K4!. Boleslavsky—Alatortsev, Moscow, 1945.

(j) 3... P—Q3 transposes to Philidor's Defense. Weak is 3... P—Q4; 4 P × QP, P × P; 5 B—Kt5ch, P—B3; 6 P × P, P × P; 7 B—QB4, Q—K2ch; 8 B—K2, P—B4; 9 P—B3, P × P; 10 Kt × P+.

(k) Better than 5... B—K2; 6 O—O, O—O; 7 P—QB4!, B—K3 (the good replies of cols. 5-7 are no longer available); 8 Kt—QB3, Kt—KB3; 9 P—B5 ±. Alekhine—Lewitzky, St. Petersburg, 1913.

(l) This short week-end turns out poorly. Best is 7... O—O; 8 O—O, Kt—Q2; 9 P—KB4, P—QB4 with approximate equality.

(m) Smyslov—Lilienthal, Leningrad—Moscow, 1941.

(n) On 7... Kt—QB3 White has two continuations: (1) the speculative 8 P—B4

(not 8 P × P?, Kt × QP; 9 B × Kt, B × Kt; 10 P—B4, B—B3 ≠. Alekhine—Alexander, Hastings, 1933-34), B × Kt! (weaker is 8... Kt × P; 9 B × Kt, B × Kt; 10 B × Pch, K × B; 11 P × B, P—QB4; 12 Q—R5ch, K—Kt1; 13 Kt—B3 ±. Steiner—Rejfir, Maribor, 1934); 9 BP × B, Kt × QP; 10 Kt—B3, Kt × Kt; 11 P × P, P × P; 12 B × P, Kt—K3; 13 Q—R5, Q—K2; 14 B—K3 with a strong attack. Steiner—Ramsey, New South Wales Championship, 1941. (2) the solid 8 Kt × Kt, P × Kt; 9 P—B5, B—K2; 10 Kt—Q2 with a secure endgame advantage.

(o) Also good is 8 Kt—QB3, Kt—Q2! (8... Kt × Kt; 9 P × Kt, B × Kt; 10 P × B, P × P; 11 B × P, Q × Q; 12 R × Q gives White the better endgame); 9 Kt × QKt, B × Kt; 10 P × P, Kt × Kt; 11 P × Kt, P × P; 12 Q—R5, P—B4; 13 Q—B3, B—K3; 14 R—K1 ±. Keemink—Olland, correspondence, 1932.

(p) After 9... Kt—KB3; 10 B—KKt5 Black's development is too backward.

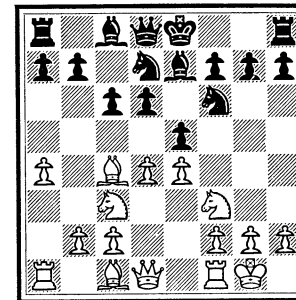
(q) 12... R—K1; (Shamaev—Baranov, correspondence, 1935-36); 13 B—Kt5!, B × Kt; 14 P × B, R × P; 15 Kt—B3, Q—Kt3; 16 QR—Q1 and Black cannot develop properly.

## PHILIDOR'S DEFENSE

PHILIDOR'S DEFENSE is adopted occasionally today to avoid the better-known variations of other openings. But Black's game, while sometimes solid, is always cramped, and for that reason the defense is seldom seen. Alekhine used to play it once in a while.

DIAGRAM 53

Page 136, cols. 1-4



[After 7 P—QR4]

The crucial variations are shown in cols. 1-4. Here Black holds on to the strong point at K4 at the cost of backward development. With the precautionary moves P—QR4 and P—KR3 White however is assured of a lasting bind. The aggressive continuation in col. 3 is of some interest because it is Black's most logical counter-attack; it is more promising for Black than the usual lines.

Unless he has some specifically good continuation in mind (see col. 4) White should avoid the exchange of Pawns in the center; it frees Black's game too much.



## Notes continued from p. 136

(l) Or 13...P-B4; 14 P-K5, Q × P; 15 R-K1++.

(m) Nimzovitch—Marco, Gothenburg, 1929.

(n) A. Steiner—Brinckmann, Budapest, 1929.

## Notes continued from p. 137

(e) Very interesting is Sokolsky's new move 5 QKt-Q2!. If then 5...Kt × Kt; 6 B × Kt, P × P; 7 B-QB4!, B-K2 (or 7...P-KB3; 8 Kt × P!, P × Kt; 9 Q-R5ch, P-Kt3; 10 Q × KPch, Q-K2; 11 B-B3+); 8 Kt × P (the sacrifice B × Pch is unsound), O-O; 9 Q-R5 ± (Sokolsky). Best for Black after 5 QKt-Q2 is 5...Kt × Kt; 6 B × Kt, B-K2; 7 B-QB4, O-O; 8 Q-K2, B-Kt5; 9 O-O, Kt-B3; 10 B-B3, Q-B1 and Black can defend himself.

(f) The alternative 6 B-KKt5 is adequately met by 6...Q-Q2; 7 Kt-B3, P-QB3; 8 Q-Q2, P × P! (if 9 Q-K3, P-B3; 10 R-Q1, Q-K3+). Inferior defenses to 6 B-KKt5 are: (1) 6...B-K2; 7 P × P, Q × P; 8 Kt-B3, O-O; 9 O-O-O, B-K3; 10 Q × Q, B × Q; 11 Kt-Kt5, Kt-K5; 12 Kt × B ±. L. Steiner—von Holzhausen, Berlin, 1928. (2) 6...P-KB3; 7 P × BP, P × P; 8 B-K3, B-K3; 9 Q-R5ch, B-B2; 10 Q-R4, QKt-Q2; 11 Kt-B3, P-B3; 12 O-O-O+. Maroczy—Bogoljubow, Bled, 1931.

(g) 12...Q-B3 (L. Steiner—Alekhine, Podebrady, 1936); 13 B-Kt2!.

(h) If 4...P-Q4; 5 P × P, Q × P; 6 Q-K2ch, B-K2; 7 Kt-Kt5, Kt-QR3; 8 QKt-B3, Q-KB4; 9 B-B4!, Q × B; 10 Kt-Q5, Q-Kt4; 11 Kt(Kt5) × Pch, Kt × Kt; 12 Kt × Ktch, K-B1; 13 Kt × R, Kt-B3; 14 P-QB3! and White's Kt can get out.

(i) If now 5...P-Q4; 6 P × P, Kt × P; 7 Kt × Kt, Q × Kt; 8 Q-K2ch, B-K2; 9 Kt-Kt5, Kt-R3; 10 B-B4, Q-QB4; 11 Q-B4 ±.

(j) Another good continuation is 6 B-KB4, O-O; 7 Q-Q2, R-K1; 8 O-O-O, B-B1; 9 P-B3, QKt-Q2; 10 P-

KKt4 ±. Kashdan—Koltanowski, London, 1932.

(k) Here 6...P-Q4 is met by 7 P-K5, Kt-K5; 8 Kt × Kt, P × Kt; 9 B-K3, B-QB4; 10 P-K6!, P × P; 11 B-Kt5ch ±. Berger.

(l) Leonhardt—Nimzovitch, San Sebastian, 1912.

(m) Or 4...Kt-KB3; 5 B-KKt5, B-K2; 6 Kt-B3, O-O; 7 O-O-O, Kt-B3; 8 Q-Q2, R-K1 (4th match game Llorens—Koltanowski, 1935); 9 B-QB4 ±.

(n) Alekhine—Aritch, quoted in *Magyar Sakkvilag*, 1936.

(o) Both 4 B-QB4, BP × P; 5 Kt × P!, P-Q4; 6 Q-R5ch, P-Kt3; 7 Kt × P, Kt-KB3; 8 Q-K5ch, B-K2; 9 Kt × R, P × B; 10 Kt-B3, Kt-B3; 11 Q-KKt5, B-K3; 12 O-O, Q-Q2; 13 P-Q5! (Steinitz) and 4 Kt-B3, BP × P; 5 QKt × P, P-Q4; 6 Kt × P, P × Kt; 7 Q-R5ch, P-Kt3; 8 Kt × P, Kt-KB3; 9 Q-K5ch, K-B2; 10 B-B4ch!, K-Kt2!; 11 Kt-R4!, B-Q3; 12 Q-Kt5ch, K-B1; 13 Q-R6ch, K-K1; 14 Kt-Kt6, B-B1; 15 Q-R4 (Steinitz) also win for White.

(p) If 8...Kt-B4; 9 Kt-KKt5, Q-B3; 10 B-Q3, P-KR3; 11 Q-B3!, P-KKt3; 12 P-KKt4+ for if 12...P × Kt; 13 P × Kt, B × P; 14 B × P!, Q-B2; 15 P × B!!, Q × Q; 16 B × Pch and mates next (Sosin).

(q) Or 11...Q-Q3; 12 R-Q1, Q × P; 13 B-QB4!/++. Steinitz—Reiner.

(r) 12...Q-Kt3 (other moves also lose); 13 O-O-O, B-Q2; 14 Q-B4, Kt-B2; 15 B-B4, Kt × B; 16 Q × Kt, B × Kt; 17 P × B, R-Kt2, 18 Q-B6 and wins. Analysis by Sosin.

## PONZIANI'S OPENING

IN THIS old opening White sets out to build up a strong Pawn center. But the lack of a direct threat on his third move gives Black a chance to counter in the center, which crosses White's plan. As a result the opening is rare in modern tournaments.

After the initial moves 1 P-K4, P-K4; 2 Kt-KB3, Kt-QB3; 3 P-B3, Black has four main replies: 3...P-Q4, 3...Kt-B3, 3...P-B4 and 3...KKt-K2.

(1) 3...P-Q4 (cols. 1-5) is Black's normal reaction to a lack of threat in the center. In reply however White can play 4 Q-R4, when only the sacrificial variation with 4...Kt-B3 is sufficient for the defender.

(2) 3...Kt-B3 (cols. 6-8) is another natural solid continuation which gives Black easy equality.

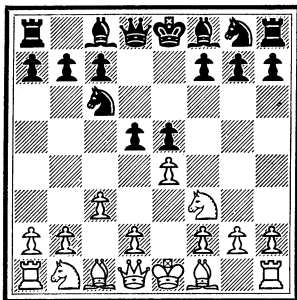
(3) 3...P-B4 (col. 9) is refuted by 4 P-Q4.

(4) 3...KKt-K2 (col. 10), Kmoch's suggestion, is another good alternative for Black.

1 P-K4, P-K4; 2 Kt-KB3, Kt-QB3; 3 P-B3, P-Q4\*

	1	2	3	4	5
4	Q-R4 Kt-B3 (a)	P-B3 (g)	B-Q2 (l)	P × P	B-Kt5 P × P
5	Kt × P B-Q3	B-Kt5 Kt-K2 (h)	P × P Kt-Q5	Kt × P Q-Q4	Kt × P Q-Q4
6	Kt × Kt (b) P × Kt	P × P Q × P	Q-Q1 Kt × Ktch	Kt × Kt P × Kt	Q-R4 Kt-K2
7	P-Q3 (c) O-O	P-Q4 B-Q2 ! (i)	Q × Kt P-KB4	B-B4 Q-Q2 (o)	P-KB4 ! B-Q2 !
8	B-Kt5 (d) P-KR3	B-K3 P × P	P-Q4 P-K5	O-O Kt-B3 (p)	Kt × B K × Kt
9	B × Kt Q × B	P × P Kt-K4	Q-Kt3 (m) Kt-B3	P-Q3 P × P	B-B4 Q-KB4
10	B-K2 (e) Q-Kt4	Kt-B3 Kt × Ktch	B-K2 ! B-Q3 (n)	B × P B-Kt2	O-O R-Q1 !
11	Kt-Q2 Q × P	P × Kt Q-KB4	B-KB4 B × B	B-QR6 B × B	P-Q4 P × P e.p.
12	B-B3 Q-R6	O-O-O P-QR3 (j)	Q × B O-O	Q × B B-K2	B × QP Q-B4ch
13	O-O-O B-B5 † (f)	P-Q5 ! ± (k)	P-B4+	B-K3 ±	K-R1 K-B1 =

\* DIAGRAM 55  
cols. 1-5



[After 3... P-Q4]

- (a) Leonhardt's Defense.
- (b) Weak is 6 P × P, B × Kt; 7 P × Kt, O-O; 8 B-K2, R-K1; 9 P-Q4, B-Q3; 10 B-KKt5, P × P; 11 Kt-Q2, Q-K2; 12 Q-B4, P-QR4; 13 Q-Q3, B-

KB4 †. Rabinovitch—Alekhine, Moscow, 1915.

(c) Sufficient for equality is 7 P-Q4, P × P; 8 B-QR6, B-Q2; 9 B-Kt7, P-B4; 10 B-B6, P × P; 11 B × Bch, Q × B; 12 Q × QP =. Tartakower.

(d) Better but untried is 8 B-K2, R-K1 (not 8... Kt-Kt5 ?; 8 B × Kt, B × B; 9 P-K5, Q-R5, 10 P-KR3+); 9 B-Kt5, P-KR3; 10 B × Kt, Q × B; 11 Q-B2.

(e) Or 10 Kt-Q2, R-Kt1; 11 Q-B2, Q-Kt3; 12 O-O-O, B-K3 with a very strong attack.

(f) Berne—Paris, correspondence, 1921.

(g) Steinitz's Defense.

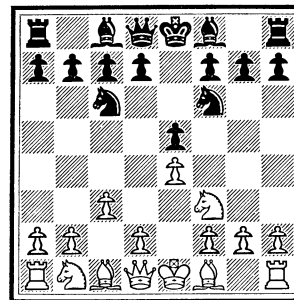
(h) Weak is 5... P × P ?; 6 B × Ktch, P × B; 7 Q × Pch, B-Q2; 8 Q × KP, Kt-K2; 9 P-Q4, B-B3; 10 Q-K2, P-K5; 11 KKt-Q2, Q-Q4; 12 O-O !, O-O-O !; 13 R-K1, P-B4; 14 P-B3 !+. Tchigorin—Steinitz, Vienna, 1898.

Notes continued on p. 142

1 P-K4, P-K4; 2 Kt-KB3, Kt-QB3; 3 P-B3

	6	7	8	9	10
3	Kt-B3*			P-B4	KKt-K2 (m)
4	P-Q4 Kt × KP	P-Q4	P-Q3 (h)	P-Q4 ! P-Q3 (j)	P-Q4 P × P
5	P-Q5 Kt-Ktr (a)	KP × P (e) Q × P	B-K3 (i) B-K2	KP × P (k) B × P (l)	B-QB4 P-Q4
6	B-Q3 ! (b) Kt-B4 (c)	B-K2 P-K5 (f)	P-Q5 Kt-QKtr	B-QKt5 P × P	KP × P Kt × P
7	Kt × P Kt × Bch	KKt-Q2 P-K6	QKt-Q2 O-O	Kt × P B-Q2	O-O B-K2
8	Kt × Kt P-Q3	P × P Q × KtP	P-KR3 Kt × KP	B × Kt P × B	Kt × P Kt × Kt
9	O-O B-K2	B-B3 Q-R6	Kt × Kt P-KB4	O-O Kt-B3	P × Kt B-K3 = (n)
10	Q-B3 O-O	Q-K2 Kt-KKt5	B-Q3 P × Kt	R-K1ch B-K2	
11	Kt-Q2 Kt-Q2	Kt-K4 Q-R5ch	B × KP Kt-Q2	Q-K2 P-Q4	
12	R-K1 ± (d)	K-Q1 B-Q2 ‡ (g)	O-O Kt-B3 =	Kt-B3+	

\* DIAGRAM 56  
cols. 6-8



[After 3... Kt-B3]

(a) 5... Kt-K2 is refuted by 6 Kt × P, Kt-Kt3; 7 Kt × Kt, RP × Kt; 8 B-Q3, Kt-B3; 9 Q-B3, P-Q3; 10 P-KR3, Q-K2ch; 11 B-K3, B-Q2; 12 Kt-Q2, O-O-O; 13 O-O-O ±. With 5... B-B4 Black can give up a piece for a speculative attack: 6 P × Kt, B × Pch (not

6... Kt × KBP; 7 Q-Q5+—Sir G. A. Thomas); 7 K-K2, KtP × P; 8 Q-R4, P-KB4; 9 QKt-Q2, O-O; 10 Kt × Kt, P × Kt; 11 Q × KP, B-Kt3; 12 B-Kt5, Q-K1; 13 R-K1, P-Q3. If here 13... P-Q4; 14 Q × KP, Q-Kt3; 15 K-Q2, B-KB4; 16 B-K2, P-KR3; 17 B-K7, R-B2; 18 Kt-R4+.

(b) Weak is 6 Kt × P, B-B4; 7 Q-Kt4, O-O; 8 Q × Kt, P-Q3; 9 B-Q3, P-B4; 10 Q-QB4, P-QKt4; 11 Q × P, Q-K2; 12 O-O, P × Kt; 13 B-QB4, K-R1; 14 B-K3, B-Q3 †. Spiess—Hauser, correspondence, 1912.

(c) If 6... Kt-KB3; 7 Kt × P, B-B4; 8 O-O, O-O; 9 B-KKt5 ±.

(d) Cohn—Schlechter, London, 1899.

(e) Or 5 B-QKt5, KP × P; 6 Kt × P, B-Q2; 7 P × P, Kt × Kt; 8 B × Bch, Q × B; 9 Q × Kt, Q × P; 10 Q-K3ch, B-K2; 11 O-O, Q-Q2; 12 Q-B3, O-O-O; 13 B-K3, Q-Kt5 =. Tartakow—Bogoljubow, Berlin, 1928.

Notes continued on p. 142

## Notes continued from p. 140

(i) If 7...P-K5; 8 P-B4, Q-Q1; 9 KKt-Q2, Q×P; 10 Kt-Kt3, Q-Q3; 11 B-K3+. Von Popiel—Burn, Cologne, 1898.

(j) 12...P-B3; 13 B-Q3, Q×P; 14 KR-K1, K-Q1; 15 B-K4, Q-R4 (Hammond—Evill, correspondence, 1915); 16 Q-Kt3+.

(k) 13...O-O; 14 B×Bch, R×B; 15 P-Q6, P×P; 16 P-Kt4, K-Kt1; 17 K-Kt2, Kt-B1; 18 P-Kt5 with a winning attack. Hammond—Baker, correspondence, 1914. 14...Q×B; 15 Q-Q4, P-QKt3; 16 P-Q6! (or 16 Q-QB4) is better but still inadequate.

## Notes continued from p. 141

(f) 6...P×P; 7 P×P transposes to the Danish Gambit (p. 33, cols. 16-17).

(g) Tartakower—Bogoljubow, London, 1927.

(h) Weak is 4...P×P?; 5 P-K5, Kt-Q4; 6 B-QKt5 (or 6 P×P, P-Q3; 7 B-QKt5 ±), P-QR3; 7 B-R4, B-K2; 8 Kt×P, Kt×Kt; 9 Q×Kt, Kt-Kt3; 10 B-B2, P-QB4; 11 Q-K4, P-Q4; 12 P×P e.p., Q×P; 13 O-O, P-B4; 14 Q-K2 ±. Tchigorin—Gunsberg, match, 1890.

(i) 5 B-QKt5 can transpose to a variation of the Ruy Lopez.

(j) If 4...BP×P; 5 Kt×P, Q-B3; 6 P-KB4, P-Q3; 7 Kt×Kt, P×Kt;

(l) Caro's Defense.

(m) Weaker is 9 Q-Q1, B-Q3; 10 P-QB4, P-QKt3; 11 P-QR3, P-QR4.

(n) If 10...Kt×P; 11 B-R5ch, P-Kt3; 12 B×Pch+++.

(o) Or 7...Q-Q3; 8 P-Q3, P×P; 9 O-O, B-K2; 10 B×P, B-Q2; 11 R-Q1, Kt-B3; 12 Kt-R3, Kt-Kt5 (Tchigorin—Bird, New York, 1889); 13 B-KB4 ±.

(p) If 8...B-Q3; 9 R-K1 (not 9 B-Kt5?, Kt-K2; 10 Q×KP, P-KB4; 11 Q-B3, P×B; 12 Q×R, P-B3+. Mlotkowski), Kt-B3; 10 P-Q3, O-O; 11 P×P+.

8 P-Q5 ±.

(k) Best. 5 B-QKt5, BP×P; 6 Kt×P, P×Kt; 7 Q-R5ch, K-K2 only draws at best (compare Siesta Variation of the Ruy Lopez, p. 378, col. 129). 5 QP×P is met by ...BP×P and 5 P-Q5 by ...P×P.

(l) If 5...P-K5; 6 P-Q5!, QKt-K2; 7 Kt-Q4 ±. And if 5...P×P; 6 P×P, B×P; 7 Q-Kt3+.

(m) Weak is 3...B-B4; 4 P-QKt4, B-Kt3; 5 P-Kt5, Kt-R4; 6 Kt×P, Q-K2; 7 P-Q4, P-Q3; 8 B-R3, Q-R5; 9 Kt-B3, Q×KPch; 10 B-K2+.

(n) Analysis by Kmoch.

## QUEEN'S GAMBIT

THE QUEEN'S GAMBIT with its sister the Queen's Pawn Game accounts for almost half of the openings in every modern tournament. All the leading masters use it routinely and some, like Reshevsky, rarely play anything else. The problem of an entirely adequate defense to it has been a major concern of theoreticians for more than fifty years.

After 1 P-Q4, P-Q4; 2 P-QB4 Black has at least nine different replies which have been seen at one time or another, but only three are played with any frequency: 2...P×P (the Gambit Accepted), 2...P-K3 (the Orthodox Defense, and allied variations), and 2...P-QB3 (the Slav Defense). Other moves are fairly easily refuted.

## Queen's Gambit Accepted

1 P-Q4, P-Q4; 2 P-QB4, P×P

Since Black usually takes the gambit Pawn sooner or later, many masters recommend that it be taken immediately. The advantages of the Q. G. A. are that it avoids the cramping situations which are so often Black's lot in the Q. G. D. and develops the QB, the eternal "problem child" in the Q. G. D., early. But it suffers from the disadvantage that White can play P-K4 soon and thus achieve his strategic goal.

The famous fifth game of the Euwe—Alekhine match in 1937 showed that aggressive play by White can give him an extremely dangerous attack, and the variation seen there is currently the one most commonly adopted. A number of improvements have been found for White; most important is the discovery (a similar discovery was made in the Slav Defense) that White may on occasion advantageously sacrifice the KP for the sake of an attack (see especially Stahlberg's brilliant innovation in col. 2). Recent practice has in fact strengthened White's game to such an extent that the variations in cols. 2-5, which Black can only avoid by choosing the simplifying ...BP×QP (cols. 12-13) early, are no longer playable for Black in their present form. Excellent examples of the crushing attack which White can build up are seen in cols. 4, 5 and col. 2 note (e). The older lines in cols. 6-11 are too slow to offer White any advantage.

The alternative for Black in cols. 12-13 (...BP×QP early) is of major theoretical importance because that type of position can come in so many

different openings. It was one of Steinitz's favorites, who liked to camp at Q4 for a few months, and has been played sporadically ever since. What little experience there is with the line is slightly in White's favor, but there has been too little to form a definite opinion on the subject.

White can avoid the more routine lines with an early Q—R4ch (cols. 14-16 and col. 20) but can do no better with it than a transposition to the Catalan System (see the Réti Opening) which has by this time been well analyzed and shown to be satisfactory for Black. But, as in the Catalan System, inferior replies by Black can be punished drastically.

Of the remaining lines, in cols. 17-19, it is worthy of note that Alekhine's old idea in col. 17 has been demolished by Euwe's improvement on White's sixth move.

#### *Orthodox Defense and Allied Variations*

1 P—Q4, P—Q4; 2 P—QB4, P—K3

These variations, which have been a dominant theme in all major tournaments for half a century, have been more exhaustively analyzed than any other opening. Recent experience has clarified a number of theoretical problems but has not changed the old view that Black can usually squirm out of the slightly uncomfortable positions he gets himself into.

The arrangement is best understood in the light of a main variation and its branches.

1 P—Q4            P—Q4  
2 P—QB4         P—K3  
3 Kt—QB3

3 Kt—KB3 leads to the Vienna Variation, Duras Variation and allied lines (cols. 111-120).

Kt—KB3

3... P—QB4 is Tarrasch's Defense (cols. 91-105).  
3... P—QR3 and alternatives are treated in col. 106.

4 B—Kt5

4 Kt—B3 allows Black the alternatives of 4... P—B4, 4... B—Kt5 and 4... QKt—Q2 (cols. 76-90).

4 P—KKt3 transposes to the Catalan System.

4 B—B4 is handled in col. 75.

4...                QKt—Q2

4... B—K2 leads to Lasker's Defense (cols. 61-69), or Tartakower's Variation and related lines (cols. 70-74).

5 P—K3

5 P × P (it may be played earlier or later) is the Exchange Variation (cols. 51-60).

5...                B—K2

5... B—Kt5 is the Manhattan Variation, cols. 46-50.

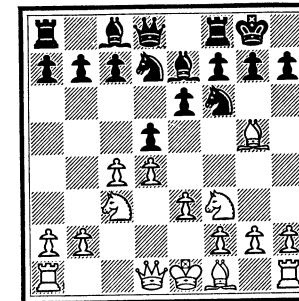
5... P—B3 leads to the Cambridge Springs Defense and related lines (cols. 31-45).

6 Kt—B3            O—O

A few unusual alternatives on Black's 6th move are seen in cols. 28-30.

#### DIAGRAM 57

Page 168, cols. 16-20



[After 6... O—O]

#### *Orthodox Defense: Main Variation.*

This arises after Black's sixth move above; it has probably occurred more often in tournament play than any other comparable position.

On his seventh move White now has the choice of 7 R—B1, 7 Q—B2 and 7 B—Q3; other moves are inconsequential.

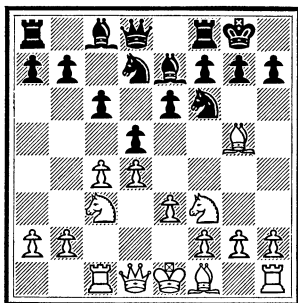
(1) 7 R—B1 (cols. 1-18) is the traditional line which was the backbone of the Alekhine—Capablanca match in 1927. The strength of the move lies in the fact that Black is unable to reply ... P—QB4 (col. 17, note (d)). As a result White invariably gets a freer game, but cannot prevent Black from liberating himself. After the further 7... P—B3; (7... P—QKt3 is



weak; 7...P—QR<sub>3</sub> open to question—cols. 16–18) White has four main replies: 8 B—Q<sub>3</sub>, 8 Q—B<sub>2</sub>, 8 P—QR<sub>3</sub> and 8 P × P.

DIAGRAM 58

Page 166, cols. 11–15

[After 7...P—B<sub>3</sub>]

(i) 8 B—Q<sub>3</sub> (cols. 1–10) is met by Capablanca's freeing maneuver of 8...P × P and 9...Kt—Q<sub>4</sub> (cols. 1–7), which proved satisfactory in the Alekhine—Capablanca match and has never been refuted, despite a vast amount of analysis. Black eventually equalizes. The alternative to the Capablanca maneuver in cols. 8–10 is inadequate.

(ii) 8 Q—B<sub>2</sub> (cols. 11–14) has largely been abandoned because of the strength of the reply 8...Kt—K<sub>5</sub> (col. 11). Other moves are also good enough for Black.

(iii) 8 P—QR<sub>3</sub> (col. 15) is stronger than was once thought; but the advantage which White gets with Bogoljubow's line is microscopic.

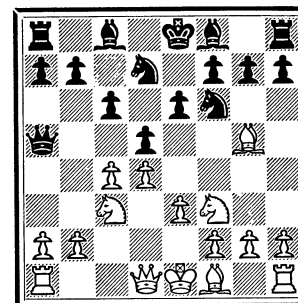
(iv) 8 P × P (the Exchange Variation) is a good alternative (see cols. 51–60) but if White plans to play it he is better advised to do so earlier, since the Rook no longer serves a useful function at QB<sub>1</sub>.

(2) 7 Q—B<sub>2</sub> (cols. 19–25) is occasionally adopted by some of the prominent masters, especially Flohr, but most stay away from it because of the strength of the reply 7...P—QB<sub>4</sub> (cols. 21–25).

(3) 7 B—Q<sub>3</sub> (cols. 26–27) is best met by 7...P × P with easy equality (col. 26); 7...P—B<sub>4</sub> (col. 27) is, surprisingly, apt to be painful.

DIAGRAM 59

Pages 173–174, cols. 31–40

[After 6...Q—R<sub>4</sub>]*Cambridge Springs Defense*

This comes out of the Orthodox when Black plays 5...P—B<sub>3</sub>; 6 Kt—B<sub>3</sub>, Q—R<sub>4</sub>. It is entirely adequate for Black, but can be avoided. The two main lines for White are the older 7 Kt—Q<sub>2</sub>, tried in the Alekhine—Capablanca match and in both Alekhine—Bogoljubow matches (1929 and 1934) but Black can equalize easily with either 7...B—Kt<sub>5</sub> (cols. 31–34) or 7...P × P (cols. 35–36). The newer 7 P × P, seen in the Alekhine—Euwe match in 1935, is more complicated, but 7...Kt × P leads to equality for Black.

To avoid the Cambridge Springs, White generally adopts the Exchange Variation. He may also choose one of the little known alternatives in cols. 43–45.

*Manhattan Variation*

This opening derives its name from the Manhattan Chess Club in New York, where it has been extensively analyzed. It was popular at the international tournament at New York in 1927 but analysis has demonstrated its theoretical unsoundness, and it has rarely been seen subsequently (cols. 46–50). The strongest line for White is that in col. 47, rather than the dubious complications in col. 46.

*Exchange Variation*

The exchange of Pawns in the center prevents Capablanca's liberating maneuver (...P × P and ...Kt—Q4) and fixes the Q-side Pawns. Its chief drawback is that it frees Black's game more than the regular variations. In the sequel White initiates the minority attack on the Q-side, while Black after exchanging a few pieces sets up a counter-attack on the K-side. But Black's Q-side is permanently weak, while the White K-side is basically sound. Consequently it is not surprising that recent practice has been overwhelmingly in favor of White in the past few years. The variation has long been a favorite with Reshevsky and Flohr, and is now regularly adopted by Keres, Botvinnik and others. It is currently Black's most difficult problem in the theory of the Orthodox Defense.

White should not exchange before Black's QKt has blocked the QB (see col. 75, note (o)). Black's best course is to recapture with the KP; recapture with the BP is weaker (col. 6o).

In the usual variations White may develop his KKt at K2 or at B3, and may castle on either the K-side or the Q-side. In the light of present-day theory his most effective course is to develop at K2 and castle Q-side (cols. 52–53), but this exposes him to a violent counter-attack which not everybody is willing to face. The line in col. 51, with which Alekhine broke the deadlock in his match against Capablanca, has never been refuted, and it is not clear why it has not been played since. Cols. 54–57 illustrate the lines where White plays his Kt to KB3 and castle K-side; this is the continuation seen most frequently today. These are also good for White, whose Q-side advance is extremely difficult to meet. An unexpectedly successful defense is seen in col. 57.

It is best for Black to adopt the simplifying lines in cols. 58–59 before he castles. This maneuver protects the K-side and frees the QB and is the only line which is theoretically completely sufficient for equality. Even if the minority attack does come later, it is deprived of much of its force (col. 58).

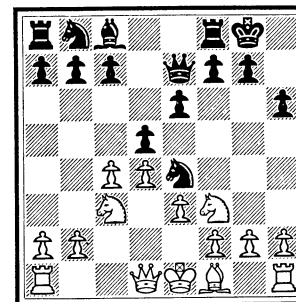
*Lasker's Defense*

The Lasker maneuver is the release of the pin with ...Kt—K5, after due preparation. It is Black's simplest method of achieving complete equality.

Black does best to precede it with ...P—KR3, since the retreat B—KB4 allows ...P—B4 and White therefore has nothing better than B—

## DIAGRAM 6o

Page 182, cols. 61–65



[After 8... Q × B]

R4. Black thus gains a full tempo and in addition does not have to worry about his KRP. In the main variations, after ...Kt—K5, White may play either P × P followed by an assault against the Black center (cols. 61–62, 66 and 69) or Q—B2 (or R—B1) followed by play on the QB file (cols. 63–65, 67–68). In the former case Black reaches a critical position on his 11th move (cols. 61–62) when Bernstein's 11...Q—Q3 equalizes, while the older 11...R—Q1 has been refuted. In the latter case (play on the QB file) Black gets a satisfactory game by fianchettoing his QB (cols. 63–64). It is not advisable for Black to play the Lasker Defense too early (cols. 66 and 69).

*Tartakower's Variation and Related Lines*

Tartakower's idea is the fianchetto of the QB; it differs from the ordinary fianchetto in that the center is kept mobile. However Black ends up with the hanging Pawns in the center (at QB4 and Q4) which are apt to prove weak (cols. 71–74). To avoid both Tartakower's Variation and Lasker's Defense White may play B × Kt in reply to ...P—KR3, a move which has been successful in some encounters (cols. 7o and 74).

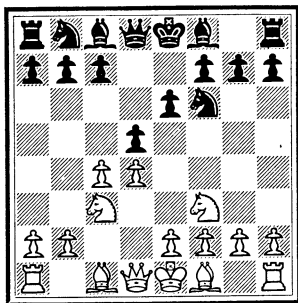
*Alternatives on White's Fourth Move*

Since 4 B—Kt5 is the only move which prevents the liberating ...P—QB4, it is theoretically strongest. However 4 Kt—B3 has some point to it even when the Black QBP does advance. A number of the alternatives

have therefore been tried by Black, but none is as good as the natural ...P—QB4.

DIAGRAM 61

Pages 185-190, cols. 71-90



[After 4 Kt—B3]

After 4 Kt—B3 the major possibilities are:

(1) 4...QKt—Q2 (cols. 76-78) sometimes played to lead into the Cambridge Springs. In addition to the regular QG, White may also play an early P—K4 (col. 76) or 5 P × P followed by B—B4 (Saemisch's Variation). This latter line has been strengthened lately; White may continue as in the regular Exchange Variation with the minority attack (col. 77).

(2) 4...Kt—K5 (col. 79) is theoretically inadequate.

(3) 4...B—Kt5 (cols. 80-83), favored by Ragozin and Fine, is a delayed Nimzo-Indian Defense in effect. Despite its unprepossessing appearance it is theoretically satisfactory and may be adopted as a good alternative to the more routine lines.

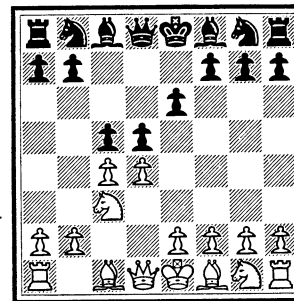
(4) 4...P—B4 (cols. 84-90) is thoroughly sound and good reason to discourage 4 Kt—B3. Its great strength is that it avoids the isolated Pawn of the Tarrasch Defense. The line in col. 85, with which Euwe defeated Alekhine in one of their match games, has now been rehabilitated.

*Tarrasch Defense*

The chief objection to the Tarrasch Defense is that it leaves Black with an isolated Pawn at Q4, which proves to be a source of great weakness. This has discouraged most masters from playing it. When it has been tried in the past few years, improvements have been found which make White's hold even more binding.

DIAGRAM 62

Page 195, cols. 101-105



[After 3...P—QB4]

The main line is the Rubinstein—Schlechter Attack (fianchetto of White's KB after fixation of the center), seen in cols. 91-101. In the logical continuation in cols. 91-92 White's grip on Q4 is too depressing for Black. For a while it was thought that the gambit in cols. 93-94 was a feasible alternative, but Black will have to find an improvement against col. 93 if he wishes to play it. Even straight development without isolating the Black QP seems to be good for White, as the line in col. 96, cultivated in Argentine tournaments, shows.

Of the alternatives for Black the Folkestone Variation (an early ...P—B5) was once considered good, but there is no defense visible against Rey's powerful line in col. 99. The von Hennig—Schara in cols. 102-103 is another gambit alternative which has been consigned to history after a promising start.

The older line against the Tarrasch was the so-called Normal Variation in cols. 104-105. Even here Black must play carefully, but it is much less dangerous for him than the Rubinstein Attack.

*Vienna Variation and Allied Lines*

The development of White's QKt on the third move continues the attack against Black's center and it is therefore to be expected that it would be better than moving the KKt out first. This expectation is borne out by analysis and practise.

When White plays 3 Kt—KB3, Black has two good additional defenses which are not ordinarily available: The Vienna and the Duras.

The **Vienna Variation** (cols. 111-115) consists of ...B—Kt5ch and ...QP × BP. It leads to extremely complicated positions, a definitive opinion on all of which is still lacking. Euwe scored a striking success with it as Black against Fine in the AVRO tournament, but White has a sacrifice available which should at least draw (col. 113). Soviet masters have experimented with the simpler 7 B × P (cols. 111-112) with which Kotov won a brilliant game against Yudovitch in the U.S.S.R. championship in 1939, but Black's defense has been improved upon (col. 112). The theoretical conclusion now is that the Vienna Variation is strong for Black, and that in the best lines either 7 B × P or 7 P—K5 leads to equality.

The **Duras Variation** (cols. 116-117) is another good variant for Black, who can achieve complete equality with comparative ease.

The variations in cols. 119-120 are more complicated than they appear to be at first sight. Reshevsky and Fine have played them with some success. Against the natural ...P—QB4 White has the complicated and promising reply in col. 119. But Black has a good alternative in col. 120, where he omits ...P—QB4, places his Kt at K5, and gets a thoroughly satisfactory game.

*Slav Defense*

1 P—Q4, P—Q4; 2 P—QB4, P—QB3

The Slav is Euwe's favorite defense and it has been in the center of attention since he won the championship in 1935. Its great advantages are that it maintains the equilibrium in the center and frees the Black QB; but the trouble is that Black is soon compelled to give up the center.

On his third move, White has the choice of three continuations: 3 Kt—KB3, 3 Kt—QB3 and 3 P × P (the Exchange Variation). 3 Kt—KB3 has always been the main line, but the Exchange Variation has been played a good deal of late and may conceivably turn out to be stronger in the long run.

It is easiest to discuss the Slav in the light of the main variation with 3 Kt—KB3.

1 P—Q4            P—Q4  
2 P—QB4         P—QB3  
3 Kt—KB3

Alternatives are 3 Kt—QB3 and 3 P × P.

3...                    Kt—B3

3... P—K3 is the Semi-Slav and allied lines.

4 Kt—B3

4 P—K3 is weaker.

4...                    P × P

4... P—K3 leads to the Meran and related lines.

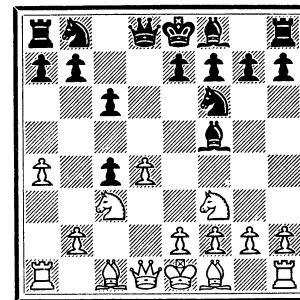
5 P—QR4

5 P—K3 is a strong alternative.

5...                    B—B4

**DIAGRAM 63**

Page 203, cols. 126-130



[After 5... B—B4]

Other moves are weak.

In this position White has three continuations: 6 P—K3, 6 Kt—K5 and 6 Kt—R4. 6 P—K3 has always been considered a trifle better than 6 Kt—K5; 6 Kt—R4 is inferior.

(1) 6 P—K3 (cols. 121-126) was revitalized in the 1937 Euwe—Alekhine match with the interesting Pawn sacrifice of col. 122. This was found to be

Black's best defense at that time, but apparently it is not as easy as was once thought. The ending deserves more tests in practice. Even without it, however, Black has various equalizing lines.

(2)  $\delta$  Kt—K5 (cols. 127–130) was also played a great deal in the Euwe—Alekhine duels. The line in col. 128 is a striking innovation in a previously discredited variation. Since Black has no choice (see col. 127) this continuation is of much theoretical importance. It must now be considered White's strongest line against the Slav.

(3)  $\delta$  Kt—R4 (col. 131) is weak because  $\delta$ ...B—B1 forces White to go right back to B3.

#### *Alternatives on White's Fifth Move*

White has a strong variant in  $5$  P—K3, instead of  $5$  P—QR4 (cols. 134–136). The point to this move is seen in the subsequent sacrifice of the KP (col. 134), an idea of Fairhurst's which has never been adequately met. A similar idea is also good in the QGA (see first part of introduction).

#### *Meran Variation and Allied Lines*

Black may elect to play  $4$ ...P—K3 instead of  $4$ ...P × P in order to keep the center solid. The drawback to this line is that his pieces remain cramped. Nevertheless, as in all cramped positions, the crucial question is whether Black will be able to free himself eventually, since he has no organic weaknesses. Practice indicates that Black does have various equalizing lines, so that  $4$ ...P—K3 is a good alternative.

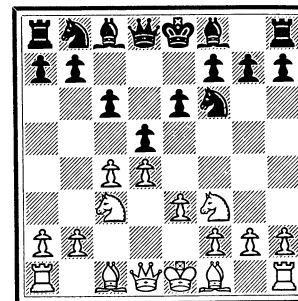
After  $4$ ...P—K3, White has two possibilities, the new  $5$  B—Kt5, and the old  $5$  P—K3.

(1)  $5$  B—Kt5 (cols. 137–140) has become prominent recently because of a number of games of Botvinnik's. Botvinnik as defender was always successful, but analysis invariably indicated improvements for White. The game becomes extraordinarily complicated after  $5$ ...P × P. White's best course seems to be that in col. 139; that in note (e) is also worth more attention.

(2)  $5$  P—K3 (cols. 141–156) again branches off after  $5$ ...QKt—Q2;  $\delta$  B—Q3 when Black has three choices:  $\delta$ ...P × P (leading to the Meran Variation),  $\delta$ ...B—Q3 and  $\delta$ ...B—K2.

DIAGRAM 64

Page 211, cols. 151–155

[After  $5$  P—K3]

(i)  $\delta$ ...P × P (cols. 141–149) is paradoxical since Black played  $4$ ...P—K3 not to give up the center. The idea is to break with ...P—QKt4, hold with ...P—QR3 and then equalize with ...P—QB4. Against this plan White operates as usual with P—K4, which leads to the exceedingly complex **Meran Variation** (cols. 141–145). The Meran was once thought to be weak but has recently been revived with an improvement on Black's 12th move (col. 141). With this move the Meran is playable. In the older lines Reshevsky's improvement in col. 144 refutes Black's plan.

(ii)  $\delta$ ...B—Q3 (cols. 150–151) is little known but solid and good. The new improvement in col. 151 is interesting.

(iii)  $\delta$ ...B—K2 (cols. 152–153) is weaker than  $\delta$ ...B—Q3 because it does not threaten ...P—K4. It is too passive to give more than cumbersome equality.

Of the alternatives to  $\delta$  B—Q3 for White,  $\delta$  P—QKt3 (col. 154) deserves consideration.

Col. 157 is of considerable theoretical importance because it shows that Black cannot afford to develop his QB directly. This explains why  $3$  Kt—KB3 is so strong; against the other moves ...B—B4 is possible.

#### *Alternatives on White's Fourth Move*

Here only  $4$  P—K3 need be considered;  $4$  P × P transposes to the Exchange Variation. But, as cols. 158–161 show,  $4$  P—K3 allows  $4$ ...B—B4, which solves Black's opening problem. Landau's Attack in col. 159 was once thought to be dangerous but has had the sting taken out of it.

*Alternatives on White's Third Move*

The only two of importance here are 3 Kt—QB3 and 3 P × P.

(1) 3 Kt—QB3 (cols. 167–171) was always considered inferior because of the strength of 3...P × P until Alekhine introduced the sensational sacrifice in col. 167. The original sacrifice has since been shown to be unsound, but a later improvement played by Keres has rehabilitated White's strategy. 3...P × P no longer seems to be an entirely adequate reply to 3 Kt—QB3. The alternative 3...P—K3 may lead to previously considered lines but White has another strong Alekhine continuation in col. 168. The gambit in col. 169 is interesting but unsound. For the first time a promising continuation has appeared against Winawer's Counter Gambit (col. 171); the analysis there again starts with an Alekhine suggestion.

(2) 3 P × P (cols. 172–175), the **Exchange Variation**, has risen in the masters' esteem recently. It was formerly thought to be hopelessly drawish, but it now appears that there are very few satisfactory lines for Black. Purdy once wrote a bold article claiming that the Exchange Variation refuted the Slav, but could find nobody to agree with him. Now it appears that he may have been on the right track, although his variations were not the right reason. The present change of heart was started by another Alekhinism, a move with which he startled Euwe at the AVRO tournament in 1938 (col. 172). Various improvements were suggested for the defense, but later analysis and practice indicate that they would have been inadequate. Black will have to find better if he wishes to develop his QB early. But if the Black QB must stay at home White has scored an important point. In the lines where the B is shut in (cols. 174–175) only ...B—Q3 seems to be satisfactory. The older ...B—K2 is met by P—KR3, which retains White's QB and thereby keeps Black's game cramped. Why this simple move never occurred to anybody before Botvinnik used it we leave to the reader to determine.

*Other Replies on Black's Second Move*

1 P—Q4, P—Q4; 2 P—QB4

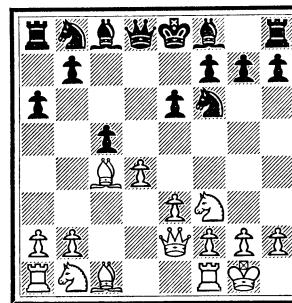
Other replies are all theoretically inadequate and are therefore rarely seen. The most important is 2...P—K4, the Albin Counter Gambit (cols. 176–180) but Black's attack is not worth the Pawn. Some unusual continuations, none of any particular importance, are found in cols. 107–110.

1 P—Q4, P—Q4; 2 P—QB4, P × P; 3 Kt—KB3 (a), Kt—KB3; 4 P—K3, P—K3; 5 B × P, P—B4; 6 O—O, P—QR3; 7 Q—K2 \*

	1	2	3	4	5
7	P—QKt4	.....	Kt—B3		
8	B—Kt3 (b)		Kt—B3		
	B—Kt2		P—QKt4		
9	R—Q1	.....	P—QR4 /	B—Kt3	
	QKt—Q2		QKt—Q2 / (e)	B—K2	.....
				P—Kt5	.....
10	P—QR4		P—K4 / (f)	P × P	P—Q5 /
	P—Kt5 (c)		P × QP (g)	B × P	Kt—QR4 (l)
					Q—Kt3
11	QKt—Q2		P × P	P—K4	B—R4 <sup>ch</sup>
	Q—B2		Q—Kt3 (h)	P—Kt5 (j)	B—Q2
					P—Q5 /
12	Kt—B4		P—K5	P—K5 /	P × P /
	B—K2		Kt—Q4	P × Kt	P × P
					P—K4 / (o)
13	KKt—K5		B—QB4	P × Kt	R—Q1 !!
	O—O		P—QR4	KtP × P	P × Kt
					Kt × KP
14	B—Q2		B—Q2	Q—B4	R × B !!
	QR—B1		B—B4	Q—Kt3	Kt × R
					B—K2
15	QR—B1		Kt—R3	Q × BP	Kt—K5
	KR—Q1 = (d)		O—O	Kt—Q5	R—R2
					B—Q5 /+ (q)
16			B—Q3 ± (i)	Kt × Kt+ (k)	P × P /+ + (m)

\* DIAGRAM 65

cols. 1–9



[After 7 Q—K2]

(a) Necessary to prevent ...P—K4. If 3 Kt—QB3, P—K4 /; 4 P—K3, P × P; 5 P × P, Kt—QB3 =. Marshall—Janowski, New York, 1924. Or 3 P—K4, P—K4; 4 P—Q5, Kt—KB3; 5 Kt—QB3, B—QB4; 6 B × P, Kt—Kt5+. Steinitz—Blackburne, London, 1899. If 3 P—K3, equally

3...P—K4 /.

(b) If here 8 B—Q3, P × P; 9 P × P (or 9 Kt × P, B—Kt2; 10 R—Q1, QKt—Q2; 11 P—QR4, P × P; 12 R × P, Q—Kt3 =), B—Kt2 is satisfactory for Black.

(c) Inferior is 10...P—B5; 11 B—B2, B—K2; 12 P—K4, R—QB1; 13 B—Kt5, P—R3; 14 B × Kt, B × B; 15 P × P, P × P; 16 Kt—R3 /, Q—Kt3; 17 P—QKt3+. Lilienthal—Landau, match 1934.

(d) Keres—Reshevsky, Semmering—Baden, 1927.

(e) Weak is 9...P—B5; 10 B—B2, Kt—B3; 11 P × P, P × P; 12 R × R, Q × R; 13 Kt—B3, Q—R4; 14 P—K4, Kt—Q2; 15 P—Q5+. Fine—Steiner, Hollywood, 1945.

(f) Stahlberg's idea. The positional 10 R—Q1, B—K2; 11 QP × P, O—O; 12 B—B2 (better 12 P—B6—Euwe), B × P; 13 Kt—K5, P—Kt5; 14 Kt × Kt, Kt × Kt; 15 Kt—Q2, P—B4 / = (Euwe—Alekhine, Bad Nauheim, 1937) is easier to meet.

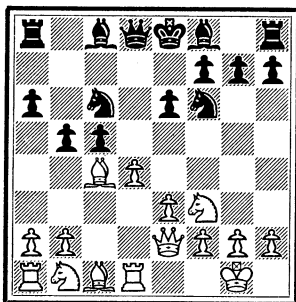
Notes continued on p. 159

1 P-Q4, P-Q4; 2 P-QB4, P x P; 3 Kt-KB3, Kt-KB3; 4 P-K3, P-K3; 5 B x P, P-B4; 6 O-O, P-QR3

	6	7	8	9	10
7 (Q-K2) (Kt-B3)					P-QR4 Kt-B3
8 P x P B x P	R-Q1 P-QKt4*				Q-K2 (l) B-K2
9 P-QR3 P-QKt4	B-Kt3 P-B5		P x P Q-Kt3 (f) Q-B2		R-Q1 (m) Q-B2
10 B-R2 B-Kt2	B-B2 Kt-QKt5	P-QR4 B-Kt2	B-Q3 (i) Kt-QKt5 (j)		Kt-B3 O-O
11 P-QKt4 B-K2 (a)	Kt-B3 Kt x B	RP x P RP x P	P-QR3 Kt x B		P-R3 R-Q1 (n)
12 B-Kt2 O-O	Q x Kt B-Kt2 (c)	R x Rch B x R	Q x Kt B x P		P-Q5 (o) P x P
13 QKt-Q2 Q-Kt3	P-Q5! Q-B2! (d)	Kt-B3 P-B5	P-QKt4 B-K2		B x QP! Kt-QKt5
14 Kt-Kt3 KR-Q1	P-K4 P-K4	B-B2 B-Kt5! (g)	B-Kt2 B-Kt2		P-K4 KKt x B
15 QR-B1 QR-B1	B-Kt5 Kt-Q2	P-K4 Kt-K2! = (h)	B-K5 Q-B3		P x Kt B-B4
16 Kt-B5 ± (b)	B-K3 B-B4 = (e)		QKt-Q2 R-QB1 ≠ (k)		B-B4! Q x B = (p)

## \* DIAGRAM 66

cols. 7-9



[After 8... P-QKt4]

- (a) 11... B-Kt3 is preferable.  
 (b) Eliskases—Muffang, Warsaw, 1935.  
 (c) 12... Kt-Q4 is a good alternative, e.g., 13 P-K4, Kt-Kt5; 14 Q-K2, Kt-

Q6; 15 P-QKt3, B-Kt5; 16 B-Q2, O-O; 17 P x P, P x P; 18 Kt-K1 (18 Q-K3, P-B4! ≠. Landau—Reynolds, Ostend, 1937), Q x P; 19 Kt-B2 =. Schmidt—Turn, Reval, 1936.

(d) Inferior is 13... P x P; 14 P-K4, B-K2; 15 P-K5!, Kt-Q2; 16 Q-B5, O-O; 17 Kt x QP+. Euwe—Gruenfeld, Zandvoort, 1936.

(e) Reshevsky—Flohr, Nottingham, 1936.

(f) If 9... P x P; 10 Kt x P!, Kt x Kt; 11 P x Kt, B-Kt2; 12 B-Kt5, B-K2; 13 B x Kt, P x B; 14 P-Q5, P x P; 15 B x P+. Euwe. Both 9... B-Kt2 and 9... Q-B2 transpose to the main lines.

(g) Not 14... B-K2?; 15 P-K4, Kt-QKt5; 16 B-Kt1, O-O; 17 P-K5, KKt-Q4; 18 Kt-Kt5 ±. Lilienthal—Belavienetz, match, 1935.

(h) Gruenfeld—Opocensky, Marienbad, 1925.

Notes continued on p. 159

Notes continued from p. 157

(g) If 10... B x P; 11 Kt-Kt5, B-Q4; 12 B x B, Kt x B; 13 R-K1, Kt(Q4)-B3; 14 RP x P+ and if 10... Kt x P; 11 P-Q5, P x QP; 12 B x P!!, B x B; 13 Kt-B3, Kt-B3; 14 R-Q1+. (Stahlberg.)

(h) Best is 11... P-Q6; 12 Q x P, B x P; 13 Q-K2, P x P; 14 R x R, Q x R; 15 QKt-Q2, B x Kt; 16 Kt x B, B-K2 (Stahlberg); 17 Kt-Q4 ±.

(i) Sanguinetti—Pilnik, Buenos Aires, 1944.

(j) Preferable is 11... Kt-Q2; 12 P-K5, O-O; 13 Kt-K4, P-R3 (13... Kt-Q5?; 14 Kt x Kt, B x Kt; 15 Kt-Kt5!+); 14 R-Q1, Q-K2 ±.

(k) 16... B x Kt; 17 B-R4ch, K-K2; 18 B-K3!! and White won quickly. Euwe—Alekhine, 5th match game, 1937.

(l) If 10... P x P; 11 Kt x P, Kt x Kt;

12 R-Q1, B-K3; 13 P-K4+.

(m) Alekhine—Böök, Margate, 1938.

(n) If 9... P x P; 10 R-Q1, Q-Kt3; 11 P x P, Kt-QR4; 12 B-B2, B-K2; 13 P-Q5! ±.

(o) If 12 B x P, P-Kt5; 13 B x Pch! ? (13 Kt-KKt5, O-O-O! is the alternative), K x B; 14 Q-B4ch, K-K2! (14... K-K1?; 15 Q-K6ch, B-K2; 16 Kt-K5!, R-KB1; 17 Kt-Q5!, Q-Q1; 18 KKt x Kt, B x Kt; 19 Q x Bch+. Stahlberg—Böök, Kemerli, 1937); 15 Kt-Q5ch, Kt x Kt; 16 Q x Kt, R-Q1; 17 Q-K4ch, K-B3; 18 Q-B4ch, K-K2. Draw. Analysis by Reinfeld.

(p) The only playable move is 12... O-O-O! (Reshevsky).

(q) Reshevsky—Vidmar, Nottingham, 1936.

Notes continued from p. 158

(i) Or 10 B-Kt3, B x P; 11 P-QR4 (11 P-K4, Kt-KKt5!+ for if 12 R-B1, Kt-Q5!++), P x P; 12 B x RP, O-O =.

(j) Also playable is 10... B x P; 11 P-QR4, P x P!; 12 R x P, Kt-QKt5; 13 B-Kt5ch, B-Q2; 14 B x Bch, Kt x B; 15 B-Q2, P-QR4; 16 R-QB1, Q-Kt2 =. Botvinnik—Flohr, 3rd match game, 1933. Here on 11 P-QR4, P-Kt5? is weak because of 12 QKt-Q2, Kt-QR4 (or 12... O-O; 13 Kt-Kt3, B-K2; 14 P-K4 ±. Alekhine—Flohr, Bled, 1931); 13 P-QKt3, Kt-Q4 (better O-O!); 14 B-Kt2, Kt-B6; 15 B x Kt, P x B; 16 Kt-K4, Kt x P; 17 QR-Kt1, Kt-R4; 18 KR-QB1!+. Euwe—Flohr, 8th match game, 1932.

(k) Goglidse—Lasker, Moscow, 1935.

(l) Not to be recommended is 8 Kt-B3, B-K2; 9 P x P (for 9 Q-K2 see note (m)), B x P!; 10 Q x Qch, K x Q; 11 P-K4, Kt-KKt5; 12 B-B4, P-B3; 13

P-R3, KKt-K4 ≠. Flohr—Rubinstein, Prague, 1931.

(m) Or 9 Kt-B3, P x P; 10 R-Q1, P-K4; 11 P x P, P x P; 12 Kt x P, Kt x Kt; 13 Q-K5, Q-Q3! =.

(n) An improvement on 11... P-QKt3?; 12 P-Q5!, P x P; 13 B x QP, B-Kt2; 14 P-K4, QR-Q1; 15 B-K3, Kt-Q2; 16 R-Q2, B-B3; 17 QR-Q1+. Eliskases—Reshevsky, Semmering—Baden, 1937.

(o) Or 12 P-QKt3, B-Q2; 13 B-Kt2, B-K1; 14 P-Q5, P x P; 15 B x QP, Kt-Q5; 16 Kt x Kt, Kt x B; 17 Kt-B5, Kt x Kt; 18 B x Kt, P-B3 =. Botvinnik—Keres, Leningrad—Moscow, 1941.

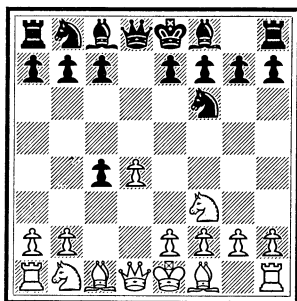
(p) 17 Q x B and now 17... B x P (17... P-QKt3?; 18 P-R5, R-K1, 19 Q-R4, Q x Q; 20 Kt x Q, B-B7; 21 R-Q2, P x P; 22 R x P ±. Reshevsky—Fine, Semmering—Baden, 1937); 18 Kt-K2, Q-Kt5; 19 Kt-Kt3, Kt x P; 20 Q x KtP, Q-B1; 21 Q x Q, B x Q; 22 Kt-K4, P-B5.

1 P-Q4, P-Q4; 2 P-QB4, P x P; 3 Kt-KB3, Kt-KB3\*

11	12	13	14	15
4 (P-K3)			Q-R4ch	
(P-K3)			QKt-Q2	P-B3
5 (B x P)			Kt-B3 (h)	Q x BP
(P-B4)			P-K3	B-B4
6 (O-O)			P-K4	Kt-B3
Kt-B3	P x P		P-B4 ! (i)	QKt-Q2
7 Kt-B3 (a)	P x P		P-Q5 (j)	P-KKt3
B-K2	P-QR3	B-K2	P x P	P-K3 (n)
8 P x P	Q-K2 (d)	Q-K2	P-K5	B-Kt2
Q x Q	P-QKt4	Kt-B3	P-QKt4 ! (k)	B-B7 ! ? (o)
9 R x Q	B-Q3	R-Q1	Q x KtP (l)	P-K3
B x P	B-Kt2	P-QR3	R-QKt1	B-K2
10 P-QR3	P-QR4 ! (e)	Kt-B3	Q-R4	O-O
K-K2 (b)	P-Kt5	Kt-QKt5	P-Q5	O-O
11 P-QKt4	QKt-Q2	B-KKt5	P x Kt	P-QR3
B-Kt3	B-K2	O-O	P x Kt	P-QR4
12 B-Kt2	Kt-B4	Kt-K5	B x P	Q-K2
R-Q1	P-QR4	QKt-Q4	R-Kt5 ! ± (m)	B-Kt3
13 R x R	B-B4	QR-B1		P-K4
B x R	O-O	R-K1		Q-Kt3
14 P-K4	KR-Q1 ± (f)	B-Q3 ± (g)		P-R3 ± (p)
B-Q2 = (c)				

## \* DIAGRAM 67

cols. 11-15



[After 3... Kt-KB3]

(a) Best is 7 Q-K2 when Black must transpose to the main lines (7... P x P; 8 R-Q1).

(b) Also playable is 10... P-QR3; 11 P-QKt4, B-K2; 12 B-Kt2, O-O, but not 12... P-QKt4?; 13 Kt x P!, P x Kt; 14 B x KtP, B-Q2; 15 R x B! ++. Bogoljubow-Flohr, Bled, 1931.

(c) 15 B-Q3, P-KR3. Bogoljubow-Alekhine, 5th match game, 1934.

(d) Another possibility is 8 P-QR3, Kt-B3; 9 Kt-B3, B-K2; 10 B-K3, O-O; 11 B-Q3, P-QKt4; 12 B-B2, B-Kt2; 13 Q-K2, R-B1; 14 QR-B1, Kt-QR4; 15 Kt-K5 ±. Bogoljubow-Fine, Zandvoort, 1936.

(e) Much stronger than 10 Kt-B3, B-K2; 11 B-Kt5, O-O; 12 QR-Q1, QKt-Q2; 13 Kt-K5, Kt-Q4; 14 B-B1, KKt x Kt; 15 P x Kt, Kt-B3 ±. Lasker-Reshevsky, Nottingham, 1936.

Notes continued on p. 162

1 P-Q4, P-Q4; 2 P-QB4, P x P

16	17	18	19	20
3 (Kt-KB3)				Q-R4ch
(Kt-KB3)	P-QR3	P-K3	P-QB4 (m)	Q-Q2
4 (Q-R4ch)	P-K3 (c)	P-K4	P-Q5 (n)	Q x BP
Q-Q2 (a)	B-Kt5	P-QB4	P-K3	Q-B3
5 Q x BP	B x P	B x P	P-K4	P-K3
Q-B3	P-K3	P x P	P x P	P-K3
6 Kt-R3 !	Q-Kt3 ! (d)	Kt x P	P x P	Kt-QB3
Q x Q	B x Kt	Kt-KB3 (h)	Kt-KB3	Q x Q
7 Kt x Q	P x B	Kt-QB3	B x P	B x Q
P-K3	R-R2 (e)	B-B4 (i)	B-Q3	Kt-KB3 ? (p)
8 P-QR3	B-Q2	B-K3	O-O	Kt-Kt5 !
P-B4	Kt-KB3	QKt-Q2 ? (j)	O-O	Kt-R3
9 B-B4	Kt-B3	B x P !	B-KKt5	P-QR3
Kt-B3	QKt-Q2 ? (f)	P x B	B-Kt5	P-QKt3
10 P x P	B-K2	Kt x P	Kt-B3	Kt-K2
B x P	P-B4	Q-R4 (k)	QKt-Q2	B-Kt2
11 P-QKt4	P-Q5 !	O-O	Kt-K4 (o)	P-B3
B-K2	P-K4	B x B	B-K4	B-K2
12 P-Kt5	P-QR4	P x B	P-KR3	P-K4
Kt-QKt1	B-Q3	K-B2	B-R4	P-B3
13 Kt-Q6ch ± (b)	O-O ± (g)	Q-Kt3+ (l)	B-K2	QKt-B3 ± (q)
			B x Kt =	

(a) Weaker is 4... B-Q2; 5 Q x BP, P-K3; 6 Kt-B3, Kt-R3; 7 P-K4, P-B4; 8 B-K2, P x P; 9 Kt x P, R-B1; 10 Q-Q3, Kt-QKt5; 11 Q-Kt1, P-K4; 12 Kt-B3, B-QB4; 13 O-O, Kt-B3; 14 B-KKt5 ±. Tartakower-Böök, Kemer, 1937.

(b) 13... B x Kt; 14 B x B. Alekhine-Fine, Kemer, 1937. Correct now is 14... P-QR3, when White's advantage is minimal.

(c) Inferior is 4 Kt-B3, Kt-KB3; 5 P-K4?, P-QKt4; 6 P-K5, Kt-Q4; 7 Kt-Kt5, P-K3; 8 Q-B3, Q-Q2; 9 Kt x Kt, P x Kt; 10 P-QR3, Kt-B3+. Bogoljubow-Alekhine, 17th match game, 1934. Also weak is 4 P-QR4, Kt-KB3; 5 P-K3, B-Kt5; 6 B x P, P-K3; 7 Kt-B3, Kt-B3; 8 B-K2, B-Kt5; 9 O-O, O-O; 10 Kt-Q2, B x B ±. Ahues-Alekhine, Bad Nauheim, 1936.

(d) A considerable improvement on the

older 6 P-KR3, B-R4; 7 Kt-B3, Kt-KB3; 8 O-O, Kt-B3; 9 P-R3, B-Q3; 10 B-K2, O-O; 11 Kt-Q2, B x B; 12 Q x B, P-K4 =. Bogoljubow-Alekhine, 3rd match game, 1934. A new but insufficient try is 6 P-Q5, P x P; 7 B x QP, Q-K2!; 8 Q-Kt3, Q-Kt5ch; 9 Q x Q, B x Qch; 10 B-Q2, B x Bch; 11 QKt x B, P-QB3; 12 Kt-K5, B-R4 =. Alartsev-Flohr, Moscow, 1944.

(e) If 7... Kt-QB3 equally 8 B-Q2. On 7... P-QKt4; 8 B-K2, Kt-KB3; 9 P-QR4, P-Kt5; 10 Q-B4 ± is in order (but not 10 P-R5?, P-B4; 11 P x P, B x P; 12 Q-B4, Q-K2 ±. Euwe-Reshevsky, Stockholm, 1937).

(f) Better is 9... P-B4 at once.

(g) 13... Q-K2; 14 K-R1, P-K5?; 15 R-KKt1, P x P; 16 B x BP. Botvinnik-Flohr, Moscow, 1945.

Notes continued on p. 162



## Notes continued from p. 160

- (f) Landau—Reshevsky, Kemer, 1937.  
 (g) 14...P-R3; 15 B-R4, B-Q2; 16 B-Kt1. White has attacking chances, Black a better Pawn position. Colle—Maroczy, Hastings, 1924.  
 (h) P-KKt3, here or on the next move, transposes to the Catalan System, p. 316, cols. 23-25.  
 (i) If 6...B-K2; 7 B×P, O-O; 8 Q-B2, P-B4; 9 P×P, B×P; 10 O-O±. Mueller—Gruenfeld, Vienna, 1934.  
 (j) 7 B×P is safer but in reply 7...P×P; 8 Kt×P, B-B4 equalizes.  
 (k) If 8...P-Q5; 9 P×Kt, P×Kt; 10 B×P+.  
 (l) If 9 Kt×KtP?, Kt-K5; 10 B-B4, B-K2; 11 P-K6, O-O!; 12 P×Kt, B×P; 13 Q-R6, B-KB3; 14 R-QKt1, P-Kt4!; 15 Kt-B7, P×B; 16 Kt×R, Q×Kt+. Raud—Schmidt, 1936-37. A

## Notes continued from p. 161

- (h) Or 6...P-QR3; 7 Kt-QB3, B-Q2; 8 O-O, Kt-QB3; 9 Kt-B3, Q-B2; 10 Q-K2, B-Q3; 11 R-Q1, KKt-K2; 12 B-K3, Kt-K4; 13 Kt×Kt±. Spielmann—Gruenfeld, Carlsbad, 1929.  
 (i) If 7...B-K2; 8 P-K5, Kt-Q4; 9 Q-Kt4±, and if 7...P-K4, 8 KKt-Kt5, Q×Qch; 9 K×Q, Kt-R3; 10 B-K3!, Kt-KKt5; 11 B×RP!, R×B; 12 Kt×R, Kt×Pch; 13 K-K2, Kt×R; 14 Kt×B, B-B4; 15 R×Kt, O-O; 16 B×Kt, P×B; 17 Kt-R4++ (Bogoljubow).  
 (j) 8...O-O is necessary, but Black remains cramped.  
 (k) Or 10...Q-Kt3; 11 Kt×B, Kt×Kt; 12 O-O, Q-B3; 13 R-B1!, QKt×P; 14 Kt×Kt, Q×Kt; 15 R-K1, K-B2; 16 R-B7ch, K-Kt3; 17 B-Q4+. Capablanca.

possible alternative is 9 Q-B2, Kt-K5; 10 Kt×QP, P-B4 with an unclear position.

(m) 12...BP×P?; 13 B×Pch!, K×B; 14 Q-B4ch, K-K1; 15 P-B7ch!, K-K2; 16 B×P, R×B; 17 O-O with a winning attack. The column and notes (except (j)) are due to Keres.

(n) Better is 7...Kt-K5; 8 B-Kt2, Kt×Kt! (8...Kt-Q3; 9 Q-R4, Kt-Kt3; 10 Q-Q1, Q-B1; 11 O-O, B-R6; 12 P-K4, B×B; 13 K×B, P-K3; 14 P-Q5!+ Botvinnik—Loevenfisch, Moscow, 1935); 9 P×Kt, Kt-Kt3; 10 Q-Kt3, B-K5; 11 Kt-K5, B-Q4!; 12 B×B, Q×B; 13 P-B3 =.

(o) Threatening to win White's Queen by ...Kt-Kt3.

(p) Bogoljubow—Alekhine, 23rd match game, 1934.

(l) 13...K-Kt3; 14 R-B5!. Capablanca—Bogoljubow, Moscow, 1925.

(m) Weak is 3...B-Kt5; 4 Kt-K5, B-R4; 5 Kt-QB3, P-K3 (or 5...Kt-Q2; 6 Kt×QBP, KKt-B3; 7 Q-Kt3, Kt-Kt3; 8 P-K4!, Q×P; 9 B-K3, Q-Q1; 10 P-B3, P-K3; 11 R-Q1+. Bogoljubow); 6 P-KKt4, B-Kt3; 7 P-KR4, P-KB3; 8 Q-R4ch, P-B3; 9 Kt×B, P×Kt; 10 Q×P(B4)+. Alekhine—Gruenfeld, Semmering, 1926. 3...P-QB3; 4 P-K3, P-QKt4; 5 P-QR4, P-K3 (5...P-QR3; 6 P×P, BP×P; 7 P-QKt3+) transposes to the Semi-Slav, p. 214, col. 165.

(n) Better 4 P-K4 as in col. 18.

(o) Capablanca—Zubarev, Moscow, 1925.

(p) 7...P-QR3 with approximate equality is in order.

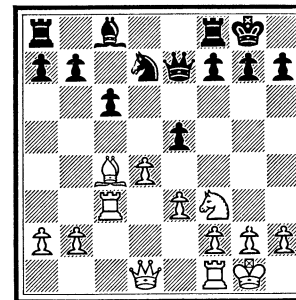
(q) Reshevsky—Dake, New York, 1936.

1 P-Q4, P-Q4; 2 P-QB4, P-K3; 3 Kt-QB3, Kt-KB3; 4 B-Kt5, QKt-Q2; 5 P-K3, B-K2; 6 Kt-B3, O-O; 7 R-B1, P-B3; 8 B-Q3, P×P; 9 B×P, Kt-Q4; 10 B×B, Q×B; 11 O-O, Kt×Kt; 12 R×Kt, P-K4 (a)\*

	1	2	3	4	5
13 P×P			Q-B2		B-Kt3 (p)
Kt×P			P-K5	P×P	P-K5
14 Kt×Kt			Kt-Q2	P×P (n)	Kt-Q2
Q×Kt			Kt-B3	Kt-Kt3 (o)	Kt-B3 (q)
15 P-B4!			R-B1	R-K1	Q-Kt1 (r)
Q-K5!.....			B-B4 (l)	Q-B3	B-Kt5!
16 B-Kt3 (b)	P-B5! (h)	P-B4	B-Kt3	R-K1	
B-B4 (c)	P-QKt4 (i)	QR-Q1	B-B4	K-R1	
17 Q-R5	B-Q3	P-QR3	Q-K2!	P-KR3 (s)	
P-KKt3 (d)	B-Kt2 (j)	P-KR4	QR-Q1	B-K3	
18 Q-R6 (e)	Q-B3	P-QKt4	Q-K7	B×B	
QR-Q1	QR-Q1	P-KKt3	R-Q2	Q×B	
19 B-B2	B×P	Q-Kt3	Q-R3!	R(K1)-QB1	
Q-Q4	R-Q7	R-Q2 = (m)	Kt-B1	QR-K1	
20 P-K4!	R-Kt3 ± (k)		P-R3 ±	R-R3	
B×P = (f)				P-QR3 = (t)	

## \* DIAGRAM 68

cols. 1-5



[After 12...P-K4]

(a) Not 12...P-QKt3; 13 Q-B2, P-QB4; 14 P×P, Kt×P; 15 P-QKt4, Kt-R3; 16 P-QR3, B-Kt2; 17 B-Q3, P-Kt3; 18 R-B1+. Capablanca—H. Steiner, Budapest, 1928.

(b) A new try is 16 Q-K2, B-B4; 17 P-

KKt4!, B-K3!; 18 B-Q3, Q-Kt5; 19 P-B5, B-Q4 (19...B×RP is playable); 20 P-B6, P-KKt3; 21 P-QR3, Q-Kt3; 22 Q-KB2, KR-K1 and Black can defend himself. Euwe—H. Steiner, Hastings, 1945-46.

(c) Inferior are 16...B-K3?; 17 B-B2, Q-Kt5; 18 P-B5, Q×P; 19 Q-K1!, B×RP; 20 P-B6, P-KKt3; 21 Q-R4!, K-R1; 22 Q-R6, R-KKt1; 23 R-KB4!++ and 16...Q-Kt3; 17 P-K4!+.

(d) If 17...B-Kt3?; 18 Q-R3!+.

(e) Or 18 Q-R4, QR-Q1; 19 B-B2, Q-Q4; 20 R-Q1, Q-R4; 21 R×R, Q×R =.

(f) 21 R-KR3 (not 21 B×B?, Q×B; 22 R-KR3, Q-Qch; 23 K-R1, Q-Kt2++), Q-B4ch; 22 R-B2 (22 K-R1, B×Pch!++), KR-K1; 23 Q×RPch, K-B1, 24 Q-R6ch, K-K2; 25 R-QB3, Q-Q5.

Notes continued on p. 164

## Notes continued from p. 163

(g) Unsatisfactory is 15...Q-K2; 16 P-B5, P-QKt4; 17 B-Kt3, P-Kt5; 18 P-B6!, P × P; 19 QR × P, Q × Pch; 20 K-R1, B-Kt2; 21 QR × P++. Euwe—Thomas, Hastings, 1934-35.

(h) 16 P-K4, B-K3; 17 P-K5, Q-K2; 18 B × B (or 18 B-B2, P-KB4!), P × B! leads to a very drawish position.

(i) If 16...R-Q1; 17 R-Q3!, R × R; 18 Q × R+, for if 18...P-QKt4?, 19 B × P!, P × B; 20 Q-K4 and wins.

(j) Tartakower recommends 17...P-Kt5; 18 R-QB2, R-Q1; 19 Q-K2, P-QR4; 20 KR-B1 (better 20 R-KB4), B × P =.

(k) 20...R × P; 21 B-B4, R × R; 22 P × R. Gruenfeld.

(l) 15...B-Kt5?; 16 P-Kt4!, P-QR3; 17 Q-Kt1, QR-Q1; 18 P-QR4, R-Q3; 19 P-Kt5+. Vidmar—Fine, Warsaw, 1935.

(m) Winter—Vidmar, Nottingham, 1936.

(n) Weaker is 14 Kt × P, Kt-B3; 15 P-B3, P-B4; 16 Kt-K2, B-K3; 17 P-K4, B × B; 18 R × B, P-QKt3; 19 Kt-Kt3, P-Kt3 =. Pilnik—Stahlberg, Mar del Plata, 1945.

(o) 14...Kt-B3? is refuted by 15 R-K1, Q-Q3; 16 Kt-Kt5, B-Kt5; 17 R-KKt3! and now: (1) 17...B-R4; 18 R-KR3!, B-Kt3 (18...P-KKt3; 19 Kt × BP, R × Kt; 20 B × Rch, K × B; 21 Q-Kt3ch, K-B1; 22 R-K6, Q × P; 23 R-Q3, Q-KB5; 24 Q-B3+); 19 Q × B!; RP × Q; 20 B × Pch, R × B; 21 R-R8ch, K × R; 22 Kt ×

Rch++. Analysis by Kopaev and Chistyakov. (2) 17...Q-Q2; 18 P-KR3, B-R4; 19 Kt-K6!, QR-K1; 20 R × Pch, K-R1; 21 R-K5++. (3) 17...P-KKt3; 18 Q-Kt3, Q-Q2; 19 R(Kt3)-K3, P-Kt4; 20 B × Pch, R × B; 21 R-K7+.

(p) Alternatives are: (1) 13 Q-Kt1 (the latest try), P × P (not 13...P-K5; 14 Kt-Q2, Kt-B3; 15 P-QKt4, P-QR3; 16 KR-B1, B-Kt5; 17 P-QR4+ as in Najdorf—Sanguinetti, Mar del Plata, 1945); 14 P × P, Kt-Kt3; 15 R-K1, Q-B3; 16 B-Kt3, B-B4 = because the continuation in column 4 is no longer available. (2) 13 R-K1, P-K5 =. (3) 13 P-K4, P × P; 14 Q × P, Kt-Kt3; 15 B-Kt3, B-K3 =. (4) 13 P-Q5, P-K5!; 14 Kt-Q4, P-QB4; 15 Kt-B5, Q-K4 ♯. (Euwe.)

(q) Weaker is 14...K-R1; 15 Q-B2, Kt-B3 (15...P-KB4; 16 P-B3, Kt-B3; 17 P × P, P × P; 18 QR-B5 ± but not 18 Kt × P!, B-B4!); 19 R × B, Kt × Kt+. Stahlberg—Grob, Ostend, 1936); 16 P-KR3, B-K3; 17 B × B, Q × B; 18 R-Kt3, Q-K2; 19 R-B1, KR-K1; 20 Q-B5 ±. Stahlberg—Fine, 8th match game, 1937.

(r) If 15 Q-B2 equally 15...B-Kt5!; e.g., 16 R-K1, K-R1; 17 P-QR3, QR-K1; 18 Kt-B1, B-K3; 19 B × B, Q × B; 20 P-QKt4, Kt-Q4 ♯. Najdorf—Stahlberg, Mar del Plata, 1945.

(s) Or 17 R-B5, Kt-Q2!.

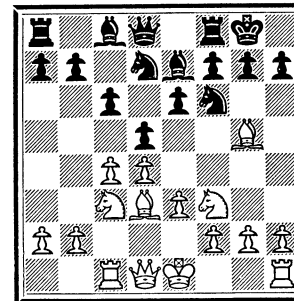
(t) Capablanca—Stahlberg, Buenos Aires, 1939.

1 P-Q4, P-Q4; 2 P-QB4, P-K3; 3 Kt-QB3, Kt-KB3; 4 B-K15, QKt-Q2; 5 P-K3, B-K2; 6 Kt-B3, O-O; 7 R-B1, P-B3; 8 B-Q3\*

	6	7	8	9	10
8 (P × P).....			P-KR3		
9 (B × P) (Kt-Q4)			B-R4.....	B-B4	Kt-R4
10 (B × B) (a) Q × B			B × P P-QKt4	B-K5	Kt × B
11 Kt-K4 (b) KKt-B3.....			B-Q3 P-R3	P × Kt	P-KKt3 (o)
12 Kt-Kt3 P-K4 (c)	P × P QKt × P		O-O!.....	P-R4 (k)	O-O B-Q2
13 O-O P × P	B × Kt P × B		P-B4 P-B5	P × P! Kt × P Q-R4ch	Q-Q2 P × P
14 Kt-B5 Q-Q1	Q × P (f) Kt × Ktch		B-Kt1 Kt-Q4	Kt-Q2 (l) B-Kt5	B × BP Q-B2
15 KKt × P Kt-K4	P × Kt B-K3		B × B (i) Q × B	Kt-B3 P-B4	Kt-K4 QR-Q1
16 B-Kt3 B × Kt	Q-QR5 (g) P-QKt3		P-QKt3! QKt-Kt3	Kt-B4 Q-Q1! (m)	Q-B3 B-B1 (p)
17 Kt × B P-KKt3! = (d)	Q-R4 P-B4 = (h)		P × BP ± (j)	Kt-K5 P × P! = (n)	P-KKt4 ±

## \* DIAGRAM 69

cols. 6-10



[After 8 B-Q3]

(a) Or (1) 10 B-B4, Kt × B; 11 P × Kt, Kt-Kt3; 12 B-Kt3, Kt-Q4; 13 P-Kt3, Kt × Kt; 14 P × Kt, P-QB4 =.

(2) 10 Kt-K4, P-B3!; 11 B-B4, Kt(Q2)-Kt3 ♯. (3) 10 P-KR4, Kt × Kt (10...P-B3; 11 B-B4, Kt × B; 12 P × Kt, Kt-Kt3, Janowski—Capablanca, New York, 1924, is weaker); 11 R × Kt, P-QKt3; 13 B-Kt3, B-Kt2 ♯.

(b) Or 11 Q-B2, R-K1; 12 R-Q1, Kt × Kt; 13 Q × Kt, P-QKt3; 14 O-O, B-Kt2; 15 P-K4, KR-Q1; 16 KR-K1, P-QB4; 17 P-Q5, P × P; 18 P × P, Q-Q3 =. Ragosin—Yudovitch, Moscow, 1939.

(c) Inferior is 12...Q-Kt5ch; 13 Q-Q2, Q × Qch; 14 K × Q, R-Q1; 15 KR-Q1, P-QKt3; 16 P-K4, B-Kt2; 17 P-K5 ±. Alekhine—Capablanca, 22nd match game, 1927.

(d) Euwe—Flohr, Nottingham, 1936. If here 17...Q-Kt3?; 18 Q-Q6, QKt-Q2; 19 KR-Q1, QR-Q1; 20 Q-Kt3+. Alekhine—Lasker, Zurich, 1934.

Notes continued on p. 167

1 P—Q4, P—Q4; 2 P—QB4, P—K3; 3 Kt—QB3, Kt—KB3; 4 B—Kt5, QKt—Q2; 5 P—K3, B—K2; 6 Kt—B3, O—O; 7 R—B1, P—B3\*

	I1	I2	I3	I4	I5
8	Q—B2 Kt—K5 !	.....	.....	P—KR3 (l)	P—QR3 Kt—K5 (p)
9	B × B Q × B	P—QR3 R—K1 (d)	P × P KP × P (i)	B—R4 P—R3	B × B Q × B
10	Kt × Kt (a) P × Kt	P—R3 P—R3	B—Q3 P—R3	P—QR3 P—QKt4	B—Q3 (q) Kt × Kt
11	Q × P Q—Kt5ch	B—R4 (e) P × P	B—KB4 (j) Kt—K1	P—B5 (m) P—K4 !	R × Kt P × P
12	Kt—Q2 Q × KtP	B × P P—QKt4	O—O B—Q3	P × P Kt—K1	R × P ! P—K4
13	R—QKt1 Q—R6 (b)	B—R2 P—B4	B × B Kt × B	B × B (n) Q × B	Q—B2 P—KR3
14	Q—B2 P—K4	P × P (f) Kt × P (g)	P—QKt4 Kt × P	Kt—K2 Q—K2	O—O P × P
15	B—Q3 P × P !	B—Kt1 (h) QKt—Q2 !	R—Kt1 P—KB4	Kt × Kt Q × Kt	R × QP ! Kt—K4
16	B × Pch K—R1	O—O Kt—B1	P—QR4 P—QKt4	Kt—Q4 B—Q2	Kt × Kt Q × Kt
17	O—O Q—Q3 = (c)	KR—Q1 Q—Kt3 =	Kt—K2 B—Kt2 = (k)	B—Q3 Kt—B2 = (o)	R—Q1 ± (r)

\* See p. 146, Diagram 58

(a) If instead 10 B—Q3, P—KB4; 11 Kt—K5 (or 11 O—O, R—B3; 12 Kt—K1, R—R3; 13 P—B3 ?, Q—R5; 14 P × Kt, Q × Pch; 15 K—B2, BP × P; 16 B × P, P × B; 17 Kt × P, Kt—B3+. Bogoljubow—Przepiorka, Munich, 1926. Here 13 P—B4, QKt—B3 = is correct, QKt × Kt; 12 P × Kt, P—QKt3; 13 O—O, Kt × Kt; 14 Q × Kt, P—B4 =. Gereben—Znosko-Borovsky, 1935.

(b) If 13... Q × RP; 14 B—Q3, Kt—B3; 15 Q—R4 with a strong attack.

(c) Alekhine—van den Bosch, Amsterdam, 1936.

(d) Not now 9... P—Kt4; 10 P—B5 !, P—K4; 11 P × P, Kt—K1; 12 B—KB4, Kt × BP; 13 P—QKt4 ±. Steiner—Aitken, Hastings, 1945-46.

(e) Or 11 B—B4, P × P; 12 B × BP, P—QKt4; 13 B—QR2, P—B4; 14 P—Q5, P ×

P; 15 Kt × QP, R—R2 !; 16 Kt × Bch, Q × Kt =. Flohr—Fine, Warsaw, 1935.

(f) If 14 R—Q1, P × P; 15 Kt × QP, Q—Kt3; 16 B—Kt1, B—Kt2 !; 17 O—O, QR—B1 ±. Gruenfeld—Alekhine, Carlsbad, 1923.

(g) Not 14... B × P ?; 15 O—O, B—Kt2; 16 KR—Q1, Q—Kt3; 17 B—Kt1, B—Q3; 18 R × B !, Q × R; 19 R—Q1, Q—B2; 20 R × Kt !++. Pirc—H. Steiner, Prague, 1931.

(h) If 15 O—O, Q—Q6 =. But not 15... B—Kt2 ?; 16 KR—Q1, Q—Kt3; 17 B × Kt !, B × B; 18 P—QKt4, B × KKt; 19 P × B+. Pirc—Tylor, Hastings, 1932-33.

(i) Not 9... BP × P; 10 B—Q3, P—Kt4; 11 P—QR4 !, P—Kt5 ? (11... P × P is the best chance); 12 Kt—K2 ±. Denker—Steiner, 2nd match game, 1946.

Notes continued on p. 167

Notes continued from p. 165

(e) Weaker is 11... Q—Kt5ch; 12 Q—Q2, Q × Qch; 13 K × Q, R—Q1; 14 KR—Q1, Kt(Q2)—B3; 15 Kt × Ktch, Kt × Kt; 16 B—Kt3, K—B1; 17 K—K2 ±. Alekhine—Capablanca 6th match game, 1927.

(f) Not 14 Kt—B3, B—Kt5; 15 Kt × P, Q—Q3 ±.

(g) If 16 Q—K5, Q—Kt5ch; 17 Q—B3, QR—B1; 18 Q × Q, R × Rch and the ending is a probable draw.

(h) Winter—Michell, London, 1928.

(i) An improvement on 15 Q—B2, P—Kt3; 16 B × B, Q × B; 17 P—K4, Kt × Kt; 18 Q × Kt, B—Kt2; 19 Q—R5, KR—B1; 20 P—QKt3, Kt—B3 ! =. Ragozin—Eliskases, Semmering—Baden, 1937.

(j) Alatorsev—Ragozin, Moscow, 1938.

(k) Weak is 12 P—K4 ?, Kt × P !; 13 B ×

Kt, B × B; 14 B × P, R—R2; 15 O—O, Kt—Kt3; 16 Kt—K4, B—K2 ±. Euwe—Alekhine, 28th match game, 1935.

(l) Or 14 Kt—B3, P—B4; 15 R—R1, Q—Kt5; 16 O—O, B—Kt2; 17 Q—K2, P × P; 18 P × P, B × Kt =. Vidmar—Lasker, Nottingham, 1936.

(m) Better than 16... Q—B2; 17 B—Kt3, Q—Kt2; 18 O—O, P × P; 19 P × P, R—Q1; 20 Kt—R4, Kt—Q4; 21 B—K4 ±. Fine—Belavienetz, Moscow, 1937.

(n) 18 P × P, B—Kt2 !; 19 Kt × Kt, Q × Kt; 20 B × Kt, P × B.

(o) Weaker is 11... P × P ?; 12 B × P, Q × Qch; 13 R × Q, P—KKt3; 14 P—KKt4, Kt—Kt2; 15 Kt—K4+. Fine—Maroczy, Zandvoort, 1936.

(p) Thomas—Lasker, Nottingham, 1936.

Notes continued from p. 166

(j) Or 11 B—R4, Kt—K1; 12 B—Kt3, B—Q3; 13 O—O, B × B; 14 RP × B, Kt—Q3; 15 Kt—QR4, R—K1; 16 KR—K1, Kt—B3; 17 Kt—K5, Kt(B3)—K5 =. Capablanca—Alekhine, 27th match game, 1927.

(k) Bondarevsky—Romanovsky, Leningrad—Moscow, 1939.

(l) Two other alternatives are: (1) 8... P × P; 9 B × P, Kt—Q4; 10 B × B (10 Kt—K4, Q—R4ch; 11 K—K2, P—B3; 12 B—R4, QKt—Kt3 =. Alekhine), Q × B; 11 O—O, Kt × Kt; 12 Q × Kt, P—QKt3; 13 Q—Q3, R—Q1; 14 Q—K2, B—Kt2 (not 14... P—QR3; 15 B—Q3, B—Kt2; 16 B—K4, QR—B1; 17 Kt—Q2, P—K4; 18 Kt—B4 ±. Alekhine and others—Bogoljubow and others, Budapest, 1921); 15 B—R6, B × B; 16 Q × B, P—QB4 =.

Compare Lasker's Defense, col. 63. (2) 8... P—B4 ?; 9 BP × P, KP × P; 10 B × Kt, Kt × B; 11 P × P, Q—R4; 12 B—Q3 ±.

Réti—Yates, Carlsbad, 1923.

(m) Weak is 11 P × QP, BP × P; 12 B—Q3, B—Kt2; 13 O—O, R—B1; 14 Q—Kt1 ?, Q—R4 ±. Alekhine—Capablanca, 12th match game, 1927.

(n) Better 13 B—Kt3 as in note (d).

(o) Eliskases—Ragozin, Semmering—Baden, 1937.

(p) Inferior is 8... R—K1; 9 B—B4, P—KR3; 10 B—Q3, P × P; 11 B × BP, P—QKt4; 12 B—R2, P—R3; 13 P—K4, B—Kt2; 14 P—K5, Kt—Q4; 15 Kt × Kt ±. Botvinnik—Kan, Leningrad, 1934.

(q) An improvement on 10 Q—B2, Kt × Kt; 11 Q × Kt, R—K1; 12 R—Q1, P × P; 13 B × P, P—QKt3; 14 O—O, B—Kt2; 15 P—K4, P—QB4 =. Fine—Stahlberg, Stockholm, 1937.

(r) 17... B—K3; 18 B—B4 ! Bogoljubow—Stahlberg, Kemerli—Riga, 1939.

1 P-Q4, P-Q4; 2 P-QB4, P-K3; 3 Kt-QB3, Kt-KB3; 4 B-Kt5, QKt-Q2; 5 P-K3, B-K2; 6 Kt-B3, O-O\*

16	17	18	19	20
7 (R-B1).....			Q-B2	
P-QR3.....	P-QKt3 (d)		P-QKt3 ?... P-B3	
8 P-QR3 (a)	P × P		P × P	P-QR3
P-R3	P × P		P × P	R-K1
9 B-R4	B-Q3.....	B-Kt5 (g)	B-Q3	R-Q1
P × P	B-Kt2	B-Kt2	B-Kt2	P-QR3 (h)
10 B × P	O-O	O-O	O-O-O (j)	B-Q3 (o)
P-QKt4	P-B4	P-B4 (h)	P-B4 (k)	P × P (p)
11 B-K2	Q-K2	Q-R4	P-KR4	B × P
B-Kt2	P-B5 (e)	P-QR3	P-B5 (l)	Kt-Q4
12 O-O	B-Kt1	B × QKt	B-B5	B × B
P-B4	P-QR3	Kt × B	R-K1	Q × B
13 P × P	Kt-K5	B × B	QB × Kt	Kt-K4 (q)
Kt × P	P-Kt4	Q × B	Q × B	KKt-B3
14 Kt-Q4 (b)	P-B4	P × P	P-KKt4	B-Q3!
R-B1	Kt-K5	P × P	B-Q3	Kt × Kt
15 P-QKt4	B × Kt	Q-KB4	P-Kt5	B × Kt
QKt-Q2	P × B	QR-B1	Kt-K5	P-R3
16 B-Kt3	Kt × Kt ± (f)	KR-Q1 ± (i)	P-R5 ± (m)	O-O ± (r)
Kt-Kt3 = (c)				

\* See p. 145, Diagram 57

(a) 8 P × P, P × P transposes to col. 13. Weak is 8 P-B5, P-B3; 9 P-QKt4, P-QR4; 10 P-QR3, P × P; 11 P × P, P-QKt3; 12 B-Q3 (12 B-KB4, P × P; 13 KtP × P, R-R6; 14 B-Q3, Q-R4; 15 Q-Q2, B-R3 ≠. Alekhine—Henneberger, Berne, 1925), P × P; 13 KtP × P, P-K4!; 14 Kt × KP, Kt × Kt; 15 P × Kt, Kt-Q2 ≠. Gibaud—Chéron, Biarritz, 1926. Possible is 8 P-QR4, P-B3? (better 8... P-R3; 9 B-R4, P × P; 10 B × P, P-B4); 9 B-Q3, P × P; 10 B × P, Kt-Q4; 11 B × B, Q × B; 12 O-O, Kt × Kt; 13 P × Kt, P-K4 (better 13... P-QKt4); 14 Q-B2, P × P; 15 BP × P, Kt-B3; 16 B-Q3 ±. Bondarevsky—Pachmann, match Moscow—Prague, 1946.  
 (b) Not 14 B × Kt, B × B; 15 Kt × P?, Q × Q; 16 KR × Q, Kt-Kt6!; 17 R-B7, B × Kt; 18 B × B, P × Kt; 19 B × R, R × B+.

(c) Capablanca—Alekhine, 21st match game, 1927.

(d) If 7... P-B4?; 8 P × BP (8 P × QP, Kt × P; 9 B × B, Kt × B; 10 B-Q3, P × P; 11 Kt × P, P-K4; 12 Kt-B3, Kt-QB4! =. Gruenfeld—Landau, Amsterdam, 1936), Q-R4 (or (1) 8... P × P; 9 P-B6, Kt-Kt3; 10 Q × Q, R × Q; 11 Kt-K5+ (2) 8... Kt × P?; 9 P × P, P × P; 10 Kt × P, Kt × Kt; 11 R × Kt+); 9 P × P, P × P; 10 P-QR3, Q × BP; 11 P-QKt4, Q-Q3; 12 B-KB4+.

(e) 11... Kt-K5; 12 B-KB4, Kt × Kt; 13 P × Kt, P-B5; 14 B-B5, P-Kt3; 15 B-Kt1, P-B4; 16 Kt-K5 is also in White's favor.

(f) 16... Q × Kt; 17 B × B, Q × B; 18 P-B5!, P-B3; 19 R-B4. Vidmar—Yates, London, 1922.

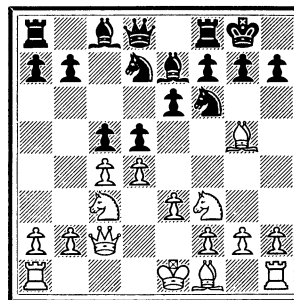
Notes continued on p. 171

1 P-Q4, P-Q4; 2 P-QB4, P-K3; 3 Kt-QB3, Kt-KB3; 4 B-Kt5, QKt-Q2; 5 P-K3, B-K2; 6 Kt-B3, O-O; 7 Q-B2, P-B4!\*

21	22	23	24	25
8 R-Q1.....	BP × P (d)			
P-KR3	BP × P.....		Kt × P.....	KP × P
9 B-R4	Kt × P (e)		Kt × Kt	R-Q1 (n)
Q-R4	Kt × P		P × Kt (k)	P-B5
10 B-Q3	B × B		B × B	Kt-K5
BP × P (a)	Q × B.....	Kt × B	Q × B	P-QR3
11 KP × P	Kt × Kt	B-K2 (h)	B-Q3	P-QR3
P × P	P × Kt	P-K4	P-KKt3	Q-R4
12 B × P	B-Q3	Kt-B3	P × P	B-K2
Kt-Kt3	Q-Kt5ch	Q-B2 (i)	Kt × P	P-R3
13 B-QKt3	Q-Q2	O-O	O-O (l)	B-R4
B-Q2	Kt-B4 (f)	Kt-KB3	B-Kt5	P-KKt4 (o)
14 O-O	B-Kt5!	QR-B1	Kt-Q4	B-Kt3
QR-B1 (b)	Q × Qch	B-B4	QR-B1	Kt-K5
15 Kt-K5	K × Q	Q-R4	Q-Q2	Kt × QBP!
B-Kt4	P-QR3	Kt-B3	P-QR3	P × Kt
16 KR-K1 ± (c)	B-K2 ± (g)	Kt-Q2 ± (j)	B-B2	Q × Kt+ (p)
			Q-Kt4 = (m)	

\* DIAGRAM 69

cols. 21-25



[After 7... P-B4!]

(a) This conventional move is not the simplest way to equalize. Better is 10... QP × P; 11 B × P, Kt-Kt3!; 12 B-K2, P × P; 13 P × P, QKt-Q4; 14 O-O,

B-Q2; 15 Kt-K5, KR-Q1 =. Other possibilities are: (1) 10... QP × P; 11 B × P, P-R3; 12 P × P?, Kt × P; 13 O-O, P-QKt4; 14 B-QKt3, B-Kt2; 15 Kt-Q4, QR-B1; 16 Q-K2, Kt × B ≠. Davidson—Teichmann, match, 1922. (2) 10... Kt-Kt3; 11 P × QP, BP × P?; 12 P-Q6!, B × P; 13 B × Kt, P × B; 14 Kt × P ±. Alekhine—Foltyz, Podobrady, 1936.

(b) Not 14... B-B3?; 15 Kt-K5, B-Q4?; 16 Kt × B, QKt × Kt; 17 Q-K2, QR-Q1; 18 P-B4+. Stahlberg—Capablanca, Moscow, 1935.

(c) And now (1) 16... B-B5; 17 B × B, Kt × B; 18 B × Kt, B × B; 19 Kt-Q7, KR-Q1; 20 Kt × Bch, P × Kt; 21 R-Q3. Euwe—Landau, Noordwyk, 1938. (2) 16... QKt-Q4 is Lasker—Capablanca, 10th match game, 1921, where Breyer later pointed out that 17 QB × Kt!, B × B; 18 B × Kt, P × B; 19 Q-B5+ is in order.

Notes continued on p. 171

1 P—Q4, P—Q4; 2 P—QB4, P—K3; 3 Kt—QB3, Kt—KB3; 4 B—Kt5, QKt—Q2; 5 P—K3, B—K2; 6 Kt—B3

	26	27	28	29	30
6 (O—O).....			P—B3.....	P × P.....	P—QKt3 (m)
7 B—Q3 (a)			Q—B2 (h)	B × P	P × P
P × P.....		P—B4 (e)	P—KR3 (i)	P—QR3	Kt × P (n)
8 B × P	O—O		B—R4	O—O	B × B
P—QKt3 (b)	BP × P (f)		Kt—K5	P—Kt4	Kt × B (o)
9 O—O	KP × P		Kt × Kt	B—Q3	B—Q3
B—Kt2	P × P		B × B!	P—B4	B—Kt2
10 Q—K2	B × P		Kt—Q6ch	Q—K2	O—O
Kt—Q4 (c)	Kt—Kt3		K—B1	B—Kt2	O—O
11 B—B4	B—Kt3!		KKt × B	KR—Q1	R—B1
Kt × B	B—Q2		Q × Kt	Q—Kt3	P—QR3
12 P × Kt	Q—Q3		P × P	QR—B1	Kt—K4
Kt—B3	QKt—Q4		KP × P	O—O	P—R3
13 QR—Q1	Kt—K5		Q—Kt3	Kt—K5	B—Ktr
B—Kt5	B—B3		Kt—Kt3	KR—K1 (k)	R—B1
14 P—KKt3	QR—Q1		Kt × B	P × P	Q—K2 (p)
KB × Kt	Kt—QKt5		R × Kt	Kt × P	Kt—KB4
15 P × B	Q—R3 ± (g)		P—QR4	B × Kt	KR—Q1 ±
Kt—Q4 = (d)			R—B2 = (j)	B × B = (l)	

(a) For 7 P × P see the Exchange Variation, cols. 51–60. Against 7 P—QR3, P × P leads to easy equality (7...Kt—K5 is also good): 8 B × P, P—B4; 9 O—O, P—QR3; 10 P × P, Kt × P; 11 P—QKt4, QKt—K5; 12 Kt × Kt, Kt × Kt; 13 B × B, Q × B; 14 Q—Q4, Kt—Q3! = Capablanca—Goglidse, Moscow, 1935.

(b) Also good is 8...P—B4; 9 O—O, P—QR3; 10 P—QR4 (or 10 P × P, Kt × P; 11 Q × Q, R × Q; 12 P—QKt4, QKt—Q2; 13 P—Kt5, Kt—B4; 14 KR—Q1, B—Q2; 15 P × P, P × P = Thomas—Rubinstein, Carlsbad, 1929), P—QKt3; 11 Q—K2, B—Kt2; 12 KR—Q1, Q—B2; 13 B—B4, B—Q3 = Johner—Rubinstein, Berlin, 1926.

(c) Or 10...Kt—K5; 11 Kt × Kt, B × Kt; 12 B—B4, B—Q3; 13 B—KKt3 = Johner—Treybal, Carlsbad, 1929.

(d) Euwe—Becker, Zandvoort, 1936.

(e) On 7...P—QKt3; 8 P × P, P × P White can transpose to the favorable line in col. 19.

(f) If 8...P—QR3; 9 P × QP, Kt × P; 10 B × B, Q × B; 11 Kt × Kt, P × Kt; 12 Q—B2, P—KKt3; 13 P × P, Kt × P; 14 R—QB1 ±. Euwe—Fine, Amsterdam, 1936.

(g) Botvinnik—Vidmar, Nottingham, 1936.

(h) 7 P × P transposes to the Exchange Variation, cols. 51–60. 7 R—B1, O—O transposes to cols. 1–15. 7 B—Q3, P × P; 8 B × BP, Kt—Q4; 9 B × B, Q × B; 10 Q—B2, Kt × Kt; 11 Q × Kt, O—O transposes to Lasker's Defense, cols. 63–64 (the extra tempo with ... P—KR3 makes no difference).

Notes continued on p. 172

Notes continued from p. 168

(g) Not so strong is 9 Q—R4, P—B4; 10 Q—B6 (10 B—Kt5 transposes back into the column), R—Ktr; 11 Kt × P, Kt × Kt (better than 11...B—Kt2; 12 Kt × Bch, Q × Kt; 13 Q—R4, QR—B1; 14 Q—R3 ±. Capablanca—Lasker, 5th match game, 1921); 12 Q × KKt, B—Kt2; 13 B × B, Q × B; 14 Q—Kt5, Q × Q; 15 Kt × Q, P × P; 16 P × P, Kt—B3 =.

(h) Or 10...P—QR3; 11 B—QR4, P—B4; 12 P × P, Kt × P; 13 Q—K2, R—B1; 14 KR—Q1, Kt × B; 15 Kt × Kt, P—Kt4; 16 R × R ±. Capablanca—Teichmann, 1913. If 12...P × P; 13 B × QKt, Q × B; 14 Kt—QR4!, Q—Kt4; 15 B × Kt, P × B; 16 P—QKt4!, P—B5; 17 Kt—Q4+ (Alekhine).

(i) Réti—Sergeant, Tunbridge Wells, 1927.

(j) Also good is 10 O—O, P—KR3; 11 B—KB4, P—R3; 12 KR—Q1, Kt—K1; 13 QR—B1 ±. Keres—Smyslov, Leningrad—Moscow, 1939.

(k) Or 10...Kt—K5; 11 P—KR4, P—KB4; 12 K—Ktr, P—B4; 13 P × P, P × P; 14 Kt × Kt, BP × Kt; 15 B × P, P × B; 16 Q—Kt3ch+. Rubinstein—Znosko-Borovsky, St. Petersburg, 1909.

(l) If 11...R—B1; 12 K—Ktr, R—K1; 13 P × P, R × P; 14 Kt—Q4 ±. Rubinstein—Teichmann, Carlsbad, 1907.

(m) Rubinstein—Teichmann, match, 1908.

(n) 9...P × P?; 10 B × P, Kt—Q4; 11 B × B, Q × B; 12 O—O, Kt × Kt; 13 Q × Kt, P—QB4; 14 P—Q5, P × P; 15 R × P ±. Flohr—Fine, Hastings, 1935–36.

(o) Not 10 P—B5?, P—K4; 11 P—QKt4, P—K5; 12 Kt—Q2, Kt—R4; 13 B × B, Q × B; 14 Kt—K2, P—KKt3 ±. Landau—Fine, Amsterdam, 1936.

(p) If 10...P—R3; 11 B—R4, P—QKt4; 12 P—B5, P—K4?; 13 P × P, Kt—Kt5; 14 B—Kt3, B × P; 15 Kt—K2!, Q—Kt3; 16 O—O, KKt × P(K4); 17 Kt × Kt, Kt × Kt; 18 B × Kt!, R × B; 19 R—B1+. Flohr—Eliskases, Podebrady, 1936.

(q) An improvement on 13 O—O, Kt × Kt; 14 Q × Kt, P—QB4; 15 P × P (if now 15 P—Q5, P × P; 16 R × P, P—QKt4; 17 B—R2, B—Kt2 ±), Kt × P =.

(r) 16...P—QB4; 17 R—B1. Eliskases—Landau, Noordwijk, 1938.

Notes continued from p. 169

(d) Not to be recommended is 8 O—O—O, Q—R4; 9 BP × P, KP × P; 10 P × P, Kt × P; 11 Kt—Q4 (if 11 B × Kt, B × B; 12 Kt × P, B—K3; 13 K—Ktr, QR—B1+ or 11 Kt × P, Kt × Kt; 12 R × Kt, B—K3+), B—K3; 12 K—Ktr, QR—B1; 13 B—Q3, P—KR3; 14 B × Kt, B × B; 15 B—B5, KR—Q1; 16 B × B, P × B; 17 Q—Kt6, R—Q3+. Rotlevy—Teichmann, Carlsbad, 1911.

(e) Not 9 P × KP, P × Kt; 10 P × Kt, P × P+.

(f) Or 13...Kt—K4; 14 B—K2, Q × Qch; 15 K × Q, B—Q2; 16 QR—B1 ±. Alekhine—Capablanca, 8th match game, 1927.

(g) Flohr—Capablanca, Moscow, 1935. White has a slight pull, but should not win against best play.

(h) Slightly better than 11 B—Q3, Kt—KKt3 (more precise 11...Kt—KB3 since 12 O—O—O with a strong attack is now feasible); 12 R—Q1, Q—K2; 13 P—KR4,

R—Q1; 14 B × Kt, RP × B; 15 P—R5, P × P; 16 R × P, Kt—B3 =. Lilienthal—Goglidse, Moscow, 1935.

(i) Better 12...Q—R4.

(j) Flohr—Dreiberg, Kemerli—Riga, 1939. Again White should not win.

(k) 9...B × B; and if 10 P—KR4, B—K2 is quite satisfactory for Black.

(l) If 13 QR—B1, Kt × Kt × Bch; 14 Q × Kt, B—B4!; 15 Q—Q4 (15 Q × P, KR—Q1; 16 Q—K5, Q × Q; 17 Kt × Q, QR—B1; 18 O—O, R × R; 19 R × R, R—Q7+), B—K5; 16 O—O, B × Kt with a quick draw. Alekhine—Capablanca, 10th match game, 1927.

(m) Flohr—Vidmar, Nottingham, 1936. Black must still play carefully.

(n) Best. The alternatives are: (i) 9 B—Q3, P—B5; 10 B—B5, R—K1; 11 O—O, P—KKt3 (not 11...Kt—B1?; 12 B × B, R × B; 13 B × Kt, B × B; 14 Q—B5++); 12 B—R3, Kt—B1; 13 B × B, R × B; 14 B × Kt, B × B; 15 P—QKt3,

## Additional Notes continued from p. 169

Q—Q2 / (weak is 15...Q—R4 ?; 16 P—QKt4 /, Q—Q1; 17 Q—R4, P—QR3; 18 P—Kt5, R—K3; 19 QR—Kt1+. Reshevsky—Capablanca, Margate, 1935); 16 P—QKt4, P—KR4 / = (Kashdan). (2) 9 P × P, Kt × P; 10 R—Q1, Q—R4 /; 11 B—Q3, QKt—K5; 12 KB × Kt, P × B; 13 B × Kt, B × B; 14 Kt—Q4, B—Kt5 =. Kostich—Teichmann, Carlsbad, 1911. (3) 9 B—K2, P—B5; 10 Kt—K5, Kt × Kt; 11

P × Kt, Kt—Kt5; 12 B × B, Q × B; 13 R—Q1, Q × P; 14 R × P, Q—B2; 15 R—Q4, Kt—K4; 16 P—B4, Kt—B3; 17 R × P, B—K3 = for Black has enough attack for the Pawn. Euwe—Tartakower, Noordwijk, 1938.

(o) A dangerous undertaking but Black's game is difficult.

(p) 16...B × P; 17 Q—B2. Eliskases—Tartakower, Noordwijk, 1938.

## Notes continued from p. 170

(i) Also feasible is 7...Kt—K5; 8 B × B, Q × B; 9 Kt × Kt (better 9 B—Q3), P × Kt; 10 Q × P, Q—Kt5ch; 11 Kt—Q2, Q × KtP; 12 Q—Kt1 (12 R—Kt1 ?, Q × RP; 13 B—Q3, Q—R6; 14 K—K2, Kt—B3; 15 Q—B4, Q—K2; 16 Kt—B3, P—KR3+. Znosko-Borovsky—Tartakower, Nice, 1930), Q—B6; 13 Q—B1, Q—R4; 14 P—B5, P—K4 ♣. Reshevsky—Tylor, Nottingham, 1936.

(j) Euwe—Thomas, Hastings, 1945-46.

(k) 13...QR—K1 is necessary, as Schlechter pointed out in a note to the brilliancy prize game Janowski—Chajes, New York, 1916, where the same position occurred.

(l) 16 B × Pch, K × B; 17 Q—R5ch, K—Kt1; 18 Q × Pch, K—R2 ? ? (K—R1 left White with nothing better than a draw by perpetual check); 19 Q—R5ch, K—Kt1; 20 Q—B7ch and drew. Mikenas—Kashdan, Prague, 1931. Mikenas could have won, as Janowski did in the game cited, by 19 Kt—

Q7 /, Kt × Kt; 20 R × Kt, B—B3; 21 Kt—K4 /, B × P; 22 Kt—Kt5ch, K—R3; 23 P—Kt4 and mates shortly.

(m) Another unsatisfactory defense is 6...P—B4; 7 P × QP, Kt × P; 8 B × B, Kt × B (or 8...Q × B; 9 Kt × Kt, P × Kt; 10 P × P, Q × P; 11 P—QR3, O—O; 12 R—B1 or here 8...Kt × Kt ?; 9 B × Q, Kt × Q; 10 R × Kt, K × B; 11 P × P+); 9 P × P, Kt × P (9...Q—R4; 10 R—B1, Kt × P; 11 B—Kt5ch); 10 Q × Qch, K × Q; 11 O—O—Och+.

(n) 7...P × P loses a Pawn by 8 B—Kt5, B—Kt2; 9 Kt—K5, O—O; 10 B—B6, B × B; 11 Kt × B, Q—K1; 12 Kt × Bch, Q × Kt; 13 Kt × P, and if now 13...Q—K5; 14 Kt × Ktch, P × Kt; 15 B—R6, Q × KtP; 16 Q—B3 /+—the Pittsburgh Variation.

(o) Or 8...Q × B; 9 Kt × Kt, P × Kt; 10 R—B1+.

(p) Salwe—Marco, Ostend, 1907.

## CAMBRIDGE SPRINGS DEFENSE

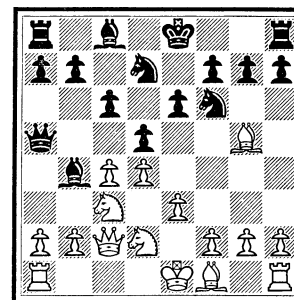
1 P—Q4, P—Q4; 2 P—QB4, P—K3; 3 Kt—QB3, Kt—KB3; 4 B—Kt5, QKt—Q2; 5 P—K3, P—B3; 6 Kt—B3, Q—R4\*

	31	32	33	34	35
7	Kt—Q2 B—Kt5.....				P × P
8	Q—B2** P × P.....		O—O (f)		B × Kt Kt × B
9	B × Kt Kt × B		B—K2..... P—K4 (g)	B—R4 (j) P—K4 (k)	Kt × P Q—B2
10	Kt × P B × Ktch.....		O—O (h) KP × P	QP × P Kt—K5	R—B1 Kt—Q4 /
11	Q × B Q × Qch	P—QR3 (c) B—K2	Kt—Kt3 Q—B2	KKt × Kt P × Kt	B—Q3 Kt × Kt
12	P × Q K—K2	P—KKt3 O—O (d)	Kt(Kt3) × P P × P	P—K6 Kt—K4	P × Kt B—K2
13	P—B3 B—Q2	B—Kt2 B—Q2	B × P B × Kt	P × Pch (l) R × P	O—O O—O
14	QR—Kt1 P—QKt3	P—QKt4 P—QKt3	P × B Kt—K4	O—O—O (m) B × Kt	P—B4 P—KKt3
15	Kt—K5 KR—QB1 = (a)	O—O P—QR4 = (e)	B—K2 ± (i)	Q × B Q × Qch = (n)	Kt—K5 (o) P—QB4 =

\* See p. 147, Diagram 59

\*\* DIAGRAM 71

cols. 31-34



[After 8 Q—B2]

(a) Alekhine—Bogoljubow, 10th match game, 1934.

(b) Weaker is 10...Q—Q4; 11 Kt—Q2 /,

B × Kt; 12 P × B, P—K4 ?; 13 P—K4, Q—K3; 14 B—B4, Q—K2; 15 O—O ±. Gruenfeld—Becker, Carlsbad, 1929.

(c) Or 11 B—K2, O—O; 12 O—O, R—Q1; 13 P—QR3 (13 QR—Q1, Kt—Q4; 14 Kt—K4, B—K2; 15 P—QR3, P—QKt3 =. Bogoljubow—Alekhine, 10th match game, 1929), B—K2; 14 P—QKt4, P—QKt3; 15 KR—Q1, Kt—Q4; 16 Kt—K5, Kt × Kt; 17 Q × Kt, B—Kt2 =. Mikenas—Alekhine, Prague, 1931.

(d) Less solid is 12...P—B4; 13 B—Kt2, B—Q2; 14 Kt—K5, P × P; 15 P × P, O—O; 16 O—O, B—Kt4; 17 KR—K1, KR—Q1; 18 Q—Kt3 ±. Loevenfisch—Chistyakov, Moscow, 1939.

(e) 16 Kt—K5, P × P; 17 P × P, R × R. Capablanca—Alekhine, 29th match game, 1927. Compare columns 35-36.

(f) Inferior is 8...Kt—K5; 9 Kt(Q2) × Kt, P × Kt; 10 B—R4, P—K4; 11 B—K2 ±.

Notes continued on p. 175

CAMBRIDGE SPRINGS DEFENSE

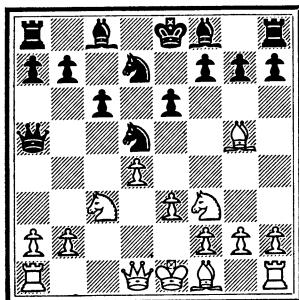
1 P-Q4, P-Q4; 2 P-QB4, P-K3; 3 Kt-QB3, Kt-KB3; 4 B-Kt5, QKt-Q2; 5 P-K3, P-B3; 6 Kt-B3, Q-R4\*

	36	37	38	39	40
7 (Kt-Q2).....	P × P (d)				
(P × P)	Kt × P**				
8 (B × Kt)	Q-Kt3.....			Q-Q2	
(Kt × B)	B-Kt5			B-Kt5	
9 (Kt × P)	R-B1			R-B1	
(Q-B2)	P-K4!			O-O (l)	
10 B-Q3 (a)	B-QB4!	P-QR3.....	Kt × P (i)	P-K4	
B-K2 (b)	P × P (e)	B × Ktch	Kt × Kt	Kt × Kt	
11 O-O	B × Kt	P × B	P × Kt	P × Kt	
O-O	P × B	P × P	B-K3 (j)	B-R6	
12 R-B1	P × P	P × P	P-QR3	R-QKt1	
R-Q1	O-O	O-O	Kt × Kt (k)	P-K4!	
13 Q-K2	O-O	B-Q3 (g)	Q × B	B-Q3	
B-Q2	Kt-Kt3	R-K1ch	Q × Q	R-K1! (m)	
14 Kt-K5	P-QR3	K-Q1	P × Q	O-O	
B-K1	B × Kt	Kt-B1	Kt-R7	P-QKt3 (n)	
15 P-B4	R × B	B-Q2	R-Q1	Q-K2	
P-B4! ± (c)	B-Q2 = (f)	Q-B2 ± (h)	Kt × P ±	P × P = (o)	

\* See p. 147, Diagram 59

\*\* DIAGRAM 72

cols. 37-40



[After 7... Kt × P]

(a) Also inadequate is 10 P-KKt3, Kt-Q4 (10... P-B4 is again feasible); 11 B-Kt2, Kt × Kt; 12 P × Kt, B-K2; 13 O-O, O-O; 14 P-QR4, B-Q2; 15 Q-Kt3, QR-Kt1 =. Guimard-Stahlberg, Buenos Aires, 1941.

(b) 10... P-B4! at once is playable, for if 11 Kt-Kt5, Q-Kt1; 12 P × P, B × P; 13 Kt(B4)-Q6ch, K-K2 ± (Euwe).

(c) 16 P × P, Q × P!; 17 Kt-K4, Q-R4; 18 Kt-Kt5, QR-B1. Alekhine-Kashdan, Bled, 1931.

(d) On 7 B × Kt Black secures easy equality by 7... Kt × B; 8 B-Q3, B-Kt5; 9 Q-Kt3, P × P; 10 B × BP, O-O; 11 O-O, B × Kt; 12 P × B, P-QKt3; 13 Kt-K5, B-Kt2; 14 B-K2, P-B4; 15 Kt-B4, Q-R3 =. Capablanca-Ed. Lasker, New York, 1924.

Notes continued on p. 175

Notes continued from p. 173

(g) Better than 9... P × P; 10 B × Kt, Kt × B; 11 Kt × P, B × Ktch; 12 Q × B, Q × Qch; 13 P × Q, B-Q2; 14 B-B3, KR-Q1; 15 P-QR4, QR-B1; 16 K-Q2 ±. Alekhine-Bogoljubow, 9th match game, 1934. Compare col. 31.

(h) Best. If (1) 10 QP × P, Kt-K5; 11 KKt × Kt, P × Kt; 12 O-O, B × Kt; 13 P × B, Kt × P; 14 Q × P, Kt-Kt3 (or 14... P-B3; 15 B-R4, B-K3 = but not here 15 B-B4?!, B-B4!/+); 15 B-B4, Kt × B; 16 Q × Kt, Q × BP ±. (2) 10 B × Kt, Kt × B; 11 QP × P, Kt-K5; 12 KKt × Kt, P × Kt; 13 O-O, B × Kt; 14 Q × B, Q × Q; 15 P × Q, R-K1; 16 KR-Q1, K-B1 ±.

(i) 15... Q-K2; 16 QR-Q1. Analysis by Bogoljubow.

(j) Less dangerous for Black is 9 B × Kt, Kt × B; 10 B-Q3, R-K1; 11 O-O (if 11 P-B4, P-B4; 12 O-O, BP × P; 13 KP × P, P × P; 14 Kt × P, Q-Q1; 15 Kt-K2, P-QKt3 ±), P-K4; 12 QP × P, R × P; 13 P × P, B × Kt (not 13... P × P; 14 Kt-Kt3, Q-Q1; 15 P-QR3, B-B1; 16 Kt-Q4, B-Q2; 17 Q-Kt3 ±. Euwe-Gruenfeld, Carlsbad, 1929); 14

Kt-B4, Q × QP; 15 Q × B, R-Kt4; 16 P-B3, B-K3; 17 QR-Q1, Q-QB4 =. Euwe-Bogoljubow, match, 1928.

(k) Strongest. Alternatives are: (1) 9... Kt-K5; 10 KKt × Kt, P × Kt; 11 B-K2, P-K4; 12 O-O, P × P (if 12... P-KB4; 13 P-B5 followed by B-B4ch+. Kashdan); 13 Kt × P, P-KB4; 14 P-QR3, P × Kt; 15 P × B, Q × P; 16 Q × P (16 P × P is sufficient for an advantage. Kashdan, Kt-B4; 17 B-K7+. Kashdan-Marshall, New York, 1932. (2) 9... P-B4; 10 Kt-Kt3, Q-R5; 11 B × Kt, Kt × B; 12 QP × P, Kt-K5; 13 P × P, B × Ktch; 14 P × B, Kt × P(B4); 15 R-Q1+. Capablanca-Alekhine, 7th match game, 1927.

(l) If 13 P-K7, R-K1; 14 O-O-O, Kt-Kt3; 15 R-Q8, B-KB4; 16 R × QR, R × R; 17 B-Kt3, B × Kt; 18 P × B, Kt × P ±.

(m) Or 14 B-K2, Kt-Q6ch; 15 B × Kt, P × B; 16 Q × P, B-KB4; 17 Q-Q2, R-Q2; 18 Q-B1, B-Q6+.

(n) Black should draw. Analysis by Euwe. (o) Lasker-Bogoljubow, Nottingham, 1936.

Notes continued from p. 174

(e) The alternative is 10... Kt(Q2)-Kt3; 11 B × Kt, Kt × B; 12 Kt × P, B-K3; 13 Kt-B4! (if instead 13 P-QR3?, Kt × Kt; 14 P × B, B × Q; 15 P × Q, Kt-R7+ but not 13... B × Ktch?; 14 P × B, Kt-Kt3; 15 Q-Q1 ±. Landau-Bogoljubow, Zandvoort, 1936), Kt × Kt; 14 Kt × Q, Kt × Pch; 15 Q × B, Kt × Q =.

(f) 16 R-B5, Q-R3. Flohr-Winter, Hastings, 1935-36.

(g) If 13 B-K2, R-K1; 14 R-B2, Kt-B1 ± for if 15 O-O?, Kt × P!+.

(h) Rabinovitch-Tartakower, Moscow, 1925.

(i) Other inadequate alternatives are 10 B-Q3, P-KR3; 11 B-R4, P × P; 12 P × P, Kt-B5 ± (Asztalos) and 10 P × P, Kt-B4; 11 Q-B2, Kt-R5+.

(j) Also good is 11... Kt × Kt; 12 P × Kt, B-R6; 13 R-QKt1, B-K3! ±. (Euwe.)

(k) Less convincing is 12... B × Ktch; 13 P × B, O-O; 14 Q-Kt2 (14 B-QB4?, P-KR3; 15 B-R4, Kt × KP!; 16 P ×

Kt, Q-B4; 17 B × B, Q × KPch++), KR-K1; 15 B-K2, Kt-Kt3; 16 B-KB4, Kt-B5; 17 B × Kt, B × B; 18 P-B3, P-KKt4; (analysis by Asztalos and Vukovich); 19 B × P! =.

(l) If instead 9... P-B3; 10 B-R4, O-O; 11 B-Q3! (not 11 B-B4, QKt-Kt3; 12 B-QKt3, Kt × Kt; 13 P × Kt, B-R6; 14 R-B2, P-QB4; 15 Q-Q3, P-B5!; 16 KB × P, Kt × B; 17 Q × Kt, B-Q2; 18 O-O, QR-B1; 19 Q-Kt3, Q-R3! ±. Stahlberg-Spielmann, Moscow, 1935), Kt × Kt (if now 11... QKt-Kt3; 12 O-O, Kt-R5; 13 Q-B2! ±); 12 P × Kt, B-R6; 13 R-QKt1, P-QB4 (or 13... Q-R4; 14 B-Kt3, B-K2; 15 Q-B2, K-R1; 16 O-O, P-K4; 17 B-B5 ±. Najdorf-Guimard, Mar del Plata, 1943); 14 O-O, P × P; 15 KP × P ±.

(m) Inferior is 13... B-Q3; 14 O-O, P-B3; 15 B-K3, R-Q1; 16 KR-Q1 ±. Spielmann-Pirc, Moscow, 1935.

(n) Gruenfeld-Vajda, London, 1927. (o) 16 P × P, Kt-B1; 17 P-R3, P-KR3; 18 B-Q2, Q-R4.

1 P-Q4, P-Q4; 2 P-QB4, P-K3; 3 Kt-QB3, Kt-KB3; 4 B-Kt5, QKt-Q2; 5 P-K3, P-B3

41	42	43	44	45
6 (Kt-B3).....		P-QR3 (j).....	Q-B2.....	B-Q3
(Q-R4)		B-K2	Q-R4	Q-R4
7 (P × P)		Kt-B3	B-R4 (l)	B-R4
(Kt × P)....	Kt-K5 (e)	O-O	P-B4	P × P
8 (Q-Q2)	P × KP (f)	B-Q3	Kt-B3	B × BP
QKt-Kt3	P × P	P × P	P-QR3	P-QKt4
9 R-B1 (a)	Q-R4 (g)	B × P	B-K2	B-QKt3
Kt × Kt	Q × Q	Kt-Q4	QP × P	B-Kt2
10 P × Kt	Kt × Q	B × B	O-O	Kt-B3
Kt-Q4	B-Kt5ch	Q × B	Q-B2	P-B4 (n)
11 B-Q3 (b)	K-K2	Kt-K4 /	KR-Q1	P × P
Kt × BP	P-Kt4	Kt(Q4)-B3	P × P	B × P
12 O-O	P-QR3 (h)	Kt-Kt3	P × P	O-O
B-Kt5	Kt × B	P-B4	B-Q3	O-O
13 P-QR3	Kt × Kt	O-O	P-Q5 /	Kt-Q4
Q × P	B-K2	P-Kt3	P-K4	P-QR3
14 R-R1	Kt × KP	B-R2	P-R4	Q-K2 (o)
Q-Kt6	P × Kt	P × P	O-O	P-Kt5
15 Kt-K5 ! (c)	Kt-B7ch ± (i)	Kt × P ± (k)	Kt-Q2 ± (m)	Kt-R4
O-O ! = (d)				B × Kt ± (p)

(a) Alternatives are: (1) 9 P-K4, Kt × Kt; 10 P × Kt, Kt-R5; 11 R-B1, Kt × P !+. (2) 9 P-QR3, Kt × Kt (after 9... B-Kt5; 10 R-B1, B × Kt; 11 P × B, Q × RP; 12 P-B4 White has enough for the Pawn); 10 Q × Kt, Q × Qch; 11 P × Q, P-B3; 12 B-R4, P-QB4 =. (3) 9 B-Q3, Kt × Kt; 10 P × Kt, Kt-Q4; 11 O-O (11 R-B1 transposes back to the column), Q × BP; 12 Q-K2, P-KR3; 13 B-R4, B-K2+ since White hardly has enough for the Pawn.

(b) Best. If (1) 11 K-Q1, B-R6; 12 R-B2, P-B3 ±. Loevenfisch-Euwe, *Leninigrad*, 1934. (2) 11 B-QB4, B-R6 ! (not 11... Kt × BP; 12 O-O, B-Kt5; 13 P-QR3, Q × P; 14 R-R1, Kt-K5; 15 Q-K2, Q-B6; 16 KR-B1, Kt × B; 17 Kt × Kt !+. Stahlberg-Rellstab, *Zoppot*, 1935); 12 R-QKt1, Kt × BP; 13 R-Kt3, P-Kt4 !; 14 B-Q3, P-Kt5+.

(c) Weaker is 15 B-B2, Q-Q4; 16 P-K4, Kt × P; 17 Q × B, Kt × B+. Alekhine-Euwe, 25th match game, 1935.

(d) 16 B-QB4, Kt-K5; 17 Q-K2, Q-B6; 18 QR-B1, Q-Q7; 19 Q-Kt4, Kt × B; 20 QR-Q1, Q-B6 (not 20... Q-B7; 21 B-Q3). White can now force a draw by perpetual attack on the Black Queen, but has nothing better. If instead of 15... O-O, 15... Kt-K5 ?; 16 Q-K2, Kt × B; 17 Q-R5+.

(e) 7... Kt × P is best (columns 37-41). Alternatives are: (1) 7... BP × P; 8 B-Q3, Kt-K5; 9 Q-Kt3, Kt × B; 10 Kt × Kt ±. (2) 7... KP × P; 8 B-Q3, Kt-K5; 9 O-O (9 Q-B2, Kt × B; 10 Kt × Kt, P-KR3; 11 Kt-B3 ± is also good), Kt × B (9... Kt × Kt; 10 P × Kt, Q × BP; 11 P-K4 gives White a powerful attack, while if 9... QKt-B3; 10 QB × Kt, Kt × Kt; 11 P × Kt, P × B; 12 Q-B2, B-Q3; 13 B-B5, B-K3; 14 QR-Kt1, Q-B2; 15 B × B, P × B; 16 P-K4, O-O-O; 17 P-B4+. Capablanca-Lasker, *Lake Hopatcong*, 1926); 10 Kt × Kt, Kt-B3; 11 P-B4 ±.

Notes continued on p. 178

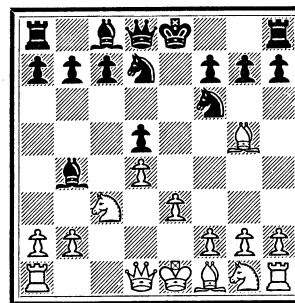
## MANHATTAN VARIATION

1 P-Q4, P-Q4; 2 P-QB4, P-K3; 3 Kt-QB3, Kt-KB3; 4 B-Kt5, QKt-Q2; 5 P-K3 (a), B-Kt5; 6 P × P, P × P\*

46	47	48	49	50
7 B-Q3.....				Q-R4
P-B4				B × Ktch
8 Kt-B3.....			Kt-K2	P × B
P-B5.....	Q-R4 (e)		P × P (j)	O-O
9 B-B2 (b)	Q-B2 (f)		Kt × P (k)	Kt-B3 (m)
Q-R4	P-B5.....	P-KR3	P-KR3	P-B4
10 O-O	B-B5	B-R4	B-R4	B-Q3
B × Kt	O-O	O-O	O-O	P-B5
11 P × B	O-O	O-O	O-O	B-B2
Q × BP (c)	R-K1	P-B5	B × Kt	Q-K2 (n)
12 Q-Kt1	P-QR3	B-B5	P × B	O-O
O-O	B × Kt	R-K1	Kt-B4	P-QR3
13 P-K4 !	Q × B	QR-Kt1	B-B2	KR-K1
P × P	Q × Q	B × Kt	R-K1	Q-K3
14 B-Q2	P × Q	P × B	R-B1	Kt-Q2
Q-R6	Kt-Kt3 (g)	Kt-K5	P-QKt3 (l)	P-Kt4
15 B-Kt4	B × B ± (h)	B × KKt ± (i)	Q-B3 ±	Q-R5 ± (o)
Q-R3 = (d)				

## \* DIAGRAM 73

cols. 46-50



[After 6... P × P]

(a) Ordinarily it makes no difference whether White plays P-K3 or Kt-KB3 first. An exception is 5 Kt-B3, B-Kt5; 6 P × P, P × P; 7 Q-Kt3, P-B4; 8 P-

QR3, B × Ktch; 9 Q × B, P-B5; 10 Q-K3ch, Q-K2; 11 Q × Qch, K × Q =. Capablanca-Spielmann, *New York*, 1927. See also p. 185, col. 74.

(b) More precise is 9 B-B5 and if 9... Q-R4; 10 Q-B2, transposing to col. 47.

(c) If 11... Kt-K5; 12 Q-K1 ! (weak is 12 B-KR4 ?, QKt-B3; 13 Kt-K5, B-K3; 14 P-QR3, P-KKt4; 15 B-KKt3, O-O-O; 16 R-Kt1, P-R4 ±. Foltys-Milner-Barry, *Margate*, 1937), Q × BP (or (1) 12... Kt × QBP ?; 13 P-K4+). (2) 12... O-O; 13 B-K7, R-K1; 14 B-Kt4 ±. (3) 12... QKt-B3; 13 QB × Kt, Kt × B; 14 P-K4 ±; 13 B × Kt, Q × Q; 14 KR × Q, P × B; 15 Kt-Q2 regaining the Pawn with the better ending.

(d) 16 B × R, P × Kt; 17 B-Kt4 (not 17 B-K7 ? ?, Q-K3 !; 18 resigns. Maroczy-Tenner, *New York*, 1926), Q-B3; 18 R-K1, P × P and there is no advantage in sight for White.

Notes continued on p. 178



## Notes continued from p. 176

(f) Weak is  $8 P \times BP, P \times P; 9 Q-R4, Q \times Q; 10 Kt \times Q, B-Kt5ch; 11 K-K2, B-R3ch; 12 K-Q1, B-Kt4 !+$ . Wheatcroft—Goldstein, London, 1926.

(g) Euwe recommends  $9 B-R4, Kt \times Kt; 10 P \times Kt, Q \times Pch; 11 Kt-Q2 \pm$ .

(h) An improvement on  $12 Kt-B3, Kt \times Ktch; 13 P \times Kt, B \times P; 14 R-B1, P-Kt5; 15 K-Q1, P-K4 !$  = Rubinstein—Réti, Berlin, 1928.

(i)  $15 \dots K-Q1; 16 Kt \times R, B-Kt2; 17 P-K4$ .

(j) Columns 43-45 show various ways of avoiding the Cambridge Springs. For  $6 P \times P$  (the Exchange Variation) see columns 51-60. See also cols. 13 and 19.

(k) Alekhine—Capablanca, 34th match game, 1927.

(l) Weaker is  $7 P \times P, Kt \times P; 8 P-K4$ ,

## Notes continued from p. 177

(e) Or  $8 \dots O-O; 9 O-O, B \times Kt; 10 P \times B, P-B5; 11 B-B2, Q-R4; 12 Kt-K5 !, Q \times BP; 13 Kt \times Kt, Kt \times Kt; 14 Q-Kt1 ! \pm$ . Alekhine—Vidmar, New York, 1927.

(f) Possible is  $9 O-O, B \times Kt; 10 P \times B, Q \times BP ? (10 \dots P-B5, transposing into col. 46, is necessary); 11 R-B1, Q-R4; 12 B \times Kt, P \times B; 13 P \times P, Kt \times P; 14 B-Kt1, B-K3; 15 Q-Q4 \pm$ . Analysis by Bogoljubow.

(g) No better is  $14 \dots Kt-K5, 15 B \times KKt, P \times B; 16 Kt-Q2 \pm$ .

(h)  $15 \dots Kt \times B; 16 B \times Kt, P \times B; 17 Kt-Q2$ . Bogoljubow—Spielmann, Dortmund, 1928.

(i) Becker—Spielmann, Vienna, 1936.

$Kt \times Kt; 9 B-Q2, Q-R5; 10 Q \times Kt^7 P-QR4; 11 Kt-B3, B-Kt5; 12 Q-B1, O-O; 13 P-QR3, B \times Bch; 14 Q \times B, P-K4 !; 15 R-B1 !, P \times P; 16 R-B4, Q-Kt4; 17 R \times QP, Q-QB4 =$ . If now  $18 R \times Kt ? ? , B \times R; 19 Q \times B, QR-Q1; 20 Q$  any,  $Q-B7++$ .

(m) Ragosin—Fine, Semmering—Baden, 1937.

(n) If instead  $10 \dots B-Kt5; 11 R-QB1, Kt-K5 ?; 12 O-O !, Kt \times Kt; 13 P \times Kt, B \times P; 14 B \times P, P \times B; 15 Q-Kt3+$ .

(o) Unsound is  $14 Kt \times KP ? , P \times Kt; 15 B \times Pch, K-R1$  (also good is  $15 \dots R-B2; 16 KB \times Kt, QR-Q1; 17 B \times Kt, KR \times B; 18 Q-R5, Q-B2+$ . Alekhine.

(p) Capablanca—Alekhine, 31st match game, 1927.

(j) Inferior is  $8 \dots P-B5; 9 B-B2, P-KR3; 10 B-KR4, O-O; 11 O-O, B-K2; 12 P-B3 \pm$ . Knoch—Fine, Amsterdam, 1936.

(k) Not  $9 P \times P, O-O; 10 O-O, Kt-Kt3; 11 R-B1, P-KR3; 12 B \times Kt, Q \times B =$ . Saemisch—Marshall, Bruenn, 1928.

(l) Pleci—Marshall, Liège, 1930.

(m) In the actual game White played his Kt out to KB3 first and his P to K3 later. The same position was reached.

(n) If  $11 \dots P-QR3; 12 Kt-K5, P-Kt4; 13 Q-R3 \pm$ .

(o)  $15 \dots Kt-K5; 16 Kt \times Kt, P \times Kt; 17 P-QR4 !, Q-Q4 ?; 18 P \times P !+$ . Capablanca—Spielmann, New York, 1927.

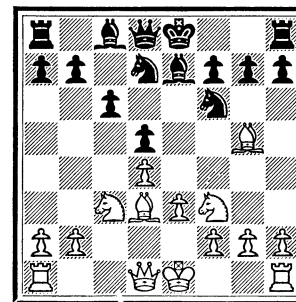
## EXCHANGE VARIATION (a)

1  $P-Q4, P-Q4; 2 P-QB4, P-K3; 3 Kt-QB3, Kt-KB3; 4 B-K15, QKt-Q2; 5 P-K3, P-B3; 6 P \times P, KP \times P; 7 B-Q3, B-K2^*$

	51	52	53	54	55
8	$KKt-K2 \dots Q-B2$	$O-O$ (b)	$O-O$		
9	$Kt-Kt3$	$KKt-K2 \dots$	$Kt-B3$		
	$Kt-K1$	$R-K1$	$R-K1$ (k)		
10	$P-KR4$	$P-KR3 \dots$	$Kt-Kt3$ (h)	$P-KR3 !$	
	$Kt(Q2)-B3$ (c)	$Kt-B1$ (e)	$Kt-B1$	$Kt-B1$	
11	$Q-B2$	$O-O-O$	$O-O-O$	$B-KB4 \dots$	$O-O$
	$B-K3$	$P-Kt4$ (f)	$B-K3 ?$ (i)	$B-Q3$	$Kt-R4$
12	$Kt-B5$	$P-KKt4$	$Kt-B5$	$B \times B$	$B \times B$
	$B \times Kt$	$P-QR4$	$B \times Kt$	$Q \times B$	$Q \times B$
13	$B \times B$	$Kt-Kt3$	$B \times B$	$O-O$	$QR-Kt1$
	$Kt-Q3$	$P-R5$	$Kt(B3)-Q2$	$Q-K2$ (l)	$Kt-B3$
14	$B-Q3$	$K-Kt1$	$B-B4$	$QR-Kt1$	$P-QKt4$
	$P-KR3$	$Q-R4$	$Kt-QKt3$	$Kt-K5$	$B-K3$
15	$B-KB4$	$QKt-K2 !$ (g)	$P-KR4$	$P-QKt4$	$Kt-QR4$
	$R-B1$	$B-Q2$	$P-Kt3$	$Kt-Kt4$	$Kt-K5$
16	$P-KKt4 \pm$ (d)	$Kt-B5 \pm$	$B-Q3 \pm$ (j)	$Kt \times Kt \pm$ (m)	$Kt-B5 \pm$ (n)

## \* DIAGRAM 74

cols. 51-55



[After 7... B-K2]

(a) No attention has been paid to transpositions in columns 51-60, so that for the purpose of these variations White may have played  $P \times P$  on any one of his 3rd, 4th, 5th or 6th moves.

(b) Better is  $8 \dots Kt-K5; 9 B \times B, Kt \times Kt; 10 P \times Kt, Q \times B; 11 Q-B2, P-KR3; 12 Kt-Kt3, Kt-B3$  (Tartakower). Compare col. 52.

(c) Not  $10 \dots B \times B ?; 11 B \times Pch, K-R1; 12 P \times B++$ .

(d) Alekhine—Capablanca, 32nd match game, 1927.

(e) If  $10 \dots Kt-K5; 11 B \times B, Q \times B; 12 B \times Kt, P \times B; 13 P-KKt4, Kt-B3; 14 Kt-Kt3, P-KR3; 15 O-O-O, P-QKt4; 16 K-Kt1 \pm$ . Dake—Kashdan, Milwaukee, 1935.

(f) Weaker is  $11 \dots P-KR3; 12 B-KB4, Kt(B3)-R2; 13 P-KKt4, P-QKt4 ?; 14 Kt \times KtP !, P \times Kt; 15 B-B7, Q-Q2; 16 B-B5, Kt-K3; 17 B \times Ktch, K-R1; 18 B-K5+$ . Lilienthal—Smyslov, Leningrad—Moscow, 1939.

(g) Flohr—Asgierrsson, Folkestone, 1933.

Notes continued on p. 181

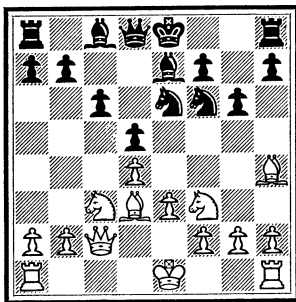
## EXCHANGE VARIATION

1 P-Q4, P-Q4; 2 P-QB4, P-K3; 3 Kt-QB3, Kt-KB3; 4 B-K15, QKt-Q2; 5 P-K3, P-B3; 6 P x P

	56	57	58	59	60
6 (KP x P).....					BP x P
7 (B-Q3) (B-K2) (a)					Kt-B3 B-K2
8 (Q-B2) (O-O).....			Kt-B1 (g)		B-Q3 O-O (l)
9 (Kt-B3) (R-K1)			Kt-B3 Kt-K3		O-O P-QR3
10 (O-O) (b) Kt-B1			B-R4 P-KKt3*		R-B1 P-Kt4
11 Kt-K5..... Kt-Kt5	P-KR3 B-K3		O-O..... Kt-Kt2 (h)	O-O-O O-O	Kt-K5 B-Kt2 (m)
12 B x B Q x B	P-R3 KKt-Q2		P-QKt4! P-QR3!	K-Kt1 (j) Kt-Kt2	P-B4 P-R3
13 Kt x Kt B x Kt	B x B Q x B		B x Kt B x B	P-KR3 B-KB4	B-R4 Kt x Kt
14 Kt-K2 (c) Q-R5 (d)	Kt-QR4 P-B3		P-QR4 B-B4	B x Kt KB x B	BP x Kt (n) Kt-K5
15 Kt-Kt3 ± (e) P-QKt4 P-QKt4! = (f)	P-QKt4 O-O = (i)		P-Kt5 O-O = (i)	P-KKt4 = (k) B x B ± (o)	B x B ± (o)

## \* DIAGRAM 75

cols. 58-59



[After 10... P-KKt3]

(a) Inferior is 7... B-Q3; 8 KKt-K2, Kt-B1; 9 Q-B2, P-KR3; 10 B-R4, Q-K2; 11 P-QR3, B-Q2; 12 P-K4!

P-KKt4; 13 B-Kt3, P x P; 14 Kt x P, Kt x Kt; 15 B x Kt, B x B; 16 RP x B, Q-Q3; 17 O-O-O ±. Spielmann-Capablanca, Carlsbad, 1929. Weak for White here is 8 Kt-B3, O-O; 9 O-O, P-KR3; 10 B-R4, R-K1; 11 Q-B2, Kt-B1; 12 P-K4?, P x P; 13 Kt x P, B-K2 ±. Marshall-Lasker, Moscow, 1925.

(b) Weaker is 10 O-O-O, Kt-B1; 11 B-KB4, Kt-Kt3; 12 B-Kt3, B-Q3; 13 B x B, Q x B; 14 P-KR3, B-Q2; 15 P-KKt4, KR-QB1; 16 K-Kt1, P-Kt4 =. Reshevsky-Monticelli, Syracuse, 1934.

(c) Another way is 14 P-QR3, QR-Q1; 15 KR-K1, R-Q3; 16 Kt-K2, R-R3; 17 Kt-Kt3, B-B1; 18 P-QKt4, P-R3; 19 QR-Kt1, Q-B2; 20 P-QR4 ±. Flohr-Apscheneek, Kemerl-Riga, 1939.

Notes continued on p. 181

Notes continued from p. 179

(h) On 10 O-O-O, Kt-Kt5!; 11 B x B, Q x B; 12 B x Pch, K-R1 is strong for Black. Not, however, 10... Kt-K5?; 11 B x Kt, P x B; 12 P-KR4!, P-KB4 (12... B x B; 13 P x B, Q x P; 14 Kt x P, Q-Kt3; 15 P-B3+. Nimzovitch-Spielmann, Bad Kissingen, 1928); 13 Q-Kt3ch, K-R1; 14 Kt-B4, Kt-B1; 15 Q-B7+ (Spielmann-Thomas, Carlsbad, 1929) or 14... Kt-B3; 15 P-R5, P-KR3; 16 Q-B7!, Kt-Kt1; 17 Kt-Kt6ch, K-R2; 18 Kt x B+. Alekhine-Kashdan, Pasadena, 1932. 10 P-KKt4!, Kt-B1; 11 P-KR3 transposes to column 52.

(i) Better is 11... Kt-Kt5! as in note (h).

(j) 16... B x P; 17 R-R3, B-Kt4; 18 B-K5, B-B3; 19 P-B4, Kt(Kt3)-Q2; 20 P-K4! Rudakovsky-Konstantino-

polsky, Moscow, 1945.

(k) If 9... P-KR3; 10 B-KB4 and White can advantageously castle Q-side and play for a K-side attack. Weaker on 9... P-KR3 is 10 B-R4, Kt-K1; 11 B-Kt3, B-Q3; 12 O-O, B x B; 13 RP x B, Kt-Q3; 14 P-QKt4, Kt-B3 =. Bolbochan-Guimard, Mar del Plata, 1943.

(l) Or 13... P-KKt3; 14 QR-Kt1, Kt-R4; 15 P-QKt4, P-QR3; 16 Kt-QR4 ±. Reshevsky-Flohr, Stockholm, 1937.

(m) 16... Q x Kt; 17 K-R2, Kt-Kt3; 18 P-B4!, Q-R5; 19 Q-Q2, Q-K2; 20 Q-KB2, P-B3; 21 P-B5!. Reshevsky-Smyslov, Leningrad-Moscow, 1939.

(n) 16... Kt-Q3; 17 P-QR4, P-B3; 18 KR-B1, B-B2; 19 Kt-Q2, P-KKt3; 20 P-Kt5. Keres-Najdorf, Margate, 1939.

Notes continued from p. 180

(d) Or 14... QR-Q1; 15 Kt-Kt3, Q-R5; 16 P-Kt4, R-Q3; 17 B-B5, R-B3; 18 B x B, Q x B; 19 QR-Kt1, P-QR3; 20 P-QR4 ±. Reshevsky-Horowitz, 9th match game, 1941.

(e) Flohr-Keres, Semmering-Baden, 1937. The advance of White's Q-side Pawns is difficult for Black to meet.

(f) 16 Kt-B5, Kt-QKt3; 17 P-QR4, P-QR3; 18 R-R2, P-Kt3; 19 KR-R1, K-B2! Flohr-Menchik, Margate, 1939.

(g) This little-known defense is one of Black's strongest resources. Two inadequate alternatives are: (1) 8... P-KR3?; 9 B-KB4, O-O; 10 O-O-O, P-QKt4; 11 Kt-B3, P-QR4; 12 P-KKt4 ±. Fine-Thorvaldson, Folkestone, 1933. (2)

8... Kt-R4; 9 B x B, Q x B; 10 KKt-K2, P-KKt3?; 11 O-O-O, P-KB4; 12 Kt-Kt3, QKt-B3; 13 Kt x Kt, Kt x Kt; 14 P-KR3, O-O; 15 P-KKt4 ±. Euwe-Bogoljubow, 6th match game, 1941.

(h) Also good is 11... O-O; 12 QR-Kt1 (12 Kt-K5, Kt-Q2; 13 B x B, Q x B; 14 P-B4, P-KB4; 15 QR-Kt1, Kt x Kt =. Stahlberg-Bogoljubow, Zoppot, 1935), Kt-Kt2; 13 P-QKt4, B-KB4; 14 KR-B1, Kt-K5; 15 B x B, Q x B;

16 P-Kt5, Kt x Kt; 17 Q x Kt, QR-B1; 18 B x B, Kt x B; 19 P x P, R x P =. Rossetto-Pilnik, Mar del Plata, 1943.

(i) 16 P x BP, P x P; 17 R(R1)-Kt1, Q-Q3; 18 P-K4, P x P; 19 Kt x P, B x Kt; 20 B x B. Drawn. Botvinnik-Keres, Leningrad-Moscow, 1941.

(j) This allows Black to simplify. 12 P-KR3 was stronger.

(k) Reshevsky-Stahlberg, Kemerl, 1937.

(l) No better is 8... P-QR3; 9 O-O, P-Kt4; 10 P-QR4, P-Kt5; 11 Kt-K2, P-R3; 12 B-R4, O-O; 13 Kt-B1, B-Kt2; 14 Kt-Kt3 ±. Konstantinopolsky-Alatortsev, Moscow, 1945.

(m) Or 11... Kt x Kt; 12 P x Kt, Kt-Q2; 13 B-KB4, B-Kt2; 14 Kt-K2, Q-Kt1; 15 Kt-Q4 ±. Euwe-Bogoljubow, match, 1928.

(n) Better than 14 QP x Kt, Kt-K5; 15 B x B, Q x B =. Eliskases-Fine, Semmering-Baden, 1937.

(o) 15... Q x B; 16 B x Kt, P x B; 17 Q-Kt4, Q-Kt4; 18 Q x Q, P x Q (Loevenfisch-Fine, Leningrad, 1937) and now 19 R-QB2! +.

LASKER'S DEFENSE

1 P-Q4, P-Q4; 2 P-QB4, P-K3; 3 Kt-QB3, Kt-KB3; 4 B-Kt5, B-K2; 5 P-K3, O-O; 6 Kt-B3, P-KR3; 7 B-R4, Kt-K5 (a); 8 B x B, Q x B\*

61	62	63	64	65
9 P x P Kt x Kt		Q-B2 Kt x Kt (h)		R-B1 P-QB3
10 P x Kt P x P		Q x Kt P x P !.....	P-QB3	Q-B2 (n) Kt-Q2
11 Q-Kt3 Q-Q3 ! (b).....	R-Q1	B x P P-QKt3	B-Q3 Kt-Q2	Kt x Kt P x Kt
12 P-B4 P x P	P-B4 Kt-B3 (f)	O-O B-Kt2	O-O (k) P x P	Kt-Q2 P-KB4
13 B x P Kt-B3 !	P x P Q-Kt5ch	B-K2 R-B1	B x P P-QKt3	P-B5 P-K4
14 Q-B3 (c) B-Kt5	Kt-Q2 Q x Q	KR-Q1 P-QB4	Q-Q3 (l) R-Q1	B-B4ch K-R1
15 Kt-Q2 (d) QR-Q1	Kt x Q Kt-Kt5	Q-R3 Kt-Q2	Q-K2 P-K4	O-O Kt-B3
16 O-O Kt-K2	R-B1 Kt x QP	R-Q2 P-K4 !	Q-B2 Q-B3 !	KR-K1 R-Q1
17 KR-B1 P-QKt3 ! = (e)	P-K4+ (g)	P x BP (i) Kt x P = (j)	Q-K4 R-K1 = (m)	Q-B3 P x P = (o)

\* See p. 149, Diagram 60

(a) In some of the games quoted on this and the next page the order of moves has been altered somewhat.

(b) Bernstein's Variation.

(c) No better is 14 O-O, Kt-R4; 15 Q-B3, Kt x B; 16 Q x Kt, B-K3; 17 Q-Kt5, B-Q4; 18 Kt-K5, P-QKt3; 19 KR-B1, P-QB4 ! =. Pomar-Bernstein, London, 1946. On 14 B-K2, B-K3 ! equalizes, for if 15 Q x P, QR-Ktr; 16 Q-R6, Q-Kt5ch ½.

(d) If instead 15 O-O, B x Kt; 16 P x B, QR-Q1; 17 K-R1, Q-B3; 18 B-K2, KR-K1 ½. Euwe-Eliskases, Noordwijk, 1938.

(e) 18 Kt-K4, Q-Q2; 19 Kt-Kt3, P-B3; 20 Q-R3, R-R1 !. Guimard-Eliskases, Mar del Plata, 1941. 17...P-B4 (instead of 17...P-QKt3) is met by 18 Kt-Kt3 ! (Grau-Eliskases, Buenos Aires, 1939), P x P; 19 Q x P, Q x Q; 20 Kt x Q, P-R3; 21 B-Q3, R-B1; 22 B-

K4 ±.

(f) If now 12...P x P; 13 B x P, Kt-B3; 14 B-K2 ± since 14...B-K3; 15 Q x P, Kt-Kt5; 16 O-O gives Black nothing. Against Ovsey Cutler's brilliant suggestion 12...B-K3 !?, which has not yet received a practical trial, the best reply is 13 P-B5, P-Kt3; 14 Kt-K5 !, Q-K1; 15 R-B1 ! ±. If instead 13 Q x P, P x P !; 14 Q x R, Q-R6 !; 15 R-QKtr, B-Q4 !; 16 R x Kt, B x Q; 17 R x Qch, K-R2; 18 R x B, Q-B8ch with a forced draw.

(g) 17...R-K1; 18 P-B3, P-KB4; 19 B-B4 !, P-B3; 20 Kt-B5 ! (an improvement on the older 20 B x Ktch, P x B; 21 P-K5 which leads to an even ending), P x P; 21 P x P, B-B4; 22 O-O, B x P; 23 Kt x P, QR-Ktr; 24 Kt-Q6, R-K3; 25 Kt x B, R x Kt; 26 B-Kt3, R x P; 27 R x P with a winning ending. Elis-kases-Vidmar, Stuttgart, 1939.

Notes continued on p. 184

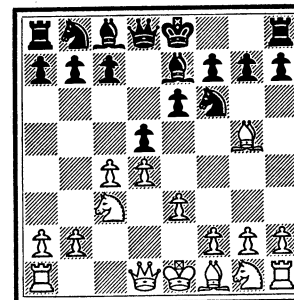
1 P-Q4, P-Q4; 2 P-QB4, P-K3; 3 Kt-QB3, Kt-KB3; 4 B-Kt5, B-K2; 5 P-K3\*

LASKER'S DEFENSE

66	67	68	69	70
5 (O-O).....			Kt-K5.....	P-KR3
6 (Kt-B3).....		R-B1	B x B	B x Kt (l)
Kt-K5 (a)		P-KR3 (i)	Q x B	B x B
7 B x B		B-R4	P x P	Q-Kt3
Q x B		Kt-K5	Kt x Kt	P-B3
8 P x P.....	Q-B2	B x B	P x Kt	Kt-B3
Kt x Kt	P-QB3 ? (g)	Q x B	P x P	Kt-Q2
9 P x Kt	Kt x Kt	P x P	Q-Kt3	O-O-O
P x P	P x Kt	Kt x Kt	P-QB3	P-QR4
10 Q-Kt3	Q x P	R x Kt	Kt-B3	Q-B2
R-Q1 (b)	Q-Kt5ch	P x P	O-O	O-O
11 P-B4 (c)	Kt-Q2	B-Q3	P-B4	P-KR4
Kt-B3	Q x KtP	P-QB3	R-Q1	P-KKt3 ? (m)
12 P x P (d)	Q-Kt1	Kt-K2	B-Q3	P-K4
Kt-R4 (e)	Q-B6	Kt-Q2	B-K3	P x BP
13 Q-B3	B-Q3 !	O-O	P-B5	P-K5
R x P	P-KR3	Kt-B3	P-QKt3	B-Kt2
14 B-Q3 ± (f)	K-K2 ! ± (h)	Kt-B4	R-QB1 ± (k)	B x P ± (n)
		B-Kt5 ! = (j)		

\* DIAGRAM 76

cols. 66-70



[After 5 P-K3]

(a) In most variations the interpolation ...P-KR3 strengthens Black but makes no essential difference. The variations on this page are confined to those where the omission or addition of ...P-KR3 does change the character of the opening. For lines not covered here see the analogous ones on the previous page.

(b) Better 10...Q-Q3 as in col. 61.

(c) Weaker is 11 B-Q3, P-QB4; 12 Q-R3, P-QKt3; 13 O-O, Kt-B3; 14 B-Kt5, P-B5; 15 Q x Q, Kt x Q =. Marshall-Treybal, Folkestone, 1933.

(d) If 12 P-B5, B-Kt5 (not 12...P-QKt3; 13 B-Kt5, B-Q2; 14 B x Kt, B x B; 15 O-O, P x P; 16 Q-R3+); 13 Q x KtP, B x Kt; 14 Q x Kt, B-K5; 15 Q-R4, QR-Ktr with a strong attack.

(e) Or 12...Q-Kt5ch; 13 Kt-Q2 as in col. 62.

Notes continued on p. 184

## Notes continued from p. 182

- (h) A playable alternative is  $9...Kt-KB3!$ ;  $10 B-Q3$ ,  $P \times P$ ;  $11 B \times P$ ,  $P-B4$ ;  $12 O-O$ ,  $Kt-B3$ ;  $13 KR-Q1$ ,  $B-Q2 =$ . Stahlberg—Lasker, Moscow, 1935.
- (i) If  $17 P-Q5$ ,  $P-K5$ ;  $18 Kt-K1$ ,  $Kt-B3 \mp$ .
- (j)  $18 QR-Q1$ ,  $R-B2$ . Van Scheltinga—Grau, Buenos Aires, 1939.
- (k) The ending after  $12 P \times P$ ,  $KP \times P$ ;  $13 O-O$ ,  $Kt-B3$ ;  $14 P-QKt4$ ,  $B-Kt5$ ;  $15 Kt-K5$ ,  $B-R4$ ;  $16 Q-B5$  (Flohr—Böök, Warsaw, 1935) is tenable for Black.
- (l) If  $14 P-K4$ ,  $B-Kt2$ ;  $15 KR-K1$ ,  $P-QB4!$ ; and if  $16 P-Q5$ ,  $P \times P$ ;  $17 P \times P$ ,  $Q-Q3 =$ . Weak here is  $15...KR-K1$ ;  $16 QR-Q1$ ,  $P-R3$ ;  $17 P-Q5$ ,  $KP \times P$ ;  $18 P \times P$ ,  $Q-Q3$ ;  $19 P \times P$ ,  $Q \times P$ ;  $20 Q-Q4$ ,  $Kt-B3$ ;  $21 B-Kt3 \pm$ . Lilienthal—Belavienetz, Moscow, 1940.
- (m)  $18 KR-Q1$ ,  $B-Kt2$ . Flohr—Bernstein, Zurich, 1934.
- (n) Or (1)  $10 Kt \times Kt$ ,  $P \times Kt$ ;  $11 Kt-Q2$ ,  $P-KB4$ ;  $12 P-B5$ ,  $Kt-Q2$ ;  $13 Kt-B4$ ,  $P-K4!$ ;  $14 Kt-Q6$ ,  $P \times P =$ . Capablanca—Rubinstein, Budapest, 1929. (2)  $10 B-Q3$ ,  $Kt \times Kt$ ;  $11 R \times Kt$ ,  $Kt-Q2$ ;  $12 P \times P$ ,  $KP \times P$ ;  $13 O-O$ ,  $R-Q1$ ;  $14 P-QR3$ ,  $Kt-B1$ ;  $15 Kt-Q2$ ,  $R-Q3$ ;  $16 Q-B2$ ,  $B-Kt5 =$ . Bogoljubow—Eliskases, 20th match game, 1939.
- (o) Bogoljubow—Eliskases, 18th match game, 1939.

## Notes continued from p. 183

- (f) Eliskases—Spielmann, match, 1932.
- (g) Correct is  $8...Kt \times Kt$  as in cols. 63-64, e.g.,  $9 Q \times Kt$ ,  $P-QB3$ ;  $10 B-Q3$ ,  $P \times P$ ;  $11 B \times P$ ,  $P-QKt3$ ;  $12 O-O$ ,  $B-Kt2$ ;  $13 KR-Q1$ ,  $Kt-Q2$ ;  $14 QR-B1$ ,  $KR-Q1$ ;  $15 B-K2$ ,  $P-KR3$ ;  $16 P-QR3$ ,  $P-QB4 =$ . Landau—Euwe, Bournemouth, 1939.
- (h) Flohr—Landau, Amsterdam, 1939.
- (i) If  $6...Kt-K5$  at once, White has an enterprising variant in  $7 B \times B$ ,  $Q \times B$ ;  $8 P \times P$ ,  $Kt \times Kt$ ;  $9 R \times Kt$ ,  $P \times P$ ;  $10 B-Q3$ ,  $P-QB3$ ;  $11 Q-R5!$ ,  $P-KB4$ ;  $12 Kt-K2$ ,  $Kt-Q2$ ;  $13 O-O$ ,  $Kt-B3$ ;  $14 Q-R4$ ,  $R-B2$ ;  $15 R-Kt3 \pm$ . Alekhine—Menchik, Margate, 1938.
- (j)  $15 Q-B2$ ,  $Kt-R4$ . Reshevsky—Euwe, AVRO Tournament, 1938.
- (k) Marshall—Vidmar, San Sebastian, 1911.
- (l)  $6 B-R4$  transposes to more usual lines (Lasker's Defense or Tartakower's Variation, cols. 71-73). Another alternative is  $6 B-B4$ ,  $P-B4$ ;  $7 P \times QP$ ,  $Kt \times P$ ;  $8 B \times Kt$ ,  $R \times B$ ;  $9 B-Kt5ch$ ,  $B-Q2$ ;  $10 Q-R4$ ,  $P \times P?$  (correct is  $10...Kt \times Kt =$ );  $11 Kt \times Kt$ ,  $P \times Kt$ ;  $12 Kt-B3 \pm$ . Hoenlinger—Bernstein, Paris, 1939.
- (m) Better is  $11...Q-B2$  and if  $12 P-K4$ ,  $P \times BP$ ,  $13 B \times P$ ,  $P-K4 =$ .
- (n) Alatortsev—Loevenfisch, 8th match game, 1940.

1  $P-Q4$ ,  $P-Q4$ ; 2  $P-QB4$ ,  $P-K3$ ; 3  $Kt-QB3$ ,  $Kt-KB3$ ; 4  $Kt-B3^*$ 

	71	72	73	74	75
4	<b>B-K2</b>				
5	<b>B-Kt5</b> .....			<b>B-B4</b> (o)	
	<b>P-KR3</b>			<b>O-O</b> (p)	
6	<b>B-R4</b> .....			<b>B \times Kt</b>	<b>P-K3</b>
	<b>O-O</b>			<b>B \times B</b>	<b>P-B4!</b> (q)
7	<b>P-K3</b>			<b>P-K4</b> (m)	<b>P \times BP</b>
	<b>P-QKt3</b> (a)			<b>P \times KP</b>	<b>B \times P</b> (r)
8	<b>P \times P</b> .....		<b>Q-B2</b> (i)	<b>Kt \times P</b>	<b>P \times P</b>
	<b>Kt \times P!</b> .....	<b>P \times P</b>	<b>P-B4</b> (j)	<b>Kt-B3!</b>	<b>Kt \times P</b>
9	<b>B \times B</b> (b)	<b>B-Q3</b>	<b>BP \times P</b>	<b>Kt \times Bch</b>	<b>Kt \times Kt</b>
	<b>Q \times B</b> (c)	<b>B-K3</b>	<b>Kt \times P</b> (k)	<b>Q \times Kt</b>	<b>P \times Kt</b>
10	<b>Kt \times Kt</b>	<b>O-O</b>	<b>B \times B</b>	<b>Q-Q2</b>	<b>B-Q3</b>
	<b>P \times Kt</b>	<b>P-B4</b> (g)	<b>Q \times B</b>	<b>O-O</b>	<b>B-Q3</b> (s)
11	<b>R-B1</b>	<b>Kt-K5!</b>	<b>Kt \times Kt</b>	<b>Q-K3</b>	<b>B \times B</b>
	<b>B-K3</b>	<b>KKt-Q2</b>	<b>P \times Kt</b>	<b>R-Q1</b>	<b>Q \times B</b>
12	<b>B-Q3</b> (d)	<b>B \times B</b>	<b>P \times P</b>	<b>O-O-O</b>	<b>O-O</b>
	<b>P-QB4</b> (e)	<b>Q \times B</b>	<b>P \times P</b>	<b>Kt-K2</b>	<b>Kt-B3</b>
13	<b>P \times P</b>	<b>P-B4</b>	<b>R-B1</b>	<b>B-Q3</b>	<b>R-B1</b>
	<b>P \times P</b>	<b>P \times P</b>	<b>Kt-R3!</b>	<b>Kt-B4</b>	<b>P-KKt3</b>
14	<b>O-O \pm</b> (f)	<b>P \times P \pm</b> (h)	<b>Q-R4</b>	<b>Q-K5 \pm</b> (n)	<b>Q-Kt3</b>
			<b>Q-B3!</b> (= l)		<b>R-Kt1</b> (= t)

## \* See p. 150, Diagram 61

(a) Tartakower's Variation.  $7...Kt-K5$  is Lasker's Defense;  $7...QKt-Q2$  is the Orthodox Defense with the interpolation of  $...P-KR3$ ,  $B-R4$ .

(b) No real improvement is found in either of the alternatives: (1)  $9 B-Kt3$ ,  $P-QB4$ ;  $10 Kt \times Kt$  (or  $10 KB-B4$ ,  $Kt \times Kt$ ;  $11 P \times Kt$ ,  $P \times P$ ;  $12 BP \times P$ ,  $Kt-B3$ ;  $13 O-O$ ,  $B-Kt2$ ;  $14 Q-K2$ ,  $R-B1 =$ . Botvinnik—Bondarevsky, Moscow, 1939),  $Q \times Kt$ ;  $11 P-QR3$ ,  $R-Q1$ ;  $12 R-B1$ ,  $B-R3$ ;  $13 B \times B$ ,  $Kt \times B$ ;  $14 Q-K2$ ,  $Q-Kt2$ ;  $15 O-O$ ,  $QR-B1$ ;  $16 KR-Q1$ ,  $P-QKt4!$  and White's advantage is negligible. Steiner—Bondarevsky, match U. S. A.—U.S.S.R., 1945. (2)  $9 Kt \times Kt$ ,  $B \times B!$ ;  $10 Kt \times BP$ ,  $B \times Pch!$ ;  $11 K \times B$ ,  $Q \times Kt$ ;  $12 R-B1$ ,  $Q-K2$ ;  $13 Q-B2$ ,  $Kt-Q2 =$ . Pomar—Tartakower, Hastings, 1945-46.

(c) If  $9...Kt \times B$ ;  $10 B-K2$ ,  $B-Kt2$ ;  $11 O-O$ ,  $Kt-Q2$ ;  $12 Q-R4$ ,  $P-R3$ ;  $13 KR-Q1$ ,  $Kt-Q4$ ;  $14 QR-B1 \pm$ . Flohr—Capablanca, Nottingham, 1936.

(d) Stronger than  $12 Q-R4$ ,  $P-QB4$ ;  $13 Q-R3$ ,  $R-B1$ ;  $14 B-K2$ ,  $Kt-Q2$ ;  $15 O-O$ ,  $P-R3 =$ . Eliskases—Spielmann, match, 1936.

(e) The ending after  $12...Q-Kt5ch$ ;  $13 Q-Q2$ ,  $Q \times Qch$ ;  $14 K \times Q$  is in White's favor.

(f)  $14...Kt-Q2$ ;  $15 P-K4!$ . Makogonov—Stolberg, Moscow, 1940.

(g) Also unsatisfactory is  $10...QKt-Q2$ ;  $11 R-B1$ ,  $P-B4$ ;  $12 B-Kt1$ ,  $R-B1$ ;  $13 Kt-K5$ ,  $Kt \times Kt$ ;  $14 P \times Kt$ ,  $Kt-Kt5$ ;  $15 B-Kt3$ ,  $B-R5$ ;  $16 Q-Q3+$ . Sanguinetti—Michel, Buenos Aires, 1945.

(h) Flohr—Capablanca, Moscow, 1936.

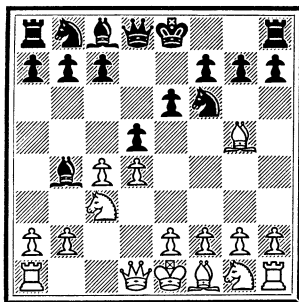
Notes continued on p. 188

1 P—Q4, P—Q4; 2 P—QB4, P—K3; 3 Kt—QB3, Kt—KB3; 4 Kt—B3

	76	77	78	79	80
4	QKt—Q2			Kt—K5	B—Kt5 (n)*
5	B—Kt5	P × P (f)		Q—Kt3 (l)	Q—R4ch
	P—B3	P × P		P—QB3	Kt—B3
6	P—K4 (a)	B—B4 (g)		P—K3	Kt—K5
	P × KP	P—B3		Kt—Q2	B—Q2
7	Kt × P	P—K3		P × P	Kt × B (o)
	B—K2 (b)	B—K2 (h)		KP × P	Q × Kt
8	Kt—B3	B—Q3		Kt × Kt	P—K3 (p)
	O—O	O—O		P × Kt	P—K4
9	Q—B2	P—KR3 (i)		B—B4 !	QP × P (q)
	P—K4 ! (c)	R—K1		Q—B3	P—Q5 !
10	O—O—O (d)	O—O		Kt—Q2	P—QR3 !
	P × P	Kt—B1		Q—Kt3	B × Ktch
11	Kt × P	Q—B2	Kt—K5	O—O	P × B
	Q—R4	Kt—Kt3	B—Q3	Kt—B3	P × KP !
12	B—K3 ± (e)	B—R2	B—R2	P—B3	B × P (r)
		B—Q3	KKt—Q2	P—Kt4	Kt—KKt5
13		B × B	P—B4	B—K2	B—Q4
		Q × B	P—B3	B—K3	KKt × KP
14		QR—Kt1 ± (j)	Kt—Kt4	Q—B2 ± (m)	P—B4
			P—KR4 = (k)		Kt × B = (s)

\* DIAGRAM 77

cols. 80-83



[After 4... B—Kt5]

(a) 6 P—K3, Q—R4 transposes to the Cambridge Springs Defense, 6 P × P to the Exchange Variation.

(b) If 7... Q—Kt3; 8 Kt × Ktch (8 B—Q3 ! gives White a dangerous but speculative attack), P × Kt; 9 B—B1, P—K4 (or 9... P—QB4; 10 P × P, B × P; 11 Q—B2, O—O; 12 B—Q3 ±); 10 B—Q3, P × P; 11 O—O, B—K2; 12 R—K1 ±. Alekhine—Bogoljubow, 11th match game, 1929.

(c) An improvement on 9... P—QKt3; 10 O—O—O, B—Kt2; 11 P—KR4, Q—B2; 12 B—Q3 ±. Alekhine—Bogoljubow, 19th match game, 1929.

(d) If 10 P × P?, Kt—Kt5; 11 B—B4, B—B4; 12 Kt—K4, B—Kt5ch ≠.

(e) Alekhine—Lundin, Oerebro, 1935.

Notes continued on p. 188

1 P—Q4, P—Q4; 2 P—QB4, P—K3; 3 Kt—QB3, Kt—KB3; 4 Kt—B3

	81	82	83	84	85
4	(B—Kt5)*			P—B4 (j)	
5	(Q—R4ch)		P—QR3 (g)	B—Kt5	
	(Kt—B3)		B × Ktch	BP × P (k)	
6	P—QR3	P—K3 (d)	P × B	KKt × P	
	B × Ktch	O—O	P × P !	P—K4 (l)	
7	P × B	B—Q2	Q—R4ch	KKt—Kt5... Kt—B3	
	O—O (a)	P—QR3 (e)	B—Q2	P—QR3 ! (m)	P—Q5
8	B—Kt5 !	Q—B2	Q × BP	Q—R4 ! (n)	Kt—Q5
	Kt—K2 !	P × P	O—O	B—Q2	B—K2 ! (p)
9	P—K3	B × P	P—K3	P—K4 (o)	Kt × B (q)
	Kt—K5	B—Q3	B—B3	Kt—B3 !	Q × Kt
10	B × Kt	P—QR3	B—K2	Kt × P	P—K3
	Q × B	P—K4	QKt—Q2	P × Kt	P × P
11	Q—B2	P—Q5	O—O	Q × R	B × P
	P—QB4 (b)	Kt—K2	R—K1	B—Kt5ch	O—O
12	B—Q3	P—R3	R—Q1	K—Q1	B—K2
	Kt—B3	P—QKt4	Kt—K5	Q × Q	R—Q1
13	O—O	B—R2	B—Kt2 (h)	Kt—B7ch	Q—Kt3
	P—QKt3	Q—Q2 !	P—QR4	K—K2	Kt—B3
14	P—QR4	P—K4	Q—Q3	Kt × Q	O—O
	P × QP = (c)	P—QR4 = (f)	P—QKt4 ! = (i)	R × Kt+	Kt—KKt5 =

\* See p. 186, Diagram 77

(a) Or 7... P—KR3; 8 B—B4, B—Q2; 9 P × P, KKt × P; 10 B—Q2, Kt—K4 =.

(b) Weaker is 11... P—QKt3; 12 B—Q3, B—Kt2; 13 O—O, QR—B1; 14 P—QR4, P—QR4 ? (correct is 14... P—QB4; 15 P—R5, P × QP =) 15 KR—Kt1, B—R3; 16 Kt—K5 ±. Makogonov—Romanovsky, Moscow, 1939.

(c) 15 BP × P, P × P; 16 B × P, B—Kt2; 17 Kt—K5, QR—B1.

(d) Inferior alternatives are: (1) 6 B—Kt5 ?, P × P (this position can also arise in the Vienna Variation, col. 115); 7 P—K3, Q—Q4; 8 B × Kt, P × B; 9 Kt—Q2, B × Kt; 10 P × B, P—Kt4+. Rabinovitch—Ragosin, Moscow, 1935. (2) 6 P × P, Kt × P; 7 B—Q2, Kt—Kt3; 8 Q—Kt5, P—QR3; 9 Q—Q3, B—K2; 10 R—Q1, P—K4 !; 11 P × P, Q × Q; 12 P × Q, B—KKt5; 13 B—K2, O—O—O; 14 B—B4, B—Kt5 ! ≠. Dubinin—Ragosin, Leningrad, 1934.

(e) An improvement on 7... B—Q2; 8

Q—B2, R—K1; 9 R—Q1, B—Q3; 10 B—B1, P—QR4; 11 P—QR3, P—R5 ?; 12 P—B5 ±. Eliskases—Ragosin, Moscow, 1936.

(f) Reshevsky—Ragosin, Semmering—Baden, 1937.

(g) On 5 P—K3 Black does best to transpose to the Nimzoindian Defense with 5... P—B4 or 5... O—O. Weak, however, is 5 P—K3, O—O; 6 B—Q3, Kt—B3 ?; 7 O—O, Q—K2; 8 P—QR3, P × P; 9 B × P, B × Kt ?; 10 P × B, P—K4; 11 P—QR4 !, R—Q1, 12 B—R3, Q—K1; 13 Kt—Kt5 ±. Dubinin—Ragosin, Leningrad, 1934. Weaker alternatives for White are: (1) 5 B—Kt5, P—B3 (5... P × P transposes into the Vienna Variation, col. 111); 6 P × P, KP × P; 7 Q—Kt3, B—K2; 8 P—K3, Q—Kt3; 9 B—Q3, Q × Q; 10 P × Q, P—QR4 =. Van Scheltinga—Fine, Amsterdam, 1936. (2) 5 Q—B2, Kt—B3; 6 P—K3, O—O as in the Nimzoindian Defense, p. 246, col. 42.

Notes continued on p. 189

## Notes continued from p. 185

- (f) If  $8 B-Q3, P \times P; 9 B \times P, B-Kt2; 10 O-O, QKt-Q2; 11 Q-K2, Kt-K5, 12 B-KKt3, Kt \times B; 13 BP \times Kt, P-QB4; 14 QR-Q1$  (Stahlberg—Becker, Buenos Aires, 1944),  $P \times P \mp$ .
- (j) Or  $8... B-Kt2; 9 R-Q1, QKt-Q2; 10 P \times P, P \times P; 11 B-Q3, Kt-R4; 12 B-Kt3, P-QB4; 13 B-B5, P-B5 =$ . Alekhine—Tartakower, Folkestone, 1933.
- (k) Stronger than  $9... KP \times P; 10 P \times P, P \times P; 11 B-K2, B-K3; 12 O-O, QKt-Q2; 13 KR-Q1, Q-Kt3; 14 P-QKt3, QR-B1; 15 P-K4 ! \pm$ . Kotov—Makogonov, Moscow, 1939.
- (l)  $15 B-Kt5, R-Kt1; 16 O-O, R-Kt3; 17 P-QKt3, B-Kt2$ . Kotov—Bondarevsky, Moscow, 1939.
- (m) Also good is  $7 P-K3, O-O; 8 Q-B2, P-B4; 9 QP \times P, Q-R4; 10 B-K2, P \times P; 11 O-O, Kt-R3; 12 Kt-K4, B-K2; 13 Q \times P \pm$ . Opocensky—Alekhine, Munich, 1942.
- (n) Fine—Alekhine, Nottingham, 1936.
- (o) The Exchange Variation is not to be recommended at such an early stage, e.g.,  $5 P \times P, P \times P; 6 B-Kt5, O-O; 7 P-K3, P-B3; 8 B-KB4, Q-Kt3; 9 R-QKt1, B-KB4; 10 B-Q3, B \times B; 11 Q \times B, P-QR4 =$ . Reshevsky—Steiner, Holly-

wood, 1945. An interesting variant is  $5 P-KKt3, P \times P$  (better here  $5... P-B4$ ; see the Catalan System);  $6 Q-R4ch, QKt-Q2; 7 Q \times BP, P-QR3; 8 B-B4, B-Q3; 9 B-K5 !, R-QKt1; 10 P-QR4, O-O; 11 B-Kt2, Kt-Kt5; 12 B \times B, P \times B; 13 P-Q5 \pm$ . Botvinnik—Romanovsky, Moscow, 1939.

(p) Not  $5... P-QR3 ?; 6 P-B5 !, O-O; 7 P-KR3, Kt-B3; 8 P-K3, P-QKt3; 9 P \times P \pm$ . Bogoljubow—Spielmann, Triberg, 1921.

(q) Weaker is  $6... P \times P; 7 KB \times P, Kt-Q4; 8 O-O, Kt \times B; 9 P \times Kt, Kt-Q2; 10 Q-K2, Kt-Kt3; 11 B-Kt3, B-B3; 12 Kt-K4, Kt-Q4; 13 P-KKt3 \pm$ . Flohr—Milner-Barry, Margate, 1936.

(r) On  $7 P \times QP, Kt \times P!$  transposes black to the column. Weaker is  $7... KP \times P; 8 B-Q3, Kt-B3; 9 O-O, P \times P; 10 KKt \times P!, Kt \times Kt; 11 P \times Kt, B-K3; 12 R-B1, Kt-K1; 13 R-K1, B-Q3; 14 B-K5 ! \pm$ . Loevenfisch—Kotov, Moscow, 1939.

(s) Also good are  $10... B-Kt5ch; 11 Kt-Q2, P-Q5 ! =$  (Bogoljubow) and  $10... Kt-B3; 11 O-O, P-Q5 =$ .

(t) Bogoljubow—Maroczy, Carlsbad, 1929.

## Notes continued from p. 186

(f)  $5 B-B4$  is met fairly easily by  $5... P \times P; 6 P-K3, Kt-Kt3; 7 KB \times P, Kt \times B; 8 Q-R4ch, P-B3; 9 Q \times Kt, Kt-Q4 =$ . Weak here is  $6... Kt-Q4; 7 KB \times P, Kt \times B; 8 P \times Kt, B-Q3; 9 P-KKt3, Kt-B3; 10 O-O, O-O; 11 Q-K2, P-QKt3; 12 KR-Q1 \pm$ . Capablanca—Becker, Carlsbad, 1929.

(g) Saemisch's Variation.

(h) If  $7... Kt-R4; 8 B-K5, P-B3; 9 B-Kt3$  is good for White, but not  $8 B-Q3, Kt \times B; 9 P \times Kt, B-Q3; 10 P-KKt3, O-O; 11 O-O, R-K1 \mp$ . Alekhine—Em. Lasker, New York, 1924.

(i) On  $9 O-O, Kt-R4$  is correct, but not  $9... Kt-K1; 10 Q-B2, P-KKt3; 11 KR-K1, P-KB4; 12 P-KR3, B-Q3; 13 P-R3, Q-B2; 14 P-KKt3, QKt-B3; 15 QR-B1, Q-K2; 16 B \times B, Kt \times$

$B; 17 Kt-K5 \pm$ . Botvinnik—Chekhover, Moscow, 1939.

(j)  $14... Q-K2; 15 P-QKt4, P-QR3; 16 P-QR4, Kt-K5; 17 KR-K1, Q-B3; 18 B \times Kt, P \times B; 19 Kt-Q2, Kt-R5; 20 Kt-K2 !, Q-Kt3; 21 Kt-KB4$ . Luckis—Rossetto, Buenos Aires, 1941.

(k)  $15 Kt-K5 !, P \times Kt; 16 BP \times P, B \times P; 17 P \times B, Kt \times P; 18 R \times Ktch !!, K \times R; 19 Q \times P, Kt \times B; 20 R-B1ch, K-Kt1; 21 Q-B7ch$ . Drawn by perpetual check. Alekhine—Vidmar, New York, 1927.

(l)  $5 P-K3, P-QB3; 6 B-Q3, P-KB4$  transposes into the Stonewall Variation, p. 215, col. 166.

(m) Brinckmann—Réti, Kiel, 1921.

(n) Known in Russia as the Ragozin System.

## Additional Notes continued from p. 186

(o) If  $7 Kt \times Kt, B \times Ktch; 8 P \times B, B \times Kt; 9 Q-Kt3, P \times P; 10 Q \times BP, Kt-K5 \mp$ . Freymann—Ragosin, Leningrad, 1934.

(p) Better is  $8 P-QR3, B \times Ktch; 9 P \times B, P-K4; 10 P-K3 \pm$  (Alekhine).

(q) Or  $9 P-QR3, KP \times P; 10 P \times B,$

$P \times Kt; 11 KtP \times P, O-O; 12 B-K2, P \times P \mp$ . Colle—Alekhine, Hastings, 1926'.

(r) If  $12 P \times Kt !, P \times Pch; 13 K \times P, Q-B4ch; 14 K-K1 (14 K-Kt3, P \times P), O-O-O$  with a winning attack.

(s)  $15 Q \times Qch, K \times Q$ . Spielmann—Fine, Zandvoort, 1936.

## Notes continued from p. 187

(h) Better is  $Kt-Q2$ . Both  $13 P-QR4, Kt-Kt3; 14 Q-Kt3, Kt \times RP !; 15 R \times Kt, B \times R; 16 Q \times B, Kt \times QBP \mp$  and  $13 Kt-K5, B-Q4; 14 Q-Kt3, Kt \times Kt; 15 P \times Kt, Q-R5 ! \mp$  are weak for White (Tournament Book).

(i)  $15 Kt-Q2, P-B4 !; 16 P-B3, Kt-Q3; 17 P-K4, Kt-Kt3; 18 B-QB1, P-R5 !$  Lissitsin—Ragosin, Moscow, 1939.

(j) Although this position can also arise from the Tarrasch Defense, it more frequently comes out of the Queen's Gambit Declined.

(k) If  $5... QP \times P; 6 P-K4, B-K2; 7 P \times P, O-O; 8 B \times P, Q \times Qch; 9 R \times Q, B \times P; 10 P-QR3, P-QR4 ?$  (weak but Black's position remains inferior in any case);  $11 P-K5, Kt(B3)-Q2; 12 Kt-K4, R-K1; 13 B-Kt5 \pm$ . Euwe—Aitken, Bournemouth, 1939.

(l) Better than  $6... P \times P; 7 P-K3, Q-Kt3; 8 B \times Kt, P \times B; 9 B \times P, B-Q2; 10 O-O, Kt-B3; 11 B-Kt3 \pm$ . Bogoljubow—Alekhine, 1st match game, 1934.

And if  $6... B-K2; 7 P \times P, Kt \times P; 8 B \times B, Kt \times B; 9 KKt-Kt5 !, Q \times Qch; 10 R \times Q, Kt-R3; 11 Kt-Q6ch, K-B1; 12 P-K4 \pm$ . Szabo—Mueller, Tata Tova-

ros, 1935.

(m) If  $7... P-Q5; 8 Kt-Q5, Kt \times Kt$  (or  $8... Kt-R3; 9 Q-R4, B-Q2; 10 B \times Kt, P \times B; 11 P-QKt4 \pm$ );  $9 B \times Q, B-Kt5ch; 10 Q-Q2, B \times Qch; 11 K \times B, K \times B; 12 P \times Kt \pm$ . Fine—Winter, Hastings, 1936-37.

(n) A blunder is  $8 Kt \times P ! ?, P \times Kt; 9 Kt \times Ktch, Q \times Kt ! !; 10 B \times Q, B-Kt5ch; 11 Q-Q2, B \times Qch + + +$ . Fine—Yudovitch, Moscow, 1937. The column move was suggested in analysis after the game by Dr. Lasker.

(o) Not  $9 P \times P, Q-Kt3; 10 B \times Kt, P \times B; 11 P-K4, R-R2 ! +$ . Or  $9 Kt \times P, B \times Kt +$ .

(p) Inferior is  $8... Kt-B3; 9 P-K4, B-K2; 10 B \times Kt, B \times B; 11 P-QKt4 !, O-O; 12 B-Q3, P-QR4; 13 P-QR3, B-K3; 14 R-QKt1 \pm$ . Euwe—Alekhine, 29th match game, 1937.

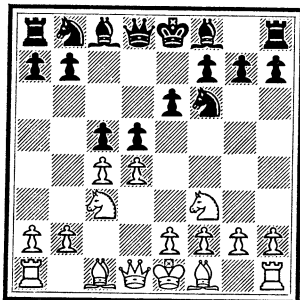
(q) If  $9 B \times Kt, B \times B; 10 P-K4, P \times P$  e.p. !;  $11 P \times P, P-K5; 12 Kt-Q2 !, O-O$  (stronger  $12... B \times P$ );  $13 Q-B2, R-K1; 14 Kt \times P, B \times P; 15 Q \times B, R \times Kt \mp$ . Bolbochan—Stahlberg, Mar del Plata, 1945.

1 P-Q4, P-Q4; 2 P-QB4, P-K3; 3 Kt-QB3, Kt-KB3; 4 Kt-B3, P-B4\*

86	87	88	89	90
5 (B-Kt5) . . . . . BP × P (BP × P)	BP × P			
6 Q × P B-K2 (a)	P-K4 Kt × Kt		P-KKt3 (o) Kt-QB3 (p)	
7 P × P (b) P × P	P × Kt P × P		B-Kt2 Kt × P (q)	
8 P-K3 Kt-B3	P × P B-Kt5ch (f)		KKt × Kt Kt × Kt	
9 B-Kt5! O-O	B-Q2 B × Bch . . . . .	Q-R4?	P × Kt P × Kt	
10 Q-QR4 (c) B-Q2	Q × B O-O	R-QKt1 (l)	Q × P Q × Q	
11 O-O P-QR3	B-B4 . . . . . Kt-B3 (g)	B-K2 (i) P-QKt3	Q × B Q × Qch	P × Q B-Q3
12 B-K2 P-R3	O-O P-QKt3	O-O B-Kt2	K × Q O × Q	P-QR4 (r) R-QKt1
13 B × Kt B × B	KR-Q1 B-Kt2	Q-B4 Kt-B3 (j)	B-Kt5 / (m) P-QR3	B-QR3 K-K2
14 Q-Kt3 B-K3 = (d)	Q-B4 R-B1 = (h)	KR-Q1 Kt-K2 ± (k)	B-Q3 ± (n) B × Bch K × B ± (s)	B × Bch K × B ± (s)

## \* DIAGRAM 78

cols. 86-90



[After 4... P-B4]

(a) Not 6... Kt-B3?; 7 B × Kt, P × B; 8 Q-R4, P × P; 9 R-Q1, B-Q2; 10 P-K3, Kt-K4; 11 Kt × Kt, P × Kt; 12 Q × BP+. Pillsbury-Lasker, Cambridge Springs, 1904.

(b) Weak for White is 7 O-O-O?, Kt-B3; 8 Q-R4, Q-R4; 9 P-K3, B-Q2; 10 K-Kt1, P-KR3 ±. Pillsbury-Lasker, St. Petersburg, 1895-96.

(c) Or 10 Q-Q2, B-K3; 11 O-O, Q-Kt3; 12 KR-Q1, KR-Q1 =. Euwe-Milner-Barry, Hastings, 1938-39.

(d) Dake-Fine, New York, 1936.

(e) If 5... KP × P; 6 P-KKt3 transposes to the Rubinstein-Schlechter Variation of the Tarrasch Defense (cols. 91-101). Even stronger on 5... KP × P is 6 B-Kt5, B-K3; 7 P-K4 ±. 5... BP × P; 6 Q × P, P × P; 7 B-Kt5 transposes to col. 86.

(f) Weak is 8... B-K2; 9 B-K2, O-O; 10 O-O, P-QKt3; 11 Q-Q2!, B-Kt2; 12 Q-K3, Kt-Q2; 13 B-Kt2, R-B1; 14 QR-B1 ±. Lillenthal-Flohr, Moscow, 1935.

Notes continued on p. 193

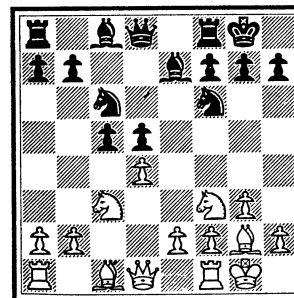
## TARRASCH DEFENSE: RUBINSTEIN VARIATION

1 P-Q4, P-Q4; 2 P-QB4, P-K3; 3 Kt-QB3, P-QB4; 4 BP × P, KP × P; 5 Kt-B3 (a), Kt-QB3; 6 P-KKt3, Kt-B3; 7 B-Kt2, B-K2; 8 O-O, O-O (b)\*

91	92	93	94	95
9 P × P B × P . . . . .		P-Q5		B-Kt5 (n) B-K3
10 Kt-QR4! (c) B-K2		Kt-QR4 (h) B-B4		R-B1 Kt-K5
11 B-K3 Kt-K5		B-B4! . . . . . Kt-K5	Kt-R4 (k) B-Kt5! (l)	B × B Q × B
12 R-B1 . . . . . Q-R4	Kt-Q4 Kt-K4 (f)	P-QKt4! B-B3 (i)	P-QR3 Kt-Q4	P × P! KR-Q1
13 Kt-Q4 Kt × Kt (d)	R-B1 Q-R4	P-Kt5 Kt-K2	Q-Kt3 B-K3	Kt-Q4 Kt × QBP
14 QB × Kt B-K3	B-B4! Kt-Kt3	B-K5 B × B	Kt-B5 Kt-Kt3	Kt × Kt P × Kt
15 P-B3 Kt-B3	B-B7 Q-R3	Kt × B Q-Q4	Kt × Bch Q × Kt	Q-Q4 QR-B1
16 Kt-B5 Q × P	P-QR3 B-Q2	Kt-Q3 QR-Q1 (j)	Q-Q1 Kt × Kt	KR-Q1 P-B4
17 Kt × B ± (e)	Kt-QB3+ (g)	Q-B2+	Q × Kt Q × P = (m)	P-QKt4 ± (o)

## \* DIAGRAM 79

cols. 91-95



[After 8... O-O]

(a) If instead 5 P × P, P-Q5; 6 Kt-R4, P-QKt4!; 7 P × P e.p., P × P; 8 P-QKt3, Kt-KB3; 9 P-K3, B-Q2!; 10 Q × P (or 10 P × P, B-Kt5ch; 11 B-Q2, Q-K2ch; 12 B-K2, Kt-K5+), Kt-

B3; 11 Q × P, B-Kt5ch; 12 B-Q2, B × Bch; 13 K × B, Q-K2+ (Bogoljubow).

(b) Weaker are 8... B-K3; 9 P × P, B × P; 10 Kt-KKt5!+, or 8... Kt-K5, 9 P × P, Kt × Kt; 10 P × Kt, B × P; 11 Kt-K1 followed by Kt-Q3-B4+ (Bogoljubow.)

(c) The Réti Variation. Inferior here is 10 B-Kt5, P-Q5! (10... B-K2 transposes to col. 95); 11 Kt-K4, B-K2; 12 Kt × Ktch, B × Kt; 13 B × B (or 13 Q-Q2, B-Kt5), Q × B; 14 Q-R4, B-K3; 15 Q-Kt5, QR-Kt1 =. Capablanca-Lasker, 9th match game, 1921.

(d) If 13... B-Q2; 14 B × Kt, P × B; 15 Kt-Kt3, Q × Kt (15... Q-B2; 16 Q-Q5+); 16 Q × B, Q × P; 17 Q × P, QR-Kt1; 18 Q × Kt, Q × Kt; 19 Q × P+.

(e) 17... P × Kt; 18 B-R3, Q-R3; 19 Q-Q3, Q-Q3; 20 Q-K3!, K-B2; 21 QB-B5+. Alekhine-Euwe, match, 1927.

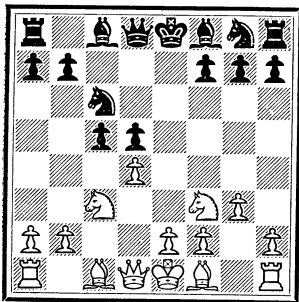
Notes continued on p. 193

## TARRASCH DEFENSE: RUBINSTEIN VARIATION

1 P-Q4, P-Q4; 2 P-QB4, P-K3; 3 Kt-QB3, P-QB4; 4 BP x P, KP x P; 5 Kt-B3, Kt-QB3; 6 P-KKt3 \*

	96	97	98	99	100
6 (Kt-B3).....				P-B5 (m)	
7 (B-Kt2)				P-K4 !.....	B-Kt2
(B-K2).....	B-Kt5 (e).....	P x P		P x P	B-QKt5
8 (O-O)	Kt-K5 (f)	KKt x P	Kt-KKt5	O-O	
(O-O)	P x P (g)	B-QB4	Q x P (n)	KKt-K2	
9 (B-Kt5)	Kt x B	Kt-Kt3 ! (i)	B-B4 !	P-K4	
(B-K3) (a)	P x Kt	B-Kt3 (j)	P-KR3 (o)	P x P (q)	
10 (R-B1) (b)	Kt x Ktch	O-O (k)	KKt x KP	Kt x P	
P-B5	Q x Kt	B-K3	Q x Qch	B-KB4	
11 Kt-K5	P x P	B-Kt5	R x Q	Kt-K5	
R-K1 (c)	Q x QBPch	O-O	B-K3	Kt x Kt (r)	
12 P-K3	B-Q2	Kt-R4	Kt-QKt5	P x Kt	
P-KR3	Q-B3	P-KR3	B-Kt5ch	Kt-B3	
13 B x Kt	O-O !	Kt x B	K-K2	B-Kt5 !	
B x B	R-Q1	P x Kt	R-Q1	Q x Q	
14 P-B4	Q-Kt3	B-K3	KKt-Q6ch	KR x Q	
Kt-K2	P-QKt3	Kt-QR4	K-K2	P-KR3	
15 P-Kt3 !+ (d)	B-QB3+ (h)	Kt-Q4+ (l)	B-Kt2 !+ (p)	B-B4 ± (s)	

\* DIAGRAM 80  
cols. 96-100



[After 6 P-KKt3]

(a) Also inadequate are: (1) 9... P x P; 10 KKt x P, Kt x Kt; 11 Q x Kt, B-K3; 12 QR-B1, Q-R4; 13 P-QR3, KR-Q1; 14 Q-Q3 !, P-Q5; 15 Kt-K4+. Flohr-Euwe, 11th match game, 1932.

(2) 9... P-B5; 10 Kt-K5, Q-Kt3; 11 B x Kt, B x B; 12 Kt x QP for if 12... Q x QP?; 13 Kt x Bch, P x Kt; 14 Kt x Kt, Q x Q; 15 Kt-K7ch++ (Euwe).

(b) Weaker possibilities are: (1) 10 P x P, B x P; 11 R-B1, B-Kt3 !; 12 P-Kt3, R-K1; 13 P-K3, Kt-QKt5; 14 Kt-Q4, P-KR3; 15 B x Kt, Q x B; 16 P-QR3, Kt-B3; 17 Kt x P, QB x Kt; 18 B x B, Kt x Kt; 19 P x Kt, QR-Q1 =. Rubinstein-Lasker, 1918. (2) 10 P-QR3, Kt-K5 =. (3) 10 B x Kt, B x B; 11 P x P, B x Kt (the sacrifice 11... P-Q5; 12 Kt-QR4 is not quite sound); 12 P x B, Q-R4 = (Euwe).

(c) If 11... Q-Kt3; 12 P-K3, Q x KtP; 13 P-B4 ±.

(d) 15... Kt-B4; 16 R-K1, B x Kt; 17 BP x B, Q-Kt4; 18 Q-B3, P x P; 19 P x P, QR-Q1; 20 Q-B4. Klein-Kitto, Bournemouth, 1939.

(e) The Wagner Variation.

Notes continued on p. 194

Notes continued from p. 190

(g) If 11... P-QKt3; 12 P-Q5+. Possible is 11... Kt-Q2; 12 O-O, P-QKt3; 13 QR-Q1, B-Kt2; 14 KR-K1, R-B1; 15 B-Kt3, Kt-B3; 16 Q-B4, Q-B2; 17 Q-R4, KR-Q1; 18 R-K3, P-QKt4 =. Keres-Fine, Ostend, 1937.

(h) 15 P-Q5, P x P; 16 B x P, Q-K2; 17 Kt-Kt5 !, Kt-K4 !; 18 B x B, Kt-Kt3. Alekhine-Euwe, 18th match game, 1937. Also good instead of 14... R-B1 is 14... Q-B3; 15 Q-K3, KR-Q1; 16 P-K5, Q-R3 !; 17 QR-B1, Q x Q =. Reshevsky-Fine, Hastings, 1937-38.

(i) Alternatives are: (1) 11 B-Kt5 (Knoch's suggestion), P-QKt3; 12 R-QB1, B-Kt2; 13 Q-K3, Kt-Q2; 14 O-O, Kt-B3; 15 B-Q3, Q-K2; 16 Kt-K5, KR-B1; 17 Kt-B4, R-B2; 18 P-K5, Kt-K1 =. Reshevsky-Horowitz, New York, 1935. (2) 11 B-Q3, Kt-B3; 12 Q-K3 (12 P-K5, Q-R4 =), P-QKt3; 13 O-O, Q-K2 =. S. Bernstein-Horowitz, New York, 1936.

(j) Or 13... Kt-Q2; 14 QR-B1, Kt-B3; 15 B-Q3, R-B1; 16 R x R, B x R, 17 R-B1, B-Kt2 ±. Alekhine-Gruenfeld, Prague, 1931.

(k) 15 QR-B1, Kt-Kt3. Fairhurst-Alekhine, Folkestone, 1933.

(l) More effective than 10 B-K2, Kt-B3; 11 R-QKt1, B x Bch; 12 Q x B, O-O; 13 B-Kt5, Q x Qch; 14 K x Q, Kt-R4; 15 KR-B1 ±. Stahlberg-Lasker, Zurich, 1934.

(m) Best. If instead 13 B-K2, P-QKt3; 14 KR-B1, B-Kt2; 15 K-K3, Kt-B3;

16 R-B3, QR-B1 =. Keres-Landau, Ostend, 1937.

(n) 14... R-Q1; 15 KR-QB1, P-QKt4; 16 R-B7, Kt-Q2; 17 K-K3, Kt-B3; 18 Kt-K5. Rubinstein-Schlechter, San Sebastian, 1912.

(o) On 6 P-K3 the easiest reply is 6... B-K2; 7 B-K2, O-O; 8 O-O, P-QKt3; 9 Q-Kt3, B-Kt2; 10 R-Q1, Kt-Q2 =. Seidman-Fine, New York, 1939. 6 P-K3, P x P; 7 P x P, B-K2; 8 B-QB4 transposes to the Caro-Kann Defense, p. 24, col. 21. 6 Q-Kt3 is met by 6... Kt-QB3; 7 P-K3, P x P; 8 P x P, B-K2; 9 KB-Kt5, O-O; 10 O-O, Kt-R4; 11 Q-Q1, P-QR3; 12 B-Q3, P-QKt4; 13 Q-K2, B-Kt2; 14 B-K3, R-B1 =. Denker-Thomas, Hastings, 1945-46.

(p) If 6... P x P; 7 Kt x P (7 Kt x Kt, Q x Kt; 8 Q x P, Q x Q; 9 Kt x Q, B-Kt5ch =), Kt x Kt; 8 P x Kt, B-K2; 9 B-KKt2, O-O; 10 O-O, Q-B2; 11 Q-Kt3 White has some pressure.

(q) Also good is 7... Q-R4; 8 Q-Q2, Kt x Kt; 9 P x Kt, P x P; 10 Kt x P, Kt x Kt; 11 Q x Kt, P-K4; 12 Q-K3, B-K2; 13 O-O =. Reinfeld-Reshevsky, New York, 1938. 7... B-K2; 8 O-O transposes to the Catalan System, p. 314, cols. 16-18.

(r) Simpler is 12 B-B4, B x B; 13 P x B, R-QKt1 =. Rubinstein-Tartakower, Carlsbad, 1929.

(s) Alekhine-Euwe, 30th match game, 1937.

Notes continued from p. 191

(f) Or 12... Kt x Kt; 13 QB x Kt, B-K3; 14 Kt-B3, Kt x Kt; 15 B x Kt ±.

(g) Capablanca-Znosko-Borovsky, Paris, 1938.

(h) If 10 Kt-QKt5, B x P; 11 B-Kt5, B-Kt3; 12 Kt-Q2, P-KR3; 13 QB x Kt, Q x B; 14 Kt-B4, B-QB4 =. Colle-Alekhine, Bled, 1931.

(i) Or 12... Kt x QKtP; 13 Kt x P, B-Kt3; 14 R-Kt1, P-QR4; 15 P-QR3 ! (not 15 R-Kt2, Q-K1; 16 P-QR3, Kt-

Q4; 17 B-B1, R-Q1; 18 P-K3, Kt x QBP =. Alatorsev-Fine, Moscow, 1937), Kt-QB3; 16 Kt x Kt, P x Kt; 17 R-Kt7+.

(j) Fine-Horowitz, New York, 1939.

(k) Strong but untried is Winter's suggestion 11 P-QKt4 !. Weak is 11 P-QR3, Kt-K5; 12 P-QKt4, Kt-B6; 13 Kt x Kt, P x Kt; 14 Q x Q, QR x Q; 15 B-Kt5, B x B; 16 Kt x B, Kt-Q5+.



## Additional Notes continued from p. 191

(l) Inferior is  $11 \dots B-K5; 12 P-B3, B-Q4; 13 P-K4, B-B5; 14 R-B2, Kt-Q2$  (better  $14 \dots P-KKt3$ );  $15 Kt-B5, Kt \times P; 16 Q-B2, Kt \times Kt; 17 Q \times B \pm$ . Bogoljubow—Maroczy, Bad Sliac, 1932.

(m) Fine—Vidmar, Hastings, 1936-37.

## Notes continued from p. 192

(f) Equally good is  $8 B-K3, B \times Kt$  (or  $8 \dots P-B5; 9 O-O, B \times Kt; 10 B \times B, P-KR3; 11 Q-B2, Q-Q2; 12 P-Kt3+$ , Gilg—Johner, Carlsbad, 1920);  $9 B \times B, Q-Q2; 10 O-O, R-Q1; 11 R-B1, B-K2; 12 Kt-R4, Kt-KKt5; 13 Kt \times P+$ . Post—Wagner, Oeynhausen, 1922. Weaker is  $8 B-Kt5, B \times Kt; 9 B \times B, Kt \times P; 10 B \times P, B-K2; 11 B \times Kt, B \times B; 12 Q-R4ch, K-B1!$  = Schlechter—Vidmar, Vienna, 1916.

(g) Or  $8 \dots B-K3; 9 Kt \times Kt, P \times Kt; 10 P-K4, BP \times P; 11 P \times P, P \times P; 12 Q \times P, B-K2; 13 O-O \pm$ . Brinckmann—Wagner, Hamburg, 1921.

(h) Euwe—Stoltz, Hastings, 1932.

(i) Inferior alternatives are: (1)  $9 Kt \times Kt, P \times Kt; 10 O-O, O-O; 11 B-Kt5, R-Kt1; 12 R-B1 \pm$ . Gruenfeld—Spielmann, Maehrisch—Ostrau, 1923. (2)  $9 B-K3, Q-Kt3; 10 O-O, B \times Kt; 11 Kt-R4, B \times B!$  (if  $11 \dots Q-Kt5; 12 P-QR3, Q-B5!$ ;  $13 R-B1+$ );  $12 Kt \times Q, B \times Kt; 13 B \times P, Kt \times B; 14 Q \times Kt, O-O =$  (Gruenfeld).

(j) Or  $9 \dots B-QKt5; 10 O-O, B \times Kt; 11 P \times B, O-O; 12 B-Kt5, B-K3; 13 Kt-B5, Q-K2; 14 Kt \times B, P \times Kt; 15 P-QB4!$ +. Rubinstein—Marshall, Breslau, 1912.

(k) If  $10 Kt \times P, Kt \times Kt; 11 Q \times Kt, B-K3$  with enough counterplay for the Pawn.

(l) Takacs—Spielmann, Meran, 1924.

(n) If  $9 B-K3, Kt-KKt5; 10 B-B4, B-K3; 11 P \times P, B \times P; 12 Kt-Kt, B-Q5!$ ;  $13 Kt-Q3, Kt-B3 =$ . Flohr—Lasker, Moscow, 1935.

(o)  $17 \dots Kt-K5; 18 Kt-R4, B-B2; 19 R-B2, Kt-Q3; 20 P-K3$ . Najdorf—Michel, Mar del Plata, 1943.

(m) The Folkestone (or Swedish) Variation, popularized by the Swedish team at Folkestone in 1933. If  $6 \dots B-K3; 7 B-Kt2, B-K2; 8 O-O, R-QB1$  (better  $8 \dots P-KR3$ );  $9 P \times P, B \times P; 10 Kt-KKt5, Kt-B3; 11 Kt \times B, P \times Kt; 12 B-R3, Q-K2; 13 B-Kt5, O-O; 14 B \times Kt, Q \times B; 15 Kt \times P!, Q-R3; 16 K-Kt2!$ ,  $R(B1)-Q1; 17 Q-B1!$ +. Rubinstein—Capablanca, San Sebastian, 1911.

(n) Or  $8 \dots Kt \times P; 9 B \times P, Kt-K3; 10 B-Kt5ch, B-Q2; 11 Kt \times Kt+$  or  $8 \dots P-KR3; 9 Kkt \times KP, B-KB4; 10 B \times P, Q \times P; 11 Q-Kt3, B \times Kt; 12 B \times Pch, K-Q1; 13 B-K3, Q-K4; 14 O-O-Och+$ .

(o) If  $9 \dots Q \times Qch; 10 R \times Q, B-KKt5; 11 B \times P!, B \times R; 12 B \times Pch, K-Q1; 13 K \times B, Kt-R3; 14 K-B1$  with a winning attack.

(p)  $15 \dots Kt-B3; 16 Kt \times KtP, B-Kt5ch; 17 P-B3, R \times R; 18 R \times R, B-KB4; 19 P-QR3$ . Rey—Johansson, correspondence, 1935.

(q) If  $9 \dots O-O?; 10 Kt \times P, Kt \times Kt; 11 P \times Kt, Q \times P; 12 P-QR3!$ +, e.g.,  $12 \dots B-R4; 13 Kt-K5, Q \times P; 14 Kt \times Kt, Q \times Q; 15 Kt-K7ch+$ +

(r)  $11 \dots Q \times P; 12 Q \times Q, Kt \times Q; 13 P-QR3!$ ,  $B \times Kt; 14 B \times B, B-B4; 15 B \times KtP, R-QKt1; 16 B-QR6+$ . Nimzovitch—Stoltz, match, 1933.

(s) Analysis by Euwe.

## TARRASCH DEFENSE

$1 P-Q4, P-Q4; 2 P-QB4, P-K3; 3 Kt-QB3, P-QB4^*$

	IO1	IO2	IO3	IO4	IO5
4 (BP × P).....				P-K3 (l)	
(KP × P).....	BP × P (e)			Kt-KB3	
5 (Kt-B3) (a)	Q-R4ch.....	Q × P		Kt-B3	
(Kt-QB3)	B-Q2 (f)	Kt-QB3		Kt-B3	
6 (P-KKt3)	Q × QP	Q-Q1		P-QR3.....	B-Q3
(P-B5)	P × P	P × P		B-Q3 (m)	B-Q3 (o)
7 (B-Kt2)	Q × QP	Q × P		QP × P	O-O
(B-QKt5)	Kt-KB3	B-K3		B × BP	O-O
8 (O-O)	Q-Kt3	Q × Qch		P-QKt4	Q-K2
(KKt-K2)	Kt-B3	R × Q		B-Q3	Q-K2
9 Kt-K5 (b)	P-K3	P-K3! (h)		B-Kt2	P × BP
O-O	B-QKt5	Kt-Kt5		P-QR4	B × P
10 Kt × Kt	B-Q2	B-Kt5ch		P-Kt5	P-K4!
P × Kt	O-O	K-K2		Kt-K4	P × BP (p)
11 P-K4	Kt-B3	B-R4		P × P	B × P
B-K3	Q-K2	P-QKt4		P × P	P-K4 (q)
12 B-Kt5 (c)	B-K2	Kt × P! (i)		B-K2	B-KKt5
P-B3	B-K3	B-B5		B-K3	B-K3
13 B-Q2	Q-B2	Kt-QR3! (j)		Kt-Q4	Kt-Q5
R-Ktr	QR-B1	B-R3		R-QB1 (n)	B × Kt
14 R-K1	O-O+ (g)	Kt-K2!+ (k)		O-O	B × B ± (r)
B-B2 = (d)				O-O =	

## \* See p. 151, Diagram 62

(a) Marshall's Variation  $5 P-K4$  is a speculative sacrifice best met by  $5 \dots QP \times P; 6 P-Q5, Kt-KB3; 7 Kkt-K2, B-Q3; 8 Kt-Kt3, Q-K2; 9 B-KKt5, QKt-Q2 \mp$ .

(b) Weaker is  $9 B-B4, O-O; 10 R-B1, Q-R4; 11 P-QR3, B \times Kt; 12 R \times B, P-QKt4; 13 B-Q6, R-Q1; 14 B-B5, Q-B2; 15 R-K1, P-QR4 =$ . Sultan Khan—Stahlberg, Folkestone, 1933.

(c) Inferior is  $12 B-K3, R-Ktr; 13 Q-B2, P-KB4!$ ;  $14 P \times QP, Kt \times P!$ ;  $15 Kt \times Kt, B \times Kt; 16 B-B4, B-Q3 \mp$ . Fine—Lundin, Folkestone, 1933.

(d) Gruenfeld—Stahlberg, Folkestone, 1933.

(e) The von Hennig—Schara or Duisburg Gambit.

(f) If  $5 \dots Q-Q2; 6 Kt-Kt5, Kt-QR3; 7 P-Q6, K-Q1$  ( $7 \dots Q-B3$  is better);  $8 B-B4, P-B3; 9 Kt-KB3, P-K4; 10 B \times P, P \times B; 11 Kt \times KP, Q-K3; 12 Q \times P, B-Q2; 13 P-K4+$ . Havasi—Tartakower, Budapest, 1929.

(g) Dake—Makarczyk, Folkestone, 1933.

(h)  $9 P-K4, Kt-Q5$  gives Black more play.  $9 P-B3$  exposes White to a strong attack, e.g.,  $9 \dots Kt-Kt5; 10 K-B2, Kt-B7; 11 R-Kt1, B-B4ch; 12 P-K3, Kt-R3; 13 B-Kt5ch, K-K2; 14 P-KKt4, P-B4; 15 P-Kt5, P-B5!$ ?.  $16 P \times Kt, P \times Pch; 17 K-B1, P \times P$  and Black won. Kashdan—Tartakower, Bled, 1931.

(i)  $12 B-Q1!$ ,  $Kt-Q6ch; 13 K-B1, P-Kt5; 14 Kt-K4, P-B4; 15 Kt-Kt3, Kt \times BP; 16 K \times Kt, R \times B \mp$ . Makarczyk—Betheder, Prague, 1931.

Notes continued on p. 197

## 1 P-Q4, P-Q4; 2 P-QB4

106	107	108	109	110
2 P-K3.....	P-QB4.....	Kt-QB3 (h)	Kt-KB3.....	B-B4 (n)
3 Kt-QB3	BP × P (e)	Kt-QB3 (i)	P × P	Kt-KB3 (o)
P-QR3 (a)	Q × P	P-K4 (j)	Kt × P (k)	P-K3
4 P × P	Kt-KB3 (f)	P × QP	Kt-KB3 (l)	Q-Kt3
P × P	P × P	Kt × P	B-B4	Kt-QB3
5 B-B4 (b)	Kt-B3	P-K3	Q-Kt3 !	P-B5
Kt-KB3	Q-QR4	Kt-B4	Kt-QB3 !	R-Kt1
6 P-K3	Kt × P	P-K4	QKt-Q2 !	B-B4
B-Q3	Kt-KB3	Kt-Q3	Kt-Kt3	B-K2
7 B × B	Q-Kt3	Kt-B3	P-K4	Kt-B3
Q × B	Kt-B2	B-Kt5	B-Kt3	Kt-B3 (p)
8 B-Q3	P-Kt3 !	Q-R4ch	P-Q5	P-K3
Kt-B3	P-K4	B-Q2	Kt-Kt1	O-O
9 KKt-K2	B-Kt2	Q-Kt3	P-QR4	B-QKt5
O-O	Kt-B3	P-KB3	P-QR4	Kt-K5
10 P-QR3	O-O+ (g)	B-K3	Kt-K5	O-O
Kt-K2		Kt-K2	QKt-Q2	Kt × Kt
11 Q-B2		R-B1	B-Kt5	Q × Kt
P-QKt3 ? (c)		Kt(K2)-B1	Q-B1	B-B3
12 P-QKt4 ± (d)		B-Q3 ±	Kt(Q2)-B4+ (m)	P-QKt4+

(a) Janowski's Defense. For 3...P-B3 see the Slav Defense. 3...P-QKt3 (occasionally played by Tartakower) is best met by 4 P × P, P × P; 5 Q-R4ch (or 5 P-KKt3, Kt-KB3; 6 B-Kt2, B-Kt2; 7 Kt-R3, B-K2; 8 O-O, O-O; 9 Kt-B4, Kt-K5 ?; 10 KKt × P, Kt × Kt; 11 Kt × Kt+. Reshevsky-Tartakower, Nottingham, 1936), P-B3; 6 Kt-B3, B-Q3; 7 P-K4, P × P; 8 Kt × P, Q-K2; 9 Kt-K5, B × Kt; 10 P × B, Q × P; 11 B-K3, Kt-B3; 12 Kt × Ktch, Q × Kt; 13 O-O-O ±. Euwe-Tartakower, Zandvoort, 1936.

(b) Another good line is 5 Kt-B3, Kt-KB3; 6 B-Kt5, B-K2; 7 P-K3, QKt-Q2; 8 Q-B2, O-O; 9 B-Q3, R-K1; 10 P-KR3, P-B3; 11 O-O-O, Kt-B1; 12 B × Kt, B × B; 13 P-KKt4, B-Q2; 14 QR-Kt1 ±. Stahlberg-Bogatyrchuk, Moscow, 1935. If here 9...P-B3 ?; 10

P-KKt4 !, Kt × P; 11 B × Pch, K-R1; 12 B-B4, QKt-B3; 13 B-Q3, Kt-R4; 14 P-KR3, KKt-B3; 15 B-K5+. Botvinnik-Alatortsev, Leningrad, 1934.

(c) This should have lost a Pawn by 12 P-K4, but White's reply also suffices for an advantage.

(d) Euwe-Alekhine, Zurich, 1934.

(e) Other moves transpose to more regular lines.

(f) Or 4 P-K3, P × P; 5 Kt-QB3, Q-QR4; 6 P × P, Kt-KB3; 7 B-QB4, Kt-B3; 8 Q-Kt3, P-K3; 9 Kt-B3, Q-Kt5; 10 O-O, B-Q2; 11 P-Q5 ±. Alapin-Duras, Carlsbad, 1911.

(g) Przepiorka-Seitz, Hastings, 1924-25.

(h) Tchigorin's Defense.

Notes continued on p. 197

## Notes continued from p. 195

(j) Cheriogolovko-Kisev, 1938. If now 13...Kt-Q6ch; 14 K-B1, Kt × KtPch; 15 Kt × B, Kt × B; 16 B-R3ch+.

(k) 14...Kt-Q6ch; 15 K-B1, Kt × B; 16 R × Kt, R-Q7; 17 Kt-B4.

(l) The Normal Variation.

(m) Also good is 6...Kt-K5 (recommended by Alekhine); 7 Q-B2, Q-R4; 8 QP × P, B × P; 9 P × P, P × P; 10 B-Q3, Kt × Kt; 11 P × Kt, P-KR3; 12 O-O, O-O =. Foltys-Fine, Stockholm, 1937.

(n) Rosselli-Alekhine, Folkestone, 1933.

(o) 6...QP × P; 7 B × BP, P-QR3, transposing to the Queen's Gambit Accepted, is a good course for Black.

(p) If 10...P × KP; 11 Kt × P, Kt × Kt; 12 B × Kt, B-Q2; 13 P-QR3, QR-K1; 14 P-QKt4, B-Q3; 15 B-Kt2 ±. Loevenfisch.

(q) Better is 11...Kt-Q5; 12 Kt × Kt, B × Kt and if 13 P-K5, Kt-Q2; 14 B-B4, Q-B4 =.

(r) 14...Kt-Q5; 15 Kt × Kt. Analysis by Loevenfisch.

## Notes continued from p. 196

(i) Also good is 3 Kt-KB3, B-Kt5; 4 P × P (not so convincing is 4 Q-R4, B × Kt; 5 KP × B, P-K3; 6 Kt-B3, P × P), B × Kt; 5 KtP × B, Q × P; 6 P-K3, P-K4; 7 Kt-B3 ±.

(j) If 3...P × P; 4 Kt-B3 (not 4 P-Q5, Kt-R4; 5 Q-R4ch, P-B3; 6 P-QKt4, P-QKt4 !; 7 Q × Kt, Q × Q; 8 P × Q, P-Kt5; 9 Kt-Q1, P × P =. Vienna-St. Petersburg, correspondence, 1897-99), Kt-B3; 5 P-K4, B-Kt5; 6 B-K3, B × Kt; 7 P × B, P-K4; 8 P-Q5, Kt-K2; 9 Q-R4ch, Kt-Q2; 10 O-O-O, Kt-Kt3; 11 P-KR4 with a strong attack (Euwe). The column is Euwe-Tartakower, Nottingham, 1936.

(k) Or 3...Q × P; 4 Kt-QB3, Q-QR4; 5 Kt-B3, P-B3 (5...Kt-B3; 6 B-Q2, B-Kt5; 7 P-K4, B × Kt; 8 P × B, Q-R4; 9 P-K5, Kt-Q2; 10 Kt-Q5 ±); 6 P-K3 ±.

(l) Against 4 P-K4 Black can equalize with 4...Kt-KB3; 5 B-Q3 (or 5 Kt-QB3, P-K4 !), P-K4; 6 P × P, Kt-Kt5; 7 Kt-KB3, Kt-QB3; 8 B-KKt5, B-K2; 9 B × B (9 B-KB4 ? ?). Kt-Kt5 and wins), Q × B; 10 Kt-B3, QKt × P; 11 Kt × Kt, Kt × Kt (11...Q × Kt ?; 12 P-KR3, Kt-B3; 13 Q-Q2, B-Q2;

14 Q-K3, B-B3; 15 O-O-O, O-O; 16 P-B4 ±. Alekhine-Marshall, Baden-Baden, 1925); 12 B-K2, P-QB3 =. Gruenfeld-Becker, Breslau, 1925.

(m) Takacs-Havasi, Budapest, 1926.

(n) Another unusual alternative is 2...P-KKt3; 3 P × P, Q × P; 4 Kt-QB3, Q-QR4; 5 Kt-B3, B-Kt2; 6 B-Q2, P-QB3; 7 P-K4, Q-Kt3; 8 B-QB4 !, B × P; 9 Kt × B, Q × Kt; 10 Q-Kt3, Q-Kt2; 11 O-O, Kt-Q2; 12 KR-K1, Kt-K4; 13 P-B4, Kt × B; 14 Q × Kt, Kt-R3; 15 Q-B5 ! ±. Stahlberg-Alekhine, Kemer, 1937.

(o) Best. If instead 3 Q-Kt3, P-K4 !; 4 Q × P, Kt-Q2; 5 Kt-KB3, R-Kt1; 6 Q-R6, B-Kt5ch; 7 Kt-B3, KKt-B3; 8 P-K3, O-O; 9 P-QR3, B-Q3 with a strong attack, for if 10 P-B5 ?, B × P !; 11 P × B, Kt × P; 12 Q × P, Kt-Kt6+. If here 4 QP × P, Kt-QB3; 5 P × P ? (5 Kt-KB3, P-Q5 is best), B-Kt5ch !; 6 Kt-B3, Kt-Q5+.

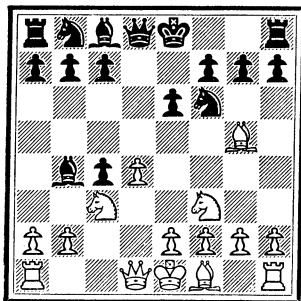
(p) Or 7...P-KKt4 ?; 8 B-Kt3, P-Kt5; 9 Kt-K5, B-B3; 10 Q-R4, Kt-K2; 11 Kt × Kt, P × Kt; 12 P-Kt3+. Fine-Grau, Stockholm, 1937.

## VIENNA VARIATION

1 P-Q4, P-Q4; 2 P-QB4, P-K3; 3 Kt-KB3, Kt-KB3; 4 B-Kt5, B-Kt5ch; 5 Kt-B3 (a), P x P\*

III	III2	III3	III4	III5
6 P-K4..... P-B4.....				Q-R4ch (m) Kt-B3
7 B x P..... P x P		P-K5 P x P	B x Kt Q x B	P-K4 B-Q2
8 Kt x P..... Q-R4.....	Q-B2 / (e)	Q-R4ch (g) Kt-B3	B x P P-B4	Q-B2 P-KR3
9 B x Kt..... B x Ktch	Q-R4ch Kt-B3	O-O-O B-Q2 (h)	O-O (k) P x P	B-Q2 Kt-QR4 / (n)
10 P x B..... Q x Pch (b)	B x Kt P x B	Kt-K4 / B-K2 /	Q-R4ch Kt-B3	P-K5 Kt-Kt1 /
11 K-B1..... Q x Bch	B-Kt5 B-Q2	P x Kt P x P	B-Kt5 O-O	B-K2 Kt-K2
12 K-Kt1..... Kt-Q2 /	B x Kt B x Ktch	B-R4 R-QB1 / (i)	B x Kt P x B	Kt-K4 B x Bch
13 R-B1 / Q-R3 (c)	P x B B x B (f)	K-Kt1 Kt-R4	Q x B P x Kt (l)	Kt(K4) x B P-QKt4 (o)
14 B x P ± (d) R-QB1 =	Q-B4 R-QB1 =	Q-B2 P-K4 / = (j)	Q x P Q x Q =	P-QR4 P-QB3 ±

\* DIAGRAM 81  
cols. III-III5



[After 5... P x P]

(a) If 5 QKt-Q2?, P x P; 6 Q-R4ch, Kt-B3; 7 P-K3, Q-Q4 /; 8 B x Kt, P x B; 9 P-QR3, P-Kt4 ±.

(b) An improvement on 10... P x B; 11

O-O, Kt-Q2; 12 K-R1, Kt-Kt3; 13 B-Kt3 (or 13 B-Kt5ch with a strong attack), B-Q2; 14 Q-B3, K-K2; 15 Q-K3, QR-QB1; 16 QR-B1 ±. Kotov-Yudovitch, Moscow, 1939, a game which ended in a brilliant victory for White.

(c) If 13... Q x P?; 14 B x P, R-KKt1; 15 Kt-Kt5+.

(d) 14... R-KKt1; 15 B-R6, Kt-K4; 16 Q-R5, Kt-Q6; 17 R-B7, R-Kt3; 18 B-K3 with a powerful attack.

(e) Another possibility, suggested by the Tournament Book of the 1939 U.S.S.R. championship, is 8... QKt-Q2; for if 9 O-O, B x Kt; 10 P x B, Q-R4, and if 9 B-Kt5, O-O; 10 KB x Kt, B x B; 11 P-K5, equally 11... Q-R4 / ±. This idea is worth a try in practice.

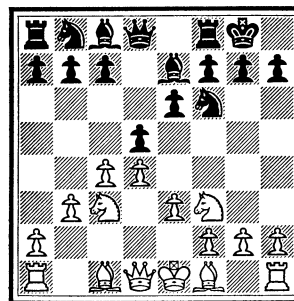
(f) More difficult is 13... P x B; 14 Q-B2, P-QB4; 15 Kt-K2, B-B3; 16 O-O. Ber-Ragosin, Leningrad, 1945.

Notes continued on p. 201

1 P-Q4, P-Q4; 2 P-QB4, P-K3; 3 Kt-KB3, Kt-KB3

III6	III7	III8	III9	III10
4 (B-Kt5)..... P-KR3 (a).....			Kt-B3 B-K2 (l)	
5 B x Kt (b) Q x B		P-K3 O-O	P-K3 O-O (m)	
6 Q-Kt3..... P-B3	Kt-B3 P-B3 (e)	QKt-Q2 (i) P-QKt3 (j)	P-QKt3* P-B4.....	P-QKt3 (r)
7 QKt-Q2 Kt-Q2	Q-Kt3 Kt-Q2 (f)	B-Q3 B-Kt2	B-Q3 P-QKt3 (n)	B-Q3 B-Kt2
8 P-K4 P x KP	P-K3 (g) B-Q3	Q-B2 QKt-Q2	O-O B-Kt2	O-O QKt-Q2
9 Kt x P Q-B5	B-K2 Q-K2	O-O P-B4	B-Kt2 Kt-B3 (o)	B-Kt2 Kt-K5
10 B-Q3 Kt-B3 / (c)	Kt-Q2 O-O	QR-Q1 P-KR3	R-B1 (p) R-B1	Q-K2 P-QR3
11 Kt x Ktch Q x Kt	O-O-O Kt-B3	B-R4 BP x P	P x BP (q) KtP x P	KR-Q1 B-Q3 (s)
12 O-O B-Q3	B-B3? P-QKt4 /	KP x P P x P	Q-K2 P-Q5	Kt-K5 Q-R5
13 KR-K1 O-O = (d)	P-B5 B-B2 ± (h)	B x P R-B1 = (k)	P x P ± P x P ±	P-B4 QKt-B3 = (t)

\* DIAGRAM 82  
cols. III9-III10



[After 6 P-QKt3]

(a) The Duras Variation.

(b) On 5 B-R4?, Black can take the Pawn and hold it: 5... B-Kt5ch; 6 Kt-

B3 (or 6 QKt-Q2, P x P as in note (a) cols. III-III5), P x P; 7 P-K3, P-QKt4; 8 P-QR4, P-B3; 9 B-K2, QKt-Q2; 10 O-O, Q-Kt3; 11 Q-B2, B-Kt2+. Janowski-Tartakower, New York, 1924.

(c) Better than 10... P-K4; 11 O-O, B-K2; 12 KR-K1, P x P; 13 Kt x P, O-O; 14 B-B2, Kt-B3; 15 QR-Q1, P-KKt3 (Euwe-Fine) AVRO tournament, 1938; 16 Q-QB3 ±.

(d) 14 P-B5, B-B2; 15 B-K4, R-Q1; 16 QR-Q1, R-Kt1; 17 Kt-K5, B-Q2. Capablanca-Stahlberg, Buenos Aires, 1939.

(e) Weak is 6... B-Kt5; 7 Q-Kt3, P-B4; 8 P x BP, Kt-B3; 9 P x P, P x P; 10 P-QR3, B x Ktch; 11 P x B+ (Alekhine).

Notes continued on p. 201

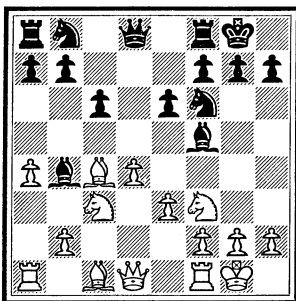
## SLAV DEFENSE

1 P—Q4, P—Q4; 2 P—QB4, P—QB3; 3 Kt—KB3, Kt—B3; 4 Kt—B3  
P × P; 5 P—QR4, B—B4; 6 P—K3, P—K3 (a); 7 B × P, B—QKt5; 8 O—  
O, O—O (b)\*

	I21	I22	I23	I24	I25
9	Q—K2			Q—Kt3	Kt—R4 (p)
	B—Kt5	Kt—K5 (e)**		Q—K2	B—Kt5 / (q)
10	R—Q1	B—Q3 /	Kt—R2 (i)	B—Q2 (n)	P—B3
	QKt—Q2	B × Kt	B—Q3 (j)	P—B4 (o)	Kt—Q4 /
11	P—R3	P × B / (f)	B—Q3	KR—K1	Q—K1
	B—KR4	Kt × QBP	Kt—Kt4 (k)	B × Kt	B—K2 /
12	P—K4	Q—B2	Kt—K1	B × B	P × B
	Q—K2	B × B	B × B	Kt—K5	B × Kt
13	P—K5	Q × B	Kt × B	P—Q5	P—KKt3
	Kt—Q4	Kt—Q4	Kt—K5	Kt × B	B—K2
14	Kt—K4	B—R3	Kt—B3 (l)	P × Kt	K—Kt2
	P—KR3 / (c)	R—K1	Kt × Kt	P × P	Kt—Q2
15	Kt—Kt3	QR—Kt1	P × Kt	B × P	P—K4
	B—Kt3	P—QKt3	Kt—Q2	B—K5 /	Kt(Q4)—Kt3
16	Kt—K1	KR—B1	B—R3	P—B4	B—R2
	P—B3	Kt—B3 (g)	Q—K2	B × Kt	P—QR4
17	P × P	P—K4 ± (h)	Q—Kt2	B × B	B—K3
	Q × P = (d)		QR—Kt1 = (m)	Kt—B3 =	B—Kt4 =

## \* DIAGRAM 83

cols. I21—I25



[After 8... O—O]

(a) If 6... Kt—R3?; 7 B × P, Kt—QKt5; 8 O—O, P—K3; 9 Q—K2, B—K2; 10 R—Q1, O—O; 11 P—K4, B—Kt5; 12 B—Kt3 /, Q—R4; 13 P—R3 ±.

(b) On 8... Kt(Kt1)—Q2 White can transpose to the regular lines or try the promising sacrifice in col. 126.

(c) Weaker is 14... P—B3; 15 P × P, P × P; 16 Kt—Kt3, B—B2; 17 B—KR6, KR—K1; 18 Kt—K1 / ±. Capablanca—Fine, Semmering—Baden, 1937.

(d) 18 Kt—Q3, B—Q3; 19 Kt—K4, Q—K2; 20 Kt × B, Q × Kt; 21 R—R3, K—R2 / (not 21... QR—K1; 22 Kt—K5 / ±. Reshevsky—Santasiere, New York, 1939); 22 Kt—K5, Kt × Kt.

(e) 9... P—B4? now is a mistake: 10 Kt—R2, B—R4; 11 P × P, Kt—B3; 12 R—Q1, Q—K2; 13 Kt—Q4 /, KR—Q1; 14 P—QKt4 /, B—B2 (14... Kt × P; 15 B—Q2); 15 P—R3+. Ragozin—Floh, Moscow, 1936.

(f) 11 B × Kt, B—QKt5; 12 B—Q2, Q—R4 =.

Notes continued on p. 202

## Notes continued from p. 198

(g) If 8 P × Kt, P × P; 9 Q—R4ch, Kt—B3; 10 O—O, P × B; 11 Kt × QP, B × Kt /; 12 P × B, B—Q2; 13 Kt × Kt, Q—B2; 14 B × P, B × Kt =. Hoenlinger and Wolf—Gruenfeld and Kaufmann, Vienna, 1933. If here 10... B × Kt; 11 B—R4? (11 P × B is necessary), P—Kt4 /!; 12 Q × KtP, R—QKt1 /; 13 Q × Ktch, B—Q2; 14 Q × P, B × Pch; 15 K—B2, Q—R4++. Apscheneek—Gruenfeld, Folkestone, 1933.

(h) Not 9... P—KR3; 10 P × Kt, P × B; 11 P × P, R—KKt1; 12 Kt × QP, B—Q2; 13 Kt—K4, Q—K2; 14 Kt—B2 / ±. Vidmar—Bogoljubow, Nottingham, 1936.

(i) 12... Kt—Kt5? loses after 13 Q × Kt / (first played in the game Gerebende Groot, Munich, 1936), B × Q; 14 Kt × Pch, K—B1; 15 R × P, Q—R4; 16 Kt × Bch, K—K1; 17 Kt—B6ch, K—B1; 18 B × P, R—B1; 19 K—Kt1++. Fine—Gruenfeld, Amsterdam, 1936. An untried alternative is 12... Kt—R4; 13 Q—B2,

P—K4, 14 Kt × QP, P × Kt; 15 R × P, but if now 15... Q—Kt3?; 16 R—Q6 /+.

(j) 15 Kt × QP, P × Kt; 16 R × P, Q—Kt3; 17 R × B / (not now 17 R—Q6, R—B3. If 17 Q—B3, B—KB4; 18 P—KKt4, B—Kt3; 19 P—B4?, B—QB4 /+. Fine—Euwe, AVRO tournament, 1938. The only chance here is 19 B—Q3), K × R; 18 B—K2, R—B3 and White's attack is sufficient compensation for the exchange. However, a definitive opinion on this position cannot be given without a practical trial.

(k) More aggressive is 9 P—K5, Q—K2; 10 O—O, B × Kt; 11 P × B, P × P; 12 Q × P, Kt—B3; 13 Q—Kt4 with attacking possibilities.

(l) Goglidse—Alatortsev, Leningrad, 1936.

(m) If 6 P—K3, P—Kt4; 7 P—QR4, P—B3; 8 B—K2, B—Kt2; 9 O—O, P—QR3+.

(n) 9... B × Kt; 10 B × B gives White a strong attack.

(o) Gruenfeld and Kaufmann—Knoch and Wolf, Vienna, 1933.

## Notes continued from p. 199

(f) Also good is 7... P × P; 8 Q × BP, Kt—Q2; 9 P—K4 (or 9 R—Q1, B—K2; 10 P—KKt3, P—K4; 11 B—Kt2, Kt—Kt3; 12 Q—Kt3, P × P; 13 Kt × P, O—O; 14 O—O, B—KKt5 =. Ratner—Bondarevsky, Moscow, 1945), P—K4; 10 P—Q5, Kt—Kt3 =. Petrow—Stahlberg, Kemer, 1937. Inferior is 7... B—Q3; 8 P—K4, P × KP; 9 Kt × P, Q—K2; 10 Kt × Bch, Q × Kt; 11 B—Q3, Kt—Q2; 12 O—O, O—O; 13 QR—Q1, P—QKt3; 14 B—Kt1 ±. Winter—Perkins, cable match, 1926.

(g) Best is 8 P—K4 transposing to col. 116.

(h) Vidmar—Capablanca, Nottingham, 1936.

(i) 6 Kt—B3 transposes to the regular lines.

(j) If 6... P—B4; 7 P × BP, B × P; 8 P × P, P × P; 9 B—K2, P—KR3; 10 B—R4, R—K1; 11 O—O, Kt—B3; 12 Kt—Kt3, B—Kt3; 13 KKt—Q4 ±. Bondarevsky—Kan, Moscow, 1945.

(k) Alekhine—Yates, Hastings, 1922.

(l) For other replies see columns 71—90. After 4... QKt—Q2 the continuation 5 P—K3 is even stronger for White. See note (o).

(m) Black may also accept the gambit Pawn now.

(n) Weaker is 7... QKt—Q2; 8 O—O, BP × P; 9 KP × P, P—QKt3; 10 B—B4, B—Kt2; 11 Q—K2, P—QR3; 12 QR—Q1, R—K1; 13 Kt—K5, Kt—B1; 14 B—K3, QR—B1; 15 Kt—R4 ±. Fine—Pinkus, New York, 1939.

(o) Better than 9... QKt—Q2; 10 Q—K2, QP × P (or 10... Kt—K5; 11 QR—Q1, Q—B2; 12 Kt—QKt5, Q—Kt1; 13 P × QP, B × P; 14 Kt—K5, Kt × Kt?; 15 P × Kt, P—B4; 16 P × P e.p.+). Fine—Landau, Zandvoort, 1936); 11 KtP × P, P × P; 12 P × P, R—B1; 13 Kt—K5, P—QR3; 14 QR—Q1 ±. Reshevsky—Feigin, Kemer, 1937.

## Additional Notes continued from p. 199

(p) If 10 Q-K2, BP × P; 11 KP × P, Kt-QKt5/; 12 B-Kt1, R-B1; 13 Kt-K5, P × P; 14 P × P, B-R3; 15 P-QR3, Kt-B3; 16 Kt × Kt, R × Kt; 17 B-Q3, Q-B1; 18 P-Q5, R-B2 =. Reshevsky-Rabinovitch, Leningrad-Moscow, 1939.

(q) Again 11 Q-K2? is weaker: 11... P × QP (but not 11... Q-B2; 12 P × QP, KP × P; 13 Kt-QKt5, Q-Kt1; 14 P × P, P × P; 15 B × Kt+. Fine-Tartakower, Zandvoort, 1936); 12 KP × P, P × P; 13 P × P, Kt-QKt5 ≠ (compare note (p)). Here 13... Kt × P?? is a mistake because of 14 Kt × Kt, Q × Kt; 15 Kt-Q5, Q-

B4; 16 B × Kt, P × B; 17 Q-Kt4ch, K-R1; 18 Q-R4, P-B4; 19 Kt × B++.

(r) Another possibility is 6... B-Kt5; 7 B-Q2, Q-K2; 8 B-Q3, P-QKt3; 9 O-O, B-Kt2; 10 Q-B2, P × P; 11 P × P, P-B4 =. Konstantinopolsky-Rausser, Leningrad, 1936.

(s) Or 11... P-KB4; 12 QR-B1, B-Q3; 13 P × P, P × P; 14 Kt-K5, QKt × Kt; 15 P × Kt, B × P; 16 Kt × Kt, B × B; 17 Q × B, BP × Kt; 18 B × KP, P-B3 =. Menchik-Sergeant, London, 1944. (t) 14 P × P, P × P; 15 B × Kt, P × B; 16 QR-B1, P-QKt4. Stahlberg-Najdorf, Mar del Plata, 1946.

## Notes continued from p. 200

(g) If 16... P-QR4?; 17 Kt-K5, Kt-Kt5; 18 B × Kt, P × B; 19 Kt × QBP ±. Euwe-Alekhine, 17th match game, 1937.

(h) 17... P-K4; 18 R-Q1, P × P; 19 P-K5, P-B4!; 20 P × Kt, Q × P; 21 P-R5, Kt-Q2; 22 Q-Kt5/1, Kt-B1; 23 R-K1, Kt-K3; 24 B-B1 and White maintains the pressure. Najdorf-Liebstein, Mar del Plata, 1944.

(i) Other alternatives are: (1) 10 P-Kt4 (Saemisch's continuation), B-Kt3; 11 Kt-K5, Kt × Kt (11... B × Kt; 12 P × B, Kt-Q2; 13 Kt × B ±. Saemisch-Alekhine, German Quadrangular Tournament, 1937); 12 P × Kt, B × P; 13 Kt × B, RP × Kt; 14 R-Kt1, Q-K2; 15 P-B4, P-QB4; 16 P × P, Kt-B3 =. Alekhine-Euwe, 26th match game, 1937. (2) 10 Kt × Kt, B × Kt; 11 R-Q1, Kt-Q2; 12 B-Q3, B × B; 13 Q × B, Q-R4; 14 B-Q2, B × B; 15 Kt × B, KR-Q1 =. Reshevsky-Flohr, Semmering-Baden, 1937.

(j) Better than 10... B-K2; 11 B-Q3, Kt-Kt4; 12 Kt-K1, B × B; 13 Kt × B, Kt-R3; 14 Kt-B3, P-R3; 15 R-Q1, Kt-R2; 16 Kt-K5, Q-B2; 17 P-K4 ±. Flohr-Capablanca, AVRO Tournament, 1938.

(k) If 11... B-Kt3; 12 Kt-B3, Kt-Kt4; 13 Kt-K1, P-KB4; 14 P-B4, Kt-B2; 15 B-B4, R-K1; 16 Kt-Q3 ±. Botvinnik-Ragosin, 1st match game, 1940.

(l) If 14 P-B3, Kt-B3 (14... B × Pch; 15 K × B, Q-R5ch; 16 K-Kt1, Kt-Kt6; 17 Q-K1 is of dubious value); 15

P-K4, P-K4!; 16 P × P, B × P; 17 Kt × B, Q-Q5ch =.

(m) Flohr-Keres, Leningrad-Moscow, 1939.

(n) On other moves... P-B4 is likewise best, e.g., 10 Kt-K5, P-B4; 11 Kt-R2, B-R4; 12 Q-Kt5?, P-QKt3; 13 P-B3, P × P; 14 P-K4?, B-Kt3+. Ragozin-Capablanca, Semmering-Baden, 1937. Or 10 P-R5, P-B4; 11 Kt-K5, P × P; 12 P × P, Kt-B3 =.

(o) Weaker is 10... QKt-Q2?; 11 KR-K1, P-KR3; 12 P-K4, B-R2; 13 P-K5, Kt-K1; 14 P-R5 ±. Kashdan-Fine, New York, 1933.

(p) If 9 Kt-K5, P-B4 (both 9... QKt-Q2 and 9... Q-K2 are also good); 10 Kt-R2, B-R4; 11 P × P, Q × Q; 12 R × Q, B-B7; 13 R-Q4, B-B2; 14 Kt-KB3, Kt-B3 ≠. Capablanca-Euwe, Nottingham, 1936.

(q) Best. Alternatives are: (1) 9... B-Kt3; 10 Kt × B, RP × Kt; 11 Q-K2, QKt-Q2; 12 R-Q1, Kt-Kt3; 13 B-Kt3, QKt-Q4 =. Asztalos-Tarrasch, Trieste, 1923. (2) 9... B-Q3; 10 Kt × B, P × Kt; 11 Q-B3, P-KKt3; 12 P-R3, Q-K2; 13 P-KKt4, K-R1; 14 P × P, R-Kt1; 15 K-R1, P-KKt4; 16 R-KKt1 ±. Stahlberg-Piazzini, Buenos Aires, 1942. (3) 9... Kt-K5; 10 Kt × B, P × Kt; 11 Kt × Kt, P × Kt; 12 Q-Kt4, Q-K2; 13 P-B3/1, P × P; 14 P-K4, Q-Q2; 15 Q × Q, Kt × Q; 16 P × P ±. Stahlberg-Michel, Mar del Plata, 1942.

## SLAV DEFENSE

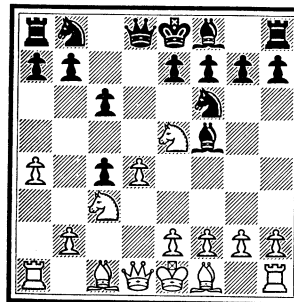
1 P-Q4, P-Q4; 2 P-QB4, P-QB3; 3 Kt-KB3, Kt-B3; 4 Kt-B3, P × P; 5 P-QR4, B-B4\*

	126	127	128	129	130
6 (P-K3)..... Kt-K5 (P-K3) QKt-Q2..... P-K3 (k)					
7 (B × P) Kt × P(B4) (e) P-B3 QKt-Q2 Q-B2 B-QKt5 (l)					
8 O-O (a) P-KKt3 (f) P-K4!..... B-Kt5..... Kt × P(B4) B-QKt5 (b) P-K4 B × P! P-KR3! (p) O-O (r)					
9 Q-Kt3 P × P P × B B × Kt B-Kt5 Q-Kt3 Kt × P Kt × P P × B P-B4!					
10 P-K4! B-B4 B-Q2! (m) Kt × P(B4) P × P B-Kt3? (c) KKt-Q2 Q × P P-B4 Q × Qch					
11 B × P! B-Kt2 Kt × Kt P × P K × Q P × B P-B3 (g) Q × Ktch (n) Q × Qch B × P					
12 P-R5! O-O Q-K2 R × Q P-K4 B × RP R-Q1 B × Bch B-B7 B-KKt3					
13 Q × Pch Q-B1 K × B R-B1 Kt-K5 K-Q1 B-K3 (h) Q-Q5ch B-Kt6 KKt-Q2					
14 P-K5 Kt-K4! (i) K-B2 Kt-Q2 Kt × B R-K1 B-QKt5 O-O B × Kt RP × Kt					
15 Q-R3 ± (d) P-R5+ (j) Kt × QBP ± (o) R × B K-B2 ± (s) B × P = (q)					

\* See p. 153, Diagram 63

\*\* DIAGRAM 84

cols. 127-130



[After 6 Kt-K5]

(a) If 8 Q-K2, B-QKt5; 9 O-O, B-Kt3/ (but not 9... Kt-K5; 10 B-Q3/1, B × Kt; 11 B × Kt/1, B-QKt5; 12 B × B, P × B; 13 P-Q5/1, P × P; 14 Q-Kt5+. Euwe-Alekhine, 13th match game, 1937); 10 B-Q3, B × B; 11 Q × B, O-O; 12 R-Q1, Q-K2; 13 P-K4, P-K4; 14 B-Kt5, P-KR3; 15 B × Kt, Q × B =. Euwe-Alekhine, 15th match game, 1937.

(b) If 8... B-Q3; 9 Q-K2, Kt-K5; 10 Kt × Kt, B × Kt; 11 Kt-Q2, B-Kt3; 12 P-K4, O-O (12... B-B2; 13 P-Q5); 13 P-B4, B-B2; 14 P-B5, P × P; 15 P × P, R-K1; 16 Kt-K4/+. Reinfeld-Collins, New York, 1938. If 16... B × Pch; 17 K-R1! 8... B-Kt3 may be safest here, so that if 9 Q-K2, B-Kt5, but White can try 9 Q-Kt3.

Notes continued on p. 206

## SLAV DEFENSE

1 P-Q4, P-Q4; 2 P-QB4, P-QB3; 3 Kt-KB3, Kt-B3; 4 Kt-B3,  
P x P

131	132	133	134	135
5 (P-QR4)..... (B-B4).....	P-K3.....	B-Kt5 (g)	P-QKt4 (k)	P-K3
6 Kt-R4 B-B1 (a)	P-K4! B-Kt5	Kt-K5 (h) B-R4	P-QR4 P-Kt5	P-K3
7 P-K3 P-K4!	P-K5 Kt-K5 (c)	Kt x P(B4) P-K3	Kt-R2 P-K3	P-K3
8 P x P Q x Qch	Q-B2 Q-Q4	Q-Kt3 Kt-R3!	B x P QKt-Q2 (l)	B x P
9 Kt x Q B-Kt5ch	B-K2 P-QB4	P-K3 (i) Kt-QKt5	O-O B-Kt2	O-O
10 B-Q2 B x Bch	O-O Kt x Kt	Kt-R2 P-R4	Q-K2 P-B4	Q-K2
11 K x B Kt-K5ch	P x Kt P x P	Kt x Kt B x Ktch	R-Q1 Q-Kt3.....	P x P (o)
12 K-K1 B-K3	P x P! (d) P-B6	B-Q2 Kt-Q4	P-K4!! P x P (m)	KKt x P B-B4 (p)
13 P-B4 Kt-R3	B-Q2 Kt-B3 (e)	B x B Kt x B	Kt x QP B-B4	Kt-Kt3 B-K2
14 Kt-B2 Kt x Kt+ (b)	B x P+ (f) O-O = (j)	Kt-K5 O-O = (j)	Kt-Kt3 ± (n)	P-R5 ± (q)

(a) Not 6...P-K3; 7 Kt x B, P x Kt; 8 P-K3, QKt-Q2; 9 B x P, Kt-Kt3; 10 B-Kt3, B-Q3; 11 Q-B3, Q-Q2; 12 P-R3, Kt-B1; 13 P-R5 ±. Alekhine-Stoltz, Bled, 1931. After 6...B-B1 White has nothing better than 7 Kt-B3, when 7...B-B4 can be played again.

(b) 15 K x Kt, O-O-O. Alekhine-Euwe, 15th match game, 1935.

(c) Or 7...Kt-Q4; 8 B-Q2, B x Kt; 9 P x B, P-QKt4; 10 Kt-Kt5!, P-B3; 11 KP x P, Kt x P(B3); 12 B-K2+. Alekhine-Bogoljubow, 1st match game, 1929.

(d) If 12 Kt x P, B-B4; 13 Kt-B3, Kt-Q2; 14 R-Q1, Q-B3; 15 B x P, O-O; 16 Kt-Kt5, P-KKt3 ♣. Alekhine-Bogoljubow, Nottingham, 1936.

(e) Better than 13...Q-R4; 14 B x P!, B x B; 15 R-R3+ for if 15...B-Q2; 16 R x B, B x P; 17 B-Kt5ch!! and wins (Alekhine).

(f) Alekhine-Euwe, 19th match game, 1935.

(g) Also possible is 5...P-B4; 6 P-K4 (weaker is 6 P-K3, P-K3; 7 B x P, Kt-B3; 8 O-O, B-K2; 9 Q-K2, O-O; 10 P x P, B x P; 11 R-Q1, Q-B2 =. Tolush-Alatortsev, Moscow, 1944), P x P; 7 Q x P, Q x Q; 8 Kt x Q, P-K3; 9 Kt(Q4)-Kt5, Kt-R3; 10 B-K3, B-Q2 (Flohr-Smyslov, Moscow, 1944) and now 11 P-B3 gives White most hope of an advantage.

(h) Weak is 6 P-K3?, P-K4!; 7 B x P, B x Kt; 8 P x B?, P x P; 9 P x P, B-Q3; 10 Q-Kt3, Q-K2ch+. Sormin-Steiner, Batavia, 1939.

(i) 9 Q x P, Kt-QKt5 is unfavorable for White.

(j) Flohr-Szabo, Amsterdam, 1939.

Notes continued on p. 206

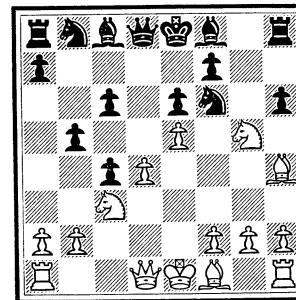
## SLAV DEFENSE

1 P-Q4, P-Q4; 2 P-QB4, P-QB3; 3 Kt-KB3, Kt-B3; 4 Kt-B3

136	137	138	139	140
4 (P x P).....	P-K3			
5 (P-K3) (P-QKt4)	B-Kt5 P x P (d)			
6 (P-QR4) (P-Kt5)	P-K4 P-Kt4			
7 Kt-QKt1 B-R3	P-K5 P-KR3			
8 B-K2 (a) P-K3	B-R4 P-Kt4			
9 Kt-K5 B-K2	Kt x KKtP! (e)* P x Kt.....			Kt-Q4
10 O-O O-O	B x KtP QKt-Q2!			Kt x BP! (q) Q x B
11 Kt x P(B4) (b) P-B4	P-KKt3..... Q-R4 (f)	Q-B3.....	P x Kt B-QKt2	Kt x R B-Kt5 (r)
12 P x P QKt-Q2	P x Kt P-Kt5	B-K2 R-KKt1	Q-B3! (m) Q-Kt3 (n)	Q-Q2 P-B4
13 P-B6 Kt-B4	Kt-K4 B-QR3!	P-KR4 (i) Q-Kt3 (j)	O-O-O! (o) O-O-O! (p)	P x P B-Kt2 (s)
14 QKt-Q2 Q-B2 ♣ (c)	Q-B3 (g) O-O-O! = (h)	P x Kt3 (g)	Q-K3 ±	B-K2+ (t) P-B4 = (k)

## \* DIAGRAM 85

cols. 137-140



[After 9 Kt x KKtP!]

(a) There is nothing better. If 8 Q-B2, Q-Q4 (8...P-K3; 9 B x P, B x B; 10 Q x B, Q-Q4; 11 QKt-Q2, QKt-Q2; 12 Q-K2, Kt-K5; 13 Kt x Kt, Q x Kt =. Stahlberg-Euwe, Stockholm, 1937); 9 KKt-Q2, P-K3; 10 Kt x P, B-K2; 11 QKt-Q2, O-O; 12 Kt-B3, P-B4; 13 B-K2, P x P; 14 Kt x P, Kt-B3 ♣. Gruenfeld-Tarrasch, Maehrisch-Ostrau, 1923.

(b) Alekhine recommends 11 Kt-Q2, for if then 11...P-B6?; 12 B x B, P x Kt; 13 B-Kt7, P x B(Q); 14 R x Q+.

(c) Alekhine-Euwe, 23rd match game, 1935.

(d) 5...QKt-Q2 transposes to the Exchange Variation, Orthodox or Cambridge Springs, 5...P-KR3 to the Duras Variation (cols. 116-117).

Notes continued on p. 207

## Notes continued from p. 203

(c) 10...B-Kt5 is much stronger. Best then is 11 P-K5, Kt-Q4; 12 Kt × Kt, KP × Kt; 13 B-K2, O-O =.

(d) 15...B × Kt; 16 P × Kt! with a powerful attack. Euwe-Landau, 6th match game, 1939.

(e) If instead 7 Kt × Kt, Q × Kt; 8 P-B3, Kt-Q4?; 9 P-K4, Kt × Kt; 10 P × Kt, B-K3; 11 P-R5, P-KKt3; 12 Q-R4 ±. Nimzovitch-Saemisch, Marienbad, 1925. But Black can reply 8...P-K4!, or 7...Kt × Kt; 8 P-K4, B-Kt3; 9 B × P, P-K4 = (Euwe).

(f) Inferior is 8 Q-Kt3?, P-K4!; 9 P × P, Kt-B4; 10 Q-R2, Kt-R3; 11 P-K4, Kt × P; 12 Kt × Kt, B × Kt; 13 Kt-Q6ch, B × Kt+. Petrow-Capablanca, Semmering-Baden, 1937.

(g) Or (1) 11...B-K3; 12 Kt × Kt, Kt × Kt; 13 O-O, B-K2; 14 Q-B2, R-Q1; 15 KR-Q1, O-O; 16 Kt-Kt5+. Alekhine-Euwe, 1st match game, 1935.

(2) 11...B-K2; 12 O-O, B-K3; 13 Kt × Kt, Kt × Kt; 14 P-R5, P-QR3; 15 Kt-K4, R-Q1; 16 Q-B2, O-O; 17 Kt-Kt5 ±. Fine-Shainswit, New York, 1944.

(h) Also inadequate is 13...Q-Kt1; 14 Kt-K4, B-K2; 15 Q-B3, O-O; 16 QR-Q1, B-K3; 17 Kt × Kt, Kt × Kt; 18 Kt-Kt5!+. Euwe-Alekhine, 20th match game, 1935.

(i) An improvement on 14 Kt × Kt, Kt × Kt; 15 P-R5, P-QR3; 16 Kt-K4, B-QKt5; 17 Kt-B5 (or 17 B-Q2, B × B; 18 Kt × B =), B-B1; 18 Kt-Q3 (18 B × Kt?, P × B; 19 P-B4, B-Q7+. Alekhine-Euwe, 21st match game, 1935), Kt × Kt; 19 B × Q, Kt × Q; 20 QR ×

Kt, R-Q2 =.

(j) Euwe-Alekhine, 1st match game, 1937. 15...O-O; 16 Kt × Kt, Kt × Kt; 17 Kt-B5.

(k) Bogoljubow's continuation, now considered best.

(l) Weaker is 7...P-B4; 8 P × P, Q × Qch; 9 K × Q, B × P; 10 P-K4, B-KKt3; 11 B × P, Kt-B3; 12 Kt × Kt, P × Kt; 13 B-B4, Kt-R4; 14 B-Q2, R-QKt1; 15 K-B2 ±. Alekhine-Bogoljubow, 3rd match game, 1929.

(m) An improvement on 10 Q-B3, Q × P; 11 Q × Pch, K-Q1 when White can at best draw. If here 12 B-Kt5ch, K-B1; 13 B × P, Kt × B; 14 Q × P, Q-K6ch; 15 K-Q1, R-Q1ch+. Vidmar-Mikenas, Prague, 1931.

(n) Or 11...B × Bch; 12 Q × B, Q × Kt(K4); 13 Q-K2, O-O; 14 Kt-B3, Kt-Q2; 15 O-O ±. Enevoldsen-Piazzi, Buenos Aires, 1939.

(o) The ending is in White's favor.

(p) If 8...P-B4; 9 P × P, Q-Q4; 10 Q × Q, P × Q; 11 P-K4!, P × P; 12 Kt × P(B4), O-O; 13 B × Kt, P × B; 14 O-O-O (Alekhine-Euwe, 4th match game, 1937) the complications are in White's favor.

(q) Euwe-Alekhine, 11th match game, 1937.

(r) 8...Kt-Q4; 9 B-Q2, Q-R5ch? is refuted nicely by 10 P-Kt3, Q × QP; 11 P-K3, Q-B3; 12 P-K4, Kt × Kt; 13 Q-Kt3!, Kt × KP; 14 B × B++. Mikenas-Feigin, Kemerli-Riga, 1939.

(s) Flohr-Mikenas, Prague, 1931.

12 B-Q2, P-QR4; 13 Kt-B1, Q-Kt3; 14 Kt-Kt3, P-B4 =. Reshevsky-Smyslov, match U. S. A.—U.S.S.R., 1945.

(m) If instead 12...B × P (12...Kt × P; 13 P-Q5+); 13 Kt-K5, B-Kt2; 14 P-R5, Q-Q3; 15 B-B4+ (Fairhurst).

(n) 14...O-O; 15 Kt × B, Kt × Kt; 16 B-K3, KR-Q1; 17 P-B3. Fairhurst-Reshevsky, Hastings, 1937-38.

## Notes continued from p. 204

(k) Feasible is 5...B-B4; 6 B × P, P-K3; 7 O-O, QKt-Q2; 8 P-KR3, B-Q3; 9 Q-K2, Kt-K5 =. Reshevsky-Simonsen, New York, 1938.

(l) Black must be prepared to play...P-B4 as soon as White threatens P-K4. If 8...B-K2; 9 O-O, O-O; 10 Q-K2, QKt-Q2; 11 R-Q1, B-Kt2; 12 P-K4, P-QR4; 13 B-KKt5 ±. Alekhine-Tarasch, Hastings, 1922. Weaker for White is

## Additional Notes continued from p. 204

(o) On 11...Q-B2 White has either 12 P-K4!, P × P; 13 Kt × QP, B-B4; 14 B-K3 ± or 12 B-R6!, B-Q4?; 13 B-Q2, QR-Kt1; 14 KR-QB1, Q-Kt3; 15 B-Kt5, P-QR4; 16 Kt-K5, B-Q3; 17 P × P!, B × BP; 18 P-K4, B-Kt2; 19 B-Kt5+. Flohr-Ravinsky, Moscow, 1944.

## Notes continued from p. 205

(e) An interesting new try is 9 P × Kt, P × B; 10 Kt-K5, Q × BP; 11 B-K2, Kt-Q2! (not 11...B-QKt2; 12 B-B3), B-Kt5; 13 P-R4, P-R3; 14 P × P, RP × P; 15 R × R, B × R; 16 Q-R1++. Ragozin; 12 Kt × P(B6), B-QKt2; 13 B-B3, P-R3; 14 O-O, R-B1 (not 14...R-KKt?); 15 Kt-Q5!!, P × Kt; 16 R-K1ch+. Ragozin-Böök, Helsinki, 1946); 15 Kt-K5, B × B; 16 Kt × B and now the simplest is 16...B-Kt5 with at least equality.

(f) An improvement on 11...B-QKt2; 12 B-Kt2, Q-R4; 13 P × Kt, O-O-O; 14 Q-B3, Kt-Kt3; 15 O-O, R × QP; 16 KR-Q1, R × Rch; 17 Q × R, Kt-Q4; 18 Kt-K4, P-Kt5; 19 P-QR3!+. Lilienthal-Botvinnik, Moscow, 1944.

(g) If instead 14 B-Kt2, P-B6!; 15 P × P, P × P; 16 Q-B2, R-QKt1+. Kramer-Berliner, Washington, 1945. But not here 14...O-O-O?; 15 B-Q2!, Q-Q4; 16 O-O, Q × P; 17 B-K3+. Lilienthal-Veressov, Moscow, 1945.

(h) 15 B-Kt2, P-B6! (not 15...Q-Q4? as in Mikenas-Botvinnik, Moscow, 1944); 16 Kt × P (if 16 P × P Black can choose either the rather wild 16...P-Kt6 or the quieter 16...B-B5), P × Kt; 17 Q × Pch, K-Kt1; 18 Q-R8ch, (or 18 P × P, B-B4!; 19 R-Kt1ch, B-Kt3; 20 B-B4ch, P-K4), K-B2; 19 Q × Pch, K-Q3; 20 B-B4ch, P-K4; 21 P × Pch, K-K3+. White should therefore take the earlier draw with 19 Q-B6ch, K-Kt1; 20 Q-R8ch, etc. Analysis by Kotov and Yudovitch.

(i) Euwe's suggestion, stronger than 13 B × Kt, Kt × B; 14 Q × Kt, Q × Q; 15 P × Q, R × P =. Szabo-Euwe, Hastings, 1938-39.

(j) If 13...R × B; 14 P × R, Kt-Q4; 15 R-R7+ (Euwe).

(k) 15 P × P, B × P; and Black has enough for the Pawn.

(p) No better is 12...Q-Kt1; 13 B-Q2, B-Q3; 14 B × KtP, B × B; 15 Kt × B, B × P; 16 Kt-Kt5+. Kotov-Smyslov, Moscow, 1944.

(q) 14...O-O; 15 B-Q2, Q-Kt1; 16 P-R6, B-Q4; 17 B × B. Reshevsky-Kashdan, 11th match game, 1942.

(l) Not 11...Kt × P?; 12 Q-B3+.

(m) If instead 12 B-K2 Black has either (1) 12...Kt × P; 13 P-QR4, B-K2!; 14 P × P, P × P (van Scheltinga-Gruenfeld, Amsterdam, 1936); 15 Kt × P, Q-Kt3; 16 B × P, P-R3; 17 Kt-B3, B × P = or (2) 12...Q-Kt3; 13 O-O, O-O-O; 14 P-QR4, P-Kt5; 15 Kt-K4, P-B4; 16 Q-Kt1, Q-B2 ±. Denker-Botvinnik, match U. S. A.—U.S.S.R., 1945.

(n) 12...Q-R4; 13 P-KKt3, O-O-O; 14 B-Kt2 now transposes to note (f).

(o) On 13 Q-K3, O-O-O; 14 P-QR4, P-R3; 15 R-Q1, P-B4; 16 P-Q5, R-K1; 17 B-K2 (if 17 P × KtP first, B-R3!; 18 B × B, KP × P+), P-Kt5; 18 Kt-Kt1, B-Kt3; 19 P × P, R × KP; 20 Q-Q2, B × KtP+. Weak on 14 P-QR4 here is 14...P-K4?; 15 P × KP, B-B4; 16 Q-Kt3, Kt × KP; 17 B-K2+. Cruz-Souza Mendes, Rio de Janeiro, 1943.

(p) If 13...P-B4; 14 P-Q5, P-Kt5; 15 Kt-R4, Q-R4; 16 B × P!, Q × Kt; 17 Q-K2, P-K4; 18 P-B4 with a winning attack, not to mention three Pawns for the piece.

(q) Best. If 10 Kt-B3, Q-R4; 11 R-B1, B-Kt5!; 12 Q-Q2, Kt-Q2; 13 B-K2, Kt(Q2)-Kt3; 14 O-O, Kt-R5; 15 P-QR3, B × Kt; 16 P × B, Kt(R5) × P; 17 R-R1, Q-Kt3; 18 KR-B1, Kt × Bch+. Lilienthal-Alatortsev, Leningrad-Moscow, 1939.

(r) If 11...Kt × Kt; 12 P × Kt, Q-K5ch?; 13 Q-K2!, Q-R2; 14 Q-R5ch+.

(s) Or 13...Kt-Q2; 14 O-O-O, Kt × KP; 15 B-K2, B-Kt2; 16 P-KKt3, Q-B3; 17 P-B4, Q × Kt; 18 B-R5ch+. Fridstein-Yudovitch, Moscow, 1943.

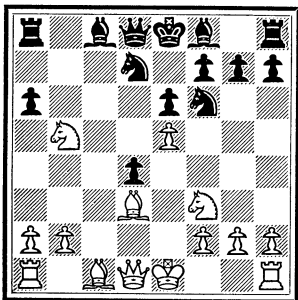
(t) 14...Kt-Q2; 15 Kt-Kt6, Q-Kt4; 16 Q × Q, P × Q; 17 R-QB1, K-B2; 18 B-R5 and White won. Belavienetz-Ragozin, Moscow, 1939.

## SLAV DEFENSE: MERAN VARIATION

1 P—Q4, P—Q4; 2 P—QB4, P—QB3; 3 Kt—KB3, Kt—B3; 4 Kt—B3, P—K3; 5 P—K3, QKt—Q2; 6 B—Q3, P × P; 7 B × BP, P—QKt4; 8 B—Q3, P—QR3; 9 P—K4, P—B4; 10 P—K5, P × P; 11 Kt × KtP (a)\*

I41	I42	I43	I44	I45
11 P × Kt!			Kt × KP (m)	
12 P × Kt Q—Kt3! (b)			Kt × Kt P × Kt	
13 B—K4..... P × P (f) B—Kt2 B × P			Q—B3!..... O—O (s) B—Kt5ch (n) Q—Q4	
14 B × B Q × B	P—QKt4!..... Q—K2 O—O	O—O (i)	K—K2 R—QKtr (o)	Q—K2 B—R3 (t)
15 O—O (c) P × P (d)	O—O P—B4	O—O (j) B—QR3 (k)	Q—Kt3! (p) Q—Q3 (q)	P—QR4 (u) B—Q3
16 Kt × P R—KKtr	Q—K2 P—K4! (g)	Kt—Kt5 P—R3	Kt—B3! (r) Q × Q	P × P B—Kt2
17 Q—B3 Q × Q	B × KtP P—K5	Kt—K4 P—Kt5	RP × Q B—Q3	R × Rch B × R
18 Kt × Q R—Kt5!	B—B4ch K—R1	B—Q2 B—Kt2	Kt × P B—Q2	Kt—B6 B × Kt
19 P—QKt3 Kt—Kt3 = (e)	Kt—Kt5 ± (h)	Kt—Kt3 P—B4 = (l)	R—Q1 ±	P × B K—K2! / ♯ (v)

\* DIAGRAM 86  
cols. I41—I45



[After 11 Kt × KtP]

(a) Blumenfeld's continuation. On Freyermann's suggestion, 11 Kt—K4, Bogoljubow gives 11...Kt—Q4; 12 O—O, B—K2; 13 P—QR4, P—Kt5; 14 R—K1, P—R3; 15 KB—B4, B—Kt2; 16 Q × P, Q—Kt3 =.

(b) An improvement on 12...P—K4; 13 P × P, B × P; 14 Q—K2, Q—K2; 15 O—O, B—Kt2; 16 R—K1, Q—Q3; 17 Kt—R4+. Bogoljubow—Thomas, Baden—Baden, 1925.

(c) Not 15 Q × P, B—B4; 16 Q—KB4, Kt × P; 17 O—O, R—R5! ♯. Rhodes—Ritson Morry, Blackpool, 1945.

(d) Or 15...Kt × P; 16 Kt × P, B—B4; 17 P—QR4!, P × P; 18 R × P, O—O =. Eliskases—Bogoljubow, 13th match game, 1939.

(e) Alekhine—Keres, Prague, 1942.

(f) Other moves transpose back to the main lines.

Notes continued on p. 209

## Notes continued from p. 208

(g) If instead 16...B—Kt2; 17 B—KB4, P—K4? (best is 17...B × Kt; 18 Q × B, K—R1; 19 Q—R3, R—R6; 20 B—B1, R—R5; 21 P—R3 ±; 18 Kt × KP, QR—K1; 19 B—B4ch!+. Shainswit—Horowitz, New York, 1944.

(h) 19...P—Q6; 20 Q—R5, Q—Kt3!; 21 Q × Q, P × Q; 22 R—Ktr, Kt—Kt3; 23 B—Kt3, B—Q5; 24 B—K3, B × B; 25 P × B, B—Q2. Ratner—Kotov, Moscow, 1945. Black held the ending but White's chances are slightly better.

(i) Or 14...B—QR3 at once. Also feasible is 14...P—Kt5; 15 O—O, B—Kt2; 16 B—KB4, R—R4!; 17 P—QR3, O—O (17...P × P; 18 P × P ±); 18 P × P =.

(j) 15 Q—K4? is met by 15...P—B4!; 16 Q × R, B—QR3 ♯, while after 15 B × P, Kt—B4 Black has enough for his P (the threat is ...P—Q6). If 15 B × Pch, K × B; 16 Q—K4ch, K—Kt1; 17 Q × R, B—Kt2; 18 Q—R3, P—Kt5; 19 Q—Q3, Kt—B4 with a strong attack.

(k) A mistake is 15...Kt—B4?; 16 B × Pch!, K × B; 17 Kt—Kt5ch, K—Kt3; 18 Q—Kt4, P—B4; 19 Q—Kt3+. Kottner—Kotov, match Prague—Moscow, 1946.

(l) Lilienthal—Belavienetz, Leningrad, Moscow, 1939.

(m) Inadequate alternatives are: (1) 11...Kt—Kt5; 12 QKt × P, KKt × KP; 13 B—K4, B—Kt5ch; 14 B—Q2, R—QKtr; 15 O—O, B × B; 16 Q × B ±. Eliskases—Spielmann, Noordwijk, 1938.

(2) 11...Kt—KKtr; 12 QKt × P, Kt × P; 13 B—K4, Kt × Ktch; 14 B × Kt, B—Kt5ch; 15 B—Q2, B × Bch; 16 Q × B, R—Ktr; 17 R—Q1, Kt—K2; 18 B—B6ch, B—Q2; 19 Kt × P!+. Eliskases—Michel, Bad Elster, 1938.

(n) Or 13...R—R4; 14 O—O, P—Kt5; 15 B—KB4, B—K2; 16 KR—B1, O—O; 17 Q—R3+. Capablanca—Loevenfisch, Moscow, 1935.

(o) No better is 14...Q—Q4; 15 Q × Q, Kt × Q; 16 B × Pch, K—K2!; 17 R—Q1! (not 17 Kt—B6ch, K—Q3; 18 Kt × P, K—B4; 19 P—QR3, as in Foltys—Bogoljubow, Stuttgart, 1939, and now 19...B—B6! =), B—B4; 18 Kt—B6ch, K—Q3; 19 Kt × P, B × Kt; 20 R × B, K—B4; 21 R—QR4+. Euwe—Wolhuis, Amsterdam, 1942.

(p) Reshevsky's move. If 15 Kt—B6, B—Kt2; 16 B × P, Q—Kt3 ♯.

(q) Or 15...Q—Q4; 16 Kt—B3!, P—K4; 17 Q × Pch (17 Q × KtP, P—K5!), Q × Q; 18 Kt × Q, R—Kt3; 19 B—Q2 ±. Landau—Schmidt, Stockholm, 1937.

(r) 16 Kt—B6!, Q × Kt!; 17 Q × R, O—O; 18 P—B3, B—Kt2 gives Black excellent attacking chances. Reshevsky—Petrov, Kemer, 1937.

(s) If 13 B × Pch!, B—Q2; 14 Kt × B, Q—R4ch =.

(t) Weak is 14...R—QKtr; 15 B—Kt5, B—Q3 (15...Kt—Q2; 16 B—KB4, Kt × Kt; 17 Q × Kt+); 16 P—B4, B × Kt; 17 P × B, Kt—Q2; 18 R × P! / + +. Vajda—Rosselli, Nice, 1931.

(u) Also inadequate is 15 B—Kt5, B—K2; 16 P—B4 (or here 16 P—QR4, O—O; 17 P × P, B—Kt2; 18 P—B4, P—R3 ♯. Alekhine—Bogoljubow, 12th match game, 1934), O—O; 17 R—B3, P—R3!; 18 R—R3, B—Kt2; 19 R—KB1, KR—B1; 20 B × Kt, B × B; 21 Kt—Kt4, K—B1! / ♯. Pollard—Kashdan, Boston, 1938.

(v) Lilienthal—Botvinnik, Leningrad—Moscow, 1941.



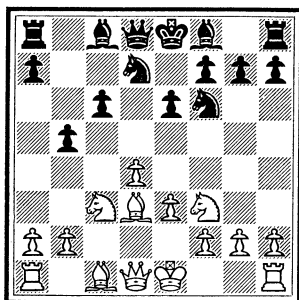
## SLAV DEFENSE

1 P-Q4, P-Q4; 2 P-QB4, P-QB3; 3 Kt-KB3, Kt-B3; 4 Kt-B3, P-K3; 5 P-K3, QKt-Q2; 6 B-Q3

146	147	148	149	150
6 (P × P).....				B-Q3
7 (B × BP) (P-QKt4)				O-O (m) O-O
8 (B-Q3) (a)* (P-QR3).....			P-Kt5	P-K4 (n) P × BP
9 (P-K4)..... (P-B4).....		O-O P-B4	Kt-K4! B-K2 (i)	B × P P-K4
10 P-Q5 (b) P-K4 (c)	Kt-QR4 P-B4	P-QR4 P-Kt5	Kt × Ktch Kt × Kt	B-KKt5 (o) P-KR3 (p)
11 O-O P-B5	P-K5 (e) Kt-Q4	Kt-K4 B-Kt2	P-K4! B-Kt2 (j)	B-R4 P × P
12 B-B2 B-B4	O-O P × P	Kt × P (g) Kt × Kt	B-KKt5 O-O	Q × P B-B4
13 Kt-K2 O-O	R-K1 Kt-B4	P × Kt B × P	R-QB1 (k) P-KR3	Q-Q3 Kt-Kt3 (q)
14 Kt-Kt3 Kt-K1	B-Kt5! Q-R4	Q-K2 Q-K2	B × Kt! B × B	P-K5 Q × Q
15 Kt-B5 Kt-Q3 = (d)	Kt × Kt ± (f)	P-K4 P-R3! = (h)	P-K5 ± (l)	B × Q KKt-Q4 =

## \* DIAGRAM 87

cols. 146-149



[After 8 B-Q3]

(a) If 8 B-Kt3, P-Kt5! (8...P-QR3; 9 P-K4, P-Kt5; 10 P-K5, P × Kt; 11 P × Kt, P × KtP; 12 P × P!, B × P; 13 QB × P ±. Buerger-Thomas, London, 1927); 9 Kt-K2, B-K2; 10 O-O, O-O; 11 Kt-Kt3, P-B4; 12 P-K4, B-Kt2 =. Rejfir-Bogoljubow, Muenchengraetz, 1930.

(b) Reynolds' suggestion.

(c) Best. If instead (1) 10...Kt-Kt3; 11 O-O, P × P; 12 P-K5, Kt-K5; 13 Kt × Kt, P × Kt; 14 B × KP, Q × Q; 15 R × Q, R-R2; 16 P-QKt3 ±. (2) 10...P × P?; 11 P-K5, Kt-Kt5; 12 Kt × QP, B-Kt2; 13 B-Kt5, Q-R4ch; 14 P-Kt4, P × P; 15 B-B5!, P-Kt6 dis ch; 16 K-B1, KKt × KP; 17 P × P+. Analysis by Reynolds.

(d) Flohr-Kramer, Baarn, 1939.

Notes continued on p. 212

## SLAV DEFENSE

1 P-Q4, P-Q4; 2 P-QB4, P-QB3; 3 Kt-KB3, Kt-B3; 4 Kt-B3, P-K3; 5 P-K3\*

151	152	153	154	155
5 (QKt-Q2)				
6 (B-Q3)..... (B-Q3).....			P-QKt3 .. Kt-K5 (l) B-Kt5 (i) Kt × Kt (m)	
7 (O-O) (O-O)	O-O O-O		B-Q2 Q-K2	P × Kt Kt-Q2
8 (P-K4) P × KP	P-QKt3! P-QKt3 (d)	P-K4 P × KP	B-K2 (j) O-O	P-B4 B-B4 (n)
9 Kt × P Kt × Kt	B-Kt2 B-Kt2	Kt × P P-QKt3	O-O B-Q3	P-QR3 Q-K2
10 B × Kt P-QB4 (a)	Q-K2 P-B4 (e)	Q-K2 B-Kt2	Q-B2 P × P	P-QKt4 B-Kt3
11 B-B2 Q-B2	QR-Q1 Kt-K5	R-Q1 (g) Q-B2	P × P P-K4	B-K2 O-O
12 Q-Q3 P-B4	P × BP Kt × Kt	B-Kt5 P-B4	Kt-KKt5 B-B2	O-O P-B3
13 R-Q1 P × P	B × Kt KtP × P	P × P P × P	QR-Kt1 R-K1 (k)	P-QB5 B-B2
14 Q × QP B-B4 = (b)	P × P+ (f)	Kt × Ktch ± (h)	P-B4 ±	P × P Kt × KBP = (o)

## \* See p. 155, Diagram 64

(a) Weaker is 10...P-KB4!?, 11 B-B2, P-K4; 12 B-Kt5! (but not 12 P-B5, B-K2; 13 P × P, Kt × BP; 14 Q-K2, B-K3 ♣), B-K2; 13 B × B, Q × B; 14 Kt × P, Kt × Kt; 15 R-K1 ±. Buerger-Wheatcroft, London, 1926. A mistake is 10...P-K4?; 11 P × P, Kt × P; 12 Kt × Kt, B × Kt; 13 B × Pch, K × B; 14 Q-R5ch+.

(b) 15 Q-R4, Kt-B3. Gruenfeld-Bogoljubow, Berlin, 1926. White's advantage is gone; he would have done better to proceed as in col. 152.

(c) Inferior is 6...B-Kt5; 7 O-O, O-O; 8 P-QR3, B × Kt; 9 P × B, Q-B2; 10 Kt-Q2, P-K4; 11 B-Kt2, P-K5; 12 B-K2, P-QKt4; 13 P × KtP, P × P; 14 P-QR4! ±. Alekhine-Euwe, 3rd match game, 1937.

(d) No better is 8...Q-R4; 9 Q-B2, P × P; 10 P × P, P-K4; 11 P-B5!, P-KKt5; 12 B-B4, Kt-R4; 13 Kt-K4+. Najdorf-Pilnik, Buenos Aires, 1941.

(e) Or 10...Q-B2; 11 KR-Q1, QR-Q1; 12 QR-B1, Q-Kt1; 13 P-KR3, B-Q3?; 14 P-K4, P × KP; 15 Kt × P ±. Botvinnik-Rabinovitch, 1934.

(f) 14...P × P; 15 B-R6. Euwe-Winter, Nottingham, 1936.

(g) Better than 11 B-B4, P-B4!; 12 P × P, Kt × Kt; 13 B × Kt, B × B; 14 Q × B, Kt × P; 15 Q-K3, Q-Q6 =. Alekhine-Bogoljubow, 21st match game, 1929.

(h) 14...Kt × Kt; 15 Kt-K5, QR-Q1; 16 B-Q2. Alatortsev-Loevenfisch, 1934. Compare French Defense, cols. 46-47.

(i) Other replies lead to variations similar to col. 152.

(j) Weaker is 8 B-Q3, O-O; 9 O-O, P × P; 10 B × P (after 10 P × P, P-K4 Black is threatening ...P-K5), P-K4; 11 Q-B2, B-Q3; 12 Kt-KKt5, P-KR3 =. Kan-Belavienetz, Moscow, 1939.

Notes continued on p. 212

Notes continued from p. 210

(e) Weaker is 11 P × P, B × P; 12 O—O, B—Kt2; 13 Q—K2, B—K2; 14 KR—Q1, Q—R4; 15 P—QKt3, O—O =. Fine—Vidmar, Nottingham, 1936.

(f) 15... B × Kt; 16 R—QB1 (also good is 16 Kt—Q2 as in Euwe—Fontein, Amsterdam, 1939), P—R3; 17 B—R4. Ragošin—Looevenfisch, Moscow, 1935.

(g) Or 12 Kt(K4)—Q2, B—K2; 13 P—R5! (better than 13 Q—K2, O—O; 14 R—Q1, P—QR4 ♣. Gruenfeld—Rubinstein, Meran, 1924), O—O; 14 Kt—B4, Q—B2; 15 Q—K2 (Alekhine—Bogoljubow, 2nd match game, 1934) and now 15... B—K5! =.

(h) 16 P—QKt3, O—O. Flohr—Vidmar, Bad Sliac, 1932.

(i) If 9... P—B4; 10 Q—R4, P × P; 11 Kt × Ktch, P × Kt; 12 B—K4, R—QKt1; 13 Kt × P ±.

(j) Or 11... P—B4; 12 P × P, B × P; 13 O—O, B—K2 (not 13... O—O?; 14 P—K5+); 14 Kt—K5 ±.

(k) Botvinnik—Lissitzin, Leningrad, 1933.

Notes continued from p. 211

(k) Makogonov—Kotov, Moscow, 1944.

(l) Rubinstein's Anti-Meran System. Weak here is 6 P × P, e.g. 6... KP × P; 7 B—Q3, B—Q3; 8 O—O, O—O; 9 P—K4?, P × P; 10 Kt × P, Kt × Kt; 11 B × Kt, Kt—B3; 12 B—B2, P—KR3 ♣. Conde—Wallis, Bournemouth, 1939.

(m) Also adequate is 6... B—K2; 7 B—Q3, O—O; 8 P—B4, P—B4; 9 BP × P, Kt × P; 10 QKt × Kt, P × Kt; 11 O—O, Kt—B3; 12 B—Q2, P × P; 13 P × P, Kt—K5 =. Spielmann—Euwe, match, 1932.

(n) Or 8... B—K2; 9 P × P, KP × P

(l) 15... B—K2; 16 B—K4.

(m) If 7 P—K4, P × KP (7... P × BP?; 8 B × P, P—K4?; 9 P × P, QKt × P; 10 Kt × Kt, B × Kt; 11 Q × Qch, K × Q; 12 B × P, B × Ktch; 13 P × B, Kt × P; 14 O—O+. Gruenfeld); 8 Kt × P, Kt × Kt; 9 B × Kt, Kt—B3; 10 B—B2, B—Kt5ch; 11 B—Q2, B × Bch (11... Q—R4 is even simpler) and Black drew easily. Gruenfeld—Tartakower, Kecskemet, 1927.

(n) Since this leads to no lasting advantage, White is best advised to play 8 P—QKt3 and proceed as in col. 153. Compare also columns 119—120.

(o) Or 10 P—Q5, Kt—Kt3; 11 B—Kt3, B—KKt5 =.

(p) Also good is 10... Q—K2, when 11 P—Q5 is again unfavorable for White: 11... R—Q1; 12 Q—K2, P—KR3; 13 B—R4, Kt—B1; 14 QR—Q1, Kt—Kt3; 15 B—KKt3, Kt—R4 ♣. Kan—Romanovsky, Moscow, 1945.

(q) Johner—Capablanca, 1911.

(9... BP × P; 10 B—Q3, Kt—B4; 11 B—B2, P—QR4; 12 O—O, P—KKt3 is a feasible alternative. Tartakower—Maroczy, Nice, 1930); 10 B—Q3, Kt—B4; 11 B—B2, P—B4; 12 O—O, O—O; 13 P—QKt3, P—KKt3; 14 B—Kt2, Kt—K5; 15 Kt × Kt, QP × Kt =. Bondarevsky—Belavienetz, Moscow, 1939. Weaker is 8... B—Kt5; 9 B—Q2!, Q—Kt3; 10 B—K2, O—O; 11 O—O, B × Kt; 12 P × B ±. Rubinstein—Vidmar, San Remo, 1930.

(o) 15 P—Kt4, P—K4. Spielmann—Lokvenc, Vienna, 1936.

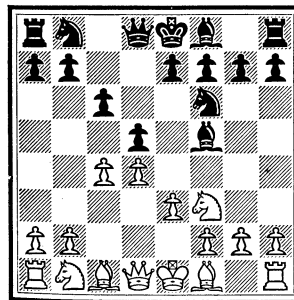
SLAV DEFENSE

1 P—Q4, P—Q4; 2 P—QB4, P—QB3; 3 Kt—KB3, Kt—B3

	156	157	158	159	160
4 (Kt—B3).....			P—K3		
(P—K3).....		B—B4 (f)	B—B4*		
5 (P—K3) (a)	P × P		P × P.....		Kt—B3
P—QR3 (b)	P × P (g)		P × P (j)		P—K3
6 P—B5! (c)	Q—Kt3		Kt—B3.....	Q—Kt3	Kt—KR4
P—QKt3 (d)	Q—Kt3		P—K3	Q—B2! (m)	B—Kt5 (p)
7 P × P	Kt × P		Kt—K5	Kt—R3 (n)	Q—Kt3
QKt—Q2	Kt × Kt (h)		KKt—Q2! (k)	Kt—B3	Q—Kt3
8 Kt—QR4	Q × Kt		Q—Kt3	B—Q2	P—KR3
Kt × P	P—K3		Q—B1	P—K3	B—R4
9 B—Q2	Q—Kt3		B—Q2	R—B1	P—Kt4
Kt × Kt	Q × Q		Kt—QB3	Kt—K5!	B—Kt3
10 Q × Kt	P × Q		R—B1	B—Kt5	Kt × B
Q—Kt3	B—B7		Kt(Q2) × Kt	Kt × B	RP × Kt
11 R—B1	B—Q2		P × Kt	Kt × Kt	B—Kt2
B—Q2	B × P		B—K2	R—B1	B—Kt5
12 Kt—K5	P—K4!		B—K2	O—O	B—Q2
Q × KtP	P—B3		O—O	P—QR3	QKt—Q2
13 Kt × B	B—B3		Kt—Kt5	B × Ktch	O—O—O
Kt × Kt	B—B7		Q—Q2	P × B	B × Kt!
14 B—Q3+ (e)	Kt—Q2+ (i)		O—O (l)	R—B3	B × B
			KR—B1 =	B—Q3 ♣ (o)	Q × Q = (q)

\* DIAGRAM 88

cols. 158—160



[After 4... B—B4]

(a) For 5 B—Kt5 see columns 137—140. A new try is 5 Q—Kt3, QKt—Q2; 6 P—Kt3, B—K2 (better 6... P × P; 7 Q × BP, B—Q3 and ... P—K4 soon); 7 B—Kt2, O—O; 8 O—O, P—QKt3; 9 B—B4, B—Kt2; 10 P × P, Kt × P; 11 Kt × Kt, KP × Kt; 12 QR—Q1, B—B3; 13 Kt—K5 ±. Sokolovsky—Kotov, Moscow, 1944.

(b) The accelerated Meran.

(c) Best. Weaker alternatives are: (1) 6 P × P, KP × P; 7 B—Q3, B—Q3; 8 O—O, O—O; 9 Q—B2, QKt—Q2; 10 P—QR3, R—K1 =. Winter—Rubinstein, Rams-gate, 1929. (2) 6 Kt—K5, P—B4; 7 P × QP, Kt × P; 8 B—K2, Kt—QB3; 9 KKt × Kt, P × Kt; 10 O—O, P × P; 11 Q × P, P—QB4 =. Bogoljubow—Alekhine, Berne, 1932.

Notes continued on p. 216

## SLAV DEFENSE

1 P-Q4, P-Q4; 2 P-QB4, P-QB3; 3 Kt-KB3

	161	162	163	164	165
3	(Kt-B3).....				P-K3 (m)
4	(P-K3) (a) (B-B4).....	P-K3			Kt-B3 P × P (n)
5	B-Q3 P-K3	QKt-Q2 (d) P-B4 (e).....	Kt-K5		P-QR4 (o) B-Kt5
6	Kt-B3 B × B	B-K2 Kt-B3	B-Q3..... P-KB4 (g)	Kt × Kt P × Kt	P-K3 P-QKt4
7	Q × B QKt-Q2	O-O B-Q3	Kt-K5 (h) Q-R5	Kt-Q2 P-KB4	B-Q2 P-QR4 !
8	O-O B-Kt5 (b)	P-QR3 P × QP	O-O B-Q3	P-B3 (k) B-Q3	P × P B × Kt
9	Kt-Q2 O-O	KP × P P-QR4	P-B4 O-O (i)	P-KKt3 P × P	B × B P × P
10	P-K4 P × BP	B-Q3 O-O	Kt(Q2)-B3 Q-R3	Kt × P Kt-Q2	P-QKt3 B-Kt2
11	Q × P Q-K2	R-K1 P-QKt3	B-Q2 Kt-Q2	Q-Kt3 P-B4	P × P (p) P-Kt5
12	P-QR3 B-R4	P-QKt3 B-Kt2	B-K1 Kt(Q2)-B3	B-Kt2 O-O	B-Kt2 Kt-KB3
13	P-B4 B-Kt3 = (c)	B-Kt2 Kt-K2 = (f)	Q-K2 B-Q2 = (j)	O-O Q-K2 = (l)	B-Q3 B-K5 ! = (q)

(a) On 4 P-KKt3 Black can transpose to the Gruenfeld with 4...P-KKt3 or to the Réti with 4...B-B4.

(b) Weaker is 8...P × P; 9 Q × BP, B-K2; 10 P-K4, O-O; 11 B-Kt5, P-KR3; 12 B-R4 ±. Petrow-Reshevsky, Semmering-Baden, 1937.

(c) 14 P-K5, Kt-Q4. Petrow-Flohr, Semmering-Baden, 1937.

(d) For 5 Kt-B3 see columns 141-156.

(e) Weaker alternatives are: (1) 5...QKt-Q2; 6 B-Q3, B-K2; 7 O-O, O-O; 8 P-QKt3, P-QKt3; 9 B-Kt2, B-Kt2; 10 Q-K2, P-QR4; 11 P-QR4, B-Kt5; 12 P-K4, P × KP; 13 Kt × P ±. Alekhine-Bogoljubow, 6th match game, 1934. (2) 5...P-KKt3; 6 P-QKt3, Q-R4; 7 B-Q3, B-Kt2; 8 O-O, O-O; 9 Q-B2, QKt-Q2; 10 B-Kt2, R-Q1; 11 P-QR3 ±. Rubinstein-Spielmann, Semmering, 1926.

(f) Alekhine-Vidmar, Semmering, 1926.

(g) The Stonewall Variation.

(h) Or 7 O-O, Kt-Q2; 8 Kt-K5, QKt × Kt; 9 P × Kt, B-K2; 10 Q-B2, O-O; 11 P-QKt3, B-Q2; 12 R-Q1, P-QR4; 13 P-QR3, Kt-B4; 14 B-K2, B-K1; 15 B-Kt2, P-B5 =. Eliskases-Bogoljubow, 17th match game, 1939.

(i) Equally good is 9...Kt-Q2; 10 R-B3, Q-K2; 11 R-R3, QKt × Kt; 12 BP × Kt, B-B2; 13 Q-R5ch, Q-B2; 14 Q × Qch, K × Q; 15 Kt-Kt3 =. Rabinovitch-Tarrasch, Baden-Baden, 1925.

(j) 14 Kt × B, Kt × Kt. Alekhine-Euwe, 8th match game, 1927.

(k) An improvement on 8 Q-Kt3, B-Q3; 9 P-B5, B-B2; 10 Kt-B4, Kt-Q2; 11 B-Q2, Kt-B3; 12 P-B3, O-O; 13 O-O-O, P-QKt3 ±. Bogoljubow-Marczy, New York, 1924.

Notes continued on p. 216

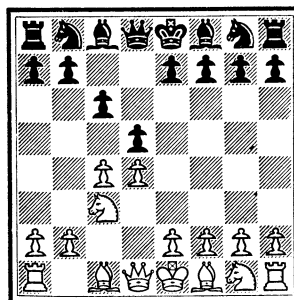
## SLAV DEFENSE

1 P-Q4, P-Q4; 2 P-QB4, P-QB3

	166	167	168	169	170
3	(Kt-KB3).... (P-K3)	Kt-QB3 (e)* P × P.....	P-K3.....		Kt-B3
4	P-K3 P-KB4 (a)	P-K4 ! ! (f) P-K4 (g)	P-K4 (k) P × KP		P-K3 B-B4
5	Kt-B3 B-Q3 (b)	Kt-B3 ! P × P	Kt × P B-Kt5ch		P × P Kt × P (r)
6	B-Q3 Q-B3	Q × P ! (h) Q × Q	Kt-B3..... P-QB4	B-Q2 ! ? Q × P	B-B4 Kt × Kt
7	O-O Kt-KR3	Kt × Q B-QB4	P-QR3 (l) B-R4 (m)	B × B Q × Ktch	P × Kt P-K3
8	P-QKt3 (c) O-O	B-K3 Kt-B3	B-K3 Kt-KB3 !	B-K2 Kt-QR3 (n)	Kt-K2 B-Q3
9	B-Kt2 Kt-Q2	P-B3 O-O (i)	Kt-K2 ! P × P	B-B3 (o) P-B3 ! (p)	Kt-Kt3 B-Kt3
10	Q-B1 Q-K2	B × P QKt-Q2	B × P Kt-B3	Kt-B3 Kt-K2	P-B4 Q-R4
11	P-QR4 R-B3	O-O-O Kt-K4	B-K3 Q × Qch	O-O O-O	B-Q2 P-R4
12	B-R3 ± (d)	B-K2 ± (j)	R × Q ±	Q-Q2 P-K4 † (q)	Q-Kt3 ± (s)

\* DIAGRAM 89

cols. 167-170



[After 3 Kt-QB3]

line for White occurred in the brilliancy prize game Maroczy-Tartakower, Tep-litz-Schoenau, 1922: 6 P-QR3, B-K2; 7 B-Q3, O-O; 8 O-O, Kt-K5; 9 Q-B2, B-Q3; 10 P-QKt3, Kt-Q2; 11 B-Kt2, R-B3; 12 KR-K1, R-R3; 13 P-Kt3, Q-B3; 14 B-KB1, P-KKt4+. See also Dutch Defense, cols. 196-198.

(c) The move 8 Q-B2 here is based on a trap: 8...Kt-Q2?; 9 P × P, KP × P; 10 P-K4, BP × P; 11 B × P, P × Kt; 12 Kt × P, Q-B1; 13 R-K1, K-Q1; 14 P-Q5, P-B4; 15 P-QKt4 with a winning attack. Grohmann-Engels, Aix-la-Chapelle, 1934. But after 8 Q-B2, O-O avoids the trap and gives Black a decent game.

(d) 12...Kt-B2; 13 B × B, Q × B; 14 Q-R3, Q × Q; 15 R × Q, P-QR4; 16 R-B1 and White won the endgame. Fine-Ulvestad, New York, 1939.

Notes continued on p. 217

(a) The Stonewall Variation. See also col. 163.

(b) Black's best course is 5...Kt-KB3 as in col. 163. After 5...Kt-B3 a weaker

## Notes continued from p. 213

(d) Or  $\delta \dots QKt-Q2$ ;  $7 P-QKt4$ ,  $P-QR4$ ;  $8 P-Kt5$ ,  $Kt-K5$ ;  $9 Kt \times Kt$ ,  $P \times Kt$ ;  $10 Kt-Q2$ ,  $P-B4$ ;  $11 P-B3$ ,  $Q-R5ch$ ;  $12 P-Kt3$ ,  $Q-R3$ ;  $13 Q-K2+$ . Euwe—Alekhine, 10th match game, 1935.

(e) Euwe—Alekhine, 8th match game, 1935.

(f)  $4 \dots Q-Kt3$ , Suechting's Variation, is refuted by  $5 P-B5$ ,  $Q-B2$ ;  $6 P-KKt3$ ,  $Kt-R4$ ;  $7 P-K4$ ,  $P \times P$ ;  $8 Kt-K5$ ,  $P-KKt3$ ;  $9 B-QB4$ ,  $P-K3$ ;  $10 Kt \times KP$ ,  $Kt-Q2$ ;  $11 P-B4$ ,  $B-K2$ ;  $12 Kt \times KBP$ ,  $K \times Kt$ ;  $13 P-KKt4+$ . Kostich—Balogh, Gyula, 1921.

(g) If  $5 \dots Kt \times P$ ;  $6 Q-Kt3$ ,  $Q-Kt3$ ;  $7 Kt \times Kt$ ,  $Q \times Q$ ;  $8 Kt-B7ch$ ,  $K-Q2$ ;  $9 P \times Q$ ,  $K \times Kt$ ;  $10 B-B4ch$ ,  $K-B1$ ;  $11 Kt-Q2$ ,  $P-K3$ ;  $12 P-K4$ ,  $B-Kt3$ ;  $13 B-Q3$ ,  $B-Kt5$ ;  $14 K-K2 \pm$ . Stahlberg—Fenoglio, Mar del Plata, 1942.

(h) Or  $7 \dots Q \times Q$ ;  $8 Kt \times Ktch$ ,  $KP \times Kt$ ;  $9 P \times Q$ ,  $B-B7$ ;  $10 Kt-Q2$ ,  $B-Kt5$ ;  $11 R-R4$ ,  $B \times Ktch$ ;  $12 B \times B$ ,  $B \times P$ ;  $13 R-R3+$ . Bogoljubow.

(i) Torre—Gotthilf, Moscow, 1925.

(j) Not  $5 \dots Kt \times P$ ;  $6 B-B4$ ,  $P-K3$ ;  $7 O-O$ ,  $Kt-Q2$ ;  $8 Q-K2$ ,  $B-KKt5$ ;  $9 P-KR3$ ,  $B-R4$ ;  $10 P-K4 \pm$ . Euwe—Alekhine, 6th match game, 1935.

(k) If  $7 \dots QKt-Q2?$ ;  $8 P-KKt4!$ ,  $B-Kt3$ ;  $9 P-KR4$ ,  $P-KR3$ ;  $10 Kt \times B$ ,  $P \times Kt$ ;  $11 B-Q3+$ . Bogoljubow—Gotthilf, Moscow, 1925.

## Notes continued from p. 214

(l) Fine—Kashdan, New York, 1940.

(m) The Semi-Slav Defense.

(n) The Notebook or Abrahams Variation.  $4 \dots P-KB4$  transposes to the Stonewall (col. 163 and col. 166).  $4 \dots Kt-B3$  transposes to cols. 137–156.

(o)  $5 P-K4$  is inadequate:  $5 \dots P-QKt4$ ;  $6 P-K5$  (on  $6 B-K2$ ,  $Kt-B3$  forces White to continue as in the main line. Weaker after  $6 B-K2$  is  $6 \dots Kt-Q2$ ;  $7 O-O$ ,  $B-Kt2$ ;  $8 P-Q5!$ ,  $Kt-B4$ ;  $9 P \times BP$ ,  $B \times P$ ;  $10 Kt-Q4$ ,  $Q-Q2$ ;  $11 Kt \times B$ ,  $Q \times Kt$ ;  $12 P-QR4$ ,  $R-Q1$ ;  $13 P \times P+$ . Ragosin—Abrahams, match U.S.S.R.—Great Britain, 1946),  $B-Kt2$ ;

(l) Alekhine—Euwe, 11th match game, 1935.

(m) The most precise. If  $6 \dots Q-B1$ ;  $7 B-Q2$ ,  $P-K3$ ;  $8 Kt-R3!$  (Landau's Variation),  $Kt-B3$ ;  $9 R-B1$  only  $9 \dots Kt-Q2!$  suffices:  $10 B-Kt5$ ,  $B-K2$ ;  $11 Q-R4$ ,  $O-O$ ;  $12 B \times Kt$ ,  $P \times B$ ;  $13 Q \times BP$ ,  $Q \times Q$ ;  $14 R \times Q$ ,  $QR-Kt1$ ;  $15 B-B1$ ,  $B \times Kt =$ . If here  $9 \dots Kt-K5$ ;  $10 Kt-K5$ ,  $Kt \times B$ ;  $11 K \times Kt$ ,  $B-Kt5ch$ ;  $12 K-Q1$ ,  $B-K2$ ;  $13 B-R6!$ +. After  $6 \dots Q-B1$  another try is  $7 B-Kt5ch$ , met by  $7 \dots KKt-Q2$ ;  $8 O-O$ ,  $P-K3$ ;  $9 B-Q2$ ,  $QKt-B3$ ;  $10 R-B1$ ,  $Q-B2$ ;  $11 Q-R4$ ,  $R-B1$ ;  $12 B-R5$ ,  $Kt-Kt3$ ;  $13 B \times Kt$ ,  $Q \times B$ ;  $14 Kt-K5$ ,  $B-Q3!$  =. Chekhover—Alatorstev, Moscow, 1945. If now  $15 B \times Ktch$ ,  $P \times B$ ;  $16 R \times P$ ,  $R \times R$ ;  $17 Q \times Rch$ ,  $Q \times Q$ ;  $18 Kt \times Q$ ,  $K-Q2$ ;  $19 Kt \times P$  (or  $19 Kt-R5$ ,  $R-QB1$ ),  $R-QKt1!$  and Black has enough for his Pawns.

(n) Simpler now  $7 Kt-B3$  but Black equalizes by straight development.

(o) Reshevsky—Capablanca, Semmering—Baden, 1937.

(p) Better than  $6 \dots B-K5$ ;  $7 P-B3$ ,  $B-Kt3$ ;  $8 Q-Kt3$ ,  $Q-B2$ ;  $9 B-Q2$ ,  $B-K2$ ;  $10 Kt \times B$ ,  $RP \times Kt$ ;  $11 O-O-O$ ,  $QKt-Q2$ ;  $12 B-K2$ ,  $P \times P$ ;  $13 B \times P$ ,  $Kt-Kt3$ ;  $14 P-Kt3 \pm$ . Fine—Schmidt, Stockholm, 1937.

(q)  $15 P \times Q$ ,  $Kt-Kt3!$  =. Fine—Reinfeld, New York, 1938.

$7 B-K2$ ,  $Kt-K2$ ;  $8 Kt-K4$ ,  $Kt-Q4$ ;  $9 O-O$ ,  $Kt-Q2$ ;  $10 KKt-Kt5$ ,  $B-K2$ ;  $11 P-B4$ ,  $P-Kt3 \mp$ . Spielmann—Eliskases, 7th match game, 1932.  $5 P-K3$  is met equally by  $5 \dots P-QKt4$ .

(p) If  $11 P-Q5$ ,  $Kt-KB3!$ ;  $12 P \times BP$ ,  $P-Kt5$ ;  $13 B \times Kt$ ,  $P \times B!$ ;  $14 P-K4$ ,  $Kt-Q2 \mp$ . Or here  $12 P \times KP$ ,  $Q \times Qch$ ;  $13 K \times Q$ ,  $Kt-K5$ ;  $14 P \times Pch$ ,  $K \times P$ ;  $15 B-K1$ ,  $R-Q1ch$ ;  $16 K-B1$ ,  $Kt-QB3$ ;  $17 P \times P$ ,  $P-Kt5 \mp$  (Euwe). On  $11 P-Q5$ ,  $P-B3?$  is refuted by  $12 P \times BP$ ,  $P-Kt5$ ;  $13 B \times KtP!$ ,  $P \times P$ ;  $14 B-R3$ ,  $Kt-K2$ ;  $15 Kt-Q4+$ . Gilg—Becker, Bad Lieberwerda, 1934.

## Additional Notes continued from p. 214

(q)  $14 B \times B$ ,  $Kt \times B$ ;  $15 Q-B2$ ,  $P-B4$  and if  $16 P-Q5$ ,  $P \times P!$  The position is complicated, the chances even (Euwe). Alternatives on Black's 13th move are inferior: (1)  $13 \dots Kt-K5$ ;  $14 O-O$ ,  $O-O$ ;  $15 Kt-Q2$ ,  $P-B4?$ ;  $16 B \times Kt$ ,  $P \times B$ ;

$17 Q-Kt4+$ . Koenig—Abrahams, Bournemouth, 1939. (2)  $13 \dots QKt-Q2$ ;  $14 O-O$ ,  $R-R2$ ;  $15 R-K1$ ,  $Q-R1$ ;  $16 P-K4!$ ,  $B \times P$ ;  $17 B \times B$ ,  $Kt \times B$ ;  $18 P-Q5!$ +. Pirc—Winter, Prague, 1931.

## Notes continued from p. 215

(e) On  $3 P-K3$ ,  $B-B4$ ;  $4 Q-Kt3$  Black should play  $4 \dots Q-B1$  (leading to regular lines) but not  $4 \dots Q-Kt3$ ;  $5 P \times P$ ,  $Q \times Q?$  (necessary is  $5 \dots B \times Kt$ ;  $6 R \times B$ ,  $Q \times Q$ ;  $7 P \times Q \pm$ );  $6 P \times Q$ ,  $B \times Kt$ ;  $7 P \times P!$ ,  $B-K5$ ;  $8 R \times P!$ !+.

(f) Alekhine's brilliant innovation. If  $4 P-QR4$  (or  $4 P-K3$ ,  $P-QKt4$ ;  $5 Kt \times P?$ ,  $P \times Kt$ ;  $6 Q-B3$ ,  $Q-B2$ ;  $7 Q \times R$ ,  $B-Kt2$ ;  $8 Q \times P$ ,  $P-K4!$ !),  $P-K4$ ;  $5 P \times P$ ,  $Q \times Qch$ ;  $6 K \times Q$ ,  $Kt-QR3$ ;  $7 P-K3$ ,  $B-K3$ ;  $8 Kt-B3$ ,  $O-O-Och \mp$ . Fine—Euwe, Zandvoort, 1936.

(g) The safest line is  $4 \dots P-QKt4$ ;  $5 P-QR4$ ,  $P-Kt5$ ;  $6 Kt-Kt1$ ,  $Kt-B3 =$ .

(h) According to Alekhine, this is his own improvement on  $6 B \times P!$ !, with which he surprised Euwe in the 6th match game, 1937.  $6 B \times P!$  is now considered unsound because of  $6 \dots P \times Kt$ ;  $7 B \times Pch$ ,  $K-K2$ ;  $8 Q-Kt3$ ,  $P \times P!$ ;  $9 B-Kt5ch$  (or  $9 B \times P$ ,  $Q-Kt3$ ;  $10 B \times Kt$ ,  $R \times B!$ ;  $11 Q \times R$ ,  $Q-Kt5ch+$ ),  $Kt-B3$ ;  $10 R-Q1$ ,  $Q-R4ch$ ;  $11 K-K2$  (or  $11 B-Q2$ ,  $Q-Kt3$ ;  $12 B-Kt4ch$ ,  $P-B4+$ , or  $11 R-Q2$ ,  $P-Kt8(Q)ch!$ ),  $Q-Kt4ch+$ . Against  $6 B \times P$ , both  $6 \dots P-QKt4?$  and  $7 Kt \times P$  (Alekhine—Euwe) and  $6 \dots B-QB4?$ ;  $7 Kt-K5!$  (Kashdan—Pollard, New York, 1938) are bad for Black.

(i) This reduces White's advantage to a minimum. The alternatives are: (1)  $9 \dots P-QKt4?$ ;  $10 P-QR4$ ,  $P-Kt5$ ;  $11 Kt-Q1$ ,  $B-R3$ ;  $12 R-B1$ ,  $KKt-Q2$ ;  $13 P-B4$ ,  $O-O$ ;  $14 B \times P$ ,  $R-K1$ ;  $15 Kt-KB2$ ,  $B \times Kt$ ;  $16 B \times B(Q4)+$ . Keres—Euwe, 8th match game, 1939–40. (2)  $9 \dots B \times Kt$ ;  $10 B \times B$ ,  $B-K3$ ;  $11 P-B4$ ,  $O-O$ ;  $12 P-B5$ ,  $B-B1$ ;  $13 B \times Kt$ ,  $P \times B$ ;  $14 B \times P$ ,  $Kt-Q2$ ;  $15 O-O-O \pm$ .

(j)  $12 \dots Kt-Kt3$ ;  $13 Kt-R4$ ,  $B-K2$ .

(k)  $4 Kt-B3$  leads to the more regular lines.

(l) If  $7 B-K3$ ,  $Kt-KB3$  transposes back to the column. Inferior is  $7 \dots Q-R4$ ;  $8 Kt-K2!$ ,  $P \times P$ ;  $9 B \times P$ ,  $Kt-KB3$ ;  $10 P-QR3$ ,  $B-K2$ ;  $11 Kt-Kt3$ ,  $Kt-B3$ ;  $12 P-Kt4$ ,  $Q-B2$ ;  $13 B-K3 \pm$ . Alekhine—Junge, Salzburg, 1942.

(m) Weaker is  $7 \dots B \times Ktch$ ;  $8 P \times B$ ,  $Kt-KB3$ ;  $9 Kt-B3$ ,  $Kt-B3?$  ( $9 \dots Q-R4$  is necessary);  $10 B-Q3!$ ,  $P \times P$ ;  $11 P \times P$ ,  $Kt \times P$ ;  $12 O-O$ ,  $Kt-B3$ ;  $13 B-Kt2$ ,  $B-Q2$ ;  $14 R-K1$ ,  $Q-B2$ ;  $15 Kt-K5+$ . Denker—Pinkus, New York, 1946.

(n) The alternatives are: (1)  $8 \dots Q \times KtP$ ;  $9 B-KB3$ ,  $Q-Kt3$ ;  $10 Q-Q6$ ,  $Kt-Q2$ ;  $11 O-O-O$ ,  $Q-B3$  with unclear complications, a variation which has yet to be tried in practice. (2)  $8 \dots Kt-B3$ ;  $9 Kt-B3$ ,  $QKt-Q2$ ;  $10 Q-Q6$ ,  $P-B4$ ;  $11 B-B3$ ,  $Q-B3$ ;  $12 Q \times Q$ ,  $P \times Q$ ;  $13 Kt-Q2 \pm$ . Flohr—Shamikovitch, Tiflis, 1943.

(o) If  $9 B-R3$ ,  $P-QB4$ ;  $10 Kt-B3$ ,  $Kt-K2$  and White's QB is out of play.

(p) An improvement on  $9 \dots Kt-B3$ ;  $10 Kt-B3$ ,  $B-Q2$ ;  $11 Kt-K5$ ,  $R-Q1$ ;  $12 Q-Q2!$ ,  $O-O$  (or  $12 \dots B-B1$ ;  $13 Q-Kt5$ ,  $R-Kt1$ ;  $14 P-B3 \pm$ . Flohr—Turn, Tallinn, 1945);  $13 P-B3$ ,  $Q-R5ch$ ;  $14 P-Kt3$ ,  $Q-R6$ ;  $15 B-B1$ ,  $Q-R3$ ;  $16 Q \times Q$ ,  $P \times Q$ ;  $17 O-O-O+$ . Flohr—Yudovitch, Moscow, 1944.

(q) Lillenthal—Kotov, Tallinn, 1945.

(r) If  $5 \dots P \times P?$ ;  $6 Q-Kt3$ ,  $B-B1$  (best);  $7 Kt-B3?$  followed by  $Kt-K5+$ . Zukertort—Steinitz, match 1886.

(s) Spielmann—Jacobson, Copenhagen, 1923.

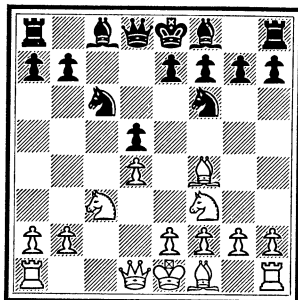
## SLAV DEFENSE

1 P-Q4, P-Q4; 2 P-QB4, P-QB3

171	172	173	174	175
3 (Kt-QB3)... P × P (h) P-K4 (a)	P × P P × P			
4 P × QP (b) BP × P	Kt-QB3 Kt-KB3			
5 P-K4! (c) P × KP	Kt-B3 (i) Kt-B3 (j)			
6 B-Kt5ch (d) B-Q2	B-B4* B-B4.....		P-K3 (v)	
7 P × P B × B (e)	P-K3 (k) P-QR3 (l)		P-K3 B-Q3..... B-K2	
8 Q × Qch K × Q	Kt-K5! (m) P-K3 (n)		B × B (w) Q × B	B-Q3 O-O
9 Kt × B B-Kt5ch	Q-Kt3!..... Q-B1 (o)	P-KKt4 B-Kt3	B-K2 O-O	P-KR3! (y) B-Q2
10 K-K2 P-QR3!	R-B1 B-Q3 (p)	P-KR4 Q-Kt3!?	O-O P-QR3	O-O P-QR3
11 Kt-Q4 (f) Kt-K2	Kt-R4 Q-B2	P-R3! (r) R-B1! (s)	Q-Kt3 P-QKt4	R-B1 B-K1
12 K-K3 ± (g)	Q-Kt6!/+ (q)	Kt × B (t) RP × Kt = (u)	KR-B1 B-Q2 = (x)	B-Kt1 ± (z)

## \* DIAGRAM 90

cols. 172-175



[After 6 B-B4]

- (a) Winawer's Counter-Gambit, a clear refutation of which has not yet been found.  
 (b) If 4 P × QP, P-Q5; 5 Kt-K4, Q-R4ch; 6 Kt-Q2, Kt-Q2; 7 Kt-B3, Kt ×

P; 8 Kt × P, Kt × P; 9 Kt-Kt3, Q-R5; 10 Kt × Kt, Q × Kt(B5); 11 P-K3, B-Kt5ch; 12 B-Q2, B × Bch =.

(c) Alekhine's suggestion, the most fruitful yet seen. If 5 Kt-B3, P-K5; 6 Kt-K5 (Bernstein-Marshall, Ostend, 1906), Q-R4!; and if 7 B-Q2, P-B3+, 6...Kt-QB3 also equalizes. If 5 P × P, P-Q5; 6 Kt-K4, Q-R4ch = as in note (b).

(d) 6 P-Q5, P-B4; 7 P-B3, P × P; 8 Kt × P, B-Q3 is of dubious value.

(e) Not 7...Q-R4; 8 P-K6!, B × B; 9 Q-R5+.

(f) 11 B-Kt5ch?, P-B3 loses a piece.

(g) 12...QKt-B3; 13 Kt × Ktch, Kt × Kt; 14 K × P, R-K1; 15 P-B4, P-B3; 16 Kt-B3. White probably cannot hold the Pawn in the long run, but he retains an endgame advantage.

(h) The Exchange Variation.

Notes continued on p. 219

## Notes continued from p. 218

(i) If 5 Q-Kt3, P-K3; 6 B-B4, Kt-B3; 7 Kt-B3, B-K2; 8 P-K3, Kt-KR4; 9 B-Kt3, O-O; 10 B-Q3, P-B4 =. Marshall-Lasker, New York, 1924.

(j) 5...B-B4?; 6 Q-Kt3 transposes to col. 157.

(k) Weaker is 7 Q-Kt3, Kt-QR4; 8 Q-R4ch, B-Q2; 9 Q-B2, R-B1; 10 P-K3, P-QKt4! ♣. Kan-Lasker, Moscow, 1935.

(l) On 7...Q-Kt3 White has the choice of (1) 8 Q-Kt3!, Q × Q; 9 P × Q, R-B1? (best is 9...P-K3; 10 B-QKt5, Kt-Q2; 11 K-K2 ±); 10 Kt-K5!, P-QR3; 11 Kt × Kt, R × Kt; 12 P-QKt4!, P-QKt4; 13 R × P+ (Purdy) or (2) 8 P-QR3, Q × KtP?; 9 Kt-QR4, Q-B7; 10 Q × Q, B × Q; 11 Kt-B5, Kt-Q2; 12 Kt × P, B-R5; 13 B-QR6! ±. Makogonov-Ravinsky, Moscow, 1944.

(m) Alekhine's idea. The alternative 8 R-B1, R-B1; 9 B-K2, P-K3; 10 O-O, B-K2; 11 Kt-K5, O-O; 12 P-QR3, Kt × Kt leads to simple equality.

(n) Weaker is 8...R-B1; 9 P-KKt4!, B-Q2 (better 9...Kt × Kt); 10 B-Kt2, P-K3; 11 O-O, P-R3; 12 B-Kt3, P-KR4; 13 Kt × B, Kt × Kt; 14 P × P+. Alekhine-Euwe, AVRO tournament, 1938.

(o) If 9...Kt-QR4?; 10 Q-R4ch, P-QKt4; 11 Kt × KtP!/+.

(p) Or 10...Kt × Kt; 11 B × Kt, B-K2; 12 Kt-K2+.

(q) White must win a Pawn.

(r) Stahlberg's recommendation. Weaker is 11 Q-Kt3?, Q × Q; 12 P × Q, Kt × Kt; 13 P × Kt, Kt-Q2 =. Stahlberg-Najdorf, La Plata, 1944.

(s) Kevitz's suggestion. Other replies are

poor: (1) 11...Q × KtP; 12 Kt-R4, Q-B7; 13 Q × Q, B × Q; 14 Kt-Kt6, R-R2; 15 K-Q2!, B-K5; 16 P-B3, Kt × Kt; 17 P × Kt+. (2) 11...Kt × Kt; 12 P × Kt, Kt × P!; 13 B-K2!, P-KR4; 14 Q-R4ch, K-Q1; 15 B × Kt, P × B; 16 R-Q1+ (Stahlberg).

(t) The alternatives are: (1) 12 P-R5, Kt × Kt; 13 P × Kt, B-K5; 14 P-B3, B × BP!; 15 Q × B, Q × KtP; 16 P × Kt, Q × Rch+ (Kevitz). (2) 12 Kt-R4, Q-R4ch; 13 P-Kt4, Kt × QKtP; 14 P × Kt, B × Pch; 15 K-K2, R-B7ch; 16 K-B3, B-K5ch; 17 K-Kt3, R-Q7+.

(u) 13 R-QKt1, Kt-QR4; 14 B-K2, B-Q3.

(v) Inferior is 6...Q-R4; 7 P-K3, Kt-K5; 8 Q-Kt3, P-K3; 9 B-Q3, B-Kt5; 10 R-QB1 (or 10 B × Kt, P × B; 11 Kt-Q2, O-O; 12 O-O ±. Euwe-Keres, 11th match game, 1939-40), Kt × Kt; 11 P × Kt, B-R6; 12 R-QKt1, P-QKt3; 13 P-K4!+. Botvinnik-Denker, match U.S.S.R.—U. S. A., 1945.

(w) Or 8 B-Kt3, O-O; 9 B-Q3, P-QR3; 10 R-B1, Q-K2 =.

(x) Keres-Spielmann, Zandvoort, 1936.

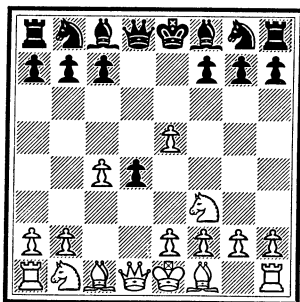
(y) Better than the older lines: (1) 9 O-O, Kt-KR4; 10 B-K5, P-B4; 11 R-B1, Kt-B3; 12 B × Kt, P × B; 13 Kt-KR4, K-R1 =. Capablanca-Em. Lasker, New York, 1924. (2) 9 R-QB1, Kt-KR4; 10 B-K5, P-B3; 11 B-Kt3, Kt × B; 12 RP × Kt, P-KKt3; 13 P-R3, B-Q2; 14 Kt-Q2, R-B2 ♣. Pirc-Fine, Stockholm, 1937.

(z) Botvinnik-Smyslov, Moscow, 1945.

## ALBIN COUNTER GAMBIT

1 P—Q4, P—Q4; 2 P—QB4, P—K4; 3 QP × P, P—Q5

	176	177	178	179	180
4	Kt—KB3 (a)* Kt—QB3.....				P—QB4
5	QKt—Q2..... B—K3.....	P—B3 (d)	P—KKt3..... B—QB4	P—QR3 (h) P—QR4 (i)	P—K3 Kt—QB3
6	P—KKt3 (b) Q—Q2	P × P Q × P (e)	B—B4 KKt—K2	P—KKt3 B—K3	P × P P × P
7	P—QR3 KKt—K2	P—KKt3 B—KB4	B—Kt2 Kt—Kt3	QKt—Q2 B—QB4	B—Q3 B—Kt5
8	Q—R4 Kt—Kt3	P—QR3 O—O—O	QKt—Q2 P—B3	B—Kt2 KKt—K2	O—O Q—B2
9	B—Kt2 B—K2	B—Kt2 P—Q6	P × P Kt × B	O—O O—O	P—KR3 B × Kt
10	O—O O—O	P—K3 P—KKt4	P—B7ch! K × P	Q—B2 (j) Kt—Kt3	Q × B Kt × P
11	P—QKt4 QR—Q1	R—R2 P—KR4	P × Kt P—KR3	Kt—Kt3 B—R2	R—K1 B—Q3
12	B—Kt2 P—Kt3	P—QKt4 B—Kt2	Kt—Kt3 Q—Q3	B—Kt5 Q—Q2	B—B4 Kt—K2
13	QR—B1 P—QR4	B—Kt2 Q—K2	Kt—K5ch! Kt × Kt	QR—Q1 Kt(Kt3) × P	B × Kt B × B
14	P—Kt5+ (c)	P—Kt5+ (f)	P × Kt+ (g)	Kt × Kt Kt × Kt = (k)	Kt—R3+ (l)

\* DIAGRAM 91  
cols. 176-180

[After 4 Kt—KB3]

(a) Not 4 P—K3?, B—Kt5ch; 5 B—Q2,  
P × P; 6 P × P (6 B × B?!, P × Pch;

7 K—K2, P × Kt = Ktch! + +. Or 6 Q—R4ch, Kt—B3; 7 B × B, P × Pch; 8 K × P, Q—R5ch! + +, Q—R5ch; 7 P—Kt3, Q—K5; 8 Kt—KB3, Q × Pch ≠. Also inferior are 4 P—QR3, Kt—QB3; 5 P—K3, B—KB4; 6 Kt—KB3, P × P; 7 Q × Qch, R × Q; 8 B × P, KKt—K2; 9 Kt—B3, Kt—Kt3 = (Cohn—Wolf, Munich, 1900) and 4 P—K4, Kt—QB3; 5 P—B4, P—KKt4!; 6 B—Q3, P × P; 7 B × P, KKt—K2; 8 B—Kt3, Kt—Kt3+ (Burn—Schlechter, Munich, 1900).

(b) 6 Kt—Kt3 is inferior: 6... B—Kt5ch; 7 B—Q2, Q—K2; 8 QKt × P, Kt × Kt; 9 Kt × Kt, O—O—O; 10 Kt—B3, B × P; 11 Q—R4, B × Bch; 12 Kt × B, B—R3; 13 P—K3, B × B; 14 R × B, Q × P; 15 O—O—O, Q—B4ch; 16 Q—B4, Q × Q; 17 Kt × Q, Kt—K2 =. Analysis by Dr. Krause.

Notes continued on p. 221

Notes continued from p. 220

(c) Spielmann—Kostich, Bled, 1931.

(d) Two other inadequate alternatives are:

(1) 5... B—KKt5; 6 P—KR3, B × Kt; 7 Kt × B, B—B4; 8 P—R3, P—QR4; 9 P—KKt3, KKt—K2; 10 B—Kt2, Kt—Kt3; 11 O—O, QR—Kt1; 12 Q—B2, Q—K2; 13 B—Q2 ± (Lärobok). (2) 5... B—Kt5; 6 P—QR3, B × Ktch; 7 Q × B, QKt5; 8 P—QKt4, B × Kt; 9 KP × B, B—Kt5; 10 B—Kt2, Q—K2; 11 O—O—O, O—O—O; 12 P—B4+. Fine—Adams, New York, 1944.

(e) Or 6... Kt × P; 7 P—QR3, B—KKt5; 8 P—R3, B × Kt; 9 Kt × B+.

(f) Post—Spielmann, Berlin, 1907.

(g) Stark—Adams, Ventnor City, 1943.

(h) Still unexplored is 5 B—B4 (compare column 178). If 5... P—KR3 correct is 6 P—KR4!, KKt—K2; 7 P—R5 ±, but not 6 P—KR3?, KKt—K2; 7 QKt—Q2, Kt—Kt3; 8 B—R2, P—QR4; 9 P—R3, P—R5; 10 Q—B2, B—QB4; 11 O—O—O, Q—

K2 ≠. Vishenirsky—Mikenas, Riga, 1946.

(i) Weaker is 5... B—KKt5; 6 QKt—Q2, Q—K2; 7 P—R3, B × Kt; 8 Kt × B, O—O—O; 9 Q—Q3, P—KR3; 10 P—KKt3, P—KKt3; 11 B—Kt2, B—Kt2; 12 O—O, Kt × P; 13 Kt × Kt, B × Kt; 14 P—QKt4+. Lasker—Alekhine, St. Petersburg, 1914. 5... B—K3; 6 QKt—Q2, P—QR4 transposes back to the column. On 5... B—K3; 6 P—K3? is met by 6... P × P; 7 Q × Qch, R × Q; 8 B × P, KKt—K2; 9 B—B4, Kt—Kt3; 10 B—Kt3, P—KR4 ≠. Simonson—Opocensky, Folkestone, 1933.

(j) If 10 P—Kt3, Kt—Kt3; 11 B—Kt2, R—Kt1; 12 Kt—K4, B—R2; 13 P—B5, KKt × P; 14 Kt × P, Kt × Kt; 15 B × Kt, B × KtP regaining the Pawn with a satisfactory game.

(k) 15 P—B5, P—Q6!; 16 P × P, Q—R5. Fine—Adams, New York, 1939.

(l) Gruenfeld—Tartakower, Carlsbad, 1923

## QUEEN'S PAWN GAME

**T**HIS OPENING comprises all the lines of play beginning with  $1 P-Q4$  other than the Queen's Gambit. There are four main divisions, depending on whether Black replies with  $1... P-Q4$  (the Colle System and miscellaneous continuations),  $1... Kt-KB3$  (the Indian Defenses),  $1... P-QB4$  (the Benoni Counter Gambit) or  $1... P-KB4$  (the Dutch Defense). Irregular replies form a fifth division but are clearly weak.

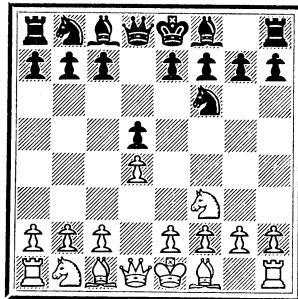
### *Colle System and Miscellaneous Continuations*

$1 P-Q4, P-Q4$

Since White omits the natural  $P-QB4$ , the variations here are almost by definition inferior for him. Unlike the Queen's Gambit, where Black must struggle hard to play the equalizing  $... P-QB4$ , here he can play it without opposition on his second or third move. However, the first player may elect to try for  $P-K4$ , and where he does so the opening can present problems for Black.

DIAGRAM 92

Pages 234-237, cols. 1-15



[After  $1 P-Q4, P-Q4; 2 Kt-KB3, Kt-KB3$ ]

The Colle System (cols. 1-7) is the most dangerous of the openings in this group, and in the hands of a good attacker often leads to brilliant results. White's plan is to hold the center until he can play  $P-K4$ . Against this Black's best course, which is sufficient for equality, is to prepare an early  $... P-K4$  himself, or to weaken White's Pawn structure (cols. 1-3). The K-fianchetto is an excellent defense, but the older lines with  $... P-$

$K3$  (cols. 4-7) are harder for Black to handle, although theoretically sufficient. Cols. 8 and 9 point out some interesting departures from routine, which are not too easy for Black to meet. The line in col. 10 is the most direct way for Black to obtain complete equality.

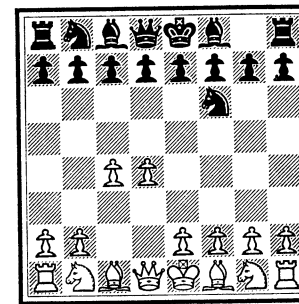
Alternatives after  $2 Kt-KB3, Kt-KB3$  are seen in cols. 11-14. Since Black's center is not under attack, he can develop freely and these lines offer few problems. In reply to  $2 Kt-KB3$ , Black may also play  $2... P-QB4$ ; that he can do so safely is a point of considerable theoretical importance (col. 15).

The Queen's Knight's attack (cols. 16-17) is weak because it actually blocks the QBP. The **Stonewall Variation** (cols. 18-20) can give White a beautiful attack if Black plays carelessly, but Black need only take care not to shut in his QB (the eternal problem child) to obtain a satisfactory game.

### *The Indian Defenses*

Included in this heading are all the openings which begin with  $1 P-Q4, Kt-KB3$ . After the further natural  $2 P-QB4$ , the major sub-divisions are the following:

DIAGRAM 93



[After  $1 P-Q4, Kt-KB3; 2 P-QB4$ ]

#### I. $2... P-K3$

A.  $3 Kt-QB3, B-Kt5$ —Nimzo-Indian Defense

B.  $3 Kt-KB3$

a)  $3... P-QKt3$ —Queen's Indian Defense

b)  $3... B-Kt5ch$ —Bogoljubow Variation

c)  $3... P-B4; 4 P-Q5, P-QKt4$ —Blumenfeld Counter Gambit

- d) 3...P-Q4—Queen's Gambit Declined
- II. 2...P-KKt3; 3 Kt-QB3
- A. 3...P-Q3 or 3...B-Kt2 and delayed ...P-Q4—King's Indian Defense
- B. 3...P-Q4—Gruenfeld Defense
- III. 2...P-Q3—Tchigorin's or Old Indian Defense
- IV. 2...P-K4—Budapest Defense

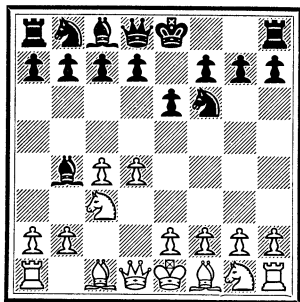
If White plays 2 Kt-KB3 (instead of 2 P-Q4), 2...P-KKt3 again leads to the K-Indian Defense, 2...P-QKt3 to the Q-Indian, while ...P-K3 may transpose to one of a number of defenses. Other replies on White's second move lead to unusual or irregular variations.

### 1. Nimzo-Indian Defense

1 P-Q4, Kt-KB3; 2 P-QB4, P-K3; 3 Kt-QB3, B-Kt5

The Nimzo-Indian has steadily increased in importance in the past few years. In the AVRO tournament in 1938 this defense occurred in 20% of the games played, and in later tournaments the percentages have been on the same order. Its popularity is undoubtedly due to the fact that it, perhaps more than any other comparable defense, combines theoretical soundness with a reasonable basis for aggressive counterplay.

DIAGRAM 94



[After 3...B-Kt5]

White has a wide variety of possible continuations, none of which yield any demonstrably tangible advantage:

(1) 4 Q-B2 (cols. 21-48) is the most thoroughly analyzed continuation for White. All of Black's plausible replies have been tried at one time or another:

(i) 4...P-Q4 (cols. 21-32) is the traditional answer. Here the lines

with 5 P × P offer White a slightly more comfortable game, but no real advantage (cols. 21-27). The more aggressive 5 P-QR3 (cols. 28-32) has recently been strengthened by Bogoljubow's innovation in col. 28 and this variation may well hold more promise for White than the more customary lines.

(ii) 4...P-B4 (cols. 33-35) is by no means as bad as its reputation; in fact, the variation in col. 33 is still theoretically adequate, while Bogoljubow's line in col. 34 is not too weak.

(iii) 4...Kt-B3 (cols. 36-43) is known as the Milner-Barry or Zurich Variation. Black's plan here is to concede White a strong Pawn center for the time being and to plan for a break with ...P-K4. The resulting variations are quite complex, and apparently satisfactory for Black only if he stops P-QKt4 by White (col. 38). Botvinnik's line in col. 42 is good only if White shuts in his QB; with best play White can exploit Black's violation of opening principles. Still, all these variations are tricky and require a profound knowledge of position play by both sides.

(iv) 4...O-O (cols. 44-45) is theoretically inadequate because it abandons the center completely.

(v) 4...P-Q3 (cols. 46-47) is similar to the Zurich Variation, and therefore playable, but somewhat less elastic.

(vi) 4...B × Ktch (col. 48) is of considerable theoretical importance. One has the feeling that it should be possible to refute it, but practice does not bear this feeling out.

(2) 4 Q-Kt3 (cols. 49-55) is not often seen nowadays. 4...P-B4 (cols. 50-55) is less satisfactory than against 4 Q-B2, but 4...Kt-B3 is much stronger and entirely sufficient. However, if White for some reason wishes to force the Zurich Variation, he may play 4 Q-Kt3 to give Black less choice than with 4 Q-B2.

(3) 4 P-K3 (cols. 56-70), the *Rubinstein Variation*, is seen almost as often today as 4 Q-B2. In the 1946 match between the U. S. A. and the U.S.S.R. it was adopted in five of the six games where the Nimzo-Indian was played. From a theoretical point of view it is today the most important single problem which the Black player faces in this defense. The possible replies are: (i) 4...P-Q4 (cols. 56-61) has been shaken by Botvinnik's ingenious 5 P-QR3! (cols. 56-57). Black must find something better than the variations given if he wishes to play this line. The older 5 B-Q3 (cols. 58-61) need not be feared.

(ii) 4...P-QKt3 (cols. 62-64) is met by 5 Kt-K2 with advantage. Perhaps the line in note (e) can be improved upon. The sacrificial con-



tinuation in col. 64 is interesting but Black can avoid it quite easily if he wishes to.

(iii)  $4 \dots P-B4$  (col. 65) is unsatisfactory.

(iv)  $4 \dots O-O$  (cols. 66-68) is solid but cramped.

(v)  $4 \dots B \times Ktch$  (col. 69), a move à la Nimzovitch, is too passive here.

(vi)  $4 \dots Kt-B3$  (col. 70), like so many of the other replies, leads to no clear disadvantage, but a slightly less comfortable position.

(4)  $4 P-QR3$  (cols. 71-75), the *Saemisch Variation*, forces a move which is bad for Black, but at the cost of an important tempo. Black can equalize without much trouble.

(5)  $4 P-KKt3$  (col. 76),  $4 Kt-B3$  (cols. 77-78) and  $4 B-Q2$  and alternatives (col. 79) are all of little theoretical importance; normal development always equalizes for Black.

Instead of the Nimzovitchian  $3 \dots B-QKt5$ , Black's only alternative is to transpose to the Queen's Gambit with  $3 \dots P-Q4$ . Other moves such as  $3 \dots P-QKt3$  allow the strong  $P-K4$  (col. 80).

### 2. Queen's Indian Defense

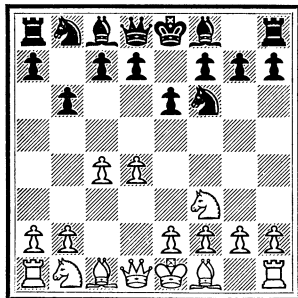
1  $P-Q4$ ,  $Kt-KB3$ ; 2  $P-QB4$ ,  $P-K3$ ;

3  $Kt-KB3$ ,  $P-QKt3$

(or 2  $P-QB4$ ,  $P-QKt3$ , or 2  $Kt-KB3$ ,  $P-QKt3$ )

The Queen's Indian is a necessary adjunct to the Nimzo-Indian because White can sidestep the latter with 3  $Kt-KB3$  instead of 3  $Kt-QB3$ . However, the move 3  $Kt-KB3$ , unlike 3  $Kt-QB3$ , involves no immediate threat and it is not surprising to find that it is much less dangerous for Black.

DIAGRAM 95



[After 3...  $P-QKt3$ ]

Both sides have less choice than in the Nimzo-Indian. White develops with a view to forcing  $P-K4$ , while Black exerts himself to hold the vital center square. The main variation then runs  $4 P-KKt3$ ,  $B-Kt2$ ;  $5 B-Kt2$ ,  $B-K2$ ;  $6 O-O$ ,  $O-O$ ;  $7 Kt-B3$ ,  $Kt-K5$  (cols. 81-85). In the usual continuation here with  $8 Q-B2$ , Black equalizes by maintaining occupation of the square  $K5$  as long as he can (cols. 81-82). A trap to be avoided is that of allowing Black's QB's diagonal to be blocked by  $P-Q5$  (col. 83). A plausible improvement for White is Rubinstein's line in col. 85, but Black's defense was weak there.

Alternatives must be considered in the light of the above main variation. On his 7th move White may try  $7 Q-B2$  (col. 87) or  $7 P-Kt3$  (col. 88); neither leads to anything. Black has a number of alternatives on his 5th move (cols. 89-96).  $5 \dots B-Kt5ch$  is inferior if White sees to it that his  $QKt$  is developed at  $QB3$ , satisfactory otherwise.  $5 \dots P-B4$  allows the cramping advance  $6 P-Q5$ , not to mention the simple  $6 O-O$ , and is not to be recommended.  $5 \dots P-Q4$  (col. 95) appears to be sound and is therefore of considerable theoretical importance.  $5 \dots Q-B1$  prepares  $\dots P-B4$  and is also theoretically satisfactory. It is to be noted that  $\dots P-B4$ , when successful, equalizes more readily in the Queen's Indian than in the Nimzo-Indian. On his fourth move White has various tries at his disposal (cols. 98-101), none as strong as the main line.

The *Bogoljubow Variation*,  $3 \dots B-Kt5ch$  (cols. 102-105), is theoretically adequate—a surprising result, since the move is weak in most analogous positions. The difference here is probably due to the fact that Black is otherwise unweakened; hence he merely helps to free his position by a profitable exchange of pieces. The other alternatives on Black's third move are  $3 \dots P-Q4$ , the Q.G.D., and  $3 \dots P-B4$ ;  $4 P-Q5$ , which is unsound (see below, Blumenfeld Counter Gambit).

After 2  $P-QB4$ ,  $P-QKt3$  immediately is weaker because White can set up a strong Pawn center directly (cols. 106-107). But on 2  $Kt-KB3$ ,  $P-QKt3$  (cols. 108-115) White has nothing better than to transpose to the regular lines with an early  $P-QB4$ . The only other idea which may occasion Black any trouble is the Colle System formation after 3  $P-K3$  (cols. 111-115). This, as in the Colle System proper, can lead to a very dangerous attack if handled improperly, but Black has a number of good defenses. That in col. 111 is especially convincing.

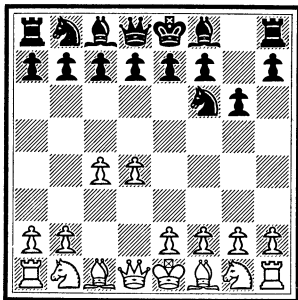
3. *King's Indian Defense*

1 P—Q4, Kt—KB3; 2 P—QB4, P—KKt3

(or 2... P—KKt3 in reply to any other second move by White)

These variations include all the K-fianchetto lines except the Gruenfeld Defense (3 Kt—QB3, P—Q4), which is treated separately. For a long time this defense was relegated to the shelves with other inadequate hyper-modern ideas but it has recently made a strong comeback in Soviet tournaments. Its popularity, however, is due more to its tactical potentialities than to its theoretical rehabilitation, since the old objections to it still carry all their weight.

DIAGRAM 96



[After 2... P—KKt3]

The main variation is that seen in cols. 116–121, 3 Kt—QB3, B—Kt2; 4 P—K4, P—Q3; 5 P—KKt3, O—O; 6 B—Kt2. Sooner or later Black will play ... P—K4, and the crucial question for White then is whether to play P—Q5, P × P or to leave the center untouched. The lines with P—Q5 regularly give White a positional advantage because his Q-side attack (with P—QB5) turns out to be stronger than Black's K-side play (with ... P—KB4). Typically good lines are those in cols. 116, 118 and 120. P × P is definitely weak (see col. 124 note (i)). White may often advantageously maintain the tension in the center, but he must realize that Black can then frequently liquidate the center inferiority (compare columns 117 and 119).

The fianchetto of the KB is not essential for White; as the older variations in cols. 122–125 show, the KB may be developed at K2 just as effectively. When White gets an advantage, it is due to the pressure on the Q-side coupled with the solidity of the center, and for those purposes it does not make too much difference where the KB is placed.

It is to be noted that the tempting Four Pawn Attack (col. 127) is unsound for White. A new improvement in a variation already overloaded with improvements has recently been found (see note (k)).

The omission of 3 Kt—QB3 in favor of 3 P—KKt3 (often adopted to avoid the Gruenfeld Defense) is not a bad alternative for White, who has various good lines against a delayed or immediate ... P—Q4 (see cols. 131 and 133–134).

3 P—B3 is still a moot question in the theory of this opening. Analytically (cols. 135–137) it is quite strong, yet in practice Black often builds up a violent counter-attack.

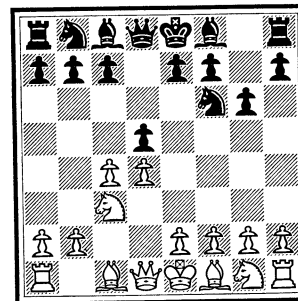
The omission of P—QB4 by White makes Black's problems quite simple (cols. 138–140).

4. *Gruenfeld Defense*

1 P—Q4, Kt—KB3; 2 P—QB4, P—KKt3; 3 Kt—QB3, P—Q4

This is still the most commonly played branch of the King's Indian. In fact, it overshadows the mother defense and is accordingly treated separately. Next to the Nimzo-Indian it is probably the most popular of all the defenses to 1 P—Q4. White has six plausible replies, of which the strongest at the present writing are 4 B—B4 and 4 Q—Kt3.

DIAGRAM 97



[After 3... P—Q4]

(1) 4 P × P (cols. 141–143) accepts Black's challenge and sets up the unopposed Pawn center. But this Pawn center does not hamper Black's development much, and recent analysis has not changed the accepted opinion that this variation has little aggressive value. The latest improvement (see cols. 141–142) involves placing White's Kt at K2 rather than at KB3, where it is exposed to an annoying pin, but this merely serves to equalize and does not give White an advantage.

(2)  $4 \text{ B—Kt5}$  (cols. 144–145) is quite adequately met by  $4 \dots \text{Kt—K5}$ , when Black gets a powerful attack at the expense of a Pawn. The move created a sensation when Lundin revived it in a match game against Spielmann, but his analysis has since been demolished.

(3)  $4 \text{ B—B4}$  (cols. 146–151) is still the most popular line. In conjunction with an early  $\text{Q—Kt3}$ , it prevents the liberating  $\dots \text{P—QB4}$ . Black can however, exchange enough pieces to nullify White's control of more terrain (cols. 146–147). The new line in col. 148 is interesting because Black exploits White's exposed Q-side without any apparent mistakes on White's part. Various improvements for White have been tried, of which the most important is Capablanca's  $6 \text{ R—B1}$  (col. 149). But Black can equalize by an enterprising gambit. As normally played the line involves a sacrifice of Black's QBP (col. 151), which recent analysis has again shown to be sound.

(4)  $4 \text{ P—K3}$  (cols. 152–156) has the same objectives as  $4 \text{ B—B4}$  with less punch. Black is cramped for a while but can easily complete his development sooner or later. The Schlechter Variation in col. 156, where Black does not even have to shut in his QB, is also quite good.

(5)  $4 \text{ Q—Kt3}$  (cols. 157–161), introduced by Botvinnik, has recently been strengthened and is currently one of Black's major problems. Both  $4 \dots \text{P—B3}$  and  $4 \dots \text{P} \times \text{P}$ , once considered good, are now seen to leave Black with a somewhat uncomfortable position. Evidently White must exert direct pressure on the center to obtain an advantage, but when he does exert that pressure it is hard to meet.

(6)  $4 \text{ Kt—B3}$  (cols. 162–165) usually transposes to other lines, but Flohr has introduced a striking innovation at White's 5th move which appears to be quite promising (cols. 162–163). The same idea may also be applicable in other variations (cf. p. 282, note (b)).

#### 5. Tchigorin's (Old Indian) Defense

$1 \text{ P—Q4, Kt—KB3; } 2 \text{ P—QB4, P—Q3}$

This defense has been revived by some of the younger Soviet masters, especially Boleslavsky. If Black plays an early  $\dots \text{P—KKt3}$  it transposes to the K-Indian. In the independent variations White can obtain an advantage, as in the K-Indian, by  $\text{P—Q5}$  and a Q-side advance (cols. 166–169). Col. 167 is most typical of White's bind.  $\dots \text{P—K4}$  and an early  $\dots \text{KP} \times \text{QP}$  has been tried but White can ward off the resulting attack and remain with the sounder position (col. 168).

#### 6. Budapest Defense

$1 \text{ P—Q4, Kt—KB3; } 2 \text{ P—QB4, P—K4}$

Recent analysis indicates that this defense is even less sound than was formerly thought to be the case. White can hold on to the Pawn (cols. 171–172), or return it for the sake of better development (cols. 173–174) with advantage either way. Kottnauer's simple refutation of the Fajarczewicz Variation in col. 176 is striking.

#### 7. Blumenfeld Counter Gambit

$1 \text{ P—Q4, Kt—KB3; } 2 \text{ P—QB4, P—K3; } 3 \text{ Kt—KB3, P—B4; } 4 \text{ P—Q5, P—QKt4}$

Gambits by Black against the QP are apt to boomerang and this one is no exception. Nothing has come forth to upset the old analysis in cols. 177–179 which shows that  $5 \text{ B—Kt5}$  leads to an advantage for White. In addition, Euwe has shown that the gambit can also be successfully accepted (col. 180).

#### 8. Miscellaneous Variations

$1 \text{ P—Q4, Kt—KB3}$  (cols. 181–186)

These comprise a number of unusual lines, none of which are particularly difficult for Black to meet. The most promising for White is  $2 \text{ Kt—KB3, P—K3; } 3 \text{ B—Kt5}$  (cols. 181–184) but here both  $3 \dots \text{P—B4}$  and  $3 \dots \text{P—QKt3}$  suffice to equalize. Against other moves the center break is again always good for Black.

Other replies by Black on the first move either transpose to regular lines or are easily refuted (col. 187).

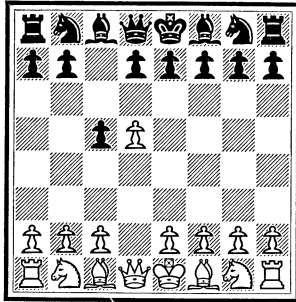
#### Benoni Counter Gambit

$1 \text{ P—Q4, P—QB4}$

This defense is of theoretical importance because  $\dots \text{P—QB4}$  is the key equalizing move in all branches of the QP. As is to be expected, however, the advance  $2 \text{ P—Q5}$  assures White a clear advantage (cols. 188–195). For a while Alekhine played the opening with success, but the games he won were won because he was Alekhine, not because of the opening. It has never been popular with any other master.

It is important to note that the gambit variation in col. 189 is entirely sound.

DIAGRAM 98



[After 2 P—Q5]

*Dutch Defense*

1 P—Q4, P—KB4

Considerable experience with this opening in the decade of the thirties established it as a playable but somewhat dubious defense. Both Alekhine and Botvinnik played it fairly consistently for a number of years, but both later abandoned it. Today it is seldom seen.

The main variation runs 1 P—Q4, P—KB4; 2 P—KKt3, Kt—KB3; 3 B—Kt2, P—K3; 4 Kt—KB3, B—K2; 5 P—B4, O—O; 6 O—O. Here Black has three plausible replies: 6... P—Q4, 6... P—Q3, and 6... Kt—K5. 6... P—Q4 is playable, the others are definitely poor.

(1) 6... P—Q4 (cols. 196–198) sets up a locked center which Black intends to hold locked and to use as a pivot for a K-side attack. The common variations in cols. 197–198 lead to nothing, but the new line in col. 196 appears to be quite promising.

(2) 6... P—Q3 (cols. 199–200) is inferior for a variety of reasons.

(3) 6... Kt—K5 (col. 201) is met by 7 P—Q5 with advantage to White; other moves peter out in the long run.

The variation in col. 202 is of some theoretical interest because it shows that Black's position is left deplorably weak if his KB is exchanged.

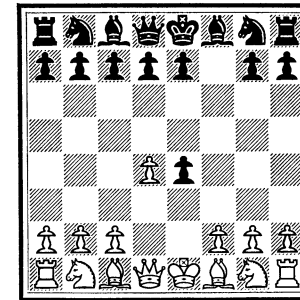
It is to be noted that when White develops his KKt at KB3, ... P—Q4 is better for Black than ... P—Q3. The situation is reversed when White's Kt goes to KR3; here ... P—Q3 is better than ... P—Q4 (cols. 203–204).

Many masters adopt the sequence of moves in the main variation to avoid an early ... B—Kt5ch by Black. That this precaution is not essential is shown by the variations in cols. 206–208. White has a choice of several

good interpositions and comes out with the better of it in all cases. One must assume that Black's King position, already weakened by the initial ... P—KB4, cannot tolerate the additional weakening which the exchange of the KB involves.

On his second move White has the choice of the Staunton Gambit, 2 P—K4, which gives him a strong attack at the expense of a Pawn. Many masters avoid the Staunton Gambit by playing 1... P—K3 and 2... P—KB4, and the main variations have not seen much test in practical play. Analytically, however, the gambit is quite sound.

DIAGRAM 99



[After 2 P—K4, P × P]

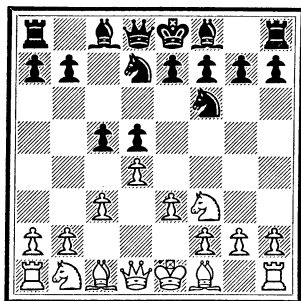
## COLLE SYSTEM

1 P-Q4, P-Q4; 2 Kt-KB3, Kt-KB3; 3 P-K3, P-B4; 4 P-B3, QKt-Q2\*

1	2	3	4	5
5 QKt-Q2 P-KKt3.....		Q-B2.....	P-K3 (l)	
6 B-Q3 B-Kt2		Q-R4 (f) P-KKt3 (g)	B-Q3 B-Q3	
7 O-O O-O		P-B4 BP × P / (h)	O-O O-O	
8 P-QKt4! (a)..... P × KtP	P-K4 QP × P (c)	KP × P (i) B-Kt2	R-K1 / ..... Q-B2 (m)	P-K4 BP × P
9 P × P Kt-K1	Kt × P P × P	P × P (j) Kt × P	P-K4 BP × P	BP × P P × P
10 B-Kt2 Kt-Q3	Kt × P Kt-K4 (d)	Q-Kt3 Kt(Q4)-Kt3	BP × P P × P	Kt × P Kt × Kt
11 Q-Kt3 Kt-Kt3	Kt × Ktch B × Kt	P-QR4 P-QR4	Kt × P R × Kt /	B × Kt Q-Kt3 (o)
12 P-QR4 B-B4!	B-K2 B-Q2	B-Kt5 O-O	R × Kt / R-K1	B-B2 Kt-B3
13 B × B P × B	B-KR6 R-K1	O-O Kt-B3	R-R4! Kt-B1	Q-Q3 B-Q2 (p)
14 P-Kt5 Kt(Kt3)-B5 = (b)	Q-Kt3 Q-B1 ± (e)	R-K1 B-B4 ± (k)	Kt-Kt5 ± (n) B-Kt4 ±	R-K1 B-Kt4 ±

## \* DIAGRAM 100

cols. 1-5



[After 4... QKt-Q2]

(a) Weaker is 8 P-QKt3, Q-B2; 9 B-Kt2, P-K4 ±.

(b) Prins-Landau, Zandvoort, 1936.

(c) If 8... BP × P; 9 P-K5 (but not 9 Kt × P?, Kt-B4+), Kt-K1; 10 P × P ±.

(d) 10... Kt × Kt is weaker: 11 B × Kt, Kt-B3 (better 11... Kt-B4); 12 B-B3, P-K4; 13 Kt-Kt5, Q-Kt3; 14 P-QR4, R-Q1; 15 Q-K1 ±. Colle-Monticelli, San Remo, 1930.

(e) Colle-Gruenfeld, Carlsbad, 1929.

(f) Otherwise Black gets at least equality with ... P-K4.

(g) Better than 6... P-K3; 7 Kt-K5, B-Q3; 8 P-KB4 ±.

(h) Weaker is 7... B-Kt2; 8 P × QP, Kt × P; 9 P-K4!, Kt-Kt3; 10 Q-B2, Q-Q3; 11 P-QR4, P-QR4; 12 P-Q5, O-O; 13 B-Q3 ±. Colle-Rubinstein, Rotterdam, 1931.

(i) If instead 8 Kt × P, B-Kt2; 9 P × P, Kt × P; 10 B-B4, B × Kt; 11 P × B, Kt-Kt3; 12 Q-Kt3, Kt × B; 13 Kt × Kt, O-O; 14 B-R6, R-Q1 ±. Eliskases-Dantas, Rio de Janeiro, 1945.

Notes continued on p. 236

1 P-Q4, P-Q4; 2 Kt-KB3, Kt-KB3; 3 P-K3

	6	7	8	9	10
3 (P-B4).....					B-B4 (q)
4 (P-B3)..... P-K3 (a)			QKt-Q2..... QKt-Q2	P-QKt3 (l) P-K3	B-Q3 P-K3
5 QKt-Q2 Kt-B3 (b)			P-QR3 Q-B2 (j)	B-Kt2 Kt-B3	B × B P × B
6 B-Q3 P-K3 (c)			P-B4 P-KKt3	B-Q3 B-Q3	Q-Q3 (r) Q-B1
7 O-O O-O (d)			P × QP Kt × P	O-O O-O	P-QKt3 Kt-R3
8 P × P..... B × P		Q-K2 R-K1 (h)	Q-Kt3 Kt(Q4)-Kt3	QKt-Q2 (m) Q-K2	O-O B-K2
9 P-K4 P-K4 (e)		P × P B × P	P-QR4 P × P	Kt-K5 (n) P × P	P-B4 O-O
10 P × P Kt × P (f)		P-K4 Kt-Q2!	P × P Kt-B3	P × P B-R6	Kt-B3 P-B3
11 Kt-K4 B-K2		R-K1 Kt(Q2)-K4!	B-Kt5ch Kt(Kt3)-Q2	B × B? (o) Q × B	B-Kt2 Kt-K5
12 Kt-Kt3 P-B4		Kt × Kt Kt × Kt	Kt-K5 P-K3	QKt-B3 B-Q2	KR-B1 R-Q1
13 B-QB4 B-K3 = (g)		B-B2 B-Q2 = (i)	QKt-B3 ± (k)	Kt × Kt B × Kt ± (p)	Q-K2 Q-K3 = (s)

(a) White was threatening P × P. 4... Kt-B3?; 5 P × P, B-Kt5; 6 P-QKt4 transposes to a variation of the Slav Defense with colors reversed (cols. 137-140). The variations in cols. 6 and 7 here are col. 150 in the Slav Defense with colors reversed.

(b) 5... QKt-Q2 transposes to cols. 4-5.

(c) On 6... B-K2 White need be in no hurry to play P-K4, since the counter ... P-K4 is not threatened.

(d) Weak is 7... P × P?; 8 KP × P, Q-B2; 9 R-K1, O-O; 10 Q-K2, R-K1; 11 Kt-K5, B × Kt; 12 P × B, Kt-Q2; 13 Kt-B3, P-B4; 14 P × P e.p. ±. Przepiorka-Stoltz, Hamburg, 1930.

(e) Better than either of the alternatives:

(1) 9... Q-B2; 10 Q-K2 (not 10 P × P, P × P; 11 Kt-Kt3, B-Kt3; 12 Q-B2, R-K1; 13 B-KKt5, Kt-K5; 14 QR-K1, B-KB4 =. Colle-Kashdan, Bled, 1931), B-Q3; 11 R-K1, Kt-KKt5; 12 P-KR3, KKt-K4; 13 Kt × Kt! (an improvement on 13 B-B2, P-KR3; 14

Kt × Kt, Kt × Kt; 15 Kt-B3, Kt × Ktch =. Gilg-Alekhine, Kecskemet, 1927), Kt × Kt; 14 P × P, P × P; 15 Kt-B3!, Kt × B; 16 Q × Kt, Q-B5; 17 R-Q1 ±. Koltanowski-Soultanbeieff, Brussels, 1935. (2) 9... P × P; 10 Kt × P, Kt × Kt; 11 B × Kt, Q × Q; 12 R × Q ± since Black's development is backward. Colle-Rubinstein, Berlin, 1926.

(f) Weaker is 10... Q × P; 11 Q-K2, B-KKt5; 12 Kt-K4, KR-Q1; 13 Kt × Ktch, P × Kt; 14 B-K4 ±. Colle-Thomas, Ghent, 1926.

(g) 14 R-K1, P-K5. Colle-Euwe, 2nd match game, 1928.

(h) 8... P-K4 is met by 9 P × KP, Kt × P; 10 Kt × Kt, B × Kt; 11 P-K4 ±. Another alternative is 8... Kt-Q2; 9 P-K4, BP × P; 10 BP × P, Kt-Kt5; 11 B-Kt1, P-QKt3; 12 R-K1, B-R3; 13 Q-K3, R-B1; 14 P-QR3, Kt-QB3 (Kan-Chekhover, Moscow, 1945) and now 15 P-K5 ±.

Notes continued on p. 236

## Notes continued from p. 234

(j)  $\varrho$  P-B<sub>5</sub> is met by  $\varrho$ ...O-O and there is no good way to meet ...P-K4.

(k) Alekhine—Reshevsky, Nottingham, 1936.

(l) This position is often reached via the sequence 1 P-Q4, P-Q4; 2 Kt-KB3, P-K3; 3 P-K3, Kt-KB3; 4 QKt-Q2, P-B4; 5 P-B3, QKt-Q2 (or 5...Kt-B3 as in cols. 6-7). ...P-QKt3 is also playable here and is treated under the Q-Indian Defense, cols. 111-114.

(m) Probably best is 8...Q-Kt3.  $\varrho$  P-K4 then transposes into col. 5, while if  $\varrho$  P-QKt3, P-K4; 10 P-K4, BP × P; 11 BP × P, QP × P; 12 QKt × P, Kt × Kt =. Fine—Keres, Kemer, 1937. Inferior alternatives are: (1) 8...P-K4?;  $\varrho$  P-K4!, BP × P; 10 BP × P, QP × P; 11 QKt × P, Kt × Kt; 12 B × Kt, P × P; 13 Q × P, Q-B3; 14 B-KKt5 ±. Colle—

Thomas, Paris, 1929. (2) 8...R-K1;  $\varrho$  P-K4, QP × P; 10 Kt × P, Kt × Kt; 11 B × Kt, P × P?; 12 B × Pch!, K × B; 13 Kt-Kt5ch, K-Kt3; 14 P-KR4, R-R1; 15 R × Pch!/++. Colle—O'Hanlon, Nice, 1930.

(n) 14...P-KR3; 15 Q-R5! with a strong attack. Landau—Böök, Kemer, 1937.

(o) If 11...Kt-B3; 12 B-Q3! (an improvement on 12 B-B2, P-KR3; 13 Q-K2, P-QKt3; 14 Kt-K5, B-Kt2; 15 KR-Q1, R-B1 ♯. Ryumin—Capablanca, Moscow, 1936), P-KR3; 13 Kt-K5, Q-K2 (13...P-QKt3?; 14 Q-B3!); 14 Q-B3, R-Kt1; 15 Q-Kt3 ±. Prins—Gruenfeld, Zandvoort, 1936.

(p) Colle—Bogoljubow, 1925, which continued 14 Kt-K5!, B-Kt4; 14 Q-KR3, Q × P+.

## Notes continued from p. 235

(i) Ryumin—Lasker, Moscow, 1936.

(j) Or 5...P-K3; 6 P × P, B × P; 7 P-QKt4, B-K2; 8 B-Kt2, O-O; 9 P-B4, P-QKt3; 10 B-Q3, P × P; 11 Kt × P, B-Kt2; 12 O-O, R-B1; 13 Q-K2 ±. Rubinstein—Monticelli, Budapest, 1929. Since 5...P × P transposes to the poor life of note (d) it is difficult to determine where Black goes wrong. Perhaps the Q-fianchetto is best.

(k) Tartakower—Keres, Noordwijk, 1938.

(l) An unclear possibility is 4 B-K2, P-KKt3; 5 O-O, B-Kt2; 6 P-B4, P × BP; 7 B × P, P × P; 8 P × P, O-O; 9 Kt-B3, QKt-Q2; 10 B-Kt3, Kt-Kt3; 11 B-Kt5, P-KR3; 12 B-KR4 ±. Stahlberg—Petrow, Kemer—Riga, 1939.

(m) Or 8 Kt-K5, Kt-K2; 9 Kt-Q2, P-QKt3; 10 P-KB4, B-Kt2; 11 Q-B3, R-B1; 12 Kt-Kt4, Kt × Kt; 13 Q × Kt, Kt-Kt3; 14 Kt-B3, P-B4; 15 Q-R5, B-K2 =. Maroczy—Bogoljubow, New York, 1924. Bogoljubow recommends 8 P-QR3, Q-K2 (8...P-QKt3 is preferable); 9 Kt-K5.

(n) If  $\varrho$  P-QR3, P-K4.

(o) Correct is 11 Q-B1 =.

(p) Bogoljubow—Capablanca, New York, 1924.

(q) The simplest way to equalize. Alternatives are: (1) 3...P-B3; 4 QKt-Q2, B-B4; 5 B-Q3, B × B; 6 P × B, P-K3; 7 O-O, B-K2; 8 R-K1, O-O; 9 P-K4, Kt-R3; 10 P-K5, Kt-Q2; 11 Kt-B1, P-QB4; 12 P × P, Kt(Q2) × BP; 13 P-QR3 ±. Colle—Bogoljubow, San Remo, 1930. (2) 3...B-Kt5; 4 P-B4, P-K3; 5 Q-Kt3, Q-B1; 6 Kt-K5, B-KB4; 7 Kt-QB3, P-B3; 8 P × P, KP × P; 9 B-Q2, B-Q3; 10 R-B1, O-O; 11 Kt-Kt5, B-K2 =. Colle—Johner, Berlin, 1926.

(r) Or 6 O-O, QKt-Q2; 7 P-B4, P × P; 8 Q-R4, B-Q3; 9 QKt-Q2, O-O; 10 Kt × P, Kt-Kt3; 11 Kt × Kt, RP × Kt; 12 Q-B2, Q-Q2 ♯. Colle—Alekhine, San Remo, 1930.

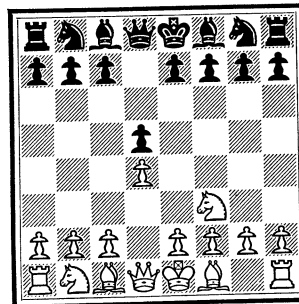
(s) 14 P-QR3, Kt-B2. Alekhine—Euwe, 17th match game, 1935.

## 1 P-Q4, P-Q4; 2 Kt-KB3\*

	11	12	13	14	15
2 (Kt-KB3).....					P-QB4 (o)
3 P-B4.....	B-B4.....	B-Kt5 (j)			P × P (p)
P-B4! (a)	P-B4 (f)	P-K3.....	Kt-K5 (m)		P-K3 (q)
4 BP × P	P-K3	P-K3	B-R4		P-K4
P × P	Kt-B3	P-B4	P-QB3		B × P
5 Q × P (b)	P-B3	P-B3	P-K3		P × P
Q × P	Q-Kt3 (g)	QKt-Q2 (k)	Q-Kt3		P × P
6 Kt-B3	Q-B1 (h)	QKt-Q2	Q-B1		B-Kt5ch
Q × Q	B-B4	Q-Kt3	B-B4		Kt-B3
7 Kt × Q	P × P	Q-B2	B-Q3		O-O
P-QR3 (c)	Q × BP	B-Q3	Kt-Q2		Kt-K2
8 P-KKt3 (d)	QKt-Q2	B-Q3	O-O		QKt-Q2
P-K4	R-B1	P-KR3	P-KR3		O-O
9 Kt-B2	Kt-Kt3	B-R4	Kt-B3		Kt-Kt3
B-Q2	Q-Kt3	O-O	P-Kt4		B-Kt3
10 B-Kt2	Q-Q2	O-O	B-Kt3		R-K1 (r)
B-B3	P-K3	Q-B2	Kt × B		B-Kt5
11 O-O	B-Q3	B-Kt3	RP × Kt		B-Q3
B × B	B-K5	P-R3	B × B		Kt-Kt3
12 K × B	Q-K2	QR-Q1	P × B		P-KR3
Kt-B3 = (e)	B-K2 = (i)	P-QKt4 ♯ (l)	B-Kt2 ♯ (n)		B × Kt = (s)

## \* DIAGRAM 101

cols. 11-15



[After 2 Kt-KB3]

(a) 3...P-B3 transposes to the Slav Defense, 3...P-K3 to the Orthodox Defense of the Q.G.D. If 3...B-B4; 4 P × P!, B × Kt is best, for on 4...Kt × P?; 5 Q-Kt3!, Kt-QB3; 6 QKt-Q2 White

has transposed to col. 109 of the Q.G.D. On 3...B-B4; 4 Kt-B3, P-K3; 5 B-Kt5, P-B3 is weaker: 6 Q-Kt3, Q-Kt3; 7 P-B5, Q-B2; 8 P-K3, QKt-Q2; 9 B-KB4, Q-B1; 10 P-KR3, B-K2; 11 R-B1 =. Marshall—Torre, Moscow, 1925.

(b) Or 5 Kt × P, Kt × P as in the English Opening, col. 23.

(c) If 7...P-K4; 8 KKt-Kt5, Kt-R3; 9 B-Kt5 ±.

(d) Better is first 8 B-Kt5, when 8...P-K3 or 8...QKt-Q2 is necessary and Black cannot oppose White's KB.

(e) Johner—Seitz, Debrecen, 1925.

(f) Also sufficient is 3...P-K3; 4 P-K3, B-Q3; 5 B-Q3, O-O; 6 QKt-Q2, B × B; 7 P × B, P-B4; 8 P × P, Q-B2 (all as in col. 10 with colors reversed); 9 P-KKt3, Q × QBP; 10 O-O, Kt-B3; 11 P-B3, P-QKt4; 12 Q-K2, R-Kt1 =. Rubinstein—Capablanca, London, 1922.

Notes continued on p. 240

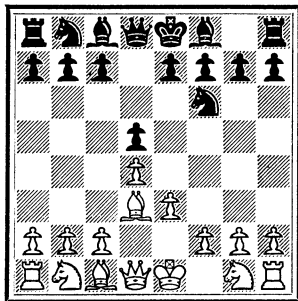
## 1 P-Q4, P-Q4

## STONEWALL VARIATION

16	17	18	19	20
2 Kt-KB3.....		P-K3 (i)		
Kt-KB3		Kt-KB3		
3 B-Kt5		B-Q3*		
B-B4.....	P-B3 (f)	P-B4 (j).....	Kt-B3 /	
4 P-B3 (a)	P-B3	P-QB3		P-KB4
QKt-Q2 (b)	Q-Kt3 (g)	Kt-B3.....	P-K3?	Kt-QKt5
5 Kt x P (c)	Q-Q2	P-KB4	P-KB4	Kt-KB3
Kt x Kt	Q x KtP	B-Kt5	QKt-Q2 (l)	Kt x Bch
6 P-K4	R-Kt1	Kt-B3	Kt-B3	P x Kt
P-KR3	Q-R6	P-K3	B-Q3	P-KKt3 (o)
7 B-B1 (d)	P-K4	QKt-Q2	QKt-Q2	Kt-B3
P-K4	P-K3	B-Q3	P-QKt3	B-Kt2
8 P x B	B x Kt	P-KR3	Kt-K5	O-O
Q-R5ch	P x B	B-R4	B-Kt2	O-O
9 P-Kt3	P x P	P-QKt3	Q-B3	Kt-K2
Q x QP	KP x P	P x P	P-KR4	P-Kt3
10 Q x Q	R-Kt3	BP x P	Q-Kt3	B-Q2
P x Q	Q-K2ch	R-QB1	K-B1 (m)	P-B4
11 B-Q2	K-B2	O-O	O-O	R-B1
O-O-O	B-Kt2	B-Kt3	P-R5	B-QR3
12 O-O-O	P-B4	B x B	Q-R3 ± (n)	Kt-K5
B-K2 = (e)	O-O+ (h)	RP x B = (k)		Kt-Q2 = (p)

## \* DIAGRAM 102

cols. 18-20



[After 3 B-Q3]

(a) The most aggressive. Alternatives are: (1) 4 P-K3, P-B3; 5 B-Q3, B-Kt3; 6 Kt-B3, QKt-Q2; 7 O-O, P-K3; 8 Kt-K5, Q-Kt3; 9 Kt x Kt, Kt x Kt;

10 R-Kt1, B-Q3, 11 B-R4, Q-B2; 12 B-Kt3, B x B; 13 BP x B, P-K4 ±. Rellstab-Keres, Kemer, 1937. (2) 4 B x Kt, KP x B; 5 P-K3, P-B3; 6 B-Q3, Q-B1; 7 KKt-K2, B-Q3; 8 P-K4, P x P; 9 Kt x P, B x Kt; 10 B x B, Q-B2; 11 Q-Q3, Kt-Q2; 12 O-O-O. P-KKt3; 13 P-KKt3, P-KB4 =. Tartakower-Réti, Vienna, 1922.

(b) Equally good is 4... P-B3; 5 P-K4, P x P; 6 B x Kt, KP x B; 7 P x P, B-Kt3; 8 Kt-B3, Kt-Q2; 9 B-Q3, B-Q3; 10 Q-Q2, Q-B2; 11 O-O, O-O; 12 QR-K1, KR-K1 =. Saemisch-Tarrasch, Baden-Baden, 1925.

(c) If 5 Q-Q2, P-B3; 6 P-K4, P x P; 7 Q-B4, Q-R4; 8 O-O-O, P-K3; 9 B x Kt, Kt x B; 10 P x P, B-Kt3; 11 B-Q3, B-Kt5; 12 KKt-K2, O-O-O+. Spielmann-Bogoljubow, Moscow, 1925.

Notes continued on p. 240

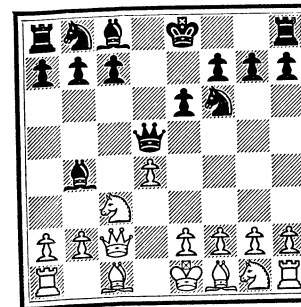
## NIMZO-INDIAN DEFENSE

1 P-Q4, Kt-KB3; 2 P-QB4, P-K3; 3 Kt-QB3, B-Kt5; 4 Q-B2, P-Q4; 5 P x P, Q x P\*

21	22	23	24	25
6 P-K3.....			Kt-B3	
P-B4			P-B4	
7 P-QR3.....		B-Q2	B-Q2	
B x Ktch		B x Kt	B x Kt	
8 P x B (a)		P x B	B x B	
O-O.....	QKt-Q2 (d)	O-O	Kt-B3.....	P x P
9 Kt-B3	Kt-B3 (e)	Kt-B3	R-Q1 / (k)	Kt x P
P x P	P-QKt3	Kt-B3	O-O (l)	P-K4
10 BP x P	P-B4	B-Q3 (i)	P-QR3	Kt-B3 (o)
P-QKt3 (b)	Q-Q3	P-B5 /	P x P / (m)	Kt-B3
11 B-B4	B-Kt2	B-K2	Kt x P	P-K3
Q-B3	B-Kt2	P-K4 /	Kt x Kt	O-O
12 B-Q3	B-K2	P x P	R x Kt	B-K2
Q x Q	R-QB1 (f)	Kt x P	Q-B3	B-Kt5
13 B x Q	O-O (g)	Kt x Kt	P-K4	P-KR3 (p)
B-R3	B-K5	Q x Kt	P-K4	B-R4
14 Kt-K5	Q-B3	O-O	R-B4	O-O ± (q)
QKt-Q2 = (c)	P x P / (h)	B-B4 / ± (j)	Q-K3 = (n)	

## \* DIAGRAM 103

cols. 21-25



[After 5... Q x P]

(a) Or 8 Q x B, QKt-Q2; 9 Kt-B3, P x P; 10 Q x P, Kt-B4; 11 B-B4, Q x Q; 12 Kt x Q, B-Q2; 13 B-Q2, KKt-K5 with a level ending. Euwe-Gruenfeld, Amsterdam, 1936.

(b) Somewhat better than 10... B-Q2; 11 B-B4, Q-KR4; 12 O-O, R-B1;

13 Q-Q3, Kt-B3; 14 B-R2, Kt-R4; 15 Kt-K5, Kt-Kt5. Euwe-Alekhine, match, 1926-27.

(c) Alekhine-Euwe, 12th match game, 1937.

(d) 8... Kt-B3; 9 Kt-B3, O-O; 10 P-B4, Q-Q3; 11 B-Kt2, P x P; 12 P x P, P-QKt3; 13 B-Q3, B-Kt2 (Alekhine-Euwe, 10th match game, 1937) leads to a two-edged position.

(e) 9 P-B3, P x P; 10 BP x P, Kt-Kt3; 11 Kt-K2, B-Q2; 12 Kt-B4, Q-Q3; 13 B-Q2, QR-B1 =. Alekhine-Euwe, 8th match game, 1937.

(f) Or 12... P x P; 13 P x P, O-O; 14 O-O, Kt-Kt5; 15 P-R3, B x Kt =. Loevenfisch-Botvinnik, 3rd match game, 1937.

(g) If instead 13 Q-Kt3, O-O; 14 R-Q1, P x P; 15 P x P, Q-B2; 16 O-O, Kt-Kt5 / =. Kmoeh-Gruefeld, Amsterdam, 1936.

Notes continued on p. 241

## Notes continued from p. 237

- (g) A satisfactory alternative is 5... B-Kt5; 6 QKt-Q2 (if 6 Q-Kt3, Kt-QR4 and White must retreat), P-K3; 7 Q-R4, B × Kt; 8 Kt × B, Q-Kt3; 9 QR-Kt1, B-K2; 10 B-Q3, O-O; 11 O-O, KR-Q1; 12 B-Kt3, QR-B1; 13 Kt-K5, Kt-KR4 =. Keres—Reshevsky, Kemer, 1937.
- (h) Or 6 Q-Kt3, P-K3 with approximate equality, but not 6... P-B5?; 7 Q × Q, P × Q; 8 Kt-R3, P-K4; 9 Kt-QKt5, R-R4; 10 Kt-B7ch, K-Q2; 11 P × P, Kt-R4; 12 Kt × P, R × Kt; 13 B × P, R-R4; 14 B × P+ (Maroczy).
- (i) Capablanca—Maroczy, New York, 1924.
- (j) 3 P-KKt3 transposes to the Réti opening or Catalan System.
- (k) The most aggressive. After 5... B-K2; 6 B-Q3 the alternatives are: (1) 6... QKt-Q2 (best); 7 QKt-Q2, O-O; 8 O-O, Q-B2; 9 Q-K2, P-QKt3; 10 P-K4, QP × P; 11 Kt × P, B-Kt2; 12 P × P, Kt × P; 13 Kt × QKt, Q × Kt =. Tartakower—Capablanca, Nottingham, 1936. (2) 6... Kt-B3 (weaker); 7 QKt-Q2, P-KR3; 8 B-R4, O-O; 9 O-O, P-QKt3; 10 Kt-K5, Kt × Kt; 11 P × Kt, Kt-Q2; 12 B-Kt3, B-R5 (or 12... B-Kt2; 13 P-K4, Q-B2; 14 P × P, B × P; 15 P-QB4, B-Kt2; 16 Q-R5, QR-Q1; 17 KR-K1, Kt-Kt1; 18 R-K3 ±. Van den Bosch—Milner-Barry, match Holland—England, 1939); 13 B × B, Q × B; 14 P-KB4, B-Kt2; 15 R-B3 ±. Tartakower—Keres, Kemer, 1937.
- (l) Tartakower—Fine, Nottingham, 1936.
- (m) Another good defense is 3... P-B4, e.g., 4 P × P, P-K3; 5 QKt-Q2, B × P; 6 P-K3, Kt-B3; 7 B-Q3, P-KR3; 8 B-R4, B-K2; 9 O-O, P-QKt3; 10 P-K4, P × P, 11 Kt × P, B-Kt2 =. Bondarevsky—Smyslov, Moscow, 1945.
- (n) 13 Q-Q2, O-O; 14 P-K4, P-K3. Tartakower—Euwe, Hastings, 1945-46.
- (o) On 2... Kt-QB3 White can play either 3 P-B4, transposing to Tchigorin's Defense (Q.G.D., col. 108) or the Albin Counter Gambit (Q.G.D., cols. 176-180), both of which are favorable for him, or choose 3 B-B4, B-Kt5; 4 P-K3, P-K3; 5 B-K2, B × Kt; 6 B × B, B-Q3; 7 B-Kt3, Kt-B3; 8 O-O, O-O; 9 P-B4, B × B; 10 RP × B, Kt-K2; 11 Kt-B3, P-B3; 12 P-B5 ±. Gilg—Colle, Carlsbad, 1929.
- (p) 3 P-B4, Kt-B3 transposes to col. 11.
- (q) 3... Q-R4ch is also good. Black is playing a Queen's Gambit Accepted with colors reversed.
- (r) A bit better is 10 P-KR3.
- (s) Capablanca—Rubinstein, Berlin, 1928.

## Notes continued from p. 238

- (d) An improvement on 7 B-R4, Kt-K6; 8 Q-K2, B × P; 9 P × B, Kt × B; 10 O-O-O, P-KKt4; 11 B-B2, Kt × P; 12 R × Kt, B-Kt2 ♣. Breyer and Réti—Marco and Spielmann, Gothenburg, 1920.
- (e) Stahlberg—Iliesco, Buenos Aires, 1942.
- (f) Another alternative leading to equality is 3... P-KKt3; 4 B × Kt, P × B; 5 P-K4, P × P; 6 Kt × P, B-Kt2; 7 Kt-KB3, O-O; 8 B-K2, P-KB4; 9 Kt-B5, P-Kt3; 10 Kt-Kt3, B-Kt2 ♣. Tartakower—Kostich, Bad Niendorf, 1927.
- (g) Or 4... QKt-Q2; 5 P-K4, P × P; 6 P × P, Q-R4; 7 Q-Q2, P-K4; 8 Kt-B3, B-K2; 9 B-QB4, P × P; 10 Q × P, Q-Kt3 ♣. Tartakower—Thomas, Carlsbad, 1923.
- (h) Stoltz—Bogoljubow, Berlin, 1928.
- (i) Two unusual alternatives are: (1) 2 B-B4, P-QB4; 3 P-K4 (the Norris Gambit), Kt-QB3; 4 Kt-QB3, F × QP; 5 P × P, P × Kt; 6 P × Kt, Q-R4? (6... Q × Qch+); 7 P-QKt4!, Q × KtP; 8 Q-Q5!, B-K3; 9 Q-B3, O-O-O; 10 P × Pch, resigns. Bischoff—Estes, correspondence, 1944. (2) 2 P-K4? (the Blackmar Gambit), P × P; 3 P-KB3, P-K4; 4 QP × P (or 4 B-K3, P × QP; 5 B × P, Kt-QB3; 6 B-Kt5, B-Q2; 7 Kt-B3, Q-Kt4; 8 B × Kt, B × B; 9 Q-K2, O-O-O+), Q × Qch; 5 K × Q, Kt-QB3; 6 B-KB4, KKt-K2; 7 B-QKt5, Kt-Kt3; 8 B-Kt3, B-KB4; 9 B × Ktch, P × B+.
- (j) A weak defense is 3... QKt-Q2; 4 P-KB4, P-K3; 5 Kt-Q2, B-K2; 6 KKt-B3, Kt-Kt5; 7 Q-K2, P-KB4; 8 P-B4, P-KKt3; 9 O-O, P-B3; 10

## Additional notes continued from p. 238

- P-QKt3, O-O; 11 B-Kt2, R-K1; 12 P-B5, B-B3; 13 P-Kt4 ±. Stahlberg—Apscheneek, Kemer—Riga, 1939.
- (k) Gunsberg—Teichmann, Monte Carlo, 1902.
- (l) Or 5... Kt-B3; 6 Kt-Q2, B-Q3; 7 Q-B3, B-Q2; 8 Kt-R3, Q-Kt3; 9 Kt-B2, O-O-O; 10 O-O, K-Kt1; 11 P-K4, QP × P; 12 KKt × P, Kt × Kt; 13 Kt × Kt, B-K2; 14 P × P, B × Pch; 15 Kt × B ±. Marshall—Rubinstein, Vienna, 1908.
- (m) 10... R-KKt1 is better but Black's position remains bad.
- (n) 12... R-B1; 13 QKt-B3, Kt-K5; 14 B-Q2, Kt × B; 15 QKt × Kt, Kt-B3; 16 QKt-B3. Sultan Khan—Rubinstein, Prague, 1931.
- (o) Better than 6... P-K3; 7 Kt-B3, B-K2; 8 O-O, O-O; 9 B-Q2, P-QKt3; 10 Kt-K5, B-Kt2; 11 R-B3, P-B4; 12 R-R3, R-B1; 13 Q-B3, P-QR3; 14 P-KKt4 with a good attack. Marshall—Teichmann, Vienna, 1908.
- (p) Yates—Schlechter, Pistyan, 1912.

## Notes continued from p. 239

- (h) 15 Kt × P, Kt-B4; 16 Kt-Kt5, Q-Kt1; 17 KR-Q1, O-O; 18 Kt-Q6, Kt-R5! Analysis by Gruenfeld. If here 14... O-O; 15 QR-Q1, KR-Q1; 16 P-Q5!, Q-B1; 17 P × P ±. Euwe—Botvinnik, Nottingham, 1936.
- (i) 10 P-B4, Q-Q3; 11 P × P?, Q × BP; 12 R-QKt1, P-K4; 13 Kt-Kt5, P-KR3; 14 Kt-K4, Kt × Kt; 15 Q × Kt, R-Q1 ♣. Alekhine—Euwe, 20th match game, 1937.
- (j) Flohr—Colle, Bled, 1931.
- (k) Weaker is first 9 P-K3, O-O (or 9... P × P; 10 Kt × P, Kt × Kt; 11 B × Kt, O-O; 12 B × Kt, P × B; 13 B-Q3, Q-R4ch; 14 Q-Q2 ±. Nimzovitch—Canal, Carlsbad, 1929); 10 R-Q1 because of 10... Q × RP! 11 P × P, Kt-Q4; 12 B-K2, Kt(B3)-Kt5; 13 Q-Q2, Kt × B; 14 Q × Kt, Kt-Q4; 15 Q-Q2, P-QKt3!; 16 P × P (Reshevsky—Kashdan, 7th match game, 1942) and now 16... P-Kt × KtP =.
- (l) If 9... Q × RP; 10 P × P, O-O; 11 P-K4 ±.
- (m) An improvement on 10... P-QKt3; 11 P-K3, B-Kt2; 12 P × P, Q × P; 13 P-QKt4, Q-KR4; 14 B × Kt ±. Capablanca—Fine, AVRO tournament, 1938.
- (n) 15 R-B5, Kt-Q2; 16 R-Q5, Q-KKt3; 17 P-B3, Kt-Kt3!; 18 R × P, B-K3 with enough for the Pawn. Capablanca—Najdorf, Margate, 1939.
- (o) Better than 10 Kt-B5, B × Kt; 11 Q × B, Kt-B3; 12 P-K3, O-O; 13 B-K2, Q-K5; 14 Q-B3 (Capablanca—Euwe, AVRO tournament, 1938), Q × Q; 15 B × Q, P-K5 =.
- (p) An improvement on 13 R-Q1, Q-B4; 14 O-O, QR-B1 =. Loevenfisch—Botvinnik, 7th match game, 1937.
- (q) And now: (1) 14... KR-Q1; 15 P-R3, B-Kt3; 16 Q-B1, Kt-K5; 17 R-Q1. Flohr—Reshevsky, AVRO tournament, 1938. (2) 14... B-Kt3; 15 Q-Kt3, KR-K1; 16 B-B4, Q-Q2; 17 KR-Q1, Q-B2; 18 QR-B1, P-QR3; 19 B-K2, Q-K2; 20 Kt-Q2. Flohr—Loevenfisch, Leningrad—Moscow, 1939. White maintained a minimal advantage in both games.

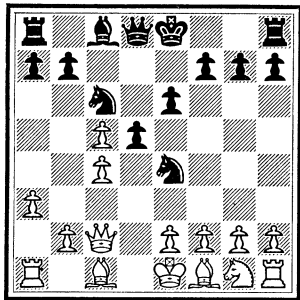


## NIMZO-INDIAN DEFENSE

1 P-Q4, Kt-KB3; 2 P-QB4, P-K3; 3 Kt-QB3, B-Kt5; 4 Q-B2, P-Q4

	26	27	28	29	30
5 (P × P).....			P-QR3 (g)		
P × P			B × Ktch (h)		
6 B-Kt5 (a)			Q × B		
Q-Q3.....		P-B3 (e)	Kt-K5 (i)		
7 P-K3 (b)		P-K3	Q-B2		
Kt-K5		B-Kt5	P-QB4		
8 B-KB4		Kt-K2	QP × P		
Q-K2 (c)		QKt-Q2	Kt-QB3 *		
9 B-Q3		Kt-Kt3	P × P / (j)....	P-K3.....	Kt-B3
P-KB4		P-KR3	P × P	Q-R4ch	Q-R4ch
10 Kt-K2		B-KB4	Kt-B3	B-Q2	Kt-Q2
O-O		P-KKt4	B-B4 (k)	Kt × B / (p)	Kt-Q5
11 O-O		B-K5	P-QKt4 /	Q × Kt	Q-Q1 (s)
P-B3		Kt × B	O-O (l)	P × P /	Kt × QBP / (t)
12 P-B3		P × Kt	B-Kt2	Q × Q (q)	P-QKt4
Kt × Kt		Kt-Q2	B-Kt3 (m)	Kt × Q	Q-R5
13 P × Kt		P-KR3	P-K3	R-B1	R-R2
B-Q3		B-K3	R-B1 (n)	P-QKt4 /	Q × Qch
14 B × B ± (d)		O-O-O	B-Q3 ± (o)	P × P e.p.	K × Q
		Q-R4 l = (f)		B-Kt2 = (r)	Kt-R5 = (u)

\* DIAGRAM 104  
cols. 28-30



[After 8... Kt-QB3]

(a) 6 P-K3, P-B4 does not lead to enough for White.

(b) Also good is 7 B × Kt, Q × B; 8 P-QR3, B × Ktch; 9 Q × B, O-O; 10 P-

K3, P-B3; 11 Kt-B3, B-B4; 12 B-K2 ±. Capablanca-Euwe, 1st match game, 1931.

(c) If 8... Q-KKt3; 9 P-QR3 /, B × Ktch; 10 P × B, B-B4; 11 Q-Kt3, O-O; 12 P-B3 / Kt-Q3; 13 P-Kt4, B-Q6; 14 Q × QP+. Capablanca-Euwe, 3rd match game, 1931.

(d) Stahlberg-Alekhine, Prague, 1931.

(e) 6... P-KR3 was tried in the sensational game Keres-Botvinnik, Leningrad-Moscow, 1941, which continued 7 B-R4, P-B4; 8 O-O-O, B × Kt; 9 Q × B, P-KKt4; 10 B-Kt3, P × P /; 11 Q × P, Kt-B3; 12 Q-QR4, B-B4; 13 P-K3, R-QB1; 14 B-Q3, Q-Q2++ and Black soon won. But in reply to 7... P-B4, 8 P × P / gives White an advantage, e.g., 8... O-O; 9 O-O-O, B × Kt; 10 Q × B, P-KKt4; 11 B-Kt3, Kt-K5; 12

Notes continued on p. 243

## Notes continued from p. 242

Q-R3 ± (Mikenas-Botvinnik, Moscow, 1940) or 8... P-Q5; 9 O-O-O, Kt-B3; 10 P-K3 ± (Tournament Book). On 6... P-KR3 White can also play the simple 7 B × Kt, Q × B; 8 P-QR3, B-R4 (or 8... B × Ktch; 9 Q × B as in note (b)); 9 P-K3, Q-Q1; 10 P-QKt4, B-Kt3; 11 Kt-R4, O-O; 12 Kt-KB3, Kt-Q2; 13 B-Q3 ±. Eliskases-Bogoljubow, 5th match game, 1939. If 6... B-Kt5, 7 Q-Kt3 /, Kt-B3; 8 P-K3, O-O; 9 P-QR3, B × Ktch; 10 Q × B ±. Flohr-Naegeli, Berne, 1932.

(f) 15 P-B4, P × P; 16 P × P, O-O-O with chances for both sides. Alekhine-Naegeli, Berne, 1932.

(g) Weaker alternatives are: (1) 5 P-K3, O-O; 6 Kt-B3, P-QKt3; 7 P-QR3, B × Ktch; 8 P × B, P-B4; 9 BP × P, KP × P =. Nimzovitch-Marshall, London, 1927. (2) 5 B-Kt5, P × P; 6 Kt-B3, P-QKt4; 7 P-QR4, P-B3; 8 B × Kt, P × B; 9 P-KKt3, P-QR3+ for Black can hold the Pawn. Capablanca-Nimzovitch, Kissingen, 1928.

(h) 5... B-K2; 6 B-Kt5, P-KR3; 7 B-R4, O-O; 8 Kt-B3 leads to a regular Q.G.D. where Black has lost a tempo. Eliskases-Bogoljubow, 7th match game, 1939.

(i) If 6... P × P; 7 Q × P, O-O; 8 B-Kt5, P-B3; 9 Kt-B3, QKt-Q2; 10 P-K3, Q-R4ch; 11 P-QKt4, Q-Q4; 12 Q-B2 ±. Euwe-Capablanca, Carlsbad, 1929.

(j) Bogoljubow's innovation.

(k) If 10... Q-R4ch; 11 B-Q2, Kt × B; 12 Q × Kt, Q × BP; 13 R-B1, Q-Kt3; 14 P-K3, O-O; 15 B-K2, R-Q1; 16 Kt-Q4 ±. Eliskases-Luckis, San Pablo, 1941.

(l) Keres and Flohr recommend 11... P-Q5. 12 Q-Kt2 is then adequately met by 12... Q-B3; 13 P-K3 (best), P × P; 14 P × P, Q-R3 with enough for the

Pawn but 12 Q-B4, Q-B3; 13 B-Kt2 seems to be in White's favor. 11... Kt-Kt6? is refuted by 12 Q-Kt2.

(m) If instead 12... P-QKt3?; 13 P-Kt5, P × P; 14 P × Kt, Q-R4ch; 15 Kt-Q2, P-Q5 / (Bogoljubow-Eliskases, 14th match game, 1939) and now 16 P-KKt4 /, B-Kt3; 17 P-B4 / KR-K1; 18 O-O-O, Kt-B7; 19 P-B5, Kt × KR; 20 P × B, RP × P; 21 Kt-B4, Q-B2; 22 B-Kt2, Kt-B7; 23 R-B1, Kt × P; 24 B-Q5+. Eliskases.

(n) If now 13... Kt-Kt6; 14 Q-B3, P-Q5; 15 Kt × P, Kt × Kt; 16 RP × Kt, Kt-B7ch; 17 K-K2+.

(o) Renter-Lilienthal, Tallinn, 1945. After 14... P-QR4 best is 15 P-Kt5 / (not as in the game 15 B × Kt, B × B; 16 Q-B3, P-B3; 17 P-Kt5, B × Kt =), Kt-R2; 16 B × Kt, B × B; 17 Q-B3, P-B3; 18 P-QR4 and White preserves his advantage.

(p) Not 10... Q × BP?; 11 P-QKt4, Q-K2; 12 B-B1 /+. Ryumin-Capablanca, Moscow, 1935.

(q) Or 12 B × P, Q × BP; 13 R-B1, Q-KKt4; 14 P-B4, Q-R5ch; 15 Q-B2 (Euwe-Petrow, Stockholm, 1937), Q × Qch =.

(r) 15 Kt-B3, K-K2 / (if 15... O-O; 16 P × P, R × P; 17 Kt-Q2, B-R3; 18 R-B3 /+ 16 P × P, R × P; 17 Kt-Q2, B-R3; 18 R-B3, R-QKt1.

(s) If instead 11 Q-Q3, P-K4; 12 P-QKt4, Q-R5; 13 R-R2, B-B4; 14 P × P, Kt × QBP; 15 Q-QB3 (Bogatyrev-Isaakyan, Moscow, 1945) and now 15... Kt-R3 gives Black a strong attack.

(t) But not 11... P × P; 12 P-K3, Kt-Kt6; 13 B × P, Kt × B; 14 P-QKt4, Kt-B6; 15 P × Q, Kt × Q; 16 K × Kt, B-Q2; 17 B-Kt2+.

(u) 15 B-Kt2, Kt × Bch; 16 R × Kt, P × P.

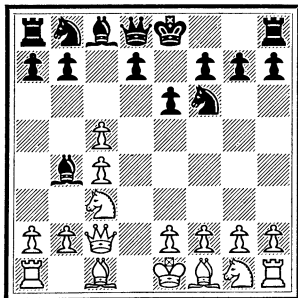
## NIMZO-INDIAN DEFENSE

1 P—Q4, Kt—KB3; 2 P—QB4, P—K3; 3 Kt—QB3, B—Kt5; 4 Q—B2

	31	32	33	34	35
4 (P—Q4).....			P—B4		
5 (P—QR3) (B × Ktch)			P × P (f) * B × P.....	Kt—B3 (i)	
6 (Q × B).....	P × B (Kt—K5)	P—B4	Kt—B3 P—Q4!	Kt—B3 B × P	
7 (Q—B2) Kt—QB3 (a)	P × QP KP × P (d)	P—K3 O—O	B—Kt5 Kt—Q5!	P—QKt3 (m)	
8 P—K3 (b) P—K4	Kt—B3 Q—B2	B—K2 P × P	Kt × Kt B × Kt	P—K3 B—Kt2	
9 BP × P Q × P	P—Kt3 P × P	B × P QKt—Q2	P—K3 Q—R4!	B—K2 B—K2	
10 B—B4 Q—R4ch	Kt × P O—O	O—O P—QR3	P × B Q × B	O—O R—QB1	
11 P—QKt4 Kt × KtP	B—B4 Q—B4	P—QR3 (g) P—QKt4	B—Q3! (j) O—O (k)	QR—Q1 (n) P—Q3	
12 Q × Kt Kt—B7 dbl ch	B—Kt2 Kt—B3	B—K2 B—Kt2	O—O P—Q4	R—Q2 P—QR3	
13 K—K2 Q—K8ch	Kt—Kt3 Q—B5	P—QKt4 B—Kt3	P × P P × P	KR—Q1 O—O (o)	
14 K—B3+ (c)	O—O ± (e)	B—Kt2 R—B1 = (h)	P—B4 ± (l)	B—B4 ± (p)	

## \* DIAGRAM 105

cols. 33-35



[After 5 P × P]

(a) If 7...O—O; 8 P—K3, P—QKt3; 9 B—Q3, B—R3!; 10 Kt—K2, Kt—Q2; 11 P—B3, Kt—Q3; 12 P × P ± is best, but not 11 O—O, P—QB4; 12 P—QKt3, P × QP; 13 Kt × P, QKt—B4 ≠. Bogoljubow—Euwe, 3rd match game, 1928. Equally if 7...O—O; 8 P—K3, Kt—Q2; 9 B—Q3, P—KB4; 10 Kt—K2, P—B3; 11 O—O, Kt—Q3; 12 P—B5, Kt—K5; 13 P—QKt4 ±. Fine—Danielsson, Stockholm, 1937.

(b) Better than 8 Kt—B3, P—K4; 9 P—K3, B—B4; 10 Q—Kt3 (10 Q—R4, O—O; 11 P × QP, Q × P; 12 Q—Kt5, Q × Q; 13 B × Q, Kt—R4; 14 B—R4, P × P; 15 Kt × P, Kt—B4! =), Kt—R4! (not 10...O—O?; 11 P × QP, Kt—R4; 12 Q—R2, P—QB3; 13 P—QKt4, Kt—B6; 14 Q—Q2+. Fine—Stahlberg, 1st match game, 1937); 11 Q—R4ch, P—B3; 12 Kt × P, P—B3 =.

Notes continued on p. 247

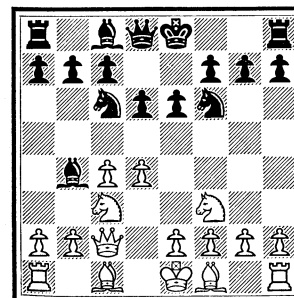
## NIMZO-INDIAN DEFENSE

1 P—Q4, Kt—KB3; 2 P—QB4, P—K3; 3 Kt—QB3, B—Kt5; 4 Q—B2, Kt—B3 (a); 5 Kt—B3, P—Q3\*

	36	37	38	39	40
6 P—QR3.....					B—Q2 (m) O—O (n)
B × Ktch					
7 Q × B O—O.....			P—QR4!		P—QR3 B × Kt
8 P—QKt4 R—K1!		P—K4 (e)	B—Kt5.....	P—QKt3 (k) O—O	B × B Q—K2 (o)
9 B—Kt2 (b) P—K4	P × P Kt—K5 (f)	P × Kt Q × B	B—Kt3 (l) R—K1	P—K3 P—K4	P—K3 P—K4
10 P × P (c) Kt × KP	Q—K3 (g) P—B4	P—K3 O—O	B—KKt2 P—K4	P—Q5 (p) Kt—Kt1	P—Q5 (p) Kt—Kt1
11 Kt × Kt P × Kt	B—Kt2 Kt × KP	B—K2 P—K4	P—Q5 Kt—K2	B—Q3 QKt—Q2	B—Q3 QKt—Q2
12 P—K3 Q—K2	Kt × Kt P × Kt	P × P P × P	Kt—Q2 B—Q2	Kt—Kt5 P—KKt3!	Kt—Kt5 P—KKt3!
13 B—Q3 B—Q2	P—Kt3 (h) B—K3	O—O B—Kt5	O—O P—QKt3	Kt—K4 Kt × Kt	Kt—K4 Kt × Kt
14 O—O QR—Q1	P—B3 Kt—Q3	P—R3 B—R4	P—K4 Kt—Kt3	B × Kt (q) Kt—B4	B × Kt (q) Kt—B4
15 B—B2 ± (d)	Q × P ± (i)	KR—Q1 KR—K1 = (j)	B—Kt2 ±	B—Q3 Kt × Bch =	B—Q3 Kt × Bch =

## \* DIAGRAM 106

cols. 36-40



[After 5... P—Q3]

(a) The Zurich or Milner-Barry Variation.

(b) Weaker is 9 P—Kt5, Kt—Kt1; 10 P—Kt3, QKt—Q2; 11 B—KKt2, P—QR3; 12

P—QR4, P × P; 13 RP × P, Kt—K5; 14 Q—Kt2, R × R; 15 Q × R, Kt—Kt3; 16 Q—R2, P—Q4!; 17 P—B5, Kt—B5 ≠. Lilienthal—Rovner, 1938.

(c) If 10 P—Q5, Kt—K2; 11 P—Kt3, P—QKt4! (or 11...Kt—K5 as in col. 38) with at least equality.

(d) Flohr—Nimzovitch, Bled, 1931.

(e) A violent attempt to wrest the initiative. If 8...Q—K2; 9 B—Kt2, R—K1; 10 P—K3 as in col. 36.

(f) Or 9...Kt × KP; 10 Kt × Kt, P × Kt; 11 Q × P, R—K1; 12 Q—Kt2, Q—Q6 (12...Kt—K5; 13 B—B4, B—B4; 14 P—B3, P—KKt4; 15 B—B1+. Flohr—Milner-Barry, London, 1932); 13 P—K3! (not 13 B—Kt5, Kt—Kt5; 14 P—K3, Q—B4; 15 B—R4, Q—K5; 16 O—O—O, P—QB4 =. Fine—Van den Bosch, Amsterdam, 1936), Q—Kt3; 14 P—B3, B—B4; 15 K—B2, B—Q6, 16 B—K2! +.

Notes continued on p. 247

## NIMZO-INDIAN DEFENSE

1 P-Q4, Kt-KB3; 2 P-QB4, P-K3; 3 Kt-QB3, B-Kt5; 4 Q-B2

	41	42	43	44	45
4 (Kt-B3).....				O-O	
5 (Kt-B3).....		P-K3		P-QR3.....	B-Kt5 (n)
O-O.....	P-Q4 (d)	P-K4 (g)		B x Ktch	P-Q3 (o)
6 B-Kt5! (a)	P-QR3	P x P! (h)	Q x B		P-K3
P-KR3	B x Ktch	Kt x P	P-Q3 (k)		B x Ktch (p)
7 B-R4	Q x B	B-Q2	P-K3 (l)	Q x B	
P-Q3 (b)	P-QR4	P-Q3	QKt-Q2	Q-K2	
8 P-K3	P-QKt3	P-QR3	B-Q3	B-Q3	
Q-K2	O-O	B x Kt	P-K4	P-K4	
9 B-K2	B-Kt5! (c)	B x B	Kt-K2	Kt-K2	
P-K4	P-R3	Q-K2 (i)	R-K1	R-K1	
10 P-Q5	B x Kt	Kt-B3!	O-O	O-O	
Kt-Kt1	Q x B	KKt-Q2	Kt-B1	Kt-B3	
11 Kt-Q2	P-K3	B-K2	P-QKt4	P-Q5	
QKt-Q2	B-Q2	O-O	P x P	Kt-Kt1	
12 O-O	B-Q3	R-Q1	Kt x P	P-QKt4	
P-QR4	KR-B1	Kt x Ktch	Kt-Kt3	P-QR4	
13 QR-K1!	O-O	P x Kt!	B-Kt2	P-QR3	
R-K1	P-R5	P-KB4	Kt-K4	P-R3	
14 P-B4! ± (c)	P-QKt4 ± (f)	R-KKt1 ± (j)	B-B2 ± (m)	B x Kt ± (q)	

(a) Other moves transpose to previous lines, except that Black can go into some (such as col. 39) with an extra tempo.

(b) If now 7...P-KKt4?; 8 B-Kt3, P-Kt5; 9 Kt-R4, Kt x P; 10 Q-Q2+.

(c) 14...B x Kt; 15 Q x B, Kt-K5; 16 Kt x Kt, Q x B; 17 P-KKt3, Q-K2; 18 B-Kt4. Keres-Euwe, 6th match game, 1939-40.

(d) Botvinnik's idea.

(e) Weaker is 9 P-K3, B-Q2; 10 B-Q3, P-R5; 11 Kt-Q2, R-K1; 12 O-O, P-K4; 13 QP x P, Kt x P; 14 B-Kt2, RP x P; 15 Kt x P, Kt-K5 ±. Kotov-Botvinnik, Moscow, 1939, or above 11 P-QKt4, P x P; 12 B x BP, Kt-R2; 13 Kt-K5, B-Kt4; 14 B-Kt2, B x B; 15 Q x B, Q-Q4 ±. Blumin-Fine, New York, 1939.

(f) 14...P x P; 15 B x P, Kt-R2; 16 Kt-K5. Capablanca-Mikenas, Buenos Aires, 1939.

(g) Better 5...O-O as in columns 36-42.

(h) An improvement on 6 P-Q5, Kt-K2; 7 Kt-B3, B x Ktch; 8 Q x B, P-Q3; 9 B-K2, O-O; 10 O-O, Kt-K5; 11 Q-B2, P-KB4; 12 Kt-Q2, Kt x Kt; 13 B x Kt, P-B5 ±. Keres-Alekhine, Dresden, 1936.

(i) The game continuation was 9...O-O, when 10 P-B5! is very strong. We have transposed the moves for the column.

(j) Keres-Euwe, 10th match game, 1939-40.

(k) 6...P-Q4 does not transpose to col. 29 because after 7 P-K3, Kt-K5; 8 Q-B2, P-QB4; 9 QP x P is feasible. Inferior moves by White here transpose into earlier columns. If here 6...Kt-K5; 7 Q-B2, P-KB4; 8 Kt-R3, Kt-QB3; 9 P-B3, Kt-B3; 10 P-K3, P-Q3; 11 B-Q2, P-K4; 12 P-Q5, Kt-K2; 13 B-B3, P-QR4; 14 B-K2, P-R5; 15 O-O ±. Schmidt-Foltys, Salzburg, 1943.

Notes continued on p. 248

Notes continued from p. 244

(e) 14...Kt x R; 15 B-Kt2, B-K3 (or 15...O-O; 16 K-Kt3, B-Q2; 17 Kt-B3, Q x R; 18 Kt-Kt5, P-KKt3; 19 Q x KP, QR-K1; 20 Q-B6, R x Pch; 21 P x R, Q-K8ch; 22 Q-B2+); 16 P-Q5, O-O-O; 17 P x B, P x P; 18 P-Kt3! (if 18 K-Kt4?, Q x BP; 19 B x Kt, P-R4ch; 20 K-R3, P-KKt4+, Feigin-Fine, Hastings, 1936-37, while if 18 K-Kt3, KR-B1; 19 B x Pch, K-Kt1; 20 B x P, QR-K1 with excellent counter chances. Not, however, 20...R x P?; 21 K-R3, R-B8; 22 B-Kt4+. Winter-Reynolds, Birmingham, 1937), KR-B1ch; 19 K-Kt4!+.

(d) Better 7...Q x P as in columns 21-25.

(e) Lilienthal-Katetov, match Moscow-Prague, 1946.

(f) On other moves an early ...P-Q4 gives Black easy equality.

(g) If 11 P-K4, Q-B2; 12 B-Q3, P-QKt4; 13 B-Kt5 (Feigin-Bolbochan, Mar del Plata, 1941), Kt-Kt5!; 14 QR-B1, QKt-K4 ±.

(h) Eliskases-A. Steiner, Ujpest, 1934.

(i) Weak are (1) 5...Kt-R3, 6 P-QR3, B x Ktch (better is 6...Q-R4, e.g., 7 B-Q2, Kt x P; 8 Kt-B3, B x Kt; 9 B x B, Q-R5; 10 Q x Q, Kt x Q; 11 B-K5, K-K2!; 12 O-O-O, Kt-K1; 13 P-QKt3 but White's game remains preferable. Loevenfisch-Dubin, Moscow, 1939); 7 Q x B, Kt x P; 8 P-B3, P-Q3; 9 P-K4, P-K4; 10 B-K3, Q-

B2; 11 Kt-K2, B-K3; 12 Q-B2, O-O; 13 Kt-B3, KR-B1; 14 B-K2+. Flohr-Botvinnik, 6th match game, 1933. (2) 5...B x Ktch; 6 P x B!; Q-B2; 7 Kt-B3, Kt-R3; 8 Kt-Q4!, O-O; 9 P-B6, KtP x P; 10 B-Kt5, Kt-B4; 11 B x Kt ±. Stahlberg-Steiner, Kemer, 1937.

(j) Slightly better than 11 P-KKt3, O-O; 12 P-B4, Q-R3; 13 B-K2, P-Q3; 14 Q-Q2, B-Q2; 15 B-B3 ±. Eliskases-Bogoljubow, 1st match game, 1939. If here 11...P-Q4; 12 P-B4, Q-R3; 13 P-QB5, B-Q2; 14 B-Kt2 ±. Van Scheltinga-Golombek, match Holland-England, 1939.

(k) 11...Q x P; 12 O-O-O gives White a very dangerous attack.

(l) 14...Q-R3; 15 QR-K1, B-Q2; 16 P-KR3, B-B3; 17 R-K5. Najdorf-Golombek, Margate, 1939.

(m) If 7...P-KR3; 8 B-R4, B-K2; 9 R-Q1, O-O; 10 P-K3, P-Q4; 11 B-K2, Q-R4; 12 Kt-Q2!, R-Q1; 13 O-O ±. Rubinstein-Ahues, Berlin, 1926.

(n) Or 11 KR-Q1, P-QR3; 12 QR-B1, Kt-QR4?; 13 Kt-K5!, Q-B2; 14 P-QKt4!, KB x P; 15 B x Kt, P x B; 16 Kt x QP+. Euwe-Saemisch, German Quadrangular Tournament, 1937.

(o) Worse is 13...Q-B2; 14 B-B4!, Kt-K4; 15 Kt x Kt, P x Kt; 16 B-Kt3 ±. Keres-Saemisch, Dresden, 1936.

(p) Rubinstein-Saemisch, Berlin, 1926.

Notes continued from p. 245

(g) After 10 Q-Kt2, Kt x KP, 11 Kt x Kt, P x Kt; 12 Q x P, R-K1; 13 Q-Kt2, Q-R5, 14 P-Kt3, Q-R4; 15 B-Kt2, Kt-Q3; 16 P-B5, Kt-B5; 17 Q-R2, B-Kt5 / Black retains a strong attack.

(h) Not 13 B x P?, Q-K2; 14 P-B4, B-K3; 15 P-Kt3, B x P ±. Winter-Alexander, Hastings, 1935-36.

(i) 15...Q-K2; 16 P-K3. Fine-Alexander, Margate, 1937.

(j) Lasker-Alekhine, Nottingham, 1936.

(k) Weaker is 8 P-KKt3, Kt-K5; 9 Q-B2, P-B4; 10 B-Kt2, O-O; 11 O-O, P-K4; 12 B-K3, Q-K2; 13 P x P, P x P; 14 Kt-Q2, Kt-B3; 15

Kt-Kt3, P-R5!; 16 Kt-B1, Kt-KKt5 ±. Becker-Glass, Vienna, 1937.

(l) Better than 9 B-Kt2, R-K1; 10 Kt-Q2, P-Q4!; 11 P-B4, Kt-K2; 12 Q-B3, B-Q2; 13 P-K3, B-B3; 14 Q-R3, Kt-B4; 15 B-Q3, Kt-Q3 ±. Keres-Romanovsky, Leningrad-Moscow, 1939. The column is Fine-Mulder, Amsterdam, 1936.

(m) 6 B-Kt5 now is weak because of 6...P-KR3; 7 B-R4, P-KKt4; 8 B-Kt3, P-Kt5; 9 Kt-R4, Kt x P; 10 Q-Q3, P-K4; 11 O-O-O, Kt-K3; 12 Kt-Kt1, B-R4; 13 Q-R3, B-Kt3 ±. Euwe-Alexander, match Holland-England, 1939. Also insufficient are: (1) 6 P-

## Additional notes continued from p. 245

KKt3, P-K4; 7 P-Q5, B x Ktch; 8 Q x B, Kt-K2; 9 B-Kt2, Kt-K5; 10 Q-B2, P-KB4 =. Eliskases-Botvinnik, Moscow, 1936. (2) 6 P-K3, O-O; 7 B-Q2, P-K4; 8 P-Q5, Kt-K2; 9 B-Q3, Kt-Kt3; 10 P-KR4, Kt-R4; 11 O-O-O, P-KB4; 12 B-K2, Kt-B3 =. Friedemann-Becker, Buenos Aires, 1939.

(n) Weaker is 6...P-K4; 7 P x P, P x P; 8 O-O-O, B x Kt; 9 B x B, Q-K2; 10 P-K3, B-Kt5; 11 P-KR3, B-R4; 12 Q-Kt3, R-QKt1; 13 P-Kt4, B-

Kt3; 14 Kt-R4, O-O; 15 B-Kt2, P-K5; 16 Kt-B5 ±. Ragozin-Lissitsin, Moscow, 1944.

(o) Also good is 8...R-K1; 9 R-Q1, Q-K2; 10 P-K3, P-K4; 11 P-Q5, Kt-Kt1; 12 Kt-Q2?, QKt-Q2; 13 P-K4?, Kt-R4!; 14 P-KKt3, P-KB4; 15 P x P, P-K5 ±. Fine-Reynolds, Ostend, 1937.

(p) 10 P x P, as in col. 36, is better.

(q) Euwe-Alekhine, 22nd match game, 1935.

## Notes continued from p. 246

(l) Weaker is 7 Kt-B3, P-QR4 (compare cols. 36-39); 8 P-QKt3, Q-K2; 9 P-Kt3, R-K1; 10 B-KKt2, P-K4; 11 O-O, Kt-B3 =, Fine-Budo, Leningrad, 1937, or 7 P-KKt3, Q-K2; 8 B-Kt2, P-K4; 9 P-Q5, P-QR4; 10 P-Kt3, QKt-Q2; 11 Kt-B3, Kt-B4 ±. Enevoldsen-Capablanca, Buenos Aires, 1939.

(m) Fine-Dake, New York, 1933.

(n) For 5 Kt-B3, P-Q3 see cols. 46-47. If 5 P-K4, the correct reply is 5...P-B4!; 6 P-QR3! (Best. If 1) 6 P-K5, P x P; 7 P x Kt; P x Kt; 8 KtP x P, Q x P ± or 2) 6 P-Q5, P x P; 7 KP x P, R-K1ch; 8 B-K2, Kt-K5 ±, B x Ktch (weaker is 6...P x P; 7 P x B, P x Kt; 8 P x P, P-Q4; 9 P-K5, KKt-Q2; 10 P-B4, P-B3; 11 KP x P, Kt x P; 12 Kt-B3 ±); 7 P x B, P-Q4! (better than 7...Kt-B3; 8 P-K5 ±); 8 P-K5, Kt-K5; 9 B-Q3, BP x P; 10 BP x P, Q-R4ch; 11 K-B1, Q-B6! =. Inferior continuations on 5 P-K4 are (1) 5...B x Ktch; 6 P x B, P-KR3; 7 B-Q3, P-Q3; 8 P-B4, P-K4; 9 Kt-B3, QKt-Q2;

10 P-QB5, Q-K2; 11 P x QP, BP x P; 12 O-O, P x BP; 13 B x P, Kt-Kt3; 14 QR-K1 ±. Opocensky-Mackenzie, Folkestone, 1933. (2) 5...P-Q4; 6 P-K5, KKt-Q2?, 7 P-QR3, B x Ktch; 8 P x B, P-QB4; 9 Kt-B3, BP x P; 10 P(B3) x P, P x P; 11 B x P ±. Keres-Gilfer, Munich, 1936. (3) 5...P-Q3; 6 P-K5!; P x P; 7 P x P, KKt-Q2; 8 Kt-B3, Kt-QB3; 9 Kt-Kt5, P-KKt3; 10 P-B4, R-K1; 11 B-K3 ±. Souza Mendes-Charlier, Sao Paulo, 1943.

(o) If instead 5...P-KR3; 6 B-R4, Kt-B3; 7 P-K3, R-K1; 8 Kt-B3 as in col. 41, but not 8 B-Q3?, P-K4!; 9 P-Q5, P-K5!; 10 P x Kt, P x B; 11 Q x P, QP x P; 12 Q x Q, B x Ktch; 13 Q-Q2, B x Qch ±. Euwe-Keres, 5th match game, 1939-40.

(p) 6...P-KR3 and ...Kt-B3 transpose into col. 41; 6...QKt-Q2 transposes into col. 47.

(q) 14...Q x B; 15 P-K4, P-QKt3; 16 P-B5, P x P; 17 KtP x BP, B-R3; 18 Kt-B1, B x B; 19 Kt x B. Goldberg-Chekhov, Moscow, 1945.

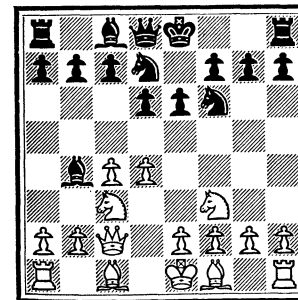
## NIMZO-INDIAN DEFENSE

1 P-Q4, Kt-KB3; 2 P-QB4, P-K3; 3 Kt-QB3, B-Kt5

	46	47	48	49	50
4 (Q-B2).....				Q-Kt3	
P-Q3.....			B x Ktch (h)	Kt-B3.....	P-B4
5 Kt-B3 (a)			P x B (i)	Kt-B3 (k)	P x P
QKt-Q2 (b)*			P-Q3	P-QR4 (l)	Kt-B3
6 B-Q2.....	P-QR3 (e)		Kt-B3	P-QR3	B-Kt5 (n)
O-O	B x Ktch		Q-K2	P-R5	P-KR3 (o)
7 P-QR3	Q x B		P-Kt3	Q-B2	B-R4
B x Kt	P-QR4 (f)		P-QKt3	B x Ktch	Kt-Q5 (p)
8 B x B	P-KKt3		B-Kt2	Q x B	Q-R4!
Q-K2	P-QKt3		B-Kt2	P-R3	B x Ktch
9 P-K3	B-Kt2		O-O	P-Q5	P x B
P-K4	B-Kt2		QKt-Q2	P x P	Kt-B4
10 B-K2	O-O		P-QR4	P x P	B x Kt
P-K5 (c)	O-O		B-K5	Kt-QR4	Q x B
11 Kt-Q2	Kt-K1		Q-Kt3	P-Q6	R-B1
R-K1	B x B		P-QR4	P x P	Q-Kt4
12 P-KKt4!	Kt x B		B-KR3	B-B4	Q-R3
Kt-B1	P-R5		O-O	O-O	P-QKt3?
13 P-Kt5 ± (d)	R-K1		Kt-Q2	R-Q1	Kt-B3!+ (q)
	Q-B1 ± (g)		B-Kt2 = (j)	R-K1 = (m)	

## \* DIAGRAM 107

cols. 46-47



[After 5...QKt-Q2]

(a) 5 P-K3, Kt-B3 transposes to cols. 36-41 or 43. Other alternatives are: (1) 5 P-KKt3, P-B4!; 6 P x P, P x P; 7 B-Kt2, Kt-B3; 8 B x Ktch, P x B; 9 Kt-B3, O-O; 10 O-O, R-K1; 11 B-Kt5, B x Ktch =. Lilienthal-Smyslov, Leningrad-Moscow, 1941. (2) 5 B-Kt5, QKt-Q2; 6 P-B3 (6 P-K3 goes into more regular lines), P-KR3; 7 B-R4, P-K4; 8 P-Q5, P-QR4; 9 P-K4, P-R5; 10 B-Q3, P-R6; 11 P-QKt3, P-B3; 12 Kt-K2, B-B4! ±. Trompowsky-Eliskases, Rio de Janeiro, 1943.

(b) For 5...Kt-B3 see cols. 36-41.

(c) 10...P x P; 11 Kt x P or 11 B x P is similar to col. 44.

(d) Tserbakov-Lissitsin, Moscow, 1942.

Notes continued on p. 252

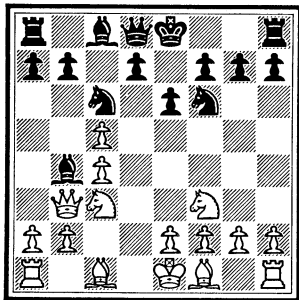
## NIMZO-INDIAN DEFENSE

1 P-Q4, Kt-KB3; 2 P-QB4, P-K3; 3 Kt-QB3, B-Kt5; 4 Q-Kt3, P-B4 (a); 5 P x P, Kt-B3 (b)

	51	52	53	54	55
6	Kt-B3 (c) *				
	Kt-K5.....				B x P (p)
7	B-Q2				B-Kt5 (q)
	Kt x B.....		Kt x QBP		P-KR3
8	Kt x Kt		Q-B2		B x Kt
	B x P.....	P-B4	P-B4.....	O-O	Q x B
9	P-K3 (d)	P-K3	P-QR3 (j)	P-QR3 (m)	P-K3
	P-QKt3	B x P	B x Kt	B x Kt	P-QKt3
10	O-O-O	B-K2	B x B	B x B	B-K2
	B-Kt2	O-O	O-O	P-QR4	B-Kt2
11	Kt(Q2)-K4	O-O-O (f)	P-QKt4	P-KKt3	Kt-K4
	B-K2	P-QKt3 (g)	Kt-K5	Q-K2 (n)	Q-K2
12	Kt-Q6ch	Kt-B3	B-Kt2	B-Kt2	O-O
	B x Kt	B-Kt2 (h)	P-QKt3	P-K4	O-O
13	R x B	R-Q2	P-Kt3 (k)	O-O	QR-Q1
	Q-K2	Q-K2	B-Kt2	P-K5	KR-Q1
14	Q-Q1	KR-Q1 ± (i)	R-B1 ± (l)	Kt-Q2 ± (o)	P-QR3
	R-Q1 = (e)				QR-B1 = (r)

## \* DIAGRAM 108

cols. 51-55



[After 6 Kt-B3]

(a) Inferior is 4...Q-K2?; 5 P-QR3, B x Ktch; 6 Q x B, P-QKt3; 7 P-B3, P-Q4; 8 P x P, Kt x P; 9 Q-B2!, Q-R5ch; 10 P-Kt3, Q x QP; 11 P-K4+. Bogoljubow-Alekhine, 6th match game, 1929.

(b) Unrefuted is 5...Kt-R3; 6 P-QR3,

B x P; 7 Kt-B3, P-QKt3; 8 B-Kt5, B-Kt2; 9 P-K3, B-K2 =. Eliskases-Botvinnik, Moscow, 1936.

(c) Weak is 6 B-Q2, B x P; 7 P-K3, O-O; 8 Kt-B3, P-Q4; 9 O-O-O, P x P; 10 Q x BP, Q-K2; 11 B-Q3, Kt-QKt5; 12 B-Kt1, P-QKt3 ≠. Rabinovitch-Romanovsky, Moscow, 1925.

(d) A possible improvement is 9 P-Kt3, P-B4; 10 B-Kt2, O-O; 11 O-O, P-QKt3; 12 Q-R4, B-Kt2; 13 Kt-Kt3 ±. Spielmann-Najdorf, Warsaw, 1935.

(e) Euwe-Nimzovitch, Zurich, 1934. White cannot maintain his hold on Q6.

(f) Stronger than 11 O-O, e.g., 11...P-QKt3; 12 Kt-B3, B-Kt2; 13 KR-Q1, R-B1; 14 Kt-QKt5?, Q-K2; 15 P-QR3, P-QR3; 16 Kt-B3, P-B5 ≠. Naegeli-Kashdan, Prague, 1931.

(g) Or 11...Q-K2; 12 Kt-B3, P-QR3; 13 K-Kt1, P-Q3; 14 Kt-QR4, B-R2?, (better Q-QB2); 15 Kt-Kt6 ±. Fine-Michell, Hastings, 1935-36.

Notes continued on p. 252

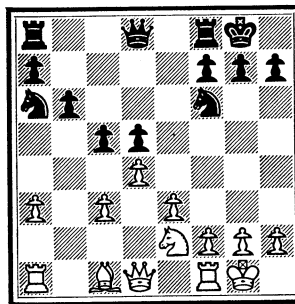
## NIMZO-INDIAN DEFENSE

1 P-Q4, Kt-KB3; 2 P-QB4, P-K3; 3 Kt-QB3, B-Kt5; 4 P-K3 (a), P-Q4

	56	57	58	59	60
5	P-QR3! (b).....		B-Q3 (g)		
	B x Ktch		O-O		
6	P x B		Kt-B3.....		Kt-K2
	P-B4 (c)		P-B4		P-B4 (o)
7	P x QP		O-O		O-O (p)
	KP x P		QP x P.....	Kt-B3	P x QP (q)
8	B-Q3		B x P	P-QR3 (j)	KP x P .
	O-O		Kt-B3	B x Kt (k)	P x P
9	Kt-K2		P-QR3	P x B	B x P
	P-QKt3		B-R4!	P-QKt3	P-QR3
10	O-O (d)		Kt-K2 (h)	P-QR4! (l)	P-QR3
	B-R3		P x P	BP x P	B-K2
11	B x B		Kt(K2) x P	P(B4) x P	B-K3
	Kt x B *		Kt x Kt	Q x P? (m)	P-QKt4
12	B-Kt2.....	Q-Q3	P x Kt	KP x P	B-Q3
	Q-Q2	Q-B1 (f)	Q-Q3	B-Kt2	B-Kt2
13	P-QR4	B-Kt2	B-KKt5	R-K1	R-B1
	KR-K1	P x P	Kt-Q4	KR-Q1	QKt-Q2
14	Q-Q3 ± (e)	BP x P ±	R-B1	B-KKt5 ± (n)	Kt-Kt3
			B-Q1 ≠ (i)		Kt-Kt3 =

## \* DIAGRAM 109

cols. 56-57



[After 11...Kt x B]

(a) The Rubinstein Variation.

(b) Botvinnik's idea.

(c) Better is 6...P x P, transposing to col. 61.

(d) Less precise is 10 P-QR4, B-R3; 11 B x B, Kt x B; 12 B-R3, R-K1; 13 Q-Q3, P-B5; 14 Q-B2, Q-Q2; 15 O-O, Kt-Ktr; 16 QR-K1, Kt-B3; 17 Kt-Kt3, Kt-QR4 and Black's counterplay is more dangerous than in the column. Botvinnik-Alexander, match U.S.S.R.—Great Britain, 1946.

(e) 14...P-B5; 15 Q-B2, Kt-Ktr; 16 KR-K1, Kt-B3; 17 Kt-Kt3. Botvinnik-Capablanca, AVRO tournament, 1938.

(f) 12...P-B5 transposes to col. 56. If 12...Kt-B2; 13 P x P, P x P; 14 P-QB4 ±. Fine-Steiner, Dallas, 1940. The column is Reshevsky-Fine, Hamilton, 1941.

Notes continued on p. 253

## Notes continued from p. 249

(e) An unusual continuation is 6 P—Kt3, P—Q4 / ?; 7 P—QR3, B × Ktch; 8 Q × B, O—O; 9 B—Kt2, P—QKt3; 10 O—O, B—Kt2; 11 P—QKt4, P × P; 12 Q × P, B—Q4; 13 Q—B3, P—B4 / =. Bolbochan—Villegas, Mar del Plata, 1943. 6 B—Kt5 here is less effective than formerly because Black's QKt is at Q2: 6... O—O; 7 P—K3, P—QKt3; 8 B—Q3, P—KR3; 9 B—R4, B—Kt2; 10 O—O, B × Ktch; 11 Q × B, P—KKt4; 12 B—Kt3, Kt—K5, 13 B × Kt, B × B; 14 Kt—Q2, B—Kt2; 15 P—K4, P—KB4 / =. Flohr—Goglidse, Leningrad—Moscow, 1939.

(f) Better than 7... Q—K2; 8 P—KKt3, P—QKt3; 9 B—Kt2, B—Kt2; 10 O—O, O—O; 11 P—QKt4, QR—B1; 12 P—QR4 /, P—B4; 13 QP × P, KtP × P; 14 P—Kt5 ±. Flohr—Kotov, Moscow, 1944.

(g) Bondarevsky—Smyslov, Leningrad—Moscow, 1941.

(h) Weak is 4... P—QKt3; 5 P—K4, B × Ktch; 6 P × B, P—Q3; 7 P—B4, P—K4; 8 B—Q3, Q—K2; 9 Kt—B3, Kt—B3; 10 O—O, B—Kt2; 11 R—Kt1, O—O—O; 12 P—QB5 /+. Noteboom—Flohr, Hastings, 1929-30.

(i) Or 5 Q × B, Kt—K5; 6 Q—B2, P—Q4; 7 P—K3, P—QB4; 8 P × BP (8 BP × P, KP × P; 9 B—Q3, Q—R4ch; 10 K—B1, O—O; 11 P × P, Kt—QB3, as in Tartakower—Nimzovitch, Kissingen, 1928, is more difficult for Black to meet but confers no real advantage), Q—R4ch; 9 B—Q2, Q × BP; 10 R—B1, Kt—QB3; 11 Kt—B3, Kt × B; 12 Q × Kt, P × P; 13 B × P, Q—K2 =. Tartakower and Nimzovitch.

(j) Bogoljubow—Nimzovitch, Kissingen, 1928. Cf. col. 69.

(k) Or 5 P—K3, P—QR4; 6 B—Q2 (6 B—Q3 ?, P—R5; 7 Q—Q1, P—R6 ♣),

P—K4; 7 P—Q5, Kt—K2; 8 B—Q3, P—Q3; 9 KKt—K2, Kt—Q2; 10 Q—Q1, Kt—QB4; 11 B—B2, B—Kt5 =. Stahlberg—Nimzovitch, 7th match game, 1934. Also good is 5... O—O; 6 B—Q3, P—Q4; 7 Kt—B3, P × P; 8 B × P, B—Q3; 9 Kt—QKt5, Kt—QR4; 10 Q—B3, Kt × B; 11 Q × Kt, B—Q2; 12 O—O, B—B3 =. Stahlberg—Keres, 2nd match game, 1938. An interesting but unexplored possibility for White is 5 P—Q5, e.g., P × P; 6 P × P, B × Ktch; 7 Q × B, Kt × P; 8 Q × P, Q—B3; 9 Q × Q, Kt × Q; 10 P—B3, R—KKt1; 11 P—KR4 ±. Fine—Shapiro, Washington, 1942.

(l) Also playable is 5... O—O; 6 P—K3, P—Q4; 7 B—Q2, P × P; 8 B × P, B—Q3; 9 Kt—QKt5, Kt—K5; 10 Kt × B, P × Kt; 11 O—O, P—QKt3; 12 B—K1, Kt—K2 =. Tolush—Keres, Leningrad—Moscow, 1939. For 5... P—Q3; 6 P—QR3 see cols. 36-39.

(m) Fine—Reshevsky, New York, 1938.

(n) Botvinnik's line.

(o) If 6... Q—R4; 7 B × Kt, P × B; 8 Kt—B3, Q × BP; 9 P—QR3, B—R4; 10 P—K3 ±. Botvinnik—Myassoyedov, Leningrad, 1932. On 6... B × Ktch; 7 Q × B (7 P × B, as in col. 34, note (i), is also playable), Kt—K5 /; 8 Q × P ? is bad, as A. F. Mackenzie's analysis in B.C.M., May, 1938, shows: 8... Q × B /; 9 Q × Rch, K—K2; 10 Kt—B3, Q × BP; 11 P—K3, Q—Kt5ch; 12 K—K2, Q × BPch; 13 K—Q1, Q—Q4ch; 14 K—B1, Q—B4ch; 15 K—Kt1, Kt—Kt5; 16 B—Q3, Kt × B++. However, 8 B × Q, Kt × Q; 9 B—R4 (or even 9 P × Kt), Kt—K5; 10 O—O—O gives White a minimum advantage.

(p) 7... B × P is simpler and safer.

(q) 13... Q—K2; 14 P—Kt4. Botvinnik—Savitzky, Leningrad, 1932.

Kt6 ?; 16 Q—B1, P × Kt; 17 Q × P+. Michell—Colle, Hastings, 1930-1931; 11 R—Q1, P—K4; 12 P—QR3, B × Kt; 13 B × B ±. Winter—Sultan Khan, Hastings, 1931. Weaker is 9 P—K3, O—O; 10 P—QR3 (or 10 B—K2, P—QKt3; 11 O—O—O, P—QR4; 12 P—QR3 ?, P—R5 /+. Bogoljubow—Nimzovitch, San Remo, 1930), B × Kt; 11 B × B, P—QKt3; 12

## Additional notes continued from p. 250

P—QKt4, Kt—K5; 13 B—Kt2 (if 13 B—Q3, Kt × B; 14 Q × Kt, B—Kt2; 15 O—O, Kt—K2; 16 B—K2, Q—K1; 17 KR—Q1, R—Q1; 18 P—QR4, P—B5 ♣. Stahlberg—Alekhine, Hamburg, 1930), B—Kt2; 14 B—K2, R—B1; 15 O—O, Kt—K2; 16 QR—Q1, Q—K1 =. Dake—Steiner, Mexico City, 1934-35.

(k) On 13 P—KKt4 /, Kt × BP / is the only good defense, but forces White to take a draw by 14 K × Kt, P × P; 15 R—KKt1, Q—R5ch; 16 K—K3, Q—R3ch; 17 K—B2, Q—R5ch; 18 K—K3 etc. If, however, 17 K—Q3, P—Q4; 18 Q—Q2, Q—Kt3ch; 19 K—B3, Q—K5; 20 Q—Q3, P × Kt; 21 P × QP, KP × P; 22 Q × Q, P × Q; 23 K—Q2, P—Kt3+. Egli—Stalda, correspondence, 1933.

(l) Euwe—Mulder, Amsterdam, 1933.

(m) If at once 9 P—KKt3 ?, P—Q4 /; 10 P × P, P × P; 11 P—QR3, P—Q5 /; 12 P × B, Kt × P; 13 Q—Q1, Q—K2 /+. Reinfeld—Steiner, Minneapolis, 1932.

(n) Or 11... P—R5; 12 B—Kt2, P—QKt3; 13 O—O, B—Kt2; 14 QR—Q1, Kt—R4; 15 B—Kt4, B—K5; 16 Q—B3 ±. Stahlberg—Nimzovitch, 5th match game, 1934.

## Notes continued from p. 251

(g) If 5 Kt—K2 ?, P × P /; 6 P—QR3, B—R4; 7 Q—R4ch, P—B3; 8 Q × P, O—O; 9 Kt—Kt3, QKt—Q2; 10 P—B4, Kt—Kt3; 11 Q—Q3, P—B4 / ♣. Euwe—Capablanca, 4th match game, 1931.

(h) Better than 10 Q—Q3, P—QR3; 11 Kt—K4, P—QKt4 ♣. Landau—Steiner, Kemer, 1937.

(i) Reshevsky—Fine, New York, 1939.

(j) Weaker is 8 BP × P, KP × P; 9 P × P, B × P; 10 P—QR3, B—KKt5; 11 B—K2, P—QR4; 12 Q—R4, P—Q5; 13 R—Q1, B × Kt; 14 B × B, Q—Kt3; 15 B × Kt, P × Kt; 16 B—Kt5 =. Landau—Szabo, Amsterdam, 1939.

(k) If now 8... B—R4 ?; 9 BP × P, KP × P; 10 P × P, B × Kt; 11 P × B, Q—R4; 12 Q—B2, Q × P(B4); 13 P—QR4, R—K1; 14 B—R3 ±. Landau—Flohr, Bournemouth, 1939.

(l) Better than 10 P × QP, KP × P; 11 P × P (or now 11 P—QR4, P—B5; 12 B—B2, B—Kt5; 13 Q—K1, as in Tolush—Keres, Tallinn, 1945, and now 13... B—

(o) 14... P—Q3; 15 P—QKt4 / Stahlberg—Nimzovitch, 3rd match game, 1934.

(p) Alternatives are: (i) 6... Q—R4; 7 B—Q2, Q × BP; 8 P—QR3 (8 R—B1 ?, Kt—QR4; 9 Q—B2, Kt × P /; 10 Kt—QR4, Kt × B /; 11 Kt × Q, Kt—K5 disch; 12 Kt—Q2, B × Ktch; 13 K—Q1, B × R; 14 Kt × Kt, Kt × Kt; 15 Q × Kt, B × P ♣. Rojahn—Takacs, correspondence 1931), B × Kt; 9 B × B, Kt—QR4; 10 B × Kt, Q × Bch; 11 Q—Kt4, Q—B2 ♣. Aguilera—Capablanca, Barcelona, 1929.

(2) 6... O—O; 7 B—Kt5, P—KR3; 8 B—R4 (8 B × Kt, Q × B; 9 P—K3, P—QR4; 10 Q—B2, P—R5; 11 P—QR3, B × Ktch =. Bogoljubow—Foerder, Swinemuende, 1931), P—KKt4; 9 B—Kt3, Kt—K5; 10 P—K3, Q—R4; 11 R—B1, P—B4 with a complicated position. Winter—Capablanca, Hastings, 1929-30.

(q) 7 P—K3, O—O; 8 B—K2, P—QKt3; 9 O—O, B—Kt2; 10 P—QR3, Q—K2; 11 R—Q1, KR—Q1; 12 B—Q2, P—Q4 ♣. Kashdan—Fine, New York, 1936.

(r) Bogoljubow—Alekhine, 2nd match game, 1929.

R4 /; 14 Kt—Q2, B—Kt3; 15 B × B, RP × B; 16 P—K4, Kt × KP; 17 Kt × Kt, P × Kt; 18 Q × P, Q—Q2 =. Keres), P × P; 12 P—B4, R—Kt1; 13 P × P, Q × P; 14 B—K2, Q—B4; 15 B—Q2, R—Q1 ♣. Lilienthal—Keres, Leningrad—Moscow, 1941.

(m) Simpler is 11... KKt × P.

(n) Alekhine—Keres, AVRO tournament, 1938.

(o) Or 6... P × P; 7 B × P, P—K4 /; 8 O—O, P × P; 9 Kt × P, P—QR3 =. Bogoljubow—Colle, Bled, 1931.

(p) Or 7 P—QR3, QP × P; 8 B × P, B × Ktch; 9 P × B, Kt—B3; 10 P—B4, P—QKt3; 11 O—O, Kt—QR4; 12 B—Q3, B—Kt2 =. Tolush—Renter, Tallinn, 1945.

(q) Inferior is 7... Kt—B3; 8 P × QP / KP × P; 9 P × P, B × P; 10 P—QR3, B—K3; 11 P—QKt4, B—Kt3; 12 Kt—R4, B—B2; 13 Kt—B5, P—QKt3; 14 Kt × B ±. Landau—Knoch, Amsterdam, 1936.

## Notes continued from p. 250

(h) No better is 12... B—R3; 13 R—Q2, Q—K2; 14 KR—Q1, QR—Q1; 15 P—QR3, P—B5; 16 Kt—K4+. Spielmann—Colle, Carlsbad, 1929.

(i) Spielmann—P. Johner, Carlsbad, 1929.

(j) Also good is 9 P—KKt3, O—O; 10 B—Kt2, P—Q3 (or 10... P—Q4; 11 P × P, P × P; 12 P—QR3, P—Q5; 13 P × B, Kt × P; 14 Q—Q1, B—K3; 15 O—O, B—

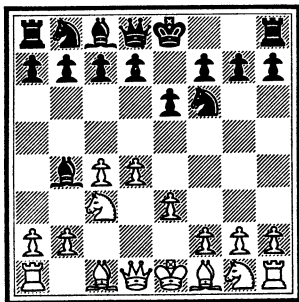
## NIMZO-INDIAN DEFENSE

1 P-Q4, Kt-KB3; 2 P-QB4, P-K3; 3 Kt-QB3, B-Kt5; 4 P-K3\*

61	62	63	64	65
4 (P-Q4).....	P-QKt3.....			P-B4
5 (B-Q3)	Kt-K2.....		B-Q3 (k)	Kt-K2 (p)
(O-O)	B-Kt2 (d)		B-Kt2	P × P
6 P-QR3	P-QR3		Kt-B3 (l)	P × P
B × Ktch	B-K2 (e)		O-O (m)	P-Q4 (q)
7 P × B	P-Q5 /.....	Kt-B4	O-O	P-B5 / (r)
P × P (a)	O-O (f)	O-O (i)	KB × Kt	O-O
8 B × P	Kt-Kt3 (g)	B-K2	P × B	P-QR3
P-B4	P-Q3	P-Q3	B-K5 (n)	B × Ktch
9 Kt-K2	B-K2	B-B3	B × B	Kt × B
P-K4 / (b)	P-B3 /	P-B3	Kt × B	P-QKt3
10 O-O	P-K4	O-O	Q-B2	P-QKt4
Kt-B3	Kt-R3	P-Q4	P-KB4	P × P
11 B-Kt2	P × BP	P-QKt3	Kt-K5	QP × P
Q-B2	B × P	QKt-Q2	Q-K1	P-K4
12 R-B1	P-Kt4	B-Kt2	P-B3	B-KKt5
Kt-QR4	Kt-B2	R-B1	Kt-KB3	B-Kt2
13 B-R2	O-O	R-B1	B-R3	Kt-Kt5
P-B5	Q-Kt1	B-Q3	P-Q3	P-Q5
14 Kt-Kt3	B-K3 ± (h)	P × P	Kt-Q3	Kt-Q6 ± (s)
R-K1 = (c)		BP × P = (j)	P-B4 = (o)	

## \* DIAGRAM 110

cols. 61-65



[After 4 P-K3]

(a) If 7...P-K4; 8 Kt-K2, P-K5; 9 B-B2, P × P; 10 Kt-Kt3, R-K1; 11 O-O, P-B4; 12 P-B3 ±. Kotov-Lilienthal, Moscow, 1944.

(b) More aggressive than 9...Q-B2; 10

B-Q3, P-K4; 11 P × KP, Q × P; 12 Q-B2, Kt-B3; 13 B-Kt2, Q-K2; 14 P-QB4, Kt-K4 =. Simonson-Reshevsky, New York, 1940.

(c) Denker-Pinkus, New York, 1944.

(d) 5...O-O is less energetic, and at best transposes back to the columns or analogous variations.

(e) Not quite satisfactory is 6...B × Ktch; 7 Kt × B, P-Q4; 8 B-K2, O-O; 9 O-O, QKt-Q2; 10 P-QKt4, P × P; 11 B-Kt2, P-B4; 12 B × P, Q-K2; 13 Q-K2 ±. Ragozin-Seidman, match U.S.S.R.—U. S. A., 1945.

(f) Better than 7...P-QR4; 8 P-K4, P-K4; 9 Kt-Kt3, O-O; 10 B-Q3, Kt-K1; 11 P-KR4, Kt-R3; 12 Kt-B5, Kt-B4; 13 B-B2, Kt-Q3; 14 Kt × Kt, B × Kt; 15 B-K3, B-K2; 16 R-QKt1 ±. Lilienthal-Kotov, Moscow, 1945.

Notes continued on p. 257

## NIMZO-INDIAN DEFENSE

1 P-Q4, Kt-KB3; 2 P-QB4, P-K3; 3 Kt-QB3, B-Kt5; 4 P-K3

66	67	68	69	70
4 O-O (a).....			B × Ktch.....	Kt-B3
5 B-Q3.....	Kt-K2		P × B	Kt-K2 (m)
P-Q3 (b)	P-Q4 /		O-O	P-K4
6 Kt-K2	P-QR3		B-Q3	P × P / (n)
P-K4	B-K2		P-Q3	Kt × P
7 O-O	P × P (e)		Kt-K2	P-QR3
B × Kt (c)	Kt × P /.....	P × P	P-B4 / (j)	B × Ktch
8 Kt × B	Kt × Kt	Kt-Kt3	O-O	Kt × B
Kt-B3	P × Kt	P-B4 (g)	Kt-B3	P-Q3
9 P-Q5	P-KKt3	B-Q3 (h)	P-K4 (k)	P-K4
Kt-Kt1	Kt-Q2	Kt-B3	P-K4	O-O
10 P-K4	B-Kt2	O-O	P-Q5	B-K2
QKt-Q2	Kt-B3	P-KKt3 ?	Kt-K2	R-K1
11 B-K3	O-O	P × P	B-Kt5	O-O
Kt-B4	B-Q3	B × P	Kt-Q2 /	P-QR4
12 B-B2	Kt-B3	P-Kt4	Kt-Kt3	P-QKt3
P-QR4	P-B3	B-Q3	P-B3	Kt(K4)-Q2
13 P-KR3	P-QKt4	P-Kt5	B-Q2	P-B3
Q-K2	P-QR3	Kt-K4	R-B2	Kt-B4
14 P-R3 ± (d)	R-K1	B-K2 ± (i)	R-Kt1 ± (l)	B-Kt2 ±
	R-K1 = (f)			

(a) Since this move comes in in almost all variations, it can transpose into any other line of the Rubinstein Variation. Only the independent lines, which do not transpose into other columns, are considered here.

(b) 5...P-Q4, leading to more regular variations, is preferable.

(c) If 7...R-K1; 8 P-QR3 is best, but not 8 Kt-Kt3, B × Kt; 9 P × B, P-B4; 10 Q-B2, P-KR3; 11 P-Q5, QKt-Q2; 12 P-B4, P × P; 13 P × P, Kt-B1 =. Reshevsky-Keres, AVRO tournament, 1938.

(d) Alatorsev-Smyslov, Leningrad-Moscow, 1939.

(e) Or 7 Kt-B4, P-B3; 8 P × P, KP × P (8...Kt × P; 9 B-Q3, Kt-Q2; 10 O-O, Kt × KKt; 11 P × Kt, Kt-B3; 12 B-K3, Q-B2; 13 Q-B3 ±. Petrow-Eliskases, Semmering-Baden, 1937); 9 B-Q3, R-K1; 10 O-O, QKt-Q2 =.

Rubinstein-Yates, Kissingen, 1928. On 7 Kt-B4 another possibility is 7...Kt-B3!; 8 P × P, KKt × P; 9 QKt × Kt, P × Kt; 10 Q-R5, B-Kt4; 11 B-Q3, P-KKt3; 12 Q-B3, R-K1 =. Mikenas-Veresov, Moscow, 1944.

(f) Reshevsky-Botvinnik, AVRO tournament, 1938.

(g) Or 8...B-K3; 9 B-Q3, P-B4; 10 P × P, B × P; 11 P-Kt4, B-Q3; 12 B-Kt2, Kt-B3; 13 Kt-Kt5, B-Kt1; 14 Kt-Q4 ±. Ragozin-Sokolsky, Kiev, 1945.

(h) If now 9 P × P, B × P; 10 P-Kt4!, P-Q5!; 11 P × B, P × Kt; 12 Q-B2, Q-R4; 13 R-QKt1, B-Q2 ≠. Euwe-Alekhine, 25th match game, 1937.

(i) 14...QKt-Kt5; 15 B-Kt2 with a strong attack. Flohr-Lissitsin, Moscow, 1935.

Notes continued on p. 257

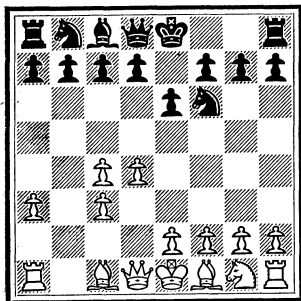
## NIMZO-INDIAN DEFENSE

1 P—Q4, Kt—KB3; 2 P—QB4, P—K3; 3 Kt—QB3, B—Kt5; 4 P—QR3 (a),  
B × Ktch; 5 P × B\*

	71	72	73	74	75
5	P—B4				P—QKt3 (q)
6	P—K3		P—B3 (j)		P—B3!
	O—O (b)		P—Q4	P—Q3	P—Q4
7	B—Q3		P—K3 (k)	P—K4	B—Kt5
	P—Q4	Kt—B3	O—O (l)	Kt—B3	B—R3 (r)
8	P × QP (c)	Kt—K2 (g)	BP × P (m)	B—K3	P—K4!
	Q × P! (d)	P—Q3	Kt × P! (n)	P—QKt3	P—R3
9	Kt—B3 (e)	Kt—Kt3 (h)	B—Q2	B—Q3	B—R4
	P × P	P—QKt3	Kt—QB3	P—K4	B × P (s)
10	KP × P	B—Kt2	B—Q3	Kt—K2	B × B
	P—QKt3	B—R3	P × P	Kt—QR4	P × B
11	P—B4	P—K4	BP × P	B—Kt5	Q—R4ch
	Q—Q3	R—B1	P—K4!	P—KR3	Q—Q2
12	O—O	R—B1	P × P	B—R4	Q × BP
	B—Kt2	P × P	QKt × P	P—KKt4	Q—B3 (t)
13	Kt—K5	P × P	B—K4	B—KB2	Q—Q3+ (u)
	Kt—B3 = (f)	P—K4 = (i)	Kt—QB5 ± (o)	Kt—R4 = (p)	

## \* DIAGRAM III

cols. 71-75



[After 5 P × B]

(a) The Saemisch Variation.

(b) If 6... Q—R4; 7 Q—B2, P—Q3; 8 Kt—B3, B—Q2; 9 B—Q3, B—R5; 10 Q—Kt2, QKt—Q2; 11 O—O, O—O; 12 P—K4, P—K4; 13 B—Kt5, KR—K1; 14

QR—K1 ±. Kotov—Lissitsin, Moscow, 1939.

(c) 8 Kt—K2, QP × P transposes to col. 61, while on 8 Kt—B3, QP × P is again best, transposing to col. 59.

(d) 8... KP × P transposes to cols. 56-57.

(e) Or 9 Q—B3, Q—Q1!; 10 Q—K2, Q—B2; 11 B—Kt2, P—K4; 12 P × KP, Q × P; 13 P—QB4, Q—K2 =. Bogoljubow—Reshevsky, Nottingham, 1936.

(f) Reshevsky—Denker, New York, 1942.

(g) If 8 Kt—B3, P—Q3; 9 Q—B2, P—K4; 10 P—Q5, Kt—K2; 11 O—O (Reshevsky—Kashdan, 5th match game, 1942) B—Q2 and if 12 Kt—K1, Q—B1; 13 P—B4?, P × P; 14 P × P, B—B4 ±.

(h) Or 9 P—K4, P—QKt3, as in the column. 9 P—K4, P—K4 transposes to col. 74.

(i) 14 Q—R4, Kt—QR4; 15 O—O, Q—K1!; 16 Q—Kt4, Kt—B3!/. Botvinnik—Keres, AVRO tournament, 1938.

Notes continued on p. 258

Notes continued from p. 254

(g) If 8 P—KKt3, P—QKt4! (not 8... P × P; 9 P × P, P—B4; 10 B—Kt2 ±. Reshevsky—Belavienetz, Leningrad—Moscow, 1939); 9 P × KtP (or (1) 9 P—K4, KtP × P; 10 Q—Q4, P × P; 11 P × P, P—B3; 12 B—Kt2, P × P; 13 Kt × P, Kt × Kt; 14 B × Kt, Q—R4ch ±. Eliskases—Gilg, Bad Elster, 1938; (2) 9 Kt × P, P × P; 10 B—Kt2, P—B3 ±; (3) 9 B—Kt2, P × BP; 10 O—O, P × P; 11 Kt × P, Kt × Kt; 12 B × Kt, P—B3 =), Kt × P; 10 P—K4, Kt × Kt; 11 Kt × Kt (Reshevsky—Kan, Leningrad—Moscow, 1939) and now 11... P—QR3! ± (Keres).

(h) 14... P—QKt4; 15 P—QR4, P × BP; 16 P—Kt5. Botvinnik—Ragosin, Sverdlovsk, 1943.

(i) 7... P—Q4, transposing to col. 68, is also good.

(j) Eliskases—Lilienthal, Moscow, 1936.

(k) Two unusual lines are: (1) 5 Q—B3, Kt—B3; 6 B—Q2, B—Kt2; 7 Q—Kt3, O—O; 8 B—Q3, P—Q4; 9 P × P, P × P; 10 KKt—K2, B—Q3; 11 Q—R4, B—K2; 12 Q—R3, Kt—QKt5 ±. Alatortsev—Kan, Leningrad—Moscow, 1939 and (2) 5 B—Q2, B—Kt2; 6 Kt—B3, O—O; 7 B—Q3, B × QKt (Simpler 7... P—Q4); 8 B × B, Kt—K5; 9 B × Kt, B × B; 10 P—Q5!, P—QB4; 11 Kt—Q2, B—Kt3; 12 P—KR4, P—B4; 13 Q—B3 ±. Pomar—Ticoulat, Balearic Islands Championship, 1944.

(l) If 6 P—B3, P—B4; 7 Kt—K2, Kt—B3; 8 O—O, P × P; 9 P × P, P—Q4; 10 P × P, KKt × P =. Capablanca—Kan, Moscow, 1936. 6 Kt—K2? is a mistake:

6... B × P; 7 R—KKt1, B—K5!; 8 B × B, Kt × B; 9 R × P, Kt × P!.

(m) 6... Kt—K5 is playable but exposes Black to a dangerous attack after 7 O—O!, Kt × Kt (7... B × Kt; 8 P × B, O—O is good enough to equalize); 8 P × Kt, B × P; 9 R—Kt1, B—R4; 10 B—R3, P—Q3; 11 P—B5, O—O; 12 P × QP, P × P; 13 P—K4, R—K1; 14 P—K5, P × P; 15 Kt × P ±. Denker—Fine, New York, 1944.

(n) Better than 8... P—Q3; 9 Q—B2, QKt—Q2; 10 P—K4, P—K4; 11 Kt—Q2, Kt—R4; 12 P—Kt3, Q—B3; 13 Kt—Kt3 ±. Keres—Belavienetz, Leningrad—Moscow, 1939. 8... Kt—K5; 9 Q—B2, P—KB4 is a satisfactory alternative to the column.

(o) Reshevsky—Alekhine, AVRO tournament, 1938.

(p) 5 B—Q3, P—Q4 transposes to cols. 56-59.

(q) If 6... O—O; 7 P—QR3, B—K2; 8 P—KKt3, P—Q4; 9 P—B5 ±, or 8 P—Q5 ±, but not 8 Kt—B4, P—Q4; 9 P × P, Kt × P; 10 KKt × Kt, P × Kt; 11 Q—Kt3, Kt—B3; 12 B—K3, B—B3; 13 R—Q1, B—Kt5; 14 B—K2, B × B and Black's disadvantage is minimal.

(r) Not 7 P—QR3, B × Ktch (7... B—K2?; 8 P—B5, P—QKt3; 9 P—QKt4, P × P; 10 QP × P, P—K4; 11 P—B4!+. Rubinstein—Maroczy, Hamburg, 1930); 8 Kt × B, P × P; 9 B × P, O—O; 10 O—O, Kt—B3; 11 B—K3, P—QKt3 =. Rubinstein—Ahues, Liege, 1930.

(s) Rubinstein and Colle—Tartakower and Landau, Rotterdam, 1932.

Notes continued from p. 255

(j) Black must block the center early. If instead 7... P—K4; 8 P—K4, R—K1; 9 P—B3, P—QKt3; 10 O—O, Kt—B3; 11 B—K3, B—R3; 12 Kt—Kt3, Kt—QR4; 13 Q—K2, P—B4; 14 P—Q5 ±. Rubinstein—Colle, Liege, 1930.

(k) Or 9 Kt—Kt3, P—K4; 10 P—Q5, Kt—K2; 11 P—B4, P × P; 12 P × P, Kt—Kt3; 13 P—B5, Kt—K4; 14 B—Kt5, P—QKt3; 15 Kt—K4, K—R1; 16 R—B4, Q—K2 =. Shainswit—Chernev, New York, 1944.

(l) Lilienthal—Chekhover, Moscow, 1945.

(m) Another possibility is 5 B—Q3, P—K4; 6 Kt—K2, P—Q4; 7 BP × P, Kt (KB3) × P; 8 O—O, P × P; 9 P × P, O—O; 10 Q—B2, P—KR3; 11 P—QR3, B—K2; 12 Kt × Kt, Q × Kt; 13 B—K3 ±. Najdorf—Luckis, Buenos Aires, 1942.

(n) Botvinnik's recommendation, an improvement on 6 P—QR3, B × Ktch; 7 Kt × B, P × P; 8 P × P, P—Q4!; 9 P—B5, P—KR3; 10 B—QKt5, O—O; 11



## Additional notes continued from p. 255

O—O, B—B4; 12 P—B3, R—K1; 13 P—  
KKt4, B—R2; 14 B—KB4, P—R3 =.

## Notes continued from p. 256

(j) On 6 Q—B2, Kt—B3; 7 Kt—B3, P—  
Q4; 8 P—K3, O—O; 9 BP × P, KP × P  
(or 9... Q × P as in col. 71); 10 P × P,  
Q—R4; 11 B—Q3 (Alekhine and Monosson  
—Flohr and Reilly, Nice, 1931), B—Kt5 =  
is satisfactory for Black.

(k) A new try is 7 P × QP, Kt × P; 8  
P × P, Q—R4; 9 P—K4, Kt—K2; 10  
B—K3, O—O; 11 Q—Kt3, Kt—R3; 12  
R—Q1, Kt—B3; 13 K—B2, Kt × P =.  
Bondarevsky—Smyslov, Leningrad—Mos-  
cow, 1941.

(l) Not 7... Kt—B3; 8 P × QP, KP ×  
P; 9 B—Q3, Kt—K2; 10 Kt—K2, B—B4;  
11 O—O, O—O; 12 B × B, Kt × B; 13  
P—K4! ±. Euwe—Bogoljubow, Zurich,  
1934.

(m) Necessary, for if 8 B—Q3, Q—B2!;  
9 P × QP, BP × P!; 10 Q—B2, P × KP;  
11 P × P, B × P; 12 B × KP, B—B5! +.  
Fine—Steiner, Lodz, 1935.

(n) 8... KP × P is much weaker: 9 B—  
Q3, Kt—B3 (or 9... P—QKt3; 10 Kt—  
K2, B—R3; 11 O—O, B × B; 12 Q × B,  
Kt—B3; 13 P—K4! ±. Euwe—Van den  
Bosch, 3rd match game, 1934); 10 Kt—K2,  
R—K1; 11 O—O, P—QR3 (11... B—Q2;  
12 Kt—Kt3, Q—B1; 13 B—Q2, K—R1;  
14 R—B1, Kt—QR4; 15 P—K4! +. Lili-  
enthal—Eliskases, Ujpest, 1934); 12 Q—  
K1! ±. Lilienthal—Ragosin, Moscow,  
1935. Cf. also cols. 56—57.

(o) Lilienthal—Botvinnik, Moscow, 1935.

(p) Euwe—Van Scheltinga, Amsterdam,  
1936.

(q) Inferior alternatives are: (i) 5... P—

Q3 (without ... P—QB4 at an early stage):  
6 P—B3, O—O; 7 P—K4, P—K4; 8 B—  
Q3, Kt—B3; 9 Kt—K2, Kt—Q2; 10 O—  
O, P—QKt3; 11 B—K3, B—R3; 12 Kt—  
Kt3, Kt—R4; 13 Q—K2 ±. Saemisch—  
Gruenfeld, Carlsbad, 1929. If here 6 Q—  
B2, O—O; 7 P—K4, P—K4; 8 B—Q3,  
P—B4; 9 Kt—K2, Kt—B3; 10 P—Q5,  
Kt—K2? (10... Kt—QR4 as in col. 74 is  
essential); 11 P—B3 ±. Capablanca—  
Ragosin, Moscow, 1936. (2) 5... Kt—K5;  
6 Q—B2, P—KB4; 7 P—K3 (7 Kt—R3,  
P—QKt3; 8 P—B3, Kt—KB3; 9 P—K3,  
O—O; 10 B—Q3, Q—K2; 11 O—O, P—  
Q3; 12 Kt—B2, P—B4 ±. Eliskases—  
Pleci, Warsaw, 1935), P—QKt3; 8 B—  
Q3, B—Kt2; 9 Kt—K2, Q—R5!; 10 O—  
O, O—O; 11 P—B3 ±. Fine—Araiza, Chi-  
cago, 1934. 5... O—O transposes back to  
one of the main lines.

(r) 7... B—Kt2; 8 P—K3, QKt—Q2; 9  
B—Q3, P—KR3; 10 B—R4, P—B4; 11  
Kt—K2, R—QB1; 12 BP × P, KP × P;  
13 O—O +. Euwe—Kan, Leningrad, 1934.

(s) 9... P × KP; 10 P × P, P—KKt4;  
11 B—Kt3, Kt × P; 12 B—K5 gives White  
an excellent attack, but it is doubtful  
whether Black's position is then any worse  
than in the column continuation.

(t) Or 12... Kt—B3; 13 Kt—K2, Kt—  
QR4; 14 Q—Q3, Q—B3; 15 O—O, O—O  
(Alekhine—Eliskases, Hastings, 1933—  
34); 16 P—K5! +.

(u) Lilienthal—Capablanca, Hastings,  
1934—35.

## 1 P—Q4, Kt—KB3; 2 P—QB4, P—K3; 3 Kt—QB3

NIMZO-INDIAN DEFENSE					
	76	77	78	79	80
3 (B—Kt5) *					P—QKt3
4 P—KKt3		Kt—B3		B—Q2 (k)	P—K4
P—Q4 (a)		P—QKt3	B × Ktch (f)	O—O	P—B4 (n)
5 B—Kt2		B—Kt5 (c)	P × B	P—K3 (l)	P—Q5
O—O		P—KR3 (d)	P—QKt3 (g)	P—Q4	P—Q3
6 Kt—B3		B × Kt	B—Kt5! (h)	Kt—B3	B—Q3
P—B4		B × Ktch	B—Kt2	P—B4	QKt—Q2
7 BP × P		P × B	Kt—Q2	P—QR3	P—B4
Kt × P		Q × B	P—Q3	B × Kt	P × P
8 B—Q2		P—K4	P—B3	B × B	BP × P
Kt—QB3		B—Kt2	P—K4	Kt—K5	P—QR3
9 P—QR3		B—Q3	P—K4	R—B1	Kt—B3
Kt × Kt		P—Q3	Kt—B3	Kt × B	Q—B2
10 P × Kt		O—O	Kt—Kt3	R × Kt	O—O
B—R4		P—K4	P—KR3	P × QP	B—Kt2
11 O—O		P—B5	B—K3	KP × P	Q—K2
P × P		O—O	Kt—K2 (i)	Kt—B3	B—K2
12 P × P		R—Kt1	B—Q3	B—K2	B—Q2
B × B		R—Q1	Kt—R4	P × P	P—QKt4
13 Q × B		Q—B2	Q—Q2	B × P	QR—Q1
Q—K2		Kt—Q2	Kt—Kt3	Q—B3	Kt—Kt3
14 Q—Kt2 (b)		P × QP	P—Kt3 ± (j)	O—O	K—R1 ± (o)
R—Kt1 =		BP × P = (e)		R—Q1 = (m)	

## \* See p. 224, Diagram 94

(a) Weaker alternatives are: (1) 4... P—  
B4; 5 P—Q5, Kt—K5; 6 B—Q2, B × Kt;  
7 B × B, Kt × B; 8 P × Kt, P × P; 9  
P × P, P—Q3; 10 Kt—B3, O—O; 11 B—  
Kt2, Kt—Q2; 12 O—O, Kt—B3; 13 Kt—  
Q2 ±. Alekhine—Reshevsky, AVRO tour-  
nament, 1938. (2) 4... B × Ktch; 5 P × B,  
O—O; 6 B—KKt2, P—Q3; 7 Kt—B3, Kt  
—B3; 8 O—O, Kt—QR4; 9 Q—Q3, Q—  
K2; 10 Kt—Q2, P—K4; 11 R—Kt1, R—  
Kt1; 12 B—QR3 ±. Grau—Fine, Warsaw,  
1935.

(b) Alekhine—Golombek, Margate, 1938.

(c) Or 5 P—K3, O—O; 6 B—Q3, P—Q4;  
7 O—O, B—Kt2; 8 P × P, P × P; 9 P—  
QR3, B—K2; 10 P—QKt4, QKt—Q2; 11  
R—Kt1, P—QR3 =. Bogoljubow—Euwe,  
match, 1929.

(d) On 5... B × Ktch; 6 P × B, B—Kt2;  
7 Kt—Q2 transposes into col. 78.

(e) Euwe—Alekhine, 27th match game,  
1937.

(f) If 4... Kt—K5?; 5 Q—B2, P—Q4; 6  
P—K3, P—QB4; 7 B—Q3, Kt—KB3 (7  
... Q—R4; 8 O—O!, B × Kt; 9 P × B,  
Kt—KB3; 10 R—Kt1, QKt—Q2; 11 Kt—  
K5+. Keres—List, Ostend, 1937); 8 P ×  
QP, KP × P; 9 P × P, B × P; 10 O—O,  
Kt—B3; 11 P—K4!, B—K2!; 12 P—K5,  
Kt—KKt5; 13 R—Kt1+. Euwe—Alekhine,  
19th match game, 1937. A playable alter-  
native is 4... P—B4; 5 P—QR3!, B ×  
Ktch; 6 P × B and now 6... P—Q4, trans-  
posing to regular lines, but not 6... Q—R4;  
7 B—Q2, Kt—K5; 8 Q—B2, Kt × B; 9 Kt

Notes continued on p. 261

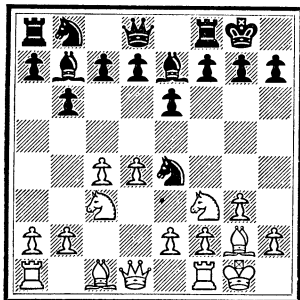
## QUEEN'S INDIAN DEFENSE

1 P-Q4, Kt-KB3; 2 P-QB4, P-K3; 3 Kt-KB3, P-QKt3; 4 P-KKt3, B-Kt2; 5 B-Kt2, B-K2; 6 O-O, O-O; 7 Kt-B3, Kt-K5\*

	81	82	83	84	85
8	Q-B2				Kt × Kt (k)
	Kt × Kt (a)				B × Kt
9	Q × Kt (b)				B-B4
	B-K5		P-Q3	P-KB4	P-Q3
10	R-Q1	Kt-K1	Q-B2	B-K3 (i)	Q-Q2
	P-KB4 (c)	B × B	P-KB4	B-KB3	Kt-Q2
11	Q-Kt3	Kt × B	P-Q5 / (g)	Q-Q2	KR-Q1
	Kt-B3	P-QB3	P-K4	P-Q3	P-QR4 ? (l)
12	P-Q5	P-Q5	P-K4	P-Q5	QR-B1
	Kt-R4	BP × P	P × P	P-K4	Q-K1
13	Q-R4	P × P	Q × P	Kt-Kt5	Kt-K1
	P × P	Kt-R3	Kt-Q2	B × Kt	B × B
14	P × P	Kt-B4	Q-B2 (h)	B × B	Kt × B
	B-B3	Q-B1	P-QR4	Q-K1	P-KB4
15	Kt-K1	Q-B3	B-K3	P-K4	Q-B2
	B × B	Q-B7 (e)	Kt-B4	P × P	P-KKt4
16	Kt × B	P-K4	P-Kt3 ±	QR-K1 ± (j)	B-Q2 ± (m)
	Q-K2 = (d)	Kt-B4 ! = (f)			

## \* DIAGRAM 112

cols. 81-85



[After 7... Kt-K5]

(a) A possible improvement is 8... P-Q4; 9 P × P (9 Kt-K5, as in col. 86, is worth a try), Kt × Kt; 10 P × Kt (10 Q × Kt and 11 B-B4 is better), P × P;

11 Kt-K5, Q-B1; 12 P-QB4, P × P; 13 B × B, Q × B; 14 Q × P, P-QB4; 15 P × P, B × P =. Tartakower-Alekhine, Baden-Baden, 1925.

(b) If 9 P × Kt, Q-B1 (9... P-Q3; 10 P-K4, Kt-Q2; 11 B-K3, P-KB4; 12 P-Q5 / ±. Pirc-Romanovsky, Moscow, 1935); 10 P-K4, Kt-B3; 11 Kt-Q2, P-K4 /; 12 Kt-Kt3, B-R3; 13 Q-K2, R-Kt1 =. Pirc-Kan, Moscow, 1935.

(c) Weaker is 10... P-Q3; 11 Kt-K1, B × B; 12 Kt × B, Kt-Q2; 13 P-Kt3, P-QB3; 14 P-K4, Kt-B3; 15 Q-B2 ±. Reshevsky-Eliskases, Semmering-Baden, 1937.

(d) Guimard-Stahlberg, Buenos Aires, 1943.

(e) More energetic than 15... P-K4; 16 Kt-Q3 ±. If here 16 P-Q6?, B × P; 17 Kt-R5, B-K2; 18 B-K3, Q-B3+. Euwe-Keres, 13th match game, 1939.

Notes continued on p. 261

Notes continued from p. 259

× Kt, P-Q3; 10 P-K3, P-K4; 11 P × KP, P × P; 12 B-Q3 ±. Botvinnik-Kan, Moscow, 1939.

(g) On 5... P-Q3; 6 Q-B2, Q-K2; 7 P-K4, as in cols. 71-75, is in order, but not 7 B-R3?, P-B4; 8 P-Kt3, P-QKt3; 9 B-KKt2, B-Kt2; 10 O-O, O-O; 11 Kt-R4, B × B; 12 K × B?, Q-Ktch ±. Mattison-Nimzovitch, Carlsbad, 1929.

(h) Saemisch's improvement on the older 6 P-Kt3, B-Kt2; 7 B-KKt2, O-O; 8 O-O, R-K1; 9 R-K1, P-Q3; 10 Q-B2, B-K5; 11 Q-Kt3, Kt-B3; 12 B-B1, P-K4; 13 P × P, Kt × P; 14 Kt × Kt, R × Kt ±. Bogoljubow-Nimzovitch, Carlsbad, 1929.

(i) Or 11... O-O; 12 B-Q3, Q-K2; 13 O-O, Kt-Q1; 14 Q-Q2, Kt-K3 (Winter-Fine, Lodz, 1935); 15 P-Kt3 ±.

(j) Saemisch-Stahlberg, Helsinki, 1935.

(k) On 4 P-B3 Black's best reply is 4... P-Q4 and if 5 P-QR3, B × Ktch; 6 P × B, P-B4, transposing into the Saemisch Variation cols. 71 and 73. Weaker is 4... P-Q3; 5 P-K4, O-O; 6 KKt-K2, P-K4; 7 P-QR3, B-R4; 8 P-QKt4, P ×

P; 9 Kt × P, B-Kt3; 10 B-K3 ±. Euwe-Klein, Bournemouth, 1939. Inferior is 4 B-Kt5, P-KR3; 5 B-R4 (5 B × Kt, B × Ktch; 6 P × B, Q × B ± is best), P-B4; 6 P-K3, Q-R4; 7 Q-Kt3, Kt-K5; 8 R-B1, P × P; 9 P × P, Kt-QB3 ±. Réti-Marshall, Bruenn, 1928.

(l) Or 5 Kt-B3, P-QKt3; 6 P-K3, B × Kt; 7 B × B, Kt-K5; 8 Q-B2, B-Kt2; 9 O-O-O, P-KB4; 10 Kt-K5, Q-K2; 11 P-B3, Kt × B; 12 Q × Kt, P-Q3; 13 Kt-Q3, Kt-Q2; 14 K-Kt1, QR-Q1 ±. Ahues-Nimzovitch, Berlin, 1927.

(m) Alekhine-Kmoch, San Remo, 1930.

(n) There is nothing better. If 4... B-Kt2; 5 B-Q3, P-Q4; 6 BP × P, P × P; 7 P-K5+; or 4... B-K5; 5 P-K5, Kt-K5; 6 Q-Kt4 /, Kt × Kt; 7 P × Kt /, B × Pch; 8 K-Q1, K-B1 (best); 9 R-Kt1, Kt-B3; 10 B-R3ch, K-Kt1; 11 R-Kt3, B × P; 12 Q × Pch !! with mate to follow (a game between two Russian players). If Black plays 11... P-KR4; 12 Q-Kt3, B × P; 13 Q × Pch again with mate consequences.

(o) Bogoljubow-Opocensky, Pistyany, 1922.

Notes continued from p. 260

(f) 17 P-K5, P-Q3. If 16... P-K4, instead of 16... Kt-B4; then 17 Kt-Q3, P-B3?; 18 Kt-K1, Q-R5; 19 P-Kt3, Q-R4; 20 Kt-Kt2 ±. Lillenthal-Keres, Leningrad-Moscow, 1941.

(g) Better than 11 Kt-K1, B × B (11... Kt-B3?; 12 P-Q5, P × P; 13 P × P, Kt-Kt5; 14 Q-Q2, P-QR4; 15 P-QR3, Kt-R3; 16 P-QKt4+. Lillenthal-Botvinnik, Moscow, 1940. Playable for Black is 11... Q-B1 and if 12 P-K4, Kt-Q2; 13 P-Q5?, BP × P; 14 Q × P, Kt-B4; 15 Q-K2, B-KB3; 16 B-R3, R-K1; 17 B-K3, Q-Q1; 18 B × Kt, P × P !! ±. Euwe-Keres, 9th match game, 1939; 12 Kt × B, P-B3; 13 P-K4, Kt-R3; 14 P × P, P × P; 15 Q-R4, Q-B1; 16 R-K1 with only a minimal advantage for White. Alekhine-Keres, Buenos Aires, 1939.

(h) Rossetto-Stahlberg, Mar del Plata, 1943.

(i) A feasible alternative is 10 P-Kt3,

P-B4?; 11 B-Kt2, B-KB3; 12 Q-Q2, Kt-R3; 13 P × P, Kt × P; 14 B × B ±. Vidmar-Colle, San Remo, 1930. If 10 R-Q1, B-K5 transposes to col. 81. A trap after 10 R-Q1, P-Q3; 11 P-Q5, P-K4 is 12 P-B5 /!, QP × P? (12... KtP × P; 13 Kt × P, Kt-Q2 / is necessary); 13 Kt × P, B-Q3; 14 P-Kt3, Kt-Q2; 15 Kt-B4 ±. Steiner-Goldstein, 3rd match game, 1944.

(j) Alekhine-Botvinnik, AVRO tournament, 1938. Black's defense was adequate.

(k) An interesting and unexplored new try is 8 B-Q2, e.g., 8... P-KB4; 9 P-Q5 /, B-KB3; 10 Q-B2, Q-K1?; 11 Kt × Kt, P × Kt; 12 Kt-Kt5 /, P × P; 13 P × P, B × Kt; 14 B × B, B × P; 15 Q × P ±. Pelikan-Stahlberg, Mar del Plata, 1944. Cf. also col. 86, note (a).

(l) Better 11... Kt-B3.

(m) Rubinstein-Saemisch, Marienbad, 1925.

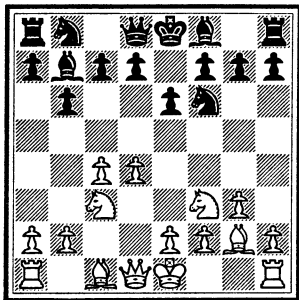
## QUEEN'S INDIAN DEFENSE

1 P—Q4, Kt—KB3; 2 P—QB4, P—K3; 3 Kt—KB3, P—QKt3; 4 P—KKt3, B—Kt2; 5 B—Kt2\*

86	87	88	89	90
5 (B—K2).....			B—Kt5ch	
6 (O—O) (a) (O—O)			B—Q2 B × Bch	
7 (Kt—B3)..... P—Q4	Q—B2..... P—B4 (g)	P—Kt3 (j) P—Q4 (k)	Q × B..... O—O (m)	QKt × B P—B4 (r)
8 Kt—K5 (b) P—B3 (c)	P × P P × P / (h)	Kt—K5 P—B4	Kt—B3 P—Q3 (n)	P × P P × P
9 P—K4 / (d) P × BP	Kt—B3 Kt—B3	P × BP KtP × P	Q—B2 Q—K2 (o)	O—O Q—B2
10 Kt × P(B4) B—R3	R—Q1 Q—Kt1	P × P P × P	O—O P—B4 (p)	Q—B2 O—O
11 P—Kt3 P—QKt4	P—Kt3 P—Q3	Kt—QB3 QKt—Q2	QR—Q1 P × P	QR—Q1 P—KR3
12 Kt—K5 P—Kt5	B—Kt2 P—KR3	Kt—Q3 Kt—Kt3	Kt × P B × B	P—QR3 Kt—B3
13 Kt—K2 KKt—Q2 (e)	P—K3 R—Q1	P—QR4 P—QR4	K × B R—B1	KR—K1 QR—Kt1 = (s)
14 Kt—QB4 ± (f)	QR—B1 P—R3 = (i)	B—QR3 R—B1 = (l)	Q—Q3 ± (q)	

## \* DIAGRAM 113

cols. 86—96



[After 5 B—Kt2]

(a) 6 Kt—B3, Kt—K5 usually transposes back to columns 81—85. An exception is 7 B—Q2, P—Q3 (Better 7...Kt × B and 8...P—Q4); 8 O—O, Kt—Q2; 9 Q—B2,

Kt × B; 10 Q × Kt, P—KB4?; 11 Q—K3 /, K—B2; 12 QR—Q1 ±. Opocensky—Alexander, Buenos Aires, 1939.

(b) Best. If instead 8 P × P, P × P Black can transpose to the equalizing line of col. 95.

(c) Or: (1) 8...Kt—K5; 9 P × P, P × P; 10 Kt × Kt, P × Kt; 11 Q—B2, P—KB4; 12 B—K3, Kt—R3; 13 QR—B1, Q—Q4; 14 Kt—B6+. Euwe—Capablanca, AVRO tournament, 1938. (2) 8...QKt—Q2; 9 P × P, and now 9...Kt × P; 10 QKt × Kt, P × Kt; 11 Kt—Q3 ± is best for Black, for if 9...P × P; 10 Q—R4, Kt—Kt1 ± (Clausen—Alekhine, 1935), while if 9...Kt × Kt?; 10 P—Q6 /, B × B; 11 P × B, Q × KP; 12 P × Kt, B × R; 13 P × Kt, Q × P; 14 Q × B+ (Bogoljubow—Nimzovitch, Carlsbad, 1923).

Notes continued on p. 263

## Notes continued from p. 262

(d) Inferior alternatives are: (1) 9 P × P, BP × P; 10 B—B4, P—QR3; 11 R—B1, P—QKt4; 12 Q—Kt3, Kt—B3; 13 Kt × Kt, B × Kt; 14 P—KR3, Q—Q2; 15 K—R2, Kt—R4; 16 B—Q2, P—B4 ±. Saemisch—Nimzovitch, Copenhagen, 1923 (the immortal *Zugzwang* game). (2) 9 P—Kt3, QKt—Q2; 10 B—Kt2, R—B1; 11 P—K4, Kt × Kt; 12 P × Kt, Kt × P; 13 Kt × Kt, P × Kt; 14 B × P, Q × Q; 15 KR × Q, R—B2 =. Vajda—Gruenfeld, Kecskemet, 1927.

(e) 13...B × Kt; 14 Q × B, Q × P; 15 B—Kt2 gives White a strong attack.

(f) Knoch—Romanovsky, Leningrad, 1934.

(g) Another satisfactory line is 7...Kt—B3; 8 Kt—B3, P—Q4 /; 9 P × P, Kt—QKt5; 10 Q—Kt3, QKt × QP; 11 R—Q1, Q—B1; 12 B—Kt5, Kt × Kt; 13 Q × Kt, P—B4 =. Saemisch—Gruenfeld, Berlin, 1928. Less satisfactory is 7...B—K5; 8 Q—Kt3, Kt—B3; 9 B—K3, P—Q4; 10 QKt—Q2, P × P; 11 Q × BP, B—Q4; 12 Q—B3, P—KR3; 13 KR—Q1, R—B1; 14 B—B4, Q—K1; 15 P—QR3, Kt—QR4 (Capablanca—Alekhine, AVRO tournament, 1938) and now 16 Q—Q3 ±.

(h) Inferior is 8...B × P; 9 Kt—B3, P—Q4 (or 9...B—K2; 10 P—K4, P—Q3; 11 P—Kt3, P—QR3; 12 B—Kt2, Q—B2; 13 QR—B1 ±. Vidmar—Knoch, San Remo, 1930); 10 P × P, P × P; 11 R—Q1, QKt—Q2; 12 Q—B5+. Najdorf—Pilnik, La Plata, 1944.

(i) Gruenfeld—Eliskases, Vienna, 1935.

(j) Another inadequate try is 7 R—K1, P—Q4; 8 Kt—B3, QKt—Q2; 9 Kt—K5, Kt—K5; 10 P × P, Kt × QKt; 11 P × Kt, Kt × Kt; 12 P—Q6 /, B × B; 13 P × B, Q × KP; 14 K × B, Kt—B3 =. Keres—Botvinnik, AVRO tournament, 1938.

(k) Also good is 7...P—B4; 8 B—Kt2 (if 8 P—Q5, P × P; 9 Kt—R4, Kt—K5 / ♣), P × P; 9 Kt × P, B × B; 10 K × B, P—Q4 / =. Knoch—Van Scheltinga, Amsterdam, 1936.

(l) Euwe—Alekhine, 23rd match game, 1937.

(m) A neat trap is 7...P—Q3; 8 Kt—B3, Kt—K5?; 9 Q—B4 /, Kt × Kt? (9...Kt—KB3 is essential); 10 Kt—Kt5 /, P—KB3; 11 B × B, P × Kt; 12 Q—K3, Kt—Q2; 13 Q × Pch, K—B1; 14 B × R, Q × B; 15 P—B3, resigns. Becker—Fuss, Vienna, 1933.

(n) The sacrificial line 8...Kt—K5; 9 Q—B2, Kt × Kt; 10 Kt—Kt5, Kt—K5; 11 B × Kt, B × B; 12 Q × B, Q × Kt; 13 Q × R, Kt—B3; 14 Q—Kt7, Kt × P (Euwe—Capablanca, 10th match game, 1932) is refuted by 15 O—O /, Kt × Pch; 16 K—Kt2, P—KB4; 17 P—B4+. Here 9...P—KB4 is met by 10 Kt—K5 /, P—Q4; 11 P × P, P × P; 12 O—O, Kt—Q2; 13 P—B4, QKt—B3; 14 QR—B1 ±. Euwe—Flohr, 2nd match game, 1932.

(o) Or 9...QKt—Q2; 10 O—O, Q—B1; 11 P—K4, P—QR3; 12 KR—K1, P—R3; 13 P—Kt3, Kt—R2; 14 QR—Q1, R—Kt1; 15 Kt—KR4, Q—Q1; 16 P—B4+. Reshevsky—Sir G. A. Thomas, Hastings, 1937—38.

(p) 10...QKt—Q2; 11 P—K4, QR—B1; 12 KR—K1, P—K4; 13 QR—Q1 ±. Reshevsky—Keres, Semmering—Baden, 1937.

(q) Euwe—Reshevsky, Nottingham, 1936.

(r) Less precise is 7...O—O; 8 Q—B2, P—B4; 9 P—K4, P—Q3; 10 O—O, Kt—B3; 11 P—Q5, Kt—Q5; 12 Kt × Kt, P × Kt; 13 P—KR3, P—K4; 14 P—B4 ±. Sacconi—Colle, Meran, 1926.

(s) Bogoljubow—Nimzovitch, Berlin, 1927.

## QUEEN'S INDIAN DEFENSE

1 P—Q4, Kt—KB3; 2 P—QB4, P—K3; 3 Kt—KB3, P—QKt3; 4 P—KKt3, B—Kt2; 5 B—Kt2

91	92	93	94	95
5 (B—Kt5ch).....		P—B4.....		P—Q4
6 (B—Q2).....	QKt—Q2 (d)	P—Q5.....	O—O	P × P (q)
Q—K2 (a)	O—O (e)	P × P	P × P (m)	P × P (r)
7 O—O	O—O	Kt—R4 (i)	Kt × P	O—O
B × B	P—Q4 (f)	Q—B2 (j)	B × B	B—K2
8 Q × B !	P—QR3	P × P	K × B	Kt—B3
O—O (b)	B—K2	P—Q3	P—Q4 (n)	O—O
9 R—K1	Q—B2 (g)	O—O	Q—R4ch	Q—B2
P—Q4	QKt—Q2	Q—Q2	QKt—Q2	QKt—Q2
10 Kt—K5	P—QKt4	Kt—QB3	Kt—Kt5	R—Q1
Kt—K5	P—B4	P—QR3	Kt—B3	R—K1
11 Q—B2	BP × P	P—K4	P × P	B—B4
P—KB3	KP × P	P—Kt3	P × P	P—B3
12 P × P !	QP × P	P—B4	B—B4	QR—B1
P × P	P × P	O—O—O (k)	R—B1	Kt—B1
13 Kt—Q3	P × P	B—K3	R—B1	B—R3
Kt—B3	Kt × P	B—Kt2	Kt—K5 (o)	Kt—Kt3
14 Q—R4 ± (c)	Kt—Kt3	K—R1 ± (l)	P—QKt4+ (p)	B—Kt5
	Kt(B3)—K5 = (h)			P—KR3 = (s)

(a) If 6... B—K2; 7 Kt—B3, Kt—K5; 8 O—O, O—O; 9 P—Q5, Kt × B (Euwe—Alekhine, 21st match game, 1937); 10 Kt × Kt, Q—B1; 11 P—K4, P—Q3; 12 P—B4, Kt—Q2; 13 B—R3 ±.

(b) Or 8... P—Q3; 9 Q—B2, B—K5; 10 Q—Kt3, B—Kt2; 11 Kt—B3, QKt—Q2; 12 Q—B2, R—QB1; 13 P—K4 ±. Fine—Thomas, Nottingham, 1936.

(c) Euwe—Spielmann, match, 1932.

(d) An unexplored try is 6 K—B1, B—K2; 7 Kt—B3, P—Q3 (Nagy—Zimmermann, London, 1927); 8 P—Q5.

(e) Weaker is 6... Kt—K5; 7 O—O, Kt × Kt; 8 B × Kt, B × B; 9 Q × B, P—Q3; 10 KR—Q1 ±. Réti—Capablanca, Kissingen, 1928. A speculative alternative is 6... P—B4; 7 O—O, P × P; 8 Q—R4, Kt—B3; 9 Kt—Kt3, B—B4; 10 B—Kt5, Q—B2; 11 B × Kt, P × B; 12 QR—Q1, P—K4; 13 Kt × B, P × Kt; 14 Kt—R4 and White has some attack for the Pawn. Opcensky—Capablanca, Buenos Aires, 1939.

(f) Inferior is 7... KB × Kt?; 8 Q × B, P—Q3; 9 P—Kt3, QKt—Q2; 10 B—Kt2, R—Kt1; 11 QR—Q1 ±. Alekhine—Alexander, Nottingham, 1936.

(g) Better than 9 P—QKt4, P—B4; 10 KtP × P, KtP × P; 11 QP × P, B × P; 12 B—Kt2, QKt—Q2; 13 Kt—K5, Kt × Kt; 14 B × Kt, Kt—Kt5 ±. Rubinstein—Alekhine, Semmering, 1926.

(h) Flohr—Alekhine, AVRO tournament, 1938.

(i) Also good is 7 Kt—Kt5, B—K2 (if 7... Kt—K5; 8 P—KR4, P—KR3; 9 Kt × Kt, P × Kt; 10 Kt—B3, P—B4 Black holds his Pawn but has a compromised position—Tartakower); 8 Kt—QB3, O—O; 9 O—O, Kt—R3; 10 Kt—R3, Q—B1; 11 P × P, P—Q3; 12 P—K4, P—B5; 13 P—B4, Kt—B4; 14 Kt—B2 ±. Buerger—Colle, Tunbridge Wells, 1927.

Notes continued on p. 268

## QUEEN'S INDIAN DEFENSE

1 P—Q4, Kt—KB3; 2 P—QB4, P—K3; 3 Kt—KB3, P—QKt3\*

96	97	98	99	100
4 (P—KKt3).....		Kt—B3		
(B—Kt2).....	B—R3 (c)	B—Kt2		
5 (B—Kt2)	Q—R4 !	B—Kt5.....	Q—B2 (k)	
Q—B1	B—K2	P—KR3.....	B—Kt5	B—Kt5 (l)
6 O—O	B—Kt2	B—R4	Q—B2	P—QR3
P—B4	O—O	B—K2	P—KR3	B × Ktch
7 P—Kt3 (a)	O—O	Q—B2 (e)	B—R4	Q × B
P × P	B—Kt2	P—Q4	O—O (h)	Kt—K5 (m)
8 B—Kt2	B—B4	P—K3	P—K3	Q—B2
B—K2	P—B4	O—O	P—Q3	O—O
9 Kt × P	Kt—B3	R—Q1	B—Q3	P—KKt3
B × B	P × P	QKt—Q2	QKt—Q2	P—KB4
10 K × B	Kt × P	P × P	O—O (i)	B—Kt2
P—Q4	B × B	Kt × P ! (f)	KB × Kt	Kt—KB3 !
11 P × P	K × B	B—Kt3	P × B	P—QKt4
Kt × P	Q—B1	Kt(Q2)—B3	P—KKt4	B—K5
12 P—K4	R—Q1	B—QB4	B—Kt3	Q—B3
Kt—KB3 (b)	Q—Kt2ch	Kt × Kt	Kt—R4	P—QR4
13 Kt—QB3	P—B3 ± (d)	Q × Kt	Kt—Q2 ± (j)	P—Kt5
Q—Kt2 =		Kt—K5 = (g)		P—Q3 = (n)

\* See p. 226, Diagram 95

(a) An interesting sacrificial line here is 7 P—Q5 !?, P × P; 8 P × P, e.g., 8... B × P; 9 Kt—B3, B—B3; 10 P—K4, B—K2; 11 P—K5, Kt—Kt1; 12 R—K1, Q—Kt2; 13 Q—Q3 with a winning attack. Fine—Landau, Ostend, 1937. 8... Kt × P; 9 P—K4, Kt—B2; 10 Kt—B3, B—K2 is a better defense.

(b) Gruenfeld—Keres, Zandvoort, 1936.

(c) Unsatisfactory is 4... B—Kt5ch; 5 B—K2, B × Bch; 6 Q × B, B—R3; 7 P—Kt3, P—Q4; 8 B—Kt2, QKt—Q2; 9 Kt—K5 ±, for if 9... P—B4?; 10 Kt—B6 !, Q—B2; 11 P × QP, Kt × P; 12 B × Kt, B—Kt2; 13 Kt—B3, B × Kt; 14 Kt—Kt5 !+. Kramer—Szabo, Baarn, 1939.

(d) Euwe—Alekhine, AVRO tournament, 1938.

(e) Or 7 P—K3, Kt—K5; 8 B × B, Q × B; 9 Q—B2, Kt × Kt; 10 Q × Kt, O—O;

11 B—K2, P—Q3; 12 O—O, Kt—Q2; 13 KR—Q1, Kt—B3; 14 Kt—Q2, P—B4; 15 P × P, QP × P =. Flohr—Keres, AVRO tournament, 1938.

(f) 10... P × P; 11 B—Q3 transposes to a line similar to p. 169, col. 125.

(g) Alekhine—Gilg, Kecskemet, 1927.

(h) If instead 7... Kt—B3; 8 P—QR3 ! (not 8 P—K3, O—O; 9 B—Q3, B—K2 !; 10 P—QR3, Kt—KR4 =), B × Ktch; 9 Q × B, P—KKt4; 10 B—Kt3, Kt—K5; 11 Q—B2, P—B4; 12 P—K3 ±.

(i) Better than 10 O—O—O, P—B4; 11 P—Q5?, B × Kt; 12 P × B, P × P; 13 P × P, Q—B2; 14 P—K4, P—B5; 15 B—B1, KR—K1 =. Flohr—Eliskases, Moscow, 1936.

(j) 13... P—KB4; 14 P—B4, QKt—B3 (Flohr—Botvinnik, Moscow, 1936) and now 15 P—Q5 ! is hard for Black to meet.

Notes continued on p. 268

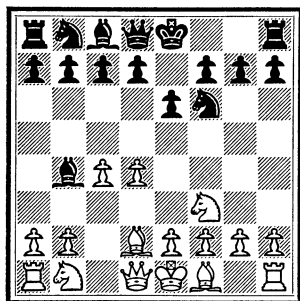
1 P-Q4, Kt-KB3; 2 P-QB4, P-K3; 3 Kt-KB3

## BOGOLJUBOW VARIATION

101	102	103	104	105
3 (P-QKt3).....	B-Kt5ch			
4 P-K3 (a)	B-Q2 (f) *			
B-Kt5ch (b)	B × Bch.....			Q-K2 (p)
5 QKt-Q2 (c)	QKt × B.....	Q × B	P-KKt3 (q)	
B-Kt2	P-Q3.....	P-Q4	P-Q4 (k)	Kt-B3 (r)
6 B-Q3	P-KKt3 (g)	P-K3 (i)	P-K3	B-Kt2
Kt-K5	O-O	O-O	O-O (l)	B × Bch
7 O-O	B-Kt2	Q-B2	Kt-B3	QKt × B (s)
P-KB4	Kt-B3	QKt-Q2	QKt-Q2	P-Q3
8 Q-B2	O-O	B-Q3	B-Q3	O-O
B × Kt	P-K4	P-KR3	P-B3	O-O
9 Kt × B	P-Q5	O-O	O-O	P-K4
Q-R5	Kt-K2	P-B4	P × P	P-K4
10 Kt-B3 (d)	P-K4	P × QP	B × P	P-Q5
Q-K2	Kt-Q2	Kt × P	P-K4!	Kt-Kt1
11 Q-K2	Kt-R4	P × P	B-Kt3 (m)	P-QKt4 (t)
O-O	P-QR4	Kt-Kt5	P × P (n)	B-Kt5
12 Kt-Q2	Q-B2	B-R7ch!	Q × P	Q-B2
P-Q3	Kt-QB4	K-R1	Q-Kt3 (o)	P-B3
13 P-QKt3 ± (e)	Kt-Kt3	Q-B4+ (j)	Q × Q	Kt-R4 ± (u)
	Kt × Kt = (h)		P × Q =	

## \* DIAGRAM 114

cols. 102-105



[After 4 B-Q2]

(a) On 4 B-Kt5, B-Kt2; 5 Kt-B3 transposes to cols. 98-99. A trap to be avoided is 5 P-K3, P-KR3; 6 B-R4, B-Kt5ch; 7 QKt-Q2? (7 KKt-Q2 or 7 Kt-B3), P-KKt4!; 8 B-Kt3, P-Kt5 followed by ... Kt-K5 and Black wins a piece. Tarrasch-Bogoljubow, Gothenburg, 1920.

(b) Or 4... B-Kt2; 5 B-Q3, P-B4; 6 O-O, B-K2; 7 QKt-Q2, O-O; 8 P-QKt3, P-Q3; 9 B-Kt2 ±. Flohr-Frydman, Ujpest, 1934.

(c) Weaker is 5 B-Q2, B × Bch; 6 QKt × B, P-Q3; 7 B-Q3, B-Kt2; 8 O-O, QKt-Q2; 9 Q-B2, Q-K2; 10 KR-Q1, O-O =. Menchik-Alekhine, London, 1932.

(d) Not 10 P-KKt3, Kt-Kt4!

(e) Flohr-Rabinovitch, Moscow, 1935.

Notes continued on p. 268

## QUEEN'S INDIAN DEFENSE

1 P-Q4, Kt-KB3

106	107	108	109	110
2 (P-QB4).....		Kt-KB3		
P-QKt3		P-QKt3		
3 P-B3.....	Kt-QB3 (b)	P-KKt3.....	B-B4.....	B-Kt5 (l)
P-Q4 (a)	B-Kt2	B-Kt2	B-Kt2	Kt-K5 (m)
4 P × P	P-B3! (c)	B-Kt2 (f)	P-K3	B-R4
Kt × P	P-Q4	P-B4	Kt-R4 (j)	B-Kt2
5 P-K4	P × P	O-O (g)	B-Q3	P-K3
Kt-KB3	Kt × P	P × P	Kt × B	P-KR3
6 Kt-B3	Kt × Kt (d)	Kt × P	P × Kt	QKt-Q2
P-K3	Q × Kt	B × B	P-Kt3	P-KKt4
7 B-K3	P-K4	K × B	QKt-Q2	B-Kt3
B-K2	Q-Q2	P-Kt3	B-Kt2	Kt × B
8 B-Q3	B-QB4	P-QB4 (h)	P-B5	RP × Kt
O-O	P-K3	B-Kt2	P-B4	P-K3
9 Q-B2	Kt-K2	Kt-QB3	P × BP	P-B3
P-KR3	B-Kt5ch	Q-B1	QKtP × P	P-Q3
10 KKt-K2	B-Q2	P-Kt3	P × P	Q-R4ch
B-Kt2	B × Bch	Q-Kt2ch	RP × P	P-B3
11 O-O	Q × B (e)	P-B3	P-B3	Kt-K4
QKt-Q2	O-O	P-Q4	Q-Kt3	P-Kt5
12 KR-Q1 ±	O-O ±	P × P	Q-K2 (k)	Kt-R4
		Kt × P = (i)	P-K3 ±	Kt-Q2 = (n)

(a) If 3... B-Kt2; 4 P-K4, P-K4? (4... P-Q3 is necessary, as in some variations of the King's Indian Defense, but White retains the superior position—see p. 278, col. 136); 5 P × P, Kt × P; 6 P × Kt, Q-R5ch; 7 K-Q2, Q-B5ch; 8 K-B2, B × Pch; 9 B-Q3, B × Bch; 10 Q × B, Q-B7ch; 11 Kt-Q2++. Fine-Petrov, Semmering-Baden, 1937.

(b) A little-remembered possibility is 3 P-Q5, e.g., 3... B-Kt2; 4 P-KKt3, P-K4, 5 B-Kt2, B-Kt5ch; 6 Kt-Q2, O-O; 7 P-K4, Kt-R3; 8 P-QR3, B-Q3; 9 P-QKt4, P-B3; 10 Kt-K2 ±. Rubinstein-Gruenfeld, Breslau, 1925.

(c) Slightly better than 4 Q-B2, P-Q4!; 5 P × P, Kt × P; 6 P-K4, Kt × Kt; 7 P × Kt, P-K3! (not 7... P-K4; 8 Kt-B3!, P × P; 9 B-Kt5ch, P-B3; 10 B-QB4, P-QKt4; 11 B-K2, P × P; 12 Q × P, Kt-Q2; 13 O-O, Q-K2

14 B-Kt2, Kt-B4; 15 Q-B2! ±. Spielmann-Chekhov, Moscow, 1935); 8 Kt-B3, B-K2; 9 B-Q3, Kt-Q2; 10 O-O, P-QB4; 11 B-KB4, O-O; 12 QR-Q1, P × P; 13 P × P, R-B1 ±. Moritz-Gruenfeld, Breslau, 1925. If here 9 B-Kt5ch, P-B3; 10 B-Q3, Kt-Q2 and ... P-QB4 transpose back to the main line; but not 10... O-O?; 11 P-K5!, P-KR3; 12 P-KR4, P-QB4; 13 R-R3 ±, Alekhine-Koenig, Vienna, 1922, for if 13... K-R1?; 14 B × P!

(d) Or 6 P-K4, Kt × Kt, 7 P × Kt, P-K3; 8 Q-R4ch, P-B3; 9 B-KB4, Kt-Q2; 10 Kt-R3, B-K2; 11 B-K2, O-O; 12 O-O, K-R1 =. Van Doesburgh-Bogoljubow, Zandvoort, 1936.

(e) Euwe-Tartakower, Stockholm, 1937.

Notes continued on p. 269

## Notes continued from p. 264

- (j) There is no really good alternative. The choices are: (1) 7...P-Kt3; 8 Kt-QB3, B-Kt2; 9 O-O, O-O; 10 B-Kt5, Kt-B3; 11 Kt × QP, P-KR3; 12 Kt × Ktch, B × Kt; 13 B × B ±. Saemisch-Réti, Homburg, 1927. (2) 7...Kt-R3; 8 Kt-QB3, Kt-B2; 9 P × P, P-Q3; 10 P-K4, B-K2; 11 Kt-B5, O-O; 12 O-O, KKt-K1; 13 P-B4 ±. Yudovitch-Alatortsev, Moscow, 1937.
- (k) Castling K-side leaves Black with virtually no counterplay at all.
- (l) Vidmar-Alexander, Nottingham, 1936.
- (m) 6...B-K2; 7 P-Q5, P × P; 8 Kt-R4 transposes into col. 93.
- (n) Or 8...B-K2; 9 Kt-QB3, O-O; 10 P-K4, Q-B1; 11 P-Kt3, Q-Kt2; 12 P-B3 ±. Capablanca-Vidmar, New

York, 1927.

- (o) If 13...B-B4; 14 P-QKt4!, B × KtP; 15 R × Kt++. Capablanca-Alekhine, 3rd match game, 1927.
- (p) 14...B-K2; 15 P-B3, Kt-Q3; 16 Kt(Kt1)-R3.
- (q) If now 6 Kt-K5, QKt-Q2; 7 Q-R4, P-B4!; 8 P × QP, Kt × P; 9 P × P, B × P; 10 O-O, P-QR3 =. Alekhine-Sultan Khan, Prague, 1931.
- (r) Inferior is 6...Kt × P; 7 O-O, Kt-Q2; 8 P-K4, KKt-B3; 9 P-K5, Kt-Q4; 10 Kt-Kt5!, B-K2; 11 Q-R5, P-Kt3; 12 Q-R6, B-KB1; 13 Q-R3 ±. Bogoljubow-Alexander, Nottingham, 1936.
- (s) Samychofsky-Botvinnik, Moscow, 1931.

## Notes continued from p. 265

- (k) If 5 P-QR3, B-K2; 6 B-B4, O-O; 7 Q-B2, P-B4 equalizes, but not 7...Kt-R4?; 8 B-Q2, P-KB4; 9 P-K3, P-Q3; 10 B-Q3, P-Kt3; 11 P-K4, Kt-Q2; 12 O-O, QKt-B3; 13 P × P ±. Alekhine-Steiner, Warsaw, 1935.
- (l) Best. If (1) 5...P-B4; 6 P-K4, P × P; 7 Kt × P, P-Q3; 8 B-K2, B-K2; 9 B-K3, O-O; 10 O-O, QKt-Q2; 11 KR-Q1, P-QR3; 12 P-B3, R-B1; 13 Q-Q2, Kt-K4; 14 P-QKt3 ±. Mon-

- ticelli-Réti, Budapest, 1926. (2) 5...P-Q3; 6 P-K4, QKt-Q2; 7 P-KR3, P-K4; 8 B-K3, P × P; 9 B × P, Q-K2; 10 O-O, O-O, O-O; 11 Kt-Q5+. Tartakower-Flohr, London, 1932.
- (m) Or 7...P-Q3; 8 B-Kt5, QKt-Q2; 9 P-K3, Kt-K5!; 10 B × Q, Kt × Q; 11 B-R4, Kt-K5; 12 Kt-Q2, Kt × Kt ±. Bogoljubow-Nimzovitch, Breslau, 1925.
- (n) Lissitsin-Kan, Moscow, 1935.

## Notes continued from p. 266

- (f) 4 QKt-Q2 is too tame, e.g., 4...O-O; 5 P-QR3, B × Ktch; 6 Q × B, P-QKt3; 7 Q-B2, B-Kt2; 8 B-Kt5, P-Q3; 9 P-K3, B-K5; 10 Q-B3, QKt-Q2; 11 B-K2, Q-K2; 12 O-O, P-KR3; 13 B-R4, P-KKt4 =. Gruenfeld-List, Berlin, 1926.
- (g) Alternatives are: (1) 6 P-K4, O-O; 7 B-Q3 (7 Q-B2?, Kt-B3; 8 R-Q1, Q-K2; 9 B-K2, P-K4 ≠. Pokorny-Lasker, Maehrisch-Ostrau, 1923), Q-K2 (more precise 7...Kt-B3); 8 P-QR3? (better 8 P-K5), P-K4; 9 P-Q5, Kt-R4; 10 P-KKt3, P-KKt3; 11 O-O, Kt-Kt2; 12 R-K1, P-KB4 =. Nimzovitch-Tarrasch, Semmering, 1926. (2) 6 P-K3, O-O; 7 Q-B2, Kt-B3; 8 P-QR3, P-K4; 9 P-Q5, Kt-K2; 10 B

- Q3, B-Kt5; 11 P-R3, B × Kt; 12 Kt × B, R-K1 =. Marshall-Bogoljubow, London, 1927.
- (h) Gruenfeld-Zimmermann, Zurich, 1929.
- (i) Also good is 6 P-KKt3, O-O; 7 B-Kt2, QKt-Q2; 8 O-O, Q-K2; 9 Q-B2, P-QKt3; 10 P × P, Kt × P; 11 P-K4 ±. Capablanca-Marshall, New York, 1927. Compare the Catalan System, p. 317, col. 29.
- (j) Vidmar-Marshall, New York, 1927.
- (k) Now best (cf. col. 102-103). If instead 5...P-QKt3 White should play 6 P-KKt3, transposing into cols. 89-91. On 6 P-KKt3, B-R3 (A. Steiner's Variation); 7 Kt-R3 is strong: 7...O-O; 8

## Additional notes continued from p. 266

- B-Kt2, P-Q4; 9 O-O, Kt-K5; 10 Q-B2, Kt-Q3; 11 P × P, P × P; 12 Kt-K5, B-Kt2; 13 QR-B1 ±. Gruenfeld-A. Steiner, Ujpest, 1934. Inferior (after 5...P-QKt3) is the attempt to force P-K4 by 6 Kt-B3, B-Kt2; 7 Q-B2, B × Kt; 8 KtP × B, Kt-B3; 9 P-K3, Q-K2 ≠. Saemisch-Spielmann, Moscow, 1925.
- (l) The Stonewall formation is weak here: 6...P-B3; 7 Kt-B3, Kt-K5; 8 Q-B2, P-KB4; 9 P-KKt4+. Freymann-Bogatyrchuk, Moscow, 1927.
- (m) If 11 P × P, Kt × P; 12 Q × Q, Kt × Ktch; 13 P × Kt, R × Q ≠.
- (n) Better than 11...Q-K2; 12 P-K4, P × P; 13 Kt × P, Kt-B4; 14 B-B2, R-Q1; 15 QR-Q1 ±. Alekhine-Bogoljubow, Budapest, 1921.
- (o) Johner-Gruenfeld, Pistyan, 1922.
- (p) On 4...B-K2; 5 Kt-B3, P-Q4; 6 Q-B2, QKt-Q2; 7 P-K4, P × KP; 8 Kt × P, P-B3; 9 O-O, P-QKt3; 10 B-Q3 ± White has control of more space but it may evaporate. Lilienthal-Pinkus, match U.S.S.R.—U. S. A., 1945.
- (q) By far the best. If, e.g., 5 Kt-B3, O-

- O; 6 P-K3, P-Q3; 7 B-K2, P-QKt3; 8 O-O, B-Kt2; 9 Q-B2, QKt-Q2; 10 QR-Q1, KB × Kt; 11 B × B, Kt-K5; 12 B-K1, P-KB4; 13 Q-Kt3, P-B4 =. Vidmar-Nimzovitch, New York, 1927.
- (r) Or 5...O-O; 6 B-Kt2, B × Bch; 7 Q × B, P-Q3 (if 7...Kt-K5; 8 Q-B2, Q-Kt5ch; 9 QKt-Q2 ±); 8 Kt-B3, Kt-B3; 9 O-O, P-K4; 10 Kt-Q5!, Q-Q1; 11 QR-Q1, B-Kt5; 12 P × P, P × P; 13 Q-K3 ±. Euwe-Henneberger, Berne, 1932. See also Catalan System, p. 317, col. 30. Another unsatisfactory alternative for Black is 5...B × Bch; 6 Q × B, P-Q3; 7 B-Kt2, O-O; 8 Kt-B3, P-B3; 9 O-O, R-K1; 10 P-K4, P-K4; 11 P-KR3, Kt-R3; 12 KR-K1, B-Q2; 13 P-KKt4 ±. Lilienthal-Smyslov, Moscow, 1940.
- (s) Not now 7 Q × B because of 7...Kt-K5.
- (t) Also good is 11 Kt-K1, P-QR4; 12 Kt-Q3 ±. Euwe-Flohr, Bournemouth, 1939.
- (u) Euwe-Flohr, AVRO tournament, 1938.

## Notes continued from p. 267

- (f) Stronger is 4 P-B4, transposing to the more usual lines after 4...P-K3. If in reply to 4 P-B4, P-K4; 5 P × P, Kt-Kt5; 6 B-Kt2, Kt × KP; 7 QKt-Q2, Kt-Kt3; 8 O-O ±. Rabinovitch-Tolush, Moscow, 1939.
- (g) A novel continuation is 5 P-B4!, P × P; 6 Q × P, P-Kt3; 7 O-O, B-Kt2; 8 Kt-B3, Kt-B3; 9 Q-Q1, Kt-QR4; 10 Kt-Q2, B × B; 11 K × B (Berg-Alekhine, Kemerl, 1937) and now 11...P-Q4 =.
- (h) Or 8 P-Kt3, B-Kt2; 9 B-Kt2, O-O; 10 P-QB4, P-Q4; 11 P × P, Kt × P; 12 P-K4, Kt-Kt5 =. Winter-Capablanca, Nottingham, 1936.
- (i) Capablanca-Botvinnik, Nottingham, 1936.
- (j) Also good is 4...P-K3; 5 QKt-Q2, Kt-R4; 6 B-Kt3, P-Q3; 7 B-Q3, Kt-Q2; 8 Q-K2, B-K2; 9 P-B3, P-QB4;

- 10 Kt-K4, Kt × B; 11 RP × Kt, P-KR3 =. Romih-Capablanca, Paris, 1938.
- (k) Colle-Kostich, Meran, 1926.
- (l) If 3 Kt-B3, B-Kt2; 4 B-Kt5, P-Q4; 5 Kt-K5, P-K3; 6 P-K4, P × P; 7 B-Kt5ch, P-B3; 8 B-QB4, QKt-Q2 =. Euwe-Kmoch, Amsterdam, 1936.
- (m) Or 3...B-Kt2; 4 QKt-Q2, P-B4 (equally good is 4...P-K3; 5 P-K4, P-KR3; 6 B × Kt, Q × B; 7 B-Q3, P-Q3; 8 Q-K2, Q-Q1; 9 O-O, B-K2 =. Marshall-Alekhine, New York, 1927); 5 P-B3, Kt-B3; 6 P-K3, P-K3; 7 B-Q3, B-K2; 8 Q-K2, Kt-Q4; 9 B × B, Q × B; 10 O-O, O-O; 11 B-R6, B × B; 12 Q × B, Kt-B2; 13 Q-K2, P-Q4; 14 P-K4, P × QP =. Mars! a l—Capablanca, Kissingen, 1928.
- (n) Bogoljubow-Alekhine, 13th match game, 1934.

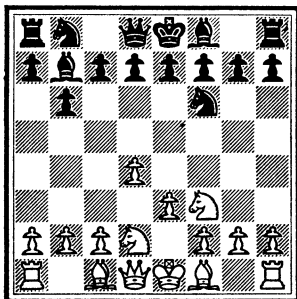
## QUEEN'S INDIAN DEFENSE

1 P-Q4, Kt-KB3; 2 Kt-KB3, P-QK13; 3 P-K3 (a), B-K12;  
4 QKt-Q2 \*

III	II2	II3	II4	II5
4 P-K3.....				P-Kt3
5 B-Q3				B-Q3
P-B4.....			P-Q4	P-B4
6 O-O (b)			Kt-K5 (i)	P-B3
Kt-B3			B-Q3	B-Kt2
7 P-B3 (c)		P-B4	P-KB4	P-K4
B-K2.....	Q-B2	B-K2	QKt-Q2 (j)	P-Q3
8 P-K4 (d)	Q-K2	P-QKt3	Q-B3	O-O
P × P	B-K2	P × P	P-B4	O-O
9 Kt × P	P-K4	P × P	P-B3	Q-K2
O-O	P × P	P-Q4	Q-B2	P × P
10 Q-K2	Kt × P	B-Kt2	P-KKt4	P × P
Kt-K4	Kt-K4 (f)	Kt-QKt5	P × P	Kt-B3
11 B-B2	B-B2	B-Kt1	KP × P	P-QR3
Q-B1	Q-B1	O-O	B × Kt?	Kt-Q2
12 P-KB4	P-QR3	R-K1	BP × B	Kt-Kt3
B-R3	Kt-B3	R-B1	QKt × P	P-QR4
13 Q-Q1	Kt(Q2)-B3	Kt-K5	P × Kt+ (k)	P-QR4 ± (l)
Kt-B3 ± (e)	Kt × Kt = (g)	Kt-B3 = (h)		

## \* DIAGRAM 115

cols. 111-115



[After 4 QKt-Q2]

(a) In cols. 111-112 and 115 White chooses the Colle System formation. These positions can also come out of the Colle System and allied lines, p. 235, cols. 6-9.

(b) Or 6 P-B3, B-K2; 7 Q-K2, Kt-Q4; 8 P × P, P × P; 9 Q-Kt-B1, Q-B2; 10 Kt-Kt3, Kt-QB3; 11 B-Q2, P-KKt4; 12 P-B4, KKt-Kt5 ±. Ahues-Alekhine, San Remo, 1930.

(c) If 7 P-QKt3, B-K2; 8 P × P (better 8 B-Kt2 or 8 P-B4, transposing into col. 113 or col. 114), P × P; 9 B-Kt2, O-O; 10 P-B4, Q-B2; 11 P-KR3, Kt-K1; 12 P-R3, P-B4 ±. Rubinstein-Geiger, Rogaska-Slatina, 1920.

(d) Or 8 P × P, P × P; 9 P-K4, Q-B2; 10 Q-K2, P-Q3; 11 Kt-B4, O-O; 12 P-K5, P × P; 13 QKt × P, Kt × Kt =. Colle-Pirc, Frankfurt, 1930.

(e) Colle-Capablanca, Carlsbad, 1929.

(f) Not 10...P-Q4; 11 Kt × Kt, B × Kt?; 12 P-K5!, Kt-Q2; 13 Kt-B3, Kt-B4; 14 B-B2 ±. Spielmann-Alatortsev, Moscow, 1935.

Notes continued on p. 272

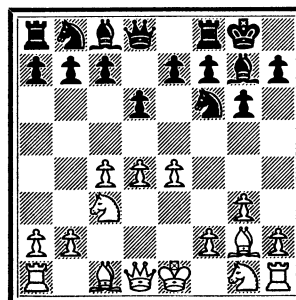
## KING'S INDIAN DEFENSE

1 P-Q4, Kt-KB3; 2 P-QB4, P-KK13; 3 Kt-QB3, B-K12; 4 P-K4,  
P-Q3; 5 P-KK13, O-O; 6 B-K12 \*

II6	II7	II8	II9	I20
6 P-K4.....		QKt-Q2 (f)		
7 P-Q5.....	KKt-K2	KKt-K2.....		Kt-B3
P-QR4	P × P! (c)	P-K4 (g)		P-K4
8 KKt-K2	Kt × P	P-Q5.....	O-O	O-O
Kt-R3	Kt-B3!	P-QR4	R-K1 (j)	R-K1 (l)
9 O-O	Kt-B2	P-QR3	P-Kt3	P-Q5 (m)
Kt-B4	B-K3	Kt-B4	P × P	Kt-B4
10 P-KR3	P-Kt3 (d)	O-O	Kt × P	Kt-K1
Kt-K1	Q-Q2	Kt-K1 (h)	Kt-B4	P-QR4
11 B-K3	O-O	B-K3	P-B3	P-Kt3
P-B4	B-R6	P-B4	Kt(B3)-Q2	B-Q2
12 P × P	P-B3	P × P	B-Kt2	P-KR3
B × P (a)	B × B	P × P	Kt-K4	R-KB1
13 P-B4	K × B	P-B4	Kt(B3)-K2	B-K3
P-Kt3	Kt-KR4	P-Kt3	P-QB3	Kt-K1
14 P × P	B-Kt2	P-R3 (i)	B-B3	R-B1
B × KP	P-B4	P-K5	Q-Kt3	P-Kt3
15 P-KKt4 ± (b)	P × P	Kt-Q4 ±	K-R1 ± (k)	Q-Q2 ± (n)
	Q × P = (e)			

## \* DIAGRAM 116

cols. 116-120



[After 6 B-Kt2]

(a) 12...P × P; 13 P-B4 transposes into col. 118.

(b) Reshevsky-Horowitz, 5th match game, 1941.

(c) 7...QKt-Q2 transposes to cols. 118-

119. If 7...Kt-B3; 8 P-Q5, Kt-K2 (the sacrifice 8...Kt-Q5!?, tried in Ragozin-Chistyakov, Moscow, 1939, is refuted by 9 O-O, P-B4; 10 P × P e.p., P × P; 11 Kt × Kt, P × Kt; 12 Q × P; 9 O-O, Kt-Q2; 10 B-K3, P-KB4; 11 P-B3, Kt-KB3; 12 Q-Q2, K-R1 (or 12...P × P; 13 Kt × P, B-B4; 14 B-Kt5, P-B4; 15 P × P e.p., P × P; 16 Kt × Ktch, B × Kt; 17 B × B, R × B; 18 P-B4 ±. Kotov-Bondarevsky, Moscow, 1945); 13 QR-B1, B-Q2; 14 P-KR3, P-Kt3; 15 K-R2, Kt(K2)-Kt1; 16 P-QKt4, P-QR4; 17 P-R3, Q-K2; 18 P-B5 ±. Winter-Fontein, match England-Holland, 1939.

(d) If 10 Kt-Q5, Kt-K4; 11 Kt(B2)-K3, P-B3; 12 Kt × Ktch, B × Kt; 13 Q-B2, Q-R4ch; 14 B-Q2, Q-R3; 15 R-QB1, P-QKt4 =. Kotov-Kan, Moscow, 1945.

(e) Botvinnik-Yudovitch, Moscow, 1939.

Notes continued on p. 272

## Notes continued from p. 270

(g) Spielmann—Eliskases, 9th match game, 1936.

(h) Tartakower and Turover—Alekhine and Cukiermann, Paris, 1931.

(i) Another good continuation is  $\delta$  O—O, B—K2 (or  $\delta$ ...P—B4; 7 P—B3, QKt—Q2; 8 Q—K2, B—Q3; 9 R—Q1, Kt—K5; 10 P × P!, Kt(K5) × P(B4); 11 B—B2, Q—B2; 12 P—B4, O—O; 13 P—QKt3! ±. Gygli—Ehrat, Zurich, 1943); 7 P—QKt3, O—O; 8 B—Kt2, P—B4; 9 Kt—K5, QKt—Q2; 10 P—KB4, Kt—K5; 11 P—B4, P—B3; 12 P × QP, P × Kt; 13 Kt × Kt, P(K3) × P; 14 Kt—Kt3 ±. Rossetto—

Luckis, Mar del Plata, 1945.

(j) Or 7...O—O; 8 Q—B3, KKt—Q2 (better  $\delta$ ...P—B4); 9 Q—R3, P—KB4; 10 QKt—B3, Kt—KB3; 11 B—Q2, B—R3?; 12 R—KB1, B × B; 13 P × B, Q—K1; 14 K—B2+. Sultan Khan—Mattison, Prague, 1931.

(k) 13...P—Q5; 14 Q—K2, B × R; 15 P × Kt, QP × P; 16 Kt—K4!. Tartakower—Winter, London, 1932.

(l) 13...Kt—Kt5; 14 B—QKt5, Kt—KB3; 15 P—Q5, P—K4; 16 P × P e.p., Kt × P; 17 Kt—Kt5!+. Koltanowski—Alekhine, Hastings, 1936—37.

## Notes continued from p. 271

(f) Inferior is  $\delta$ ...Kt—B3; 7 P—Q5, Kt—Kt1; 8 KKt—K2, P—K4; 9 P—KR3, QKt—Q2; 10 B—K3, Kt—B4; 11 P—R3, P—QR4; 12 O—O ±. Winter—Bogoljubow, Nottingham, 1936.

(g) H. D'O. Bernard suggests the following ingenious variation: 7...P—B4; 8 P—Q5, Kt—K4; 9 P—Kt3, B—Kt5; 10 O—O, Kt—B6ch; 11 K—R1, Kt × KP; 12 Kt × Kt, B × R; 13 B—R6, B—Kt2; 14 B × B, K × B; 15 P—KR3, B—B4; 16 B × Kt, B × P =. White can however reply 10 P—KR3!, B—B6; 11 O—O, Kt(B3)—Q2; 12 Q—B2 ±.

(h) Or 10...P—Kt3; 11 P—R3, Q—K2; 12 B—K3, Kt—R4; 13 P—QKt4, P × P; 14 P × P, R × R; 15 Q × R, Kt—R3; 16 P—Kt5, Kt—B4; 17 Q—R7 ±. Capablanca—Bogoljubow, Carlsbad, 1929.

(i) Winter—Tartakower, Warsaw, 1935.

(j) The alternative is  $\delta$ ...P—B3; 9 P—KR3, R—K1; 10 B—K3, Kt—B1; 11 Q—Q2, Q—B2; 12 QR—Q1, B—Q2; 13 K—R2, QR—Q1; 14 P—B4, B—B1; 15 BP × P, P × P; 16 P—Q5 ±. Petrow—Koblentz, Kemer—Riga, 1939.

(k) Landau—Flohr, Amsterdam, 1939.

(l) Or  $\delta$ ...Q—K2; 9 P—Kt3, P × P?; 10 Kt × P, Kt—B4; 11 R—K1, B—Q2; 12 B—Kt2, KR—K1; 13 Q—Q2, Q—K4; 14 P—QKt4, Kt—R3; 15 P—B4+. Keres—Becker, Zandvoort, 1936.

(m) Best. Whether or not this move should be played and the precise timing of it are the crucial points in this variation. Weaker alternatives are: (i) 9 B—K3 (Botvinnik's move), Kt—Kt5 (not now  $\delta$ ...P × P?; 10 Kt × P, Kt—K4; 11 P—Kt3, Kt(B3)—Kt5; 12 B—B4, Kt—QB3; 13 Kt(Q4)—K2, P—B4; 14 P—KR3 ±. Botvinnik—Lilienthal, Leningrad—Moscow, 1941); 10 B—Kt5, P—KB3; 11 B—B1, P—B3; 12 P—Kt3, Kt—R3; 13 B—Kt2, Q—B2; 14 R—B1, Kt—B1; 15 P—QKt4, Kt—B2; 16 P—Kt5, B—Kt5; 17 P—KR3 ±. Lilienthal—Boleslavsky, Leningrad—Moscow, 1941. (2) 9 P—Kt3, P × P; 10 Kt × P, Kt—B4; 11 R—K1, P—QR4; 12 B—Kt2, P—R5; 13 R—QB1, P—B3; 14 B—QR1, P × P; 15 P × P, Q—Kt3; 16 P—R3, Kt(B3)—Q2 ±. Pachmann—Bronstein, match Prague—Moscow, 1946.

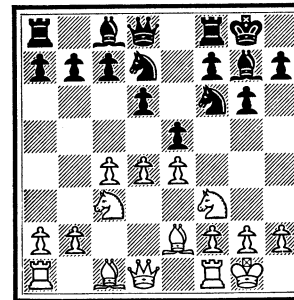
(n) Flohr—Lilienthal, Moscow, 1936.

## KING'S INDIAN DEFENSE

1 P—Q4, Kt—KB3; 2 P—QB4, P—KK13; 3 Kt—QB3, B—Kt2; 4 P—K4, P—Q3

	121	122	123	124	125
5 (P—KKt3)....	Kt—B3 (O—O)	O—O			
6 (B—Kt2) (QKt—Q2)	B—K2 QKt—Q2	B—K2 QKt—Q2			P—KR3 P—B4 (k)
7 (Kt—B3) (P—K4)	O—O P—K4 *	O—O P—K4 *			B—K3 (l) P × P
8 (O—O) P—B3	P—Q5 Kt—B4	P—Q5 Kt—B4	R—K1 (i) R—K1		Kt × P P—Kt3
9 P—Kt3 (a) P × P	Kt—Q2 P—QR4	Q—B2? (f) Kt—R4 (g)	B—B1 P × P		B—K2 (m) B—Kt2
10 Kt × P R—K1	Q—B2 B—Kt5 (d)	P—KKt3 Kt—B4	Kt × P Kt—B4		Q—B2 Kt—B3
11 B—Kt2 Kt—B4	Kt—Kt3 B × B	Kt—K1 B—R6	P—B3 Kt—K3		Kt × Kt B × Kt
12 Q—B2 P—QR4 (b)	Q × B Kt(B4)—Q2	Kt—Kt2 Kt—B3	B—K3 Kt—R4		O—O Q—B1
13 QR—Q1 Q—Kt3	B—K3 P—R3	R—K1? KKt—Q2	Kt(Q4)—K2 P—QR3		KR—Q1 Q—Kt2
14 P—QR3 ± (c)	Kt—B1 ± (e)	B—K3 P—B4 † (h)	Q—Q2 ± (j)		B—Q3 ± (n)

\* DIAGRAM 117  
cols. 122—124



[After 7...P—K4]

(a) The alternatives are: (i) 9 P—Q5, P × P; 10 BP × P, Kt—B4; 11 Q—B2, P—QR4; 12 Kt—Q2, P—Kt3; 13 Kt—Kt3,

B—QR3; 14 R—Q1, Kt(B4)—Q2; 15 P—QR4, R—B1; 16 B—R3, R—B2 =. Botvinnik—Bronstein, Moscow, 1945. (2) 9 P—KR3, P × P!; 10 Kt × P, Kt—Kt3; 11 P—Kt3, P—Q4!; 12 BP × P, P × P; 13 P × P, Kt(Kt3) × P; 14 Kt × Kt, Kt × Kt; 15 B—Kt2, Q—R4; 16 Q—B3, R—Q1; 17 KR—Q1, P—R4 =. Kotov—Bronstein, Moscow, 1945. (3) 9 B—K3, Kt—Kt5; 10 B—Kt5, P—B3; 11 B—B1, P—KB4; 12 B—Kt5, Q—K1; 13 QP × P, QP × P; 14 P × P, P × P; 15 R—K1, P—K5; 16 Kt—KR4 (Kotov—Bronstein, Moscow, 1944) and now 16...Kt—B4 =.

(b) Or 12...Kt—Kt5; 13 QR—Q1, Q—Kt4; 14 P—KR3, Kt—KR3; 15 P—QKt4, Kt—K3; 16 Kt—B3, Q—K2; 17 KR—K1, P—B3; 18 K—R2, Kt—B2; 19 Kt—KR4 ±. Botvinnik—Bondarevsky, Moscow, 1945.

Notes continued on p. 274



Notes continued from p. 273

(c) A slight improvement on 14 QKt—K2, P—R5; 15 Kt—B1, P × P; 16 P × P, R—Q1; 17 P—R3, B—K3; 18 K—R2, Kt—K1; 19 P—B4 ±. Rudakovsky—Tolush, Moscow, 1945.

(d) Other possibilities are: (1) 10...KKt—Q2; 11 Kt—Kt3, P—B4; 12 P × P, R × P; 13 B—Kt4, R—B1; 14 B—K3, P—Kt3; 15 Kt × Kt+. Bogoljubow—Euwe, 5th match game, 1929. (2) 10...P—R5; 11 R—Kt1, Kt—K1; 12 P—QKt4, P × P e.p.; 13 P × P, P—B4; 14 P—QKt4, Kt—R3; 15 P × P, P × P; 16 P—B4, P—K5; 17 Kt—R2 ±. Flohr—Tolush, Leningrad—Moscow, 1939.

(e) 14...Kt—R2; 15 Kt—Q3, P—KB4; 16 P × P, P × P; 17 P—B4, P—K5; 18 Kt—B2. Flohr—Bogoljubow, Bad Sliac, 1932.

(f) Correct is 9 Kt—Q2 as in col. 122.

(g) If 9...Kt—B4; 10 Kt—Q2 (as in col. 122) is again in order. If 9...Kt—B4; 10 B—K3 (or 10 P—QKt3?, Kt—R4; 11 R—K1, P—B4; 12 Kt—Q2, Kt—B3; 13 P—B3, Kt—R4 / ♣. Staehelin—Eliskases, Zurich, 1934), P—Kt3; 11 Kt—Q2, Kt—K1; 12 P—QR3, P—B4; 13 P—B3, P—B5; 14 B—B2, Kt—R3; 15 QR—Kt1, Q—Kt4? (15...P—KKt4 followed by a general advance on the K-side was called for); 16 KR—B1, P—R4; 17 K—R1, Q—R3; 18 P—QKt4 ±. Lilienthal—Kan, Moscow, 1935.

(h) 15 P—B3, P—B5. Michell—Flohr, Hastings, 1934—35.

(i) Inferior alternatives are: (1) 8 P × P, P × P; 9 Q—B2, P—B3; 10 R—Q1, Q—

K2; 11 P—KR3, Kt—K1; 12 R—K1, Kt—B2; 13 B—K3, Kt—K3; 14 QR—Q1, P—KB4 ♣. Fontein—Flohr, Amsterdam, 1939. (2) 8 P—QKt3, P × P; 9 Kt × P, Kt—B4; 10 P—B3, P—QR4 and now 11 B—K3 is best as in the column, but not 11 B—Kt2, P—R5; 12 P—QKt4, P—R6!; 13 B—B1, Kt—K3; 14 B—K3, Kt—R4 ♣. Soultanbeieff—Euwe, Maastricht, 1946. (3) 8 B—Kt5, P—KR3; 9 B—R4, R—K1; 10 P × P, P × P; 11 Q—B2, P—B3; 12 Kt—Q2, Kt—B4 ♣. Bogoljubow—Euwe, match, 1928. (4) 8 P—KR3, P × P; 9 Kt × P, R—K1; 10 B—B3, Kt—K4; 11 B—K2, Kt—B3; 12 Kt × Kt, P × Kt; 13 B—Q3, Kt—Q2 ♣ (Euwe).

(j) Antze—Carls, 1932.

(k) On 6...P—K4 White can continue as in cols. 120—124, or he can play 7 P—Q5, P—KR3; 8 B—K3, K—R2; 9 P—KKt4, Kt—Kt1; 10 Q—Q2, P—Kt3; 11 O—O, Kt—R3; 12 B—K2, Kt—B4; 13 P—KR4 ±. Gruenfeld—Euwe, Maehrisch—Ostrau, 1923.

(l) Weak is 7 P—Q5, P—K3; 8 P × P (or 8 B—Q3, P × P; 9 BP × P, P—QKt4 / ♣. Engels—Euwe, The Hague, 1929) P × P; 9 P—K5, P × P; 10 Q × Q, R × Q; 11 Kt × P, Kt—Q4 / ♣. Gruenfeld—Réti, Vienna, 1923.

(m) Better than 9 Q—Q2, B—Kt2; 10 P—B3, Kt—R4 (Koltanowski—Euwe, London, 1927) when Black has some counterplay.

(n) Gruenfeld—Saemisch, Baden-Baden, 1925.

## KING'S INDIAN DEFENSE

1 P—Q4, Kt—KB3; 2 P—QB4, P—KKt3\*

	126	127	128	129	130
3	(Kt—QB3)..... (B—Kt2)		P—KKt3 B—Kt2.....		P—B3
4	(P—K4) (P—Q3)		B—Kt2 O—O		P—Q5 B—Kt2 (s)
5	(Kt—B3)..... (O—O)	P—B4 (e) O—O	Kt—QB3 (n) P—Q3		B—Kt2 P—Q3
6	B—Q3 (a) B—Kt5 (b)	Kt—B3 (f) P—B4! (g)	Kt—B3 QKt—Q2....	Kt—B3	Kt—QB3 O—O
7	P—KR3 B × Kt	P—Q5 (h) P—Q3	O—O P—K4	P—Q5! (p) Kt—Kt1	P—K4 (t) P—K3! (u)
8	Q × B QKt—Q2 (c)	B—Q3 (i) P × P	P—Kt3 (o) R—K1	O—O P—QR4	KKt—K2 KP × P
9	B—K3 P—B4	BP × P? (j) Q—Kt3 (k)	Q—B2 Kt—Kt5	P—KR3 Kt—R3	KP × P (v) P × P
10	P—Q5 Kt—K4	Kt—Q2 (l) Kt—Kt5	P × P KKt × KP	B—K3 (q) P—Kt3	P × P QKt—Q2
11	Q—K2 Kt × Bch	Kt—B4 Q—Q1	Kt × Kt Kt × Kt	Kt—Q4 B—Q2	O—O Kt—B4
12	Q × Kt Kt—Q2 = (d)	B—K2 P—KR4+ (m)	B—Kt2 ±	P—R3 ± (r)	B—K3 P—QR4 =

\* See p. 228, Diagram 96

(a) Other unsatisfactory lines are: (1) 6 B—K3, QKt—Q2; 7 Kt—Q2, P—K4; 8 P—Q5, Kt—K1; 9 B—K2, P—KB4; 10 P—B3, P—B5 =. Sultan Khan—Flohr, Prague, 1931. (2) 6 P—KKt3, B—Kt5; 7 B—Kt2, Kt—B3; 8 O—O, P—K4; 9 P—Q5, Kt—Q5 =. (3) 6 B—B4, Kt—B3 (but not 6...P—KR3; 7 Q—Q2, K—R2; 8 P—KR3, QKt—Q2; 9 O—O—O, P—Kt3; 10 P—K5, Kt—KKt1; 11 B—Q3+). Bogoljubow—Tarrasch, Carlsbad, 1923; 7 Q—Q2, B—Kt5; 8 P—Q5, P—K4; 9 P × Kt, P × B; 10 P × P, R—Kt1; 11 Q × P, R × P ♣.

(b) Necessary; if instead 6...QKt—Q2; 7 O—O, P—K4; 8 P—Q5, Kt—B4; 9 B—B2, P—QR4; 10 Kt—Q2, Kt—K1; 11 Kt—Kt3, P—B4; 12 P × P, P × P; 13 P—B4, P—K5; 14 B—K3 ±. Kashdan—Flohr, Prague, 1931.

(c) Or 8...Kt—B3; 9 B—K3, Kt—Q2; 10 P—Q5 (10 Kt—K2??, Kt—K4! and wins. Norman—Vidmar, Hastings, 1926), Kt(B3)—K4; 11 Q—K2 =.

(d) 13 O—O, Q—R4; 14 B—Q2, P—QR3. Marshall—Réti, New York, 1924.

(e) An unusual line is 5 KKt—K2, P—K4; 6 B—Kt5, P—KR3; 7 B—R4, P—KKt4; 8 B—Kt3, Kt—R4; 9 P × P, P × P; 10 Q × Qch, K × Q; 11 O—O—Och, Kt—Q2 =. Botvinnik—Smyslov, Leningrad—Moscow, 1941.

(f) Or 6 B—K2, P—B4; 7 P—Q5, P—K3; 8 P × P, P × P; 9 B—B3, Kt—B3; 10 KKt—K2, P—K4; 11 O—O, Kt—Q5 ♣. Rabinovitch—Torre, Baden-Baden, 1925.

(g) Weak are: (1) 6...B—Kt5; 7 B—K2, Kt—B3; 8 P—Q5, Kt—Kt1; 9 O—O, QKt—Q2; 10 Kt—KKt5, B × B; 11 Q × B, P—KR3; 12 Kt—B3, P—K3; 13 P—K5, P × KP; 14 BP × P, Kt—Kt5; 15 B—B4 ±. Alekhine—Marshall, New York, 1924. (2) 6...P—K4!; 7 BP × P, P × P; 8 P—Q5, QKt—Q2; 9 B—Q3, Kt—B4; 10 B—B2 ±. Alekhine—Ed. Lasker, New York, 1924.

Notes continued on p. 276

## Notes continued from p. 275

(h) Or 7 P × P, Q-R4; 8 B-Q2, Q × BP; 9 Q-K2, Kt-B3; 10 O-O-O, B-Kt5; 11 Q-K3, Kt-Q2; 12 Kt-QR4, Q × Q; 13 B × Q, B × Kt =. Wahl-tuch-Vidmar, Hastings, 1926.

(i) If 8 B-K2, P × P; 9 BP × P, P-QKt4 l, as in note (k). White's best line is 8 B-K2, P × P; 9 KP × P, B-B4; 10 O-O, Kt-K5 =.

(j) 9 KP × P is the only playable move.

(k) Another good line is 9...P-QKt4 l; 10 P-K5, P × P; 11 P × P, Kt-Kt5; 12 B-Kt5, Q-Kt3; 13 Q-K2, P-B5; 14 B-K4, P-Kt5; 15 Kt-QR4, Q-Kt4+. Fleurquin-Najdorf, Mar del Plata, 1945.

(l) Or 10 B-B2, P-B5 l; 11 Q-K2, R-K1; 12 B-R4, B-Q2; 13 B × B, QKt × B; 14 Kt-Q2, Kt × KP l+. Colle-Euwe, Antwerp, 1926.

(m) 13 B × Kt (or 13 Kt-Kt5, P-R3; 14 QKt × P, P-QKt4; 15 Kt × B, P × Kt +). Saemisch-Euwe, Wiesbaden, 1925), B × B; 14 Q-B2, Q-R5ch.

(n) 5 P-K4 at once exposes White to counterplay, e.g., 5...P-Q3; 6 Kt-K2, P-K4; 7 O-O, P × P; 8 Kt × P, Kt-B3; 9 Kt-B2, B-K3, 10 Kt-K3, Kt-K4; 11 Kt-R3, Kt(B3)-Kt5 =. Fine-Boleslavsky, match U. S. A.—U.S.S.R., 1945.

(o) 8 P-K4 now transposes to cols. 120-121. Weak for White are 8 P × P (as in col. 124, note (i)) and 8 Q-B2, P × P; 9 Kt × P, Kt-Kt3; 10 Q-Q3, P-Q4; 11 P × P, KKt × P; 12 Kt × Kt, Kt × Kt =. Alekhine-Réti, Pistyán, 1922. The column is Alekhine-Bogoljubov, 26th

match game, 1934.

(p) This advance must occur immediately, for if 7 O-O, P-K4; 8 P-Q5 (if 8 P-K4, P × P; 9 Kt × P, Kt × P l; 10 KKt × Kt, Kt × Kt; 11 Kt × Q, Kt × Q; 12 Kt × KtP, B × Kt l; 13 R × Kt, QR-Ktr =), Kt-K2; 9 P-K4, Kt-Q2; 10 Kt-KR4, P-KB4; 11 B-Kt5, Kt-B4; 12 Q-Q2, P × P; 13 Kt × KP, Kt × Kt =. Abramavicius-Simonson, Folkestone, 1933.

(q) Somewhat better than 10 Kt-Q4, Kt-B4; 11 P-K4, P-K4; 12 KKt-K2, Q-K2; 13 B-K3, P-Kt3; 14 Q-Q2 ±. Gruenfeld-Yates, Moscow, 1925.

(r) Gruenfeld-Yates, Semmering, 1926.

(s) Weak is 4...P × P; 5 P × P, B-Kt2; 6 B-Kt2, O-O; 7 Kt-QB3, P-Q3; 8 Kt-B3, Kt-R3; 9 O-O, B-Q2; 10 P-KR3, Q-Kt3; 11 R-Kt1, B-B4; 12 B-K3, Q-R4; 13 R-B1 ±. Flohr-Koltanowski, Hastings, 1935-36.

(t) If 7 Kt-B3, P-K4; 8 P × BP l, P × P; 9 O-O, Q-B2; 10 P-Kt3, R-Q1; 11 B-Kt2, QKt-Q2; 12 Kt-Q2, B-Kt2; 13 Q-B2, P-Q4 =. Stahlberg-Flohr, Moscow, 1935.

(u) Better than 7...P-K4; 8 KKt-K2, P-B4; 9 O-O, Kt-K1; 10 P-KR3, P-B4 l; 11 P-B4, Kt-Q2; 12 KP × P, KtP × P; 13 Q-B2, QKt-B3; 14 B-K3+. Rubinstein-Carls, Baden-Baden, 1925.

(v) Not 9 BP × P, P × P; 10 Kt × P, Kt × Kt; 11 Q × Kt l, B-K3 l; 12 Q × KtP, Kt-Q2+. Landau-Euwe, Amsterdam, 1935.

## KING'S INDIAN DEFENSE

1 P-Q4, Kt-KB3; 2 P-QB4, P-KKt3\*

	131	132	133	134	135
3 (P-KKt3).....					P-B3 (n)
(P-B3).....			P-Q4 (f)		P-Q4
4 B-Kt2			B-Kt2		P × P
P-Q4			B-Kt2		Kt × P
5 Kt-KB3.....	P × P		P × P (g)		P-K4
B-Kt2	P × P (b)		Kt × P		Kt-Kt3
6 O-O	Kt-KB3 (c)	P-K4.....	Kt-KB3		Kt-B3
O-O	B-Kt2	Kt-Kt5 (h)	O-O		B-Kt2
7 P-Kt3	O-O	P-QR3 (i)	O-O	B-K3	
Kt-K5	O-O	Kt(Kt5)-B3	P-QB4 l (k)	O-O (o)	
8 B-Kt2	Kt-B3	P-Q5	Kt-B3 (l)	P-B4 l (p)	
P × P ?	Kt-K5 (d)	Kt-Q5	Kt × Kt (m)	Kt-B3 (q)	
9 Q-B2 l	Q-Kt3	Kt-K2	P × Kt	P-Q5 (r)	
Kt-Q3	Kt × Kt	B-Kt5	Kt-B3	Kt-Ktr	
10 P × P	P × Kt	QKt-B3	P-K3	P-QR4 (s)	
B-B4	Kt-B3	P-K4	P × P	P-QB3	
11 Q-B1	Kt-Q2	O-O	BP × P	P-R5	
Kt-R3	P-K3	Q-B3	B-B4	Kt(Kt3)-Q2	
12 QKt-Q2 ± (a)	B-QR3	P-B3 ± (j)	B-QR3	Kt-B3 ± (t)	
	R-K1 = (e)		Q-Q2 =		

## \* See p. 228, Diagram 96

(a) 12...Q-B1; 13 R-K1, Kt-K5; 14 Kt-Kt3, B-R6; 15 B-R1, Q-K3; 16 Q-B4. Bogoljubov-Euwe, 7th match game, 1928.

(b) If instead 5...Kt × P l; 6 Kt-KB3, B-Kt2; 7 O-O (but not 7 P-K4 l, Kt-Kt3; 8 O-O, B-Kt5; 9 B-K3, P-QB4; 10 P-K5, Kt-B3; 11 P × P, Q × Q; 12 R × Q, Kt-B5 =. Fine-Reshevsky, Kemerí, 1937), O-O; 8 Kt-B3, Kt × Kt; 9 P × Kt, P-QB4; 10 B-QR3, P × P; 11 Kt × P l, Q-B2; 12 Q-Kt3 ±. Keres-Flohr, Semmering-Baden, 1937.

(c) Or 6 Kt-QB3, Kt-B3; 7 Kt-R3, B-Kt2; 8 O-O, O-O; 9 Kt-B4, P-K3; 10 P-K3, P-Kt3 =. Stahlberg-Flohr, Kemerí, 1937.

(d) 8...Kt-B3 is also good enough: 9 Kt-K5, Kt × Kt; 10 P × Kt, Kt-Kt5; 11 Kt × P, Kt × KP; 12 Q-Kt3, Kt-B3; 13 B-K3, P-K3; 14 Kt-B3, Kt-Q5 =. Saemisch-Gruenfeld, Carlsbad, 1923.

(e) Rabinovitch-Botvinnik, Moscow, 1935.

(f) If 3...P-B4; 4 P-Q5, P-K4; 5 Kt-QB3, P-Q3; 6 B-Kt2, B-Kt2; 7 P-K4, O-O; 8 KKt-K2, P-QR3; 9 O-O, Kt-R4; 10 B-K3, P-B4; 11 Q-Q2 ±.

(g) 5 Kt-KB3 transposes to col. 131 or to some variations of the Reti Opening (p. 323, col. 46).

(h) If 6...Kt-Kt3; 7 Kt-K2, B-Kt5; 8 P-B3, B-Q2; 9 QKt-B3, Q-B1; 10 O-O, B-R6; 11 B-K3 ±. Réti-Euwe, Kissingen, 1928.

(i) Best. The alternatives are: (1) 7 Q-R4ch, QKt-B3; 8 P-Q5, P-QKt4; 9 Q × KtP, Kt-B7ch; 10 K-Q1, Kt × R; 11 Q × Ktch, B-Q2+. (2) 7 P-Q5, P-QB3; 8 P-QR3, Q-R4; 9 Kt-QB3, P × P; 10 B-K3, P-Q5; 11 P × Kt, Q-Q1; 12 Kt-R4, P × B =. Stahlberg-Szabo, Kemerí-Riga, 1939.

Notes continued on p. 280

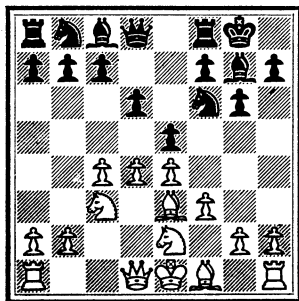
## KING'S INDIAN DEFENSE

1 P-Q4, Kt-KB3

136	137	138	139	140
2 (P-QB4)..... (P-KKt3)		Kt-KB3 P-KKt3		
3 (P-B3) B-Kt2 (a)		B-Kt5..... B-Kt2	B-B4..... B-Kt2	Kt-B3 (m) P-Q4 (n)
4 P-K4 P-Q3		QKt-Q2 P-B4	Q-B1 (k) P-KR3	B-B4 (o) B-Kt2
5 Kt-B3 O-O		P-K3 (i) P-Kt3	P-KR3 P-Kt3	P-K3 P-K3
6 B-K3 P-K4 (b)		B-Q3 B-Kt2	Kt-B3 B-Kt2	B-Q3 P-B4
7 KKt-K2 (c) * Kt-B3.....	P × P (f)	O-O P-KR3	Q-Q2 P-R3	P × P QKt-Q2
8 Q-Q2 Kt-Q2	Kt × P P-B3	B-KB4 P-Q3	R-Q1 P-K3	O-O Kt × P
9 P-Q5 Kt-K2	Kt-B2 R-K1	P-B3 Kt-R4	Q-B1 P-Q3	B-K5 B-Kt5
10 P-KKt3 P-KB4	Q-Q2 (g) P-Q4	Q-Kt3 Kt × B	P-KKt3 QKt-Q2	P-KR3 Kt × B
11 B-Kt2 P × P (d)	O-O-O Q-R4	P × Kt O-O	B-Kt2 Q-K2	P × Kt B × Kt
12 P × P ± (e)	BP × P ± (h)	QR-Q1 Kt-B3 ± (j)	Kt-KR4 B × B = (l)	Q × B P-K3 = (p)

## \* DIAGRAM 118

cols. 136-137



[After 7 KKt-K2]

(a) For 3...P-Q4 see col. 135. An unusual and noteworthy defense is 3...P-B4; 4 P-Q5, P-K3; 5 Kt-B3, P-Q3; 6 P-K4, P × P; 7 BP × P, B-Kt2; 8

B-Kt5ch, QKt-Q2; 9 B-KB4, Q-K2; 10 Q-Q2, P-QR3; 11 B-K2, P-QKt4; 12 Kt-R3, O-O =. Chekhover-Alatortsev, Moscow, 1935.

(b) If 6...QKt-Q2; 7 Kt-R3, P-K4; 8 P-Q5, P-QR4; 9 Kt-B2, P-Kt3? (9...Kt-R4); 10 Q-Q2, Kt-B4; 11 B-Kt5, B-Q2; 12 P-KKt4, Q-B1; 13 P-KR4+. Nimzovitch-Tartakower, Carlsbad, 1929.

(c) 7 P-Q5, P-B3! (better than 7...P-QR4; 8 Q-Q2, Kt-R3; 9 KKt-K2, Kt-B4; 10 O-O-O, Kt-K1; 11 P-KKt4, P-B4; 12 KtP × P, P × P; 13 B-Kt5, B-B3; 14 P-KR4, P-B5; 15 B-R3 ±. Makogonov-Keres, Moscow, 1940); 8 Q-Q2, P × P; 9 BP × P, Kt-K1; 10 O-O-O, P-B4 leads to a wild position with chances for both sides. Alekhine-Euwe, 3rd match game, 1926.

Notes continued on p. 280

## GRUENFELD DEFENSE

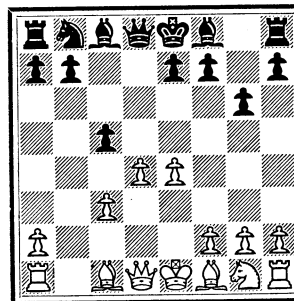
1 P-Q4, Kt-KB3; 2 P-QB4, P-KKt3; 3 Kt-QB3, P-Q4\*

141	142	143	144	145
4 P × P..... Kt × P			B-Kt5 Kt-K5	
5 P-K4 (a) Kt × Kt			P × P..... Kt × Kt (k)	Kt × Kt P × Kt
6 P × Kt P-QB4 (b) **			P × Kt Q × P	Q-Q2 P-QB4 (m)
7 B-QB4..... B-Kt2	B-Kt5ch..... B-Q2 (f)	Kt-B3 B-Kt2	Kt-B3 B-Kt2	P-Q5 Kt-Q2 (n)
8 Kt-K2 O-O	B-QB4 B-Kt2	B-QB4 (h) Kt-B3	P-K3 P-QB4	P-B3 Q-Kt3
9 O-O Kt-Q2 (c)	Kt-K2 O-O	B-K3 O-O	B-Kt5ch B-Q2	P × P B-Kt2
10 B-K3 Q-B2	O-O P × P	P-KR3 P × P	P-B4 Q-K5	O-O-O Q-R3
11 R-B1 P-QR3 (d)	P × P Kt-B3	P × P Q-R4ch (i)	O-O B × B	P-QKt3 P-R3
12 P-B4 Kt-Kt3	B-K3 Kt-R4	Q-Q2 Q × Qch	P × B Kt-Q2 ± (l)	B-R4 P-QKt4!
13 B-Kt3 P-B5 = (e)	B-Q3 B-Kt5 = (g)	K × Q R-Q1 = (j)		P-K3 Kt-Kt3 + (o)

\* See p. 229, Diagram 97

## \*\* DIAGRAM 119

cols. 141-143



[After 6...P-QB4]

(a) The only good try. Alternatives are: (1) 5 P-KKt3, B-Kt2; 6 B-Kt2, Kt-Kt3!; 7 P-K3, O-O; 8 KKt-K2, P-K4 =. Capablanca-Flohr, Hastings, 1934-35. (2) 5 Q-Kt3, Kt × Kt (not 5...P-QR2 transposing to col. 137): 6 P × Kt.

B-Kt2; 7 Kt-B3, O-O; 8 P-K3, P-B4; 9 B-K2, Q-B2; 10 O-O, P-Kt3; 11 P-QR4, Kt-B3; 12 Q-R3, Kt-R4; 13 Kt-Q2, B-Kt2 ±. Goglidse-Botvinnik, Moscow, 1935.

(b) Most precise. If instead 6...B-Kt2; 7 P-KB4 involves some tricky gambit play: 7...P-QB4; 8 B-K3, Kt-B3 (8...Q-R4?; 9 K-B2!, O-O; 10 Q-Kt3, P × P; 11 P × P, Kt-Q2; 12 P-KR3+); 9 P-Q5, B × Pch; 10 K-B2, B × R; 11 Q × B, Kt-Q5; 12 Kt-B3, Q-R4; 13 Kt × Kt, P × Q; 14 Q × P, O-O; 15 P-KR4 (Seitz-P. Johner, Trieste, 1923). White has a strong attack, but it is doubtful whether it is sufficient compensation for his material disadvantage.

(c) Better than 9...Kt-B3; 10 B-K3, Q-B2; 11 R-B1 (not 11 Q-B1, B-Q2; 12 B-KR6, QR-B1 ±. Bondarevsky-Loevenfisch, Moscow, 1939), R-Q1; 12 P-KR3, P-K4; 13 P-Q5 ±.

Notes continued on p. 281

## Notes continued from p. 277

- (j) Rubinstein—Réti, Semmering, 1926.  
**(k)** Inferior continuations are: (1) 7... Kt—R3; 8 P—K4, Kt—Kt3; 9 Kt—B3, B—Kt5; 10 P—Q5, Q—Q2; 11 Q—K2, B—R6; 12 B—B4 ±. Vidmar—Tartakower, Carlsbad, 1929. (2) 7... P—QB3; 8 P—K4, Kt—Kt3; 9 P—KR3, B—K3; 10 Kt—B3, Kt—R3; 11 B—K3, Q—B1; 12 K—R2, R—Q1; 13 Q—B1, Kt—B2; 14 R—Q1 ±. Golombek—Keres, Margate, 1939.  
**(l)** Best. Weaker for White are: (1) 8 P × P, Kt—R3; 9 P—B6, P × P; 10 P—QR3, R—Kt1; 11 Q—B2, Q—R4 ≠. Kupchik—Fine, New York, 1938. (2) 8 P—K4, Kt—KB3; 9 P—K5, Kt—Q4; 10 P × P, Kt—R3; 11 P—QR3, Kt × P; 12 P—QKt4, Kt—K3; 13 B—Kt2, P—QR4; 14 P—Kt5, Q—Q2; 15 Q—K2, R—Q1 ≠. Alekhine—Mikenas, Kemer, 1937.  
**(m)** Not 8... Kt—QB3; 9 Kt × Kt, Q × Kt; 10 B—K3, R—Q1; 11 Q—R4, P × P; 12 Kt × P, Q—QR4; 13 B × Kt, Q × Q; 14 B × Q, B × Kt; 15 KR—Q1 ±. Stahlberg—Mikenas, Kemer—Riga, 1939.  
**(n)** A novel idea is 3 Q—B2, P—Q4; 4 P × P, Kt × P; 5 P—K4, Kt—Kt3; 6 Kt—QB3, B—Kt2; 7 B—K3, O—O; 8 Kt—

## Notes continued from p. 278

- (d)** Or 11... Kt—KB3; 12 P—KR3, P—QR3; 13 P—B5 ±.  
**(e)** 12... Kt—KB3; 13 P—KR3, P—Kt3; 14 P—Kt3, K—R1; 15 P—KKt4. Botvinnik—Alatortsev, Moscow, 1931.  
**(f)** An unusual defense is 7... QKt—Q2; 8 Q—Q2, Kt—K1!; 9 P × P? (9 P—KKt3 ±), Kt × P!; 10 Kt—Q4, B—K3; 11 P—QKt3, P—QB3; 12 B—K2, P—Q4; 13 BP × P, P × P =. Fine—Tartakower, Warsaw, 1935.  
**(g)** Inferior is 10 B—K2, P—Q4!; 11 BP × P, P × P; 12 P × P, B—B4; 13 K—B2, B × Kt; 14 Q × B, Kt × P; 15 Kt × Kt, Q × Kt; 16 B—QB4, Q—K4 =. Euwe—Pirc, Hastings, 1938—39.  
**(h)** 12... P × P; 13 P × P (Alatortsev—Kashlyav, Moscow, 1945), QKt—Q2; 14 B—Q4, P—QR3; 15 B—B4, P—QKt4; 16 B—Kt3, P—Kt5; 17 Kt—K4. Black's attack is not worth the Pawn.  
 B3, QKt—Q2; 9 O—O—O, P—QB3; 10 Q—Q2, R—K1; 11 P—KR4, Kt—B3; 12 Kt—K5, Kt(Kt3)—Q2; 13 Q—B2 ±. Mengarini—Pinkus, Ventnor City, 1941.  
**(o)** If 7... Kt—B3; 8 P—Q5 (8 B—QKt5 is also strong), Kt—K4; 9 B—Q4, O—O; 10 P—B4, Kt—Kt5; 11 B × B, K × B (Piazzini—Stahlberg, Buenos Aires, 1943); 12 Q—Q4ch ±.  
**(p)** An improvement on 8 Q—Q2, Kt—B3!; 9 P—Q5, Kt—K4; 10 B—KKt5, P—QB3; 11 R—Q1, P × P; 12 P × P, B—B4 +. Alekhine—Bogoljubow, Bled, 1931.  
**(q)** Or 8... P—KB4; 9 Q—Kt3ch, K—R1; 10 P—K5, P—K3; 11 Kt—B3, Kt—B3; 12 P—KR4 ±. Roedl—Helling, Bad Pyrmont, 1933.  
**(r)** If 9 Kt—B3, B—Kt5; 10 P—Q5, Kt—Kt1; 11 P—KR3, B × Kt; 13 Q × B, P—QB3 =. Saemisch—Koch, Berlin, 1933.  
**(s)** Better than 10 Kt—B3, P—QB3; 11 Q—Kt3, P × P; 12 Kt × P, Kt × Kt; 13 P × Kt, Kt—Q2; 14 B—K2, Q—R4ch ≠. Euwe—Reshevsky, AVRO tournament, 1938.  
**(t)** 12... P × P; 13 P × P, Kt—KB3; 14 B—B4, Kt—Kt5, 15 B—Q4.

## Additional notes continued from p. 278

- Kt2; 5 P—B3, O—O; 6 B—B4, B—B4; 7 Q—B1, R—K1; 8 QKt—Q2, QKt—Q2; 9 Kt—R4, B—K3; 10 QKt—B3, Kt—K5; 11 Kt—K5, Kt × Kt; 12 B × Kt, P—QB4 =. Znosko-Borovsky—Euwe, Scheveningen, 1923. (3) 3 P—K3, B—Kt2; 4 B—Q3, O—O; 5 O—O, P—Q3; 6 P—K4, QKt—Q2; 7 P—KR3, P—B4; 8 P—B3, P—K4; 9 P × KP, P × P; 10 P—QR4, Q—B2 =. Dus-Chotimirski—Capablanca, Moscow, 1925. (4) 3 P—QKt3, B—Kt2; 4 B—Kt2, O—O; 5 P—K3, P—Q3; 6 B—Q3, QKt—Q2; 7 P—K4, P—K4; 8 QKt—Q2, P × P; 9 B × P, R—K1; 10 O—O, P—Kt3; 11 R—K1, B—Kt2 ≠. Tartakower—Euwe, Amsterdam, 1926.

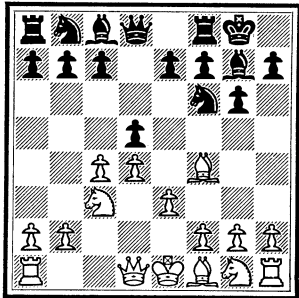
## Notes continued from p. 279

## GRUENFELD DEFENSE

1 P—Q4, Kt—KB3; 2 P—QB4, P—KKt3; 3 Kt—QB3, P—Q4; 4 B—B4, B—Kt2 (a); 5 P—K3 (b), O—O\*

I46	I47	I48	I49	I50
6 Q—Kt3 P × P	P—B3 (e)		R—B1 P—B4! (o)	Kt—B3 (s) P—B4!
7 KB × P (c) QKt—Q2	Kt—B3 P × P	Q—R4	QP × P Q—R4 (p)	Q—Kt3 (t) P × QP
8 Kt—B3 Kt—Kt3	B × P QKt—Q2 (f)	Q—R4 P × P	P × P R—Q1	Q—Kt3 (t) P × P
9 B—K2 B—K3	O—O (g) Kt—Kt3	B × P P—QKt4	Q—R4 (q) Q × Q	B × P QKt—Q2
10 Q—B2 KKt—Q4	B—K2 B—K3 (h)	B—K2 B—K3	Kt × Q Kt × P	B—Kt3 Kt—R4
11 B—K5 R—B1	Q—B2 QKt—Q4 (i)	Q—B2 P—Kt5	B—QKt5 Kt × B	R—Q1 Kt × B
12 Kt × Kt Q × Kt	B—K5 B—B4	Q—R4 Q—Kt3	P × Kt B—K3	RP × Kt Q—R4
13 B × B Q—R4ch! (d)	Q—Kt3 (j) Q—Kt3	Kt—QKt1 P—B4	P—QKt3 B—Q4	O—O Kt—Kt3
14 Q—Q2 Q × Qch =	Kt—Q2 (k) Kt × Kt = (l)	QKt—Q2 P × P ± (n)	Kt—KB3 B × Kt = (r)	B—Q5! R—Kt1 = (u)

\* DIAGRAM 120  
cols. 145-150



[After 5... O—O]

(a) Weak lines are: (1) 4... Kt—R4?; 5 B—K5, P—KB3; 6 B—Kt3, Kt × B; 7 RP × Kt, P—B3; 8 P—K3, B—Kt2; 9 B—Q3+. Euwe—Alekhine, 14th match

game, 1935. (2) 4... P × P; 5 P—K3, Kt—Q4; 6 B—K5, P—KB3; 7 B—Kt3, Kt × Kt; 8 P × Kt, P—QKt4; 9 P—QR4!+, for if 9... P—B3?; 10 P × P, P × P; 11 Q—B3++ (Euwe).

(b) If 5 B—K5, P—B3 leads to equality, but not 5... P × P; 6 P—K3, O—O; 7 KB × P, QKt—Q2; 8 Kt—B3, P—B4; 9 O—O ±. Colle—Gruenfeld, Baden-Baden, 1925. An untried possibility which may hold some promise is 5 Q—R4ch!, e.g., 5... B—Q2; 6 Q—Kt3, B—B3; 7 P—K4!+ (Kevitz). Cf. col. 162.

(c) Or 7 Q × BP, P—B3; 8 Kt—B3, B—K3; 9 Q—Q3, Kt—Q4; 10 B—K5, B × B; 11 Kt × B, Kt—Q2; 12 KKt × Kt, Q × Kt; 13 B—K2, KR—Q1 =. Euwe—Flohr, Semmering, 1937.

(d) Not 13... K × B?; 14 P—QKt4! ±. Reshevsky—Santasiere, New York, 1938.

Notes continued on p. 283

Notes continued from p. 282

(e) 6... P—B4 is refuted by 7 BP × P, P × P; 8 P × P, QKt—Q2; 9 B—K2, Kt—Kt3; 10 B—B3+. Loevenfisch—Botvinnik, 13th match game, 1937. If, however, on 6... P—B4; 7 QP × P, Kt—K5!; 8 P × P, Q—R4; 9 Kt—K2, Kt × QBP; 10 Q—Q1 (if 10 Q—B4, as in Capablanca—Flohr, AVRO tournament, 1938, 10... P—K4!; 11 P—QKt4, Q × KtP; 12 Q × Q, Kt—Q6ch; 13 K—Q2, Kt × Q ±. Euwe), P—K4; 11 B—Kt5, P—B3? (much stronger is 11... Kt—K5 at once); 12 P—QR3!, Kt—K5; 13 B—R4, P—KKt4; 14 B—Kt3, P—B4; 15 P—B3, Kt × Kt; 16 Kt × Kt, P—B5; 17 B—B2, P—K5 with a strong attack. Reshevsky—Kashdan, 1st match game, 1942.

(f) Not 8... P—QKt4?; 9 B—K2, B—K3; 10 Q—B2, P—Kt5; 11 Kt—QR4, Q—R4; 12 Kt—B5!, B—B1; 13 O—O+. Euwe—Mikenas, Stockholm, 1937.

(g) The new try 9 Kt—K5 is met by 9... Kt × Kt (not 9... Q—K1; 10 B—K2! ±. Euwe—Flohr, Amsterdam, 1939); 10 B × Kt, Kt—K1; 11 B × B, K × B; 12 O—O, Q—Kt3; 13 Q—B2, Kt—B3; 14 QR—B1, B—B4; 15 B—Q3, B × B; 16 Q × B, KR—Q1 =. Szabo—Flohr, Baarn, 1939.

(h) 10... B—B4, as in Kashdan—Reshevsky, Hamilton, 1941, may be easier. Cf. col. 152.

(i) Better than 11... KKt—Q4; 12 B—Kt3, R—B1; 13 P—K4, Kt—B2; 14 KR—Q1, P—KR3; 15 Kt—K5, Q—K1; 16 P—QR4 ±. Fine—Keres, Semmering—Baden, 1937.

(j) Or 13 Q—Q2, Kt × Kt; 14 Q × Kt, Kt—K5; 15 Q—Kt4, P—B3; 16 B—Kt3, Q—Q2; 17 KR—Q1, K—R1; 18 Kt—Q2, Kt × B =. Reshevsky—Kashdan, 9th match game, 1942.

(k) Kotov—Kashdan, match U.S.S.R.—U. S. A., 1945.

(l) 15 P × Kt, Kt—K5.

(m) If 8 Kt—Q2, Kt—K5; 9 Kt(B3) × Kt (or 9 Kt(Q2) × Kt, P × Kt; 10 B—K2, P—K4 ±, P × Kt; 10 O—O—O?, B—Kt5; 11 P—B3, P × P; 12 Kt × P, Kt—Q2; 13 P—KR3, B × Kt; 14 P × B, P—K4; 15 P × P, Kt—B4! ±. Koblenz—Flohr, Kemerli—Riga, 1939.

(n) Bezrutschko—Mikenas, Kemerli—Riga, 1939.

(o) If 6... P—B3; 7 Kt—B3, B—K3; 8 Kt—KKt5, B—B4; 9 Q—Kt3, Q—Kt3; 10 Q × Q, P × Q; 11 P × P, Kt × P; 12 Kt × Kt, P × Kt; 13 P—QR3 ±. Euwe—Barcza, Budapest, 1940.

(p) A good alternative is 7... B—K3; 8 Kt—B3, Kt—B3; 9 Q—R4, Kt—K5; 10 B—K2, B × Ktch; 11 P × B, P × P; 12 Kt—Q4, B—Q4; 13 B—R6, R—K1 =. Ragosin—Botvinnik, 8th match game, 1940.

(q) Or (1) 9 B—B4, B—K3; 10 Q—Kt3, Kt × P; 11 Kt—K2, Kt—Q2!; 12 B × Kt, Kt × P; 13 B × B, Kt × Q; 14 B × Kt =. (2) 9 Q—Q2, Kt × P; 10 B—B7?, Q × B; 11 Kt × Kt, R × Kt!; 12 Q × R, B—K3; 13 Q—Q2, Kt—B3; 14 R—Q1, R—Q1; 15 Q—B1, Q—R4ch+. Tolush—Botvinnik, Moscow, 1939.

(r) Capablanca—Reshevsky, AVRO tournament, 1938.

(s) For 6 P × P see col. 151.

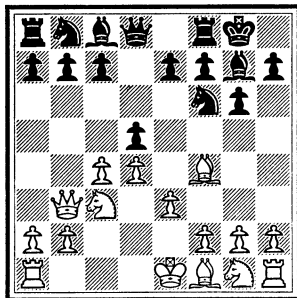
(t) If instead (1) 7 B—K5, P × BP; 8 B × P, Kt—B3; 9 O—O, P × P; 10 P × P, P—Kt3; 11 Q—K2, B—Kt2; 12 P—QR3, P—K3; 13 QR—B1 (Abrahams—Flohr, Bournemouth, 1939), Kt × B ±, for if 14 P × Kt, B × Kt. (2) 7 P × QP, Kt × P; 8 B—K5, Kt × Kt; 9 P × Kt, P × P; 10 B × B, K × B; 11 BP × P, Q—R4ch; 12 Q—Q2, Kt—B3; 13 B—K2, R—Q1 ±. Eliskases—Flohr, Semmering—Baden, 1937.

(u) Capablanca—Botvinnik, AVRO tournament, 1938.

## GRUENFELD DEFENSE

1 P—Q4, Kt—KB3; 2 P—QB4, P—KKt3; 3 Kt—QB3, P—Q4

151	152	153	154	155
4 (B—B4) ... P—K3 (B—Kt2) B—Kt2				
5 (P—K3) Kt—B3 (O—O) O—O				
6 P × P Q—Kt3 (e)* Kt × P P—B3 .....				P—K3 (q)
7 Kt × Kt B—Q2 Q × Kt P × P .....				B—K2 P—Kt3
8 B × P B × P Kt—B3 (a) QKt—Q2 (f)		B—K2 (i) B—Q3 (l) B—Kt2 QKt—Q2 (m)	B—Q3 (l) QKt—Q2 (m)	O—O (r) B—Kt2
9 Kt—K2 (b) O—O B—Kt5! Kt—Kt3		O—O O—O QKt—Q2 P—Kt3 (n)	O—O P—Kt3 (n)	R—Q1 QKt—Q2
10 P—B3 B—K2 B × BP! (c) B—B4! (g)		KR—Q1 (j) P × P P × P KP × P	P × P KP × P	B—Q2 P—B4
11 P × B P—QR4 Q × BP P—QR4		B × P P—K4 (o) Kt—K1! P × P	P—K4 (o) P × P	P × QP Kt × P
12 R—KKt1 Kt—K5 Q × P B—K3		QR—B1 Kt × P Kt—Q3 P—B4!	Kt × P P—B4!	P × P Kt × BP
13 B—B4 Q—B2 Q—K5 ± (d) Kt(Kt3)—Q4 = (h) P—B4 = (k) Kt × Kt = (p) Q—Kt1 = (s)		B—K2 Kt × Ktch P—B4 = (k) Kt × Kt = (p) Q—Kt1 = (s)	Kt × Ktch P—B4!	Q—R3 Q—Kt1 = (s)

\* DIAGRAM 121  
cols. 152-155

[After 6 Q—Kt3]

(a) Better than 8... Kt—R3; 9 B × Kt!, Q × KtP; 10 Q—B3, Q × Q; 11 Kt × Q, P × B; 12 O—O, B—Kt2; 13 Kt—K5, P—B3; 14 Kt—Q3 ±. Flohr—Botvinnik, AVRO tournament, 1938.

(b) The best try. If 9 Kt—B3, B—Kt5;

10 B—K2, QR—B1; 11 B—Kt3, Q—R4ch; 12 Kt—Q2, B × B; 13 Q × B, P—K4! ±. Gilg—Helling, Leipzig, 1928.

(c) The point. If instead 10... QR—B1; 11 Kt—B3, Q—K3; 12 B—KB4, Kt × P; 13 P × B, KR—Q1 (Lasker—Fine, New York, 1940); 14 K—B2! +.

(d) Safonov—Bogatyrchuk, Moscow, 1940. Black has enough for the piece. The game continued 14 B—Kt2, Q—B4; 15 Q—Q2, P—K4; 16 B × Kt, KP × B; 17 B—B3, KR—K1; 18 K—B2, R—K6+.

(e) Otherwise Black can equalize with ... P—B4.

(f) More aggressive but still of doubtful value is 8... P—QKt4; 9 B—Q3 (better than 9 B—K2, P—QR4; 10 O—O, B—B4; 11 QR—B1, P—R5 =. Green—Reshevsky, New York, 1939), B—K3; 10 Q—B2, P—QR4; 11 O—O, Q—Kt3; 12 Kt—Kt5, B—Q2; 13 QKt—K4 ±. Van den Bosch—Sultan Khan, Cambridge, 1932.

Notes continued on p. 285

Notes continued from p. 284

(g) An improvement on 10... B—K3; 11 Q—B2, B—B5; 12 P—K4, R—K1; 13 QR—Q1 ±. Reshevsky—Santasiere, Syracuse, 1934.

(h) 14 Kt × Kt, B × Kt. Denker—Reshevsky, Hamilton, 1941.

(i) If 8 P × P, P × P; 9 Kt—K5, B—Kt2; 10 B—Kt5, P—QR3!; 11 B—K2, QKt—Q2; 12 Kt × Kt, Kt × Kt; 13 P—B4, P—K3 =. Botvinnik—Winter, Nottingham, 1936.

(j) Or 10 P—QR4, P × P; 11 B × P, Kt—K1; 12 P—R5, P—QKt4; 13 P—R6, B—B1; 14 B—K2, Kt—B2; 15 Kt—K4, Kt × P =. Ragosin—Spielmann, Moscow, 1935.

(k) Bogatyrchuk—Spielmann, Moscow, 1935.

(l) On 8 B—K2 Black should proceed as in col. 155, but not 8... Kt—K5; 9 O—O, P × P?; 10 B × P, Kt × B; 11 Kt × Kt, Kt—Q2; 12 QR—Q1, Q—K2; 13 Kt—B3 ±. Konstantinopolsky—Kasparyan, Baku, 1944.

(m) Also possible is the transposition 8... P—Kt3; 9 O—O, B—Kt2, for if now 10 P—K4, P—B4!; 11 KP × P (Bondarevsky—Keres, Leningrad—Moscow, 1939), KP × P!; 12 QP × P, Kt—R3! with at least equality, e.g., 13 P × KtP, Kt—B4; 14 Q—B2, Kt × B; 15 Q × Kt, QP × P; 16 Q × Q, KR × Q =. (Keres)

(n) Weaker is 9... Kt—Kt3; 10 KR—Q1, P × P; 11 B × BP, Kt × B; 12 Q × Kt, Kt—Q2; 13 P—K4, Q—B2; 14 P—K5 ± (Fine—Lilienthal, Moscow, 1937) or here 13... P—K4; 14 B—Kt5, Q—K1; 15 B—R4, P × P; 16 Kt × P, Kt—K4; 17 Q—Kt3, P—Kt3; 18 P—B4 ±. Eliskases—Bogoljubow, 15th match game, 1939.

(o) Or 11 QR—Q1, B—Kt2; 12 P—K4, P × P; 13 Kt × P, Kt × Kt; 14 B × Kt, Kt—B3 =. Reshevsky—Flohr, AVRO tournament, 1938.

(p) 14 P × P, P × P; 15 KR—Q1, B—K3; 16 Q—R3, Kt—Q4! Fine—Mikenas, Kemer, 1937. Black's weak Pawn position is sufficiently counter-balanced by the aggressive placement of his pieces.

(q) Inferior is 6... P × P; 7 B × P, QKt—Q2; 8 Kt—KKt5!, P—K3 (8... Q—K1; 9 Kt—Kt5+); 9 B × P, P × B; 10 Kt × KP, Q—K2; 11 Kt × P dis ch, K—R1; 12 Kt × R, Kt—Kt5!; 13 Kt—Q5! +.

(r) Another try is 8 B—Q2, B—Kt2; 9 R—QB1, QKt—Q2; 10 P—B5, P—B3; 11 O—O, R—K1; 12 Kt—QR4, R—Kt1; 13 Q—B2, Kt—K5; 14 P—QKt4, P × P; 15 Kt × P, Kt(Q2) × Kt; 16 KtP × Kt, Kt × B =. Stahlberg—Iliesco, Mar del Plata, 1943.

(s) Flohr—Botvinnik, 12th match game, 1933.

## GRUENFELD DEFENSE

1 P-Q4, Kt-KB3; 2 P-QB4, P-KKt3; 3 Kt-QB3, P-Q4

156	157	158	159	160
4 (P-K3)..... Q-Kt3 P-B3 (a)	P-B3.....			P × P
5 Kt-B3 B-Kt2	P × P..... Kt × P (f)	Kt-B3..... B-Kt2	B-B4 (m) P × P? (n)	Q × BP B-K3
6 B-Q3 O-O (b)	P-K4 Kt-Kt3	P × P (i) P × P (j)	Q × BP B-K3	Q-R4ch (q) B-Q2
7 O-O B-B4 (c)	B-K3 (g) B-Kt2	B-Kt5 (k) P-K3 (l)	Q-Q3 Kt-Q4	Q-Kt3 B-B3
8 P × P (d) B × B	R-Q1 O-O	P-K4 P × P	Kt × Kt P × Kt (o)	Kt-B3 B-Kt2
9 Q × B P × P	B-K2 B-K3	B-Kt5ch K-B1	Q-Kt5ch Q-Q2	P-K3 O-O
10 Q-Kt5 Q-Q2	P-Q5 P × P	Kt × P P-KR3	P-K3 Q × Q	B-K2 QKt-Q2
11 Q × Q QKt × Q	P × P B-Q2	B × Kt B × B	B × Qch B-Q2	O-O Kt-Kt3
12 P-QKt3 KR-B1	Kt-B3 Kt-R3	Kt × B Q × Kt	B-Q3 Kt-B3	Q-B2 QKt-Q4
13 B-Kt2 P-K3 = (e)	O-O ± (h)	R-QB1 ±	Kt-K2 ± (p)	Kt-K5 ± (r)

(a) The Schlechter Variation. The position can also arise from the Slav Defense: 1 P-Q4, P-Q4; 2 P-QB4, P-QB3; 3 Kt-QB3, Kt-B3; 4 P-K3, P-KKt3. For variations with Q-Kt3 see cols. 152-154.

(b) If 6... QKt-Q2; 7 P × P, Kt × P; 8 Kt × Kt, P × Kt; 9 O-O, O-O; 10 Q-Kt3, Kt-B3 (or 10... Kt-Kt1; 11 B-Q2, Kt-B3; 12 KR-B1, B-B3; 13 R-B5+. Flohr-Sultan Khan, 6th match game, 1931); 11 B-Q2, Kt-K5; 12 KR-Q1, Kt × B; 13 R × Kt, Q-Q3; 14 R-QB1 ±. Rubinstein-Bogoljubov, Vienna, 1922.

(c) Three good alternatives are: (1) 7... B-Kt5; 8 P-KR3, B × Kt; 9 Q × B, P-K3; 10 R-Q1, QKt-Q2 =. Veressov-Ragosin, Moscow, 1944. (2) 7... P-Kt3; 8 P-QKt3, P-B4; 9 P × BP? (better 9 B-Kt2 as in (3)), Kt-K5; 10 B × Kt, P × B; 11 Q × Q!, R × Q; 12 Kt-Q4, P × P; 13 KKt-K2, B-Kt5 ±. Botvinnik-Loevenfisch, 10th match game,

1937. (3) 7... P-K3; 8 P-QKt3, QKt-Q2; 9 Q-K2, R-K1; 10 B-Kt2, P-Kt3; 11 QR-Q1, B-Kt2; 12 Kt-K5, Kt × Kt; 13 P × Kt, Kt-Q2 =. Botvinnik-Loevenfisch, 12th match game, 1937. Weaker possibilities are: (4) 7... P-B4?; 8 QP × P, P × P; 9 B × BP, Q-R4; 10 Kt-QKt5!, Q-Kt5; 11 P-QKt3, Kt-B3; 12 B-R3, Q-R4; 13 R-Kt1, B-K3; 14 P-QKt4+. Veressov-Alartortsev, Moscow, 1944. (5) 7... P × P; 8 B × BP, QKt-Q2; 9 Q-K2, Kt-K1; 10 B-Kt3, P-K4; 11 Kt × P, Kt × Kt; 12 P × Kt, B × P; 13 P-B4, B-Kt2; 14 P-K4, B-K3; 15 B × B, P × B; 16 P-K5 ±. Najdorf-Keres, Buenos Aires, 1939.

(d) Better than 8 B × B, P × B; 9 P × P, P × P; 10 Q-Kt3, P-Kt3; 11 B-Q2, Kt-B3; 12 KR-B1, Q-Q2; 13 B-K1, P-K3 ±. Fairhurst-Flohr, Folkestone, 1933.

Notes continued on p. 289

## GRUENFELD DEFENSE

1 P-Q4, Kt-KB3; 2 P-QB4, P-KKt3; 3 Kt-QB3, P-Q4

161	162	163	164	165
4 (Q-Kt3)..... Kt-B3 (e) (P × P)	B-Kt2.....			P-B3
5 (Q × BP) B-Kt2	Q-R4ch! (f)..... B-Q2.....	P × P (k) P-B3	P × P (n) Kt × P	P × P (n) P × P (o)
6 B-B4 (a) P-B3 (b)	Q-Kt3 P × P	P × P Kt × P	P-KKt3 O-O	B-B4 (p) Kt-B3
7 P-K4 B-K3 (c)	Q × BP O-O	P-K4 Kt-Kt3 (i)	B-Kt2 P-QB4	P-K3 P-QR3
8 Q-Q3 O-O	P-K3 (g) P-B3	Q-B2! B-Kt5	O-O Kt × Kt	P-KR3 B-Kt2
9 Kt-B3 Kt-K1	B-K2 B-K3	Kt-K5 B-K3	P × Kt Kt-B3 (l)	B-Q3 O-O
10 B-K2 Kt-Q3	Q-R4 P-KR3	B-K3 O-O	P-K3 Q-R4	O-O Kt-QR4
11 O-O B-B5	O-O QKt-Q2	B-K2 Kt(Kt1)-Q2	Q-Kt3 R-Kt1	R-B1 Kt-K1
12 Q-B2 B × B	R-Q1 Kt-Q4	Kt-B3 B-Kt5	B-QR3 (m) P-B5	Kt-K5 B-K3 (q)
13 Q × B ± (d)	P-K4 ± (h)	R-Q1 ± (j)	Q-Kt2 B-B4 =	B-Kt1 ±

(a) There are several traps to be avoided by White. If, e.g., 6 P-K4, O-O; 7 Kt-B3, P-Kt3; 8 B-B4, P-B4; 9 P × P, B-QR3; 10 Q-Kt3 (or 10 Q-Q4, Q × Q; 11 Kt × Q, B × B; 12 R × B, Kt × P! ±. Botvinnik-Loevenfisch, U.S.S.R. championship, 1933), B × B; 11 R-Q1, Q-B1; 12 K × B, P × P; 13 P-Kt3, Kt-B3; 14 K-Kt2, Kt-Q2 =. Stahlberg-Najdorf, Mar del Plata, 1943.

(b) If 6... Kt-R3; 7 Kt-B3, O-O; 8 P-K4, P-B4; 9 P-Q5 is correct, but not 9 P × P?, Q-R4; 10 P-K5, Kt-Q2; 11 P-K6, Kt(Q2) × P!; 12 P × Pch, R × P; 13 Kt-Kt5, B-K3! ±. Romo-Flores, Sao Paulo, 1938.

(c) On 7... O-O; 8 Kt-B3, as in the column, is correct. If, however, 8 R-Q1, P-QKt4; 9 Q-Kt3?, Q-R4; 10 B-Q3, B-K3; 11 Q-B2, P-B4!; 12 P-Q5, B-Q2; 13 B-Q2, P-B5; 14 B-K2, P-Kt5; 15 Kt-Kt1, P-B6!; 16 P × P, B-R5+. Ragosin-Boleslavsky, Moscow,

1945. After 7... O-O; 8 Kt-B3 Black's most aggressive (but riskiest) line is 8... P-QKt4; 9 Q-Kt3, Q-R4; 10 B-Q3, B-K3; 11 Q-Q1, B-Kt5; 12 O-O, R-Q1; 13 P-K5, Kt-R4; 14 B-K3 ±. Guimard-Stahlberg, Mar del Plata, 1943.

(d) Reshevsky-Kashdan, 3rd match game, 1942.

(e) This move can transpose into any of a number of other lines. Only the independent variations are treated here.

(f) Flohr's move.

(g) More aggressive but less clear is 8 P-K4, B-Kt5; 9 B-K2, Kt-B3; 10 B-K3, B × Kt; 11 P × B, P-K4; 12 P-Q5, Kt-Q5; 13 O-O-O, Kt-K1; 14 P-KR4, Kt-Q3; 15 Q-Q3, P-QB4 with chances for both sides. Goldberg-Rudakovsky, Moscow, 1945.

(h) Flohr-Mikenas, Moscow, 1944.

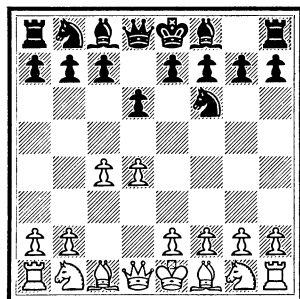
Notes continued on p. 289

TCHIGORIN'S (OLD INDIAN) DEFENSE

1 P-Q4, Kt-KB3; 2 P-QB4 (a), P-Q3\*

	166	167	168	169	170
3	Kt-QB3 QKt-Q2		P-K4	B-B4 (j)	Kt-KB3 B-B4 (m)
4	P-K4 P-K4		P-K4 (e) P × P (f)	P-KKt3 P-B3	Kt-B3 QKt-Q2 (n)
5	KKt-K2 B-K2	P-Q5 (c) Kt-B4	Q × P Kt-B3	B-Kt2 QKt-Q2 (k)	Kt-KR4 B-Kt3
6	P-KKt3 O-O	P-B3 B-K2	Q-Q2 (g) P-KKt3 (h)	P-K4 B-Kt3	Kt × B RP × Kt
7	B-Kt2 P-B3	B-K3 O-O	P-KKt3 B-Kt2	KKt-K2 P-K4	P-KKt3 P-K4
8	O-O R-K1	P-QKt4! QKt-Q2	B-Kt2 O-O	P-KR3 Q-Kt3	B-Kt2 P-B3
9	P-Kt3 Kt-B1	B-Q3 Kt-K1	KKt-K2 Kt-K4	O-O O-O-O	P-Q5 P-B4
10	B-Kt2 B-Q2	KKt-K2 P-KKt3	P-Kt3 B-Kt5	P-Q5 Kt-B4	P-K4 B-K2
11	P-KR3 P-QR3	O-O P-QR4?	Q-K3 R-K1	B-K3 P × P	O-O R-R3
12	P-QR4 ± (b)	P-QR3 ± (d)	P-B3 ± (i)	BP × P+ (l)	B-K3 Q-R4 = (o)

\* DIAGRAM 122  
cols. 166-170



[After 2... P-Q3]

(a) On other moves Black can attain easy equality, e.g., 2 Kt-KB3, P-Q3; 3 Kt-B3, B-B4; 4 Kt-KR4, P-K3; 5 Kt × B, P × Kt; 6 Q-Q3, Q-Q2; 7 P-KKt3, P-Q4; 8 B-Kt2, P-B3 =. Saemisch-Réti, Pistyan, 1922.

(b) Makogonov-Panov, Leningrad-Moscow, 1939.

(c) Also good is 5 Kt-B3, B-K2; 6 P-KKt3, O-O; 7 B-Kt2, P-B3; 8 O-O, Q-B2; 9 P-KR3, R-K1; 10 B-K3, B-B1; 11 K-R2, P-QKt3; 12 R-B1 ±. Rubinstein-Przepiorka, Marienbad, 1925.

(d) Capablanca-Ryumin, Moscow, 1936.

(e) Best. 4 P × P is weak: 4... P × P; 5 Q × Qch, K × Q; 6 Kt-B3, KKt-Q2; 7 P-KKt3, P-KB3; 8 B-K3, P-B3; 9 B-R3, K-B2; 10 O-O, Kt-R3; 11 P-R3, Kt-Kt3 ±. Chistyakov-Panov, Moscow, 1939. And 4 Kt-B3 is too passive: 4... QKt-Q2; 5 P-KKt3, P × P; 6 Kt × P, P-B3!; 7 B-Kt2, Kt-Kt3; 8 Q-Q3, P-Q4 =. Euwe-Réti, Maehrisch-Ostrau, 1923.

(f) 4... QKt-Q2 transposes to cols. 166-167, 4... P-KKt3 to the King's Indian Defense.

Notes continued on p. 290

Notes continued from p. 286

(e) Euwe-Flohr, Zurich, 1934.

(f) 5... P × P transposes to col. 158.

(g) If 7 Kt-B3, B-Kt2; 8 B-KB4 (on 8 Q-Q1, B-Kt5 with a difficult game for both sides is essential, but not 8... O-O?; 9 P-KR3!, Q-B2; 10 B-K2, R-Q1; 11 Q-B2, Kt(Kt)-Q2; 12 O-O, P-K4; 13 B-KKt5, R-K1; 14 QR-Q1 ±. Fine-Reshevsky, Hollywood, 1945), O-O; 9 R-Q1, B-K3; 10 Q-B2, B-Kt5; 11 B-K2, B × Kt; 12 B × B, P-K4!; 13 B × P, B × B; 14 P × B, Q-K2 =. Lilienthal-Reshevsky, Leningrad-Moscow, 1939.

(h) Reshevsky-Flohr, Leningrad-Moscow, 1939.

(i) 6 P-K3 transposes to cols. 152-155, while 6 B-B4 transposes to col. 161.

(j) Better 6... Kt × P, for if then 7 P-K4, Kt-Kt3 transposes to note (g).

(k) Weaker is 7 B-B4, O-O; 8 P-K3, Kt-B3; 9 P-KR3, Kt-QR4; 10 Q-R3, B-B4; 11 B-K2, P-QR3; 12 O-O (Reshevsky-Mikenas, Kemer, 1937), P-QKt4 ±.

(l) Or 7... Kt-B3!; 8 P-K3!, Kt-QR4; 9 B-Kt5ch, K-B1; 10 Q-B2, B-B4; 11 B-Q3, B × B; 12 Q × B ±. Petrow-Landau, Kemer, 1937. The column is Botvinnik-Flohr, AVRO tournament, 1938.

(m) 5 B-Kt5 allows Black to obtain a strong initiative by 5... P × P! (inferior is 5... B-Kt2; 6 P-K3, O-O; 7 P × P, Kt × P; 8 Kt × Kt, P × Kt; 9 Kt-K2,

Q-R4ch; 10 Kt-B3, P-K3; 11 B-K2, Kt-B3; 12 O-O ±. Loevenfisch-Flohr, Moscow, 1935); 6 Q × BP, P-Kt4; 7 Q-Q3, B-B4; 8 Q-Q1, P-Kt5; 9 Kt-R4 (9 B × Kt, P × Kt!+), Kt-K5 etc.

(n) Preferable is 5... B-Kt2, when 6 P-K3 transposes to cols. 146-148.

(o) Or 8... Q × Kt; 9 P-K4, Q-R4ch; 10 B-Q2, Q-Kt3; 11 Kt-B3, B-Kt2 (the opening moves have been transposed); 12 B-B3, O-O; 13 B-K2, R-Q1; 14 O-O, P-QR4; 15 Kt-Kt5 ±. Makogonov-Reshevsky, Leningrad-Moscow, 1939.

(p) Reshevsky-Mikenas, Hastings, 1937-38.

(q) White has several good lines. The alternatives are: (1) 6 Q-Kt5ch, Kt-B3; 7 Kt-B3, Kt-Q4! (or 7... R-QKt; 8 Kt-K5, B-Q2; 9 Kt × B, Q × Kt; 10 P-Q5 ±. Euwe-Alekhine, 2nd match game, 1935); 8 P-K4 (not 8 Kt × Kt, B × Kt; 9 P-K3, P-K3!; 10 B-Q2, P-QR3; 11 Q-R4, B-Q3; 12 B-K2, O-O; 13 Q-B2, Kt-Kt5 ±. Feigin-Flohr, Kemer, 1937, or 8 Q × P?, Kt(Q4)-Kt5; 9 B-B4, B-R3!; 10 B × P, Kt × QP!; 11 B × Q, Kt(Q5)-B7ch; 12 K-Q1, R × Bch; 13 Kt-Q5, B × Kt!+). Sokor-Volck, 1937), Kt(Q4)-Kt5; 9 Q-R4, B-Q2; 10 Q-Q1 ±. (2) 6 Q-Q3, B-Kt2 (6... P-B4 must be tried); 7 P-K4, transposing into col. 161.

(r) Fine-Flohr, Semmering-Baden, 1937.

Notes continued from p. 287

(i) If (1) 7... Kt × Kt; 8 P × Kt, O-O; 9 B-R3, Kt-Q2; 10 Q-Kt3, P-B4; 11 B-Kt5 ±, but not 11 R-Q1, Q-B2; 12 B-Q3?, P-QKt4!; 13 B-Kt1, P-QR4; 14 O-O, B-QR3 ±. Flohr-Tolush, Tallinn, 1945. (2) 7... Kt-B2; 8 B-K3, Kt-Q2; 9 R-Q1, O-O; 10 B-K2, Kt-Kt3; 11 Q-B2, P-KB4; 12 Q-Kt3ch, P-K3; 13 P × P ±. Lilienthal-Simagin, Moscow, 1944.

(j) Flohr-Tolush, Moscow, 1944.

(k) Alternatives are: (1) 5 B-Kt5, Kt-K5; 6 P × P, Kt × Kt; 7 P × Kt, Q × P =, as in col. 144. But if here 6... Kt × B; 7 Kt × Kt, P-K3; 8 Q-R4ch!, K-B1 (or 8... P-B3; 9 P × BP, Kt × P;

10 Kt-B3+, or 8... B-Q2; 9 Q-Kt3; Q × Kt; 10 Q × P, O-O; 11 Q × R, Kt-B3; 12 Q × Rch, B × Q; 13 P × Kt, B × P; 14 P-K3+); 9 Kt-B3, P × P; 10 P-K3 ±. Analysis by Keres. (2) 5 Q-Kt3 and Black must play ... P-B3, transposing to previous lines. If, however, now 5... P × P; 6 Q × BP, B-K3!; 7 Q-Kt5ch, Kt-B3; 8 Q × P, B-Q2; 9 Q-Kt3, R-QKt1; 10 Q-Q1, B-B4; 11 Q-R4+. Euwe-Landau, Hastings, 1938-39. On 5 Q-Kt3, P-B4? is refuted by 6 BP × P, P × P; 7 Q-R4ch!, K-B1; 8 Q × P+ (Euwe), for if 8... Kt × P?; 9 B-R6!+ + +.

(l) Better than 9... P × P; 10 Kt × P!,



## Additional notes continued from p. 287

Q—B2; 11 Q—Kt3, Kt—B3; 12 Kt × Kt, P × Kt; 13 B—B4, P—K4; 14 B—K3 ±. Keres—Mikenas, Hastings, 1937-38.

(m) If 12 Kt—Q2?, Q—B2; 13 B—QR3, P—Kt3; 14 P × P, B—QR3; 15 KR—Q1, P × P ≠. Kashdan—Bogoljubow, Bled, 1931.

(n) If now 5 B—B4, P × P; 6 B—K5 / (6 P—QR4, Kt—Q4; 7 B—Q2, Kt—Kt5; 8 R—B1, B—Kt2; 9 Kt—QKt1, P—QR4; 10 Kt—R3, P—QB4+. Euwe—Flohr, 6th match game, 1932. Here 7 B—K5, P—B3; 8 B—Kt3, B—Kt2; 9 P—K4, Kt × Kt; 10 P × Kt, P—QKt4; 11 B—K2, with excellent attacking prospects, should have been played—Euwe), QKt—Q2; 7 P—K3, Kt—Kt3; 8 Kt—Q2, B—K3; 9 B—K2,

B—Kt2; 10 QKt—K4, O—O; 11 Kt—B5 =. Enevoldsen—Fine, Folkestone, 1933.

(o) 5...Kt × P; 6 P—K4, Kt × Kt; 7 P × Kt, B—Kt2; 8 B—QB4 (Spielmann—Flohr, Moscow, 1935) is bad for Black, since after the eventual P—QB4 he will be playing the variation in col. 143 with a tempo behind.

(p) Also good is 6 Q—Kt3, B—Kt2; 7 B—Kt5, as in col. 158.

(q) If 12...P—B3?; 13 Kt × KtP!, P × Kt; 14 B × KtP, P—B4; 15 Q—R5, Kt—KB3; 16 Q—R4, Kt—B5; 17 Kt—K2! with an attack that is worth the piece. Veressov—Flohr, Moscow, 1944.

## Notes continued from p. 288

(g) Or 6 Q—Q1, P—KKt3; 7 KKt—K2, B—Kt2; 8 P—B3 ±. Alatorsev—Ryumin, Leningrad, 1934.

(h) If 6...Kt—K4; 7 P—QKt3, P—B3; 8 B—Kt2, B—K2; 9 B—K2, O—O; 10 Kt—B3, P—QR3; 11 O—O, P—QKt4; 12 B—R3+. Lilienthal—Khavin, Moscow, 1944.

(i) Flohr—Khavin, Moscow, 1944.

(j) 3...P—KKt3 transposes into the King's Indian Defense. Only those lines which do not readily transpose are considered here.

(k) If 5...P—K4; 6 P—K4 is best.

(l) Alekhine—Janowski, New York, 1924.

(m) Probably best. Two other possibilities are: (i) 3...B—Kt5; 4 Kt—B3 (better than 4 Q—Kt3, Q—B1; 5 P—KR3, B—B4; 6 Kt—B3, QKt—Q2; 7 P—Kt4, B—Kt3 =. Alekhine—Réti, Margate, 1923), QKt—Q2; 5 P—K4, P—K4; 6 B—K2, B—K2; 7 O—O, O—O; 8 B—K3, P—B3; 9

Kt—K1, B × B; 10 Q × B, R—K1; 11 R—Q1, B—B1; 12 P—B3, Q—R4; 13 Kt—B2, QR—Q1; 14 P—Q5 ±. Keres—Tartakower, Ostend, 1937. (2) 3...QKt—Q2; 4 P—KKt3 (correct 4 Kt—B3 as in cols. 167-168), P—K4; 5 B—Kt2, P—B3; 6 O—O?, P—K5; 7 Kt—K1, P—Q4; 8 Kt—QB3, B—Q3; 9 Q—Kt3, P × P; 10 Q—B2, Q—K2; 11 Kt × P, Kt × Kt; 12 B × Kt, P—KR4 with chances for both sides. Chekhover—Bronstein, Moscow, 1945.

(n) Or 4...P—KR3; 5 P—K3 (after 5 P—KKt3, P—B3; 6 B—Kt2, Q—B1; 7 P—KR3, QKt—Q2; 8 Kt—Q2, P—K4; 9 P—Q5, B—K2; 10 P—K4, B—R2; 11 Q—K2, O—O; 12 Kt—B1, P × P Black has a strong initiative. Gruenfeld—Réti, Pestyán, 1922), QKt—Q2; 6 B—Q3, B × B; 7 Q × B, P—K4 =. Gruenfeld—Réti, Carlsbad, 1929.

(o) Gruenfeld—Lasker, Maehrisch—Ostrau, 1923.

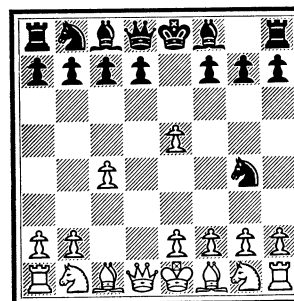
## BUDAPEST DEFENSE

1 P—Q4, Kt—KB3; 2 P—QB4, P—K4; 3 P × P (a), Kt—Kt5 (b) \*

	171	172	173	174	175
4	B—B4.....		P—K4 (k)		
	Kt—QB3		Kt × KP (l)		
5	Kt—KB3		P—B4.....		B—K2 (r)
	B—Kt5ch (c)		KKt—B3....	Kt—Kt3	QKt—B3
6	Kt—B3.....	QKt—Q2	P—QR3 (m)	P—QR3 (p)	Kt—KB3
	Q—K2 (d)	Q—K2 (i)	B—B4 (n)	P—QR4 (q)	B—B4
7	Q—Q5	P—QR3	Kt—KB3	B—K3	O—O
	B × Ktch	KKt × KP!	P—QR4	Kt—R3	P—Q3
8	P × B	Kt × Kt	Kt—B3	Kt—KB3	Kt—B3
	Q—R6 (e)	Kt × Kt	P—Q3	B—B4	O—O
9	R—B1 (f)	P—K3	B—Q3	Q—Q2	P—QR3
	P—B3	B × Ktch (j)	O—O	O—O	P—QR4
10	P × P (g)	Q × B	Q—K2	B—Q3	P—QKt3
	Kt × P(B3)	P—Q3	B—KKt5	P—Q3	Kt × Ktch
11	Q—Q2	B—K2	B—K3	Kt—B3	B × Kt
	P—Q3	O—O	Kt—Q5	B × B	Kt—Q5 (s)
12	Kt—Q4	O—O	Q—KB2	Q × B	B—K2
	O—O	B—B4	B × Kt	Kt—B4	Kt × Bch
13	P—B3 / ± (h)	QR—B1	B × Kt ± (o)	B—B2 ±	Q × Kt
		QR—Q1 =			P—QB3 =

## \* DIAGRAM 123

cols. 171-175



[After 3...Kt—Kt5]

(a) On other moves Black obtains easy equality, e.g., 3 P—K3, P × P; 4 P × P, P—Q4, or 3 Kt—KB3, P × P; 4 Kt × P, P—Q4, or 3 P—Q5, B—Kt5ch.

(b) For 3...Kt—K5, the Fajarowicz Variation, see col. 176.

(c) A new try is 5...P—B3; 6 P × P, Q × P; 7 Q—Q2, B—Kt5; 8 Kt—B3, B × Kt, 9 P × B, P—Q3; 10 P—K3, P—QKt3; 11 B—K2, B—Kt2; 12 O—O, Kt—K2; 13 Kt—Q4, Kt—K4; 14 B—Kt3, O—O—O; 15 P—B4 ±. Eliskases—Bogoljubow, 11th match game, 1939.

(d) On 6...B × Ktch; 7 P × B, Q—K2 White does best to transpose back to the column with 8 Q—Q5, for if 8 P—K3, KKt × P(K4); 9 Kt × Kt, Kt × Kt; 10 Q—Q4, P—KB3!; 11 P—B5!; P—QKt3!; 12 P × P, RP × P ≠ (Euwe).

(e) If 8...P—B3; 9 P × P, Kt × P(B3); 10 Q—Q3, P—Q3; 11 P—K3, Kt—K5; 12 Kt—Q4, Kt—B4; 13 Q—Q2, O—O; 14 B—K2 ±. Fine—Kevitz, New York, 1936.

Notes continued on p. 292

Notes continued from p. 291

(f) On  $9 Q-Q2$ ,  $Q-K2$  White has nothing better than  $10 Q-Q5$ . But Black also has no alternative to  $9...Q-K2$ , for if  $9...Q-B4?$ ;  $10 P-K3$ ,  $Q-R4$  ( $10...KKt \times P(K4)$ );  $11 Kt \times Kt$ ,  $Kt \times Kt$ ;  $12 Q-Q4+$ ;  $11 R-QKt$ ,  $P-QR3$ ;  $12 P-B5!$ ,  $Q \times P(B4)$ ;  $13 P-KR3$ ,  $Kt-R3$ ;  $14 B-Q3+$ . Bogoljubow—Tartakower, Kissingen, 1928.

(g) Not  $10 P-K6?$ ,  $P \times P$ ;  $11 Q-R5ch$ ,  $P-Kt3$ ;  $12 Q \times Kt$ ,  $P-K4!$  =.

(h) If instead  $13 P-K3?$ ,  $Kt \times Kt$ ;  $14 BP \times Kt$ ,  $Kt-K5$ ;  $15 Q-B2$ ,  $Q-R4ch$ ;  $16 K-K2$ ,  $R \times B!$ ;  $17 P \times R$ ,  $B-B4$ ;  $18 Q-Kt2$ ,  $R-K1$  with a powerful attack. Rubinstein—Vidmar, Berlin, 1918.

(i) Weak is  $6...P-B3$ ;  $7 P \times P$ ,  $Q \times P$ ;  $8 P-KKt3$ ,  $Q \times P$ ;  $9 B-Kt2$ ,  $P-Q3$ ;  $10 O-O$ ,  $O-O$ ;  $11 Kt-Kt3$ ,  $Q-B3$ ;  $12 Kt-Kt5$ ,  $P-KR3$ ;  $13 Kt-K4$ ,  $Q-B2$ ;  $14 P-QR3+$ . Rubinstein—Tartakower, Kissingen, 1928.

(j) If  $9...B-B4$ ;  $10 Kt-Kt3!$  (not  $10 P-QKt4$ ,  $B-Q5!$ ),  $B-Kt3$ ;  $11 P-B5!$ ,  $B \times P$ ;  $12 Kt \times B$ ,  $Q \times Kt$ ;  $13 R-B1$ ,  $Q-Q3$ ;  $14 Q \times Q \pm$  (Euwe).

(k) No other alternatives yield any real advantage: (1)  $4 Kt-KB3$ ,  $B-B4$ ;  $5 P-K3$ ,  $Kt-QB3$ ;  $6 B-K2$ ,  $KKt \times P(K4)$ ;  $7 Kt \times Kt$ ,  $Kt \times Kt$ ;  $8 O-O$ ,  $O-O$ ;  $9 Kt-B3$ ,  $P-Q3$ ;  $10 Kt-R4$ ,  $B-Kt3$ ;  $11 P-QKt3$  (Alekhine—consultants, Budapest, 1927),  $Q-K2$ ;  $12 B-Kt2$ ,  $P-KB3$  =. (2)  $4 Q-Q4$ ,  $P-Q3!$ ;  $5 P \times P$ ,  $B \times P$ ;  $6 Kt-KB3$ ,  $O-O$ ;  $7 Kt-B3$ ,  $Kt-QB3$ ;  $8 Q-Q1$ ,  $B-K3$ ;  $9 P-K3$ ,  $Q-K2$ ;  $10 B-K2$ ,  $QR-Q1$  and Black has a powerful attack.

(l)  $4...P-Q3$  leads to unclear complications after  $5 P \times P$ ,  $B \times P$ ;  $6 B-K2$ ,  $P-KB4!$ ;  $7 P \times P$ ,  $Q-K2!$ ;  $8 Kt-KB3$  ( $8 P-B5$  wins a piece but exposes White to a very strong attack after  $8...B \times QBP$ ;  $9 Q-R4ch$ ,  $Kt-B3$ ;  $10 Q \times Kt$ ,  $O-O$ ;  $11 Q-B4ch$ ,  $K-R1$ ;  $12 Kt-KB3$ ,  $R \times P$ ),  $B \times BP$ ;  $9 B-Kt5$ ,  $Kt-KB3$ ;  $10 Kt-B3$ ,  $Kt-B3$ ;  $11 Kt-Q5$ ,  $Q-B2$ ;  $12 O-O$ ,  $O-O-O$  (Capablanca—Tartakower, Kissingen, 1928) and now  $13 B \times Kt$ ,  $P \times B$ ;  $14 B-Q3$  is best, but Black still has some compensation for his Pawn. The alterna-

tive  $4...P-KR4?$  is refuted by  $5 Kt-QB3$ ,  $Kt-QB3$  (or  $5...B-B4$ ;  $6 Kt-R3$ ,  $Kt-QB3$ ;  $7 Kt-Q5$ ,  $KKt \times KP$ ;  $8 B-Kt5$ ,  $P-B3$ ;  $9 B-K3$ ,  $P-Q3$ ;  $10 KKt-B4+$ . Euwe—Mieses, Hastings, 1923-24);  $6 Kt-R3$ ,  $KKt \times KP$ ;  $7 B-K2$ ,  $P-Q3$ ;  $8 Kt-B4$ ,  $P-KKt3$ ;  $9 O-O \pm$ . Saemisch—Spielmann, Copenhagen, 1923.

(m) Also good is  $6 B-K3$ ,  $B-Kt5ch$ ;  $7 Kt-B3$ ,  $B \times Ktch$ ;  $8 P \times B$ ,  $Q-R5ch$ ;  $9 P-Kt3$ ,  $Q-K2$ ;  $10 B-Q3$ ,  $P-Q3$ ;  $11 Q-B2$ ,  $O-O$ ;  $12 K-B2 \pm$ . Merenyi—A. Steiner, Budapest, 1926.

(n) Or  $6...P-QR4$ ;  $7 B-K3$ ,  $Kt-R3$ ;  $8 Kt-KB3$ ,  $B-B4$ ;  $9 Q-Q2$ ,  $P-Q3$ ;  $10 Kt-B3$ ,  $O-O$ ;  $11 B-Q3 \pm$ . Kmoch—Réti, Semmering, 1926.

(o) Yates—Spielmann, Carlsbad, 1923.

(p) Again best. If instead (1)  $6 Kt-KB3$ ,  $B-Kt5ch!$  (not  $6...B-B4$ ;  $7 P-B5$ ,  $Kt-R5?$ );  $8 Kt-Kt5!$ +. Alekhine—Rabinovitch, Baden-Baden, 1925);  $7 Kt-B3$  (if  $7 B-Q2$ ,  $Q-K2 =$ ),  $Q-B3!$  (better than  $7...Q-K2$ ;  $8 B-Q3$ ,  $B \times Ktch$ ;  $9 P \times B$ ,  $O-O$ ;  $10 O-O \pm$ );  $8 P-K5$ ,  $Q-Kt3$ ;  $9 Q-Q3$ ,  $P-Q3$ ;  $10 P-QR3$ ,  $B \times Ktch$ ;  $11 Q \times B$  (Fine—Kevitz, New York, 1945),  $P \times P!$ ;  $12 P \times P$ ,  $O-O$ ;  $13 B-K3$ ,  $Q-K3 =$ . (2)  $6 B-K3$ ,  $B-Kt5ch$ ;  $7 Kt-B3$  (or  $7 Kt-Q2$ ,  $Q-K2 =$  for if  $8 B-Q3?$ ,  $Q-Q3!$ ),  $Q-K2$ ;  $8 B-Q3$ ,  $P-KB4$ ;  $9 Q-B2$ ,  $P \times P$ ;  $10 B \times KP$ ,  $B \times Ktch$ ;  $11 P \times B$ ,  $Kt \times P!$ ;  $12 B \times Kt$ ,  $P-Q4$ ;  $13 P \times P$ ,  $B-B4 \mp$ . (Tartakower.)

(q) If  $6...B-B4$ ;  $7 Kt-KB3$ , threatening both  $P-QKt4$  and  $P-B5$ , is too strong.

(r) Another inferior line is  $5 Kt-KB3$ ,  $B-Kt5ch$ ;  $6 Kt-B3$ ,  $B \times Ktch$ ;  $7 P \times B$ ,  $Kt \times Ktch!$  (not  $7...Q-K2$ ;  $8 Kt-Q4!$ ,  $O-O$ ;  $9 B-K2$ ,  $P-Q3$ ;  $10 O-O$ ,  $Kt-R3$ ;  $11 P-B4$ ,  $Kt-B3$ ;  $12 R-K1!$   $\pm$ . Tartakower—Tarrasch, Semmering, 1926);  $8 Q \times Kt$ ,  $P-Q3$ ;  $9 B-Q3$ ,  $Kt-Q2$ ;  $10 Q-Kt3$ ,  $O-O$ ;  $11 O-O$ ,  $Kt-B4 =$ .

(s) An improvement on  $11...Q-B3$ ;  $12 B-Kt2$ ,  $Kt-Q5$ ;  $13 B-K2$ ,  $Q-Kt3$ ,  $14 Kt-Q5$ ,  $Q \times KP$ ;  $15 B-Q3 \pm$ . Kmoch—Becker, Vienna, 1923.

1 P—Q4, Kt—KB3; 2 P—QB4

BUDAPEST DEFENSE	BLUMENFELD COUNTER GAMBIT				
	176	177	178	179	180
2 (P—K4).....	P—K3				
3 (P × P)	Kt—KB3				
Kt—K5 (a)	P—B4				
4 Q—B2 (b)	P—Q5				
P—Q4	P—QKt4				
5 P × P e.p.	B—Kt5.....				P × KP (p)
B—B4	KP × P.....	P—KR3.....	Q—R4ch (m)		BP × P
6 Kt—QB3! (c)	P × QP	B × Kt	Q—Q2		P × P
Kt × QP	P—KR3 (f)	Q × B	Q × Qch		P—Q4
7 P—K4	B × Kt	Kt—B3	QKt × Q		Kt—B3 (q)
Kt × KP (d)	Q × B	P—Kt5	P × QP (n)		B—Kt2
8 B—Q3!	Q—B2 (g)	Kt—QKt5	B × Kt		P—K4!
Kt × P	P—Q3	Kt—R3	P × B		B—K2 (r)
9 B × B	P—K4	P—K4	P × QP		P × P
Kt × R	P—R3	P—K4 (k)	B—QKt2		P × P
10 Kt—B3	P—QR4	P—KKt3	P—K4!		B—K2
B—B4	P—Kt5	P—Kt4	P—QR3		O—O
11 Kt—K4	QKt—Q2 (h)	B—R3	Kt—R4		O—O
Q—K2	B—Kt5 (i)	B—KKt2	P—Q3		QKt—Q2
12 B—Kt5!+ (e)	B—K2 ± (j)	Kt—Q2 ± (l)	P—R4+ (o)		Kt—Kt5 ±

(a) The Fajarowicz Variation.

(b) The alternatives are: (1)  $4 Kt-KB3$ ,  $Kt-QB3$ ;  $5 QKt-Q2$ ,  $B-Kt5$  (if instead  $5...Kt-B4$ ;  $6 P-KKt3$ ,  $P-Q3!$ ;  $7 P \times P$ ,  $Q \times P$ ;  $8 B-Kt2$ ,  $B-B4$ ;  $9 P-QR3$ ,  $P-QR4$ ;  $10 P-Kt3$ ,  $O-O-O$ ;  $11 B-Kt2$ ,  $P-R4$  with a good attack for the Pawn. Luckis—Engels, Montevideo, 1941. If here  $6...Q-K2$ ;  $7 B-Kt2$ ,  $P-KKt3$ ;  $8 Kt-QKt!$ ,  $Kt \times P$ ;  $9 O-O$ ,  $Kt \times Ktch$ ;  $10 P \times Kt!$   $\pm$ . Alekhine—Tartakower, London, 1932);  $6 P-KKt3$ ,  $P-Q3$ ;  $7 P \times P$ ,  $Q \times P$ ;  $8 P-QR3?$ ,  $Q-B4!$ ;  $9 P-K3$ ,  $B \times Ktch$ ;  $10 Kt \times B$ ,  $Kt \times Kt$ ;  $11 B \times Kt$ ,  $B-K3$ ;  $12 Q-R4$ ,  $O-O-O \mp$ . Stahlberg—Richter, Zoppot, 1935. (2)  $4 Q-Q4$ ,  $Kt-B4$ ;  $5 Kt-KB3$ ,  $Kt-B3$ ;  $6 Q-Q5$ ,  $P-Q3$ ;  $7 B-Kt5$ ,  $Q-Q2$ ;  $8 Kt-B3$ ,  $Kt-Kt5$ ;  $9 Q-Q2$ ,  $P \times P \mp$ . Gilg—Fajarowicz, Bautzen, 1929.

(c) A simple improvement on  $6 Q-R4ch$ ,  $Kt-B3$ ;  $7 Kt-KB3$ ,  $B \times P$ ;  $8 P-QR3$ ,  $Q-B3$ ;  $9 P-KKt3$ ,  $O-O-O$ ;  $10 QKt-Q2$ ,  $Kt-B4 \mp$ . H. Steiner—Fajarowicz, Wiesbaden, 1928.

(d) After  $7...B-Kt3$ ;  $8 Kt-B3$  Black has nothing for the Pawn.

(e)  $12...P-KB3$ ;  $13 O-O-O!$ ,  $Kt-R3$ ;  $14 R-Q7$ . Kottnauer—Martin, match Czechoslovakia—France, 1946. Black's best chance is  $12...B-Kt5ch$ ;  $13 K-K2$ ,  $P-KB3$ ;  $14 B-K3$  but it should not suffice.

(f) Better than  $6...P-Q3$ ;  $7 Kt-B3$ ,  $P-QR3$ ;  $8 P-QR4$ ,  $P-Kt5$ ;  $9 Kt-K4$ ,  $B-K2$ ;  $10 B \times Kt$ ,  $B \times B$ ;  $11 Q-B2$ ,  $O-O$ ;  $12 P-K3$ ,  $B-B4$ ;  $13 B-Q3 \pm$ . Hoeningler—Spielmann, Vienna, 1929.

Notes continued on p. 297

## 1 P-Q4, Kt-KB3

	181	182	183	184	185
2	Kt-KB3 (a) P-K3 (b)				B-Kt5 Kt-K5
3	B-Kt5 (c) P-B4			P-QKt3 (k)	B-R4 (o) P-QB4
4	P-K4 Q-R4ch (d)	P-K3 (h) Q-Kt3	P × P	P-K3 B-Kt2	P × P (p) Kt × P(B4)
5	QKt-Q2 / (e) P × P (f)	Q-B1 Kt-K5	P × P B-K2	B-Q3 B-K2	Kt-QB3 Kt-B3
6	B × Kt P × B	B-KB4 P-Q4	QKt-Q2 P-Q3	QKt-Q2 P-KR3 (l)	P-K3 P-KKt3
7	Kt × P Kt-B3	B-Q3 Kt-Q2	P-B3 QKt-Q2	B-R4 P-Q3	B-B4 B-Kt2
8	Kt × Kt (g) KtP × Kt	O-O B-Q3	B-Q3 P-QKt3	P-B3 P-B4	KKt-K2 O-O
9	B-Q3 P-Q4	B × B Q × B	Kt-B4 B-Kt2	P-KR3 (m) O-O	P-QR3 P-Q3
10	O-O QB-Kt2	P-B4 O-O	Q-K2 Q-B2	O-O Kt-B3	R-QKtr B-K3
11	Q-K2 O-O-O	Q-B2 Kt(K5)-B3	O-O O-O	Q-K2 Kt-KR4	Kt-Q5 B × Kt
12	Kt-Kt3 Q-Kt3 =	BP × P KP × P = (i)	KR-K1 KR-K1 = (j)	B × B Q × B = (n)	B × B Q-Q2 = (q)

(a) 2 Kt-Q2, P-Q4; 3 P-K3, B-Kt5; 4 P-KB3, B-B4; 5 P-QB4, P-B3; 6 Q-Kt3, Q-B2; 7 Kt-K2, P-K3; 8 Kt-B3, B-Kt3 =. Czerniak-Capablanca, Buenos Aires, 1939.

(b) Unusual defenses are (1) 2...P-QKt4 (the Polish Defense); 3 P-K3, P-QR3; 4 B-Q3, B-Kt2; 5 QKt-Q2, P-K3; 6 O-O (better 6 P-K4 ±), P-B4; 7 P-B4, KtP × P; 8 Kt × P, Kt-B3; 9 P-QKt3, Q-B2, 10 B-Kt2, P × P; 11 P × P, Kt-QKt5 =. Thomas-Saemisch, Marienbad, 1925. If here 3 P-K4?, Kt × P; 4 B × P, P-K3; 5 O-O, B-K2; 6 QKt-Q2, Kt-KB3; 7 Q-K2, B-Kt2; 8 R-K1, O-O; 9 P-B3, P-B4; 10 Kt-B1, Kt-B3 ±. Foltys-Richter, Stuttgart, 1939. (2) 2...Kt-K5 (sometimes called the Doery Defense); 3 KKt-Q2, P-Q4; 4 Kt × Kt, P × Kt; 5 Kt-B3, B-B4; 6 P-KKt4 /, B × P; 7 Kt ×

P, P-K4; 8 P × P, Q × Qch; 9 K × Q, Kt-B3; 10 P-KB4, O-O-Och; 11 B-Q2, Kt-Q5; 12 Kt-B2 ±. Keres-Becker, Vienna, 1937.

(c) On 3 P-K3, P-Q4 transposes to the Colle System, 3...P-QKt3 to the Q-Indian.

(d) If 4...P-KR3; 5 B × Kt, Q × B; 6 Kt-B3, P × P; 7 P-K5, Q-Q1; 8 Q × P (better than 8 Kt × P, Kt-B3; 9 Kt × Kt, KtP × Kt =. Torre-Saemisch, Marienbad, 1925), Kt-B3; 9 Q-K3, P-Q4; 10 Kt-K2 (an improvement on 10 P × P e.p., B × P; 11 O-O-O, Q-K2 ±. Steiner-Fine, 1st match game, 1944), B-K2; 11 Kt(K2)-Q4, O-O; 12 B-Q3 ±. On 4...Q-Kt3 White's best line is the speculative 5 B × Kt, P × B; 6 P-Q5 /, Q × P; 7 QKt-Q2.

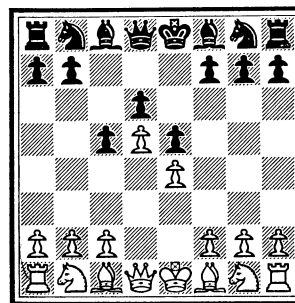
Notes continued on p. 297

## 1 P-Q4

	BENONI COUNTER GAMBIT				
	186	187	188	189	190
1	(Kt-KB3)	P-K3 (d)	P-QB4		
2	(B-Kt5) P-B4	Kt-Q2 (e) P-QB4	P-Q5 (g) P-K4		
3	P × P Kt-K5	P × P Q-R4	P-K4 P-Q3 *		
4	B-B4 (a) QKt-B3	P-QB3 Q × P(B4)	Kt-QB3... B-K2 (h)	P-KB4 P-B4	P × P
5	Q-Q5? P-B4 /	P-KKt3 Kt-KB3	B-Q3 B-Kt4	Kt-QB3 Kt-KB3	B × P Q-R5ch (k)
6	Q × P (b) P-Q4	B-Kt2 P-Q4	Kt-B3 B × B	Kt-B3 P-QR3	P-Kt3 Q-K2
7	Q-R5ch P-Kt3	KKt-B3 Q-B2	Q × B Kt-KR3	P × KP QP × P	Kt-KB3 / (l) Q × Pch (m)
8	Q-R4 Kt-Q5	O-O Kt-B3	P-KR3 P-B4	B-Kt5 B-Q3	K-B2 Kt-KB3 (n)
9	B-K5 Kt × Pch	P-K4 / ? B-K2	Q-Kt5 / O-O	P × P B × P	B-R3 / K-Q1
10	K-Q1 Kt × R	P × P Kt × P	Q × Q R × Q	B-Q3 B × B	Kt-B3 Q-Kt3
11	B × R Q-R4	Kt-B4 O-O	Kt-KKt5 P-KKt3	Q × B O-O	B × B K × B
12	Kt-QB3 Kt × Ktch ± (c)	Kt-K3 Kt-B3 ± (f)	P-B4 / + (i) O-O ± (j)		R-K1 + (o)

## \* DIAGRAM 124

cols. 188-190



[After 3...P-Q3]

(a) 4 B-R4, Kt × QBP transposes to col. 185.

(b) Or 6 P-KB3, P-K3; 7 Q-Q1, P-K4; 8 B-K3, Q-R5ch; 9 P-Kt3, Kt × KtP; 10 B-B2, Q-K5ch; 11 P-B3, Q × KtP; 12 P × Kt, Q × R; 13 Q-B2, P-Q3; 14 P × P, B-K3; 15 P-QB4, B × QP+.

(c) 13 B × Kt, Q × RP; 14 P-K3, Q-Kt8ch; 15 K-K2, P-Q5 / Tolush-Boleslavsky, Moscow, 1945.

(d) The Polish Defense 1...P-QKt4 is met by 2 P-K4, B-Kt2; 3 P-KB3, e.g., 3...P-QR3; 4 P-QB4, P × P; 5 B × P, P-K3; 6 Kt-B3, P-Q4?; 7 Q-Kt3 /, Kt-QB3; 8 P × P, Kt × P; 9 Q × B, R-Kt1?; 10 Q × RP, R-R1; 11 B-Kt5ch, K-K2; 12 P-Q6ch, resigns. Euwe-Abrahams, Bournemouth, 1939. Other moves transpose into previously considered lines.

Notes continued on p. 298

## BENONI COUNTER GAMBIT

1 P-Q4, P-QB4; 2 P-Q5\*

191	192	193	194	195
2 (P-K4).....			Kt-KB3	
3 (P-K4).....	P-QB4.....	Kt-KB3 (g)	P-QB4.....	Kt-KB3 (m)
(P-Q3)	P-Q3	P-Q3	P-Q3 (i)	P-Q3
4 B-Q3 (a)	Kt-QB3	P-KKt3	Kt-KB3 (j)	Kt-B3 (n)
P-QR3	Kt-KB3 (c)	P-KKt3	P-K4 (k)	B-B4
5 P-QR4	P-KKt3 (d)	B-Kt2	Kt-B3	Kt-Q2
Kt-K2	P-KKt3 (e)	B-Kt2	B-B4	P-KKt4
6 Kt-K2	B-Kt2	Kt-B3	P-KKt3	P-K4
Kt-Kt3	B-Kt2	Kt-K2	P-KR3	B-Kt3
7 Kt-R3	P-K4	O-O	B-Kt2	B-K2
B-K2	O-O	O-O	P-KKt4	B-Kt2
8 Kt-QB4	KKt-K2	Kt-Q2	Kt-Q2	O-O
O-O	QKt-Q2	P-B4	B-Kt2	QKt-Q2
9 O-O	O-O	Kt-B4	P-K4	R-K1
Kt-Q2	Kt-K1	P-QR3	B-Q2	O-O
10 B-Q2	B-K3	P-QR4	Kt-B1	B-B1
P-Kt3	R-Kt1	P-Kt3	Kt-R3	Kt-K4
11 P-QB3	Q-Q2	B-Kt5	Kt-K3	Kt-B3
R-Kt1	P-QR3	R-R2	Q-B2	Kt × Ktch
12 P-QKt4 ± (b)	P-QR4 ± (f)	Q-Q2 ± (h)	Q-K2 ± (l)	Q × Kt P-KR3 = (o)

## \* See p. 232, Diagram 98

(a) Weaker is 4 P-KKt3, P-B4; 5 B-Kt2, Kt-KB3; 6 Kt-QB3, B-K2; 7 KKt-K2, P-QKt4!; 8 P × P, P-Kt5; 9 Kt-K4, B × P; 10 Kt × P, P × Kt; 11 P-Q6, P-K5! ♣. Gygli—Alekhine, Zurich, 1934. Also good but less energetic is 4 B-Q3, Kt-K2; 5 P-QB4, Kt-Kt3; 6 P-KKt3, B-K2; 7 P-KR4, P-KR3; 8 Kt-QB3, Kt-Q2; 9 Kt-B3, Kt-B3; 10 Kt-R2, B-Q2; 11 Kt-B1, Kt-B1; 12 Kt-K3 ±. Rubinstein—Spielmann, Stockholm, 1919.

(b) Kmoch—Alekhine, Amsterdam, 1936.

(c) If 4...P-B4; 5 P-K4, Kt-KB3; 6 B-Q3, P-B5; 7 Kt-B3, B-Kt5; 8 B-K2, B-K2; 9 B-Q2, QKt-Q2; 10 P-KR3 ±. Belson—Santasiere, Milwaukee, 1935.

(d) Another good continuation is 5 P-K4, B-K2; 6 KKt-K2, O-O; 7 Kt-Kt3, P-QR3; 8 B-Q3, Kt-K1; 9 P-KR4!,

P-QKt3; 10 B-K3, Kt-B2; 11 Q-K2, R-K1; 12 Kt-B5 ±. Batrikov—Panov, 1938.

(e) Or 5...B-K2; 6 B-Kt2, O-O; 7 P-K4, Kt-K1; 8 KKt-K2, P-B4; 9 O-O, P × P; 10 Kt × P, B-B4; 11 P-B4+. Becker—Gruenfeld, 1922.

(f) Rabinovitch—Menchik, Moscow, 1935.

(g) Also strong is 3 P-KKt3, P-Q3; 4 B-Kt2, P-B4; 5 P-KB4, Kt-KB3; 6 P × P, P × P; 7 Kt-QB3, B-Q3; 8 Kt-B3, P-QR3; 9 P-QR4, P-K5; 10 Kt-Q2, QKt-Q2; 11 Kt-B4, Kt-K4; 12 Kt × Bch, Q × Kt; 13 B-B4 ±. Landau—Alekhine, Rotterdam, 1934.

(h) Bolbochán—Grau, 7th match game, 1935.

(i) The Bolzhsko Gambit 3...P-QKt4 is refuted by 4 P × P, P-K3 (or 4...P-QR3; 5 P × P, P-K3; 6 Kt-QB3, P × P; 7 Kt × P, Kt × Kt; 8 Q × Kt, Kt-

Notes continued on p. 298

## Notes continued from p. 293

(g) If 8 Kt-B3, P-Kt5; 9 Kt-QKt5!, Q-QKt3; 10 Q-R4, P-QR3+.

(h) Also good are 11 KKt-Q2 (Euwe) and 11 P-R3, B-K2; 12 B-Q3, Kt-Q2; 13 QKt-Q2, B-Kt2; 14 O-O, P-Kt4; 15 KR-K1, P-KR4; 16 Kt-B4, P-Kt5; 17 P-K5!+. Kunert—Redeleit, correspondence, 1928.

(i) Not 11...B-K2?; 12 P-K5!, P × P; 13 Kt-K4, Q-B5; 14 P-Q6!, P-B4; 15 B-Q3!+. Czerniak, Palau and Vuskovich—Pelikan, Holovsko and Dodero, Buenos Aires, 1946.

(j) 12...Kt-Q2; 13 O-O, B-K2 (Kmoch—Spielmann, Semmering, 1926); 14 P-R5 (Euwe). If here 12 P-K5, Q-K2! (but not 12...P × P; 13 Kt-K4, Q-K2; 14 P-Q6+); 13 Q-K4, B × Kt; 14 Kt × B, Kt-Q2 =.

(k) If 9...Q × P; 10 B-Q3, P-Q3; 11 O-O, B-Q2; 12 Q-R4, Q-R6; 13 Q × Kt, Q × Q; 14 Kt-B7ch+. Helling—Leonhardt, Berlin, 1928.

(l) 12...Q-QKt3; 13 Q-R4, Goldstein—Smith, London, 1922.

(m) Or 5...P × BP; 6 P-K4, Q-R4ch; 7 Q-Q2 (not 7 Kt-B3, Kt × KP), Q × Qch; 8 KKt × Q ± (Gruenfeld).

(n) Or 7...P × BP; 8 B × Kt, P × B;

9 P-K4, P-B4; 10 B × P+. Gruenfeld—Rabinovitch, Baden-Baden, 1925.

(o) 12...P-Kt5; 13 Kt-B4, K-Q1; 14 B-K2, P-KR4; 15 Kt-B5. Marshall—Hanauer, New York, 1937.

(p) Weaker alternatives are: (1) 5 Kt-B3, P-Kt5; 6 Kt-QR4 (on 6 Kt-QKt1, B-K2 stops B-Kt5), P × P; 7 P × P, P-Q3; 8 B-Kt5, B-K2; 9 P-K3, O-O; 10 B-QB4, QKt-Q2; 11 O-O, B-Kt2; 12 P-KR3, Kt-Kt3 ♣. H. Steiner—Saemisch, Berlin, 1930. (2) 5 P-K4, Kt × KP; 6 QP × P, BP × P; 7 B-Q3, Kt-KB3; 8 Kt-Kt5, Q-K2; 9 P × P, P-Q4; 10 O-O, P-KKt3; 11 R-K1, KB-Kt2 =. Rubinstein—Tartakover, Teplitz—Schoenau, 1922.

(q) Euwe's suggestion, which gains a tempo on 7 P-K3, B-Q3; 8 Kt-B3, B-Kt2; 9 P-K4! (not 9 B-K2, O-O; 10 P-QKt3, QKt-Q2; 11 B-Kt2, Q-K2; 12 O-O, QR-Q1; 13 Q-B2, P-K4 ♣. Tarrasch—Alekhine, Pistyau, 1922), P-Q5; 10 P-K5, B × Kt; 11 Q × B, B × P; 12 Kt-K4!, QKt-Q2; 13 Kt-Kt5 ±. Réthy—Rellstab, Brünn, 1931.

(r) If 8...P-Q5; 9 P-K5, Kt-Kt5 (or 9...P × Kt; 10 Q × Qch, K × Q; 11 P × Kt+); 10 Kt-QKt1 ±. The column is analysis by Euwe.

## Notes continued from p. 294

(e) If 5 Q-Q2, Q × Qch; 6 QKt × Q, Kt-B3 =. And if 5 B-Q2, Q-Kt3; 6 P-K5, Kt-K5; 7 B-B1, P × P; 8 Q × P, Q × Q; 9 Kt × Q, B-B4; 10 B-K3, Kt-QB3; 11 Kt × Kt, B × B; 12 P × B, QP × Kt ♣.

(f) Black can force a draw with 5...Kt × P; 6 P-QKt4!, Q × KtP; 7 R-QKt1, Q-B6; 8 R-Kt3, Q-R4; 9 R-Kt5, Q-B6; 10 R-Kt3 etc.

(g) Not 8 Kt-Kt3?, Q-K4; 9 P-QB3, P-B4; 10 Q-K2, P × P; 11 Q × P, P-Q4; 12 Q × Q, Kt × Q; 13 B-Kt5ch, B-Q2 ♣. Steiner—Fine, 3rd match game, 1944.

(h) If 4 P-B3, Q-Kt3 (4...P-KR3?; 5 B × Kt, Q × B; 6 P-K4, Q-Q1; 7 P-Q5, Q-B2; 8 Kt-R3!+. Alekhine—A. Steiner, Kemer, 1937); 5 Q-B2, P × P; 6 Kt × P, Kt-B3; 7 P-K3, P-Q4; 8 Kt-Q2, B-Q2; 9 QKt-B3?, Kt-K5; 10 B-KB4, P-B3+. Marshall—

Capablanca, New York, 1927.

(i) Alekhine—Spielmann, Semmering, 1926.

(j) Torre—Lasker, Moscow, 1925.

(k) If 3...P-KR3; 4 B × Kt, Q × B; 5 P-K4 as in note (d).

(l) Stronger than 6...P-Q3; 7 O-O, QKt-Q2; 8 P-K4, P-K4?; 9 R-K1, Kt-Kt5; 10 B × B, Q × B; 11 Kt-B4, O-O; 12 Q-Q2 ±. Keres—Petrow, Semmering—Baden, 1937.

(m) Now 9 P-K4 can be met by 9...Kt-R4. And if 9 B-Kt3, Kt-R4; 10 Q-K2, Kt × B; 11 RP × Kt, Kt-Q2; 12 P-R4, P-R3; 13 P-K4, Q-B2; 14 P-KKt4, P-K4 =. Konstantinopolsky—Romanovsky, Leningrad—Moscow, 1939.

(n) Capablanca—Nimzovitch, New York, 1927.

(o) If 3 B-B4, P-Q3; 4 P-KB3, Kt-KB3; 5 P-K4, P-KKt3; 6 Q-Q2, QKt-

## Additional notes continued from p. 294

Q2; 7 B—KR6, B × B; 8 Q × B, P—B4; 9 P—B3, Q—Kt3; 10 Q—Q2, P × P; 11 P × P, P—K4; 12 Kt—QR3, P—Q4!; 13 QP × P, Kt(Q2) × P; 14 B—Kt5ch, K—B1!; 15 P × P, K—Kt2; 16 Kt—K2, P—QR3 ♯. Kotov—Boleslavsky, Moscow, 1945.

(p) Weaker is 4 P—KB3, P—KKt4!; 5 P × Kt, P × B; 6 P—K3, B—R3; 7 Q—

Q3, Kt—B3; 8 Kt—Q2, P × P; 9 P × P, Q—Kt3; 10 Kt—Kt3, P—R4; 11 P—R4, P—Q4!; 12 Kt—B3, Kt—Kt5; 13 Q—Q1, O—O; 14 B—Q3, Kt × Bch; 15 Q × Kt, Q—Kt3 ♯. Bondarevsky—Boleslavsky, Moscow, 1945.

(q) Bondarevsky—Boleslavsky, Leningrad—Moscow, 1941.

## Notes continued from p. 295

(e) For 2 P—QB4, B—Kt5ch; 3 Kt—B3, P—KB4 see the Dutch Defense, p. 302, cols. 206 and 209.

(f) Mikenas—Alekhine, Warsaw, 1935.

(g) White must play this if he wishes to obtain an advantage.

(h) If 4... P—QR3; 5 P—QR4, P—B4; 6 P—B4, Kt—KB3; 7 BP × P, QP × P; 8 P × P, B × P; 9 B—Kt5, B—Q3; 10 KKt—K2, QKt—Q2; 11 Kt—Kt3, B—Kt3; 12 B—Q3 ±. Euwe—Alekhine, Hilversum, 1934.

(i) 12... KP × P; 13 O—O, Kt—R3; 14 R × P, Kt—QKt5; 15 R—R4! Alekhine—Tartakower, Dresden, 1926.

(j) Ahues—Richter, Salzbrunn, 1933.

(k) Or 5... Kt—K2; 6 Kt—KB3, Kt—Kt3; 7 B—Kt3, Kt—Q2; 8 QKt—Q2, B—K2; 9 Kt—B4, Kt—Kt3; 10 Kt—K3, O—O; 11 B—Q3 ±. Fine—Santasiero, Milwaukee, 1935.

(l) If instead 7 Kt—QB3?, P—KKt4!; 8 B—K3, Kt—Q2; 9 Kt—B3, P—KR3;

10 Q—Q2, KKt—B3; 11 O—O—O, Kt—Kt5; 12 B—K2, B—Kt2; 13 KR—B1, Kt × B ♯. Bogoljubow—Alekhine, 9th match game, 1934.

(m) Black has no good continuation. If (1) 7... B—Kt5; 8 Kt—B3, P—QR3; 9 P—KR3, B × Kt; 10 Q × B, Kt—Q2; 11 P—KR4, Kt—K4; 12 B × Kt, Q × B; 13 B—R3, B—K2; 14 O—O, B—B3; 15 Kt—Q1!+. Eliskases—Krogus, Munich, 1936. (2) 7... Kt—KB3; 8 Kt—B3, Kt × KP; 9 Kt × Kt, Q × Ktch; 10 K—B2, B—Kt5; 11 B—Kt5ch, K—Q1; 12 R—K1, Q × Ktch; 13 Q × Q, B × Q; 14 R—K8ch+ because White has a paralysing grip.

(n) Or 8... B—Kt5; 9 B—Kt5ch, K—Q1; 10 R—K1, Q × Ktch; 11 Q × Q, B × Q; 12 R—K8ch, K—B2; 13 R × B, B × P; 14 Kt—B3+.

(o) 12... P—QR3; 13 Kt—QR4, K—B2 (13... QKt—Q2?); 14 Kt—R4, Q—Kt5; 15 R—K8ch+++; 14 Kt × P. Enevoldsen—Winz, Warsaw, 1935.

## Notes continued from p. 296

B3; 9 P—K3 ±; 5 Kt—QB3, P × P; 6 Kt × P, B—Kt2; 7 Kt × Ktch, Q × Kt; 8 Kt—B3, P—Q4; 9 P—KKt3, Q—QKt3; 10 P—QR4 ±. Alatorsev—Ratner, Moscow, 1945.

(j) 4 Kt—QB3, transposing after ... P—K4 to col. 192, is stronger. However, this position may arise by transposition (1 P—Q4, Kt—KB3; 2 Kt—KB3, P—B4; 3 P—Q5, P—Q3; 4 P—B4, B—B4).

(k) Very weak is 4... P—K3; 5 Kt—B3, P × P; 6 P × P, P—KKt3; 7 P—KKt3, B—Kt2; 8 B—Kt2, O—O; 9 O—O, R—K1;

10 Kt—Q2, QKt—Q2; 11 P—KR3, Kt—Kt3; 12 P—QR4, B—Q2; 13 P—R5+. Capablanca—Marshall, New York, 1927.

(l) Bogoljubow—Hromadka, Pistyan, 1922.

(m) This position may also arise via the sequence 1 P—Q4, Kt—KB3; 2 Kt—KB3, P—B4; 3 P—Q5. This order of moves has an advantage for Black because he thereby avoids some of White's strongest lines, such as cols. 189-190.

(n) Better 4 P—B4 as in previous columns.

(o) Gruenfeld—Spielmann, Pistyan, 1922.

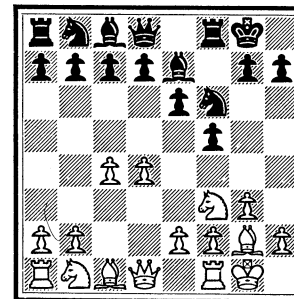
## DUTCH DEFENSE

1 P—Q4, P—KB4; 2 P—KKt3 (a), Kt—KB3; 3 B—Kt2, P—K3; 4 Kt—KB3, B—K2; 5 P—B4, O—O; 6 O—O (b) \*

196	197	198	199	200
6 P—Q4.....			P—Q3	
7 P—Kt3.....	Kt—B3		Kt—B3	
P—B3	P—B3		Q—K1 (j)	
8 Kt—K5	R—Kt1.....	Q—B2 (g)	R—K1.....	P—Kt3 (l)
QKt—Q2	Q—K1	Q—K1	Q—R4	Q—R4
9 Kt—Q3	P—B5	B—B4 (h)	P—K4	B—QR3 (m)
Q—K1	Q—R4	Q—R4	P × P	QKt—Q2
10 P—B3	P—QKt4	P—Kt3	Kt × P	Q—B2
P—QKt3	Kt—K5	QKt—Q2	Kt × Kt	Kt—Kt5
11 B—Kt2	Q—B2	QR—Q1	R × Kt	QR—Q1
B—Kt2	Kt—Q2	K—R1	Kt—B3	P—QR3
12 Kt—Q2	P—Kt5	K—R1	B—B4	KR—K1
P—B4	B—B3	R—KKt1	B—B3	R—Kt1
13 P—K3	B—B4	P—K3	P—KR4	P—K4
R—B1	Q—K1! (d)	P—KKt4	P—KR3	P × P
14 Q—K2	B—B7!	B—B7	R—B1	Kt × P
QP × P	R—B2 (e)	Kt—K1	P—R3	P—QKt3
15 KtP × P ± (c)	R—R5	B—K5ch	P—B5! ± (k)	P—R3+ (n)
	P—K4 = (f)	Kt × B = (i)		

## \* DIAGRAM 125

cols. 196-200



[After 6 O—O]

(a) P—QB4 is often delayed in order to avoid the variations involving ... B—Kt5ch. However, this precaution is not essential (see cols. 206-208).

(b) Possible is 6 P—K3, P—Q3 (better ... P—Q4); 7 Kt—B3, Q—K1; 8 Q—K2, Kt—B3?; 9 P—Q5, Kt—Q1; 10 Kt—QKt5, Q—Q2; 11 Kt—Kt5, P—K4; 12 P—K4 ±. Grob—Flohr, Rosas, 1935.

(c) Makogonov—Botvinnik, Moscow, 1940. White's handling of the opening is noteworthy.

(d) If 13... QKt × P?; 14 Kt × Kt, Kt × Kt; 15 P × P+, or 14... BP × Kt; 15 Q × Kt, P × Kt; 16 B × P ±.

(e) Again not 14... QKt × P? because of 15 Kt—Q1!, Kt—Q2; 16 P × P+.

(f) Reshevsky—Botvinnik, Nottingham, 1936.

Notes continued on p. 301

## DUTCH DEFENSE

1 P—Q4, P—KB4; 2 P—KKt3, Kt—KB3; 3 B—Kt2

201	202	203	204	205
3 (P—K3).....				P—KKt3
4 (Kt—KB3).....		Kt—KR3		Kt—KR3
(B—K2).....	P—Q4	P—Q3.....	P—Q4 (i)	B—Kt2
5 (P—B4)	P—B4	O—O	O—O	P—QB4 (l)
(O—O)	P—B3	B—K2	B—Q3	O—O
6 (O—O)	O—O	P—QB4	P—QB4 (j)	Kt—B3
Kt—K5 (a)	B—Q3 (d)	O—O	P—B3	P—Q3
7 P—Q5! (b)	P—Kt3	Kt—B3 (g)	Kt—B3	O—O
B—B3	O—O	Q—K1	QKt—Q2	Kt—B3
8 Q—B2	B—QR3	Kt—B4	Q—Q3	P—Q5
P—QR4	P—QKt3 (e)	B—Q1!	Kt—K5	Kt—K4
9 QKt—Q2	Q—B1	P—K4	P—B3	Q—Kt3
Kt—B4	B—Kt2	P—K4!	Kt × Kt	KKt—Q2
10 P—K4	B × B	P × KP	P × Kt	B—K3
Kt × P	Q × B	QP × P	B—K2	Kt—Kt5
11 Kt × Kt	Q—R3	Kt—Q3	P—K4	B—Q2
P × Kt	Q × Q	P × P	Kt—Kt3	Kt—B4
12 Q × P	Kt × Q	QKt × P	BP × P	Q—B2 (m)
P × P	QKt—Q2	Kt—B3	QBP × P	P—QR4
13 Q × QPch ± (c)	QR—B1 ± (f)	R—K1	P × BP+(k)	QR—K1 ≠
		Q—Kt3 = (h)		

(a) A variation introduced and recommended by Alekhine. See also col. 208.

(b) Probably best. Alternatives that have been tried are: (1) 7 Q—Kt3, B—B3; 8 R—Q1, Q—K1; 9 Kt—B3, Kt—B3; 10 Kt—QKt5, B—Q1; 11 Q—B2 (11 P—Q5 was better), P—Q3; 12 P—Q5, Kt—Kt5; 13 Q—Kt3, Kt—R3 ≠. Capablanca—Alekhine, Nottingham, 1936. (2) 7 Kt—K1, P—Q4; 8 P—B3, Kt—KB3; 9 P × P, P × P; 10 Kt—Q3, P—QKt3; 11 B—K3, B—Q3; 12 Kt—B3, P—B3; 13 R—B1, Q—K2 =. Flohr—Alekhine, Podebrady, 1936. (3) 7 QKt—Q2, B—B3; 8 Q—B2, P—Q4; 9 P—Kt3, P—B4; 10 B—Kt2, BP × P; 11 Kt × P, Kt—B3; 12 QKt × Kt, BP × Kt; 13 QR—Q1, Q—Kt3! =. Fine—Alekhine, Amsterdam, 1936.

(c) 13...K—R1; 14 Kt—Kt5, Q—K1; 15 B—B4. Reshevsky—Suesman, New York, 1938.

(d) For 6...B—K2 see cols. 196–198.

(e) If 8...B × B; 9 Kt × B, QKt—Q2; 10 Kt—B2, Q—K1 (Botvinnik—Ragosin, Moscow, 1939); 11 Kt—Q2 ±.

(f) Alartortsev—Ragosin, Moscow, 1944.

(g) Or 7 Q—Kt3, P—B3; 8 Kt—Q2, K—R1; 9 Q—QB3, Kt—R3; 10 P—QKt4, Kt—B2; 11 P—R4?, P—K4!; 12 P × P, P × P; 13 P—Kt5, P—K5 =. Eliskases—Ryumin, Moscow, 1936.

(h) Loevenfisch—Ryumin, Leningrad, 1934.

Notes continued on p. 301

Notes continued from p. 299

(g) This position is approximately even, and other continuations yield just as little advantage. *E.g.*, (1) 8 P—Kt3, QKt—Q2; 9 B—Kt2, Q—K1; 10 Q—Q3, K—R1; 11 P × P?, KP × P; 12 Kt—Q2, Kt—K5; 13 P—B3, Kt × Kt(B6) ≠. Flohr—Botvinnik, roth match game, 1933. (2) 8 Q—Q3, Kt—K5; 9 Kt—K5, Kt—Q2; 10 Kkt × Kt, B × Kt; 11 P—B3, Kt × Kt; 12 P × Kt, P × P =. Gruenfeld—Tartakower, Teplitz—Schoenau, 1922. (3) 8 Q—Kt3, K—R1; 9 Kt—K5, QKt—Q2; 10 Kt × Kt, Kt × Kt; 11 R—Q1, Kt—Kt3; 12 P × P, KP × P =. Capablanca—Botvinnik, Moscow, 1936.

(h) Or 9 B—Kt5, Q—R4; 10 B × Kt, B × B; 11 P × P, KP × P? (11...BP × P is correct); 12 P—K3, Kt—Q2; 13 P—QKt4, Kt—Kt3; 14 P—Kt5 ±. Chekhover—Ryumin, Leningrad, 1936.

(i) Yudovitch—Botvinnik, Leningrad, 1934. The position is difficult.

(j) If (1) 7...Kt—K5; 8 Q—B2, Kt × Kt; 9 P × Kt!, Kt—Q2; 10 P—K4 ± (Euwe) while if (2) 7...Kt—B3; 8 P—Q5, P × P; 9 P × P, Kt—K4; 10 Kt—Q4, Kt—Kt3; 11 Q—B2, Kt—K1; 12 P—B4, B—B3; 13 B—K3 ±. Steinitz—Tchigorin, Havana, 1892.

(k) Winter—Mikenas, Lodz, 1935.

(l) The position is decidedly in White's favor and the various alternatives are of approximately equal value. Besides the two lines given White can play (1) 8 Q—B2, Kt—B3 (slightly better is 8...Q—R4; 9 B—Kt5, Kt—B3; 10 QR—Q1, P—K4; 11 P × P, Kt × P; 12 B × Kt, B × B; 13 P—B5!, P × P; 14 Kt—Q5, Q—B2; 15 Q × P ±. Savitsky—Ryumin, Leningrad, 1933); 9 P—Q5! (this is important: if instead 9 P—K4, P × P; 10 Kt × P, P—K4; 11 P × P, P × P; 12 B—K3, Q—R4; 13 Kt × Ktch, B × Kt; 14 Kt—Q2, B—Kt5 =. Herzog—Flohr, Bad Lieberwerda, 1934), Kt—QKt5; 10 Q—Kt3, Kt—R3; 11 P × P, Kt—B4; 12 Q—B2, B × P; 13 P—Kt3+. Fine—Bogoljubow, Nottingham, 1936. (2) 8 Q—Kt3, K—R1; 9 B—B4, QKt—Q2; 10 QR—K1, Kt—R4; 11 B—Kt5, P—B3; 12 P—K4, P—B5; 13 B × B, Q × B; 14 P—K5 ±. Pirc—Flohr, Ujpest, 1934.

(m) Weaker is 9 B—Kt2, QKt—Q2; 10 Q—B2, Kt—Kt5; 11 P—KR3, Kt—R3; 12 P—K3, P—KKt4; 13 Kt—K2, P—B3; 14 KR—Q1, Kt—B3 =. Gruenfeld—Bogoljubow, Zandvoort, 1936.

(n) Alexander—Tartakower, Nottingham, 1936.

Notes continued from p. 300

(i) Inadequate is 4...P—B4; 5 P—Q5 (also strong is 5 P × P, B × P; 6 O—O, P—Q4; 7 P—B4, O—O; 8 P × P, Kt × P; 9 Kt—B4, Kt × Kt; 10 B × Kt, Q—Kt3; 11 Kt—B3, R—Q1; 12 Q—B2+. Gruenfeld—Tartakower, Pistyan, 1922), P—K4; 6 Kt—B3, P—Q3; 7 P—K4, B—K2; 8 P—B4, Kt—Kt5; 9 BP × P, Kt × KP; 10 O—O, O—O; 11 Kt—B4, P × P; 12 B × P, B—Kt5; 13 Q—K1 ±. Eliskases—Alekhine, Hastings, 1936–37.

(j) Weaker is 6 B—B4, O—O; 7 Kt—Q2, P—B3; 8 Kt—B3, Q—B2; 9 B × B, Q × B; 10 Kt—B4, P—QKt3; 11 Kt—K5, QKt—Q2; 12 Kkt—Q3, B—R3 =. Alek-

hine—Tartakower, London, 1922.

(k) Gruenfeld—Mieses, Teplitz—Schoenau, 1922.

(l) If 5 Kt—B4, Kt—B3 (not 5...O—O; 6 P—KR4, Kt—B3; 7 P—R5, Q—K1; 8 P × P, P × P; 9 Kt—B3+. Alekhine—Tartakower, Carlsbad, 1923); 6 P—Q5, Kt—K4; 7 Kt—B3, P—B3; 8 Kt—Q3, Kt—B2; 9 O—O, O—O; 10 P—B4, P × P =. Rubinstein—Bogoljubow, Carlsbad, 1923.

(m) Bogoljubow—Tartakower, Carlsbad, 1923.

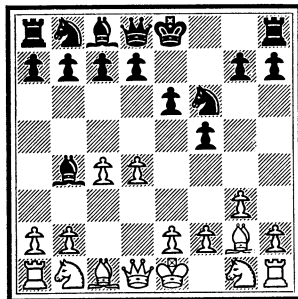
## DUTCH DEFENSE

1 P-Q4, P-KB4; 2 P-QB4 (a), P-K3

206	207	208	209	210
3 P-KKt3 Kt-KB3			Kt-QB3	P-K3
4 B-Kt2 B-Kt5ch*			B-Kt5	Kt-KB3
5 Kt-B3 O-O	B-Q2 (e) B × Bch		Q-Kt3 (n) Q-K2	Kt-KB3 (p) P-QKt3
6 Kt-R3 P-Q4 (b)	Q × B (f) O-O	Q-Kt3 (k) P-Q4 (l)	P-QR3 B × Ktch	B-Q3 B-Kt2
7 O-O P-B3	Kt-QB3 P-Q4 (g)	Kt-KB3 P-B3	Q × B Kt-KB3	Kt-B3 B-Kt5
8 Q-Kt3 Kt-R3	Kt-B3 Kt-B3	O-O O-O	P-KKt3 P-Q3	B-Q2 O-O
9 Kt-B4 B-Q3	O-O (h) Kt-K5	B-Kt4! Kt-K5	Kt-B3 B-Kt2	Q-B2 (q) KB × Kt
10 Kt-Q3 Kt-B2	Q-B2 Q-Q3	QKt-Q2 Kt-Q2	O-O QKt-Q2	O-O-O Kt × B (r)
11 P-B5 (c) B-K2	QR-B1 P-QR3	B × B Q × B	P-QKt4 O-O	Q × Kt P-Q4
12 B-B4 ± (d)	P-K3 ± (i)	QR-B1 ± (m)	B-Kt2 P-B4 = (o)	Kt-K5 Kt-Q2 =

## \* DIAGRAM 126

cols. 206-208



[After 4... B-Kt5ch]

(a) Some continuations seldom encountered are: (1) 2 Kt-QB3, P-Q4 (better than 2... Kt-KB3; 3 B-Kt5, P-Q3; 4 Kt-B3, Kt-B3; 5 P-K3, P-K3; 6 P-Q5, Kt-QKt5; 7 P × P, B × P; 8 Kt-Q4 ±. Flohr-Ryumin, Moscow,

1935); 3 B-Kt5, P-B3; 4 P-K3, P-KKt3; 5 P-KR4, P-KR3; 6 B-KB4, B-Kt2; 7 Kt-B3, Kt-Q2; 8 B-Q3, KKt-B3; 9 Kt-K5, Kt × Kt ±. Opoensky-Tartakower, Pistyan, 1922. (2) 2 Kt-KB3, Kt-KB3 (or 2... P-K3; 3 P-K3, Kt-KB3; 4 B-K2, P-KKt3; 5 P-B4, B-Kt2; 6 O-O, O-O; 7 P-QKt4, P-Q3; 8 QKt-Q2, QKt-Q2; 9 B-Kt2, Q-K2; 10 P-B5, P-QR4 =. Nimzovitch-Tartakower, Gothenburg, 1920); 3 P-Q5!, P-KKt3; 4 P-KKt3, B-Kt2; 5 B-Kt2, O-O; 6 O-O, Kt-R3; 7 P-B4, Kt-B4; 8 B-K3, QKt-K5; 9 QKt-Q2, P-B4; 10 Kt × Kt, Kt × Kt; 11 Q-B2 ±. Reshevsky-Hasenfuss, Kemer, 1937. (3) 2 P-K3, P-K3; 3 P-KB4, P-QKt3 (better 3... P-Q4); 4 Kt-KB3, Kt-KB3; 5 B-Q3, P-B4; 6 O-O, Kt-B3; 7 P-B4, B-K2; 8 Kt-B3, B-Kt2; 9 P-QR3, Q-B1; 10 P-QKt3 ±. Rubinstein-Flohr, Rogaska-Slatina, 1929.

Notes continued on p. 303

Notes continued from p. 302

(b) Or 6... P-B4; 7 P-R3, B-R4; 8 O-O, P × P; 9 Kt-QKt5!, P-Q4; 10 P-QKt4, B-Kt3; 11 P-B5+. Petrov-Keres, Kemer, 1937.

(c) Better than 11 P-B3, K-R1; 12 B-Q2, P-QKt3; 13 P × P, KP × P; 14 Kt-K5, P-B4; 15 P-K3, Q-K1; 16 P-B4, P-B5 =. Grau-Alekhine, Warsaw, 1935.

(d) Capablanca-Botvinnik, Hastings, 1934-35.

(e) Also good is 5 Kt-Q2, O-O; 6 Kt-B3, Kt-B3; 7 O-O, B × Kt; 8 B × B, P-Q3; 9 B-B3, Q-K2; 10 P-Q5!, Kt-Q1; 11 P × P, Kt-K5; 12 Q-B2 ±. Flohr-Keres, Kemer, 1937.

(f) Possible is 6 Kt × B, Kt-B3; 7 KKt-B3, O-O; 8 O-O, P-Q3; 9 Q-Kt3, K-R1; 10 P-Q5! ±. Mueller-Kunert, Vienna, 1931. Weak here is 10 Q-B3?, P-K4! ±. Bogoljubow-Alekhine, Hastings, 1922.

(g) If instead 7... P-Q3; 8 Kt-R3 (equally good is 8 Kt-B3, Kt-B3; 9 R-Q1, Kt-K2; 10 O-O, Kt-Kt3; 11 Q-B2, P-B3; 12 P-K4 ±. Euwe-Alekhine, 10th match game, 1927), Q-K2; 9 O-O, P-B3; 10 P-K4, P × P; 11 Kt × P, Kt × Kt; 12 B × Kt, P-K4; 13 Kt-Kt5 ±. Euwe-Yudovitch, Leningrad, 1934.

(h) Better than 9 P × P, P × P; 10 Kt-K5, Kt-K2; 11 O-O, P-B3; 12 QR-B1, Q-K1 =. Stahlberg-Alekhine, Zurich, 1934.

(i) Rubinstein-Loevisch, Moscow, 1925.

(j) Another Alekhine idea. Weak is 5... Q-K2; 6 Kt-KR3, Kt-K5?; 7 B × Kt, P × B; 8 O-O, B × B; 9 Kt × B, P-Q4; 10 Kt-B4, P-B3; 11 Q-Kt3!, O-O; 12 P-B3!, KP × P; 13 R × P+. Landau-Tartakower, Rotterdam, 1932.

(k) Stronger than 6 Kt-QB3, P-Q4! (an improvement on 6... O-O; 7 Kt-B3, Kt-K5; 8 O-O, P-QKt3; 9 Q-B2, B-Kt2; 10 Kt-K5, Kt × Kt; 11 B × Kt, B × B; 12 K × B, Q-B1; 13 P-Q5! ±. Euwe-Alekhine, 26th match game, 1935); 7 Kt-B3, P-B3; 8 Q-B2, O-O; 9 O-O, Q-K1; 10 B-B4, Q-R4; 11 QR-K1?, QKt-Q2; 12 Kt-Q2?, P-KKt4; 13 B-B7, Kt-K1 ±. Steiner-Botvinnik, Groningen, 1946.

(l) If 6... Kt-B3; 7 P-Q5, Kt-K4; 8 Kt-QB3, O-O; 9 Kt-R3, Kt-Kt3; 10 P × P, P × P; 11 R-Q1, P-B3; 12 O-O, P-K4; 13 P-B5 dis ch, K-R1; 14 Kt-KKt5+. Fine-Alekhine, Margate, 1937.

(m) Flohr-Bondarevsky, Leningrad-Moscow, 1939.

(n) Or 4 B-Q2, Kt-KB3; 5 P-KKt3, O-O; 6 B-Kt2, P-Q3; 7 Kt-B3, QKt-Q2; 8 O-O, B × Kt; 9 B × B, Kt-K5; 10 Q-B2, Q-K2; 11 KR-Q1, Kt × B; 12 Q × Kt, Kt-B3; 13 Kt-K1, P-K4 =. Flohr-Botvinnik, match, 1933.

(o) Makogonov-Keres, Leningrad-Moscow, 1939. 12... QR-B1, as in Euwe-Keres, AVRO tournament, 1938, is superfluous. Compare Nimzovitch Defense, p. 246, col. 44.

(p) An unusual line here is 4 P-B4, Kt-K5; 5 Kt-KB3, B-Kt5ch; 6 QKt-Q2, O-O; 7 B-Q3, B × Ktch; 8 B × B, Kt × B?; 9 Q × Kt, P-QKt3; 10 O-O, B-Kt2; 11 QR-K1, Q-B3; 12 P-K4 ±. Rubinstein-Tartakower, Budapest, 1926.

(q) Or 8 O-O, P-Q3; 9 P-QR3, KB × Kt; 10 B × B, Kt-K5; 11 B-K1, Kt-Q2 =.

(r) Better than 10... P-QR4; 11 KR-Kt1, Kt-R3; 12 B × Kt, P × B; 13 P-Q5! ±. Loevenborg-Marchand, Stockholm, 1916.

## DUTCH DEFENSE: STAUNTON GAMBIT

1 P—Q4, P—KB4; 2 P—K4\*

	2I1	2I2	2I3	2I4	2I5
2 P × P.....					P—Q3 (n)
3 Kt—QB3 (a)					P × P (o)
Kt—KB3 (b)					B × P
4 B—KKt5.....				P—B3 (k)	Q—B3
P—KKt3.....	P—QKt3.....		P—B3 (h)	P—Q4	Q—B1
5 P—KR4 (c)	B—QB4 ? (f)	P—B3 (i)	B—KKt5	B—Q3	B—Q3
P—Q3 (d)	P—K3	P × P	Kt—B3	B × B	B × B
6 P—R5	B × Kt	Kt × P	P × P (l)	Q × B	Q × B
B—Kt5	Q × B	P—K3	Kt × KP	Kt—QB3	Kt—QB3
7 B—K2	Kt × P	B—Q3	Kt × Kt	Kt—KB3	Kt—KB3
P × P	Q—K2	B—K2	P × Kt	P—K3	P—K3
8 B × Kt	B—Q3	Kt—K5	P—Q5	O—O	O—O
P × B	Kt—B3	O—O	Kt—K4	Q—Q2	Q—Q2
9 B × B	P—QB3	B × Kt	Q—Q4	P—B4	P—B4
P × B	B—Kt2	R × B	Kt—B2	O—O—O	O—O—O
10 Q × P	Kt—B3	Q—R5	B—K3 (m)	R—K1	R—K1
Q—Q2	O—O—O	P—KKt3	P—K3	Kt—B3	Kt—B3
11 Q—R5ch	O—O	Kt × KtP!	P × P	B—Q2	B—Q2
K—Q1	R—Ktr	Q—K1!	B × P	R—K1	R—K1
12 O—O—O+(e)	Q—K2	Kt × Bch+(j)	Q × KP	Kt—R3 ± (p)	Kt—R3 ± (p)
	K—Ktr ± (g)		Q—Q4 =		

\* See p. 233, Diagram 99

(a) A novel line is 3 P—KB3!, P—K3; 4 Kt—Q2, P × P; 5 KKt × P, Kt—KB3; 6 B—Q3, P—B4?; 7 O—O, P × P; 8 Kt—Kt5, P—Q4; 9 Kt × RP!+. Denker—Dake, Syracuse, 1934.

(b) If 3... P—KKt3; 4 Kt × P, P—Q4; 5 Kt—Kt5! (better than 5 Kt—Kt3, B—Kt2; 6 P—KR4, Kt—QB3; 7 B—QKt5, Q—Q3; 8 B × Ktch, P × B; 9 P—R5, P—K4 ≠. Marshall—Tartakower, Liège, 1930), B—Kt2; 6 B—Q3, Q—Q3; 7 P—KB4, B × P; 8 B—Kt5ch, P—B3; 9 Q × B, Q—B3; 10 Q × QP, P × B; 11 B—Q2, Q—B4; 12 Q—Kt3, P—KR3; 13 P—Kt4!+. Réti—Tartakower, Berlin, 1928.

(c) Weaker is 5 P—B3, P × P (also playable is 5... P—Q4; 6 P × P, P × P; 7 B—QB4, Kt—B3; 8 B—Kt5, B—Q2; 9 KKt—K2, P—QR3; 10 KB × Kt, B × B; 11 O—O, B—Kt2 =. Vidmar—Spielmann,

Carlsbad, 1911); 6 Kt × P, P—Q4; 7 B—Q3, Kt—B3; 8 O—O, B—Kt2; 9 Q—Q2, O—O; 10 QR—K1, Kt—QKt5; 11 Kt—K5, Kt × B+. Euwe—Tartakower, The Hague, 1921.

(d) If 5... B—Kt2; 6 P—R5, Kt × P?; 7 R × Kt, P × R; 8 Q × Pch, K—B1; 9 Kt—Q5, Kt—B3; 10 B—QB4 (Alekhine). The crucial variation 5... P—Q4; 6 P—R5, B—Kt2; 7 P—R6, B—B1; 8 P—B3, P × P; 9 Kt × BP, Kt—B3 has yet to be tested in practical play.

(e) Zelikov—Zubarev, 1922.

(f) Best is 5 P—B3, P—K6; 6 B × P, P—K3; 7 Q—Q2, P—Q4; 8 O—O—O, P—B4 =. Johner—Nimzovitch, Carlsbad, 1929.

(g) Brinckmann—Nimzovitch, Copenhagen, 1924.

Notes continued on p. 305

Notes continued from p. 304

(h) Inadequate alternatives are: (1) 4... Kt—B3; 5 P—Q5, Kt—K4; 6 Q—Q4, Kt—B2; 7 B × Kt, KP × B; 8 Kt × P, B—Q3 (Nimzovitch suggested 8... P—KB4; 9 Kt—Kt3, P—KKt3; 10 O—O—O, B—R3ch; 11 K—Kt1, O—O); 9 Kt × Bch, Kt × Kt; 10 B—Q3, Q—K2ch; 11 K—Q2, O—O; 12 R—K1, Q—B2; 13 Kt—B3+. Réti—Mieses, Berlin, 1920. (2) 4... P—K3; 5 Kt × P, B—K2; 6 B × Kt, B × B; 7 Kt—KB3, P—QKt3?; 8 Kt—K5, O—O; 9 B—Q3, B—Kt2; 10 Q—R5, Q—K2; 11 Q × Pch!! and mates in seven more moves. Ed. Lasker—Thomas, London, 1912.

(i) Inferior is 5 B × Kt, KP × B; 6 Kt × P, P—Q4; 7 Kt—Kt3, B—K3; 8 B—Q3, Kt—Q2 =. Weaker here is 7... Q—Kt3; 8 Q—R5ch, P—Kt3; 9 Q—K2ch, K—B2; 10 O—O—O, B—Q3; 11 Q—K3, Q—B2; 12 K—Kt1, B—KKt5; 13 P—KB3 ±. Friedmann—Range, London, 1944.

(j) Lasker—Pillsbury, Paris, 1900.

(k) On 4 P—KKt4!/? Black's best reply is 4... P—KR3; 5 P—Kt5, P × P; 6 B × P, P—Q4 ≠. If, however, 4... P—Q4; 5 P—Kt5, Kt—Kt1; 6 P—B3, P × P (necessary is 6... B—B4 or even 6... P—K4);

7 Q × P, B—K3; 8 B—Q3, P—KKt3; 9 KKt—K2, B—Kt2, 10 O—O, Q—Q2; 11 B—KB4, P—B3; 12 Q—Kt3 with a powerful attack. Tartakower—Mieses, Baden-Baden, 1925.

(l) Better than 6 B × Kt, KP × B; 7 P × P, P × P; 8 P—Q5, Kt—K4; 9 Kt × P, Q—K2; 10 Q—K2, B—Kt5; 11 Kt—KB3, B × Kt; 12 P × B, P—KB4 ≠. Teichmann—Mieses, Teplitz-Schoenau, 1922.

(m) Rubinstein—Mieses, Gothenburg, 1920.

(n) The Balogh Defense.

(o) There are a number of good lines for White. Alternatives that have been tried are: (1) 3 P—K5, P × P; 4 P × P, Q × Qch; 5 K × Q, P—K3; 6 B—K3, Kt—Q2; 7 Kt—KB3, B—B4; 8 B × B, Kt × B; 9 Kt—B3, B—Q2; 10 B—B4, P—B3; 11 P—QKt4 ±. Gruenfeld—S. R. Wolf, 1914.

(2) 3 Kt—QB3, Kt—KB3; 4 B—Q3, Kt—B3; 5 Kt—B3, P—KKt3; 6 P × P, P × P; 7 Q—K2, B—Kt2; 8 B—QB4, P—Q4; 9 B—QKt5, O—O; 10 O—O, K—R1; 11 B—KB4, Kt—K5; 12 B × Kt, P × B; 13 Kt—K5 ±. Flohr—Hasenfuss, Kemer-Riga, 1939.

(p) Euwe—Weenink, Amsterdam, 1923.

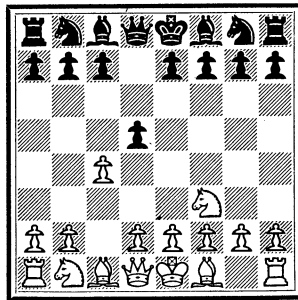


## RÉTI OPENING

**T**HIS OPENING as now used comprises all the variations where White begins with  $1 \text{ Kt—KB}_3$  and does not transpose to the Queen's Pawn or the English. The characteristic Réti Attack proceeds with the fianchetto of the KB, but may also involve the fianchetto of the QB (Nimzovitch's Attack). Both sides must be fully at home in the intricacies of position play and the numerous transpositions to handle the opening properly. However, except for its more modern offshoot, the Catalan System, the opening is not one of the strongest at White's disposal, and the variations which were a favorite with Réti and the other hypermoderns are rarely seen today.

*Réti's Attack*  $1 \text{ Kt—KB}_3, \text{ P—Q}_4; 2 \text{ P—B}_4$

DIAGRAM 127



[After  $2 \text{ P—B}_4$ ]

Black now has four replies, all of which are entirely adequate:  $2 \dots \text{P} \times \text{P}$ ,  $2 \dots \text{P—Q}_5$ ,  $2 \dots \text{P—QB}_3$  and  $2 \dots \text{P—K}_3$ .  $2 \dots \text{P—K}_3$  is the weakest, but still theoretically sufficient.

(1)  $2 \dots \text{P} \times \text{P}$  (cols. 1-5) can transpose to the Queen's Gambit Accepted, although Black has an original alternative in col. 5 note (k). If White does not transpose, Black gets a firm hold on the center and at least equality, sometimes more (cols. 1-3).

(2)  $2 \dots \text{P—Q}_5$  (cols. 6-10) sets up a Benoni Counter Gambit with colors reversed, but the extra tempo gives White much more leeway. White has nothing better than  $3 \text{ P—K}_3$  ( $3 \text{ P—QKt}_4$ , as in col. 10, allows Black to consolidate the center with advantage) when the play branches off in two directions:  $3 \dots \text{Kt—QB}_3$  and  $3 \dots \text{P—QB}_4$ .

(i)  $3 \dots \text{Kt—QB}_3$  (cols. 6-7) depends on the crucial variations in col. 6. Alekhine's old idea, with which he upset Euwe in the celebrated 22nd game of their match, has since been adequately countered; see note (b). Botvinnik's new idea, which he used against Flohr successfully in the 1944 Soviet championship (move 11), has also been satisfactorily met. These lines are however prominent theoretical problems and coming tournaments may produce some more upsets.

(ii)  $3 \dots \text{P—QB}_4$  (cols. 8-9) is one of those variations which masters have discarded for no good reason. Even if Alekhine's trap in note (k) were entirely sound (the analysis is unclear) Black can avoid it and obtain complete equality at least as easily as with the alternative  $3 \dots \text{Kt—QB}_3$ . Furthermore, it has the merit of greater theoretical justification.

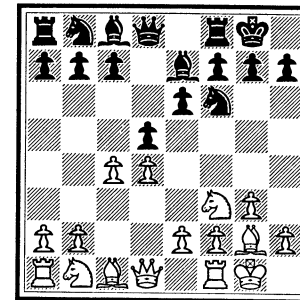
(3)  $2 \dots \text{P—QB}_3$  (cols. 11-15) was the most common line when Réti was active. White can transpose to the Slav Defense if he so chooses. If he does not so choose, Black gets the better of it in most variations and a comfortable game in all. The simple continuation in col. 14 gives Black more aggressive chances than the older lines in cols. 11-13.

(4)  $2 \dots \text{P—K}_3$  (cols. 31-37) is also sufficient if Black plays aggressively. The classic position to be avoided is that in col. 34 note (i).

*Catalan System*

The main variation runs  $1 \text{ P—Q}_4, \text{ Kt—KB}_3; 2 \text{ P—QB}_4, \text{ P—K}_3; 3 \text{ Kt—KB}_3, \text{ P—Q}_4; 4 \text{ P—KKt}_3, \text{ B—K}_2; 5 \text{ B—Kt}_2, \text{ O—O}; 6 \text{ O—O}$ . The characteristic moves of the Catalan System for White are  $\text{P—Q}_4, \text{ P—QB}_4$  and  $\text{P—KKt}_3$ ; thus it combines the strong  $\text{P—Q}_4$  and  $\text{P—QB}_4$  of the Queen's Gambit with the strong  $\text{K—Fianchetto}$  of the Réti. It may obviously come

DIAGRAM 128



[After  $6 \text{ O—O}$ ]

out of either the QP opening or the Réti; if it comes out of the Réti, it is usually in the variations with the ...P—K<sub>3</sub> defense. The Catalan System is currently one of White's most promising lines.

In the main variation there are two good replies:  $\delta$ ...P—B<sub>4</sub> and  $\delta$ ...QKt—Q<sub>2</sub>.

(i)  $\delta$ ...P—B<sub>4</sub> (cols. 16-18) is the most aggressive and equalizes most easily, but Black must be thoroughly at home in the theory of this opening to handle it properly.

(ii)  $\delta$ ...QKt—Q<sub>2</sub> (cols. 19-21) is less appetizing but in practise Black usually manages to develop properly.

Alternatives will be considered in the light of the above main variation.

*On Black's fifth move* 5...P—B<sub>4</sub> (col. 22) is somewhat premature.

*On Black's fourth move* 4...P × P (cols. 23-26) is excellent, as might have been expected. This was the variation played most when the Catalan System was first tried. 4...P—B<sub>4</sub>, although not so well known, is also a good alternative for Black.

Other alternatives on previous moves are inferior for both sides (cols. 28-30).

#### *Other Variations After 1 Kt—KB<sub>3</sub>, P—Q<sub>4</sub>*

Three other continuations have been tried here: 2 P—KKt<sub>3</sub>, 2 P—QKt<sub>4</sub> and 2 P—QKt<sub>3</sub> (Nimzovitch's Attack).

(1) 2 P—KKt<sub>3</sub> (cols. 38-39) is a King's Indian Defense with colors reversed. Black may achieve equality by following the usual lines against the Gruenfeld (col. 38), but premature counter-attacks can easily recoil (col. 39).

(2) 2 P—QKt<sub>4</sub> (col. 40) is a favorite with the American master Santasiere (who suggests the name Santasiere's Folly for it). Black has a number of good replies, of which the interesting one given in the column is the best.

(3) 2 P—QKt<sub>3</sub>, Nimzovitch's Attack, (cols. 41-44) has been taken up by some of the younger Soviet masters since Nimzovitch's death. In the ideal positions, seen in col. 42, note (c), White's bind may be very strong; it is similar to the ideal position in Bird's opening. But the opening suffers from the theoretical drawback that it gives Black a free hand in the center, and if Black sets up a solid Pawn formation there he gets the better of it (cols. 41-42).

#### *Other Replies to 1 Kt—KB<sub>3</sub>*

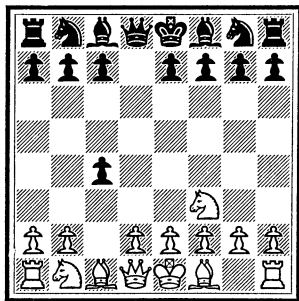
A number of miscellaneous continuations are included here. Since 1...P—Q<sub>4</sub> is such a strong reply, Black has little reason to vary. After 1...Kt—KB<sub>3</sub>, White may again try Nimzovitch's Attack, when Black has an additional good defense (col. 45).

1 Kt—KB3, P—Q4; 2 P—B4, P × P\*

1	2	3	4	5
3 Kt—R3 P—QB4			P—K4 ? (g)	P—K3 (j) Kt—KB3 (k)
4 Kt × P Kt—QB3			KKt × P B × Kt	B × P P—K3
5 QKt—K5 Kt × Kt	P—KKt3 P—B3	P—QKt3 P—K4	Q—R4ch P—QKt4	O—O P—B4
6 Kt × Kt Kt—B3	B—Kt2 P—K4 (b)	B—Kt2 P—B3	Q × B Q—Q4 (h)	P—QKt3 (l) Kt—B3
7 P—K3 P—K3	P—Q3 B—K3	P—Kt3 (e) KKt—K2	Q—KB3 Kt—KB3	B—Kt2 P—QR3
8 P—QKt3 Kt—Q2	O—O KKt—K2	B—Kt2 Kt—B4 / (f)	Q × Q Kt × Q	P—QR4 B—K2
9 B—Kt5 B—Q3	KKt—Q2 / Kt—Q4 (c)	O—O B—K2	P—KKt3 P—KB3	Kt—K5 Kt—QR4
10 B—Kt2 O—O	Kt—K4 B—K2	R—B1 B—K3	B—Kt2 B—Kt2	P—Q4 Kt × B
11 Kt × Kt B × Kt	Kt—K3 Q—Q2	P—Q3 O—O	Kt—Kt4 P—KR4	Kt × Kt O—O
12 Q—Kt4 P—B3 = (a)	Kt—B3 Kt—B2 = (d)	KKt—Q2 Q—Q2 ≠	Kt—K3+(i)	QKt—Q2 B—Q2 = (m)

\* DIAGRAM 129

cols. 1-5



[After 2... P × P]

(a) Keres—Fine, Semmering—Baden, 1937.

(b) Inferior is 6... Kt—R3; 7 O—O, P—K4; 8 P—Q3, Kt—B2? (best is 8... Kt—

B4 as in col. 3); 9 B—K3, B—K2; 10 R—B1, O—O; 11 QKt—Q2, Kt—Q5; 12 Kt—Kt3, Q—Kt3; 13 KKt—Q2 ±. Réti—Havasi, Budapest, 1926.

(c) Better is 9... Kt—B4. It is more important for Black to control the square Q4 than to occupy it.

(d) 12... Kt—Kt3 (Kashdan—Nimzovitch, Bled, 1931) is somewhat weaker.

(e) If 7 Q—B2?, B—Kt5; 8 R—B1, Q—Q2; 9 Kt—K3, B—K3; 10 Q—Kt1?, Kt—R3; 11 P—KR3, Kt—Q5; 12 P—Q3, B—K2; 13 Kt—Q2, O—O; 14 Kt—K4, KR—B1+. Réti—Nimzovitch, Semmering, 1926.

(f) If instead 8... Kt—Q4; 9 O—O, B—K2; 10 Kt—R4!, O—O; 11 Q—Kt1!, R—B2; 12 Kt—B5, B—K3 (12... B—B1?; 13 Kt(B5)—Q6! and wins); 13 P—B4!, P × P; 14 P × P, Kt—Kt3; 15 B—K4, B × QKt =. Botvinnik—Fine, Nottingham, 1936.

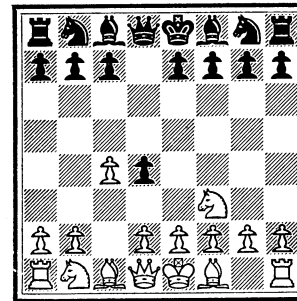
Notes continued on p. 312

1 Kt—KB3, P—Q4; 2 P—B4, P—Q5\*

6	7	8	9	10
3 P—K3 Kt—QB3			P—QB4	P—QKt4 (n) P—KB3 / (o)
4 P × P Kt × P	P—QKt4? P × P (e)	P × P P × P	P—QKt4 P—KKt3 (k)	B—Kt2 (p) P—K4
5 Kt × Kt Q × Kt	BP × P Kt × P	P—KKt3 Kt—QB3	B—Kt2 B—Kt2	P—QR3 P—QB4
6 Kt—QB3 (a) P—QB3 (b)	P—Q4 P—K4 /	B—Kt2 P—KKt3	KtP × P (l) P—K4	P × P B × P
7 P—Q3 P—K4 /	P—QR3 Kt—QB3 (f)	P—Q3 B—Kt2	P × P P × P	P—Q3 Kt—B3
8 B—K3 Q—Q1	P—Q5 P—K5 /	O—O P—K4	P—Q3 Kt—QR3	QKt—Q2 P—B4
9 B—K2 Kt—B3	KKt—Q2 Kt—K4	R—K1 P—B3 / (h)	QKt—Q2 Kt × P	P—Kt3 Kt—B3
10 O—O B—K2	Kt × P Q—R5ch	P—QKt4 Kt × P	Kt—Kt3 Kt—K3	B—Kt2 O—O
11 K—R1 (c) O—O	Kt—B2 B—QB4	Q—R4ch Kt—B3	P—Kt3 Kt—K2	O—O Q—K1
12 P—B4 P × P = (d)	Kt—B3 Kt—KB3 ≠ (g)	Kt × QP (i) Q × Kt = (j)	B—Kt2 O—O = (m)	Kt—Kt3 B—Q3+(q)

\* DIAGRAM 130

cols. 6-10



[After 2... P—Q5]

(a) Better than 6 P—Q3, P—K4; 7 Kt—B3, B—QB4!; 8 B—K3, Q—Q3; 9 B—K2, Kt—B3; 10 O—O, P—B3; 11 Q—Q2, B—B4; 12 P—B4, O—O—O ≠. Maderna—Stahlberg, Mar del Plata, 1943.

(b) Weaker alternatives are: (1) 6... Kt—B3; 7 P—Q3, P—B3; 8 B—K3, Q—Q2; 9 P—Q4, P—KKt3; 10 B—K2, B—Kt2; 11 P—KR3, O—O; 12 O—O, P—Kt3; 13 B—B3 ±. Alekhine—Euwe, 22nd match game, 1937. (2) 6... B—Kt5; 7 Q—R4ch!, P—B3; 8 P—Q3, Kt—B3; 9 B—K3, Q—Q2; 10 P—Q4, P—K3; 11 P—B3, B—KB4; 12 O—O—O, B—Q3; 13 P—KKt4, B—Kt3; 14 P—KR4 ±. If now 14... P—KR4?; 15 P—Kt5, Kt—R2; 16 P—B5!, B—K2; 17 P—Q5!+. Keres—Euwe, Noordwijk, 1938.

(c) Or (1) 11 P—Q4, P × P; 12 Q × P, O—O; 13 KR—Q1, Q × Q; 14 B × Q, B—K3; 15 P—KR3, KR—Q1 =. Lilienthal—Flohr, Moscow, 1944. (2) 11 P—B4, P × P; 12 R × P, B—Q3; 13 R—R4?, B—KB4; 14 Q—KB1, B—Kt3; 15 Q—B2, Kt—Q2; 16 B—R5, O—O; 17 B × B, BP × B; 18 Q—K1, P—KKt4 ≠. Lissitsin—Mikenas, Moscow, 1944.

Notes continued on p. 312

## Notes continued from p. 310

(g) A continuation leading to equality is 3... P-QR3; 4 Kt × P, P-QKt4; 5 Kt-K3, B-Kt2; 6 P-KKt3, P-K3; 7 B-Kt2, Kt-KB3; 8 O-O, QKt-Q2; 9 P-Q3, B-Q3; 10 B-Q2, O-O; 11 P-QR4, P-B4; 12 Q-Kt1, Q-K2 =. Bogoljubow—P. Johner, Berlin, 1926.

(h) Or 6... B-Kt2; 7 P-K3, Q-Q3; 8 Q × Q, P × Q; 9 Kt-B3, Kt-QB3; 10 P-QKt3, P-Q4; 11 P-QR4+. Tartakower—Spielmann, Moscow, 1925. On 6... Q-Q3 both 7 Q × Q and 7 Q-KKt3 are strong.

(i) 12... Kt × Kt; 13 B × B. Euwe—Spielmann, Wiesbaden, 1925.

## Notes continued from p. 311

(d) 13 R × P, B-Q3; 14 R-KB1 (14 R-R4, B-KB4 transposes to note (c), (2)), Q-B2. If here 13... B-K3; 14 P-Q4, Q-Q2; 15 B-Q3, B-KKt5; 16 Q-Q2, B-R4; 17 B-B5, Q-B2; 18 QR-KB1, B-Kt3; 19 R-R4 ±. Botvinnik—Flohr, Moscow, 1944.

(e) Another good reply is 4... Kt × P, e.g., 5 P × P, P-K4; 6 P-QR3 (6 P × P, B-KB4+), P-K5; 7 P × Kt, P × Kt+. Keres—Flohr, Perna, 1937.

(f) An improvement on 7... P-K5; 8 KKt-Q2, Kt-Q6ch; 9 B × Kt, P × B; 10 O-O, Kt-B3; 11 Q-Kt3, B-K2 =. Takacs—Rubinstein, Meran, 1924.

(g) Keres—Stahlberg, 7th match game, 1938.

(h) 9... KKt-K2 is weak: 10 P-QKt4!, B-Q2; 11 P-Kt5, Kt-Q1; 12 B-QR3, O-O? (Lissitsin—Stahlberg, Moscow, 1935); 13 Kt × QP, P-K5; 14 R × P, Kt-K3; 15 Kt × Kt, B × Kt; 16 P-Q4!+.

(i) If 12 B-Kt2, B-Q2+, but not 12... Kt-K2?; 13 Kt × QP, P × Kt; 14 B × Ktch, P × B; 15 B-R3+.

(j) 13 B × Ktch, B-Q2 (not 13... K-Q1; 14 Q-R5ch, Q-Kt3; 15 Q-Q5ch, K-B2; 16 Q-B7ch+, or here 14... P-Kt3; 15 Q-R3+); 14 B × Bch, Q × B; 15 Q-Kt3, Kt-K2; 16 P-Q4, O-O; 17 P × P, P × P; 18 B-K3.

(k) If 4... P-B3, to transpose to col. 10, White can try Alekhine's suggestion 5 P × QP, P × QP; 6 P-B5!, P-K4; 7 B-QB4, P-QR4; 8 Q-R4ch, B-Q2; 9 P-

(j) 3 Q-R4ch may be best; it can transpose to cols. 23-26, or 35, or to the Queen's Gambit Accepted, cols. 14-16.

(k) An enterprising alternative is 3... Kt-QB3; 4 B × P, P-K4; 5 Q-Kt3?, Kt-R3; 6 P-Q4, P-K5; 7 KKt-Q2, P-B4; 8 Kt-QB3, B-Q2; 9 Q-Q1 (not 9 Q × P?, R-QKt1; 10 Q-R6, R-Kt3; 11 Q-R4, Kt × P+. Kmoch), Q-Kt4; 10 O-O, O-O-O; 11 P-QR3, Kt-KKt5; 12 Q-K1, P-KR4 ±. Bogoljubow—Leonhardt, Magdeburg, 1927.

(l) 6 P-Q4 transposes into regular variations of the Queen's Gambit Accepted.

(m) Keres—Fine, Zandvoort, 1936.

Kt5!, for if 9... B × BP?; 10 B × Kt, R × B; 11 Q-B4++ (Alekhine). Best for Black is 9... Q-B1 with unclear complications. If here 5 KtP × P (instead of 5 KP × P), P-K4 ±, for if 6 Kt × KP!?, P × Kt; 7 Q-R5ch, K-K2; 8 Q × Pch, K-B2; 9 Q × P, Q-B2; 10 Q-Q5ch, B-K3; 11 Q-B3ch, Kt-B3; 12 P-Q4, Kt-B3; 13 B-Q2, R-K1+. Capablanca—Schenk, simultaneous exhibition, Prague, 1935.

(l) Weaker is 6 KP × P, P × QP; 7 P-Q3, Kt-KR3; 8 P-Kt3, O-O; 9 B-Kt2, P-K4; 10 O-O, P-B4; 11 R-K1, Kt-B2; 12 QKt-Q2, Kt-B3; 13 P-Kt5, Kt-K2; 14 P-QR4, R-Kt1; 15 B-QR3, R-K1 ±. Pogrebisky—Ragosin, Moscow, 1939.

(m) Tarrasch—Alekhine, Semmering, 1926.

(n) 3 P-K4 leads to a Benoni Counter Gambit with a move in hand. Cf. Queen's Pawn Game, cols. 188-195.

(o) More precise than 3... P-QB4; 4 P-K3 which transposes into col. 9. Inferior is 3... P-KKt3; 4 P-Kt3, B-Kt2; 5 B-KKt2, Kt-KB3; 6 P-Q3, O-O; 7 QKt-Q2, P-B4; 8 Kt-Kt3, P × P; 9 B-Kt2, Kt-B3; 10 QKt × P+. Réti—Rubinstein, Carlsbad, 1923.

(p) Or 4 P-K3, P-K4; 5 P × P, P-K5!; 6 Q-K2, Q-K2; 7 Kt-Kt1, Kt-B3; 8 Q-K3, Kt × KtP+. Lokvenc—Addicks, Prague, 1931.

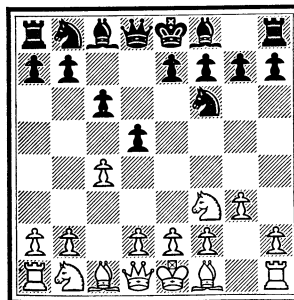
(q) 13 P-K3, P × P; 14 P × P, Kt-KKt5; 15 Q-Q2, Q-R4. Kleefstra—Euwe, Amsterdam, 1933.

## 1 Kt-KB3, P-Q4; 2 P-B4, P-QB3; 3 P-KKt3 (a), Kt-B3\*

	11	12	13	14	15
4 B-Kt2					
B-B4.....					B-Kt5 (o)
5 P-Kt3				P-K3	Kt-K5
QKt-Q2.....					B-R4
6 B-Kt2				B-Kt2	P-Kt3
P-K3				B-Q3	QKt-Q2 (p)
7 O-O				O-O	Kt × Kt
B-Q3.....			P-KR3	O-O	Q × Kt
8 P-Q3.....	P-Q4		P-Q3 (i)	P-Q3	B-Kt2
O-O (b)	P-KR3		B-B4 (j)	Q-K2	P-K3
9 QKt-Q2 (c)	QKt-Q2	QKt-Q2	Kt-B3	O-O	O-O
P-K4 (d)	O-O (g)	O-O (k)	P × P		B-Q3
10 P × P (e)	Kt-R4	Q-B2 (l)	P-K4		P-Q3
P × P	B-R2	Q-K2	B-KKt5		Q-K2
11 R-B1	B-KR3	P-K4	QP × P		Q-B2
Q-K2	Q-K2	P × KP	P-K4		O-O
12 R-B2	P-K3	P × P	Q-B2		P-K4
P-QR4!	B-R6	B-R2	P-QR4		P × KP
13 P-QR4	B-B3	P-QR3	P-KR3		P × P
P-R3	P-QKt4	P-QR4	B × Kt		B-B4
14 Q-R1	P × KtP	P-R3 (m)	B × B		Kt-Q2
KR-K1 ± (f)	P × P ± (h)	KR-Q1 =	Kt-R3 ± (n)		QR-Q1 = (q)

## \* DIAGRAM 131

cols. 11-15



[After 3... Kt-B3]

(a) 3 P-Q4 transposes to the Slav Defense. A curious variation is 3 P-QKt3, B-Kt5; 4 Kt-K5, B-R4; 5 P-B4, P-

B3; 6 Kt-KB3, P-K4!; 7 P-Q3?, B-Q3; 8 KBP × P, BP × P; 9 B-Kt2, P-Q5 ±. Ozols—Bogoljubow, Kemerí—Riga, 1939.

(b) Weaker alternatives are: (1) 8... P-KR3; 9 QKt-Q2, O-O; 10 P × P, KP × P; 11 P-K4, B-KKt5; 12 P-KR3, B × Kt; 13 Kt × B, R-K1; 14 Kt-R4, P × P =. Bogoljubow—Staelin, Zurich, 1934. (2) 8... P-K4?; 9 P-K4!, B-K3 (9... P × KP?; 10 P × P, Kt × P; 11 Kt-R4+); 10 KP × P, BP × P; 11 P-Q4, P-K5; 12 Kt-Kt5, O-O; 13 P × P+. Romanovsky—Rabinovitch, Moscow, 1924.

(c) Slightly better is 9 Kt-B3, Q-K2 (if now 9... P-K4; 10 P × P, P × P; 11 P-K4! ±); 10 R-K1, P-K4; 11 P × P, P × P; 12 P-K4, P × P; 13 P × P, B-Kt3; 14 Kt-KR4 (Mueller—Lillenthal, Budapest, 1933), B-R6! =.

Notes continued on p. 315

## CATALAN SYSTEM (a)

1 P-Q4, Kt-KB3; 2 P-QB4, P-K3; 3 Kt-KB3, P-Q4;  
4 P-KKt3, B-K2; 5 B-Kt2, O-O; 6 O-O\*

16	17	18	19	20
6 P-B4.....			QKt-Q2 (k)	
7 P × QP Kt × P (b)			Kt-B3 P-B3.....	P × P
8 P-K4.....	Kt-B3		P-Kt3	P-K4
Kt-Kt3....	Kt-KB3 (e)	Kt × Kt (i)	P-QR3 ! (l)	P-B3 (n)
9 Kt-B3 P × P	Kt-B3 P × P	P × Kt P × P	B-Kt2 P-QKt4	P-QR4 P-QR4 (o)
10 Kt × P Kt-B3 ! (c)	Kt × P Kt-B3 (f)	P × P B-Q2	Kt-K5 Kt × Kt	Q-K2 Kt-Kt3
11 Kt × Kt (d) P × Kt	Kt × Kt P × Kt	Kt-K5 Kt-B3	P × Kt Kt-Q2	R-Q1 B-Kt5
12 Q-K2 P-K4	Q-B2 (g) B-R3	Kt × B Q × Kt	P × QP BP × P	Kt-K5 Q-K2
13 B-K3 B-K3	R-Q1 Q-R4	P-K3 KR-Q1	P-K4 P-Q5 !	B-K3 B-Q2
14 KR-Q1 Q-B2	B-Q2 Q-R4	R-Kt1 QR-B1	Kt-K2 Kt × P	Kt × P(B4) Kt × Kt
15 QR-B1 Q-Kt2 =	Q-R4 ± (h)	B-Q2 P-QKt3 = (j)	Kt × P Q-Kt3 = (m)	Q × Kt (p) P-K4 ! = (q)

\* See p. 307, Diagram 128

(a) The Catalan System can arise either from a pure Réti Opening (see col. 31) or a Queen's Pawn. Since the latter is the more usual order of moves, we have adopted it here.

(b) 7...KP × P is weak because it transposes into the disadvantageous Tarrasch Defense to the Queen's Gambit Declined.

(c) If instead 10...B-B3?; 11 KKt-Kt5!, Kt-B3; 12 B-K3, Kt-B5; 13 B-B5, Q × Q; 14 QR × Q, R-Q1; 15 R × Rch, B × R; 16 P-Kt3+. Fine—Kashdan, New York, 1938.

(d) Not 11 B-K3?, Kt-B5 ±.

(e) Weak is 8...Kt-B2; 9 Kt-B3, P × P; 10 Kt × P, P-K4; 11 Kt-B5, Kt-B3; 12 B-K3, B-K3; 13 Kt-Q5!, Kt × Kt; 14 Kt-R6ch!, P × Kt; 15 P × Kt ±. Alekhine—Milner-Barry, Margate, 1938.

(f) If 10...P-K4; 11 KKt-Kt5, Kt-B3; 12 Kt-Q5 ±.

(g) Better than 12 Q-R4, Q-Kt3; 13 R-Kt1, B-R3; 14 B-K3, Q-Kt2; 15 KR-K1, P-K4; 16 P-QKt4, B-Q6; 17 QR-Q1, KR-Q1 =. Ragozin—Eliskases, Moscow, 1936.

(h) 15...B-Kt4; 16 Kt × B, P × Kt; 17 Q-Kt3. Keres—Stahlberg, 5th match game, 1938. If now 17...B-B4; 18 B-KB3 !+ (Keres).

(i) An improvement on 8...Kt-QB3; 9 Kt × Kt (or 9 P-K4, Kt × Kt; 10 P × Kt, P × P; 11 P × P, B-B3; 12 B-R3 ±. Stahlberg—Esposito, Quilmes, 1945), P × Kt; 10 P × P, B × P (Keres—Stahlberg, 1st match game, 1938); 11 Q-B2, Q-K2; 12 R-Q1 ±.

(j) Keres—Stahlberg, 3rd match game, 1938.

Notes continued on p. 315

## Notes continued from p. 313

(d) Inferior is 9...Q-K2; 10 R-K1, P-K4; 11 P × P, P × P; 12 P-K4, P × P; 13 P × P, B-K3; 14 Kt-R4 ± (14 Q-K2, Kevitz—Capablanca, New York, 1931, is also good). Capablanca—Santasiere, New York, 1931.

(e) Or 10 Kt-R4, B-K3; 11 P-K4?, P-Q5!; 12 Kt-B5, B × Kt; 13 P × B, Q-K2; 14 R-K1, B-R6; 15 B × B, Q × B; 16 Q-B1, Q-K2; 17 P-QR3, P-QR4 ±. Santasiere—Fine, Syracuse, 1934.

(f) 15 KR-B1, B-R2; 16 Kt-B1, Kt-B4. Réti—Em. Lasker, New York, 1924. White now sacrificed the exchange with 17 R × Kt but against best play can hope for at most a draw.

(g) Weaker is 9...Q-B2; 10 Kt-R4, B-R2; 11 P × P, KP × P; 12 B-KR3, O-O; 13 Kt-B5 ±. Kashdan—Santasiere, 1928.

(h) Flohr—Thelen, 1931-32.

(i) Or 8 P-Q4, B-K2; 9 Kt-B3, O-O; 10 Kt-Q2, Q-R4; 11 P-QR3, QR-Q1; 12 P-QKt4, Q-B2; 13 Q-Kt3, P-R3 =. Van Hoorn—Kmocho, 1934.

(j) Equally good is 8...B-K2; 9 QKt-

Q2 (or 9 Kt-B3, O-O; 10 Q-B2, B-R2; 11 P-K4, P × KP; 12 P × P, Kt-B4; 13 QR-Q1, Q-B2 =. Euwe—Kmocho, Leningrad, 1934), O-O; 10 R-B1, P-QR4; 11 P-QR3, R-K1; 12 R-B2, B-R2; 13 Q-R1, B-B1 =. Capablanca—Lilienthal, Moscow, 1936.

(k) Not 9...Q-K2?; 10 P-K4, P × KP; 11 P × P, B-R2; 12 P-K5, Kt-K5; 13 Kt × Kt, B × Kt; 14 Q-K2, B-R2; 15 P-QR3, P-QR4; 16 P-QKt4 !+. Simonson, Newman and Phillips—Capablanca, New York, 1936.

(l) If 10 R-B1, B-R2; 11 P-QR3, P-QR4; 12 P-Q4, B-K2; 13 Kt-K1, P-QKt4!; 14 P-B5, Kt-K5 =. Capablanca and Kmocho—Euwe and Lilienthal, 1935.

(m) Keres—Euwe, AVRO tournament, 1938.

(n) Santasiere—Fine, Hamilton, 1941.

(o) For 4...P-K3 see cols. 31-37.

(p) Or 6...P-K3; 7 B-Kt2, B-K2; 8 O-O, QKt-Q2; 9 Kt × Kt, Q × Kt; 10 P-Q3, O-O; 11 Kt-Q2, Q-B2; 12 R-B1, KR-Q1; 13 Kt-B3 =. Réti—Capablanca, Moscow, 1925.

(q) Réti—Torre, Moscow, 1925.

## Notes continued from p. 314

(k) Weaker alternatives are: (1) 6...P × P; 7 Q-B2 (but not 7 QKt-Q2?, P-QKt4!; 8 Kt-K5, Kt-Q4; 9 P-K4, Kt-Kt3; 10 P-Q5, P-KB3; 11 Kt-Kt4, P-K4; 12 P-QR4, P-B6!; 13 KtP × P, Kt × RP+. Bogoljubow—Pirc, Noordwijk, 1938), P-B4; 8 P × P, Q-B2; 9 Kt-R3!, Q × BP; 10 B-K3, Q-KR4; 11 Kt × P, Kt-B3; 12 B-B4 ±. Ragozin—Ilyin-Zhenevsky, Tiflis, 1937. (2) 6...P-QKt3; 7 P × P, Kt × P (better 7...P × P); 8 P-K4, Kt-KB3; 9 Kt-B3, B-Kt2; 10 Kt-K5, P-B4; 11 R-Q5! ±. Ragozin—Rabinovitch, Leningrad, 1934.

(l) Inferior is 8...P-QKt3; 9 B-Kt2, P-QR4?; 10 Kt-Q2!, B-R3; 11 P-K4, P × BP; 12 P-K5!, Kt-Q4; 13

P × P+. Keres—Böök, Kemer, 1937.

(m) Keres—Bogoljubow, Noordwijk, 1938.

(n) If 8...P-B4; 9 Q-K2, P × P; 10 Kt × P, Kt-K4; 11 R-Q1 ±, but not 9 P-Q5!, P × P; 10 P × P, Kt-Kt3; 11 Kt-K5, B-Q3; 12 R-K1, R-K1; 13 P-B4, B-B4; 14 P-KR3, B-Q6 ±. Kan—Kotov, Moscow, 1939.

(o) Another good reply is 9...P-QKt3; 10 Q-K2, B-R3; 11 P-Kt3, B-Kt5!; 12 B-Kt2, P-B4; 13 KtP × P, P × P; 14 Kt × P, B × Kt; 15 B × B, R-B1; 16 Kt-Kt5, B × Kt; 17 RP × B, Q-B2 =. Botvinnik.

(p) Botvinnik—Lasker, Moscow, 1936.

(q) 16 P × P, Kt-Kt5!. Euwe.

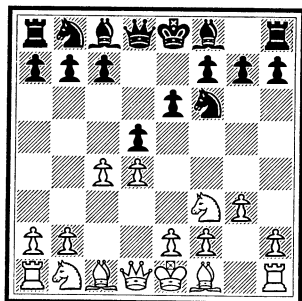
## CATALAN SYSTEM

1 P-Q4, Kt-KB3; 2 P-QB4, P-K3; 3 Kt-KB3, P-Q4; 4 P-KKt3\*

	21	22	23	24	25
4	(B-K2)		P × P		
5	(B-Kt2)		Q-R4ch		
	(O-O)	P-B4	QKt-Q2		
6	(O-O)	P × QP	B-Kt2		
	(QKt-Q2)	Kt × P	P-QR3 (g)		
7	QKt-Q2	O-O	Kt-B3		Q × BP
	P-QKt3 (a)	Kt-QB3 (d)	B-K2 (h)	P-B4	P-QKt4
8	P × P (b)	P × P (e)	Q × BP (i)	O-O	Q-B2 (m)
	P × P	Q-R4	P-QKt4	B-K2	B-Kt2
9	Q-R4	P-QR3	Q-Q3	P × P	P-QR4
	B-Kt2	Q × BP	B-Kt2	B × P (j)	P-Kt5
10	P-QKt4	P-QKt4	O-O	Q × BP	O-O
	B-Q3	Q-Kt3	O-O	P-QKt4	P-B4
11	R-K1	P-K4	B-B4	Q-KR4	P × P
	R-K1	Kt-B3	P-B4	B-Kt2	B × P
12	B-Kt2	Kt-B3	P × P	B-Kt5	QKt-Q2
	P-QR3	O-O	Kt × P	O-O (k)	R-B1
13	P-QR3	B-K3 ± (f)	Q × Q	QR-Q1 ± (l)	Q-Q3
	P-B3 = (c)		KR × Q ♯		O-O = (n)

## \* DIAGRAM 132

cols. 21-25



[After 4 P-KKt3]

(a) If now 7... P-B3; 8 Q-B2, P-QKt3 (or 8... P-QKt4; 9 P-B5!, Q-B2; 10 Kt-Kt3, P-K4; 11 Kt × P, Kt × Kt; 12 B-B4, KKt-Kt5; 13 P-K4!+. Botvinnik-Rabinovitch, Leningrad, 1938); 9 P-K4, P × KP; 10 Kt × P ±.

(b) Or 8 P-Kt3, P-B4; 9 B-Kt2, B-Kt2 =. Compare Flohr-Ragosin, Semmering-Baden, 1937.

(c) Pogrebisky-Yudovitch, Moscow, 1939.

(d) If instead 7... P × P; 8 Kt × P, O-O (Katetov-Alatortsev, match Prague-Moscow, 1946); 9 Q-Kt3, B-B3; 10 R-Q1 ±.

(e) An improvement on 8 Kt-B3, P × P; 9 Kt-QKt5 (or 9 Kt × P, Kt × QKt; 10 P × Kt, B-Q2 =), O-O; 10 QKt × QP, Q-Kt3; 11 P-K4, Kt-B3; 12 Kt × Kt, Q × Kt!; 13 P-K5, Kt-Q4; 14 B-Kt5, Q-Kt3 =. Ragosin-Lasker, Moscow, 1936.

(f) Koenig-Aitken, Bournemouth, 1939.

(g) Best. If instead 6... P-B3; 7 Q × P (B4), B-Q3; 8 Kt-B3, O-O; 9 O-O, Q-K2; 10 P-K4, P-K4; 11 P-KR3, Kt-Kt3; 12 Q-K2 ±. Or 6... B-K2; 7 O-O, O-O; 8 Q × BP, P-B4; 9 P × P, Kt × P; 10 B-K3, Q-Q4; 11 Q-B2 ±. Szabo-Flohr, Kemerli-Riga, 1939.

Notes continued on p. 320

## CATALAN SYSTEM

1 P-Q4, Kt-KB3; 2 P-QB4, P-K3; 3 P-KKt3

	26	27	28	29	30
3	(P-Q4)			B-Kt5ch (n)	
4	(Kt-KB3)		B-Kt2 (h)	B-Q2	
	(P × P)	P-B4	P × P	B × Bch	Q-K2
5	(Q-R4ch)	BP × P (d)	Q-R4ch	Q × B (o)	B-Kt2
	(QKt-Q2)	Kt × P	B-Q2! (i)	Kt-K5 (p)	O-O (r)
6	Q × BP	B-Kt2	Q × BP	Q-B2	Kt-KB3
	P-B4	P × P! (e)	B-B3	P-Q4	P-Q4
7	B-Kt2	O-O	Kt-KB3 (j)	B-Kt2	Q-B2
	Kt-Kt3	B-B4	B-Q4 (k)	Q-K2	Kt-K5 (s)
8	Q-Q3	Kt × P	Q-B2 (l)	P-QR3	O-O
	P × P	O-O	Kt-B3	P-KB4	Kt × B
9	O-O	Kt-Kt3 (f)	Q-Q1	Kt-KB3	QKt × Kt
	B-K2	B-Kt3	B-Kt5ch	O-O	P-QB3
10	Kt × P	B-Q2	Kt-B3	O-O	P-K4
	O-O	Kt-QB3	O-O	P-B3	B × Kt
11	Kt-QB3	Kt-R3	O-O	Kt-B3	Kt × B
	P-K4 (a)	Q-K2 (g)	QB × Kt	Kt-Q2	P × KP (t)
12	Kt-B5	Kt-B4	B × B	P-QKt4	Kt × P
	B-Kt5	B-B2	Q × P	Kt-Q3!	Kt-Q2
13	Q-B3 (b)	P-K4	B × Kt	P-B5! ± (q)	P-B5! ± (u)
	Q-B2 = (c)	KKt-Kt5 =	Q × Q = (m)		

(a) Better than 11... QKt-Q4; 12 R-Q1, Kt × Kt; 13 Q × Kt, Kt-Q4; 14 Q-Kt3, Q-Kt3!; 15 Q × Q! ±.

(b) Alekhine-Euwe, 14th match game, 1937, which continued 13... KB × Kt; 14 P × B, B × Kt; 15 Q × B, Q-B2; 16 B-R6!?, QKt-Q2!; 17 Q-Kt5, Kt-K1; 18 QR-Kt1, when Black's position is not easy to defend. The text is simpler.

(c) 14 B-Kt5, B × Kt; 15 P × B, KKt-Q4; 16 QR-B1, P-B3.

(d) Or 5 B-Kt2, Kt-B3; 6 O-O, QP × P; 7 Q-R4, B-Q2; 8 Q × BP, P × P; 9 Kt × P, R-B1; 10 Kt-QB3, Kt × Kt; 11 Q × Kt, B-B4 =. Pelikan-Guimard, Mar del Plata, 1944.

(e) Weaker is 6... Kt-QB3; 7 O-O, Kt-B3!; 8 Q-R4! (an improvement on 8 P × P, Q × Q; 9 R × Q, B × P; 10 Kt-B3, B-Q2; 11 Kt-KKt5, B-K2;

12 Kt-Kt5, O-O; 13 Kt-Q6, QR-Kt1; 14 B-B4, Kt-KR4 =. Flohr-Klein, Bournemouth, 1939), B-Q2; 9 P × P, B × P; 10 Kt-B3, O-O; 11 B-Kt5, P-KR3; 12 B × Kt, Q × B; 13 Kt-K4, Q-K2; 14 Kt × B, Q × Kt; 15 KR-Q1, KR-Q1; 16 P-QR3 ±. Euwe-Landau, Bournemouth, 1939.

(f) Inferior is 9 P-QR3, B-Kt3; 10 Kt-B2, Kt-QB3; 11 P-K4, Kt-B2; 12 Kt-B3, P-K4; 13 Kt-R4, Kt-K3; 14 Q × Q, B × Q; 15 B-K3, QKt-Q5 ♯. Fine-Alexander, Hastings, 1937-38.

(g) Best. If instead 11... P-QR3; 12 Kt-B4, B-R2; 13 Kt(B4)-R5, Kt × Kt; 14 B × Kt, Q-K2; 15 R-B1, B-Q2; 16 P-K4 ±. Simonson-Fine, New York, 1938.

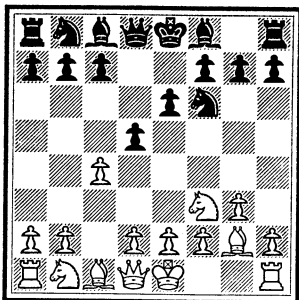
Notes continued on p. 320

1 Kt—KB3, P—Q4; 2 P—B4, P—K3; 3 P—KKt3, Kt—KB3; 4 B—Kt2 \*

31	32	33	34	35
4 B—K2			B—Q3	P × P
5 O—O		P—Kt3	P—Kt3	Q—R4ch (l)
	O—O	O—O	O—O	B—Q2 (m)
6 P—Kt3 (a)		B—Kt2	O—O	Q × BP
P—B4 /		P—QR4 /	QKt—Q2	P—B4 (n)
7 P × P	P—Q3	O—O	B—Kt2	Kt—K5
Kt × P (b)	Kt—B3	P—R5	P—B3	Kt—B3
8 B—Kt2	B—Kt2	KtP × P (f)	P—Q4 (h)	Kt × B
Kt—QB3	P—Q5	QKt—Q2	Kt—K5 (i)	Q × Kt
9 P—Q4 (c)	P—K4	P × P	QKt—Q2	P—Q3
P—QKt3	P—K4 (e)	P × P	P—KB4 (j)	B—K2
10 Kt—B3	QKt—Q2	Q—B2	Kt × Kt	O—O
Kt × Kt	B—K3	Kt—Kt3	BP × Kt	Kt—Q5
11 B × Kt	P—KR3	B—K5	Kt—K1	Kt—B3
B—Kt2	Kt—K1	Kt—B5	R—Q1	
12 P × P	Q—K2	P—Q4	P—B3	P—QR4
B × P	Q—Q2	Kt—K5	B—Q2	Kt—Q4
13 Q—Kt1	K—R2	KKt—Q2	P × KP	P—K3
Q—K2 = (d) P—KKt3 †	Kt(B5) × Kt = (g) Kt × P = (k) Kt—Kt3 = (o)			

## \* DIAGRAM 133

cols. 31-35



[After 4 B—Kt2]

(a) 6 P—Q4 transposes to the Catalan System, cols. 16-21.

(b) Best, but 7... Q × P is also playable, e.g., 8 B—Kt2, Q—R4; 9 P—Q3, Kt—B3; 10 QKt—Q2, R—Q1; 11 Kt—B4, Kt—Q4 =. Sorokin—Rausser, Tiflis, 1934.

(c) Alternatives are: (1) 9 Kt—B3, B—B3 (or 9... Kt × Kt; 10 B × Kt, B—Q2; 11 Q—Kt1, B—B3; 12 Q—Kt2, R—B1; 13 KR—Q1, B × B; 14 P × B, Q—K2 =. Takacs—Capablanca, Hastings, 1929-30); 10 Q—B1, P—QKt3; 11 Kt × Kt, P × Kt; 12 P—Q4, B—R3; 13 R—K1, Kt × P; 14 Kt × Kt, P × Kt; 15 Q—Q2, R—K1 =. Flohr—Stoltz, 6th match game, 1931. (2) 9 Kt—R3 ?, B—B3; 10 B × B, Kt × B; 11 R—B1, Q—K2; 12 Q—B2, Kt—Q2; 13 Kt—B4, R—Kt1; 14 KR—Q1, P—K4 †. Réti—Hoenlinger, Trentschin—Teplitz, 1928.

(d) Euwe—Flohr, 6th match game, 1932.

(e) Weak is 9... P × P e.p.; 10 P × P, Kt—KKt5; 11 Q—K2, B—B3; 12 Kt—B3, Q—R4; 13 QR—B1+. Capablanca—Marshall, Moscow, 1925.

(f) Or 8 P—Q3, P—B3; 9 QKt—Q2, Kt—R3; 10 P—Q4, P—R6; 11 B—B3, P—QKt4 †. Loevenfisch—Bogoljubow, Moscow, 1924.

Notes continued on p. 321

1 Kt—KB3, P—Q4

36	37	38	39	40
2 (P—B4)		P—KKt3		P—QKt4
(P—K3)		Kt—KB3		P—KB3 / (m)
3 (P—KKt3)	P—QKt3	B—Kt2		P—Q4
P—Q5	Kt—KB3	P—B4 (g)		P—K4 /
4 B—Kt2	B—Kt2 (c)	P—Q4 (h)		P—QR3
Kt—KB3	P—B4 (d)	P—K3	Kt—B3 (j)	P—K5
5 P—Q3	P—K3	O—O	O—O	KKt—Q2
P—B4	Kt—B3	Q—Kt3	P × P ? (k)	B—Q3
6 O—O	P—Q4 (e)	P—K3	Kt × P	P—K3
Kt—B3	BP × P	Kt—B3	P—K4	P—KB4
7 P—K4 (a)	KP × P	P—Kt3	Kt × Kt	P—QB4
P—K4 (b)	B—Kt5ch	B—K2	P × Kt	P—B3
8 Kt—K1	QKt—Q2	B—Kt2	P—QB4	Kt—QB3
P—KKt3	P × P	P × P	B—K2	Kt—B3
9 P—B4	B × P	P × P	Kt—B3	Q—Kt3
B—Kt5	P—QR3	O—O	B—Kt2	B—K3
10 Kt—KB3	O—O	QKt—Q2	P × P	P × P
Q—B1	P—QKt4	B—Q2	P × P	P × P
11 Q—K1	B—Q3	P—B4	B—Kt5	B—K2
B—Kt2	B—K2	P × P	P—K5	QKt—Q2
12 Kt—R3	P—QR3	Kt × P	Q—Kt3 + (l)	P—QR4
O—O †	Q—Q4 = (f)	Q—R3 = (i)		R—QB1 † (n)

(a) If 7 P—K3 ?, P—K4; 8 P—K4, P—KKt3; 9 Kt—K1, B—Kt2; 10 P—B4, B—Kt5; 11 Kt—KB3, Q—B1; 12 Kt—R3, O—O; 13 Q—K1, Kt—KR4 †. Kevitz—Kashdan, New York, 1931.

(b) 7... P × P e.p. is inferior. Compare col. 32, note (e).

(c) Or 4 P—K3, P—QKt3; 5 B—Kt2, B—Kt2; 6 B—K2, B—Q3; 7 O—O, O—O; 8 Kt—B3, P—QR3; 9 Q—B2, QKt—Q2; 10 QR—B1, P—B4; 11 P—Q4, R—B1 †. Lissitsin—Smyslov, Moscow, 1944.

(d) 4... B—K2 or 4... B—Q3 or 4... P—B3 transpose to Nimzovitch's Attack, col. 44.

(e) Or 6 P × P, P × P; 7 B—K2, B—K2; 8 O—O, O—O; 9 P—Q4, P—QKt3; 10 Kt—B3, B—Kt2; 11 R—B1, Kt—K5; 12 P × P, Kt × Kt; 13 B × Kt, P × P; 14 Q—Q2, Q—Q3 =. Botvinnik—Euwe,

AVRO tournament, 1938.

(f) Botvinnik—Kotov, Moscow, 1945.

(g) If 3... QKt—Q2; 4 P—B4, P—B3; 5 P—Q4, P—K3; 6 QKt—Q2 † (see col. 34), while if 3... B—B4; 4 P—B4 is again hard to meet.

(h) White is now playing the Gruenfeld Defense to the Queen's Pawn Game with a move in hand. Inferior is 4 O—O, P—K3; 5 P—Q3, Kt—B3; 6 QKt—Q2, B—K2; 7 P—K4, O—O; 8 R—K1, P—QKt4; 9 P—QR4, P—Kt5; 10 P—Kt3, B—R3; 11 B—Kt2, Q—B2 †. Eliskases—Opocensky, Buenos Aires, 1939.

(i) 13 KKt—K5, KR—Q1; 14 Kt × B, Kt × Kt; 15 Q—B3 (Santasiere—Fine, New York, 1938), Kt—Kt3.

Notes continued on p. 321

## Notes continued from p. 316

(h) Simpler than (i) 7...R—QKt1; 8 Q × BP, P—QKt4; 9 Q—Q3, B—Kt2; 10 O—O, P—B4; 11 P × P (or 11 P—QR3, P × P; 12 Q × QP, B—B4; 13 Q—KR4, Kt—Q4; 14 B—Kt5, P—B3 =. Keres—Bondarevsky, Leningrad—Moscow, 1941), Kt × P; 12 Q × Qch, R × Q; 13 B—B4 ±. Petrow—Alekhine, Margate, 1938, or (2) 7...B—Q3?; 8 P—K4! and Black must embark on the speculative sacrifice 8...P—QKt4; 9 Kt × P, P × Kt; 10 Q × R, Kt—Kt3 (10...B—Kt5ch; 11 B—Q2, Kt—Kt3; 12 Q—R7, B × Bch; 13 Kt × B, Q × P; 14 Q × P, O—O; 15 O—O!+); 11 Q—R7 (11 Q—R5?, Q—K2 ≠), Kt × P; 12 O—O, O—O; 13 Kt—K5, when his compensation for the material sacrificed is insufficient.

(i) Inferior is 8 Kt—K5, R—QKt1; 9 Q × BP, P—QKt4; 10 Q—Kt3, Kt × Kt; 11 P × Kt, Kt—Q2; 12 B—B4, P—QB4; 13 O—O, Q—B2 ≠. Reshevsky—Fine, AVRO tournament, 1938.

(j) If 9...O—O; 10 P—B6, P—QKt4; 11 Q—B2, Kt—B4; 12 R—Q1, Q—Kt3; 13 P—QR4, P—Kt5; 14 P—R5+.

## Notes continued from p. 317

(h) If 4 Kt—QB3, P × P; 5 Q—R4ch, QKt—Q2; as in cols. 23—26, is best. Weaker is 5...Kt—B3; 6 B—Kt2, B—Q2; 7 Q × BP, Kt—QKt5; 8 Q—Kt3, P—B4; 9 Kt—B3, B—B3; 10 O—O!, P × P; 11 R—Q1, Q—R4; 12 Kt × P ±. Keres—Ragosin, Semmering—Baden, 1937.

(i) Weaker is 5...QKt—Q2; 6 Kt—Q2! (6 Kt—QB3, P—QR3 transposes into cols. 23—26) and now (1) 6...P—B3; 7 Q × P (B4), P—K4; 8 KKt—B3, Kt—Kt3; 9 Q—Q3, P × P; 10 Kt × P, B—K2; 11 O—O, O—O; 12 Kt(Q2)—Kt3, P—QR4; 13 B—Q2 ±. Flohr—Petrow, Kemer—Riga, 1939. (2) 6...P—B4; 7 Kt × P, B—K2; 8 P × P, B × P; 9 Kt—B3, O—O; 10 O—O, Kt—Kt3 (Flohr—Euwe, AVRO tournament, 1938); 11 Q—B2!, B—Q2; 12 KKt—K5, B—R5; 13 P—Kt3 ±.

(j) If 7 P—B3, B—Q4; 8 Q—Q3, P—B4 =.

(k) Also sufficient is 7...QKt—Q2; 8 Kt—B3, Kt—Kt3; 9 Q—Q3, B—Kt5; 10 O—O, O—O; 11 R—Q1, P—KR3; 12 Kt—K5,

(k) Or 12...P—Kt5; 13 Kt—R4, B—K2; 14 KR—Q1, Q—R4; 15 P—Kt3, R—Q1; 16 Kt—Kt2, Kt—Kt3; 17 R × Rch, B × R; 18 Kt—Q3 ±. Fine—Dake, New York, 1938.

(l) 13...Q—B2; 14 R—B1!, Q—Kt3; 15 P—QKt4, B—K2; 16 KR—Q1. Alekhine—Euwe, 16th match game, 1937. If here 13...Q—K2?; 14 R × Kt!, Q × R; 15 Kt—K5, Q—B2; 16 B × Kt, P × B (16...B × B?; 17 Q—Kt5+); 17 Kt—Kt4, B—K2; 18 B × B, Q × B; 19 Kt—K4!/, KR—Q1; 20 Kt(Kt4) × Pch+.

(m) Or (1) 8 Q—Q3, B—Kt2; 9 Kt—B3, P—B4; 10 O—O, P—B5; 11 Q—B2, P—Kt5; 12 Kt—Q1, R—B1; 13 B—Kt5, Q—R4; 14 B × Kt, Kt × B; 15 Kt—K3, P—B6 ≠. Reshevsky—Fine, Nottingham, 1936. (2) 8 Q—B6?, R—R2!; 9 B—B4, B—Kt2; 10 Q—B1, P—B4; 11 P × P, B × P; 12 O—O, O—O; 13 QKt—Q2, Q—K2; 14 Kt—Kt3, B—Kt3; 15 B—K3, R—B1 ≠. Capablanca—Reshevsky, Nottingham, 1936.

(n) Flohr—Fine, Kemer, 1937.

B × B; 13 K × B, Q—K2; 14 Kt—K4, QR—Q1 =. Petrow—Alekhine, Buenos Aires, 1939.

(l) Or 8 Q—R4ch, Q—Q2; 9 Q—Q1, P—B4; 10 P × P, B × BP; 11 O—O, B—B3; 12 Q—B2, Q—K2; 13 Kt—B3, QKt—Q2; 14 P—K4, O—O =. Lillenthal—Rabinovitch, Leningrad—Moscow, 1939.

(m) 14 R × Q, P × B; 15 Kt—R4. Flohr—Fine, AVRO tournament, 1938. Black's extra pawn is useless.

(n) A new try is 3...P—B4; 4 P—Q5, P × P; 5 P × P, P—QKt4; 6 B—Kt2, P—Q3; 7 P—QR4, P—Kt5; 8 Kt—Q2, Q—K2; 9 Kt—B4, B—R3; 10 Q—B2, P—Kt3; 11 B—B4 ±. Ravinsky—Mikenas, Moscow, 1944.

(o) Better than 5 Kt × B, Kt—B3!; 6 KKt—B3, P—Q3; 7 B—Kt2, P—K4; 8 P—Q5, Kt—K2; 9 O—O, O—O; 10 P—K4, Kt—Q2; 11 Kt—K1, P—KB4; 12 Kt—Q3, P—B5 =. Alatorsev—Loevenfisch, Tiflis, 1937.

## Additional notes continued from p. 317

(p) 5...P—Q3 is better but Black does not achieve full equality. Cf. QP Game, p. 266, cols. 102 and 105.

(q) 13...Kt—B5; 14 KR—K1, P—QKt3; 15 Kt—Q2. Belavienetz—Loevenfisch, Tiflis, 1937.

(r) Or 5...Kt—B3; 6 Kt—KB3 and now (1) 6...Kt—K5; 7 O—O, Kt × B; 8 QKt × Kt, B × Kt; 9 Q × B, O—O; 10 P—Q5, Kt—Q1; 11 P—Q6, Q × P; 12 Q × Q, P × Q; 13 KR—Q1 ±. Flohr—Capablanca, Margate, 1939. (2) 6...P—K4; 7 P × P; Kt × P; 8 Kt × Kt, B × Bch; 9 Q × B, Q × Kt; 10 Kt—B3, O—O; 11

O—O, P—Q3; 12 KR—K1 ±. Alatorsev—Chekhover, Tiflis, 1937.

(s) Equally inadequate is 7...P—B3; 8 O—O, QKt—Q2; 9 B × B, Q × B; 10 QKt—Q2, R—K1; 11 KR—K1, P—K4; 12 P—QR3, Q—Kt3; 13 P—K4 ±. Fine—Steiner, St. Louis, 1941.

(t) If 11...P × BP; 12 Kt × P, P—QB4; 13 P—Q5!, P × P; 14 P × P, Kt—Q2; 15 KR—K1, Q—B3; 16 P—Q6+ (Reshevsky).

(u) Reshevsky—Treysman, New York, 1938.

## Notes continued from p. 318

(g) Rabinovitch—Marshall, Moscow, 1925.

(h) On other moves ...P—K4 can follow as in cols. 11—15.

(i) If 8...R—K1?; 9 QKt—Q2, Kt—K5; 10 Kt × Kt, P × Kt; 11 Kt—K5, P—KB4; 12 P—B3, P × P; 13 B × P, Q—B2; 14 Kt × Kt, B × Kt; 15 P—K4 ±. Réti—Bogoljubov, New York, 1924.

(j) Compare the Dutch Defense, p. 296, cols. 196—198.

(k) Réti—Vajda, Semmering, 1926.

(l) Or 5 O—O, QKt—Q2; 6 Kt—R3, Kt—Kt3; 7 Kt × P, Kt × Kt; 8 Q—R4ch, B—

Q2; 9 Q × Kt, B—B3; 10 P—Kt3, B—Q3; 11 B—Kt2, O—O =. Réti—Knoch, Budapest, 1926.

(m) Also playable is 5...QKt—Q2; 6 O—O, P—QR3; 7 Q × BP, P—QKt4; 8 Q—B2, B—Kt2; 9 P—QR4, P—Kt5; 10 P—R5, B—K2; 11 P—Q3, O—O; 12 QKt—Q2, P—K4 =. Smyslov—Bondarevsky, Leningrad—Moscow, 1941.

(n) Inferior is 6...B—B3; 7 O—O, B—K2; 8 Q—B2, O—O; 9 Kt—B3, QKt—Q2; 10 R—Q1, P—K4; 11 P—Q4 ±. Réti—Vidmar, London, 1927.

(o) Réti—Tartakower, Semmering, 1926.

## Notes continued from p. 319

(j) If 4...B—B4; 5 P—B4 ±, for if 5...QP × P; 6 O—O, Kt—B3; 7 Q—R4, P × P; 8 Kt × P, Q × Kt; 9 B × Ktch, B—Q2; 10 R—Q1, Q × Rch (10...B × B; 11 Q × Bch, P × Q; 12 R × Q with the better ending); 11 Q × Q, B × B; 12 Kt—B3 and White should win.

(k) Better 5...P—K3 as in col. 38. Compare the Gruenfeld Defense.

(l) 12...Q—Kt3; 13 B—K3. Tartakower—List, London, 1944.

(m) More aggressive than the simple 2...Kt—KB3; 3 B—Kt2, QKt—Q2; 4 P—K3, P—K3; 5 P—QR3, P—B4; 6 P × P, B × P; 7 P—Q4, B—Q3; 8 QKt—Q2, Kt—Kt3; 9 P—B4, P × P; 10 B × P, B—Q2 =. Alekhine—Sacconi, Warsaw, 1935.

(n) Santasiere—Levy, New York, 1941.



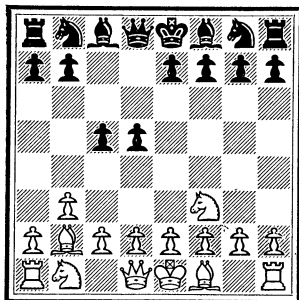
## NIMZOVITCH'S ATTACK

## I Kt-KB3

41	42	43	44	45
1 (P-Q4)				Kt-KB3
2 P-QKt3				P-QKt3
P-QB4		Kt-KB3		P-KKt3 (n)
3 B-Kt2*		P-K3	B-Kt2	B-Kt2
P-B3	Kt-QB3	B-Kt5	P-K3 (i)	B-Kt2
4 P-K3	P-K3	B-Kt2 (e)	P-K3	P-B4
P-K4	Kt-B3 (b)	QKt-Q2	QKt-Q2 (j)	P-B4 (o)
5 B-Kt5ch	B-Kt5	P-KR3	P-B4	P-K3
Kt-B3	Q-Kt3 (c)	B-R4	B-Q3 (k)	O-O
6 O-O	B x Ktch	P-Q3 (f)	Kt-B3	B-K2
B-Q3	Q x B	P-KR3	P-B3	P-Kt3
7 B-K2	P-Q3	QKt-Q2	Q-B2	P-Q4
KKt-K2	P-KKt3	P-K3	Q-K2	P x P
8 P-Q3	QKt-Q2	Q-K2	B-K2	Kt x P
B-K3	B-Kt2	B-QKt5	P-QR3	B-Kt2
9 QKt-Q2	Q-K2	P-Kt4	Kt-Q4 (l)	B-KB3
P-QKt3	O-O	B-Kt3	O-O	Kt-B3
10 R-K1	P-QR4	Kt-K5	O-O	Kt-B3
Q-Q2	R-Q1	Kt x Kt	R-Q1	Q-Kt1
11 B-KB1	O-O	B x Kt	P x P	Kt x Kt
O-O	P-Kt3 (d)	B-Q3 (g)	Kt x P	P x Kt
12 P-B4	P-K4	Kt-B3	Kt-K4	O-O
P-Q5 ± (a)	B-Kt2 ±	Q-K2 = (h)	B-R6 = (m)	R-Q1 = (p)

## \* DIAGRAM 134

cols. 41-42



[After 3 B-Kt2]

- (a) Lissitsin-Botvinnik, Moscow, 1944.  
 (b) If now 4... Q-B2; 5 B-Kt5, P-QR3; 6 B x Ktch, Q x B; 7 P-Q3, P-B3; 8 Q-K2, P-K4; 9 P-B4, Kt-K2; 10 O-O, B-Kt5; 11 R-K1, O-O-O; 12 P-K4, P x KP =. Weil-Fine, Vienna, 1937. On 4... P-K3 White should continue with 5 P-Q4, as in the Colle System, p. 235, col. 9. Weaker here is 4... B-Kt5; 5 B-K2, Kt-B3; 6 O-O, P-K3; 7 P-Q4, B-Q3; 8 QKt-Q2, P x P; 9 P x P, O-O; 10 P-QR3, R-B1; 11 P-B4, Q-B2; 12 P-B5 ±.

Notes continued on p. 324

## I Kt-KB3

46	47	48	49	50
1 (Kt-KB3)				P-KB4
2 P-B4			P-QKt4	P-KKt3 (m)
P-B4	P-K3	P-KKt3 (g)	P-Q3 (k)	P-QKt3 (n)
3 P-KKt3	P-KKt3	P-QKt4 (h)	P-Q4	B-Kt2
P-KKt3 (a)	P-QKt3	B-Kt2	P-KKt3	B-Kt2
4 B-Kt2	B-Kt2	B-Kt2	P-B4	O-O
B-Kt2	B-Kt2	O-O	B-Kt2	Kt-KB3
5 O-O	O-O	P-Kt3	B-Kt2	P-Q3
O-O	B-K2	P-Kt3 (i)	O-O	P-K3
6 Kt-B3	Kt-B3	B-Kt2	QKt-Q2	P-K4 /
P-Q4 (b)	P-B4	B-Kt2	P-QR4	P x P
7 P x P	P-Kt3	O-O	P-QR3	Kt-Kt5
Kt x P	P-Q4 / (e)	P-Q3	P-K4 /	B-K2
8 Q-Kt3 (c)	Kt-K5	P-Q3	P x KP	Kt-QB3
Kt x Kt	QKt-Q2	QKt-Q2	KKt-Q2	O-O
9 QP x Kt	P-B4	QKt-Q2	P-K3	QKt x P
Kt-B3	B-Q3	P-K4	Kt-QB3	Kt x Kt
10 R-Q1	P x P	Q-B2	Q-Kt3	Kt x Kt
Q-B2	B x P	R-K1	RP x P	Kt-B3
11 B-K3	Kt-B4	KR-Q1	RP x P	B-Q2 ± (o)
Kt-Q1 = (d)	Q-Kt1 = (f)	P-QR4 = (j)	R x Rch = (l)	

(a) Preferable is 3... P-Q4 at once, transposing into better-known variations.

(b) If instead 6... Kt-B3; 7 P-Q4 (not 7 P-Q3, P-Q3; 8 B-K3, B-Q2; 9 Q-B1, R-K1; 10 P-KR3, R-B1; 11 P-R3, P-QR3 =. Réti-Gruenfeld, Maehrisch-Ostrau, 1923), P x P; 8 Kt x P, Kt x Kt; 9 Q x Kt, P-Q3; 10 Q-R4, R-K1; 11 B-R6 ±. Euwe-Colle, 7th match game, 1924.

(c) Best is 8 P-Q4, transposing into col. 22.

(d) Réti-Rubinstein, Baden-Baden, 1925.

(e) Better than 7... O-O; 8 B-Kt2, P-Q4; 9 Kt-K5, Q-B2; 10 P x P!, Q x Kt?; 11 P-Q6!, B x B; 12 P x B ±. Ragozin-Bondarevsky, Leningrad-Moscow, 1939.

(f) Alekhine-Nimzovitch, New York, 1927.

(g) Another alternative is 2... P-QKt3; 3 P-KKt3, B-Kt2; 4 B-Kt2, P-K4; 5 Kt-B3, B-Kt5; 6 O-O, KB x Kt; 7 KtP x B, P-Q3; 8 P-Q4, P-K5; 9 Kt-R4, O-O; 10 P-B3, P x P; 11 B x P =. Kevitz and Pinkus-Alekhine, New York, 1929.

(h) On 3 P-QKt3, Black should transpose into better-known variations with an early ... P-Q4. If instead on 3 P-QKt3, B-Kt2; 4 B-Kt2, O-O; 5 P-Kt3, P-Q3?; 6 B-Kt2, Kt-B3; 7 O-O, P-K4; 8 P-Q4, Kt-Q2; 9 P x P ±. Capablanca-Yates, Barcelona, 1929.

(i) Or 5... P-Q4; 6 P x P, Kt x P; 7 B x B, K x B; 8 Q-Kt3, Kt-KB3; 9 B-Kt2, Kt-B3; 10 O-O, P-K4 =. Réti-Pokorny, Maehrisch-Ostrau, 1923.

(j) Réti-Capablanca, New York, 1924.

Notes continued on p. 324

## Notes continued from p. 322

(c) Inferior is 5...B-Q2; 6 O-O, P-K3; 7 P-Q3, B-K2 (not 7...B-Q3; 8 P-K4, P×P; 9 P×P, Kt×P?; 10 R-K1+); 8 QKt-Q2, O-O; 9 KB×Kt, B×B; 10 Kt-K5, R-B1 (or 10...B-K1; 11 P-KB4, Kt-Q2; 12 Kt×Kt, Q×Kt; 13 P-K4, P-B3; 14 Q-B3 ±. Nimzovitch—Rubinstein, Semmering, 1926); 11 P-KB4, Kt-Q2; 12 Q-K4, Kt×Kt; 13 B×Kt, B-B3; 14 R-B3 ±. Nimzovitch—Spielmann, New York, 1927.

(d) Nimzovitch—Kashdan, Frankfurt, 1930.

(e) Or 4 P-B4, P-K3; 5 B-Kt2, QKt-Q2; 6 B-K2, P-B3; 7 Kt-Q4, B×B; 8 Q×B, B-Q3; 9 P-B4, O-O; 10 O-O, R-K1; 11 QKt-B3, Kt-K5 =. Rabinovitch—Rausser, Moscow, 1934.

(f) If instead 6 B-K2, P-K3; 7 Kt-K5, B×B; 8 Q×B, B-Q3; 9 Kt×Kt, Q×Kt; 10 P-QB4, P-B3; 11 O-O, O-O—O ♯. Nimzovitch—Vidmar, New York, 1927.

(g) Better 11...Q-K2 followed by ...O—O—O (Alekhine).

(h) 13 B-KKt2, O-O—O; 14 O-O—O. Nimzovitch—Marshall, New York, 1927. Best now is Alekhine's suggestion 14...B-R6ch; 15 K-Kt1, Kt-K1 followed by ...P-KB3.

(i) A simple alternative is 3...B-Kt5; 4 P-B4, P-K3 transposing to note (e).

(j) Weaker is 4...B-K2; 5 P-Q4, QKt

—Q2; 6 B-Q3, P-QKt3; 7 O-O, B-Kt2; 8 QKt-Q2, O-O; 9 P-B4, P-B4; 10 Q-K2 ±. Najdorf—Stahlberg, Mar del Plata, 1942.

(k) Now best. Inferior alternatives are: (1) 5...B-K2; 6 Kt-B3, O-O; 7 Q-B2, P-B3; 8 B-K2, P×P?; 9 P×P, P-B4; 10 O-O, P-QKt3; 11 P-Q4, P×P; 12 P×P, B-Kt2; 13 QR-Q1, Q-B1; 14 Kt-K5 ±. Lissitsin—Lilienthal, Moscow, 1935. (2) 5...P-B3; 6 B-K2, B-K2; 7 O-O, O-O; 8 Kt-B3, P-QR3; 9 Kt-Q4, P×P?; 10 P×P, Kt-B4; 11 P-B4, Q-B2; 12 Kt-B3 ±. Botvinnik—Chekhover, Moscow, 1935.

(l) If 9 P-K4, P×KP; 10 Kt×P, Kt×Kt; 11 Q×Kt, P-K4; 12 Q-B2, O-O; 13 O-O—O, P-K5 ♯. Tartakower—Sultan Khan, 12th match game, 1931.

(m) Nimzovitch—Floh, Zurich, 1934.

(n) Another possibility is 2...P-Q3; 3 P-Kt3, P-K4; 4 P-B4, P-K5 (better ...P-KKt3); 5 Kt-R4, P-Q4; 6 P×P, Q×P; 7 Kt-QB3, Q-B3; 8 P-K3, P-QR3; 9 B-QKt2, B-KKt5; 10 B-K2, B×B; 11 Kt×B ±. Nimzovitch—Alekhine, New York, 1927.

(o) Weaker is 4...O-O; 5 P-K3, P-Q3; 6 B-K2, P-K4; 7 O-O, Kt-B3; 8 P-Q4, P×P; 9 Kt×P, B-Q2; 10 Kt-QB3, R-K1; 11 B-B3, R-Kt1; 12 Kt×Kt ±. Lissitsin—Loevenfisch, Moscow, 1939.

(p) Nimzovitch—Alekhine, Carlsbad, 1923.

## Notes continued from p. 323

(k) For 2...P-Q4 see col. 40, note (m). Also weaker than the text is 2...P-K3; 3 P-QR3, P-QR4; 4 P-Kt5, P-B4; 5 B-Kt2, P-QKt3; 6 P-K3, B-Kt2; 7 P-B4, P-Q3; 8 P-Q4, QKt-Q2; 9 QKt-Q2, R-B1; 10 B-Q3, B-K2; 11 O-O, O-O; 12 Q-K2 ±. Santasiere—Pinkus, New York, 1939.

(l) Santasiere—Bronstein, match U. S. A.—U.S.S.R., 1945.

(m) An interesting gambit possibility is 2 P-K4, P×P; 3 Kt-Kt5, e.g., 3...Kt-KB3; 4 P-Q3, P-K6; 5 B×P, Kt-B3; 6 P-Q4, P-K3; 7 B-Q3, Q-K2?;

8 B×P!, R×B; 9 Kt×R, Kt×Kt; 10 Q-R5ch, P-Kt3; 11 Q×Pch, Q-B2; 12 Q×Qch, K×Q; 13 Kt-B3 ±. Pelikan—Rossetto, Mar del Plata, 1942. P-Q4 by White at an early stage transposes to the Dutch Defense to the QF Game.

(n) Another possibility is 2...P-K3; 3 B-Kt2, Kt-KB3; 4 O-O, B-K2; 5 P-Q3, O-O; 6 Kt-B3, P-Q3; 7 P-K4, P×P; 8 Kt-KKt5, P×P; 9 B-R3!, P-K4; 10 B-K6ch, K-R1; 11 Q×P ±. Lissitsin—Khistyakov, Moscow, 1939.

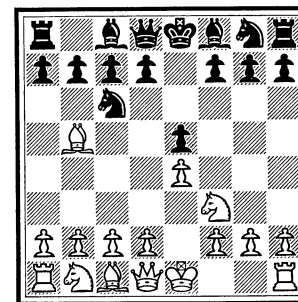
(o) Euwe—Tartakower, Kissingen, 1928.

## RUY LOPEZ

THE RUY is the most logical continuation of the White attack initiated with 2 Kt-KB3. It involves a semi-direct threat against Black's KP and accordingly limits his choice of replies considerably. Against weaker defenses it gives White a bind which often wins brilliantly in the early stages; and even in the best lines it may take Black 25 or 30 moves to equalize. It is no wonder that many masters consider it White's strongest opening, and that it is a favorite weapon in every important match and tournament.

After the initial moves 1 P-K4, P-K4; 2 Kt-KB3, Kt-QB3; 3 B-Kt5 the older lines have all been superseded by the *Morphy Defense* 3...P-QR3 which takes advantage of the fact that White cannot win a Pawn with 4 B×Kt, QP×B; 5 Kt×P? because of 5...Q-Q5. Some of the other defenses, such as the Berlin and the Steinitz, are not definitely bad, but in all cases Black's game is made more comfortable by the interpolation of 3...P-QR3. The principal defenses will be considered below.

DIAGRAM 135



[After 3 B-Kt5]

*Morphy Defense* 3...P-QR3

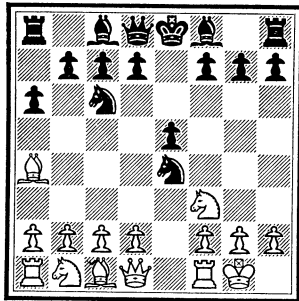
This, as indicated above, is Black's strongest line, and is treated at greatest length (cols. 1-140). The main branches of the Morphy Defense are the following:

- I. 4 B—R4, Kt—B3; 5 O—O  
 A. 5... Kt × P—Morphy Defense: Open Game  
 B. 5... B—K2—Morphy Defense: Strong Point Variation  
 C. 5... B—B4 and others—Moeller Defense and Irregular
- II. 4 B—R4, Kt—B3—Miscellaneous Continuations on White's Fifth Move Other Than 5 O—O
- III. 4 B—R4, P—Q3—Steinitz Defense Deferred
- IV. 4 B—R4—Unusual Defenses on Black's Fourth Move
- V. 4 B × Kt—The Exchange Variation.

*I. A. Open Game*

1 P—K4, P—K4; 2 Kt—KB3, Kt—QB3; 3 B—Kt5, P—QR3; 4 B—R4, Kt—B3; 5 O—O, Kt × P

DIAGRAM 136



[After 5... Kt × P]

The main variation, which leaves neither side much room for choice, is now 6 P—Q4, P—QKt4; 7 B—Kt3, P—Q4; 8 P × P, B—K3; 9 P—B3, B—K2. In this position White has no less than seven plausible continuations: 10 QKt—Q2, 10 B—KB4, 10 B—K3, 10 R—K1, 10 Q—K2, 10 P—QR4 and 10 Kt—Q4. None of these has been shown to yield White any really significant advantage.

(1) 10 QKt—Q2 (cols. 1–8) is the traditional line and is still the most popular. After the natural 10... O—O Black's position is still not satisfactorily organized, but White is unable to exploit the temporary disarrangement of the Black pieces.

- (i) 11 Q—K2 (cols. 1–2) is met by 11... Kt—B4.  
 (ii) 11 B—B2 (cols. 3–4) is met by 11... P—B4.  
 (iii) 11 Kt—Q4 (col. 5) is met by 11... QKt × Kt.  
 (iv) 11 R—K1 (col. 6) is met by 11... Kt—B4.

(v) 11 Q—K1 (col. 6 note (a)) is met by 11... Kt—B4.

It is thus seen that ... Kt—B4 is a strong reply wherever possible. The question naturally arises whether it cannot be played immediately, instead of 10... O—O, and this question is answered in the affirmative by the new analysis in col. 7. It is to be noted that if Black manages to play ... P—Q5 he usually gets the better game.

(2) 10 B—KB4 (cols. 9–10) can be adequately handled by either 10... O—O or 10... P—Kt4. The variations with ... P—Kt4 are especially interesting.

(3) 10 B—K3 (cols. 11–16) has not been seen much in recent master chess. In the main line (col. 11) White sacrifices a Pawn for an attack which turns out to be insufficient. It may be that the suggestion in note (b) will prove to be of value. The older line in col. 14 has been rehabilitated and is also satisfactory for Black.

(4) 10 R—K1 (cols. 17–18) would be good if it were not for the Breslau Variation, a gambit line where White can at best draw.

(5) 10 Q—K2 (cols. 19–20) is new and tricky, but again there are appropriate variations, some sacrificial, which equalize for Black.

(6) 10 P—QR4 (col. 21) was revived by Alekhine in a well-known game against Euwe, but later experience with the line showed that White's temporary advantage slowly disappears.

(7) 10 Kt—Q4 (col. 22) is another Alekhine variation in which White sacrifices a Pawn for the attack. Black need not be afraid to submit to the attack, but by returning the Pawn he can acquire a slight positional advantage.

*Alternatives at Various Points in the Main Variation*

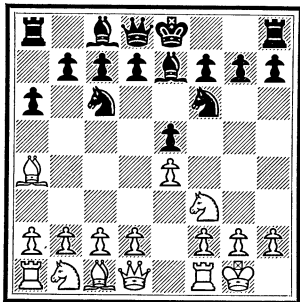
Of these the most important is 9... B—QB4 (cols. 23–29), which has been resuscitated with much new analysis. It now appears, after much exciting but fruitless experimentation, that White can get an advantage by maintaining a strong hold on his Q4. The continuation crucial for the variation is that shown in col. 24, with which Smyslov scored a sensational victory over Reshevsky in the 1945 U.S.S.R.—U. S. A. match. The upshot of the analysis, which is, however, not entirely clear, is that Black gets a lost game if he sacrifices the piece. He must therefore submit to the slight inferiority of col. 23, which is worse than the comparable lines with 9... B—K2. The Dilworth Variation (cols. 26–27) also created a stir some years ago when it was first proposed by the English amateur Dilworth, but subsequent analysis has demonstrated its theoretical inadequacy. The older continuations against 9... B—QB4 are good for Black (cols. 28–29).

Of the other alternatives (cols. 30–35) the only one worth special mention is the Riga Variation (cols. 33–34). This line would be very important if it were sound, but it has been completely refuted.

### I. B. Strong Point Variation

1 P—K4, P—K4; 2 Kt—KB3, Kt—QB3; 3 B—Kt5, P—QR3; 4 B—R4, Kt—B3; 5 O—O, B—K2

DIAGRAM 137



[After 5... B—K2]

The name of this variation is based on the central idea: to hold the Pawn at K4 as a strong point and pivot for any future action.

White now has a variety of continuations, of which the two most important are 6 R—K1 and 6 Q—K2, but others are also seen from time to time.

(1) 6 R—K1 (cols. 36–75) is the most common line. White threatens to win a Pawn and Black must do something about it. The traditionally best defense is Tchigorin's line: 6... P—QKt4; 7 B—Kt3, P—Q3; 8 P—B3, O—O; 9 P—KR3, Kt—QR4; 10 B—B2, P—B4; 11 P—Q4, Q—B2; 12 QKt—Q2, Kt—B3 (cols. 36–43). With 13 P—Q5 (cols. 36–40) White can now set up a position where he has more terrain to maneuver, and where Black has no counter-chances, but where his own winning possibilities are virtually nil if Black does not make a blunder. This variation is accordingly unsatisfactory for both sides: for White because he can hardly win against an equal player, and for Black because his game is lifeless. Both White and Black are therefore on a constant search for improvements.

Alternatives will be considered as branches of the above main variation.

On White's thirteenth move he can try either 13 Kt—B1 or 13 P × BP (or 13 P × KP, which is the same thing). Both these moves are designed

to keep the center open, which is to White's advantage. 13 Kt—B1 (col. 41), a variation which dates back to the Lasker—Tarrasch match, involves a Pawn sacrifice which is unsound. 13 P × BP (cols. 42–43) is a theme which has been seen a good deal of late. White's plan is to plant a Kt at either KB5 or Q5 and use it as the basis of an attack. If he can carry out his plan, as in col. 43, White does get a slight advantage, but Black has better earlier (col. 42).

On Black's twelfth move 12... Kt—Q2 is an excellent, but little-known alternative. Black's game is not as purely defensive as in the main lines of cols. 36–40 and he is more likely to build up a Q-side attack (col. 44). 12... B—Q2 (col. 45) is also less constricting, but has less theoretical point to it. The most important variant here is 12... BP × P (cols. 46–48) which was revived by Flohr in a well-known game against Rabinovitch at the Leningrad—Moscow tournament in 1939. This line has been played a good deal since, and works well against everything but the continuation in col. 46. Black's plan is to free himself by using the QB file, and here White turns the tables and manages to use the B file himself. The refutation however is not entirely convincing and subsequent tournaments may well produce some more improvements for Black.

On White's twelfth move 9 P—QR4 (col. 49) has been tried to induce an early ... P—Kt5 (cf. col. 39 and note (i)), but is insufficient against the best reply. 12 P—Q5 is weak because it locks the center too early and makes Black's counter-action on the Q-side easy.

On Black's ninth move there are two new ideas, one good, the other doubtful. The good idea is 9... Kt—Q2 (col. 51) to hold the strong point even more firmly (10 P—Q4, B—B3); it has worked well. The doubtful idea is 9... B—K3 (col. 52), which suffers from the drawback that Black must soon abandon his KP.

On White's ninth move the continuation 9 P—Q4 (cols. 53–56) is of great theoretical importance because it would force Black to revise his entire defensive system if it were successful. But no satisfactory continuation has been found against the pin 9... B—Kt5, although it is desirable to subject the crucial line in col. 53 to more intensive practical experimentation. The aggressive continuation in col. 56 is very interesting. 9 P—Q3 (cols. 57–60) need not be feared by Black: straight development and an early ... P—Q4 suffice to equalize.

On Black's eighth move the omission of 8... O—O in favor of 8... Kt—QR4 relieves the tension in the center for the time being and allows White a number of good alternatives later (cols. 61–64).

On White's eighth move the attempt to replace  $8 P-B_3$  by the more aggressive  $8 P-QR_4$  does not turn out well (col. 66).

On Black's seventh move the Marshall Variation (cols. 67-69) has had new life put into it by the improvement at Black's eleventh move, an innovation which seems to have been discovered independently by Marshall and several other masters, although Marshall was the first to publish it. Experience with this new idea is still quite limited, but such as it is favors White, who can afford to submit to the attack. White cannot avoid the Marshall Variation advantageously; against  $8 P-QR_4$  or other tries Black equalizes with ease.

On Black's sixth move  $6 \dots P-Q_3$  may be played, to avoid the complications of the regular lines. Black's game does remain less complicated, but more cramped and this variation, although seen on occasion in the best of company, is not to be recommended (cols. 71-75).

(2)  $6 Q-K_2$  (cols. 76-87) is the strongest alternative to  $6 R-K_1$ . Many masters, in fact, feel that it is just as good. Alekhine often adopted it, and with considerable success. In the main variation, after  $6 \dots P-QKt_4$ ;  $7 B-Kt_3$ ,  $P-Q_3$ ;  $8 P-QR_4!$  (cols. 76-78) gives White a slight but lasting advantage. Black can afford to sacrifice a Pawn, as Keres convincingly demonstrated in his game against Fine at the AVRO tournament in 1938 (col. 77), but White need not accept the sacrifice (col. 76).  $8 P-B_3$  as an alternative to  $8 P-QR_4$  (cols. 79-82) is less satisfactory because Black gets enough counterplay in the center (col. 79); against straight development, however, White has several interesting new lines at his disposal (cols. 80-81), which appear to promise him an advantage.

Against  $6 Q-K_2$  there is a sacrifice analogous to the Marshall Variation (cols. 83-84) which has been strengthened by Keres' novelty in col. 84.

$6 \dots P-Q_3$  instead of  $6 \dots P-QKt_4$  again saddles Black with too cramped a game and cannot be recommended (cols. 85-87).

(3)  $6 P-Q_4$  (col. 88) has a good deal of theoretical justification behind it but is easily met by straight development.

(4)  $6 B \times Kt$  (col. 89), as played by Euwe in some recent games, is an enterprising departure from routine.

### I. C. Alternatives on Black's Fifth Move

Alternatives other than  $5 \dots Kt \times P$  or  $5 \dots B-K_2$  are inferior.  $5 \dots P-QKt_4$  (col. 90) is premature and allows White a strong initiative with  $P-QR_4$ .  $5 \dots B-B_4$ , the Moeller Defense, was once one of Alekhine's favorite lines but he later gave it up. With  $6 P-B_3$  White gets too strong a center (cols. 91-92); the obvious  $6 Kt \times P$  is also good (col. 93).

### II. Miscellaneous Continuations on White's Fifth Move

This heading includes all moves other than  $5 O-O$  after  $4 B-R_4$ ,  $Kt-B_3$ . Since  $5 O-O$  is by far the strongest continuation these lines are less dangerous for Black than the previous columns.

(1)  $5 B \times Kt$  (cols. 94-95) is the *Treybal Variation*. The point to this line is that in the regular exchange variation after  $4 B \times Kt$ ,  $QP \times B$ ;  $5 Kt-B_3$  Black's best move is  $5 \dots P-B_3$ . Now that Black's  $Kt$  is at  $KB_3$  this good move is no longer available to Black. But this sophisticated nuance is offset by the fact that Black's development is freed and that he has the two Bishops. Accordingly the line cannot be considered good for White.

(2)  $5 P-Q_3$  (cols. 96-100) is one of Steinitz's favorite lines revived by some of the younger Soviet masters. Steinitz's idea was to build up an attack on the K-side while he held the center solid. But this plan is workable only against poor defense. The lack of direct threats frees Black's hand considerably, and he can choose one of a number of equalizing lines.

(3)  $5 Kt-B_3$  (cols. 101-103) is adopted by Keres occasionally. Its strength lies in the natural protection afforded the KP, but its great drawback is that Black can exchange White's KB. In the main line in col. 101 where the second player proceeds to exchange the B he gets a slight advantage.

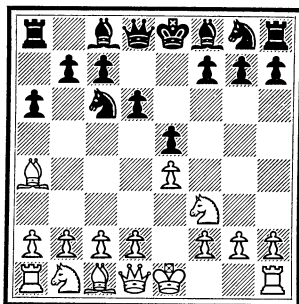
(4)  $5 Q-K_2$  (cols. 104-105) is not as strong as the Worrall Attack because Black is free to develop his KB. With this B out the opening problem is as good as solved; in fact it may be said that the main reason why the Ruy Lopez is so much stronger than all its alternatives is that it compels Black to shut in his KB.

### III. Steinitz Defense Deferred $4 B-R_4$ , $P-Q_3$

This is a branch of the Morphy Defense, although it has an independent name. Despite a good deal of analysis, it has not been refuted and is therefore a good alternative to the more usual lines. White has the choice of five main continuations.

(1)  $5 B \times Ktch$  (cols. 106-112) is played to demolish the Black center and to avoid traps such as Noah's Ark. After the further  $5 \dots P \times B$ ;  $6 P-Q_4$  Black should play  $6 \dots P-B_3$  (cols. 106-109) which, in the main lines in cols. 106-107 assures him equality and, as seen in col. 109, frequently an advantage against weak play. The abandonment of the center with  $6 \dots P \times P$ , on the other hand (cols. 110-112) is weaker because of the strong attack at White's disposal in col. 111.

DIAGRAM 138



[After 4...P-Q3]

(2) 5 P-B4 (cols. 113-115), a slightly altered version of the Duras Variation, attracted a great deal of attention some time ago when Keres used it to defeat Alekhine. Its strength lies in the fact that Black is virtually compelled to give up the center, but as in many variations of the Steinitz Defense proper, so many pieces are exchanged that the center loses its meaning. The main defense in col. 113 is satisfactory for Black. The exceedingly complicated sacrificial line in col. 115 is quite interesting and could well be subjected to further theoretical elucidation.

(3) 5 O-O (cols. 116-120) has independent status only if Black replies 5...Kt-B3; 5...B-Q2 transposes to the next heading. 5...Kt-B3 however turns out to be weak against the older 6 B x Ktch, P x B; 7 P-Q4 (cols. 116-118) and the newer 6 R-K1 (col. 120).

(4) 5 P-B3 (cols. 121-133) is White's most common continuation. Here Black can obtain an entirely satisfactory game by fianchettoing his KB (cols. 121-124); apparently the ultra-solid center cannot be broken. As in the analogous lines with R-K1 and Q-K2, straight development with ...B-K2 leaves Black's game too cramped (cols. 126-127). The Siesta Variation, 5...P-B4 (cols. 129-130) is unsound.

(5) 5 P-Q4 (cols. 132-133) again allows Black to chop down too much wood. If he wishes to play for a win White's best course is to offer the sacrifice in col. 133.

## IV. Unusual Defenses on Black's Fourth Move

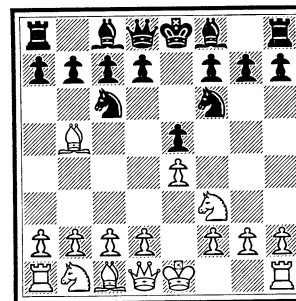
The only line of any consequence here happens to be one of much theoretical importance: 4...P-QKt4 followed by exchanging White's KB (col. 134). Curiously, there is no known refutation of this vital line. Other moves (col. 135 and notes) are bad.

## V. Exchange Variation 4 B x Kt

This is of major theoretical importance, since if it were sound all the known defenses with ...P-QR3 would have to be scrapped. White can find strong theoretical justification for his play, since after 4...QP x B; 5 P-Q4, P x P; 6 Q x P he is left with a clear Pawn majority on the K-side and consequently a won K and P ending (if he can ever get to it). But Black's development is freer and he has the two Bishops. In practise these advantages usually outweigh White's Pawn majority (cols. 136-140). Alekhine in fact always felt that Black always got the better game in the Exchange Variation, not merely equality.

## Berlin Defense 3...Kt-B3

DIAGRAM 139



[After 3...Kt-B3]

This defense, once the favorite of the greatest masters, including Lasker, has almost vanished from tournament play. One cannot show, however, that the defense is completely refuted. The main trouble with it is not a theoretical refutation, but the fact that even in the best lines Black's position is always slightly uncomfortable. White has the choice of three continuations on his fourth move: O-O, P-Q3 and P-Q4, of which O-O is much the best.

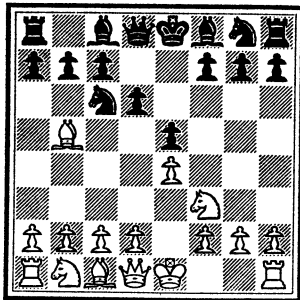
(1) 4 O—O (cols. 141–149) is played with a view to quick development. In the crucial variations in cols. 141–144 Black's Kt is driven all over the board, and his Pawn position weakened, but he has the compensation of the two Bishops. White's strongest lines, shown in cols. 141–143, are very difficult for Black to meet, and it is chiefly because of them that the defense has been abandoned. Mention however must be made of the alternatives on Black's fifth move (cols. 146–149) which are still theoretically sufficient for equality.

(2) 4 P—Q3 (cols. 150–151), like its counterpart in the Morphy Defense, is a slow line which presents few problems.

(3) 4 P—Q4 (cols. 152–155) can be met advantageously with either 4...P×P or 4...Kt×KP. 4 O—O is the only continuation which Black need consider seriously.

*Steinitz Defense 3...P—Q3*

DIAGRAM 140



[After 3...P—Q3]

This defense is still seen from time to time, although the corresponding variations with the interpolation of 3...P—QR3 (Steinitz Defense Deferred) are all much better for Black. The chief reason why is seen in the Tarrasch Trap on p. 387, note (a): after routine development Black must give up the center.

In the chief lines in cols. 156–162 the continuation is 4 P—Q4, B—Q2; 5 Kt—B3, Kt—B3; 6 O—O, B—K2; 7 R—K1, P×P (now forced); 8 Kt×P, O—O. Here almost any move that White makes leaves him with a slight advantage, but none is in any way crushing. The main line in the Steinitz is thus seen to be less unfavorable for Black than that in any of

the other defenses without ...P—QR3, but the second player can hope for a draw at best. The wholesale exchanges of col. 163 make Black's life easier.

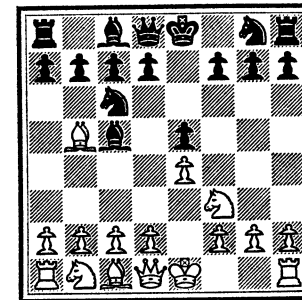
An excellent alternative for White is B×Kt at an early stage followed by Q—Q3 to force Black to abandon the center (cols. 164–165 and 169–170). Alekhine has used this idea to produce some brilliant games.

*Bird's Defense 3...Kt—Q5*

This defense has come up in some recent Soviet tournaments, but it is still theoretically unsound (cols. 176–180). A new refutation is seen in col. 179.

*Classical Defense 3...B—B4*

DIAGRAM 141



[After 3...B—B4]

A logical idea, but one which is completely demolished by the equally logical 4 P—B3 (cols. 181–188). 4...P—B4 is Black's best chance, but against it both 5 Kt×P (col. 181) and 5 P×P (col. 182) are strong. The defense cannot be played unless some improvement is found against 4 P—B3. 4 O—O is weaker (cols. 189–190).

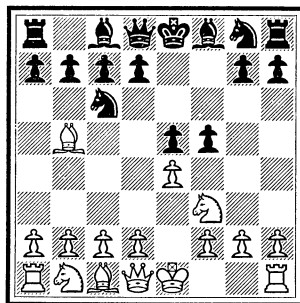
*Unusual Defenses Without 3...P—QR3*

All the defenses in this group are theoretically inadequate and are no longer seen in serious play.

3...KKt—K2, the *Cozio Defense*, vanished with Steinitz. It is met by 4 Kt—B3 (cols. 191–192).

3...P—KKt3, the *Fianchetto Defense*, is refuted by 4 P—Q4 (cols. 193–194); 4 Kt—B3 instead allows the equalizing 4...Kt—Q5! (col. 195).

DIAGRAM 142



[After 3...P-B4]

3...P-B4, *Schliemann's Defense*, is the most important in this group. It has been experimented with by some American masters, chiefly Horowitz and Steiner, but no good continuation is known against 4 Kt-B3 (cols. 191-190). There have been some recent improvements in the analysis (see note (d), a line once considered good for White).

3...P-B3 and other bizarre replies are compendium curiosities, easy to refute in both theory and practise (col. 200).

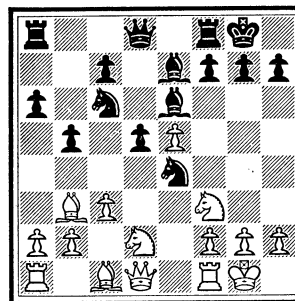
## MORPHY DEFENSE: OPEN GAME

1 P-K4, P-K4; 2 Kt-KB3, Kt-QB3; 3 B-Kt5, P-QR3; 4 B-R4, Kt-B3; 5 O-O, Kt x P; 6 P-Q4, P-QKt4; 7 B-Kt3, P-Q4; 8 P x P, B-K3; 9 P-B3, B-K2; 10 QKt-Q2, O-O\*

	1	2	3	4	5
11	Q-K2		B-B2		Kt-Q4
	Kt-B4 (a)		P-B4 (i)		QKt x Kt (o)
12	Kt-Q4 (b)		P x P e.p. . . .	Kt-Kt3	P x Kt
	Kt x B!	Q-Q2 (g)	Kt x P(B3)	Q-Q2	Kt x Kt (p)
13	QKt x Kt (c)	B-B2	Kt-Kt3 (j)	KKt-Q4 (l)	B x Kt
	Q-Q2	P-B3	Q-Q2	Kt x Kt	P-QB4
14	Kt x Kt (d)	P x P	Kt(Kt3)-Q4	Kt x Kt (m)	P x P
	Q x Kt	B x P	Kt x Kt	P-B4	B x P
15	B-K3 (e)	Kt(Q2)-Kt3	Kt x Kt	Kt-K2	R-B1
	B-KB4	Kt x Kt(Q5)	P-B4	QR-Q1	R-B1
16	KR-Q1	Kt x Kt(Q4)	Kt x B	Kt-B4	R x B
	KR-Q1	B-Kt5	Q x Kt	Q-B3	R x R
17	P-B3	P-B3	R-K1	Q-R5	B-Kt4
	B-KB1	QR-K1	Q-B2	B-B1	Q-B2
18	Q-KB2	Q-B2	B-B4	P-QR4	Q-Q4
	P-QR4	B-R4	QR-Q1	P-Kt5 = (n)	R-B8
19	R-Q2 (f)	Kt-K2	B-B7		B x R
	P-Kt5 =	Q-Q3 = (h)	QR-K1 = (k)		K x B = (q)

\* DIAGRAM 143

cols. 1-5



[After 10...O-O]

(a) Possible is 11...Kt x Kt; 12 Q x Kt (or 12 B x Kt, Kt-R4; 13 B-B2, Kt-B5 =), P-B3 =. Yates-Tarrasch, Kis-

singen, 1928. Weak is 11...B-KB4; 12 R-Q1, Kt-R4; 13 Kt-Q4 ±.

(b) Best, for if 12 B-B2, P-Q5!; 13 P x P, Kt x QP; 14 Kt x Kt, Q x Kt ♣.

(c) If 13 Kt x Kt(B6), Kt x B; 14 QR x Kt, Q-Q2; 15 Kt x Bch, Q x Kt; 16 P-QKt4, P-Q5! ♣. Van den Bosch-Euwe, match, 1934.

(d) Or 14 P-KB4, Kt x Kt! (but not 14...P-B4?; 15 P x P e.p., R x P; 16 Kt x Kt, Q x Kt; 17 P-B5+); 15 P x Kt, P-QR4; 16 Q-KB2, P-R5 =. Seibold-Keemink, correspondence, 1930. Or 14 B-Q2, Kt-Q1; 15 B-K3, P-KB3 =.

(e) If 15 P-KB4, B-KB4; 16 Kt-Q4, B-B4; 17 B-K3, B x Kt; 18 P x B, Q-KKt3 =. Thomas-Tartakower, London, 1932.

(f) Euwe suggests 19 QR-B1. The column is Botvinnik-Euwe, Leningrad, 1934.

Notes continued on p. 340

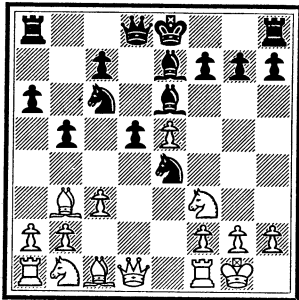


## MORPHY DEFENSE: OPEN GAME

1 P-K4, P-K4; 2 Kt-KB3, Kt-QB3; 3 B-K15, P-QR3; 4 B-R4, Kt-B3; 5 O-O, Kt x P; 6 P-Q4, P-QKt4; 7 B-K13, P-Q4; 8 P x P, B-K3; 9 P-B3, B-K2\*

	6	7	8	9	10
10 (QKt-Q2).....				B-KB4	
(O-O).....		Kt-B4 (d)		O-O.....	P-Kt4
11 R-K1 (a)	B-B2 (e)			Kt-Q4	B-K3 (n)
Kt-B4	B-Kt5! (f)			Kt-R4 (l)	P-Kt5
12 B-B2 (b)	R-K1			P-B3	KKt-Q2 (o)
P-Q5!	P-Q5!.....	O-O (j)		Kt-B4	R-KKt1 (p)
13 P x P	Kt-Kt3 (g)	Kt-Kt3	B-B2	Kt x Kt	
Kt x QP	P-Q6	Kt-K5	Kt-Q2	P x Kt	
14 Kt x Kt	B-Ktr (h)	B-B4	Kt-Q2	B x B	
Q x Kt	Kt x Kt	P-B4	P-QB4!	P x B	
15 Q-K2 (c)	P x Kt	P x P e.p.	Kt-B5	Q x Qch	
QR-Q1	B-KB4	Kt x P(B3)	P-B3!	R x Q	
16 Kt-B3	B-K3	Q-Q3	P x P	Kt-Q2	
Q-QB5	Q-Q4	Kt-K5	B x Kt!	Kt x P	
17 Q x Q	Kt-Q4	B x P!	B x B	P-QR4!	
B x Q	Kt x Kt	Q-Q2	R x P	Kt-B5!	
18 B-K3	P x Kt	Kt-K5 ± (k)	P-KKt4	Kt x Kt	
Kt-K3 ≠	B-QKt5! ≠ (i)		Kt-B1 = (m)	P x Kt = (q)	

\* DIAGRAM 144  
cols. 6-10



[After 9... B-K2]

(a) A new try is 11 Q-K1, Kt-B4; 12 Kt-Q4, Q-Q2; 13 B-B2, P-B3; 14 Kt x B, Kt x Kt; 15 Kt-B3, P x P; 16

Kt x P, Kt x Kt; 17 Q x Kt, B-Q3 =. Keres-Euwe, 2nd match game, 1939-40. If 11 Kt x Kt, P x Kt; 12 B x B, P x B ≠.

(b) Or (1) 12 Kt-B1, Kt x B; 13 P x Kt, P-Q5!; 14 Kt x P, Kt x Kt; 15 P x Kt, P-QB4; 16 P x B, B x BP; 17 B-K3, B-K2; 18 B-Q2, Q-Q5 ≠. Analysis by von Claparède. (2) 12 Kt-Q4, Kt x Kt; 13 P x Kt, Kt-Q6; 14 R-K3, Kt-B5; 15 B-B2, P-QB4!; 16 Kt-Kt3, P-B5; 17 Kt-Q2, P-B4; 18 Kt-B1, R-B2 ≠. Flambert-Alekhine, Mannheim, 1914.

(c) Weaker is 15 Kt-Kt3, Kt x Kt; 16 P x Kt?, Q x Q; 17 R x Q, P-QB4; 18 B-Q2, KR-Q1; 19 B-R5, R x R with the better ending for Black. Lasker-Tarrasch, St. Petersburg, 1914. The column is Johnner-Euwe, Zurich, 1934.

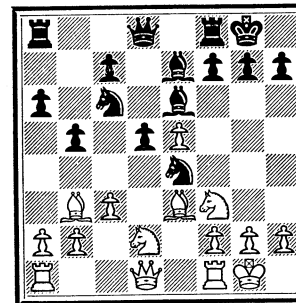
Notes continued on p. 341

## MORPHY DEFENSE: OPEN GAME

1 P-K4, P-K4; 2 Kt-KB3, Kt-QB3; 3 B-Kt5, P-QR3; 4 B-R4, Kt-B3; 5 O-O, Kt x P; 6 P-Q4, P-QKt4; 7 B-Kt3, P-Q4; 8 P x P, B-K3; 9 P-B3, B-K2; 10 B-K3, O-O; 11 QKt-Q2\*

	11	12	13	14	15
11 Kt x Kt.....				B-KKt5.....	P-B4 (l)
12 Q x Kt				Kt x Kt	P x P e.p. (m)
Kt-R4.....			Q-Q2	P x Kt	Kt x P(B3)
13 B-B2.....	Kt-Q4		Q-Q3 (g)	Q-Q5	Kt-Kt5
Kt-B5	Q-Q2 (e)		Kt-R4	Q x Q (i)	B-B2 (n)
14 Q-Q3	B-B2	B-B2	B x Q	P x Kt	Kt x B
P-Kt3	P-QB4	P-Kt3	B x Kt	R x Kt	
15 B-R6 (a)	Q-Q3	B-R6	B x Kt	Kt-B3	
Kt x KtP	P-Kt3	B-KB4	P x P	Q-Q2	
16 Q-K2 (b)	Kt x B	Q-K2	K x P	Q-Q3	
R-K1	P x Kt	KR-K1	QR-Q1	B-Q3	
17 Kt-Q4	B-R6	Kt-Q4	P-QR4	B-Kt5	
B-KB1! (c)	R-B2	B x B	P-Kt5! (j)	Kt-K2	
18 B x B	QR-K1	Kt x B	P x P	B x Kt ± (o)	
R x B ≠ (d)	Kt-B3 = (f)	B-Q3 = (h)	B x P = (k)		

\* DIAGRAM 145  
cols. 11-15



[After 11 QKt-Q2]

(a) 15 B-B1, B-KB4; 16 Q-K2, B x B; 17 Q x B, P-KB3; 18 B-R6, R-K1; 19 P x P, B x P; 20 QR-Q1, P-B3 =. Becker-Euwe, The Hague, 1928.

(b) The new try 16 Q-K3 succeeded in a game Armati-Koshnitzky, correspondence, 1941-42: 16...R-K1; 17 Q-B4, P-QB4; 18 Kt-Kt5, Q-Kt3; 19 QR-

K1, P-Q5; 20 Kt-K4, B-B4; 21 Kt-Q6, B x Kt; 22 P x B, P-Q6; 23 B-Ktr, P-Kt5; 24 R-K5+. However, various other defensive possibilities, such as 17...P-KB4, must be investigated.

(c) A valuable improvement after which it is White who must fight to draw. The line previously accepted as best by theory was 17...Kt-B5 (if 17...P-QB4; 18 Kt x B, P x Kt; 19 Q-Kt4, B-B1; 20 B x P, P x B; 21 Q x KtPch, K-R1; 22 P-KB4, R-R2; 23 B-Kt5 with a decisive attack); 18 P-B4, B-Q2; 19 QR-Q1, B-QB4; 20 Q-B2, P-B4; 21 B-Kt5, Q-B1; 22 Q-R4, B-K3; 23 R-B3 ±. Bergman-Gruenfeld, correspondence, 1919. Also possible for Black is 17...Q-Q2; 18 P-KB4, P-QB4; 19 Kt x B, P x Kt; 20 Q-Kt4, B-B1 =.

(d) 19 P-KB4, P-QB4!; 20 Kt x B (if 20 P-B5, P x Kt; 21 P-B6, Q-Kt3+; if 20 Kt-Kt3, P-Q5+), P x Kt; 21 B x P, P x B; 22 Q x Kt, R-Ktr! with the better ending for Black. Romanovsky-Tolush, Leningrad, 1938.

Notes continued on p. 341

## Notes continued from p. 337

(g) Also playable, but not particularly to be recommended, is  $12...Kt \times Kt$ ;  $13 P \times Kt$ ,  $Kt \times B$  (better than either (i)  $13...Kt-Q2$ ;  $14 P-B4$ ,  $P-KB4$ ;  $15 P \times P$  e.p.,  $R \times P$ ;  $16 P-B5$ ,  $B-B2$ ;  $17 P-Kt4+$ , as in Znosko-Borovsky—Euwe, Broadstairs, 1921, or (2)  $13...Kt-Kt2$ ;  $13 P-B4$ ,  $Q-Q2$ ;  $15 B-B2$ ,  $P-KB4$ ;  $16 Kt-B3$ ,  $P-B4$ ;  $17 P \times P$ ,  $Kt \times P$ ;  $18 Kt-Q4 \pm$ , Thomas—Blake, Weston, 1924);  $14 Kt \times Kt$ ,  $P-QB3$ ;  $15 B-Q2$ ,  $P-QR4$ ;  $16 QR-B1$ ,  $P-R5$  with a minimal disadvantage.

(h) Seibold—Ohls, correspondence, 1929-31.

(i) Inferior alternatives are: (1)  $11...Kt \times Kt$ ;  $12 Q \times Kt$ ,  $P-B3$ ;  $13 P \times P$ ,  $B \times P$ ;  $14 Kt-Kt5$ ,  $B \times Kt$ ;  $15 Q \times B$ ,  $Q \times Q$ ;  $16 B \times Q \pm$ . (2)  $11...Kt-B4?$ ;  $12 Kt-Q4!$ ,  $Kt \times P$ ;  $13 Q-R5!$  (not  $13 P-KB4?$ ,  $B-Kt5!$ ),  $Kt-Kt3$ ;  $14 P-B4$ ,  $B-Q2$ ;  $15 P-B5$ ,  $Kt-R1$ ;  $16 P-B6+$  +.

(j) If  $13 Kt-Kt5$ ,  $B-KKt5$ ;  $14 P-B3$ ,  $B-B1$ ;  $15 R-K1$ ,  $P-R3$ ;  $16 Kt-K6$ ,  $B \times Kt$ ;  $17 R \times B$ ,  $B-Q3 \mp$ . But not here  $15...B-B4ch?$ ;  $16 K-R1$ ,  $R-K1$ ;  $17 R \times Rch$ ,  $Q \times R$ ;  $18 B-Kt3!$ ,  $K-$

$B1$ ;  $19 B \times P!$ ,  $Kt \times B$ ;  $20 QKt-K4+$ . Foltys—Sonya Graf, Munich, 1937.

(k) Bogoljubow—Tarrasch, Munich, 1933.

(l) Two other possibilities are: (1)  $13 QKt-Q4$ ,  $Kt \times Kt$ ;  $14 Kt \times Kt$ ,  $P-B4$ ;  $15 Kt \times B$ ,  $Q \times Kt$ ;  $16 P-B3$ ,  $Kt-Kt4$ ;  $17 B \times Kt$ ,  $B \times B$ ;  $18 P-KB4$ ,  $B-Q1 \mp$ . Chajes—Tarrasch, Carlsbad, 1923. (2)  $13 R-K1$ ,  $P-QR4$ ;  $14 B-Q3$ ,  $Kt-Q1$ ;  $15 KKt-Q4$ ,  $P-Kt5$ ;  $16 P-B3$ ,  $Kt-B4$ ;  $17 Kt \times Kt$ ,  $B \times Kt$ ;  $18 P-KB4$ ,  $B-R2 =$ . Balogh—Rey, correspondence, 1932.

(m) Better than  $14 P \times Kt$ ,  $P-QR4$ ;  $15 P-B3$ ,  $P-R5!$   $\mp$ . Bogoljubow—Rubinstein, Stockholm, 1919.

(n) Bogoljubow—Euwe, 1st match game, 1928.

(o) Not  $11...Kt \times KP?$ ;  $12 Kt \times Kt$ ,  $P \times Kt$ ;  $13 B \times B$ ,  $P \times B$ ;  $14 Kt \times KP$ ,  $Q \times Q$ ;  $15 R \times Q$ ,  $KR-B1$ ;  $16 R-K1+$ .

(p) If instead  $12...P-KB4$ ;  $13 Kt \times Kt$ ,  $BP \times Kt$ ;  $14 B-K3$ ,  $P-B3$ ;  $15 P-B3$ ,  $P \times P$ ;  $16 R \times P$ ,  $Q-Q2$ ;  $17 B-QB2 \pm$ . Thomas—Yates, Southsea, 1923.

(q) Keres—Fine, AVRO tournament, 1938. A draw was agreed to here.

## Notes continued from p. 338

(d) If  $10...Kt \times Kt$ ;  $11 Q \times Kt$ ,  $O-O$ ;  $12 B-B2$  ( $12 R-Q1$ ,  $Q-K1$ ),  $Q-Q2$ ;  $13 Q-B4$ ,  $P-B3$ ;  $14 P \times P$ ,  $B \times P$ ;  $15 Q-Kt3$ ,  $Kt-R4$  (or  $15...Kt-K2$ ;  $16 B-Kt5 \pm$ );  $16 B-Kt5 \pm$ .

(e) If instead  $11 Kt-Q4$ ,  $Kt \times P$ ;  $12 P-KB4$  (or  $12 R-K1$ ,  $Kt(K4)-Q6$ ),  $Kt-B5$  and White has no clear compensation for the Pawn.

(f) If  $11...P-Q5$  at once,  $12 Kt-K4!$ ,  $P \times P$  (or  $12...Q-Q4$ ;  $13 Kt \times Kt$ ,  $B \times Kt$ ;  $14 B-Kt3$ ,  $Q-Q2$ ;  $15 B \times B$ ,  $P \times B$ ;  $16 P \times P$ ,  $Kt \times QP$ ;  $17 B-K3!$ ,  $R-Q1$ ;  $18 R-B1$ ,  $Kt \times Ktch$ ;  $19 Q \times Kt$ ,  $B \times B$ ;  $20 P \times B+$ );  $13 Kt \times Kt$ ,  $B \times Kt$ ;  $14 B-K4$ ,  $Q-Q2$ ;  $15 P \times P$ ,  $R-Q1$ ;  $16 Q \times Qch$ ,  $B \times Q$ ;  $17 R-Q1$ ,  $Kt-K2!$ ;  $18 Kt-Q4$ ,  $O-O$  (not  $18...P-R3?$ ;  $19 Kt-Kt3$ ,  $B-Kt3$ ;  $20 B-R3 \pm$ . Capablanca—Chajes, New York, 1915);  $19 B-K3 \pm$  (Capablanca).

(g) Weaker is  $13 Kt-K4$ ,  $P-Q6$ ;  $14 Kt \times Kt$ ,  $P \times B$ ;  $15 Q \times Qch$ ,  $R \times Q$ ;  $16 Kt \times P?$ .  $R-Q8$ ;  $17 B-B4$ ,  $B \times Kt$ ;  $18 P \times$

$B$ ,  $R \times Rch$ ;  $19 R \times R$ ,  $K-Q2$ ;  $20 R-QB1$ ,  $R-R1+$ .

(h)  $14 Kt \times Kt$ ,  $P \times B$  transposes to note (g).

(i)  $19 R-B1$ ,  $Q-K5!$ . Analysis by U. S. Team, 1946.

(j) If  $12...Q-Q2$ ;  $13 Kt-B1$ ,  $R-Q1$ ;  $14 Kt-K3!$  (stronger than  $14 P-KR3$ ,  $B-R4$ ;  $15 Kt-Kt3$ ,  $B-Kt3$ ;  $16 Kt-Q4$ ,  $Kt \times Kt$ ;  $17 P \times Kt$ ,  $Kt-K3$ ;  $18 B-K3 =$ . Pinkus—Lilienthal, match U. S. A.—U.S.S.R., 1945),  $B \times Kt$ ;  $15 Q \times B \pm$ , for if  $15...Kt \times P$ ;  $16 Q-Kt3$ ,  $Kt-Kt3$ ;  $17 Kt-B5$ ,  $Kt-K3$ ;  $18 P-KR4+$  (Lilienthal).

(k) Alekhine—Nimzovitch, St. Petersburg, 1914.

(l) Also playable is  $11...Kt \times Kt$ ;  $12 P \times Kt$ ,  $P-KB3$ . Blackburne—Zukertort, 3rd match game, 1887.

(m) Alekhine—Euwe, German Quadrangular tournament, 1937.

## Additional notes continued from p. 338

(n) Not  $11 B-Kt3?$ ,  $P-KR4!$  +.

(o) If  $12 Kt-Q4$ ,  $Kt \times KP$ ;  $13 Kt \times B$ ,  $P \times Kt$ ;  $14 B-Q4$ ,  $Q-Q3$ ;  $15 Kt-Q2$  (not  $15 B \times Kt?$ ,  $Q \times B$ ;  $16 Q \times KtP$ ,  $Kt \times KBP!$  + +),  $Kt \times Kt$ ;  $16 Q \times Kt$ ,  $R-KKt1$ ;  $17 B \times Kt$ ,  $Q \times B \mp$ . Trifunovich—Kostich, Llyublyana, 1938.

(p) Weaker is  $12...Kt \times Kt$ ;  $13 Kt \times Kt$ ,  $Kt \times P$ ;  $14 B-Q4$ ,  $B-Q3$ ;  $15 P-KB4$ ,  $P \times P$  e.p.;  $16 Kt \times P$ ,  $Kt \times Ktch$ ;  $17 Q \times Kt$ ,  $Q-R5$ ;  $18 P-KR3$ ,  $R-KKt1$ ;  $19 B \times P!$  +.

(q) Nagy—Dyckhoff, correspondence, 1936.

## Notes continued from p. 339

(e) Weak is  $13...P-QB4$ ;  $14 Kt \times B$ ,  $P \times Kt$ ;  $15 B-B2$ ,  $Kt-B5?$ ;  $16 Q-Q3$ ,  $P-Kt3$ ;  $17 B-R6$ ,  $R-B2$ ;  $18 Q-Kt3$ ,  $B-B1$ ;  $19 B-Kt5$ ,  $Q-B2$ ;  $20 P-Kt3$ ,  $Kt \times P$ ;  $21 QR-K1+$ . Bogoljubow—Eliskases, 4th match game, 1939. A good alternative is  $13...Kt \times B$ ;  $14 Kt \times Kt$ . However, now  $14...P-KB3$  is slightly dangerous because of  $15 P \times P$ ,  $R \times P$ ;  $16 B-Kt5$ ,  $R-Kt3$ ;  $17 B \times B$ ,  $Q \times B$ ;  $18 P-KB4$ ,  $R-KB1$ ;  $19 QR-K1$ ,  $Q-Q3$ ;  $20 Q-Q4 \pm$ . Pilnik—Najdorf, Mar del Plata, 1945.

(f) Kitto—Euwe, Bournemouth, 1939.

(g) If  $13 QR-Q1$ ,  $QR-Q1$ ;  $14 KR-K1$ ,  $Kt-R4$ ;  $15 B-B2$ ,  $B-KKt5 =$ .

(h) Keres—Dyckhoff, correspondence, 1936.

(i) Inferior is  $13...P \times Kt$ ;  $14 Q \times Kt$ ,  $P \times P$ ;  $15 Q \times KKtP$ ,  $Q-Q2$ ;  $16 B-R6$  (or  $16 KR-K1$ ,  $K-R1$ ;  $17 B-Q4 \pm$ . Van Gelder—Romanovsky, Mannheim, 1914. Best now is  $17...P-QB4$ ;  $18 P-K6$ ,  $P \times P$ ;  $19 B \times Pch$ ,  $K \times B$ ;  $20 Q \times Bch$ ,  $K-R1$ ;  $21 Q \times P$  but Black has excellent drawing chances. Euwe),  $P \times B$ ;  $17 P-B3$ ,  $B-B4ch$ ;  $18 K-R1$ ,  $QR-K1$ ;  $19 QR-K1 \pm$ .

(j) An improvement on  $17...P-B3$ ;  $18 RP \times P$ ,  $RP \times P$ ;  $19 B \times P$ ,  $P \times P$ ;  $20 B-B4ch \pm$ . Alekhine—Teichmann, match,

1921.

(k)  $19 KR-B1$  (Keres—Wildehaan, correspondence, 1937),  $B-Q7$ .

(l) If  $11...Kt-B4$ ;  $12 B-B2$ ,  $B-Kt5$  (too risky is  $12...Kt-Q2$ ;  $13 B-B4$ ,  $P-Kt4$ ;  $14 B-KKt3$ ,  $P-KKt5$ ;  $15 Kt-Q4$ ,  $KKt \times P$ ;  $16 P-KB4$ ,  $P \times P$  e.p.;  $17 QKt \times P+$ . Schlechter—Strobl, Vienna, 1915);  $13 Q-Kt1$ ,  $P-R3$ ;  $14 P-KR3$ ,  $B-K3$ ;  $15 Kt-Kt3$ ,  $Kt \times Kt$ ;  $16 P \times Kt$ ,  $R-K1$ ;  $17 Kt-Q4 \pm$ . Konstantinopolsky—Samykhovskiy, 1935.  $11...Kt-R4$ ;  $12 B-B2$ ,  $Kt \times Kt$ ;  $13 Q \times Kt$  transposes to col. 11.  $11...Kt-R4$ ;  $12 Kt \times Kt$ ,  $Kt \times B$ ;  $13 Kt-B6ch$ ,  $P \times Kt$  is satisfactory for Black.

(m) Generally considered best. The alternatives are: (1)  $12 Kt-Q4$ ,  $QKt \times Kt$ ;  $13 P \times Kt$ ,  $Q-Q2$ ;  $14 P-B4$ ,  $P-B3$ ;  $15 R-B1 \pm$ . Berger—Taubenhaus, Frankfurt, 1887. (2)  $12 Kt \times Kt$ ,  $BP \times Kt$ ;  $13 Kt-Q4$ ,  $Kt \times Kt$ ;  $14 P \times Kt$ ,  $P-QR4$ ;  $15 P-QR4$ ,  $P-B3$ ;  $16 P-B4$ ,  $Q-Q2$ ;  $17 P \times P$ ,  $P \times P$ ;  $18 P-Kt4 \pm$ . Treybal—Spielmann, Teplitz—Schonau, 1922.

(n) Or  $13...B-KKt5$ ;  $14 P-B3$ ,  $B-R4$ ;  $15 QKt-K4!$ ,  $K-R1$ ;  $16 Kt \times Kt+$ . Rosselli—Yates, Trieste, 1923. If  $13...Q-Q2$  equally  $14 QKt-K4!$  +.

(o) Breyer—Tarrasch, Mannheim, 1914.

## MORPHY DEFENSE: OPEN GAME

1 P-K4, P-K4; 2 Kt-KB3, Kt-QB3; 3 B-Kt5, P-QR3; 4 B-R4, Kt-B3; 5 O-O, Kt x P; 6 P-Q4, P-QKt4; 7 B-Kt3, P-Q4; 8 P x P, B-K3; 9 P-B3, B-K2\*

	16	17	18	19	20
10	(B-K3).....R-K1.....			Q-K2	
	Kt-R4 (a)	O-O		Kt-B4.....	O-O
11	Kt-Q4	Kt-Q4 (d)		QKt-Q2 (l)	B-B2 (p)
	O-O	Kt x KP (e)		P-Q5 (m)	P-B3 !
12	P-B3	P-B3		P x P	P x P (q)
	Kt-B4	B-Q3 ! (f)		Kt x QP	R x P
13	B-QB2 (b)	P x Kt (g)		Kt x Kt	Kt-Kt5
	Kt-B5	B-KKt5		Q x Kt	B-QB4
14	B-B1	Q-B2.....	Q-Q2	B x B	Kt x Kt
	Kt x KP	P-QB4	Q-R5	P x B	P x Kt
15	P-QKt4 !	B x P (h)	P-KR3	Kt-B3	Kt-Q2
	Kt-Kt2	P x Kt	P-QB4	Q-Q6	P-K6 !
16	P-KB4	B x R	Q-KB2 (j)	Q x Q	P x P
	Kt-B5	R-R5	Q x Qch	Kt x Q	R x Rch
17	Q-Q3	R-B1	K x Q	Kt-Q4 (n)	Kt x R
	P-Kt3	P-Q6	B-Q2 !	K-B2	Q-R5
18	P-B5 ± (c)	Q-B2	Kt-B5	Kt-B6	Q-B2
		Q x Qch = (i)	B x Kt ≠ (k)	Kt-Kt5 = (o)	Q x Qch = (r)

\* See p. 338, Diagram 144

(a) 10...Q-Q2; 11 QKt-Q2, Kt x Kt; 12 Q x Kt, O-O transposes to col. 13.

(b) Not 13 P-KB4?, Kt(B4) x B !; 14 Kt x Kt (14 P x Kt, P-QB4 ≠), Kt-B5; 15 B-Q4, B-KB4; 16 R-B2, P-QR4; 17 Kt-B5, P-R5; 18 Q-QB1, Q-K1+. Keres-Euwe, Stockholm, 1937.

(c) 18...B-Q2; 19 B-R6. Kunert-Ohls, correspondence, 1929-30.

(d) For 11 QKt-Q2 see col. 6.

(e) A playable alternative is 11...Kt-R4; 12 B-B2, P-QB4; 13 Kt x B, P x Kt; 14 B x Kt, P x B; 15 Q-K2, Q-Q6; 16 Q x P, Q x Q; 17 R x Q, QR-Q1 with sufficient compensation for the Pawn sacrificed (Lärobok, 1921). 11...Kt x Kt leads to a minimal disadvantage: 12 P x Kt, B-QKt5 ! (a novelty); 13 R-K2, Q-R5; 14 P-QR3, B-R4; 15 B-B2, B-Kt3; 16 P-B3, Kt-Kt4; 17 B-K3, P-KB3; 18 Q-Q2, QR-K1; 19

P x P, P x P; 20 Kt-B3 ±. Engels-Bogoljubow, Stuttgart, 1939. 11...Q-Q2? is a blunder: 12 Kt x B, Q or P x Kt; 13 R x Kt++ (Tarrasch's Trap).

(f) The Breslau Variation. If 12...P-QB4?; 13 P x Kt, P x Kt; 14 KP x P, B-KKt5; 15 Q x P, B-B3; 16 R x Kt+. Kramer-Gruenfeld, correspondence, 1919.

(g) If 13 B-KB4, Kt-B5; 14 B x B, KKt x B; 15 R x B, P x R; 16 Kt x KP, Q-B3 !; 17 Kt x R, R x Kt; 18 Q x Pch, K-R1; 19 Kt-Q2, Kt-K6; 20 Q-Q3, Q-Kt4 ≠. Analysis by Gruenfeld.

(h) Better than 15 Kt x P, P x Kt; 16 B x P, Q-R5; 17 R-B1, R-R3 !; 18 B-KB4, P-B5; 19 Kt-R3, B-B4ch; 20 K-R1, Kt-Q6; 21 Kt x KtP, P-Kt4+.

Notes continued on p. 345

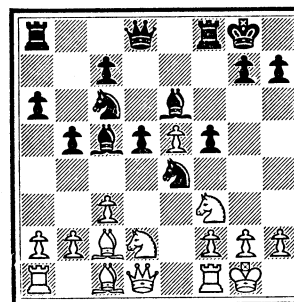
## MORPHY DEFENSE: OPEN GAME

1 P-K4, P-K4; 2 Kt-KB3, Kt-QB3; 3 B-Kt5, P-QR3; 4 B-R4, Kt-B3; 5 O-O, Kt x P; 6 P-Q4, P-QKt4; 7 B-Kt3, P-Q4; 8 P x P, B-K3; 9 P-B3

	21	22	23	24	25
9	(B-K2).....		B-QB4		
10	P-QR4.....	Kt-Q4	QKt-Q2		
	P-Kt5 (a)	Kt x KP	O-O		
11	Kt-Q4 ! (b)	P-B3	B-B2		
	Kt x KP	Kt-KB3 (f)	P-B4 (i)*		
12	P-KB4	Q-K2 (g)	Kt-Kt3.....		P x P e.p.
	B-Kt5 ! (c)	Kt-B5	B-Kt3 (j)		Kt x P(B3)
13	Q-B2	B-B2	KKt-Q4		Kt-Kt3
	P-QB4 ! (d)	Q-Q2	Kt x Kt		B-Kt3 (p)
14	P x Kt	P-QKt3	Kt x Kt		KKt-Q4 (q)
	P x Kt	Kt-Kt3	Q-K2.....	B x Kt?	Kt x Kt
15	P x QP	R-K1	P-B3 (k)	P x B (m)	P x Kt
	O-O	O-O	Kt-Kt4	P-B5	Q-Q3
16	B-K3	B-Kt5	B x Kt	P-B3	Q-Q3
	B-K3	KR-K1	Q x B	Kt-Kt6 (n)	P-B3
17	Kt-Q2	Kt-Q2	K-R1 ± (l)	P x Kt+ (o)	Q-Kt3
	Kt x Kt = (e)	Kt-R4 ≠ (h)			Q-Q2 = (r)

## \* DIAGRAM 146

cols. 23-25



[After 11...P-B4]

(a) Best. If instead (r) 10...R-QKt1; 11 P x P, P x P; 12 Kt-Q4, Kt x KP; 13 P-B3, Kt-B4; 14 B-B2, B-Q2; 15 P-QKt4, Kt-Kt2; 16 Q-K2, Kt-B5;

17 R-K1 ±. Alekhine-Rohacek, Munich, 1941. (2) 10...Kt-R4; 11 P x P, P x P; 12 B-B2, O-O; 13 Kt-Q4, Kt-B5; 14 R x R, Q x R; 15 P-B3, Kt-B4; 16 P-QKt4, Kt-R3; 17 P-B4+. Ahues-Monticelli, San Remo, 1930.

(b) An ingenious method of revitalizing a discredited variation. The older line is 11 R-K1, Kt-B4; 12 B-B2, B-Kt5 ! ≠. Perlis-Lasker, St. Petersburg, 1909.

(c) Better than 12...Kt-B5; 13 Q-K2, Kt-R4; 14 B-B2, O-O; 15 Kt-Q2, Kt-KB3; 16 Kt x B+ (Euwe). If here 13 P-B5?, QB-B1; 14 Q-K1, B-Kt2; 15 P x P, P-B4 !; 16 P-B6, B x P+. Alekhine-Euwe, 13th match game, 1935.

(d) Best, for if 13...Kt-Kt3; 14 P x P ! ±.

(e) Horowitz-Reshevsky, 12th match game, 1941.

Notes continued on p. 345

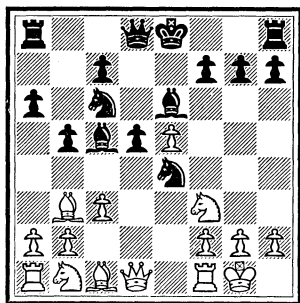
## MORPHY DEFENSE: OPEN GAME

1 P-K4, P-K4; 2 Kt-KB3, Kt-QB3; 3 B-Kt5, P-QR3; 4 B-R4, Kt-B3; 5 O-O, Kt x P; 6 P-Q4, P-QKt4; 7 B-Kt3, P-Q4; 8 P x P, B-K3

	26	27	28	29	30
9 (P-B3).....					Kt-B3?
(B-QB4) (a)*					Kt x Kt
10 (QKt-Q2).....				Q-Q3 (k)	P x Kt
(O-O)				O-O	Kt-K2 (p)
11 (B-B2).....		Q-K2	QKt-Q2	B-R3 (q)	
Kt x KBP (b)		B-B4	P-B4	P-QR4	
12 R x Kt		Kt x Kt	P x P e.p.	Kt-Q4	
P-B3		P x Kt	Kt x P(B3)	P-R5	
13 P x P (c)		Kt-Kt5 (i)	Kt-Kt5	P-KB4	
Q x P		Kt x P	Kt-K4 (l)	P x B	
14 Q-B1 (d)		Kt x KP	Q-Kt3	B x Kt	
B-KKt5		Q-Q6	Q-Q3	B x B	
15 Q-Q3.....	P-KR3 (g)	Q x Q	R-K1	P-B5	
Q-B4 (e)	B x Kt (h)	Kt x Q	KKt-Kt5 (m)	B-Q2	
16 Q x Q	Kt x B	Kt x B	QKt-K4	P-K6	
B x Q	B x Rch	Kt x Kt	P x Kt	P-Kt7!	
17 B x B	Q x B	B-K3	B x Bch	R-Kt1	
R x B	Kt-K4	Kt x B	K-R1	R x P	
18 Kt-Kt3 + (f)	B-Q1 +	P x Kt	B-K3 (n)	P x Bch	
		P-QR4 = (j)	Kt x BP! + (o)	Q x P +	

## \* DIAGRAM 147

cols. 26-29



[After 9... B-QB4]

(a) Inferior defenses are: (1) 9... Kt-B4; 10 B-B2, B-Kt5; 11 R-K1, B-K2 (not 11... P-Q5; 12 P-KR3, B-R4; 13 P-

K6!, BP x P; 14 P-QKt4+); 12 B-K3, O-O; 13 QKt-Q2, B-R4; 14 Q-Kt1 ±. (2) 9... P-Kt3 (Alapin); 10 P-QR4, R-QKt1; 11 P x P, P x P; 12 QKt-Q2, Kt x Kt; 13 B x Kt, B-Kt2; 14 B-Kt5, Kt-K2; 15 Q-Q4 ±. Sergeant-Louis, Bromley, 1920.

(b) The Dilworth Variation, which was popular for several years, but is now considered unsound.

(c) Best. If (1) 13 Kt-B1, B x Rch; 14 K x B, P x P; 15 K-Kt1, P-K5; 16 B-Kt5, Q-Q2; 17 Kt-Q4, B-Kt5; 18 Q-Q2, Kt-K4; 19 Kt-K3, P-B3 ±. Sergeant-Thomas, Guildford, 1944. (2) 13 Kt-Kt3, B x Rch; 14 K x B, P x P; 15 Kt-B5, B-Kt5; 16 B-Kt3, Kt-K2 ±.

Notes continued on p. 346

## Notes continued from p. 342

(i) Teichmann-John, Breslau, 1913. Black's position is worth more than the exchange but by returning the extra material White can draw.

(j) Or 16 P x B, P x Kt; 17 Q-KB2, Q x P; 18 B-Q1, Q-Kt3; 19 Q x P, B-B2; 20 B-K3, P x P; 21 Kt-Q2, P-B4+. Wolf-Tarrasch, Carlsbad, 1923.

(k) 19 P x B, Kt-Q6ch; 20 K-B1, Kt x R; 21 K x Kt, B-Kt6ch; 22 K-B1, KR-K1.

(l) Best. The alternatives are: (1) 11 B-B2, P-Q5!; 12 R-Q1, B-B5; 13 Q-K1, P-Q6; 14 Kt-R3, Q-B1; 15 B-Kt1, B-Q4 (15... Q-Kt5 is also strong. Weak is 15... Q-B4; 16 Kt-Q4!, Kt x Kt; 17 P x Kt, Kt-K3; 18 Kt x B, P x Kt; 19 Q-B3 ±. Szabo-Euwe, Amsterdam, 1939); 16 B x P, B x Kt; 17 P x B, Kt x B; 18 R x Kt, Q-B4; 19 R-K3, B-B4 ±. (2) 11 R-Q1, Kt x B; 12 P x Kt, O-O; 13 P-QKt4, P-B3!; 14 P x P, R x P; 15 B-Kt5, R-Kt3; 16

Kt-R4, B x B; 17 Kt x R, Q-Q3; 18 P-KB4, B-B3 ± (Euwe).

(m) 11... O-O transposes to cols. 1-2.

(n) Thomas-Tartakower, London, 1927.

(o) If instead 18... B-B4; 19 B-K3, B-Kt3; 20 QR-Q1 ±.

(p) 11 QKt-Q2 again transposes to cols. 1-2. If 11 R-Q1, Q-Q2; 12 QKt-Q2 (or 12 P-B4, KtP x P; 13 B x P, B-QB4; 14 B-K3, B x B; 15 Q x B, Kt-R4 =), Kt x Kt; 13 B x Kt, Kt-R4; 14 B-B2, P-QB4; 15 Q-Q3, P-Kt3 =. Wolf-Bernstein, Carlsbad, 1923.

(q) If 12 R-Q1, Q-K1; 13 P x P, R x P; 14 QKt-Q2, Q-R4; 15 Kt x Kt, P x Kt; 16 B x P, B-B5; 17 Q-K3, R-K1 with a strong attack. Böök-Kiuru, Helsinki, 1946.

(r) A Steiner-Bogoljubow, match Hungary-Germany, 1939. Black has enough for the Pawn.

## Notes continued from p. 343

(f) More speculative is 11... Kt-B4; 12 B-B2, B-Q2 (not 12... O-O; 13 P-QKt4, Kt-Kt2; 14 P-KB4, Kt-B5; 15 Q-Q3+); 13 P-QKt4, Kt-R5; 14 R-K1, Kt-B5; 15 Q-K2, K-B1; 16 Kt-Q2, B-KB3; 17 Kt x Kt, KtP x Kt; 18 B x Kt, B x B =. Engels-Kieninger, Barmen, 1938.

(g) On 12 R-K1, Kt-B5 is again best. Black gets a slight advantage by offering to return the Pawn.

(h) 18 B x B, R x B; 19 Q-K5, P-Kt3; 20 P-KKt4, Kt-Kt2; 21 P-Kt4, QR-K1; 22 Q-B4, Kt-R5; 23 R-K3, Q-Q3. Alekhine-Fine, AVRO tournament, 1938.

(i) Not 11... Kt x Kt; 12 Q x Kt, P-B3; 13 P x P, R x P; 14 Kt-Q4, Kt x Kt; 15 P x Kt, B-Kt3; 16 P-QR4! ±. Lasker-Rubinstein, St. Petersburg, 1914. The new try 11... B-B4 is refuted by 12 Kt-Kt3, B-KKt5!; 13 Kt x B, Kt x Kt; 14 R-K1, B-R4; 15 B-Kt5!, B x Kt; 16 Q x B, Q x B; 17 Q x P, Kt-Q2 (Bronstein-Flohr, Moscow, 1944) and now 18 P-KR4!, Q-R4; 19 Q x Kt (B6)+.

(j) If 12... B-K2; 13 KKt-Q4, Q-Q2; 14 Kt x Kt, Q x Kt; 15 P-QR4 ±.

(k) If now 15 B-Kt3, B x Kt!; 16 P x B, P-B5; 17 P-B3, Kt-Kt6! (compare col. 24); 18 R-K1, Q-R5; 19 P x Kt, P x P; 20 B-K3, P-B3!+. Bogoljubow-Euwe, 5th match game, 1941.

(l) 17... Q-K2; 18 B-Kt3, B x Kt; 19 P x B. Analysis by Reshevsky.

(m) On Bogoljubow's suggestion 15 Q x B, P-B4; 16 Q-Q1, P-KB5 is again feasible (16... Q-K2 is also playable).

(n) The alternative is 16... Kt-Kt4; 17 P-KR4, Kt-B2; 18 B x P, Q x P; 19 Q-Q2+.

(o) 17... P x P; 18 Q-Q3, B-B4 (if 18... Q-R5; 19 Q x Pch, Q x Q; 20 B x Qch, K x B; 21 B-Kt5 and White should win the endgame); 19 Q x B, R x Q; 20 B x R, Q-R5; 21 B-R3, Q x Pch; 22 K-R1, Q x KP; 23 B-Q2, P-B4 (better than 23... Q x P; 24 B-B4, P-B4; 25 B-K6ch, K-R1; 26 B x QP, R-Q1; 27 QR-Q1+). Smyslov-Reshevsky, match U.S.S.R.-U. S. A., 1945); 24 QR-K1 (Reshevsky suggests 24 B-B3, P-Q5; 25 QR-K1, Q-B3; 26 B-R5+, while Euwe

## Additional notes continued from p. 343

recommends 24 KR—K1, Q × P; 25 B—K6ch, K—R1; 26 B × P, Q × B; 27 B × R, Q—R3ch; 28 K—Kt1, Q—R7ch; 29 K—B1 with the better chances for White), Q × P; 25 B—B4, P—Q5 (best; if 25... Q—B3; 26 B × P, P—Q5; 27 R—K6, Q—Kt4; 28 K—R2, P—B5; 29 P—B4++). Boleslavsky—Ragosin, Moscow, 1942; 26 B × P (riskier is 26 R—K7, P—Q6; 27 B × P, Q—B3; 28 R—Q7, P—B5 and Black won. Cortlever—Euwe, Amsterdam, 1942), P—Q6; 27 B—K6ch (Boleslavsky—Botvinnik, Sverdlovsk, 1943 continued 27 B—K5, Q × RP; 28 B—Q6 with unclear complications), K—R1; 28 B—K5, Q—Q7; 29 P—B4 and White's attack should win.

## Notes continued from p. 344

(d) On other moves Black obtains counterplay. *E.g.*, (1) 14 Kt—B1, B × Rch; 15 K × B, Kt—K4; 16 B—K3, QR—K1; 17 B—Q4, B—Kt5; 18 Kt—Q2, Q—R5ch; 19 K—Kt1, Kt × Ktch; 20 P × Kt, B—R6 and the attack remains. (2) 14 Kt—Kt3, B × Rch; 15 K × B, Kt—K4; 16 Kt—B5, B—Kt5; 17 Q × Pch, K—R1; 18 Q—K4, P—Kt3; 19 K—Kt3, Kt × Kt; 20 Q × B, Kt—Kt8!; 21 Kt—Q3, QR—Q1++. Nightingale—Ritson Morry, correspondence, 1944.

(e) 15... B × Rch; 16 K × B, Kt—K4; 17 Q × RPch, K—B2; 18 K—Kt1!, or 15... B × Rch; 16 K × B, P—Kt3; 17 Q × QPch, K—R1; 18 B—K4 and should win in both cases.

(f) 18... B × Rch; 19 K × B, Kt—K4; 20 Kt—Q4, R—B2; 21 K—K2, Kt—B5; 22 P—QR4.

(g) Also strong is 15 K—R1, B × R (or 15... QR—K1; 16 B—Q1, Kt—K4; 17 R—K2, Kt—Q6; 18 R × R, Kt—B7ch; 19 Q × Kt, B × Q; 20 R × Rch+); 16 Q × B, QR—K1 (Smyslov—Botvinnik, Moscow, 1943); 17 P—KR3+.

(h) If 15... B—R4; 16 Q—Q3++. Or 15... B—K3; 16 K—R1, B × R; 17 Q × B followed by Q—Kt3+.

(i) If 13 R—Q1!, P × Kt!; 14 Q × BP, B—Q2!; 15 Q—Q5, B—KKt5!/+.

Instead of 17 P × Kt, 17 R—B2!, Q—R5; 18 Q—Q3 (Golmayo—Tarrasch, London, 1927), Kt—B4; 19 B—Q2 also gives White an advantage.

(p) Better than 13... B—R2; 14 Kt—Kt5, B—B2; 15 Kt × B, R × Kt; 16 B—Kt5, Q—Q2; 17 Kt—Q4 ± (*Handbuch*). A playable alternative is 13... B—Q3; 14 QKt—Q4, Kt × Kt; 15 Kt × Kt, QB—Kt5; 16 P—B3, B—Q2; 17 Q—Q3, P—B4 =.

(q) If 14 P—QR4!, B—Kt5; 15 Q—Q3, B × Kt! =.

(r) Lillenthal—Botvinnik, Leningrad—Moscow, 1941.

Boleslavsky—Sokolsky, Sverdlovsk, 1942.

(j) Boleslavsky—Botvinnik, Leningrad—Moscow, 1941. A draw was agreed to here.

(k) The Motzko Variation. A new try is 10 Q—K2, O—O; 11 B—K3, B × B; 12 Q × B, Kt—K2; 13 Kt—Q4, P—QB4; 14 Kt × B, P × Kt; 15 Kt—Q2, Kt—B4 =. Aitken—Euwe, Hastings, 1945-46.

(l) Playable is 13... B—B2; 14 Kt × B, R × Kt; 15 Kt—B3, Q—Q3; 16 Kt—Kt5, R—Q2! =. Analysis by Ed. Lasker, Motzko and Kruger.

(m) Black has a draw with 15... B × Pch; 16 Q × B, QKt—Kt5; 17 Q—R4, Q—Kt3ch; 18 K—R1, Kt—B7ch, etc.

(n) Or 18 Kt × KP, Q × B; 19 Kt × B, Kt—B6ch!+. Breyer—Spielmann, Pisty-an, 1912.

(o) 19 Q—R4, P—R3; 20 Kt × P, Kt × Kt; 21 Q × Kt, QR—K1; 22 B × B, Q × Bch; 23 Q—Q4, Q × Qch; 24 P × Q, Kt—Q6.

(p) Better than 10... B—K2; 11 Kt—Q4, Kt × Kt; 12 P × Kt, O—O; 13 P—KB4, P—KB4 =.

(q) Or 11 P—QR4, P—QB4; 12 B—R3, P—B5; 13 B—R2, Kt—B4; 14 B × B, K × B; 15 P × P, P × P+. Bogoljubov—Tarrasch, Vienna, 1922. The column is Spielmann—Rubinstein, Stockholm, 1919.

## MORPHY DEFENSE: OPEN GAME

1 P—K4, P—K4; 2 Kt—KB3, Kt—QB3; 3 B—K15, P—QR3; 4 B—R4, Kt—B3; 5 O—O, Kt × P\*

	31	32	33	34	35
6 (P—Q4).....					R—K1 (r)
(P—QKt4).....			P × P (m)		Kt—B4 (s)
7 (B—Kt3) (a)			R—K1		B × Kt (t)
(P—Q4) (b)			P—Q4		QP × B
8 (P × P).....	P—QR4 (h)		Kt × P.....	B—KKt5!	P—Q4
(B—K3) (c)	QKt × P! (i)	B—Q3	Q—Q3 (o)		Kt—K3
9 QKt—Q2 (d)	Kt × Kt	Kt × Kt	P—B4!		Kt × P
Kt—B4 (e)	P × Kt	B × Pch	P × P e.p. (p)		B—K2
10 P—B3 (f)	P × P (j)	K—R1	Kt × P		P—QB3
P—Q5	B—QB4!	Q—R5	B—K3		O—O
11 P × P	P—QB3	R × Ktch	Kt × Kt		P—KB4
Kt × QP	O—O	P × R	P × Kt		P—B3
12 Kt × Kt	BP × P	Q—Q8ch	Kt—Q4		Kt—B3
Q × Kt	B—Kt3	Q × Q	P—Kt4		Q—Q2
13 B × B	Kt—B3 (k)	Kt × Q dis ch	R × P		B—K3
Kt × B	B—Kt2	K × Kt	P × B		B—Q3
14 Q—B3	P × P	K × B	Q × P		P—KKt3
R—Q1	R × P	B—K3	Q—Q4		Q—B2
15 P—QR4 (g)	R × R	B—K3 ± (n)	R—K5!+ (q)	QKt—Q2	B—Q2 =
B—Kt5! ±	B × R = (l)				

## \* See p. 326, Diagram 136

(a) Some unusual alternatives are: (1) 7 P—Q5, P × B (Black can also try 7... Kt—K2; 8 R—K1, Kt—QB4!, when White has some attack at the expense of a Pawn); 8 P × Kt, P—Q3; 9 R—K1, B—B4!, but not here 9... Kt—B3; 10 P—B4, B—K2; 11 Kt—B3, O—O; 12 Q × P, B—K3; 13 Kt—KKt5 ±. Elisaskes—Znosko-Borovsky, Birmingham, 1937. (2) 7 Kt × P, Kt × Kt; 8 P × Kt, Kt—B4; 9 B—Kt3, Kt × B; 10 RP × Kt, B—Kt2 ±.

(b) Not 7... P × P; 8 R—K1, P—Q4; 9 Kt—B3, B—K3; 10 Kt × Kt, P × Kt; 11 R × P, B—K2; 12 B × B, P × B; 13 R × KP, Q—Q2; 14 Q—K2, O—O; 15 Q—K4+. Burn—Tarrasch, Ostend, 1907.

(c) If 8... Kt—K2; 9 P—QR4, R—QKt1; 10 P × P, P × P; 11 Kt—Q4, Kt—QB4 (if 11... P—QB4!; 12 Kt × P, R × Kt;

13 B—R4, B—Q2; 14 P—KB3+); 12 B—Kt5, Q—Q2; 13 Kt—QB3 (or perhaps even stronger 13 R—R7), P—QB3; 14 Q—R5 ±. Tarrasch—Tchigorin, match, 1893.

(d) Other possibilities are: (1) 9 Q—K2, Kt—R4; 10 QKt—Q2 (or 10 R—Q1, B—QB4; 11 B—K3, B × B; 12 Q × B, P—QB4; 13 P—B3, O—O =), Kt × Kt; 11 B × Kt, P—QB4!; 12 P—B3, Kt × B = (Purdy). (2) 9 B—K3, Kt—R4; 10 QKt—Q2, Kt × Kt; 11 Q × Kt, P—QB4; 12 P—B3, B—K2 ±. Rosselli—Canal, Trieste, 1923.

(e) 9... B—K2; 10 P—B3, O—O transposes into cols. 1-6.

(f) Or 10 Q—K2, B—K2; 11 R—Q1, O—O; 12 Kt—B1, Q—Q2; 13 P—B3, Kt × B; 14 P × Kt, P—B3; 15 B—B4, P × P =. Réti—L. Steiner, Berlin, 1928.

## Notes continued on p. 349

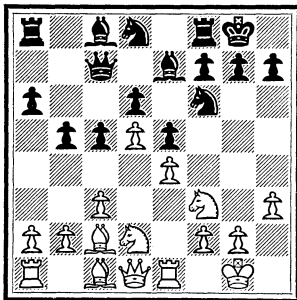
## MORPHY DEFENSE: STRONG POINT VARIATION

1 P-K4, P-K4; 2 Kt-KB3, Kt-QB3; 3 B-Kt5, P-QR3; 4 B-R4, Kt-B3; 5 O-O, B-K2; 6 R-K1, P-QKt4; 7 B-Kt3, P-Q3; 8 P-B3, O-O; 9 P-KR3, Kt-QR4; 10 B-B2, P-B4; 11 P-Q4, Q-B2; 12 QKt-Q2, Kt-B3; 13 P-Q5, Kt-Q1 (a)\*

	36	37	38	39	40
14	P-QR4				Kt-B1
	R-Kt1			P-Kt5?	Kt-K1 (i)
15	P-B4!	P × P		Kt-B4	P-KKt4
	P-Kt5	P × P		P-QR4 (g)	P-Kt3
16	Kt-B1	P-B4	Kt-B1	KKt × P!	B-R6
	Kt-K1	P-Kt5	Kt-K1	B-R3	Kt-KKt2
17	P-Kt4	Kt-B1	Kt(B3)-R2 (e)	B-Kt3	Kt-Kt3
	P-Kt3	Kt-K1	P-Kt3	P × Kt	P-B3
18	Kt-Kt3	P-Kt4	P-KB4	P-Q6	K-R2
	Kt-KKt2	P-Kt3	P × P	B × P	Kt-B2
19	K-R2	Kt-Kt3 (c)	B × P	Q × B	B-K3
	P-B3	Kt-KKt2	P-B3	Q × Q	K-R1
20	R-KKt1 ± (b)	K-R1	Kt-B3	Kt × Q ± (h)	R-KKt1
	P-B3 = (d)	Kt-B2 = (f)			B-Q2 = (j)

## \* DIAGRAM 148

cols. 36-40



[After 13... Kt-Q1]

(a) Inadequate is 13... Kt-QR4; 14 P-QKt3!, B-Q2; 15 Kt-B1, Kt-Kt2; 16 P-B4, KR-Kt1; 17 Kt-K3, P × P; 18 Kt × BP, B-KB1; 19 P-QR4, Kt-QR4; 20 KKt-Q2 ±. Alexander-Keres, Hastings, 1937-38.

(b) 20... Kt-B2; 21 P-Kt3, R-Kt2; 22 B-Q2, K-R1; 23 Q-K2, B-Q1; 24 R-

Kt2, Q-Q2; 25 R-R1, Q-K1; 26 K-Kt1. Keres-Vidmar, Bad Nauheim, 1936. White's winning chances are very slight, but Black has no counterplay whatsoever.

(c) Better than 19 B-R6, Kt-KKt2; 20 Kt-K3, P-B3; 21 K-Kt2, Kt-B2; 22 B × Kt, K × B; 23 Kt-Q2, R-KR1; 24 Kt(Q2)-B1, P-R4; 25 Kt-Kt3, P × P; 26 P × P, Kt-Kt4 ♣. Bogoljubow-Rubinstein, Berlin, 1926.

(d) If Black operates on the open QR file, the chances are about even. In the game Réti-Saemisch, Berlin, 1928, after 21 Kt-R2, Kt-B2; 22 R-KKt1, B-Q2; 23 B-K3, R-R1; 24 Q-Q2, K-R1; 25 QR-KB1, R-KKt1; 26 P-B3, QR-KB1; 27 R-B2, Q-B1; 28 Q-K2, Kt-Kt4; 29 Q-B1 White's attack became steadily stronger. Black should have played 24... R × R; with fewer pieces White's K-side play cannot become dangerous. In Nilsson-Gruenfeld, correspondence, 1937, and Smyslov-Loevenfisch, Leningrad-Moscow, 1939, this exchange of Rooks led to easy draws.

Notes continued on p. 349

## Notes continued from p. 347

(g) Capablanca-Lasker, St. Petersburg, 1914, which continued 15... Q-Q4; 16 Q × Q, R × Q; 17 P × P, P × P; 18 R-R8ch, Kt-Q1; 19 Kt-K4! ±. Black's 15th move is suggested by Nenarokov.

(h) If now 8 Kt × P, Kt × Kt; 9 P × Kt, P-QB3; 10 B-K3, Kt-B4 with at least equality.

(i) Best. The old move 8... R-QKt1 leaves White with complete possession of the QR file after 9 RP × P, RP × P; 10 P × P, B-K3; 11 P-B3, B-QB4; 12 QKt-Q2 ±.

(j) Flashy but inadequate is 10 Kt-B3!, Kt × Kt! (not 10... P × Kt; 11 B × P, R-QKt1; 12 B × Pch, K-K2; 13 B-Q5, B-Kt2; 14 B × Kt, Q × Q; 15 R × Q, B × B; 16 R-K1+. Berger); 11 P × Kt, P-QB4; 12 RP × P, B-K2; 13 BP × P, P-B5; 14 B-R4, O-O; 15 P × P, R × P; 16 P-QB3 =.

(k) 13 Q-Q3, B-K3; 14 P × P, P-QB4 is no better.

(l) Lasker-Schlechter, 8th match game, 1910.

(m) The Riga Variation. If 6... P-Q4?; 7 Kt × P, B-Q2; 8 Kt × P!, K × Kt; 9 Q-R5ch, P-Kt3; 10 Q × QPch, K-

Kt2; 11 Q × Kt(K4)+. Konstantinopol'sky-Shumilin, Ukrainian Championship, 1937.

(n) 15... P-KB4; 16 Kt-B3, K-K2; 17 P-KKt4, P-KKt3; 18 K-Kt3. White won. Capablanca-Ed. Lasker, New York, 1915.

(o) Or 8... B-K2; 9 B × B, Q × B; 10 Kt × P, O-O; 11 B × Kt, P × B; 12 P-KB3, P-QB4; 13 Kt-B6, Q-Q3; 14 Q × P++.

(p) If 9... B-K3; 10 P × P, B × P; 11 Kt × P, P-B3; 12 Kt × Kt, P × Kt; 13 Kt-B3+.

(q) Column and notes are analysis by Berger.

(r) If 6 Q-K2, Kt-B4; 7 B × Kt, QP × B; 8 P-Q4, Kt-K3; 9 P × P, Kt-Q5; 10 Kt × Kt, Q × Kt =.

(s) Better than 6... Kt-B3; 7 P-Q4, P-K5; 8 P-Q5, B-K2; 9 Kt-Kt5 ±.

(t) If 7 Kt-B3, B-K2; 8 Kt × P, O-O is correct, but not 7... Kt × B; 8 Kt × P, B-K2; 9 Kt-Q5!, O-O; 10 Kt × Kt, QP × Kt; 11 Kt × Bch, K-R1; 12 Q-R5+. Yates-Conde, Hastings, 1922-1923.

## Notes continued from p. 348

(e) Careless play can lead to a disadvantage for White. E.g., 17 P-KKt4, P-Kt3; 18 Kt-Kt3, Kt-KKt2; 19 K-R1, P-B3; 20 R-KKt1, Kt-B2; 21 Q-B1?, B-Q2; 22 B-K3, R-R1; 23 Q-Kt2?, R × R; 24 R × R, Q-Kt2; 25 K-R2?, R-R1; 26 Q-B1, R-R3 ♣. Thomas-Rubinstein, Baden-Baden, 1925.

(f) 21 Kt-K3, Kt-Kt2; 22 Q-K2, Kt-K4; 23 R-KB1, B-Q2; 24 R-B2, R-R1; 25 QR-KB1. L. Steiner-Goldstein, 5th match game, 1944.

(g) Better 15... Kt-Kt2; 16 P-R5? (16 P × P, P × P; 17 P-QKt3 ±), R-Kt1!; 17 B-Q2, B-Q2; 18 P × P, P × P; 19 B-Q3, B-Kt4 ♣. Rosselli-B. Lasker, Florence, 1927.

(h) Capablanca-Vidmar, New York, 1927.

(i) Black can also try ... P-B5 at once

followed by a Q-side advance, but the text is safer.

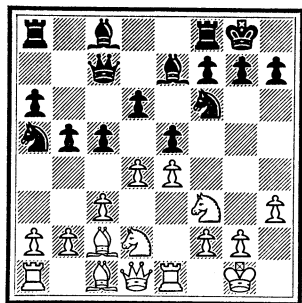
(j) After 21 Q-K2, P-B5 Black has adequate counter-chances on the Q-side. The model game with this line is Chajes-Gruenfeld, Carlsbad, 1923, which continued 22 R-Kt2, Q-B1; 23 QR-KKt1, Q-Kt2; 24 P-R3, KR-B1; 25 Kt-Q2, Q-B2; 26 Kt(Q2)-B1, B-B1; 27 P-KR4, B-K2; 28 K-R1, R-B1; 29 R-R2, Q-B1. The attempt to force ... P-KB4 is not advisable for Black: Aitken-Reshevsky, Stockholm, 1937 went 21 Q-K2 (White's K was at R1 instead of R2), P-B5; 22 Kt-Q2, R-KKt1; 23 R-Kt2, QR-KB1; 24 P-B3, Q-B1; 25 QR-KKt1, P-B4; 26 Kt × KBP, P × Kt; 27 KP × P, Kt × P; 28 P × Kt, B × P; 29 R × Rch, when the resulting ending was favorable for White.

MORPHY DEFENSE: STRONG POINT VARIATION

1 P-K4, P-K4; 2 Kt-KB3, Kt-QB3; 3 B-Kt5, P-QR3;  
4 B-R4, Kt-B3; 5 O-O, B-K2; 6 R-K1, P-QKt4; 7 B-Kt3, P-Q3;  
8 P-B3, O-O; 9 P-KR3, Kt-QR4; 10 B-B2, P-B4; 11 P-Q4,  
Q-B2; 12 QKt-Q2\*

41	42	43	44	45
12 (Kt-B3).....			Kt-Q2 (i)...	B-Q2 (l)
13 Kt-B1 (a)....	P × BP		Kt-B1 (j)	Kt-B1
	BP × P		Kt-Kt3	QR-B1 (m)
14 P × P	Kt-B1 (e)		P-QKt3	P-Q5
	P × P (b)		Kt-B3	Kt-K1
15 B-Kt5 (c)	Q-K2		P-Q5	P-KKt4
	P-R3		Kt-Q1	P-Kt3
	Kt-KR4 !...	B-K3		
16 B-KR4	Kt-Kt5	Kt-K3	P-KKt4	Kt-Kt3
	R-K1	P-R3	P-B3	Kt-KKt2
17 R-B1	B × Kt	Kt-B5	Kt-Kt3	B-R6
	Q-Kt3	B-KB1	Kt-B2	P-B3
18 Q-Q2	Q-R5	Kt-R2	K-R2	Kt-Q2
	B-K3	Kt-K2	P-Kt3	R-Kt1
19 B-Kt1	Q × B	Kt-Kt4 ± (h)	B-K3	P-Kt3
	Kt-K4 † (d)	Q-K2 = (g)	K-R1 = (k)	Kt-Kt2 = (n)

\* DIAGRAM 149  
cols. 41-45



[After 12 QKt-Q2]

(a) An unsound Pawn sacrifice. If 13 P-QR4, R-Kt1 is best, but not 13...BP × P; 14 BP × P, Kt-QKt5? (14...B-Q2 is still sufficient for equality); 15 B-Kt1, KtP × P; 16 R × P ±. Bogoljubow-Rubinstein, Maehrisch-Ostrau, 1923.

(b) If instead 14...Kt × P; 15 Kt × Kt,

P × Kt; 16 P-QKt3 / (but not (1) 16 B-Kt5, Q-B4 !; 17 B-KR4, B-K3; 18 R-B1, Q-Kt5; 19 P-QKt3, QR-B1; 20 Kt-Kt3, P-Q4; 21 P-K5, P-Q6+. Lewis and Rhead-Holmes and Peacock, 1912; (2) 16 Kt-Kt3, Kt-Q2; 17 B-Kt3, Q-Kt3; 18 Kt-B5, B-B3; 19 B-KB4, Kt-K4; 20 B-Q5, R-R2; 21 Q-Kt3, R-B2+. Lasker-Tarrasch, 3rd match game, 1908), P-Q4 (if now 16...Kt-Q2; 17 B-Kt2, B-B3; 18 B × P!, B × B; 19 Q × B, for if 19...Q × B? ?; 20 KR-B1, Q-K7; 21 Kt-Kt3 ++); 17 P × P, Kt × P; 18 B-Kt2, B-B3 =.

(c) Alternatives are: (1) 15 P-QKt3, P-Q4; 16 P-K5, Kt-K5; 17 B × Kt, P × B; 18 R × P, B-KB4 †. Belavienetz-Alatorstev, Leningrad, 1939. (2) 15 R-K2, Q-Kt3; 16 R-Q2, P-Q4; 17 P × P, Kt × P; 18 Kt × P, B-QKt5; 19 R-Q3, Kt-K4; 20 R-KKt3, B-QB4; 21 B-K3, Kt × B †.

(d) Leonhardt-Rubinstein, San Sebastian, 1911.

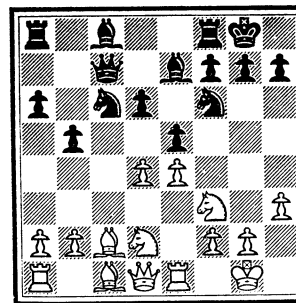
Notes continued on p. 352

MORPHY DEFENSE: STRONG POINT VARIATION

1 P-K4, P-K4; 2 Kt-KB3, Kt-QB3; 3 B-Kt5, P-QR3; 4 B-R4,  
Kt-B3; 5 O-O, B-K2; 6 R-K1, P-QKt4; 7 B-Kt3, P-Q3; 8 P-  
B3, O-O; 9 P-KR3, Kt-QR4; 10 B-B2, P-B4; 11 P-Q4, Q-B2

46	47	48	49	50
12 (QKt-Q2).....			P-QR4.....	P-Q5
			B-Q2 ! (i)	B-Q2
13 P × P			QKt-Q2	QKt-Q2
			BP × P	P-B5 !
14 P-Q5.....		Kt-Kt3	BP × P	Kt-B1
		P-QR4 (f)	KR-B1	Kt-Kt2
15 B-Kt1		B-K3	RP × P (j)	B-K3
		P-R5 (g)	Q × B	Kt-B4
16 P-R3.....	Kt-B1	QKt-Q2	Q × Q	Kt(B3)-Q2 ?
	B-Q2 (d)	B-R3	R × Q	P-Kt3
17 P-QKt3 (b)	B-Q2	R-QB1	R × Kt	P-B4
	KR-B1	Q-Kt2	B × P	P × P
18 Kt-B1	B × Kt	Kt-B1	R-R1 (k)	B × P
	P × B	B-Q1	QR-QB1	Kt-R4
19 R-R2 ! ± (c)	B-Q3	B-Kt1	P-QKt3 (l)	B-R6
	B-Q1 † (e)	R-K1 = (h)	B-B1 = (m)	Kt-KKt2 † (n)

\* DIAGRAM 150  
cols. 46-48



[After 13...Kt-B3]

(a) An improvement on the older line 13...B-Q2; 14 Kt-B1, KR-B1; 15 B-Q3 (15 R-K2 is also good), Kt-B3; 16 B-K3, Q-Kt2; 17 Kt-Kt3, R-B2; 18 R-QB1, QR-B1; 19 B-Kt1, Kt-K1;

20 Q-Q2 ±. Maroczy-Réti, New York, 1924.

(b) An alternative is 17 P-QKt4!, B-Q2; 18 Q-Kt3, Kt-R4; 19 R-R2, Kt-B5; 20 R-B2, Q-Q1; 21 Kt-B1 ±. Yudovitch-Loevenfisch, Moscow, 1939. Less effective is 17 Kt-B1, Kt-B4; 18 B-Q2, B-Q2; 19 Kt-Kt3, KR-B1; 20 B-B2 ±. Maroczy-Kashdan, London, 1932.

(c) 19...QR-B1; 20 Kt-Kt3, KR-Q1; 21 B-Kt5. Horowitz-Reshevsky, 6th match game, 1941.

(d) Also good is 16...Kt-R3; 17 P-KKt4?, P-R4!; 18 Kt(B3)-R2, P × P; 19 P × P, Kt-R2 †. Rabinovitch-Flohr, Leningrad-Moscow, 1939.

(e) 20 Q-Q2, Q-R4; 21 Kt-K3, P-Kt6!; 22 P-R3, Q-R5. Yanofsky-Botvinnik, Groningen, 1946.

Notes continued on p. 352

Notes continued from p. 350

(e) On 14 P-QR4, B-Kt2 is good (but not 14... B-K3; 15 Kt-Kt5, QR-Q1; 16 P x P, P x P; 17 Kt x B, P x Kt; 18 Q-K2, P-B5; 19 P-QKt3+. Loevenfisch-Lilienthal, Moscow, 1940). 14... B-Kt2; 15 Kt-R2, QR-Q1; 16 Q-B3, P-B5; 17 P x P, P x P; 18 QKt-B1, Kt-QR4; 19 Kt-Kt3, B-B1 = is Smyslov-Lilienthal, Leningrad-Moscow, 1941.

(f) Weaker is 14... B-K3; 15 Kt-K3, KR-Q1; 16 Q-K2, P-R3; 17 P-KKt4, B-KB1; 18 P-Kt5, P x P; 19 Kt x KtP ±. Boleslavsky-Lilienthal, Moscow, 1945.

(g) Analysis by Belavienetz.

(h) Tolush-Lilienthal, Leningrad-Moscow, 1939.

(i) An unusual line which has not been given much attention. It is at least as good as 12... Kt-B3 (cols. 36-43).

(j) If 13 P-Q5 Black should proceed as in the column, but not 13... P-B4?; 14 P x P, Kt-Kt3; 15 Kt-K4, B x P; 16 KKt-Kt5, Q-Q2; 17 P-KKt4 ±. Lasker-Réti, New York, 1924.

(k) Tarrasch-Lasker, 5th match game,

Notes continued from p. 351

(f) Inferior is 14... R-Q1; 15 B-Q2 (not 15 P-Q5, Kt-QR4!; 16 Kt x Kt, Q x Kt; 17 B-K3, B-Q2; 18 Q-Q2, Q x Q =. Boleslavsky-Keres, Leningrad-Moscow, 1941), Q-Kt1; 16 P-Q5, Kt-R2; 17 Kt-R5, B-Q2; 18 B-Q3, R-QB1; 19 P-QKt4, B-Q1; 20 Kt-Kt3, B-Kt3; 21 Kt-R4 ±. Smyslov-Keres, Leningrad-Moscow, 1941.

(g) An improvement on 15... Kt-QKt5; 16 B-Kt1, P-R5; 17 QKt-Q2, B-Kt2; 18 P-R3, Kt-B3; 19 B-Q3 ±. Ragosin-Lilienthal, Moscow, 1940.

(h) 20 Kt-Kt3, P-Kt3; 21 B-Kt5, Kt-QR4; 22 P-Q5, Q-Q2; 23 B-Q3, K-Kt2. Luckis-Najdorf, Mar del Plata, 1945.

(i) Best. If instead (1) 12... P-Kt5; 13 P x KtP, P x KtP; 14 QKt-Q2, B-K3 (or 14... B-Q2; 15 Kt-B1, KR-B1; 16 Kt-K3, P x P; 17 Kt x P, Kt-B3; 18 Kt(K3)-B5+. Keres-Taylor, Margate, 1937); 15 Kt-B1, KR-B1; 16 Kt-K3, P-Kt3 (no better is 16... Kt-K1; 17 P-QKt3, P-B3; 18 B-Kt2, B-B1; 19 Q-

1916. Black's K-side is secure and he has the initiative on the Q-side. The next few moves were 20 R-KK1, R-KK1; 21 Q-Q2, B-Q2; 22 R-Kt2, P-QR4; 23 R-KB1, P-Kt5; 24 P-B4, P-R5; 25 B-Kt1, P x P.

(l) Some unusual possibilities are: (1) 12... R-K1; 13 Kt-B1, B-Kt2; 14 P-Q5, P-B5?; 15 P-QKt4!, P x P e.p.; 16 P x P, B-QB1; 17 B-Q2, Kt-Kt2; 18 P-QKt4+. Boleslavsky-Smyslov, Moscow, 1945. (2) 12... B-Kt2; 13 P x BP (better 13 Kt-B1 as above), P x P; 14 Kt-R2, QR-Q1; 15 Q-K2, KR-K1; 16 Kt(R2)-B1, P-B5; 17 Kt-Kt3, B-QB1; 18 Kt(Q2)-B1, Kt-Kt2; 19 B-Kt5, Kt-B4 =. Auerbach-Zagoryansky, Moscow, 1945.

(m) Better than 13... Kt-B5; 14 P-QKt3, Kt-Kt3; 15 P x BP, P x P; 16 Kt-K3, QR-Q1; 17 Q-K2, KR-K1?; 18 P-B4!, B-KB1; 19 P-QR4 ±. Lilienthal-Panov, Moscow, 1940.

(n) 20 P-KB4, P x P; 21 B x P, Kt-Q1; 22 Q-K2, Kt-B2. L. Steiner-Kashdan, match, 1930.

Q3, P-Kt3; 20 KR-QB1+. Keres-Berg, Kemer, 1937); 17 P-QKt3, Kt-R4; 18 B-Kt2, B-B3; 19 R-QB1 ±. Keres-Reshevsky, Stockholm, 1937. (2) 12... R-Kt1?; 13 RP x P, RP x P; 14 P x KP, P x P; 15 Kt x P, Q x Kt; 16 R x Kt, P-B5; 17 B-K3. Note the difference between this and col. 65. 12... R-R2 is playable.

(j) Weak is 15 B-Q3, P x RP!; 16 Q-K2, Kt-R4; 17 P-KKt3, R(B1)-Kt1; 18 K-Kt2, P-Kt3; 19 R-R3, P x P; 20 Kt x P, B-KB3; 21 QKt-B3, Q-Kt3+. Fine-Reshevsky, AVRO tournament, 1938.

(k) Not 18 P x P?, P x P; 19 Kt x P, B-Kt5+.

(l) If now 19 P x P, P x P; 20 Kt x P, B-Kt5; 21 Kt(K5)-B3, Kt x P; 22 R x Kt, R x Bch; 23 R x R, R x Rch ±.

(m) Kashdan-Reshevsky, 6th match game, 1942.

(n) Mikenas-Keres, match Lithuania-Estonia, 1938.

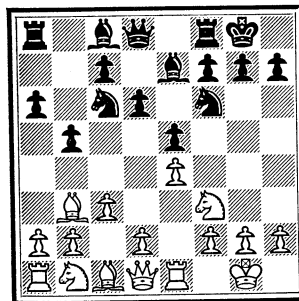
MORPHY DEFENSE: STRONG POINT VARIATION

1 P-K4, P-K4; 2 Kt-KB3, Kt-QB3; 3 B-Kt5, P-QR3; 4 B-R4, Kt-B3; 5 O-O, B-K2; 6 R-K1, P-QKt4; 7 B-Kt3, P-Q3; 8 P-B3, O-O\*

	51	52	53	54	55
9 (P-KR3).....			P-Q4		
Kt-Q2.....		B-K3	B-Kt5 (h)		
10 P-Q4 (a)	P-Q4 (e)	P-Q5.....		B-K3 (n)	
B-B3	B x B	Kt-QR4		P x P	
11 P-QR4 (b)	Q x B	B-B2		P x P	
Kt-R4	P x P	P-B3 (i)		Kt-QR4 (c)	
12 B-B2	Kt x P!	P x P (j)		B-B2	
P-Kt5	Kt x Kt	Q-B2!.....	Kt x BP	Kt-B5	
13 P x KtP (c)	P x Kt	QKt-Q2	QKt-Q2	B-B1	
Kt-B3	P-B4	Q x P	Q-B2 (l)	P-B4	
14 B-K3	P x P	P-KR3	Kt-B1	P-QKt3	
Kt x KtP	P x P	B-K3	KR-K1	Kt-QR4 (p)	
15 Kt-B3	P-K5	Kt-B1	B-Kt5	QKt-Q2	
B-Kt2	Kt-Q2 (f)	Kt-B5	P-R3	Kt-B3	
16 R-QB1	P-QR4	P-QR4	B x Kt	P-KR3	
P x P	P-B5	QR-B1	B x B	B-R4	
17 B x P	Q-Kt3 ± (g)	P x P	Kt-K3 ± (m)	P-KKt4 (q)	
P-B4 = (d)		P x P = (k)		B-Kt3 = (r)	

\* DIAGRAM 151

cols. 51-55



[After 8... O-O]

(a) Not 10 B-B2, B-B3; 11 P-Q3, Kt-Q2; 12 QKt-Q2, P-B4; 13 Kt-B1, P-Q4; 14 P-KKt4?, P x P; 15 P x P, Kt-KKt3 ±. Pachmann-Smyslov, match Prague-Moscow, 1946.

(b) Weaker is 11 B-K3, B-Kt2; 12

QKt-Q2, Kt-K2; 13 Kt-Kt5, P-R3; 14 P-KR4?, P-B4; 15 P x BP, P x P; 16 Q-Kt4, P-B5 ±. Bronstein-Ala-tortsev, Moscow, 1944.

(c) If instead 13 QKt-Q2, P x BP; 14 KtP-Q4, Q-B4; 15 P-Q5, Kt-Kt3; 16 Kt-Kt3, Kt-Kt2; 17 Kt(Kt3)-Q2, Kt-R4 =, but not 17... R-Kt1?; 18 P-R5, Kt-R1; 19 Kt-B4 ±. Lilienthal-Ragosin, Moscow, 1945.

(d) Pinkus-Ragosin, match U. S. A.-U.S.S.R., 1946.

(e) An improvement on 10 B x B, P x B; 11 P-Q4, Q-K1; 12 Q-Kt3, Q-Q2; 13 P x P, QKt x P; 14 Kt x Kt, P x Kt; 15 Kt-Q2, Kt-R4 =. Boleslavsky-Keres, Leningrad-Moscow, 1941.

(f) Or 15... Kt-K1; 16 Q-Kt3, Q-Kt3; 17 Kt-B3, R-Q1; 18 B-Kt5, B x B; 19 Q x B, Kt-B2; 20 Kt-K4 ±. Bronstein-Lilienthal, Moscow, 1944.

Notes continued on p. 356

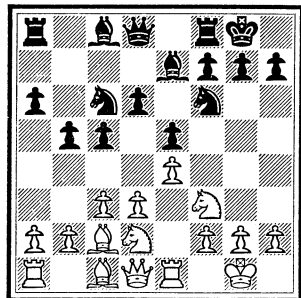


MORPHY DEFENSE: STRONG POINT VARIATION

1 P-K4, P-K4; 2 Kt-KB3, Kt-QB3; 3 B-Kt5, P-QR3; 4 B-R4, Kt-B3; 5 O-O, B-K2; 6 R-K1, P-QKt4; 7 B-Kt3, P-Q3; 8 P-B3, O-O

56	57	58	59	60
9 (P-Q4)..... P-Q3 (e) (B-Kt5) Kt-QR4				B-K3 (l)
10 (B-K3) B-B2 R-K1 (a) P-B4				QKt-Q2 (m) Kt-KR4
11 QKt-Q2 (b) QKt-Q2 P-Q4! Kt-B3 (f)*				P-Q4 B x B
12 P x KP (c) Kt-B1..... Q-K2 (j) QKt x P B-K3..... Q-B2 (i) R-K1				P x B P x P
13 P x P Kt-K3 (g) Kt-K3 Kt-B1 Kt-Q6 P-Q4 B-K3 P-Q4				P x P P-Q4
14 R-K2 P x P Kt-Kt5 P x P Kt x QP Kt x P P-Q4 Kt x P				P x P Q x P
15 Kt-K4 Kt x Kt Q-B3 B-Q2 B x Kt Q x Kt QR-Q1 B-B1				Kt-K4 B-Kt5
16 P x B (d) Q-K2 P x P Kt-Kt3 Kt x B B-B3 Kt x P B-Kt2				Kt-B3 B x Kt
17 P x Kt B-Kt5 Kt x B P-QR4 Kt-B4 † B x B = (h) P x Kt = P-Kt5 † (k)				P x B ±

\* DIAGRAM 152  
cols. 57-59



[After 11... Kt-B3]

(a) Possible is 10... Kt x KP! ?; 11 B-Q5, Q-Q2; 12 P x P! (not 12 B x KKt, P-Q4), Kt-B4! (not 12... Kt-Kt4?;

13 B x Kt, B x B; 14 P-KR3, B x Kt; 15 Q x B, Kt x P; 16 R x Kt++), as in Johner-Bernstein, Zurich, 1934. Best for White now is 13 QB x Kt, P x B; 14 P-KR3, B-K3; 15 B x B, Q x B; 16 QKt-Q2 ±.

(b) Better 11 P-Q5, with variations similar to cols. 53-54.

(c) Simplest is 12 P x QP, KKt x P; 13 Q-B2, Kt x B; 14 P x Kt =. If 12 P-KR3, P x QP! (but not 12... B-R4; 13 P-Kt4, B-Kt3; 14 P x KP, KKt x KP; 15 Kt-B1, Kt-R4; 16 B x P+. Smyslov-Rabinovitch, match Leningrad-Moscow, 1941); 13 BP x P, B-R4; 14 P-K5, Kt-K5 †.

(d) Yates-Rubinstein, Marienbad, 1925.

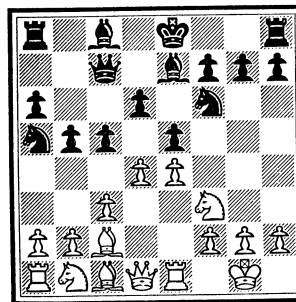
Notes continued on p. 356

MORPHY DEFENSE: STRONG POINT VARIATION

1 P-K4, P-K4; 2 Kt-KB3, Kt-QB3; 3 B-Kt5, P-QR3; 4 B-R4, Kt-B3; 5 O-O, B-K2; 6 R-K1, P-QKt4; 7 B-Kt3, P-Q3; 8 P-B3, Kt-QR4; 9 B-B2, P-B4; 10 P-Q4 (a), Q-B2\*

61	62	63	64	65
11 P-KR3..... QKt-Q2..... P-QR4 Kt-B3 (b) O-O..... Kt-B3 R-QKt1 (n)				
12 B-K3..... P-Q5 Kt-B1 P-QR4 (k) RP x P O-O Kt-Q1 B-Kt5 (g) R-QKt1 (l) RP x P				
13 QKt-Q2 QKt-Q2 P x KP (h) RP x P P x KP (o) B-Q2 P-Kt4 (d) P x P RP x P P x P				
14 R-QB1 Kt x KtP (e) Kt-K3 P x KP QKt-Q2 (p) KR-B1 R-KKt1 B-K3 P x P Kt-B3				
15 Kt-B1 P-KB4! Q-K2 Kt-B1 Kt-B1 Kt-QR4 P-R3 KR-K1 (i) B-K3 O-O				
16 KKt-Q2 P x P Kt-Kt5 Kt-K3 Kt-K3 B-K1 P x P P-B5 O-O B-K3				
17 Kt-KKt3 KKt-B3 P-QKt4! Kt-Kt5 Kt-Kt5 Kt-Q2 B x P P x P e.p. KR-Q1 QR-Q1				
18 Kt-B5 ± (c) R-K2+ (f) Kt x B ± (j) Q-B3 ± (m) Q-B3 Kt-Q5! = (q)				

\* DIAGRAM 153  
cols. 61-65



[After 10... Q-B2]

(a) 10 P-Q3 transposes to cols. 57-59.

(b) A possibility is 11... B-Q2; 12 QKt-Q2, BP x P; 13 P x P, R-QB1; 14 B-Kt1, O-O; 15 Kt-B1, KR-K1; 16 P-QKt3?, Kt-B3; 17 B-Kt2, B-B1; 18 Kt-K3, Q-Kt2; 19 P x P? (correct is

19 P-Q5), P x P; 20 Kt-Q5, B-QB4 †. Horowitz-Santasalo, New York, 1933.

(c) L. Steiner-Asztalos, Maribor, 1934.

(d) Leonhardt's move. 13... O-O transposes to cols. 36-40.

(e) Better than 14 Kt-B1, P-KKt5; 15 P x P, B x P; 16 Kt-K3, P-KR4; 17 P-R4, R-QKt1; 18 P x P, P x P †. Kashdan-L. Steiner, New York, 1929. A possible alternative is 14 Kt-R2, P-KR4; 15 P-KKt4, P x P; 16 P x P, R x Kt! ?; 17 K x R, B x P; 18 P-B3 ±. Teichmann-Leonhardt, Carlsbad, 1911.

(f) 18... B-Kt5; 19 K-B2! L. Steiner-Asztalos, Debreczen, 1925.

(g) If 12... B-Q2; 13 P x KP, P x P; 14 Kt-K3, QR-Q1; 15 Q-K2 ±. Or 12... BP x P; 13 P x P, B-Kt5; 14 Kt-K3, B-R4; 15 Kt-B5, KR-K1; 16 B-Q3, P x P; 17 Kt(B5) x P(Q4), Kt-B3; 18 Kt x Kt ±. Ragosin-Kopaev, Trade Unions championship, U.S.S.R., 1938.

Notes continued on p. 357

## Notes continued from p. 353

- (g) 17...R-K1; 18 R-Q1. Bronstein—Botvinnik, Moscow, 1944.
- (h) Still unrefuted is  $g...P \times P$ ; 10 P  $\times$  P, B-Kt5; 11 Kt-B3!, B  $\times$  Kt! (stronger than 11...Kt-QR4; 12 B-B2, P-B4; 13 P  $\times$  P!, P  $\times$  P; 14 P-K5, Q  $\times$  Q; 15 R  $\times$  Q, Kt-Q2; 16 P-KR3! with the better endgame. Lasker—Bogoljubow, Maehrisch—Ostrau, 1923); 12 P  $\times$  B, Kt-QR4; 13 B-B2, P-Kt5; 14 Kt-K2, P-B4; 15 P-Q5, Kt-K1; 16 Kt-Kt3, P-Kt3 with counterplay for Black. Karpinski—Pillsbury, Buffalo, 1901.
- (i) Best. Alternatives which have been tried are: (1) 11...Kt-K1; 12 QKt-Q2, P-Kt3; 13 P-QR4, P-QB4; 14 P  $\times$  P e.p., P-Kt5!; 15 Kt-B1, Kt  $\times$  P; 16 B-R6, Kt-Kt2; 17 Kt-K3  $\pm$ . Euwe—Keres, 1st match game, 1939-40. (2) 11...P-B4; 12 QKt-Q2 (12 P  $\times$  P e.p. transposes to the columns), Kt-K1; 13 Kt-B1, P-Kt3; 14 Kt-K3, B-Q2; 15 P-QKt4, Kt-QKt2; 16 P-QR4, Kt-Kt2; 17 P-R3  $\pm$ . Thomas—Keres, Margate, 1939.
- (j) Superior to the older 12 P-KR3, B  $\times$  Kt; 13 Q  $\times$  B, P  $\times$  P; 14 P  $\times$  P, Kt-B5  $\mp$ . Yates—Rubinstein, Hastings, 1922.
- (k) 18 P-QKt3, Kt-Kt3; 19 B-Q2.
- (l) Or 13...P-Kt5; 14 B-R4!, R-B1; 15 B  $\times$  Kt!, P  $\times$  P; 16 B-Kt7, P  $\times$  Kt; 17 B  $\times$  QP, R-Kt1; 18 B  $\times$  P, P-Q4; 19 B-K2, B  $\times$  Kt; 20 P  $\times$  B+. Euwe—

## Notes continued from p. 354

- (e) If  $g$  P-QR4, P-Kt5; 10 P-Q4, KP  $\times$  P; 11 P  $\times$  QP, B-Kt5; 12 B-K3!, Kt-QR4! (an improvement on 12...P-Q4; 13 P-K5, Kt-K5; 14 P-R5!, Kt-R2; 15 QKt-Q2, K-R1; 16 B-KB4  $\pm$ . Ragošin—Keres, Leningrad—Moscow, 1939); 13 B-B2, P-B4; 14 P-QKt3, Kt-Q2; 15 QKt-Q2, B-B3; 16 Q-Kt1, P-R3  $\mp$ . Loevenfisch—Keres, Leningrad—Moscow, 1939. 12 P-R5 is stronger than 12 B-K3, and Keres accordingly recommends 10...KtP  $\times$  P; 11 KtP  $\times$  P; P  $\times$  P; 12 P  $\times$  P, P-Q4 =.
- (f) An alternative is 11...Kt-Q2; 12 Kt-B1, Kt-Kt3; 13 Kt-Kt3, Q-B2; 14 Kt-Kt5, P-B3; 15 Kt-R3, B-K3; 16 Kt-B5, B  $\times$  Kt; 17 P  $\times$  B, P-Q4 =.

Keres, 7th match game, 1939-40.

- (m) 17...B-K3; 18 B-Kt3!. Treybal—Vidmar, Carlsbad, 1920.
- (n) If 10 P-KR3, B-R4 (or simply 10...B  $\times$  Kt; 11 P  $\times$  B, Kt-QR4; 12 P-KB4, Kt  $\times$  B; 13 P  $\times$  Kt, P-B4 =, although White has attacking chances); 11 P-Q5, Kt-R4; 12 B-B2, P-B3; 13 P  $\times$  P, Kt  $\times$  BP; 14 B-Kt5, R-B1; 15 B-Q3, P-R3; 16 B  $\times$  Kt, B  $\times$  B; 17 P-QR4, R-Kt1 =. Loevenfisch—Ragošin, Leningrad—Moscow, 1939.
- (o) Inferior is 11...P-Q4; 12 P-K5, Kt-K5; 13 Kt-B3, Kt  $\times$  Kt; 14 P  $\times$  Kt, Kt-R4; 15 B-B2, Kt-B5; 16 B-B1, R-K1; 17 P-KR3, B-K3; 18 Kt-R2, B-KB1; 19 Q-Q3  $\pm$ . Yates—Rosselli, Trieste, 1923.
- (p) Also good is 14...Kt-Kt3; 15 B-Kt2, R-B1; 16 QKt-Q2, KKt-Q2!; 17 P-KR3, B-R4 =. Yates—Ed. Lasker, New York, 1924.
- (q) If instead (1) 17 P-K5!, Kt-Q4; 18 B-Kt2, Kt  $\times$  QP; 19 P  $\times$  P, B-B3  $\mp$ . Yates—Bogoljubow, New York, 1924. (2) 17 B-Kt2, Kt  $\times$  QP; 18 B  $\times$  Kt, P  $\times$  B; 19 P-KKt4, Kt  $\times$  KtP!; 20 P  $\times$  Kt, B  $\times$  P; 21 Q-K2, R-B1; 22 B-Q3, B-Kt4  $\mp$ . Ragošin—Lilienthal, Leningrad—Moscow, 1939.
- (r) 18 P-Q5, Kt-R2; 19 B-Kt2, Kt-Q2.
- Chekhover—Ragošin, Leningrad, 1936. Weaker is 11...R-K1; 12 Kt-B1, B-B1; 13 B-Kt5, P-R3; 14 B-KR4, Kt-B3; 15 Kt-K3, B-K2; 16 P-Q4!, BP  $\times$  P; 17 P  $\times$  P, Kt-KR2; 18 B-KKt3  $\pm$ . Ilyin-Zhenevsky—Botvinnik, Leningrad, 1938.
- (g) Or 13 Kt-Kt3, Q-B2; 14 P-KR3, P-Q4; 15 P  $\times$  P, Kt  $\times$  P; 16 B-Kt3, R-K1; 17 Kt-Kt5, B  $\times$  Kt; 18 B  $\times$  B, P-B3 =. Panov—L. Steiner, Moscow, 1936. 13 P-KR3 is weaker: 13...Q-B2; 14 B-Kt5, P-R3; 15 B-Q2, P-Q4; 16 Kt-K3, R-K1; 17 Q-K2, P-Q5; 18 Kt-B5, B  $\times$  Kt; 19 P  $\times$  B, Q-Q2  $\mp$ . Romanovsky—Loevenfisch, Leningrad—Moscow, 1939.

## Additional notes continued from p. 354

- (h) 18 Kt  $\times$  B, B-B4; 19 Kt-K4. Keres—Reshevsky, Leningrad—Moscow, 1939. 19...B  $\times$  Kt is now best.
- (i) Other possibilities are: (1) 12...R-K1; 13 Kt-K3, P-Q4? (correct is 13...B-K3 as in col. 57); 14 P  $\times$  P, Kt  $\times$  P; 15 Kt  $\times$  Kt, Q  $\times$  Kt; 16 P-Q4!, KP  $\times$  P; 17 B-K4, Q-Q2; 18 P  $\times$  P, B-B3; 19 B-Kt5  $\pm$ . Alekhine—Eliskases, Podbrady, 1936. (2) 12...P-Q4; 13 P  $\times$  P, Q  $\times$  P; 14 P-QR4!, B-K3; 15 Q-K2, Kt-Q2; 16 P-Q4!, KP  $\times$  P; 17 B-K4, Q-Q3; 18 P  $\times$  QP  $\pm$ . Ilyin-Zhenevsky—Rovner, Leningrad, 1939. (3) 12...Kt-KR4!; 13 P-KR3, B-K3; 14 P-Q4  $\pm$ .
- (j) If 12 P-QR4, B-K3; 13 Kt-B1, P-Kt5; 14 P-Q4, BP  $\times$  P; 15 P  $\times$  QP, B-Kt5; 16 P-Q5, Kt-Q5; 17 B-Q3, Kt-R4; 18 B-K2, Kt  $\times$  Bch; 19 Q  $\times$  Kt, P-B4  $\mp$ . Romanovsky—Reshevsky, Leningrad—Moscow, 1939. It should be noted that 12 P-KR3 is inferior here: there can follow 12...P-Q4; 13 Kt-B1, P  $\times$  P; 14 P  $\times$  P, B-K3; 15 B-Q2, R-R2; 16 Kt-Kt5, B-B5; 17 Kt-K3, B-Q6  $\mp$ . Maroczy—Capablanca, New York, 1924.
- (k) Ilyin-Zhenevsky—Botvinnik, Moscow, 1931.
- (l) The sacrificial variation  $g...B-Kt2$ ; 10 QKt-Q2, P-Q4; 11 P  $\times$  P, Kt  $\times$  P; 12 Kt  $\times$  P, Kt  $\times$  Kt; 13 R  $\times$  Kt, Kt-B5; 14 Kt-B3, Kt-Kt3; 15 R-K1, Q-Q2; 16 P-Q4  $\pm$  is inadequate. Breyer—Schlechter, Breslau, 1912.
- (m) Better than 10 B  $\times$  B, P  $\times$  B; 11 P-QR4, P-Kt5; 12 Q-K2, Kt-KR4; 13 P-Q4, KtP  $\times$  P; 14 KtP  $\times$  P, P  $\times$  P =. Yates—Marshall, New York, 1924.

## Notes continued from p. 355

- (h) The sacrifice 13 Kt-K3, B  $\times$  Kt; 14 Q  $\times$  B, BP  $\times$  P; 15 Kt-B5 is not quite sound, although Black must defend perfectly: 15...P  $\times$  P; 16 Q  $\times$  P!, KR-B1; 17 Q-KKt3, B-B1; 18 B-Q3, Kt-B3; 19 B-Kt5, Kt-Kt1  $\mp$ . Alekhine—Fine, Hastings, 1936-37.
- (i) Better 15...P-R3, transposing to col. 43.
- (j) 18...P  $\times$  Kt; 19 P  $\times$  P. Alekhine—Floh, AVRO tournament, 1938.
- (k) Also good is 12 P  $\times$  BP, P  $\times$  P; 13 Kt-B1, B-K3; 14 Kt-K3, R-Q1; 15 Q-K2, P-Kt3; 16 P-QR4  $\pm$ . Rovner—Panov, Trade Unions championship, U.S.S.R., 1938. Inferior is 12 Kt-B1, BP  $\times$  P; 13 P  $\times$  P, B-Kt5; 14 P-Q5, Kt-Q5; 15 B-Q3, Kt-R4!; 16 B-K3, B  $\times$  Kt; 17 P  $\times$  B, Kt-B5; 18 R-B1, Q-Q1  $\mp$ . Lärobok, 1921.
- (l) If 12...P-Kt5; 13 P-Q5  $\pm$ , as in cols. 39 and 65.
- (m) Rausser—Ryumin, Leningrad, 1934.
- (n) Again if 11...P-Kt5; 12 P  $\times$  KtP, P  $\times$  KtP; 13 P-QKt3  $\pm$ .
- (o) Weaker is 13 QKt-Q2, BP  $\times$  P!; 14 P  $\times$  P, Kt-B3; 15 P-Q5, Kt-QKt5; 16 B-Kt1, O-O; 17 Kt-Kt3, Kt-R3; 18 Kt-R5, B-Q2; 19 B-Q2, Kt-B4 =. Romanovsky—Floh, Leningrad—Moscow, 1939.
- (p) Not now 14 Kt  $\times$  P!, Q  $\times$  Kt; 15 R  $\times$  Kt, Kt-Kt5; 16 P-KKt3 (if 16 P-KB4, Q-B2; 17 R-R1, P-B5!+), Q-R4; 17 P-R4, P-Kt4; 18 B  $\times$  P, B  $\times$  B; 19 Q-Q6, B  $\times$  P; 20 Q  $\times$  R, B-Q1; 21 K-B1, Kt-R7ch; 22 K-Kt1, Kt-Böch; 23 K-B1, B-Röch; 24 K-K2, O-O!++. Analysis by Reinfeld.
- (q) 19 P  $\times$  Kt, BP  $\times$  P; 20 Kt  $\times$  B, P  $\times$  Kt; 21 B-Kt3, P  $\times$  Kt; 22 B  $\times$  Pch, K-R1; 23 B  $\times$  P, Kt-Q4!. Loevenfisch—Lilienthal, Leningrad—Moscow, 1939.

MORPHY DEFENSE: STRONG POINT VARIATION

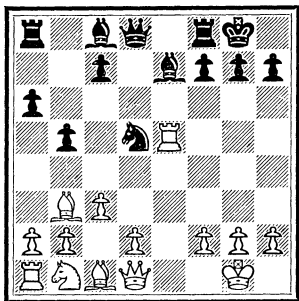
1 P-K4, P-K4; 2 Kt-KB3, Kt-QB3; 3 B-Kt5, P-QR3; 4 B-R4, Kt-B3; 5 O-O, B-K2; 6 R-K1, P-QKt4; 7 B-Kt3

66	67	68	69	70
7 (P-Q3).....O-O				
8 P-QR4	P-B3.....		P-QR4 (m)	
P-Kt5 (a)	P-Q4 (c)		B-Kt2	
9 P-R5	P × P		Kt-B3 (n)	
O-O	Kt × P (d)		Kt-Q5	
10 P-B3	Kt × P		B-R2	
R-Kt1	Kt × Kt		P-Kt5	
11 P-R3	R × Kt*		Kt × Kt	
B-K3	P-QB3! (e).....	Kt-B3	KP × Kt	
12 B × B	P-Q4 (f)		P-Q4	
P × B	B-Q3		B-Q3	
13 Q-K2	R-K2!.....	R-K1	R-K1 (k)	B × Kt
R-Kt4!	Q-R5	Q-R5	Kt-Kt5	B × B
14 P-Q4	P-Kt3	P-Kt3	P-KR3	P × B
P × QP	Q-R4 (g)	Q-R6	Q-R5	P-Q6!
15 Kt × P	R-K4!	Q-Q3 (i)	Q-B3	R-K3
Kt × Kt	Q-Kt3	B-KB4	Kt × P!	B-B4
16 P × Kt	B-B2 ± (h)	Q-B1	R-K2!+ (l)	R-B3
Q-K1 ± (b)	Q-R4 = (j)		Q-K2 = (o)	

\* DIAGRAM 154

cols. 67-69

Marshall Attack



[After 11 R × Kt]

(a) Alternatives are: (i) 8...B-Kt5; 9 P-B3, P-Kt5!; 10 P-Q3, P × P; 11

P × P, O-O; 12 P-R3, B-R4; 13 B-Kt5, P-R3; 14 B × Kt, B × B =. Schlechter-Rubinstein, Vienna, 1908. (2) 8...B-Kt2; 9 P-B3, Kt-QR4; 10 B-B2, P-B4; 11 P-Q4, Q-Kt1; 12 P × KtP, RP × P; 13 Q-K2, P-B5; 14 QKt-Q2 ±. Sergeant-Reshevsky, Margate, 1935.

(b) Sergeant-Flohr, Margate, 1939.

(c) The Marshall Variation.

(d) Or 9...P-K5; 10 P × Kt, P × Kt; 11 Q × P, B-KKt5; 12 Q-Kt3, R-K1; 13 P-KB4! (weaker is 13 P-B3, Q-Q6!+. Ed. Lasker-Marshall, Chicago, 1926), B-Q3; 14 R-K5!, P-KR4; 15 P-Q4, B × R; 16 BP × B, Kt-R2; 17 P-KR3+. Stoltz-H. Steiner, Hamburg, 1930.

(e) Marshall's own improvement.

Notes continued on p. 361

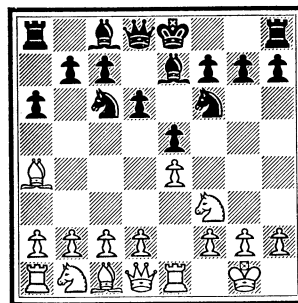
MORPHY DEFENSE: STRONG POINT VARIATION

1 P-K4, P-K4; 2 Kt-KB3, Kt-QB3; 3 B-Kt5, P-QR3; 4 B-R4, Kt-B3; 5 O-O, B-K2; 6 R-K1, P-Q3\*

71	72	73	74	75
7 B × Ktch.....	P-B3 (c)			
P × B	O-O			
8 P-Q4	P-Q4.....		P-KR3 (m)	
Kt-Q2 (a)	B-Q2 (d)		P-QKt4	
9 P × P	QKt-Q2 (e)		B-B2	
P × P	P × P.....	R-K1.....	B-K1 (j)	P-Q4!
10 QKt-Q2	P × P	P-KR3 (h)	Kt-B1 (k)	P × P
P-B3	Kt-QKt5	B-KB1	Kt-Q2	Q × P
11 Kt-B4	P-Q5 (f)	B-B2	Kt-K3 (l)	Q-K2
P-QR4	Kt-Q6	P-KKt3	P-B3	R-K1
12 B-Q2	R-K3	Kt-B1	B-Kt3ch	P-Q3
P-R5	B × B	B-Kt2	B-B2	B-Kt2
13 Kt-R5	Q × B	Kt-Kt3	B × Bch	QKt-Q2
R-R3	Kt-B4	Q-K2	R × B	P-QR4
14 Q-K2	Q-B2	B-K3	Kt-B5	Kt-K4
Kt-B4	Kt-Kt5	QR-Q1	B-B1	Q-Q2
15 KR-Q1 ± (b)	R-K2 ± (g)	P-Q5 ± (i)	P-KR4 ±	KKt-Kt5
				P-R5 = (n)

\* DIAGRAM 155

cols. 71-75



[After 6... P-Q3]

(a) Best is 8...P × P; 9 Kt × P, P-B4 (or 9...B-Q2) transposing to the Steinitz Defense Deferred. See p. 373, cols. 111-112.

(b) 15...B-K3; 16 P-QKt4, P × P e.p.; 17 RP × P, Q-R1; 18 B-B3. Lasker-Janowski, 1st match game, 1909. If in the column 15 QR-Q1, B-K3; 16 Kt-

Kt7?, Q-B1; 17 Kt × Kt, B × Kt; 18 Kt × P?, P × Kt; 19 Q-R5ch, K-B1; 20 Q × KP, B-Q3 ±. Kashdan-L. Steiner, match, 1930.

(c) If now 7 P-B4, O-O; 8 P-Q4, Kt × QP; 9 Kt × Kt, P × Kt; 10 Q × P, Kt-Q2; 11 Kt-B3?, B-B3; 12 Q-Q1, B × Kt; 13 P × B, Kt-B4 ±. Kayev-Dus-Chotimirski, Kiev, 1938.

(d) On 8...P-QKt4; 9 B-B2, B-Kt5; 10 P-Q5, Kt-QR4; 11 QKt-Q2, P-B3; 12 P × P, Kt × BP; 13 Kt-B1 ±, since White has the favorable position of col. 54 with an extra tempo. And if 8...P × P; 9 P × P, B-Kt5; 10 Kt-B3, B × Kt; 11 P × B, P-QKt4; 12 B-B2 ±. Verlinsky-Spielmann, Moscow, 1925.

(e) 9 P-Q5 at once solidifies too early: 9...Kt-Kt1; 10 B-B2, P-B3; 11 P-B4, Q-B2; 12 Kt-B3, P × P; 13 BP × P (Keres-Raud, Pernau, 1937) and now 13...P-QKt4 followed by play on the Q-side would have equalized.

Notes continued on p. 361

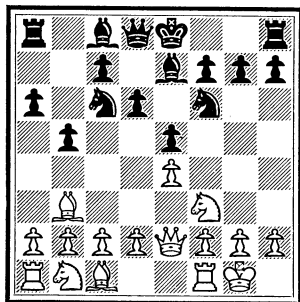
## MORPHY DEFENSE: STRONG POINT VARIATION

1 P-K4, P-K4; 2 Kt-KB3, Kt-QB3; 3 B-Kt5, P-QR3; 4 B-R4, Kt-B3; 5 O-O, B-K2; 6 Q-K2 (a), P-QKt4; 7 B-Kt3, P-Q3\*

	76	77	78	79	80
8	P-QR4 /			P-B3	
	B-Kt5		R-QKt1 (j)	O-O	Kt-QR4
9	P-B3		P × P	P-Q4 (m)	P-Q4 (q)
	O-O / (b)		P × P	B-Kt5	Kt × B
10	P-KR3	P × P (f)	P-B3	R-Q1 (n)	P × Kt
	B-Q2 (c)	P × P	B-Kt5	P × P!	Kt-Q2
11	P-Q4 (d)	R × R	R-Q1	P × P	R-Q1
	Q-B1 (e)	Q × R	O-O	P-Q4	B-B3
12	R-Q1	Q × P?	P-Q4	P-K5	P × P
	R-Kt1	Kt-R2 / (g)	P × P (k)	Kt-K5	P × P
13	QKt-Q2	Q-R5 (h)	P × P	P-KR3	Kt-R3
	Kt-KR4	Q × P	P-Q4	B-R4	P-B3
14	Kt-B1	Q × Kt	P-K5	Kt-B3 (o)	Kt-B2
	Kt-B5	Q × QKt	Kt-K5	Kt × Kt	Q-K2
15	B × Kt	Q × P	Kt-B3	P × Kt	P-QKt4
	P × B	B × Kt	Kt × Kt	Q-Q2	O-O
16	P × P ±	P × B	P × Kt ± (l)	B-B2	P-R3 ± (r)
		Q-Kt3ch = (i)		B-Kt3 = (p)	

## \* DIAGRAM 156

cols. 76-80



[After 7... P-Q3]

(a) The Worrall Attack.

(b) 9... R-QKt1 transposes into col. 78. Also possible for White is 10 P-R3, B × Kt; 11 Q × B, Kt-QR4; 12 B-B2, P-B4; 13 P-Q3, Kt-B3; 14 Q-K2, Kt-Q2; 15 P-KB4 ±. Fine-Santasiere, New York, 1939.

(c) If instead 10... B-R4; 11 P-Kt4, B-Kt3; 12 P-Q3, Kt-QR4; 13 B-B2, Kt-Q2; 14 P-Kt4!, Kt-Kt2; 15 Kt-R3!, P-QB3; 16 B-Kt3, Kt-Kt3; 17 P-R5 ±. Alekhine-Saemisch, German Quadrangular tournament, 1937.

(d) Weaker is 11 P-Q3, Kt-QR4; 12 B-B2, P-B4; 13 P × P, P × P; 14 B-K3, Q-B2; 15 QKt-Q2, P-Q4; 16 B-Kt5, P-Q5 ±. Lasker-Rabinovitch, Moscow, 1935.

(e) Best. If 11... R-Kt1?; 12 RP × P!, R × P (12... RP × P; 13 P-Q5+++); 13 B-QB4, R-Kt2; 14 P × P, QKt × P; 15 Kt × Kt, P × Kt; 16 B × P+. Kashdan-Gruenfeld, Prague, 1931.

(f) 10 R-Q1 is met by 10... Kt-QR4; 11 B-B2, B-K3, for if now 12 P × P, P × P; 13 Q × P?, Kt-Kt6!; 14 R × R, Q × R; 15 B × Kt, R-Kt1 ±. Felderhof-Havasi, Munich, 1936.

Notes continued on p. 362

Notes continued from p. 358

(f) If 12 B × Kt, P × B; 13 P-Q4, B-Q3; 14 R-K1 (14 R-K3 is worth a try, to reply to 14... Q-R5 with 15 P-KR3), Q-R5; 15 P-KKt3, Q-R6; 16 Q-B3, B-KB4; 17 Q-Kt2, Q-R4; 18 Q × P, QR-Q1; 19 Q-Kt2, QR-K1+. Dulanto-Alexander, Buenos Aires, 1939. Or 19 Q-B6, B-K3; 20 Q-K4, B-Q4; 21 Q-K2 (Shaw-Fielden, correspondence, 1943), QR-K1!; 22 B-K3, B-B6; 23 Q-B1, P-B4 ±.

(g) Or 14... Q-R6; 15 R-K4!

(h) 16... B-KB4; 17 R-K2 and White's defense was successful. Pinkus-Altman, New York, 1944.

(i) Better 15 R-K4 as in col. 66.

(j) 17 B-K3, QR-K1; 18 Kt-Q2, R-K3; 19 P-QR4!, B-KR6 (if 19... Kt × B; 20 P × Kt!, R-R3; 21 Q-Kt2, B-KR6; 22 B-Q1!+); 20 B-Q1! (on 20 Q-K2, B-KKt5 can lead to a draw), Q-B4; 21 Q-K2 (Christoffel-Steiner, Hastings, 1945-46) and now Black should play 21... B-B5; 22 Q-B3, R(B1)-K1; 23 Kt-B1, B × Kt; 24 R × B, Kt × B; 25 P × Kt, B × Pch; 26 K-Kt2. White's endgame chances are slightly better but Black has a probable draw.

(k) 13 R-K2 is safer, but the text is good

enough.

(l) 16... B-KKt5; 17 P × B, B-R7ch; 18 K-B1, B-Kt6; 19 R × Kt, Q-R8ch; 20 K-K2, B × R (or 20... Q × B; 21 Q × B, Q × Pch; 22 Kt-Q2+); 21 B-Q2. Capablanca-Marshall, New York, 1918. If in the column 16 Q × Kt?!, B-R7ch; 17 K-B1, B-Kt6+!, but not 16... B-Kt6?!. 17 Q × Pchl++.

(m) Other attempts to avoid the Marshall Variation have also proved inadequate: (1) 8 P-Q4, Kt × QP; 9 Kt × Kt, P × Kt; 10 P-K5, Kt-K1; 11 Q × P, P-Q3; 12 B-KB4, B-B4; 13 Q-K3, P-Q4; 14 P-QB3, P-B4; 15 Kt-Q2, Kt-B2; 16 B-Kt3, Q-Q2; 17 P-QR3, P-QR4 ±. Böök-Keres, Helsingfors, 1943. (2) 8 P-KR3, B-Kt2; 9 P-B3, P-Q4; 10 P × P, Kt × P; 11 P-Q3?, Q-Q3; 12 P-Q4, P × P; 13 QKt-Q2, Kt-B3 ±. Fuentes-Keres, Madrid, 1943.

(n) Or 9 P × P, P × P; 10 R × R, Q × R; 11 P-B3, Kt-QR4; 12 B-B2, P-Q3; 13 P-Q3, P-B4; 14 QKt-Q2, Kt-B3; 15 Kt-B1, Q-Q1; 16 Kt-K3, P-Q4; 17 Kt-B5, P-Q5 ±. Boleslavsky-Lilienthal, Leningrad-Moscow, 1941.

(o) Botvinnik-Bondarevsky, Leningrad-Moscow, 1941.

Notes continued from p. 359

(f) Somewhat better than 11 B × B, Q × B; 12 Q-Kt3 (if 12 Kt-B1, P-B4!; 13 P-QKt3, P-Q4!; 14 P-QR3, Kt-B3; 15 Kt-K5, Q-Q1 ±. Yates-Romanovsky, Moscow, 1925), P-QR4; 13 P-QR3, Kt-R3; 14 Kt-B1, P-Q4; 15 P-K5, Kt-K5; 16 Kt(B1)-Q2, P-R5; 17 Q-Q3 ±. Smyslov-Keres, Leningrad-Moscow, 1941. Also good is 11 B-Kt3!, P-B4; 12 Kt-B1, B-Kt4; 13 Kt-Kt3, P-Q4; 14 P-K5, Kt-K5; 15 Kt × Kt, P × Kt; 16 R × P ±. Euwe-Keres, 3rd match game, 1939-40.

(g) L. Steiner-Keres, Warsaw, 1935.

(h) Or 10 Kt-B1, B-KB1; 11 Kt-Kt3, P-KKt3; 12 B-Kt3, B-Kt2? (12... P-R3 is essential); 13 Kt-Kt5, R-KB1; 14 P-KB4 ±. Yates-Spencer, Canterbury, 1930.

(i) Sergeant-Keres, Margate, 1939.

(j) If 9... K-R1 (the Kecskemet Variation as first played); 10 B-B2 as in col. 73 is best, but not 10 P-KR3, B-K1; 11 B × Kt?, B × B; 12 P × P, P × P; 13 Kt × P, B × P; 14 Kt × B, Q × Q; 15 R × Q, Kt × Kt =. L. Steiner-Alekhine, Kecskemet, 1927.

(k) Better than 10 P-KR3, Kt-Q2; 11 Kt-B1, P-B3; 12 Kt-R4, K-R1; 13 Kt-B5, B-B2; 14 P-KKt4, Kt-Kt3; 15 B-B2, R-K1; 16 QKt-Kt3, B-B1 =. L. Steiner-Kmoch, Kecskemet, 1927.

(l) If instead 11 Kt-Kt3, K-R1; 12 B-K3, P-B3; 13 Kt-Q2? (better 13 B-B2 or P-Q5), Kt-Kt3; 14 B-B2, P-Q4! ±. Asztalos-Ahues, Kecskemet, 1927.

## Additional notes continued from p. 359

(m) Possible is 8 P-Q3, B-Q2; 9 QKt-Q2, Kt-K1 (or 9... B-K1; 10 Kt-B1, Kt-Q2; 11 Kt-K3, P-B3; 12 P-Q4, B-B2; 13 B-Kt3, Kt-R4; 14 B x Bch, R x B; 15 Kt-B5 ±. Ahues-L. Steiner,

Bad Niendorf, 1927); 10 P-Q4, P x P; 11 P x P, P-Q4 (A. Steiner-Keres, Kemeri, 1937); 12 P-K5 ±.

(n) Mufang-Bogoljubow, Margate, 1923.

## Notes continued from p. 360

(g) An improvement on 12... Kt-QR4; 13 B-B2, Kt x P; 14 Kt x P! (14 B x Kt, Q x B; 15 Q x Kt, Q x QKt; 16 P-Q3, Q x QP; 17 Q x BP, B x Kt =. Reinfeld-Kashdan, Syracuse, 1934), R-Kt1; 15 B x Kt!, R x Q; 16 B x Q+. Böök-Alexander, Margate, 1938.

(h) Simpler than 13 Q-K2, Q x P; 14 Q x Q, Kt x Q; 15 P-Q4, B x Kt; 16 P x B, Kt-KKt4 ♯. Fine-Keres, AVRO tournament, 1938.

(i) 17 K-R1, Q-Q6; 18 K-Kt1, Q-Kt3ch with a draw.

(j) Playable but untried is 8... B-Q2. If 8... P-Kt5?; 9 Q-B4 (the obvious 9 B x Pch followed by 10 Q-B4ch and 11 Q x Kt is less direct but also strong), P-Q4; 10 Q x Ktch, B-Q2; 11 Q-Kt7, B-QB4; 12 Kt x P!, R-R2; 13 Kt-B6!, R x Q; 14 Kt x Q, K x Kt; 15 P-K5+. Chistyakov-Panov, Moscow, 1937.

(k) Or 12... R-R1; 13 R x R, Q x R; 14 P-Q5, Kt-QR4; 15 B-B2, P-B3; 16 Kt-R3!, R-Kt1; 17 P-Kt4, Kt-B5; 18 Kt x Kt, P x Kt; 19 P-R3 ±. Alekhine-Euwe, 1st match game, 1926-27.

(l) 16... Q-Q2; 17 P-R3, B-R4 (weaker is 17... B-KB4; 18 R-R6, K-R1; 19 Kt-Kt5+. Alekhine-Monticelli, San Remo, 1930); 18 R-R6, Kt-Q1; 19 P-Kt4. Alekhine-Asztalos, Kecskemet, 1927.

(m) If now 9 P-QR4, P-Kt5! (compare note (j)); 10 P-R5, R-Kt1; 11 B-B4, P-Q4!; 12 P x QP, Kt x QP; 13 P-Q3, Q-Q3; 14 P x P, Kt(Q4) x P; 15 Kt-B3, B-Kt5 ♯. Chekhover-Botvinnik, Moscow, 1945.

(n) Safer is 10 P-Q5, Kt-QR4; 11 B-B2, P-B3; 12 P x P, QKt x P; 13 P-KR3, B-Q2; 14 B-K3 =. Spielmann-Rubinstein, Berlin, 1928.

(o) Now 14 P-QR4 is weak because of 14... P-Kt5!; 15 P-R5, K-R1; 16 P-Kt4, B-Kt3; 17 Kt-R2, B-R5; 18 B-K3, P-B4 ♯. Ryumin-Botvinnik, Moscow, 1935.

(p) Bronstein-Ulvestad, match U.S.S.R.—U. S. A., 1946.

(q) A novel idea. For the more usual 9 B-B2 see cols. 81-83.

(r) Alekhine-Rey, 2nd match game, 1944

## MORPHY DEFENSE: STRONG POINT VARIATION

1 P-K4, P-K4; 2 Kt-KB3, Kt-QB3; 3 B-Kt5, P-QR3; 4 B-R4, Kt-B3; 5 O-O, B-K2; 6 Q-K2

	81	82	83	84	85
6 (P-QKt4).....					P-Q3 (k)
7 (B-Kt3) P-Q3).....			O-O		P-B3 (l) O-O
8 (P-B3) (Kt-QR4)			P-B3 (f) P-Q4!		P-Q4 B-Kt5!
9 B-B2 P-B4			P x P..... B-KKt5! (g)	P-Q3 P x P (i)	P-Q5 (m) Kt-Kt1
10 P-Q4 (a) Q-B2			P-KR3 B x Kt	P x P B-KKt5	P-B4 Kt-R4
11 R-Q1..... O-O	P-KR3 (d) Kt-Q2		Q x B P-K5	P-KR3 B-R4	P-KR3 B x Kt
12 B-Kt5 (b) B-Kt5	P-Q5 Kt-Kt3		Q-K2 Kt-QR4	B-Kt5 Kt-K1	Q x B P-KKt3
13 P x KP! P x P	Kt-R2 O-O		B-B2 Q x P	B x B B x Kt	B-B2 B-Kt4
14 QKt-Q2 ± (c)	P-KKt4 (e) P-B5 =		P-Q3 P x P = (h)	Q x B ± (j)	Kt-B3 ± (n)

(a) On 10 R-Q1, Q-B2; 11 P-KR3, O-O is best, but not 11... P-Kt4?; 12 Kt x KtP, R-KKt1; 13 P-Q4, BP x P; 14 P x P, P-R3; 15 P x P, P x P; 16 Kt-KB3, B x P; 17 Kt-K1+. Thomas-Sergeant, City of London championship, 1932.

(b) Better than 12 P-KR3, BP x P; 13 P x P, B-Q2; 14 P x P, P x P =. Fine-Reshevsky, Syracuse, 1934. Also inferior for White is 12 P x KP, P x P; 13 QKt-Q2, R-Q1; 14 Kt-B1, R x R; 15 Q x R, B-Kt2; 16 Q-K2, R-Q1; 17 P-KR3, Kt-R4 =. Keres-Lilienthal, Leningrad-Moscow, 1941.

(c) 14... KR-Q1; 15 Kt-B1, Kt-R4; 16 P-KR3!, B-K3; 17 Kt-K3, P-B3; 18 Kt-R2!, P-Kt3; 19 B-R6. Alekhine-Keres, Salzburg, 1942.

(d) Inadequate is 11 P-Q5, O-O; 12 QKt-Q2, B-Q2; 13 R-Q1, P-B5; 14 Kt-B1, Kt-Kt2; 15 Kt-Kt3, K-R1; 16 P-KR3, Kt-Kt1; 17 Kt-R2, KR-B1; 18 P-B4, P-B3 ♯. Yates-Kmoch, London, 1927.

(e) Réti-Gruenfeld, Teplitz-Schoenau, 1922.

(f) If now 8 P-QR4, R-Kt1; 9 P x P, P x P; 10 Kt-B3 (or 10 P-B3, P-Q4; 11 P-Q3, P-Q5!; 12 P x P, B-KKt5!; 13 P-Q5, Kt-Q5; 14 Q-Q1, Kt-R4; 15 B-K3, Kt x Ktch; 16 P x Kt, QB-R6 ♯. Kashdan-Steiner, New York, 1942), P-Q3; 11 P-KR3 (11 Kt x KtP, B-Kt5 gives Black too strong an attack), B-Q2; 12 P-Q3, Q-K1; 13 K-R2, Kt-Q5; 14 Kt x Kt, P x Kt ♯. Treybal-Alekhine, Pstyvan, 1922.

(g) A new wrinkle in an old gambit. The alternative is 9... Kt x P; 10 Kt x P, Kt-B5!; 11 Q-K4, Kt x Kt; 12 P-Q4!, B-Kt2!; 13 Q x Kt(B4), Kt-Q6; 14 Q-K3, Kt x B; 15 R x Kt, B-Kt4 with some attack for the Pawn, although this variation should be tested in practical play.

(h) Hjorth-Keres, Lidköping, 1944.

Notes continued on p. 365

## MORPHY DEFENSE: STRONG POINT VARIATION

1 P-K4, P-K4; 2 Kt-KB3, Kt-QB3; 3 B-Kt5, P-QR3; 4 B-R4, Kt-B3; 5 O-O

86	87	88	89	90
5 (B-K2)*				P-QKt4
6 (Q-K2)		P-Q4	B × Kt (j)	B-Kt3
(P-Q3)		P × P (f)	QP × B	B-K2 (m)
7 (P-B3)		P-K5	P-Q3	P-QR4 /
(O-O)		Kt-K5	Kt-Q2 (k)	R-QKt1 (n)
8 (P-Q4) (a)		R-K1 (g)	P-Q4 !	R-K1 (o)
B-Q2		Kt-B4	P × P	P-Q3
9 P-Q5 (b)		B × Kt	Kt × P	P × P
Kt-Kt1		QP × B	O-O	P × P
10 B-B2		Kt × P	Kt-QB3	P-B3
P-QR4	Kt-K1 (d)	O-O	B-B3	B-Kt5
11 P-B4	P-B4	Kt-QB3 (h)	P-B4	P-Q4
Kt-R3	P-KB4	R-K1	Kt-Kt3	Q-Q2
12 Kt-B3	P × P	B-K3	P-K5	B-K3
Kt-B4	B × P	B-B1	B-K2	O-O (p)
13 B-K3	R × B	P-B4	Kt-K4	QKt-Q2
P-QKt3	B × B	P-B3 !	P-QB4	R-R1
14 P-KR3 ± (c)	Kt-B3 ± (e)	P × P	Kt-K2 ± (l)	P-Q5 ±
		Q × P = (i)		

## \* See p. 328, Diagram 137

(a) Less energetic is 8 P-Q3, B-Q2; 9 R-Q1, Kt-K1; 10 B-Kt3, K-R1; 11 P-Q4, Q-B1; 12 Kt-Kt5, Kt-Q1; 13 P-KR3, Kt-K3 =. A. Steiner-Fine, Kemer, 1937.

(b) This advance is necessary sooner or later and it is best to play it immediately. Alternatives are: (1) 9 B-Kt3, P × P (if 9... Q-K1; 10 QKt-Q2, K-R1; 11 P-Q5 is in order, but not 11 P × P ♯, P × P; 12 Kt-B4, B-QB4; 13 P-QR4, P-QR4; 14 B-Kt5, Kt-R4 ♯. L. Steiner-Alekhine, Folkestone, 1933); 10 P × P, Kt-QR4; 11 B-B2, B-Kt4; 12 B-Q3, B × B; 13 Q × B, P-Q4; 14 P-K5, Kt-K5 =. Horowitz-Fine, New York, 1938. (2) 9 P × P, QKt × P; 10 B × B, Kt × Ktch; 11 Q × Kt, Kt × B; 12 B-B4, B-Kt4; 13 Kt-Q2, Kt-B4 =. Euwe-

Bogoljubow, 2nd match game, 1928. If 9 R-Q1 ♯?, Kt × QP ♯+.

(c) Kashdan and Phillips-Warburg and Alekhine, New York, 1933.

(d) If 10... P-B3; 11 P-B4 (11 P × P is also good), P × P; 12 KP × P, Kt-K1; 13 Kt-K1, P-B4; 14 P-B4, P-K5; 15 B-K3, B-KB3; 16 Kt-QB3, P-QKt4; 17 B-Kt3+ . L. Steiner-Kashdan, Folkestone, 1933.

(e) 14... Kt-Q2; 15 Kt-K4, Kt-B1 !; 16 B-K3, Kt-Kt3; 17 P-KKt3, P-R3; 18 Kt(B3)-Q2. Alekhine-Taylor, Margate, 1938.

(f) 6... Kt × QP is also good. Less satisfactory is 6... P-QKt4; 7 P × P, KKt × P; 8 B-Kt3, Kt-B4; 9 B-Q5, B-Kt2; 10 B-K3 ±.

Notes continued on p. 365

Notes continued from p. 363

(i) The alternative is 9... B-KKt5; 10 P-KR3 and now: (1) 10... B-R4; 11 P-Kt4, B-Kt3; 12 P-Kt5, P × P; 13 P × Kt, KP × P; 14 Q-K3, B × P; 15 QKt-Q2+. Kashdan-Hanauer, New York, 1936. (2) 10... B × Kt; 11 Q × B, P-Q5; 12 Q-K2, Kt-Q2; 13 B-Q5, Kt(Q2)-Kt1; 14 P-KB4, B-B3; 15 P × KP, B × P; 16 Q-R5 ±. Keres-Brinckmann, Madrid, 1943.

(j) Alekhine-Junge, Salzburg, 1942.

(k) Not 6... O-O; 7 B × Kt, QP × B (7... KtP × B; 8 Kt × P, P-B4 is Black's best fighting chance-Alekhine); 8 Kt × P, Q-Q5; 9 Kt-KB3, Q × KP ♯;

10 Q × Q, Kt × Q; 11 R-K1+. Alekhine.

(l) An alternative is 7 B × Ktch, P × B; 8 P-Q4, P × P; 9 Kt × P, B-Q2; 10 P-QB4, O-O; 11 Kt-QB3, P-B4; 12 Kt-B2, B-B3; 13 R-K1, Kt-Q2; 14 P-QKt3, B-B3 =. Leonhardt-Salwe, Nuremberg, 1906. Compare the Steinitz Defense Deferred, p. 373, cols. 111-112.

(m) If 9 R-Q1, Q-B1; 10 P-KR3, B-R4; 11 B-B2, R-K1; 12 B-K3, B-B1; 13 QKt-Q2, P-Q4 !; 14 P × KP, QKt × P ♯. Alekhine-Pinkus, New York, 1929.

(n) Kashdan-Poland, Philadelphia, 1936

Notes continued from p. 364

(g) If 8 Kt × P, Kt × Kt; 9 Q × Kt, Kt-B4 leads to easy equality. Also sufficient on 8 Kt × P is 8... O-O, e.g., (1) 9 Kt-B5, P-Q4 !; 10 P × P e.p., B × Kt !; 11 P × B, Q × P =. (2) 9 P-QB3, Kt × KP !; 10 R-K1, P-Q4; 11 P-B3, B-Q3 !; 12 P × Kt, B-KKt5; 13 Q-Q2, Q-R5 ♯ because of the powerful attack (Euwe). (3) 9 P-QB4, Kt-B4 !; 10 B-B2, Kt × P; 11 Q-R5, Kt-Kt3; 12 P-B4, P-Q3; 13 P-B5, B-B3 !+. Alekhine-Teichmann, Carlsbad, 1911.

(h) The tournament book suggests 11 B-K3, followed by Kt-R3-B4.

(i) Alekhine-Keres, Kemer, 1937.

(j) For 6 Kt-B3 and 6 P-Q3 see the corresponding lines with 5 Kt-B3 (cols. 101-103) and 5 P-Q3 (cols. 96-100). Inferior is 6 P-B3 ♯, Kt × P; 7 Q-K2, Kt-B4; 8 B × Kt, P × B; 9 Kt × P, O-O; 10 P-Q4, Kt-Q2; 11 Kt-Q2, Kt × Kt; 12 Q × Kt, B-K3; 13 Kt-B3, B-Q3; 14 Q-R5, P-B3 ♯. Thomas-Reshevsky, Nottingham, 1936.

(k) Other replies can transpose to the Treybal Variation (cols. 94-95) with an extra move for White.

(l) Euwe-Bogoljubow, 4th match game, 1941.

(m) In reply to 6... P-Q3 !? correct is 7 Kt-Kt5 !, P-Q4; 8 P × P, Kt-Q5; 9 P-B3 !, Kt × B; 10 Q × Kt, Q × P; 11 R-K1 !+ (Abramov and Ragosin), e.g., 11... Q × Q; 12 P × Q, ♯-Q3; 13

P-Q4. Best is 11... B-Kt2; 12 Q × Q, Kt × Q; 13 R × Pch, B-K2, with some play for the Pawn. Alternatives to 9 P-B3 are weak, e.g., 9 P-Q6, Kt × B; 10 P × P, Q × BP; 11 RP × Kt, P-KR3 ♯, or 9, Q-K1, B-QB4; 10 Q × Pch, K-B1; 11 P-QB3, Kt-Kt5; 12 Kt × BP, Q-R5; 13 Q × P, Kt-K7ch; 14 K-R1, Q × BP ♯+ . Bogatyrcuk-Dzagurov, 1939. After 6... P-Q3; 7 P-B3 or 7 P-QR4 transposes to the regular lines for White. Other alternatives on Black's sixth move are also weak: (1) 6... Kt × P; 7 P-QR4, B-Kt2; 8 P-Q4, P × QP; 9 R-K1, P-Q4; 10 B × P, Q × B; 11 Kt-B3, Q-Q1; 12 Kt × Kt, B-K2; 13 Kt-B5+. Keres-Pomar, Madrid, 1943. (2) 6... B-B4; 7 Kt × P !, Kt × Kt; 8 P-Q4, B × P; 9 Q × B, P-Q3; 10 P-QB3, P-B4; 11 Q-Q1, P-B5; 12 B-B2, B-Kt2; 13 P-B3 ±. Wagner-Krueger, Oeynhausen, 1922.

(n) Or 7... P-Kt5; 8 Q-K2, O-O; 9 P-R5, P-Q3; 10 P-B3, P-R3; 11 P-Q4, KtP × P; 12 KtP × P, R-Kt1; 13 B-QB4, B-Kt5 (13... Kt × RP; 14 R × Kt, though losing a Pawn, is preferable); 14 B-K3, P × P; 15 B × QP+. Johner-Teichmann, Berlin, 1924.

(o) 8 Q-K2, transposing to col. 78, is even stronger.

(p) Not 12... Kt × KP ♯; 13 P-Q5, Kt-Q1; 14 B-R7+. Keres-Zinner, Prague, 1937.

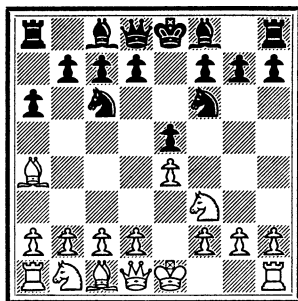
## MORPHY DEFENSE

1 P-K4, P-K4; 2 Kt-KB3, Kt-QB3; 3 B-K15, P-QR3; 4 B-R4, Kt-B3\*

	91	92	93	94	95
5 (O-O).....				B × Kt (o)	
B-B4 (a)				QP × B	
6 P-B3.....			Kt × P (k)...	P-Q3.....	Kt-B3
B-R2 (b)			Kt × Kt (l)	B-Q3	B-KKt5 / (q)
7 P-Q4			P-Q4	QKt-Q2	P-KR3
Kt × KP (c)			Kt × P	B-K3	B-R4
8 R-K1.....	Q-K2		R-K1 / (m)	Q-K2	P-Q3 (r)
P-B4	P-B4		B-K2	Kt-R4	Kt-Q2
9 QKt-Q2 / (d)	QKt-Q2 (h)		R × Kt	Kt-B4	B-K3
O-O (e)	Kt × Kt (i)		Kt-Kt3	B × Kt	B-QKt5
10 Kt × Kt	Kt × P		P-QB4	P × B	B-Q2
P × Kt	O-O		O-O	Q-B3	Q-K2
11 B-KKt5 (f)	B × Kt (B6)		Kt-B3	P-KKt3	P-R3
Q-K1	QP × B		P-KB4	Q-K3	B-Q3
12 R × P	B × Kt		R-K2	B-K3	Kt-K2
P-Q3	Q-B3		P-B5	P-QB4	B × Kt
13 P × P ± (g)	KR-K1 ± (j)		P-B3 ± (n)	Kt-Q2	P × B
				Kt-B3 = (p)	Kt-B4 ≠ (s)

## \* DIAGRAM 157

cols. 91-95



[After 4... Kt-B3]

(a) The Moeller Defense. For some years it was championed by Alekhine, but he later abandoned it. For 5... P-Q3 see the Steinitz Defense Deferred, cols. 116-120.

(b) If 6... P-QKt4; 7 B-B2, Q-K2 (compare the analogous variations in the Giuoco Piano); 8 P-Q4, B-Kt3; 9 Kt × P!, Kt × Kt; 10 P × Kt, Q × P; 11 K-R1, P-Q3; 12 P-KB4, Q-K2; 13 P-K5, P × P; 14 P × P, Kt-Kt5; 15 Q-B3, R-QKt1; 16 B-B4 ±.

(c) Again if 7... P-QKt4; 8 B-B2, Q-K2; 9 Kt × P, as in note (b), but not 8 B-Kt3, Q-K2; 9 P-QR4, O-O; 10 R-K1, P-Q3; 11 P-KR3, B-Q2; 12 P-R5, K-R1; 13 B-K3, Kt-R4 =. Kagan-Tolush, match Leningrad-Moscow, 1937.

Notes continued on p. 367

## Notes continued from p. 366

(d) The exchange sacrifice 9 R × Kt! ? does not lead to a clear advantage against best play: 9... P × R; 10 B-KKt5, Kt-K2; 11 Kt × P, O-O; 12 Kt-Q2!, P-Q4; 13 Kt × P!, B-K3 (if 13... P × Kt; 14 Q-Kt3ch, K-R1; 15 Kt-B7ch+); 14 Kt-Kt3, Q-Q3! (not 14... P-R3; 15 B × Kt, Q × B; 16 Kt-Kt6+. Sergeant-Milner-Barry, Margate, 1935); 15 Q-R5, P-KKt3; 16 Q-R6, B-B2! and Black can defend himself. 9 B × Kt, QP × B (not 9... KtP × B?; 10 R × Kt! ++); 10 Kt × P ± is playable for White.

(e) Or 9... Kt × Kt; 10 Kt × Kt, P-K5; 11 Kt × P, O-O (if 11... P × Kt; 12 R × Pch, Kt-K2; 13 B-KKt5 ++); 12 B-KKt5, Kt-K2; 13 Kt-Kt3, R-B2; 14 Q-K2, resigns. Stahlmann-Mueller.

(f) Also good is 11 R × P, for if 11... P-Q4?; 12 B-KKt5, Q-Q3; 13 P × P, Q-Kt3; 14 B-Kt3+, e.g., 14... R × Kt; 15 Q × Pch, R-B2; 16 R-KB4 ++. After 11 R × P, P-Q3; 12 B-KKt5, Q-K1 transposes back to the column.

(g) Capablanca-Milner-Barry, Margate, 1935. Best for Black now is 13... B-KB4; 14 R-K2, Q-R4; 15 Q-Q5ch, K-R1; 16 P-K6! (better than 16 B × Kt, P × B; 17 Q × BP, QR-K1!; 18 Q × BP, B-Q6; 19 KR-K1, B-Kt1 with a strong attack. Burfitt-Nield, correspondence, 1941), B-Kt5; 17 P-K7, KR-K1; 18 B × Kt, P × B; 19 Q × BP+, for if 19... B × Kt; 20 Q × B, Q × B; 21 Q × R! ++.

(h) An improvement on 9 P × P, O-O; 10 QKt-Q2 (better 10 B-Kt3ch, K-R1; 11 QKt-Q2, as in Alekhine-H. Steiner, Pasadena, 1932 and now 11... P-Q4 with unclear complications is essential), P-Q4; 11 P × P e.p., Kt × P(Q3); 12 B-Kt3ch, K-R1; 13 Kt-B4, P-B5!; 14 QKt-K5, Kt × Kt ≠. Yates-Alekhine, Hastings, 1922.

(i) Or 9... O-O; 10 Kt × Kt, P × Kt; 11 Q × KP, P-Q4; 12 B-Kt3, B-K3; 13 Q-K3 ±. Rauser-Ragosin, Leningrad, 1936.

(j) Ilyin-Zhenevsky-Ragosin, Leningrad, 1933.

(k) Inferior is 6 P-Q3, P-Q3; 7 P-Q4, P × P; 8 Kt × P, B-Q2; 9 Kt × Kt, P × Kt; 10 Kt-B3 (better 10 B-KKt5, Q-K2 =), Kt-Kt5!; 11 Q-B3, O-O; 12 B-B4, Q-K2; 13 QR-K1, QR-K1; 14 Q-Kt3, P-B4!; 15 P-KR3, P-Kt4!+. Bogatyrcuk-Savitzky, Leningrad, 1934.

(l) If 6... Kt × P; 7 Kt × Kt, QP × Kt; 8 Q-K2, Q-K2; 9 R-K1!, B × Pch; 10 Q × B!+.

(m) More convincing than 8 Q-K2, B-K2; 9 Q × Kt, Kt-Kt3; 10 P-QB4, O-O; 11 Kt-B3, P-KB4; 12 Q-Q3 ±. Takacs-Alekhine, Vienna, 1922.

(n) Kashdan-Milner-Barry, London, 1932.

(o) The Treybal Variation.

(p) Flohr-Reshevsky, Kemer, 1937.

(q) Inferior alternatives are: (1) 6... B-Q3; 7 P-Q3, P-B4; 8 P-KR3, B-K3; 9 B-K3, P-R3; 10 P-QR4, P-B5?; 11 P-Q4, P × P; 12 B × QP, KB-Kt5; 13 O-O ±. Bogoljubow-Alekhine, 16th match game, 1934. (2) 6... B-QKt5; 7 P-Q3, Q-K2?; 8 B-Q2, B-Q2; 9 Kt-K2, B × Bch; 10 Q × B, O-O-O; 11 P-KR3, Kt-K1; 12 Q-R5 ±. Flohr-Canal, Rogaska-Slatina, 1929.

(r) If 8 P-KKt4, B-Kt3; 9 Kt × P, Kt × KP!; 10 Kt × Kt (10 Kt × B, Kt × Kt =), B × Kt; 11 Q-K2, Q-Q4; 12 Kt × QBP, Q × Kt; 13 P-Q3, O-O-O; 14 P × B, B-Kt5ch and Black's position is worth the Pawn.

(s) Flohr-Euwe, Semmering, 1937.

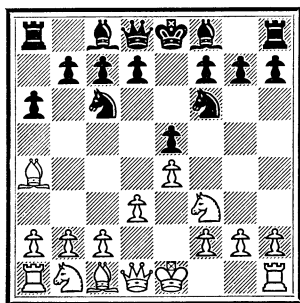
MORPHY DEFENSE

1 P-K4, P-K4; 2 Kt-KB3, Kt-QB3; 3 B-Kt5, P-QR3; 4 B-R4, Kt-B3; 5 P-Q3 (a)\*

	96	97	98	99	100
5	P-Q3			B-B4	P-QKt4
6	P-B3 B-K2 (b)		P-B4 (l) P-KKt3 (m)	Kt-B3 (p) P-Q3	B-Kt3 B-B4 (s)
7	O-O O-O (c)	QKt-Q2 O-O	P-Q4 (n) P × P	B-Kt5 (q) P-R3 !	B-K3 P-Q3
8	R-K1 P-QKt4 (d)	Kt-B1 P-QKt4	Kt × P Kt-Q2	B × Kt Q × B	QKt-Q2 B-K3
9	B-B2 (e) P-Q4 (f)	B-B2 (h) P-Q4 !	Kt × Kt B × Kt !	Kt-Q5 Q-Kt3 !	O-O O-O
10	QKt-Q2 P × P	Q-K2 (i) R-K1	O-O B-Kt2	Q-K2 P-Kt4	P-B3 QB × B
11	P × P B-K3	P-KR3 P × P (j)	Kt-B3 O-O	B-Kt3 R-R2 !	Q × B B × B
12	P-KR3 P-R3	P × P B-K3	P-B3 Kt-Q2 (o)	P-B3 O-O	P × B P-Q4
13	Kt-R2 Kt-KR2 = (g)	B-Q2 B-B5 = (k)	B × B P × B =	O-O B-KKt5 = (r)	QR-Q1 Q-Q3 = (t)

\* DIAGRAM 158

cols. 96-100



[After 5 P-Q3]

(a) The Steinitz System, recently revived by some of the younger Soviet masters.

(b) Also playable is 6... P-KKt3, e.g., 7 QKt-Q2, B-Kt2; 8 Kt-B1, O-O; 9 Kt-Kt3, P-QKt4; 10 B-B2 (or 10 B-Kt3, Kt-QR4; 11 B-B2, P-B4; 12 O-O, Kt-B3; 13 P-KR3, P-Q4; 14 Q-

K2, R-K1 =. Weaker here is 12... Q-B2; 13 P-KR3, P-Q4; 14 Kt-R2 !, P × P ?; 15 P × P, R-Q1; 16 Q-K1 !, B-K3; 17 P-KB4, P-Kt5; 18 P-B5 ±. L. Steiner-Goldstein, New South Wales championship, 1941), P-Q4; 11 Q-K2, R-K1; 12 O-O, B-Kt2; 13 B-Kt5, P-Q5 =. Treybal-Gruenfeld, Teplitz-Schoenau, 1922.

(c) An alternative is 7... B-Kt5; 8 R-K1, Kt-Q2; 9 QKt-Q2, Kt-B4; 10 B-B2, P-Q4; 11 P-KR3, B-R4; 12 Q-K2, P-Q5; 13 Kt-B1, O-O; 14 P-KKt4, B-Kt3 =. Panov-Ragosin, Moscow, 1942.

(d) Or 8... B-Q2; 9 QKt-Q2, B-K1; 10 Kt-B1, Kt-Q2; 11 Kt-Kt3, P-B3; 13 B-B2, B-B2 =. Ahues-Kmoch, Niendorf, 1927.

(e) If 9 B-Kt3, Kt-QR4; 10 B-B2, P-B4; 11 QKt-Q2, Kt-B3; 12 Kt-B1, R-K1; 13 Kt-K3, B-B1; 14 P-KR3, P-Kt3; 15 B-Kt3, B-K3 =. Sergeant-Capablanca, Margate, 1939.

Notes continued on p. 371

MORPHY DEFENSE

1 P-K4, P-K4; 2 Kt-KB3, Kt-QB3; 3 B-Kt5, P-QR3; 4 B-R4, Kt-B3\*

	101	102	103	104	105
5	Kt-B3 B-K2			Q-K2 (k) P-QKt4 (l)	
6	O-O P-QKt4	B-Kt3 B-K2 (c)	P-Q4 B-Q2 (i)	B-Kt3 B-B4	
7	B-Kt3 P-Q3	O-O P-Q3	B × Kt B × B	P-QR4 R-QKt1	P-B3 O-O
8	Kt-Q5 Kt-QR4 ! (a)	P-QR4 (d) P-Kt5	Q-K2 P × P	P × P P × P	O-O P-Q3
9	Kt × B Q × Kt	Kt-Q5 Kt-QR4 (e)	Kt × P B-Q2	Kt-B3 (m) O-O !	P-Q3 B-KKt5
10	P-Q4 O-O	Kt × B (f) Q × Kt	O-O B-K2	P-Q3 (n) P-Q3	B-K3 Q-Q2 (p)
11	P × P P × P	P-Q4 Kt × B	P-QKt3 O-O	B-Kt5 P-R3	QKt-Q2 K-R1
12	B-Kt5 B-Kt2	P × Kt Kt × P (g)	B-Kt2 P-QKt4	B × Kt Q × B	P-KR3 B-R4
13	Q-K1 Kt × B ♯ (b)	R-K1 B-Kt2 ♯	P-QR4 P-Kt5 = (j)	Kt-Q5 Q-Q1 = (o)	K-R2 QR-Q1 = (q)

\* See p. 366, Diagram 157

(a) Best. If instead (1) 8... B-Kt5; 9 Kt × B, Q × Kt; 10 P-B3, O-O; 11 P-Q3, Kt-QR4; 12 B-B2, P-B4; 13 P-KR3, B-R4; 14 Q-K2, Kt-Q2; 15 Q-K3, Kt-QB3; 16 Kt-R2, Kt-Kt3; 17 P-QKt4 ±. Thomas-Flohr, Margate, 1939. (2) 8... O-O; 9 P-B3, Kt-QR4; 10 Kt × Bch, Q × Kt; 11 B-B2, P-B4; 12 P-Q3, P-R3; 13 Kt-R4, P-Q4; 14 Q-B3, B-K3; 15 P × P, Kt × P; 16 Q-Kt3, Q-B3; 17 P-KB4 ±. Alekhine-Bogoljubow, Munich, 1941. (3) 8... Kt × P; 9 Kt × B, Kt × Kt; 10 P-Q4 ±.

(b) 14 RP × Kt, P-R3. Keres-Euwe, 4th match game, 1939-40.

(c) 6... P-Q3 ! ? is playable, for if 7 Kt-Kt5, P-Q4; 8 Kt × QP, Kt-Q5; 9 Kt × Ktch (or 9 Kt-K3 ?), Kt × B; 10 RP × Kt, P-R3; 11 Kt-B3, Kt × P; 12 Kt × P, Q-B3; 13 Kt-B3, B-Kt2; 14 Q-K2, O-O-O, with a winning attack. Thomas-Keres, Margate, 1937), Q × Kt; 10 B × Pch, K-Q1; 11 P-Q3 (if 11 P-KR4,

P-R3; 12 Q-R5, P-Kt3 ++), P-R3; 12 B-Q5, P-B3; 13 Kt-B7ch, K-B2; 14 Kt × R, P × B with excellent attacking prospects. 6... B-B4 is refuted by 7 Kt × KP !, Kt × Kt; 8 P-Q4, B-Q3; 9 P × Kt, B × P; 10 P-B4, B × Ktch; 11 P × B, O-O; 12 P-K5, P-B4 !; 13 B-R3, Q-R4; 14 O-O, Q × B; 15 P × Kt, P-B5; 16 Q-Q5, Q-R4 !; 17 P × P ±. Alekhine-Réti, Vienna, 1922.

(d) 8 Kt-Q5 transposes to col. 101. If 8 P-Q3, Kt-QR4; 9 Kt-K2, B-Kt2; 10 Kt-Kt3, Kt × B; 11 RP × Kt, P-Kt3 !; 12 P-B4, Kt-Q2; 13 Kt-K1, Kt-B4; 14 P-B4, Kt-K3; 15 P-B5, Kt-Q5 ♯. Pillsbury-Janowski, Hannover, 1902.

(e) Also sufficient is 9... R-QKt1; 10 P-Q4, B-Kt5; 11 P-B3, O-O; 12 B-QB4, KtP × P; 13 KtP × P, KKt × P; 14 B × P, P × P; 15 P × P, Kt-Kt5 ♯. Tarasch-Capablanca, St. Petersburg, 1914. 9... Kt × P is likewise playable here.

Notes continued on p. 371



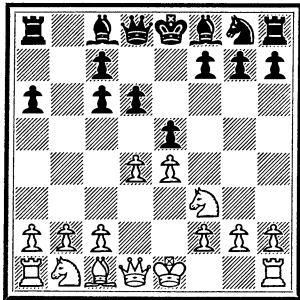
## STEINITZ DEFENSE DEFERRED

1 P-K4, P-K4; 2 Kt-KB3, Kt-QB3; 3 B-Kt5, P-QR3; 4 B-R4, P-Q3; 5 B x Ktch, P x B; 6 P-Q4 \*

	106	107	108	109	110
6	P-B3				P x P (n)
7	B-K3			O-O (k)	Kt x P
	P-Kt3 /	Kt-K2		P-Kt3	P-QB4
8	Q-Q2	Kt-B3		Kt-K1 (l)	Kt-KB3 (o)
	B-KKt2	Kt-Kt3 (d)		B-KKt2	B-K2
9	Kt-B3	Q-Q2 (e)	P-KR4	P-KB4	Q-K2
	Kt-K2 (a)	B-K2 (f)	B-K2 ? (i)	P x QP	B-Kt5
10	O-O (b)	P-KR4	P-R5	Q x P	Kt-B3
	B-Q2	P-KR4 / (g)	Kt-B1	Kt-K2	Kt-B3
11	P-KR3	O-O-O	Kt-KR4	P-QKt3	P-KR3
	O-O	B-Kt5	B-K3	P-QB4	B x Kt
12	QR-Q1	Q-Q3	Kt-B5	Q-Q3	Q x B
	Q-Ktr	P x P	B x Kt	P-B4	O-O
13	P-QKt3	B x P	P x B	P-K5	O-O
	Q-Kt2	Kt-B5	Q-Ktr	B-Kt2	Kt-Q2
14	B-R6	Q-B4	R-QKtr ± (j)	B-Kt2	Kt-Q5 ± (p)
	QR-Q1 = (c)	Q-Q2 = (h)		Kt-B3 ± (m)	

## \* DIAGRAM 159

cols. 106-110



[After 6 P-Q4]

(a) Weaker is 9... B-Kt5; 10 Kt-KKt1!, P x P; 11 B x P, Kt-R3; 12 P-KR3, B-Q2; 13 P-KKt4, Q-K2; 14 O-O-O ±. Bernards—Mencke, correspondence, 1935.

(b) Or 10 B-R6, O-O; 11 O-O-O, B-K3; 12 P-KR3, Q-Ktr; 13 P-KKt4,

Q-Kt5; 14 B x B, K x B; 15 P-R3, Q-Kt3 =. Bogoljubow—Thomas, Hastings, 1922.

(c) Romanovsky—Capablanca, Moscow, 1935.

(d) If instead 8... B-K3; 9 Q-Q3, Kt-B1; 10 R-Q1, B-K2; 11 Kt-K2, O-O; 12 P-KR3, Kt-Kt3; 13 P-QKt3 ±.

(e) 9 Q-K2 is met by 9... B-K3.

(f) Two other possibilities are: (1) 9... P-QR4; 10 P-KR4, P-R4; 11 O-O-O, B-K2; 12 Kt-K2, B-K3; 13 Q-B3, R-QR3; 14 P x P, BP x P; 15 Kt-Kt5, B-Kt1 =. Tartakower—Sultan Khan, London, 1932. (2) 9... B-K3; 10 P-KR4 (10 P-QKt3?, P-Q4; 11 O-O, P x KP; 12 QKt x P, B-Q4; 13 Kt-Kt3, B x Kt; 14 P x B, Kt-R5+). Thomas—Capablanca, Nottingham, 1936), P-KR4; 11 P-Q5!, P x P; 12 Kt x QP, B-K2; 13 Q-R5!, R-QB1; 14 Q x RP, P-B3!; 15 Kt x B, Q x Kt. Foltys—Fine, Margate, 1937. Black has excellent counterplay for the Pawn sacrificed.

Notes continued on p. 372

## Notes continued from p. 368

(f) Less precise is 9... B-K3; 10 QKt-Q2, P-Q4; 11 P x P, Q x P; 12 Q-K2, B-QB4; 13 P-KR3, QR-K1; 14 Kt-Kt5, B-B4; 15 QKt-K4 ±. Smyslov—Flohr, Leningrad—Moscow, 1939.

(g) Smyslov—Botvinnik, Leningrad—Moscow, 1941.

(h) Stronger than 9 B-Kt3, Kt-QR4; 10 B-B2, P-B4; 11 Q-K2, Kt-B3; 12 P-KR3, P-Q4; 13 Kt-Kt3, P-Q5 ±. Zita—Lilienthal, match Prague—Moscow, 1946.

(i) Or 10 B-Q2, R-K1; 11 Kt-Kt3, B-B1; 12 O-O, P x P; 13 P x P, B-K3; 14 P-Kt3, B-KKt5 =. Tartakower—Réti, New York, 1924.

(j) Also good is 11... P-Kt5; 12 P-B4?, Kt-Q5; 13 Kt x Kt, P x Kt; 14 BP x P, Kt x QP; 15 B-Kt3, Kt-Kt3; 16 Q-R5, R-B1 ±. Vajda—Lundin, Folkestone, 1933.

(k) 14 Q-K3, Kt-Q2. Vajda—Ahues, Kecskemet, 1927.

(l) The Duras Variation. For 6 Kt-B3 see col. 101. If 6 B x Ktch, P x B; 7 P-KR3, P-Kt3; 8 Kt-B3, KB-Kt2; 9 B-K3, R-QKt1; 10 P-QKt3, P-B4; 11 Q-Q2, P-R3; 12 P-KKt4, Kt-Kt1; 13 O-O-O, Kt-K2 ±. Anderssen—Steinitz, Vienna, 1873.

(m) Or 6... B-K2; 7 Kt-B3, O-O; 8 P-KR3, Kt-Q2; 9 B-K3, P-B4; 10 P x P, R x P; 11 O-O, R-B2 =. Spielmann—Rabinovitch, Baden-Baden, 1925.

(n) If 7 Kt-B3, B-Kt2; 8 B-KKt5, P-R3; 9 B-Q2, O-O; 10 P-KR3, Kt-Q2; 11 B x Kt?, P x B; 12 Q-K2, Kt-B4 ±. Duras—Maroczy, Vienna, 1908.

(o) Duras—Rubinstein, St. Petersburg, 1909.

(p) The alternative is 6 P-B3, P-QKt4; 7 B-B2, P-Q4; 8 P x P, Kt x P; 9 P-KR3?, O-O (best is 9... B-Kt3) with easy equality. Cf. the match games Anderssen—Morphy (!).

(q) Other continuations transpose into lines similar to col. 100 or col. 103 note (h).

(r) Botvinnik—Ragosin, 10th match game, 1940.

(s) Another good line is 6... B-K2; 7 Kt-B3 (or 7 P-QR4, P-Kt5; 8 O-O, P-Q3; 9 B-Kt5, Kt-QR4; 10 B-R2, P-Kt6; 11 P x P, P-B4; 12 P-QKt4, P x P =. Canal—Asztalos, Trieste, 1923), B-Kt2; 8 O-O, O-O; 9 Kt-Q5, Kt-QR4; 10 Kt x Bch, Q x Kt; 11 Kt-R4, Kt x B =. Sergeant—Vidmar, Hastings, 1930.

(t) Dyckhoff—Tarrasch, 1916.

## Notes continued from p. 369

(f) Better than 10 B-R2, Kt x Kt; 11 B x Kt, P-QB3; 12 B-R2, P-QB4!; 13 P-B3, R-QKt1; 14 B-Q5, O-O; 15 P-Q4, KP x P ±. Alekhine—Bogoljubow, Pistyan, 1922. Simplest for White is 10 P-Q4, Kt x B; 11 P x Kt, Kt x Kt; 12 P x Kt, P-K5; 13 Kt-Q2, B-Kt2; 14 P-B3 =. Spielmann—Réti, Berlin, 1920.

(g) Stronger than 12... B-Kt2; 13 B-Kt5!, B x P; 14 R-K1, B x Kt; 15 Q x B, O-O; 16 P-Q5 ±. Copenhagen—Leningrad, by telegraph, 1930.

(h) 5... B-B4 is of dubious value because of 6 Kt x P, Kt x Kt; 7 P-Q4, B-Kt5 (or 7... B-Q3; 8 O-O, P-B4; 9 P x Kt, B x P; 10 B-Kt3, Q-B2; 11 P-B4! ±. Belson—Martin, 5th match game, 1933); 8 P x Kt, Kt x P; 9 Q-Q4, Kt x

Kt; 10 P x Kt, B-K2; 11 Q-KKt4, P-KKt3; 12 B-R6 ±. 5... B-Kt5 is playable, with the main line 6 Kt-Q5, B-K2; 7 O-O, O-O; 8 R-K1, P-Q3; 9 Kt x Ktch, B x Kt; 10 P-B3, Kt-K2; 11 P-Q4, Kt-Kt3 = (Nimzovitch).

(i) An alternative is 6... P-QKt4; 7 P x P (not 7 B-Kt3?!, Kt x QP; 8 Kt x Kt, P x Kt; 9 Q x P?, P-B4+). Noah's Ark Trap, P x P; 8 Q x Qch, Kt x Q transposing into col. 119, note (k).

(j) Tarrasch—Walbrodt, Hastings, 1895.

(k) 5 P-Q4, P x P; 6 O-O, B-K2 transposes to col. 88. Weak for White here is 6 Q-K2, B-Kt5ch!; 7 B-Q2, B x Bch; 8 QKt x B, O-O; 9 O-O, R-K1; 10 Q-Q3, P-QKt4!; 11 B-Kt3, P-Q3+ (Purdy). Another inferior line for White is 5 P-B3, Kt x P; 6 Q-K2, Kt-

## Additional notes continued from p. 369

B4; 7 B × Kt, QP × B; 8 P—Q4, Kt—K3; 9 P × P, Kt—B4; 10 B—Kt5, Q—Q6! ♯. Balogh—Probst, correspondence, 1929.

(l) Best. On 5...P—Q3 or 5...B—K2 White can transpose to the Worrall Attack (cols. 76-87) with 6 P—B3. If then 6...P—QKt4 an alternative is 7 B—B2, O—O; 8 P—Q4, P—Q3; 9 P—KR3, P × P; 10 Kt × P, Kt × Kt; 11 P × Kt, B—Kt2; 12 O—O ±. Tarrasch—Bogoljubow, Kissingen, 1928. 5...B—B4? must not be played at once because Black loses a Pawn after 6 B × Kt, QP × B; 7 Kt × P, Q—Q5; 8 Kt—Q3, B—R2; 9 P—KB3, O—O; 10 Kt—B2+.

(m) Or 9 P—Q3, O—O; 10 O—O, P—Q3; 11 B—K3, B—KKt5; 12 P—R3, B × Kt;

## Notes continued from p. 370

(g) Another playable line is 10...B—Kt5; 11 P—R5, Kt—B1; 12 Kt—KKt1, Q—B1; 13 P—B3, B—K3; 14 KKt—K2, Q—Kt2; 15 O—O—O, O—O—O; 16 P—Q5, P × P; 17 P × P, B—B2 =. Kan—Bogatyrychuk, Leningrad, 1934. Weak however is 10...O—O; 11 P—R5, Kt—R1; 12 O—O—O, Kt—B2; 13 QR—Kt1, B—Q2; 14 P—KKt4, P × P; 15 Kt × P, Kt—K4; 16 Q—K2, Q—B1; 17 Kt—B5, R—K1; 18 P—B4, Kt—B2; 19 P—R6+. Thomas—Monticelli, Folkestone, 1933.

(h) Bogoljubow—Alekhine, exhibition game, Baden-Baden, 1934.

(i) Best is 9...P—KR4; transposing into col. 107. Another weak line is 9...Q—Q2; 10 P—R5, Kt—K2; 11 Q—K2, P—R4; 12 O—O—O, B—R3; 13 Q—Q2, Q—K3?; 14 P × P, BP × P; 15 Kt—KKt5 with a decisive attack. Tartakower—Stoltz, Bled, 1931.

(j) 14...Q—Kt5; 15 R—R4!, Q—B5; 16 P—QKt3!, Q—B2; 17 P—Q5, P—B4; 18 Kt—K4. Romanovsky—Panov, Moscow, 1943.

(k) This is poor. An equalizing line is 7 Kt—B3, R—Kt1; 8 P—QKt3, P—Kt3; 9 Q—Q3, Q—Q2; 10 B—Kt2, B—R3; 11 Kt

13 Q × B, Kt—Q5 =. Schlechter—Rubinstein, match, 1918.

(n) The sacrifice cannot very well be accepted. After 10 Kt × KtP both 10...P—Q4; 11 P × P, P—K5; 12 Kt—Kt5, R × Kt!; 13 Q × R, B × Pch (Suechting—Johner, Vienna, 1908) and 10...P—Q3; 11 P—R3, B—Q2; 12 B—B4, Kt—QKt5; 13 Kt—R3, P—Q4! (Alekhine—Teichmann, Hamburg, 1910) give Black a powerful attack.

(o) Bogoljubow—Eliskases, 6th match game, 1939.

(p) Weaker is 10...Q—K2; 11 QKt—Q2, Kt—Q1; 12 P—KR3, B—R4; 13 B × B, P × B; 14 Q—K3, Q—Q3; 15 Kt—R4 ±. Thomas—Spielmann, Carlsbad, 1923.

(q) Perlis—Marshall, Carlsbad, 1911.

—K2, Kt—K2; 12 R—Q1, B—KKt2; 13 P × P, BP × P; 14 O—O, P—B4 =. Thomas—Alekhine, London, 1932.

(l) Or 8 Kt—B3, Kt—R3; 9 P × P, BP × P; 10 B—Kt5, Q—Q2; 11 B—B6, R—KKt1; 12 Q—Q2, P—Kt4!; 13 B × KtP, Q—Kt5; 14 P—KR3, Q—R4; 15 Kt—K2, Kt—B2 ♯. Wolf—Schlechter, 1903.

(m) 15 Q—B4, Q—Q2. Kupchik—Capablanca, New York, 1931.

(n) If 6...P—KB4?; 7 Kt—B3, Kt—B3; 8 P × KP, Kt × P; 9 Kt × Kt, P × Kt; 10 Kt—Q4!+. Keres—Andersen, Warsaw, 1935. 6...Kt—B3; 7 O—O, Kt—Q2 transposes to cols. 116-118. 6...B—Kt5 can be met by 7 Kt—B3, Q—B3; 8 B—K3, Kt—K2; 9 P × P, P × P; 10 Q—Q3!?, B × Kt; 11 P × B, Q × P; 12 R—KKt1, Kt—Kt3; 13 Q—B4 with a strong attack. Alekhine—Avirovitch, 1931.

(o) To threaten P—K5. Good but less effective is 8 Kt—K2, Kt—B3; 9 QKt—B3, R—QKt1; 10 O—O, B—K2; 11 P—QKt3, O—O; 12 B—Kt2, R—K1; 13 Q—Q3, B—B1; 14 QR—Q1, B—Q2; 15 P—B3 ±. Dake—H. Steiner, 3rd match game, 1935.

(p) Kashdan—Aurbach, Frankfurt, 1930.

## STEINITZ DEFENSE DEFERRED

1 P—K4, P—K4; 2 Kt—KB3, Kt—QB3; 3 B—Kt5, P—QR3; 4 B—R4, P—Q3\*

	111	112	113	114	115
5 (B × Ktch).....			P—B4 (i)		
(P × B)			B—Q2.....		P—B4 (q)
6 (P—Q4)			P—Q4.....	Kt—B3	P—Q4!
(P × P)			P × P (j)	P—KKt3 (m)	BP × P
7 (Kt × P) (a)			Kt × P	P—Q4	Kt × P!
B—Q2			Kt × Kt!	B—Kt2? (n)	P × Kt
8 Kt—QB3.....	O—O		B × Bch	B—KKt5 (o)	Q—R5ch
Kt—B3	Kt—B3 (f)		Q × B	P—B3	P—Kt3! (r)
9 Q—B3! (b)	Kt—QB3 (g)		Q × Kt	B—K3	Q × KPch
P—B4	B—K2		Kt—B3 (k)	KKt—K2	K—B2
10 Kt—B5	R—K1		O—O	O—O	Q × R
B × Kt	O—O		B—K2	O—O	B—Kt2
11 P × B	P—QKt3		Kt—B3	P—Q5	Q × P
B—K2 (c)	R—K1		O—O	Kt—Kt1	Kt × P
12 O—O (d)	B—Kt2		P—QKt3	P—B5!	Kt—B3
O—O	B—KB1		KR—K1	P—R3	B—Kt5
13 B—Kt5 ± (e)	P—B3		B—Kt2	Kt—Q2 ± (p)	Kt—Q5 ± (s)
	P—Kt3 = (h)		B—B1 = (l)		

## \* See p. 332, Diagram 138

(a) Stronger than 7 Q × P, Kt—B3; 8 O—O, B—K2; 9 P—QKt3, Kt—Q2; 10 Kt—B3, B—B3; 11 Q—Q2, O—O =. Rausser—Freyman, 1936.

(b) Better than 9 O—O which transposes to col. 112.

(c) If 11...R—R2; 12 O—O, B—K2; 13 B—Kt5, O—O; 14 QR—K1, R—K1; 15 R—K2, P—R3; 16 B—R4 ±. Horowitz—Fine, 7th match game, 1934.

(d) An improvement on 12 Q—B6ch, Kt—Q2; 13 Kt—Q5, R—R2; 14 O—O, O—O =. Brinckmann—Yates, Kecskemet, 1927.

(e) Limbos—Koltanowski, Belgian championship, 1930.

(f) Inferior is 8...P—Kt3; 9 Kt—QB3, B—Kt2; 10 R—K1, Kt—K2; 11 B—B4, O—O; 12 Q—Q2, P—QB4; 13 Kt—Kt3, Kt—B3; 14 B—R6 ±. Alekhine—Koltanowski, London, 1932.

(g) This leads to nothing. 9 Q—B3 is again best, e.g., 9...P—B4; 10 Kt—B5, B × Kt;

11 Q × B (or 11 P × B as in col. 111) Q—Q2; 12 Q—B3, Q—Kt5; 13 Q × Q, Kt × Q; 14 Kt—B3, P—Kt3; 15 Kt—Q5 ±. Vassilev—Capablanca, simultaneous exhibition, 1935.

(h) Balla—Réti, Budapest, 1911.

(i) A slightly altered version of the Duras Variation. Cf. col. 98.

(j) If 6...P—KKt3; 7 P × P, Kt × P; 8 Kt × Kt, P × Kt; 9 O—O, Kt—K2; 10 Kt—B3, Kt—B3; 11 Kt—Q5, B—Kt2; 12 P—B4, P × P; 13 B × P, Kt—K4; 14 B × Bch, Q × B; 15 B—R6! ±. Horowitz—Fine, New York, 1944.

(k) Or 9...Kt—K2; 10 O—O, Kt—B3; 11 Q—B3, Q—Kt5; 12 P—B3, Q—Kt3; 13 Q—Kt3 (Eliskases—Thomas, Hastings, 1936-37), O—O—O! =.

(l) 14 KR—K1, R—K3; 15 P—B4, QR—K1; 16 R—K3, P—B3; 17 R—Q1, Q—B2; 18 QR—K1, P—QKt4. Keres—Sir. G. A. Thomas, Hastings, 1937-38.

## Notes continued on p. 376

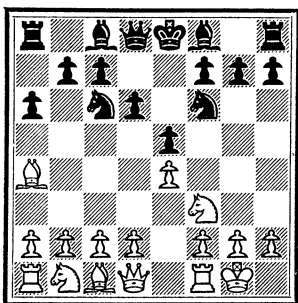
STEINITZ DEFENSE DEFERRED

1 P-K4, P-K4; 2 Kt-KB3, Kt-QB3; 3 B-Kt5, P-QR3; 4 B-R4, P-Q3; 5 O-O, Kt-B3 (a)\*

116	117	118	119	120
6 B x Ktch			P-Q4	R-K1 (o)
P x B			P-QKt4 (j)	P-QKt4 (p)
7 P-Q4			B-Kt3 (k)	B-Kt3
Kt x P		Kt-Q2 (g)	QKt x P	Kt-QR4
8 R-K1	Q-K2	Kt-R3 (h)	Kt x Kt	P-Q4
P-KB4	P-KB4	P-B3	P x Kt	Kt x B
9 P x P	QKt-Q2 / (d)	Kt-B4	P-QB3 (l)	RP x Kt
P-Q4	Kt x Kt	P-QR4	P x P	B-Kt2 (q)
10 Kt-B3 / (b)	Kt x Kt	R-K1	Kt x P	B-Kt5 (r)
B-B4	B-K2 (e)	Kt-Kt3	B-K2	P-R3
11 B-K3	P x P	Kt-K3	Q-B3	B-R4 / (s)
B x B	P x P	B-K2	B-Kt2 (m)	P-Kt4
12 R x B	Kt-B4	P-B4	Q-Kt3	B-Kt3
O-O	Q-Q4	B-K3	O-O	Kt x P
13 Kt-Q4	Kt x P	P-B5 /	B-R6	P x P (t)
Q-K1	O-O	Kt-B1	Kt-K1	P-Q4
14 P-B3 ± (c)	R-Q1 ± (f)	Q-R4 ± (i)	P-B4	P-K6 / ± (u)
			K-R1 = (n)	

\* DIAGRAM 160

cols. 116-120



[After 5... Kt-B3]

(a) Black's best course is to transpose to cols. 121-130 with 5... B-Q2. Other alternatives are: (1) 5... P-QKt4; 6 B-Kt3, Kt-R4 (6... Kt-B3; 7 R-K1 transposes to col. 120); 7 P-Q4, Kt x B (if 7... P x P; 8 Q x P!) and 8... P-KB4 is refuted by 9 P-Q4; 8 RP x

Kt, P-KB3; 9 B-K3, B-Kt2; 10 Kt-B3, P-Kt3; 11 Q-Q2, B-Kt2; 12 P x P ±. Zinner-Mencke, correspondence, 1935. (2) 5... P-B4?; 6 P-Q4, BP x P; 7 Kt-Kt5, P x P; 8 Q x P, Kt-B3; 9 Kt x KP, B-Q2; 10 R-K1+. (3) 5... B-Kt5; 6 P-KR2, B x Kt; 7 Q x B, Kt-B3; 8 P-B3 ±

(b) If 10 Kt-Q4 (formerly considered best), Q-R5 / gives Black sufficient counterplay: 11 P-KKt3 (if 11 P-KB3, B-B4; 12 P-B3, Kt-B7; 13 P-KKt3, Q-R4; 14 Q-K2, Kt-R6ch; 15 K-Kt2, B x Kt; 16 P x B, P-B5 / ♣), Q-R6; 12 Kt-QB3 /, B-B4; 13 QKt-K2, P-Kt4 /; 14 P-KB3, P-B5 /; 15 B x P, R-B1; 16 P x Kt, P x B+. Analysis by Aitken. In reply to 10 Kt-Q4, P-B4? is refuted by 11 Kt-K2, P-B3; 12 Kt-B4, P-Kt3; 13 P-B4, P-Q5; 14 Q-R4, B-QKt2; 15 P-B3. Keres-Reshevsky, AVRO tournament, 1938. On 10 Kt-Q4, B-B4 is also good, the main variation

Notes continued on p. 376

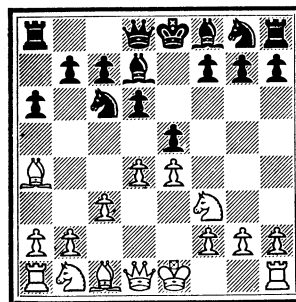
STEINITZ DEFENSE DEFERRED

1 P-K4, P-K4; 2 Kt-KB3, Kt-QB3; 3 B-Kt5, P-QR3; 4 B-R4, P-Q3; 5 P-B3, B-Q2; 6 P-Q4\*

121	122	123	124	125
6 P-KKt3				KKt-K2
7 O-O			B-KKt5	B-Kt3 / (j)
B-Kt2		Kt-B3	P-B3	P-R3 (k)
8 B-KKt5	B-K3 (c)	QKt-Q2	B-K3	Kt-R4 / (l)
Kt-B3 / (a)	Kt-B3 / (d)	Q-K2	Kt-R3	Kt-R4
9 P x P	P x P (e)	R-K1	O-O (h)	B-B2
P x P	QKt x P	B-Kt2	B-Kt2	P-KKt3
10 R-K1	Kt x Kt	Kt-B1	P-KR3	O-O
Q-K2	P x Kt	O-O	Kt-B2	B-Kt2
11 QKt-Q2	B-B2	B-KKt5	QKt-Q2	P-KB4
P-R3	O-O	P-R3	O-O	KKt-B3
12 B x Kt	Kt-Q2	B-R4	P x P	Kt-B3
Q x B	Q-K2	Q-K1	QP x P	P x QP
13 Kt-B1	P-KR3	B-B2	B-B5	Kt x P
R-Q1	Kt-K1	Kt-KR4	R-K1	Kt x Kt
14 Kt-K3	Q-K2	Kt-K3	B-Kt3	P x Kt ± (m)
O-O = (b)	Kt-Q3 = (f)	Kt-K2 = (g)	P-Kt3 = (i)	

\* DIAGRAM 161

cols. 121-125



[After 6 P-Q4]

(a) Inferior alternatives are: (1) 8... KKt-K2; 9 P x P (9 Q-Q2 is also possible but less active), P x P; 10 Q-Q3, P-R3; 11 B-K3, B-Kt5; 12 Q-K2, O-O; 13 B-B5 / ± (Alekhine). If here 13 QKt-Q2, P-B4 ♣. Yates-Alekhine, New York, 1924. (2) 8... P-B3; 9 B-K3, Kt-R3; 10 P-KR3, Kt-B2; 11 P-B4 /,

O-O; 12 Kt-B3, Kt x P ±; 13 Kt x Kt, P x Kt; 14 B x P ±. Christoffel-Thomas, Hastings, 1945-46.

(b) L. Steiner-Gromer, Prague, 1931.

(c) Some alternatives are: (1) 8 P x P, P x P (if 8... Kt x P?; 9 Kt x Kt, P x Kt; 10 P-KB4 /, B x B; 11 Q x Bch, Q-Q2; 12 Q x Qch, K x Q; 13 P x P+. Fine-Alekhine, AVRO tournament, 1938); 9 B-K3, Q-K2 (not 9... KKt-K2; 10 B-B5 /, O-O; 11 B x QKt, P x B; 12 Kt-R3, R-K1; 13 Kt-B4, P-B3; 14 Kt-R5 ±. Maroczy-Mackenzie, Weston, 1922); 10 QKt-Q2, Kt-B3; 11 P-QKt4, P-Kt3; 12 P-KR3?, O-O; 13 B-Kt3, P-QR4; 14 P-Kt5, Kt-Q1; 15 P-QR4, Kt-Kt2 ♣. Sergeant-Alekhine, Margate, 1938. (2) 8 R-K1, Kt-B3; 9 QKt-Q2, O-O; 10 Kt-B1, P-R3; 11 Kt-Kt3, R-K1; 12 P-KR3, R-K2; 13 B-B2, Q-K1; 14 B-K3, R-Q1 =. Panov-Bogatyrchuk, Leningrad, 1934.

Notes continued on p. 377

## Notes continued from p. 373

(m) An attempt to get more out of the position.  $\delta \dots Kt-Q5$  is best.

(n) Better is  $7 \dots P \times P$ ;  $\delta Kt \times P$ ,  $B-Kt2$ ;  $\theta B-K3$  (if  $\theta Kt \times Kt$ ,  $B \times Kt$  is best, but not  $\theta \dots P \times Kt$ ?;  $10 O-O$ ,  $Kt-K2$ ;  $11 P-B5$ !,  $Kt-B1$ ;  $12 B-K3$ ,  $O-O$ ;  $13 Q-Q2$ ,  $Q-K2$ ;  $14 QR-Q1+$ . Boleslavsky—Fine, match U.S.S.R.—U. S. A., 1945),  $KKt-K2$ ;  $10 O-O$ ,  $O-O$ ;  $11 B-B2$ ,  $Kt-K4$  =.

(o) White has various good lines at his disposal. Two satisfactory alternatives are: (1)  $\delta B-K3$ ,  $Kt-B3$ ;  $\theta P \times P$ ,  $P \times P$ ;  $10 B-B5$ ,  $Kt-KR4$ ;  $11 Kt-Q5$ ,  $Kt-B5$ ;  $12 Kt \times Kt$ ,  $P \times Kt$  (Keres—Alekhine, Margate, 1937);  $13 O-O$ !,  $Kt-K2$ ;  $14 B \times Bch$ ,  $Q \times B$ ;  $15 Q-Kt3+$ . Analysis by L. Steiner. (2)  $\delta P \times P$ ,  $P \times P$ ;  $\theta Kt-Q5$ ,  $Kt-B3$ ;  $10 B-KKt5 \pm$  (but not  $10 Kt \times Ktch$ ?,  $Q \times Kt$ ;  $11 P-KR3$ ,  $P-R3$ ;  $12 B-K3$ ,  $O-O-O$ ;  $13 Q-K2$ ,  $Q-K2$ ;  $14 O-O-O$ ,  $P-B4 \mp$ . Rellstab—Fine, Kemer, 1937).

## Notes continued from p. 374

being  $11 P-QB3$ ,  $Q-R5$ ;  $12 P-B3$ ,  $Kt-B7$  as above.

(c)  $14 \dots P-B5$ ;  $15 R-K1$ ,  $Kt \times Kt$ ;  $16 P \times Kt$ ,  $R-Kt1$ ;  $17 Kt-Kt3$ . Boleslavsky—Smyslov, Leningrad—Moscow, 1941.

(d) If now  $\theta P \times P$ ?,  $P-Q4$ ;  $10 QKt-Q2$ ,  $B-B4$ ;  $11 Kt-Kt3$ ,  $B-Kt3$ ;  $12 B-K3$ ,  $P-B4$ !;  $13 KKt-Q2$ ,  $Kt \times Kt$ ;  $14 Kt \times Kt$ ,  $O-O$ ;  $15 P-KB4$ ,  $P-QR4$ !  $\mp$ . Dake—Reshevsky, New York, 1938. Or here  $10 R-Q1$ ,  $P-B4$ ;  $11 P-B4$ ,  $P-B3$ ;  $12 Kt-B3$ ,  $Kt \times Kt \mp$ . H. Wolf—Rubinstein, Vienna, 1922.

(e) If  $10 \dots P-K5$ ;  $11 P-KB3$ ,  $P-Q4$ ;  $12 P \times P$ ,  $QP \times P$ ;  $13 Kt \times P$ !+.

(f) Alexander—Reshevsky, Hastings, 1936-37.

(g) If  $7 \dots P \times P$ ;  $\delta Kt \times P$ ,  $B-Q2$ ;  $\theta Q-B3$ , transposing into col. 111.

(h) Somewhat better than  $\delta P-QKt3$ ,  $B-K2$ ;  $\theta B-Kt2$ ,  $P-B3$ ;  $10 Kt-R4$ ,  $P-Kt3$ ;  $11 Q-K2$  (Alexander—Kashdan, Stockholm, 1937, where Black played  $11 \dots P-KB4$ ?;  $12 QP \times P$ !,  $B \times Kt$ ;  $13 P-K6+$ ),  $Kt-Kt3$ ; and Black's disadvantage is minimal.

(b) Alekhine—Perez, Spain, 1945.

(q) A little-known defense which is apparently strong is  $5 \dots B-Kt5$ ;  $\theta P-KR3$ ,  $B \times Kt$ ;  $7 Q \times B$ ,  $Kt-K2$ ;  $\delta Kt-B3$ ,  $Kt-Kt3$ ;  $\theta O-O$ ,  $B-K2$ ;  $10 Kt-Q5$ ,  $O-O$ ;  $11 B \times Kt$ ,  $P \times B$ ;  $12 Kt-K3$ ,  $Kt-R5$ !;  $13 Q-Q1$ ,  $P-KB4$  =. Wojcikowski—Pirc, Jurata, 1937.

(r) If  $\delta \dots K-K2$ ;  $\theta B \times Kt$ ,  $Kt-B3$ ! ( $\theta \dots Q \times P$ ??;  $10 Q-K8ch$ ,  $K-Q3$ ;  $11 B-K3$ ,  $Q \times BP$ ;  $12 Kt-B3$ ,  $B-Kt5$ ;  $13 R-Q1ch$ , resigns. Book—Andersen, Warsaw, 1935. Or  $\theta \dots P \times B$ ;  $10 B-Kt5ch$ ,  $Kt-B3$ ;  $11 P \times P$ !);  $10 Q \times Pch$ ! (not  $10 B-KKt5$ ,  $Q \times P$ ;  $11 Q-K8ch$ ,  $K-Q3$ ;  $12 B \times Kt$ ,  $B-Kt5$ !+; Michel—Czaya, Berlin, 1937),  $K-B2$ ;  $11 B-Q5ch$ ,  $Kt \times B$ ;  $12 Q \times Ktch$ ,  $Q \times Q$ ;  $13 P \times Q$ ,  $B-KB4$ ;  $14 B-B4$ +

(s)  $13 \dots P-B3$ ;  $14 Kt-B4$ ,  $Kt-K2$ ;  $15 B-Q2$ . Napolitano—Schoenmann, correspondence, 1932.

(i) Rauser—Savitzky, Leningrad, 1933.

(j)  $\delta \dots B-Q2$  transposing into better-known variations is superior. On Tchigorin's  $\delta \dots Kt-Q2$ ;  $7 P-B4$  is strong.

(k) A gambit continuation to secure an advantage. If  $7 P \times P$ ,  $P \times P$ ;  $\delta Q \times Qch$ ,  $Kt \times Q$ ;  $\theta B-Kt3$ ,  $Kt-Q2$  is good enough:  $10 P-QR4$ ,  $R-QKt1$ ;  $11 P \times P$ ,  $P \times P$ ;  $12 Kt-B3$ ,  $P-QB3$ ;  $13 B-K3$ ,  $P-B3$ ;  $14 R-R7$ ,  $Kt-Kt2$ ; and White has nothing. Wagner—Rubinstein, Breslau, 1925.  $\theta \dots B-Q3$  is more difficult but also adequate:  $10 B-Kt5$ ,  $B-K3$ ;  $11 B \times Kt$ ,  $P \times B$ ;  $12 Kt-B3$ ,  $P-B3$ ;  $13 QR-Q1$ ,  $Kt-Kt2$ ;  $14 Kt-KR4$ ,  $P-QR4$ ! =. Lasker—consultants, New York, 1938.

(l)  $\theta Q \times P$ ?,  $P-B4$  and  $10 \dots P-B5$ ++. Noah's Ark Trap again.

(m) Or  $11 \dots O-O$ ;  $12 P-K5$ ,  $B-Kt5$ ;  $13 P \times Kt$  (also possible is  $13 Q-Kt3$ ,  $P \times P$ ;  $14 B-Kt5$ ,  $B-R4$ ;  $15 Q \times P$  with continued pressure),  $B \times Q$ ;  $14 P \times B$ ,  $Q \times P$ ;  $15 P \times B$  =.

(n) Yates—Rubinstein, Carlsbad, 1923. White has enough for the Pawn.

(o)  $\theta Q-K2$  transposes into cols. 76-87;  $\theta P-B3$  into cols. 121-123.

## Additional notes continued from p. 374

(p)  $\delta \dots B-K2$  transposes into cols. 71-75.

(q) If instead  $\theta \dots Kt-Q2$ ;  $10 P \times P$ !,  $Kt \times P$ ;  $11 Kt-Q4$ ,  $B-Q2$ ;  $12 Kt-B5$ ,  $P-Kt3$ ;  $13 P-KB4$ !,  $Kt-B3$ ;  $14 Kt-K3 \pm$ . Bolbochan—Puiggros, Buenos Aires, 1944.

(r) Better than  $10 P \times P$ ,  $Kt \times P$ ;  $11 P \times P$ ,  $B \times P$ ;  $12 Q-Q4$ ,  $Q-K2$ ;  $13 Kt-B3$ !,  $P-KB4$ ;  $14 B-Kt5$ ,  $Q-Q2$ ! =. Aurbach—Alekhine, Paris, 1922.

(s) An improvement on  $11 B \times Kt$ ,  $Q \times B$ ;  $12 Kt-B3$ ,  $P-B3$ ;  $13 P-Q5$ ,  $P-B4$ ;

$14 Q-Q3$ ,  $Q-Q1$ ;  $15 Kt \times KtP$ !,  $P \times Kt$ ;  $16 Q \times Pch$ ,  $Q-Q2$  with a quick draw. Lasker—Rubinstein, Mahrishch—Ostrau, 1923.

(t) A gambit possibility is  $13 Kt \times KP$ !,  $P \times Kt$ ;  $14 B \times P$ ,  $P-KB3$ ;  $15 Q-R5ch$ ,  $K-K2$ ;  $16 B-Kt3$  with a vigorous attack (Belavienetz).

(u)  $14 \dots P \times P$ ;  $15 Kt-Q4$ . Poulsen—Antze, match Germany—Scandinavia, 1938.

## Notes continued from p. 375

(d) Weaker is  $\delta \dots KKt-K2$ ;  $\theta P-B4$ !,  $P \times P$ ;  $10 Kt \times P$ ,  $O-O$ ;  $11 Kt-QB3$ ,  $Kt \times Kt$ ;  $12 B \times Kt$ ,  $QB \times B$ ;  $13 Kt \times B$ ,  $B \times B$ ;  $14 Q \times B \pm$ . Yates—Capablanca, Hastings, 1929.

(e) If  $\theta B-B2$ ,  $O-O$ ;  $10 P-KR3$ ;  $Kt-KR4$ ;  $11 QKt-Q2$ ,  $Kt-B5$ ;  $12 R-K1$ ,  $Q-B3$ ;  $13 Kt-B1$ ,  $QR-Q1 \mp$ . Chistyakov—Bogatyrchuk, Kiev, 1938.

(f) Kashdan—Flohr, Bled, 1931.

(g) Botvinnik—Boleslavsky, Moscow, 1945.

(h) On  $\theta P-KR3$ , Black should proceed along the lines of the column. Weaker is  $\theta \dots B-Kt2$ ;  $10 QKt-Q2$ ,  $Kt-B2$ ;  $11 P-KKt4$ ,  $Q-K2$ ?;  $12 P-Q5$ !,  $Kt-Kt1$ ;  $13 B-B2$ ,  $P-QB4$ ?;  $14 P-QR4 \pm$ . Capablanca—Thomas, Margate, 1939.

(i) Bogoljubow—Alekhine, 23rd match

game, 1929.

(j) Stronger than  $7 O-O$ ,  $Kt-Kt3$  which transposes into col. 128.

(k) Forced, to prevent  $Kt-Kt5$ .

(l) An improvement on  $\delta B-K3$ ,  $Kt-Kt3$ ! (not  $\delta \dots P-KKt4$ ?;  $\theta B \times P$ !,  $P \times B$ ;  $10 Kt \times KtP$ ,  $P-Q4$ ;  $11 KP \times P$ ,  $Kt-R4$ ;  $12 P-Q6$ !,  $Kt \times B$ ;  $13 Q \times Kt$ ,  $Kt-Q4$ ;  $14 Kt \times P$ ,  $K \times Kt$ ;  $15 P \times BP$ ,  $Q \times P$ ;  $16 Q \times Ktch$ ,  $B-K3$ ;  $17 Q-B3ch \pm$ . Analysis by Becker);  $\theta QKt-Q2$ ,  $Kt-B5$ ;  $12 B \times Kt$ ,  $Q \times B$ ;  $13 K-Kt1$ ,  $Kt-R4$ ;  $14 B-B2$ ,  $O-O$ ;  $15 Kt-B1$ ,  $B-QKt4$ ;  $16 B-Q3$ ,  $P-KB4$ ! =. Kashdan—Reshevsky, 2nd match game, 1942.

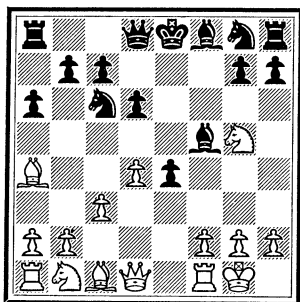
(m)  $14 \dots Kt-B3$ ;  $15 B-K3$ ,  $P-Q4$ ;  $16 P-B5$ !. Smyslov—Makogonov, Sverdlovsk, 1943.

STEINITZ DEFENSE DEFERRED

1 P-K4, P-K4; 2 Kt-KB3, Kt-QB3; 3 B-Kt5, P-QR3; 4 B-R4, P-Q3; 5 P-B3

126	127	128	129	130
5 (B-Q2).....			P-B4 (i)	
6 (P-Q4).....		O-O	P × P! (j)	
Kt-B3		KKt-K2	B × P	
7 O-O (a)		P-Q4	P-Q4	
B-K2 (b)		P-KR3 (g)	P-K5	
8 P-Q5 (c)		QKt-Q2 (h)	Kt-Kt5! (k) *	
Kt-QKt1		P-KKt4!	B-K2.....Kt-B3 (m)	
9 B-B2		P × P?	O-O!	P-B3
P-R3.....B-Kt5		P × P	B × Kt	P-Q4
10 P-B4	P-B4	R-K1	Q-R5ch	O-O
Q-B1	QKt-Q2	Kt-Kt3	B-Kt3	Q-Q2
11 Kt-K1	P-KR3 (e)	Kt-B1	Q × B	P-QB4! (n)
P-KKt4	B-R4	P-Kt5	Q × Q	P-R3 (o)
12 Kt-QB3	Kt-B3	Kt(B3)-Q2	B × Q	P × QP
Kt-R4!	O-O	P-Kt4	Kt-K2	P × Kt
13 Kt-K2	P-KKt4	B-Kt3	Kt-Q2	P × Kt
Kt-B5	B-Kt3	B-QB4	P-Kt4	KtP × P
14 Kt-Kt3	Q-K2 ± (f)	B-Q5	B-Kt3+ (l)	B × KtP+ (p)
P-QB3 = (d)		Q-B3±		

\* DIAGRAM 162  
cols. 129-130



[After 8 Kt-Kt5]

(a) More precise is 7 P-Q5 at once, or 7 Q-K2.

(b) Here 7...Kt × KP equalizes most easily, for if 8 R-K1, Kt-B3!; 9 P × P,

P × P; 10 Kt × P, Kt × Kt; 11 R × Ktch, B-K2 =.

(c) 8 R-K1 transposes to cols. 72-74, 8 Q-K2 to cols. 86-87.

(d) 15 Kt-B5, P × P; 16 B × Kt, KtP × B. Alekhine-Keres, Warsaw, 1935. Black's opening play is very original.

(e) An improvement on 11 Kt-B3, Kt-B1; 12 P-KR3, B-Q2!; 13 Kt-K1, P-KKt4!; 14 B × P, R-KKt1; 15 P-B4 (15 B × Kt, B × B leaves Black with a strong attack), P × P; 16 B × P, B × P; 17 P-B5, Kt-Kt3 =. Bogoljubow-Alekhine, 20th match game, 1929. After the column move Black cannot retreat to Q2.

(f) 14...Kt-K1; 15 B-Q2, P-R3; 16 K-Kt2, B-R2; 17 R-R1, P-KKt4; 18 P-KR4. White won quickly. Alekhine-P. Johner, Zurich, 1934. The variation is similar to QP Game, Tchigorin's Defense.

Notes continued on p. 380

1 P-K4, P-K4; 2 Kt-KB3, Kt-QB3; 3 B-Kt5, P-QR3; 4 B-R4

STEINITZ DEFENSE DEFERRED			UNUSUAL DEFENSES WITH 3...P-QR3	
131	132	133	134	135
4 (P-Q3).....			P-QKt4	P-B4 (m)
5 (P-B3).....	P-Q4		B-Kt3	P-Q4!
Kt-B3	P-QKt4 (e)		Kt-R4	BP × P
6 O-O (a)	B-Kt3		Kt × P (k)	Kt × P
P-QKt4 (b)	Kt × P		Kt × B	Kt-B3 (n)
7 B-B2	Kt × Kt		RP × Kt	O-O
B-K2	P × Kt		Q-Kt4	B-K2
8 P-Q4	B-Q5.....P-QB3 (h)		Kt-KB3	Kt-QB3
O-O	R-Kt1	B-Kt2 (i)	Q × P	O-O
9 P-QR4 (c)	B-B6ch (f)	P × P	R-Kt1	B-Kt3ch
B-Kt5	B-Q2	Kt-B3	Q-R6	P-Q4
10 P-Q5	B × Bch	P-B3	Kt-B3	B-Kt5
Kt-QR4	Q × B	B-K2	B-Kt2	K-R1
11 QKt-Q2	Q × P	O-O	P-Q4	P-B4
P-B4	Kt-B3	O-O	P-Q3	P × P e.p.
12 P × P e.p.	Kt-B3	Kt-B3	Q-Q3	R × P
Kt × BP	B-K2	P-B4	P-Kt3	Kt-QR4
13 Q-K2	O-O (g)	P-Q5	B-B4	B × P!+ (o)
Q-Kt3 = (d)	O-O =	R-K1 = (j)	B-Kt2 = (l)	

(a) 6 Q-K2, transposing to cols. 76-87, is best.

(b) An easy method of equalizing is 6...Kt × P; 7 P-Q4, B-Q2; 8 R-K1, Kt-B3!. 6...B-Kt5 is inferior because of 7 P-Q4, P-QKt4; 8 B-Kt3, B-K2; 9 B-K3, O-O; 10 QKt-Q2, R-K1 (or 10...P-Q4; 11 KP × P, P × P; 12 P × P, KKt × P; 13 Q-Kt1, P-B4; 14 P-QR3, K-R1; 15 Q-R2 ±. Alekhine-Grob, Zurich, 1934); 11 P-KR3, B-R4; 12 P-Q5, Kt-R4; 13 B-B2 ±. Alekhine-Pomar, Gijon, 1944.

(c) Better 9 P-Q5, transposing to cols. 53-54.

(d) Réti-Rubinstein, Hastings, 1922-23.

(e) Other replies transpose to previously considered variations.

(f) If instead 9 Q × P, Kt-B3; 10 O-O (10 Q-R7, B-Q2; 11 Q × RP, R-Kt3; 12 Q-R5, P-B3 ±), B-K2; 11 P-QR4, P-Kt5 with at least equality.

(g) Simpler is 13 P-K5. The column is Stoltz-Alekhine, Bled, 1931.

(h) After 8 P-QR4, R-Kt1! (but no, 8...B-Kt2; 9 O-O, Kt-B3; 10 Q-Kt2 Q-Q2; 11 P-QB3, P × BP?; 12 Kt × P, P-Kt5; 13 Kt-Q5, Kt × Kt; 14 P × Kt dis ch, B-K2; 15 B-Kt5±. Treysman-Dake, New York, 1936); 9 P × P, P × P; 10 P-QB3 (10 Q × P, P-QB4 ±), P × P; 11 Kt × P, Kt-B3 White's attack is not as strong as in the column. Of course, if 8 Q × P?, P-QB4-5++++ (Noah's Ark Trap).

(i) On 8...P × P White can play either 9 Q-Q5, B-K3; 10 Q-B6ch, B-Q2; 11 Q-Q5, drawing by repetition of moves, or simply 9 Kt × P and rely on his superior development to guarantee sufficient compensation for the Pawn. Cf. col. 119.

(j) Yates-Bogoljubow, San Remo, 1930.

(k) The sacrifice 6 B × Pch, K × B; 7 Kt × Pch, K-K2, recommended by some textbooks, has not yet been shown to be sound.

Notes continued from p. 380

## Notes continued from p. 378

(g) More aggressive than 7...Kt-Kt3; 8 R-K1, B-K2; 9 QKt-Q2, O-O; 10 Kt-B1, Kt-R5 (not 10...Q-K1; 11 B-B2, K-R1; 12 Kt-Kt3, B-Kt5; 13 P-Q5, Kt-Ktr; 14 P-KR3+. Lasker—Steinitz, Hastings, 1895); 11 P-Q5, Kt-Ktr; 12 B × B, Kt × B; 13 Kt-Kt3, K-R1; 14 Q-K2, Kt × Ktch =. H. Johner, Michel and Naegeli—Alekhine and Bernstein, Le Pont, 1930.

(h) Better is 8 B-Kt3, with variations similar to col. 125. The column is Sergeant—Rubinstein, Scarborough, 1930.

(i) The Siesta Variation.

(j) Best. Inferior alternatives are: (1) 6 P-Q4, BP × P; 7 Kt × P (or 7 Kt-Kt5, P-Q4; 8 P × P, B-QB4!; 9 P-QB4, P-K6; 10 P-B4, P-Q5; 11 B-B2, P-KKt3; 12 Kt × P, R × Kt; 13 B × Pch, K-B1!; 14 B × R, Q-R5ch; 15 P-Kt3, Q × B+. Analysis by Spielmann), P × Kt; 8 Q-R5ch, K-K2; 9 B-Kt5ch, Kt-B3; 10 B × Kt, P × B; 11 P × P, Q-Q4!; 12 B-R4!, K-Q2; 13 Q-Kt5!, P-R3; 14 Q-B5ch, K-K1; 15 Q-Kt6ch, Q-B2; 16 Q × Qch, K × Q; 17 P × Kt =. Analysis by Capablanca. (2) 6 P-Q3, Kt-B3; 7 QKt-Q2, P × P; 8 P × P, B-Kt5; 9 Kt-B1, Kt × P; 10 B × Ktch, P × B; 11 Q-R4, Kt-B3; 12 Q × Pch, B-Q2 ♣. Thomas—Znosko-Borovsky, Paris, 1929.

(k) Much stronger than: (1) 8 P-Q5

## Notes continued from p. 379

(l) Analysis by Schlechter.

(m) The Schliemann Defense Deferred. Other unusual defenses are: (1) 4...B-Kt5 (Alapin's Defense); 5 O-O, KKt-K2; 6 P-B3, B-R4; 7 P-Q4, P × P; 8 P × P, P-Q4; 9 P × P, Q × P; 10 Kt-B3!, B × Kt; 11 P × B, O-O; 12 B-R3 ±. (2) 4...KKt-K2 (Cozio Defense Deferred); 5 Kt-B3, P-KKt3; 6 P-Q4,

P × Kt; 9 P × Kt, P-QKt4; 10 Q × BP, B × Kt!; 11 B-Kt3, B-Kt3; 12 O-O, Kt-B3; 13 B-Kt5, B-K2; 14 KR-K1, K-B1; 15 R-K3, P-R3 =. Capablanca—H. Steiner, New York, 1931. (2) 8 B-KKt5, B-K2; 9 Kt-R4, B-K3; 10 B × B, Kt × B!; 11 Q-R5ch, P-Kt3; 12 Q-R6, Kt-Kt1!; 13 Q-B4, Kt-B3; 14 Kt-Q2, O-O; 15 O-O, P-Q4 ♣. A. Steiner—Capablanca, Budapest, 1928.

(n) If 8...P-Q4; 9 QR-K1, K-Q2; 10 P-B3, P × P; 11 R × P! Szabo—Znosko-Borovsky, Tata-Tovaras, 1935. (m) If 8...P-Q4; 9 P-B3, P-R3 (or 9...P-K6; 10 P-KB4+. Horowitz—Fine, Syracuse, 1934); 10 P × P, P × Kt; 11 P × B, Q-Q3; 12 B × P, B-K2; 13 Q-Kt4 ±. Alexander—Aitken, British championship, 1938. And if 8...P-R3; 9 P-Q5, P-Kt4; 10 B-B2+.

(n) Weaker is 11 P × P, Kt × KP; 12 Kt × Kt, B × Kt; 13 Kt-Q2, B-Kt3; 14 Kt-B3, P-Kt4; 15 B-Kt3, B-K2 when Black's position is tenable. A. Steiner—Kashdan, Prague, 1931.

(o) White's threat was 12 P × QP, Q × P; 13 Kt-B3+ +. 11...QP × P; 12 P-Q5 costs Black a piece, while if 11...B-QKt5; 12 P-QR3, B-R4; 13 P-QKt4, B-QKt3; 14 P-B5+.

(p) 14...B-Q3; 15 P-KKt3.

B-Kt2; 7 P × P, Kt × P; 8 Kt × Kt, B × Kt; 9 B-R6, P-QB4; 10 B-Kt3, P-QKt4; 11 B-Q5, R-R2; 12 Q-B3, Kt × B; 13 Kt × Kt, P-Q3; 14 O-O-O ±. Marco—Alekhine, The Hague, 1921.

(n) Or 6...Kt × Kt; 7 P × Kt, Q-K2; 8 Q-Q4, Q-Kt5ch; 9 Q × Q, B × Qch; 10 P-B3+.

(o) Teichmann—Spielmann, match, 1914.

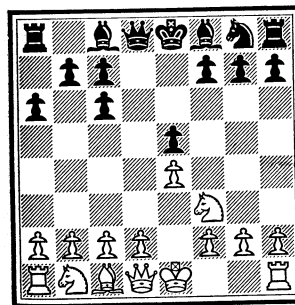
## MORPHY DEFENSE: EXCHANGE VARIATION

1 P-K4, P-K4; 2 Kt-KB3, Kt-QB3; 3 B-Kt5, P-QR3; 4 B × Kt, QP × B (a)\*

	136	137	138	139	140
5	Kt-B3 P-B3!			P-Q4 (i) P × P (j)	
6	P-Q4 P × P	P-Q3 B-Q3	P-Q3 P-B3 (h)	Q × P Q × Q	
7	Q × P (b) Q × Q	Kt-K2 Kt-K2	B-K3 B × B	Kt × Q B-Q2!.....	B-Q3
8	Kt × Q B-Q2!	Kt-Q2 (e) B-K3	P × B Kt-R3	B-K3 O-O-O	Kt-QB3 (m) Kt-K2
9	B-B4 (c) O-O-O	O-O Kt-Kt3	O-O O-O	Kt-Q2 Kt-K2	B-K3 (n) P-B3
10	O-O-O Kt-K2	Kt-QKt3 O-O	Kt-K2 Kt-B2	O-O-O (k) R-K1	Kt-Kt3 P-QKt3
11	Kt-Kt3 Kt-Kt3	B-K3 P-Kt3	Kt-Kt3 P-QB4	KR-K1 Kt-Kt3	O-O-O P-QB4
12	B-K3 P-Kt3	K-R1 Q-K2	Q-K2 Q-K2	Kt-K2 B-Q3	Kt-Q2 B-K3
13	P-B3 Kt-K4 ♣ (d)	P-KB4 P-KB4 / ♣ (f)	R-B2 B-K3 =	P-KR3 P-KB4 ♣ (l)	P-B4 O-O-O = (o)

## \* DIAGRAM 163

cols. 136-140



[After 4...QP × B]

(a) If 4...KtP × B; 5 P-Q4, P × P; 6 Q × P, P-Q3; 7 O-O, Kt-K2 (or 7...Kt-B3; 8 P-K5 ±); 8 Kt-B3, Kt-Kt3; 9 R-K1 ±.

(b) Or 7 Kt × P, P-QB4; 8 Kt(Q4)-K2, Q × Qch; 9 Kt × Q, B-K3; 10 O-O,

Kt-K2; 11 B-B4, O-O-O; 12 Kt(Q1)-B3, Kt-B3 ♣. Seitz—Kashdan, Syracuse, 1934.

(c) Slightly better but also inadequate is 9 B-K3, O-O-O; 10 O-O-O, Kt-K2; 11 P-B4 (Proka—Balogh, Rumanian championship, 1927), Kt-Kt3; 12 Kt-Kt3, B-Q3; 13 P-Kt3, KR-K1 ♣.

(d) 14 K-Kt1, P-KR4; 15 P-KR4, Kt-B5. Bernstein—Alekhine, Berne, 1932.

(e) Or 8 B-K3, P-QB4; 9 Kt-Kt3, B-K3; 10 P-B3, Q-Q2; 11 O-O, O-O; 12 Q-B2, Kt-B3 ♣. Romanovsky—Botvinnik, Moscow, 1935.

(f) 14 BP × P, Kt × P; 15 P × P, Kt-Kt5!. Tartakower—Alekhine, Semmering, 1926.

(g) 5...Kt-B3 is best met by 6 P-Q3, when Black's Kt is badly placed. 6 Kt × P instead transposes to the Four Knights' Game, p. 69, col. 43.

Notes continued on p. 383

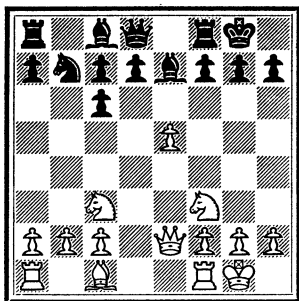
## BERLIN DEFENSE

1 P-K4, P-K4; 2 Kt-KB3, Kt-QB3; 3 B-K15, Kt-B3; 4 O-O, Kt × P; 5 P-Q4, B-K2; 6 Q-K2 (a)

141	142	143	144	145
6 Kt-Q3.....				P-B4 (l)
7 B × Kt KtP × B (b)				P × P (m) O-O
8 P × P Kt-Kt2				Kt-B3 Kt × Kt
9 Kt-B3..... O-O*			P-QKt3 (j) O-O	P × Kt P-Q4
10 Kt-Q4 /..... B-B4 (c)	R-K1 Kt-B4 /.....	R-K1 (g)	B-Kt2 P-Q4	R-Q1 Kt-R4
11 R-Q1 B × Kt	Kt-Q4 Kt-K3	Q-B4 Kt-B4	P × P e.p. P × P	P-B4 P-B3
12 R × B P-Q4	B-K3 Kt × Kt	Kt-KKt5 B × Kt? (h)	QKt-Q2 B-B3	P × P P × B
13 P × P e.p. P × P	B × Kt P-QB4 / (e)	B × B Q × B	B × B Q × B	P-Q6 Kt-B5
14 P-QKt4 / ± (d)	B-K3 ± (f)	Q × Kt+ (i)	KR-K1 Kt-B4 = (k)	P-QR4+ (n)

## \* DIAGRAM 164

cols. 141-143



[After 9...O-O]

(a) The most energetic continuation. Some alternatives are: (1) 6 P-Q5, Kt-Q3 /; 7 Kt-B3 (if 7 B × Kt, QP × B; 8 P × P, P-B3 /; 9 P × P, B × P; 10 B-K3, O-O; 11 Kt-Q2, Kt-B2 ≠. Tchigorin-Zukertort, London, 1883), Kt × B; 8 Kt × Kt, P-QR3; 9 Kt-B3, Kt-Kt1; 10 Kt ×

P, P-Q3; 11 Kt-B3, O-O =. (2) 6 P × P, O-O; 7 Q-Q5, Kt-B4; 8 B-K3, P-QR3; 9 B-QB4, Kt-Kt5; 10 Q-Q1, P-QKt4; 11 B-K2, B-Kt2 =. (3) 6 R-K1, Kt-Q3; 7 P × P, Kt × B; 8 P-QR4, P-Q3; 9 P × Kt, Kt × P; 10 Kt × Kt, P × Kt; 11 Q × Qch, K × Q /; 12 R × P, B-Q3; 13 R-Q5, R-K1 =. Albin-Tarrasch, Berlin, 1897.

(b) If 7...QP × B; 8 P × P, Kt-B4; 9 R-Q1, B-Q2; 10 P-KKt4 (on 10 P-K6, P × P; 11 Kt-K5 the same variation ensues but with more counterplay for Black), Kt-R3 (not 10...Kt-R5?; 11 Kt × Kt, B × Kt; 12 P-Kt5 /+); 11 P-Kt5, Kt-B4; 12 P-K6, P × P; 13 Kt-K5, B-Q3; 14 Q-R5sch, P-Kt3; 15 Kt × KtP, Kt-Kt2; 16 Q-R6, Kt-B4; 17 Q-R3, R-KKt1; 18 Q × P, R-Kt2; 19 Q-R5+. Analysis by Showalter.

(c) 10...Kt-B4 is met by 11 R-Q1, Q-K1; 12 Kt-B5, Kt-K3; 13 Kt-K4 ±.

Notes continued on p. 383

## Notes continued from p. 381

(h) Not 6...B-KKt5?; 7 B-K3, B × B; 8 P × B, Q-K2; 9 O-O, O-O-O?; 10 Q-K1, Kt-R3; 11 R-Kt1, P-B3; 12 P-Kt4 /, Kt-B2; 13 P-QR4 ±. Capablanca-Janowski, St. Petersburg, 1914.

(i) 5 O-O is weak because Black can safely reply 5...B-KKt5 /. If then 6 P-KR3, P-KR4 / (but not 6...B × Kt; 7 Q × B, Q-B3; 8 Q × Q, Kt × Q; 9 P-Q3, B-B4; 10 Kt-Q2, O-O; 11 Kt-Kt3, B-Kt3; 12 B-Q2, Kt-Q2; 13 B-R5 with the better ending for White. Bernstein-Rivier, Berne, 1932) with a strong attack, e.g., 7 P-Q3, Q-B3; 8 P × B, P × P; 9 Kt-Kt5, Q-R3; 10 Kt-KR3, Q-R5; 11 K-R2, P × Kt; 12 P-KKt3, Q-R2 ≠.

(j) If 5...B-KKt5?; 6 P × P, Q × Qch; 7 K × Q, O-O-Och; 8 K-K1 /, B-QB4; 9 P-KR3, B-R4; 10 B-B4, P-B4; 11 QKt-Q2 (if 11 P × P, B × Kt and 12...Kt-K2), Kt-K2; 12 B-Kt5, B × Kt; 13 P × B+. Em. Lasker-Marshall,

New York, 1924.

(k) Weaker is 10 P-KB4, P-B3; 11 Kt-K2, Kt-Kt3; 12 P-KR3, B-Q3; 13 K-B2, KR-K1; 14 QR-Q1, P-QB4 ≠. Henneberger-Euwe, The Hague, 1928.

(l) Petterson-Alekhine, Oerebro, 1935.

(m) Or 8 B-K3, P-QB4; 9 Kt-K2, P-KB3; 10 B-B4, B-K3; 11 B × B, P × B; 12 Kt-B4, B-B2; 13 Kt-B3, Kt-K2 =. Mattison-Rubinstein, Carlsbad, 1929.

(n) On 9 O-O, B-Q2 is the simplest method of equalizing, for if 9...O-O; 10 P-B4, R-K1; 11 Kt-Kt3, P-B3; 12 P-B5 //, P-QKt3; 13 B-B4, B-Kt2; 14 B × B / ±. Lasker-Capablanca, St. Petersburg, 1914. After 9...B-Q2; 10 B-K3, P-B3; 11 QR-Q1, P-QB4; 12 KKt-K2, Kt-Kt3; 13 Kt-Q5, O-O Black stands well. Schlechter-Rubinstein, match, 1918.

(o) Bogoljubow-Kostich, Gothenburg, 1920.

## Notes continued from p. 382

(d) Schlechter-Réti, Vienna, 1914.

(e) The Rio de Janeiro Variation, originated by Dr. Caldas Vianna. If 13...P-Q4?; 14 Kt-R4, B-QKt5; 15 P-QB3, B-R4; 16 Q-R5, B-Kt3; 17 R-K3+. Pillsbury-Tarrasch, 2nd match game, Vienna, 1898.

(f) 14...P-Q4 /; 15 P × P e.p., B × P; 16 QR-Q1, Q-R5; 17 P-KR3, Q-QKt5 (better 17...B-Kt2); 18 B-B1. Tarrasch-Lasker, 14th match game, 1908. In the 10th game the continuation was 16 Kt-K4, B-Kt2; instead Hoffer pointed out a probable draw by 16...B × Pch; 17 K × B, Q-R5sch; 18 K-Kt1, Q × Kt.

(g) Or 10...P-Q4; 11 P × P e.p., B × P; 12 Kt-K4 ±.

(h) Better is 12...R-B1; 13 QKt-K4, B-R3; 14 Q-B3, Kt × Kt; 15 Kt × Kt, P-KB4; 16 Kt-B5 with only a minimal

advantage.

(i) 14...R-K3; 15 Q-Q4, B-Kt2; 16 Q-QKt4, B-B1; 17 Kt-K4. Schlechter-Janowski, Paris, 1900.

(j) Another try is 9 Kt-Q4, O-O; 10 R-Q1, Q-K1; 11 Kt-B5, P-Q4; 12 P × P e.p., B × P; 13 Q-B3, B × Kt =. Steiner-Elliskases, Maehrisch-Ostrau, 1933.

(k) Pillsbury-Lasker, St. Petersburg, 1895-96.

(l) Also weak is 6...P-Q4; 7 Kt × P, B-Q2; 8 B × Kt, P × B; 9 R-K1, Kt-B3; 10 B-Kt5, Kt-Kt1; 11 Kt × B, Q × Kt; 12 B × B, Kt × B; 13 Kt-B3, P-B3; 14 Kt-R4+. Analysis by Max Lange.

(m) If 7 P-Q5, Kt-Kt1; 8 Kt × P, O-O; 9 P-Q6, Kt × QP; 10 B-B4ch, K-R1 ≠.

(n) Lårobok.

## BERLIN DEFENSE

1 P-K4, P-K4; 2 Kt-KB3, Kt-QB3; 3 B-Kt5, Kt-B3\*

146	147	148	149	150
4 (O-O)..... (Kt x P) (a)				P-Q3 P-Q3
5 (P-Q4)..... Kt-Q3.....			R-K1 (m) Kt-Q3	P-B3 (q) P-KKt3 (r)
6 P x P!..... Kt x B	B x Kt (e) QP x B (f)	B x Kt (j) QP x B	Kt x P B-K2 (n)	QKt-Q2 B-Kt2
7 P-QR4 P-Q3 (b)	P x P Kt-B4	Q-K2 (k) B-KB4	B-Q3 O-O	Kt-B1 O-O
8 P-K6! P x P (c)	Q x Qch (g) K x Q	R-Q1 B-K2	Kt-QB3 Kt x Kt (o)	Kt-K3 (s) Kt-K2
9 P x Kt Kt-K2	R-Q1ch K-K1	P x P Q-B1	R x Kt P-QB3	B-R4 P-Q4
10 Kt-B3 Kt-Kt3	Kt-B3 P-KR3	Kt-Q4 O-O	P-QKt3 Kt-K1	Q-B2 Kt-Kt5
11 Kt-Kt5! B-K2	P-QKt3 B-Kt5	P-KB3 Kt-B4	B-Kt2 P-Q4	B-Kt3 P-QB3
12 Q-R5 B x Kt = (d)	B-Kt2 B x Kt = (h)	Kt-B3 B-Kt3 = (l)	Q-R5 Kt-B3 = (p)	P-KR3 Kt x Kt = (t)

\* See p. 333, Diagram 139

(a) 4... P-Q3; 5 P-Q4 transposes to the Steinitz Defense, cols. 156-171.

(b) If 7... Kt-Q3; 8 P x Kt, B x P; 9 Kt-Kt5, B-K2; 10 Q-R5!, P-KKt3; 11 Q-R6, B-B1; 12 R-K1ch, Kt-K2; 13 Kt-K4 ±. Alekhine-Mendel, 1936.

(c) Better than 8... B x P; 9 P x Kt, Kt-K4; 10 Kt-Q4, B-Q2; 11 Kt-QB3, B-K2; 12 P-B4, Kt-Kt5; 13 Kt-Q5, Q-O; 14 P-B5, Kt-B3; 15 Kt x Bch, Q x Kt; 16 R-K1, Q-Q1; 17 B-Kt5 ±. Didier-Pillsbury, Paris, 1900.

(d) 13 B x B, Q-Q2; 14 P-Kt6!. Halprin-Pillsbury, Munich, 1900. White has a strong attack, but not enough to win.

(e) Other moves are easy to meet, e.g., 6 B-Kt5, B-K2; 7 B x Kt, B x B; 8 P x P, QP x B; 9 Kt x B, Q x Kt; 10 P x Kt, P x P; 11 R-K1ch, B-K3; 12 Q x P, R-Q1 =. Pillsbury-Lasker, St. Petersburg, 1895-96.

(f) Much weaker is 6... KtP x B; 7 P x

P, Kt-Kt2; 8 B-Kt5, B-K2; 9 B x B Q x B; 10 Kt-B3, O-O; 11 R-K1, Kt-B4; 12 Q-Q2+. A. Steiner-Treybal, Ujpest, 1934.

(g) If 8 Q-K2, Kt-Q5; 9 Kt x Kt, Q x Kt; 10 Kt-B3, B-KKt5! =.

(h) Maroczy-Pillsbury, Munich, 1900.

(i) It is of interest that this move can still be played successfully. If 5... P x P; 6 R-K1, P-B4 (6... P-Q4; 7 Kt x P, B-QB4; 8 P-KB3+); 7 Kt x P, Kt x Kt; 8 Q x Kt, P-B3; 9 P-KB3+, or 5... P-Q4; 6 Kt x P, B-Q2; 7 Kt x P!, K x Kt; 8 Q-R5ch, K-K3; 9 P-QB4, or 9 Kt-B3+.

(j) The best move is 6 B-R4, transposing to the regular lines (cols. 1-34). If 6 B-Q3, P-Q4; 7 P-B4, Kt x QP!; 8 Kt x Kt, P x Kt; 9 P x P, Kt-B3; 10 R-K1ch, B-K2; 11 B-QB4, O-O ♣. Marco-Gunsberg, Hastings, 1895.

(k) Or 7 R-K1, Kt-B3; 8 Kt-B3, P-K5! =.

Notes continued on p. 386

## BERLIN DEFENSE

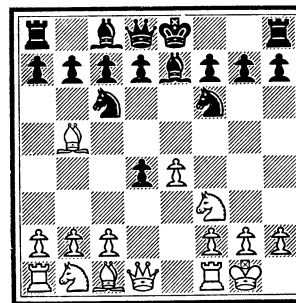
1 P-K4, P-K4; 2 Kt-KB3, Kt-QB3; 3 B-Kt5, Kt-B3\*

151	152	153	154	155
4 (P-Q3)..... B-B4 (a)	P-Q4 (b) P x P			Kt x KP (l)
5 B-K3! B x B	O-O..... B-K2* *		P-K5 (h) Kt-K5	P-Q5 (m) Kt-Q3
6 P x B Kt-K2	R-K1..... P-QR3	Kt x P (d) P-QR3! (e)	O-O B-K2	Kt-B3 Kt x B
7 O-O P-B3	B-R4 P-QKt4	Kt x Kt KtP x Kt	Kt x P O-O	Kt x Kt P-QR3
8 B-B4 P-Q3	B-Kt3 P-Q3	B-Q3 P-Q3 (f)	Kt-B5 P-Q4!	Kt-B3 Kt-Kt1
9 B-Kt3 Kt-Kt3	B-Q5 B-Q2	Kt-B3 O-O	Kt x Bch (i) Kt x Kt	Kt x P P-Q3
10 Kt-B3 Q-K2	Kt x P Kt x B	P-B4 R-K1	P-KB3 (j) P-QB3! (k)	Kt-B3 B-K2
11 Kt-K2 P-Q4	Kt x Kt B x Kt	P-KR3 (g) Kt-Q2	P x Kt Q-Kt3ch	O-O O-O
12 P x P Kt x P =	P x Kt B-Kt2 = (c)	B-K3 B-B3 =	K-R1 Q x B =	R-K1 B-B4 ♣

\* See p. 333, Diagram 139

\*\* DIAGRAM 165

cols. 152-153



[After 5... B-K2]

(a) Inferior defenses are: (1) 4... Kt-K2 (Mortimer's Defense); 5 B-QB4 (not 5 Kt x P, P-B3; 6 B-QB4, Q-R4ch+). Mortimer's Trap, P-B3; 6 B-Kt3, Kt-Kt3; 7 Kt-B3, B-Kt5; 8 O-

O, O-O; 9 P-Q4 ±. Duras-Wolf, Nuremberg, 1906. (2) 4... P-Q4; 5 Kt x P, Q-Q3; 6 B-KB4, P-Kt4; 7 B x Ktch, P x B; 8 B-Kt3, Q-Kt5ch; 9 Kt-Q2, Q x P; 10 Kt x QBP, B-KKt2; 11 O-O, Q-B6; 12 P x P+. Nyholm-Mueller, match, 1917.

(b) Other moves do not have any independent importance because they transpose into previous variations. On 4 Q-K2 the simplest way to equalize is 4... P-QR3, but 4... P-Q3; 5 P-Q4 (better 5 P-B3), P x P; 6 P-K5, P-Q6!; 7 BP x P, P x P; 8 Kt x P, B-Kt5ch; 9 B-Q2, O-O; 10 B x Kt, B x Bch = is also playable.

(c) Schlechter-Pillsbury, Nuremberg, 1896.

(d) If 6 Q-K2, O-O; 7 P-K5, Kt-K1; 8 R-Q1, P-Q4; 9 B x Kt, P x B; 10 Kt x P, Q-Q2; 11 Kt-QB3, P-QB4 =. Barry-Lasker, 1903. 6 P-K5, Kt-K5 transposes to col. 154.

Notes continued on p. 386



## Notes continued from p. 384

(l) Spielmann—Bogoljubow, Stockholm, 1919.

(m) Or 5 Q—K2, Kt—Q3/; 6 B × Kt, QP × B; 7 Kt × P, B—K2; 8 R—K1, B—K3; 9 P—Q4, Kt—B4; 10 P—QB3, O—O =.

(n) Equally good is 6... Kt × Kt; 7 R × Ktch, B—K2; 8 B—Q3, O—O; 9 Kt—B3, B—B3; 10 R—K3, P—KKt3; 11 P—QKt3, P—Kt3; 12 B—Kt2, B—QKt2; 13 Q—Kt4, B—Kt2; 14 QR—K1, P—KB4 =. Smyslov—Koblentz, Moscow, 1945.

(o) Or 8... Kt—K1; 9 Kt—Q5, B—B3; 10 Kt—KKt4, P—Q3; 11 R × Kt?, R × R; 12 KKt × Bch, P × Kt; 13 P—QKt3, Kt—K4+. Janowski—Lasker, Nuremberg, 1896.

(p) Janowski—Burn, Cologne, 1898.

(q) Some other possibilities are: (x) 5 Kt—

B3, B—Q2; 6 O—O, P—KKt3; 7 B—Kt5, P—KR3; 8 B × KKt, Q × B; 9 P—Q4, B—Kt2; 10 P × P, Kt × P! ♣. W. Cohn—Lasker, London, 1899. (2) 5 P—B4 (Duras's Variation; cf. cols. 98 and 113-115), P—KKt3/; 6 P—Q4, P × P; 7 Kt × P, B—Q2; 8 Kt—QB3, B—Kt2; 9 B × Kt, P × B; 10 B—Kt5, P—KR3 ♣. Duras—Bernstein, St. Petersburg, 1909.

(r) Also playable is 5... B—K2; 6 QKt—Q2, O—O; 7 Kt—B1, P—QR3; 8 B—R4, P—QKt4; 9 B—Kt3, Kt—QR4 =.

(s) If 8 B—R4, Kt—K2 transposes back into the column. Inferior is 8... Kt—Q2; 9 Kt—K3, Kt—B4; 10 B—B2, Kt—K3; 11 P—KR4, Kt—K2; 12 P—R5, P—Q4; 13 RP × P, BP × P; 14 P × P ±. Steinitz—Tchigorin, match, 1892.

(t) Steinitz—Rosenthal, London, 1883.

## Notes continued from p. 385

(e) An improvement on 6... O—O; 7 Kt—QB3, P—QR3; 8 B—K2, P—Q3; 9 Kt × Kt, P × Kt; 10 P—B4, P—Q4; 11 P—K5 ±. Showalter—Pillsbury, match, 1898.

(f) On Alekhine's suggestion 8... P—Q4; 9 Kt—B3, O—O; 10 Q—B3 ± is best, but not 9 P—K5, Kt—Kt5; 10 B—KB4, P—B3/; 11 P—K6, B × P; 12 R—K1, Kt—K4 ♣.

(g) Better than 11 K—R1, Kt—Q2; 12 B—K3, B—B3; 13 Q—B3, R—Kt1; 14 QR—Kt1, B × Kt ♣. Bogoljubow—Em. Lasker, New York, 1924.

(h) On 5 Q—K2, B—Kt5ch is adequate for at least equality.

(i) If 9 B × Kt, P × B; 10 Kt × Bch, Q × Kt; 11 R—K1 (Marshall—Lasker, match, 1907), P—B3/; 12 P—KB3, Kt—Kt4; 13 B × Kt, P × B ♣.

(j) To avoid a disadvantage. If instead (1) 10 B—Q3, Kt—QB4; 11 B—K2, P—QB3; 12 P—QB3, Q—B2; 13 P—QKt4, Kt—K5/ ♣. Spielmann—Vidmar, New York, 1927. (2) 10 B—K3, Kt—KB4; 11 R—K1, Kt × B; 12 R × Kt, P—QB3 ♣.

(k) Not 10... Kt—QB4; 11 P—QKt4, Kt—K3; 12 P—KB4, P—KB4; 13 B—R4, P—B3; 14 B—Kt3 ±. Zukertort—Blackburne, Vienna, 1882.

(l) Inferior is 4... Kt × QP; 5 Kt × Kt, P × Kt; 6 P—K5, P—B3; 7 O—O!, P × B?; 8 B—Kt5, B—K2; 9 P × Kt, B × P; 10 R—K1ch ±. Morphy—Anderssen, match, 1858.

(m) 5 O—O, P—QR3 transposes to col. 148, 5... Kt—Q3 to cols. 146-147.

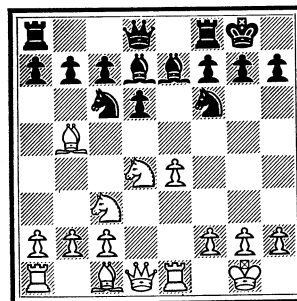
## STEINITZ DEFENSE

1 P—K4, P—K4; 2 Kt—KB3, Kt—QB3; 3 B—Kt5, P—Q3; 4 P—Q4, B—Q2; 5 Kt—B3, Kt—B3; 6 O—O, B—K2; 7 R—K1, P × P (a); 8 Kt × P, O—O\*

	156	157	158	159	160
9	B—B1		B × Kt		P—QKt3
	R—K1 (b)		P × B		Kt × Kt
10	P—KR3 (c)		B—B4	B—Kt5 (h)	Q × Kt
	P—KR3	B—KB1	R—K1	P—KR3	B × B
11	KKt—K2 (d)	B—KKt5	P—KR3	B—R4	Kt × B
	B—KB1	P—KR3	P—KR3	R—K1	P—Q4!
12	Kt—Kt3	B—R4	Q—B3	P—K5 (i)	P × P
	P—KKt3	P—KKt4	P—B4	Kt—R2	Kt × P
13	B—K3	B—Kt3	Kt—Kt3	B—Kt3	B—R3
	B—Kt2	Kt × Kt	R—Kt1	P—QR4	B—B3
14	Q—Q2	Q × Kt	P—K5	Q—Q3	Q—Q3
	K—R2	Kt—R4	Kt—R2	B—KB1	B × R
15	QR—Q1	B—R2	Kt—Q5	P × P	B × R
	P—R3	B—Kt2	B—KB1	P × P	P—QR3
16	P—B4 ± (e)	Q—Q1 ± (f)	P—B4 ± (g)	R × R	R × B
				Q × R = (j)	P × Kt = (k)

## \* DIAGRAM 166

cols. 156-160



[After 8... O—O]

(a) Not 7... O—O?; 8 B × Kt, B × B; 9 P × P, P × P; 10 Q × Q, QR × Q; 11 Kt × P, B × P; 12 Kt × B, Kt × Kt; 13 Kt—Q3, P—KB4; 14 P—KB3, B—B4ch; 15 Kt × B, Kt × Kt; 16 B—Kt5, R—Q4; 17 B—K7, R—B2; 18 P—QB4+.

(b) If 9... Kt × Kt; 10 Q × Kt, B—B3; 11 P—QKt4, Kt—Kt5 (an improvement on 11... K—R1; 12 B—Kt2, Kt—Kt1; 13 Kt—Q5 ±. Capablanca—Hodges, New York, 1915); 12 B—Kt2, B—B3; 13 Q—Q2, R—K1; 14 P—KR3, Kt—K4 (Rovner—Rausser, 9th match game, 1937); 15 P—Kt5, B—Q2; 16 QR—Kt1 ±. Or here 10... R—K1; 11 P—QKt3, B—B3; 12 B—Kt2, B—B1; 13 Kt—Q5 ±. Tarrasch—Vogel, 1910.

(c) Better than 10 P—B3, Kt × Kt; 11 Q × Kt, B—K3; 12 Q—B2, P—B3; 13 B—Q2, Q—Kt3 =. Euwe—Capablanca, London, 1922. The attack with P—QKt3 and B—Kt2 does not work too well; cf. note (d).

(d) If 11 P—QKt3, B—KB1; 12 B—Kt2, Kt—K4; 13 P—B4, Kt—Kt3; 14 Q—B3, P—B3; 15 B—Q3, Q—R4; 16 P—KKt4, QR—Q1; 17 Kt—B5, P—Q4 ♣. Smyslov—Ragosin, Leningrad—Moscow, 1939.

(e) Réti—Treybal, Pistyan, 1922.

Notes continued on p. 389

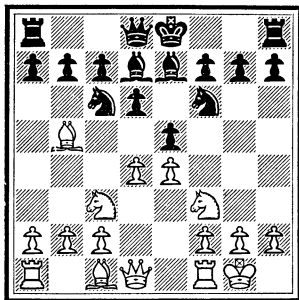
## STEINITZ DEFENSE

1 P-K4, P-K4; 2 Kt-KB3, Kt-QB3; 3 B-Kt5, P-Q3; 4 P-Q4, B-Q2; 5 Kt-B3, Kt-B3; 6 O-O, B-K2\*

	161	162	163	164	165
7 (R-K1) (a).....				B × Kt	
(P × P)				B × B	
8 (Kt × P)				Q-Q3 (h)	
(O-O)**.....			Kt × Kt ! (e)	Kt-Q2 !.....	P × P (k)
9 Kt × Kt.....	Kt-B5 (c)	Q × Kt	P-Q5 (i)	Kt × P	
B × Kt	R-K1	B × B	Kt-B4	B-Q2	
10 B × B	Kt × Bch	Kt × B	Q-B4	P-QKt3 (l)	
P × B	Kt × Kt	P-QR3 (f)	B-Q2	O-O	
11 Kt-K2	B-B1	Kt-B3	P-QKt4	B-Kt2	
Q-Q2	Kt-Kt3	O-O	Kt-R3	R-K1 (m)	
12 Kt-Kt3	P-QKt3	B-Kt5	B-K3	QR-K1	
KR-K1	B-B3	Kt-Q2	O-O	B-KB1	
13 P-Kt3	Q-Q4	B × B	P-QR4	P-B4	
QR-Q1	Q-K2	Q × B	K-R1	Q-K2	
14 B-Kt2	B-Kt2	Kt-Q5	Kt-QKt5	P-KR3	
Q-K3 (b)	P-QR3	Q-Q1	Q-Kt1	P-B4	
15 Q-Q3 ±	QR-Q1 ± (d)	QR-Q1 ± (g)	P-B3 ± (j)	Kt-B3 ± (n)	

## \* DIAGRAM 167

cols. 161-165



[After 6... B-K2]

\*\* See p. 387, Diagram 166

(a) This position can also be reached via the Berlin Defense: 3... Kt-B3; 4 O-O, B-K2; 5 Kt-B3, P-Q3; 6 P-Q4, B-Q2. White then has the choice of 7 R-K1 and 7 B × Kt, as on this page. If Black adopts the sequence of p. 390, White has the additional choice of the strong lines in cols. 169-170.

(b) If 14... Kt-Kt5; 15 B × P; Kt × BP! (Tarrasch-Lasker, match, 1908); 16 Q-Q4, Kt-Kt5; 17 R-KB1, Q-K3; 18 Kt-B5, P-B4; 19 Q-Q3, Kt-K4; 20 Q-Kt3, Kt-Kt3; 21 B-Kt2, B-B1; 22 P-KR4+. Analysis by Tarrasch.

(c) Almost all moves give White a more comfortable position but no really clear advantage. Some other alternatives are: (1) 9 P-KR3, R-K1; 10 B-KB4, Kt-K4; 11 B-KB1, P-QR3; 12 Q-Q2 ±. Schlechter-Réti, Vienna, 1912. (2) 9 B-Kt5, P-KR3; 10 B-KR4, Kt-R2; 11 B × B, Q × B; 12 Kt-Q5, Q-Q1; 13 P-QB3, Kt-B3; 14 B-B1, R-K1; 15 Q-B3, KKt × Kt =. Wolf-Maroczy, Teplitz-Schoenau, 1922. (3) 9 KKt-K2, P-QR3; 10 B-Q3, Kt-KKt5; 11 Kt-Kt3, B-B3; 12 P-KR3, B × Kt; 13 P × B, KKt-K4; 14 P-KB4, Q-R5 ±. Janowski-Lasker, 8th match game, 1909.

(d) Lissitsin-Shamaev, Trade Unions championship, U.S.S.R., 1938.

(e) This wholesale exchange is Black's simplest defense.

Notes continued on p. 389

Notes continued from p. 387

(f) 16... Kt-B5; 17 B × Kt, P × B; 18 Q-B3, B × Kt; 19 Q × B, R-K4. Kashdan-L. Steiner, match, 1930.

(g) Rauser-Rabinovitch, Moscow, 1937.

(h) Some other possibilities are: (1) 10 P-QKt3, P-Q4 !; 11 P-K5, B-QKt5; 12 B-Q2 (if instead 12 P × Kt, B × Kt; 13 B-Kt5, R-K1; 14 R × Rch, Q × R; 15 R-Kt1, Q-K5; 16 Kt-K2, B × P+. Balla-Vidmar, Warsaw, 1918), B × Kt; 13 B × B, Kt-K5 =. L. Steiner-S. R. Wolf, Vienna, 1923. (2) 10 Q-B3, R-Kt1;

11 P-QKt3, R-Kt5; 12 Kt-B5, B × Kt; 13 Q × B, Kt-Q2; 14 B-R3, R-Kt1; 15 P-B4, R-K1; 16 QR-Q1, Kt-B1 =. Boleslavsky-Smyslov, Leningrad-Moscow, 1941.

(i) No better is 12 Q-Q3, Kt-R2; 13 B × B, R × B; 14 R-K3, Q-Kt1; 15 P-QKt3, Q-Kt3 =. Capablanca-Lasker, 3rd match game, 1921.

(j) Bernstein-Lasker, St. Petersburg, 1914.

(k) Tylor-Keres, Hastings, 1937-38.

Notes continued from p. 388

(f) Best. If 10... O-O; 11 Q-B3, P-B3 (better is ... P-Q4 !); 12 Kt-Q4, Kt-Q2; 13 Kt-B5, B-B3; 14 Q-KKt3 and White won brilliantly. Capablanca-Tanew, New York, 1910 (?).

(g) Capablanca-Thomas, Hastings, 1919.

(h) 8 R-K1, P × P; 9 Kt × P, O-O; 10 Kt × B transposes to col. 161.

(i) Or 9 B-K3, P × P; 10 B × P, O-O; 11 Kt-Q5, B × Kt; 12 P × B, B-B3; 13 KR-K1, B × B; 14 Q × B, Q-B3 =. Maroczy-Capablanca, London, 1922.

(j) Nimzovitch-Breyer, Gothenburg, 1920.

(k) If 8... Kt × P?; 9 Kt × Kt, P-Q4; 10 Kt-Kt3, P-K5; 11 Q-K3 !, P × Kt;

12 R-K1+. Maroczy-L. Steiner, Hastings, 1924.

(l) Another strong continuation is 10 P-KR3, O-O; 11 B-B4, Kt-R4 ?; 12 B-R2, B-KB3; 13 P-KKt4, B × Kt;

14 Q × B, Kt-B3; 15 QR-Q1 ±. Brinckmann-Anderssen, Niendorf, 1934. Inferior is 10 B-Kt5, O-O; 11 QR-K1, P-KR3; 12 B-R4, Kt-R2; 13 B × B, Q × B; 14 Kt-Q5, Q-Q1; 15 P-QB4, R-K1 =. Lasker-Capablanca, 14th match game, 1921.

(m) Or 11... P-B3; 12 QR-Q1, Q-B2; 13 KR-K1, KR-K1; 14 QKt-K2 ±. Pillsbury-Steinitz, Vienna, 1898.

(n) Pillsbury-Bardeleben, Munich, 1900.

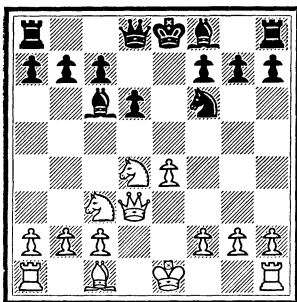
## STEINITZ DEFENSE

1 P-K4, P-K4; 2 Kt-KB3, Kt-QB3; 3 B-Kt5, P-Q3; 4 P-Q4, B-Q2; 5 Kt-B3, Kt-B3

166	167	168	169	170
6 (O-O).....			B × Kt!	
(B-K2).....	P × P		B × B	
7 P × P.....	B-Kt5	Kt × P	Q-Q3!	
QKt × P! (a)	P × P (d)	B-K2 (g)	P × P (j)	
8 Kt-Q4 (b)	Kt × P	KKt-K2 (h)	Kt × P*	
O-O	O-O	O-O	B-Q2.....	P-KKt3 (l)
9 P-B4	KB × Kt (e)	Kt-Kt3	B-Kt5	B-Kt5! (m)
Kt-B3	P × B	R-K1	B-K2	B-Kt2
10 Kt-B5	Q-Q3	P-KR3	O-O-O	O-O-O
R-K1	P-KR3 (f)	P-KR3	O-O	Q-Q2 (n)
11 B-Q3	B-R4	B-K3	P-B4	P-KR3
B-KB1	Kt-R4	B-KB1	Kt-K1	O-O
12 P-QKt3	B × B	Q-Q2	B × B	KR-K1
P-KKt3	Q × B	K-R2	Q × B	KR-K1 (o)
13 Kt-K3!	P-B4	QR-K1	Kt-Q5	Q-B3!
B-Kt2	QR-Kt1	P-KKt3	Q-Q1	Kt-R4
14 B-Kt2 ± (c)	P-QKt3 ±	P-B4 ± (i)	P-KKt4 ± (k)	P-KKt4 + (p)

## \* DIAGRAM 168

cols. 169-170



[After 8 Kt × P]

(a) Not 7...P × P; 8 R-K1, B-Q3 (8...O-O? transposes into p. 387, note (a)); 9 B-Kt5, P-KR3; 10 B-KR4, P-Kt4; 11 B-Kt3, Q-K2; 12 Kt-Q5, Q-Q1; 13 B × Kt, P × B; 14 Kt-K3, Q-K2; 15 Kt-B4+. Perlis-H. Wolf, Vienna, 1911.

(b) Also good but less aggressive is 8 B × Bch, KKt × B; 9 Kt-Q4, O-O; 10 R-K1, R-K1; 11 Kt-Q5, Kt-QKt3; 12 Kt × Bch, R × Kt; 13 P-QKt3, Q-Q2; 14 B-Kt2 ±. Ilyin-Zhenevsky-Smorodsky, 1927.

(c) If now 14...Kt × P?; 15 B × Kt, R × B; 16 Kt × R, B × B; 17 Kt-Q5!, P-B4; 18 R-Kt1+.

(d) After 7...O-O; 8 B × QKt, B × B; 9 P × P, Kt × P; 10 Kt × Kt, B × Kt; 11 B × B, Q × B; 12 P × P, Q × P; 13 Q × Q, P × Q; 14 Kt-Q4 White has the better endgame (Schlechter).

(e) Better than 9 R-K1 transposing into col. 162 note (c).

(f) If instead 10...Kt-Kt5; 11 B × B, Q × B; 12 P-B4, P-KB4; 13 QR-K1, P × P; 14 Kt × KP ±. Réti-Sterk, match, 1910.

(g) If now 7...Kt × Kt; 8 Q × Kt, B × B; 9 Kt × B, P-QR3; 10 P-K5!, P × Kt; 11 P × Kt, Q × P; 12 Q-K4ch+. Klaman-Ivashin, Gorky, 1945.

Notes continued on p. 393

## STEINITZ DEFENSE

1 P-K4, P-K4; 2 Kt-KB3, Kt-QB3; 3 B-Kt5, P-Q3\*

171	172	173	174	175
4 (P-Q4).....				B × Ktch (m)
(B-Q2) (a)				P × B
5 (Kt-B3).....			B × Kt	P-Q4
P × P		KKt-K2 (h)	B × B	P-B3
6 Kt × P		P × P! (i)	Kt-B3	B-K3
Kt × Kt.....	Kt-B3 (c)	P × P	P × P? (k)	Kt-K2 (n)
7 Q × Kt	B × Kt	B-Kt5!	Q × P!	P-KR4
B × B	P × B	P-KR3	Kt-B3	P-QR4
8 Kt × B	Q-B3	KB × Kt	B-Kt5	Q-Q2
Kt-K2!	P-B4 (d)	KtP × B	B-K2	P-R4
9 O-O	Kt-B5	B-K3	O-O-O	Kt-B3
Kt-B3	B × Kt (e)	Kt-Kt3	O-O	Kt-Kt3
10 Q-B3	Q × B	Q-Q3	KR-K1	O-O-O
P-QR3	Q-Q2	B-Q3	Kt-Q2	B-Kt5
11 Kt-R3	Q-B3	Kt-Q2	B × B	Kt-K2
Q-B3	R-QKt1 (f)	Kt-K2	Q × B	Q-Kt1
12 Q-QKt3	O-O ± (g)	Kt-B4 ± (j)	R-K3 ± (l)	Kt-K1
O-O-O = (b)				B-K2 =

## \* See p. 334, Diagram 140

(a) If 4...B-Kt5?; 5 P-Q5, P-QR3; 6 B-R4, P-QKt4; 7 P × Kt, P × B; 8 P-B4, Kt-K2; 9 Q × RP, B × Kt; 10 P × B, Kt-Kt3; 11 B-K3, B-K2; 12 Kt-B3+. Réti-Spielmann, Berlin, 1919.

(b) Lasker-Blackburne, Hastings, 1895.

(c) Weak is 6...P-KKt3; 7 Kt × Kt, P × Kt; 8 B-QB4, B-Kt2; 9 Q-K2, Kt-K2; 10 P-KR4, P-KR3; 11 P-R5, P-Kt4; 12 P-B4+. Pillsbury-Steinitz, London, 1899.

(d) If 8...B-K2?; 9 P-K5, P × P; 10 Kt × P, B × Kt; 11 Q × Bch, Kt-Q2; 12 O-O, O-O; 13 R-Q1+.

(e) Not 9...P-Kt3?; 10 B-Kt5!, P × Kt; 11 P-K5, P × P; 12 B × Kt, P-K5; 13 Kt × P++.

(f) After 11...Q-Kt5; 12 Q × Q, Kt × Q; 13 Kt-Q5 White has the better ending.

(g) Loevenfisch-Dubin, Leningrad, 1934.

(h) One of Steinitz's favorite lines.

(i) On 6 O-O, Kt × P; 7 Kt × Kt, P × Kt; 8 Q × P, B × B; 9 Kt × B, Kt-B3 equalizes. And if 6 B-QB4, P × P; 7 Kt × P, Kt × Kt; 8 Q × Kt, Kt-B3; 9 Q-K3, B-K3; 10 Kt-Q5, B-K2; 11 B-Q2, O-O; 12 O-O ±. Lasker-Steinitz, match, 1894.

(j) Lasker-Steinitz, St. Petersburg, 1895-96.

(k) Better is 6...P-B3. Compare col. 175.

(l) 12...Q-B3; 13 Kt-Q5!, B × Kt; 14 P × B, Q × Q; 15 Kt × Q, KR-K1; 16 QR-K1, R × R; 17 R × R, Kt-Kt3; 18 P-QB4! with a winning ending. Alekhine-Andersen, Folkestone, 1933.

(m) If 4 P-B3, P-KKt3 (or 4...Kt-B3 as usual); 5 O-O, B-Kt2; 6 P-Q4, B-Q2; 7 B-Kt5, P-B3; 8 B-KR4, Q-K2; 9 Kt-R3, Kt-R3; 10 Kt-B2, Kt-Q1; 11 B-B4, KKt-B2; 12 Kt-Q2, Kt-K3 =. Lasker-Speyer, 1909.

(n) Or 6...P-Kt3, as in col. 166.

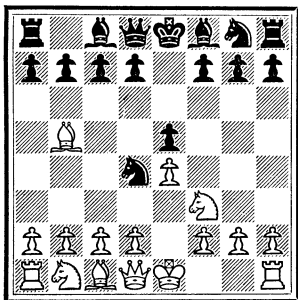
## BIRD'S DEFENSE

1 P-K4, P-K4; 2 Kt-KB3, Kt-QB3; 3 B-Kt5, Kt-Q5\*

176	177	178	179	180
4 Kt × Kt P × Kt				B-B4 (i) Kt × Ktch
5 O-O		P-KKt3 (c)	P-Q3	Q × Kt
6 Q-R5 ! P-B3	Q-K2 (a) P-QB3	P-Q3 B-Kt2	B-QB4 Kt-B3 (g)	Q-KKt3 B-B4
7 B-B4 P-Q4	B-B4 P-Q4	P-QB3 (d) Kt-K2	B-KKt5 (h) P-Q3	Kt-B3 Kt-K2
8 P × P P × P	P-Q3 B-K3	P × P B × P	O-O B-K2	P-Q3 P-KR3
9 B-Kt5ch B-Q2	B × B P × B	Kt-B3 P-QB3	P-QB3 P × P	Kt-Kt5 B-Kt3
10 B × Bch Q × B	P-KB4 Q-Q2	B-QB4 P-Q3 (e)	Kt × P Kt-Kt5	B-K3 P-R3
11 P-Q3 R-B1	Kt-Q2 P-KKt3	B-K3 B-Kt2	B × B Q × B	Kt-B3 B-R4
12 Q-K5 R × P	P-K5 Kt-Q4	Q-B3 O-O	P-KR3 Kt-K4	O-O B × Kt
13 Q × P(Q4) ±	Kt-K4 O-O-O = (b)	B-Kt3 ± (f)	B-Kt3 ±	P × B ±

## \* DIAGRAM 169

cols. 176-180



[After 3... Kt-Q5]

(a) Also inadequate is 6 R-K1, P-KKt3; 7 P-QB3, Kt-B3!; 8 P-QKt3, B-Kt2; 9 B-Kt2, O-O; 10 Kt-R3, P-Q4; 11 B × Kt, P × B =. Smyslov-Bronstein, Moscow, 1944.

(b) Kashdan-Prins, Stockholm, 1937.

(c) Other inferior continuations are: (1)

5... P-QB3; 6 B-K2 (or 6 B-B4, Kt-B3; 7 P-Q3, P-Q4; 8 P × P, Kt × P; 9 R-K1ch, B-K3; 10 Q-Kt4, Q-B3; 11 B-KKt5, Q-Kt3; 12 Q-R4 ±. Or here 6... P-Q4; 7 P × P, P × P; 8 Q-K2ch, Kt-K2; 9 B-Kt5ch, B-Q2; 10 R-K1, B × B; 11 Q × Bch+. Panov-Freyman, Leningrad, 1934), P-KKt3; 7 P-Q3, B-Kt2; 8 P-KB4, P-Q4; 9 Kt-Q2, Kt-K2; 10 Q-K1, Q-B2; 11 Kt-B3 ±. Yates-Louis, Chester, 1914. (2) 5... B-B4; 6 P-Q3, Kt-K2 (if 6... Q-R5; 7 Kt-Q2, Kt-K2; 8 P-QB3, P × P; 9 P × P, O-O; 10 Kt-B3, Q-R4; 11 P-Q4, B-Kt3; 12 B-K2, P-Q3; 13 R-K1, P-KB3; 14 Q-Kt3ch, K-R1; 15 Kt-Kt5!+. Purdy-Crowl, 19th match game, 1940); 7 B-Kt5, O-O; 8 Q-R5, P-QB3; 9 B-QB4, P-Q3; 10 Kt-Q2, B-K3; 11 P-B4, B × B; 12 Kt × B, P-B3; 13 B-R4 ±. (3) 5... P-KR4; 6 P-Q3, B-B4; 7 Kt-Q2, P-QB3; 8 B-R4, P-Q3; 9 B-Kt3, B-

Notes continued on p. 393

Notes continued from p. 390

(h) Inferior is 8 P-QKt3, Kt × Kt; 9 Q × Kt, B × B; 10 Kt × B, Kt-Q2; 11 B-R3, P-QR3 (not 11... B-B3?; 12 Q-B4+); 12 Kt-B3, B-B3; 13 Q-K3, O-O; 14 QR-Q1, B × Kt =. Em. Lasker-Capablanca, New York, 1924.

(i) Yates-Gibson, Worcester 1931.

(j) Or 7... Kt-Q2 (Tarrasch suggested 7... Q-K2); 8 B-K3 (8 P-Q5 transposes to col. 164), P × P; 9 B × P, Q-K2 (Nimzovitch recommended 9... Kt-B4; 10 Q-K2, Kt-K3; 11 O-O-O, B-K2; 12 Kt-Q5, O-O; 13 B-B3, R-K1 =); 10 O-O, O-O-O; 11 Kt-Q5, Q-K3; 12 B × RP+. Bogoljubow-Bogatyrchuk, 1924.

(k) Spielmann-Maroczy, Gothenburg, 1920.

(l) If 8... Kt-Q2?; 9 Kt × B, P × Kt;

10 Q-R6, Kt-Kt3; 11 Q-Kt7, K-Q2; 12 Q-R6+. Bogoljubow-Balla, Pistyán, 1922.

(m) Less complicated than 9 Kt × B, P × Kt; 10 Q-R6, Q-Q2; 11 Q-Kt7, R-B1; 12 Q × RP, B-Kt2 (Nimzovitch-Capablanca, St. Petersburg, 1914), when Black has a strong attack for the Pawn.

(n) Alekhine suggested ... Q-B1, leaving Q2 open to the Kt. If 10... O-O?; 11 Kt × B, P × Kt; 12 P-K5, P × P; 13 Q × Q, QR × Q; 14 R × R, R × R; 15 Kt-K4+. *Lärobok*.

(o) Or 12... K-R1; 13 P-B4 ± (Alekhine).

(p) 14... B × Kt; 15 R × B, Kt-Kt2; 16 B-B6. Alekhine-Brinckmann, Keskemet, 1927.

Notes continued from p. 392

KKt5; 10 P-KB3, B-K3; 11 Q-K1 ±. Mackenzie-Bird, 1885.

(d) Good alternatives are: (1) 7 Kt-Q2, Kt-K2; 8 P-KB4, P-QB3; 9 B-B4, P-Q4; 10 B-Kt3, O-O; 11 Kt-B3, P-QB4; 12 P-K5, P-QKt4; 13 P-B3, P-B5; 14 B-B2 ±. Capablanca-Blackburne, St. Petersburg, 1914. (2) 7 P-KB4, P-QB3; 8 B-B4, P-Q4; 9 P × P, P × P; 10 B-Kt5ch, K-B1 (Alekhine-Blackburne, St. Petersburg, 1914); 11 B-R4 ±. (3) 7 B-KB4, Kt-K2; 8 Kt-Q2, O-O; 9 Kt-B3, P-Q4; 10 Q-Q2 ±.

(e) If 10... P-Q4; 11 P × P, P × P; 12 Q-R4ch, B-Q2; 13 B-QKt5, B-Kt2; 14 B-Kt5+.

(f) Tarrasch-Blackburne, St. Petersburg, 1914.

(g) Or 6... Kt-K2; 7 O-O, Kt-Kt3;

8 P-QB3, B-B4; 9 P × P, B × P; 10 Kt-B3, P-Q3; 11 B-K3 ±. Fick-Spielmann, Scheveningen, 1923.

(h) The tournament book's recommendation, but White may also play 7 O-O, P-Q4; 8 P × P, Kt × P; 9 R-K1ch, B-K3; 10 Q-Kt4 ± transposing to note (c), variation (1), to col. 178.

(i) Recommended by Em. Lasker. An alternative is 4 B-R4, B-B4; 5 O-O, Kt × Ktch; 6 Q × Kt, Kt-K2; 7 P-Q3, O-O; 8 B-K3, B-Kt3 (Réti-Spielmann, Budapest, 1914); 9 P-B3 ±. Weaker is 4 B-K2, Kt × B; 5 Q × Kt, P-Q3; 6 P-B3, P-QB3; 7 P-Q4, Q-B2; 8 B-K3, Kt-B3; 9 QKt-Q2, B-K2; 10 P-KR3, P-QKt3 =. Olland-Alekhine, Scheveningen, 1923.

## CLASSICAL DEFENSE

1 P—K4, P—K4; 2 Kt—KB3, Kt—QB3; 3 B—Kt5, B—B4\*; 4 P—B3

181	182	183	184	185
4 P—B4 !?				Kt—B3
5 Kt × P	P × P	P—Q4 (g)		P—Q4
Kt × Kt (a)	P—K5 (c)	BP × P !	KP × P	B—Kt3 ! (m)
6 P—Q4	P—Q4	B × Kt (h)	BP × P (k)	O—O (n)
Q—R5	B—Kt3	QP × B	B—Kt5ch	O—O
7 P × B	Kt—K5	Kt × P	B—Q2 (l)	R—K1
Q × KPch (b)	Kt—B3	B—Q3	B × Bch	P—Q3
8 Q—K2	B—Kt5 (d)	Q—R5ch	QKt × B	B—Kt5
Kt—KB3	O—O (e)	P—Kt3	P × P	B—Q2
9 Q × Q	Q—Kt3ch	Q—K2 ! (i)	Kt × P	P—Q5
Kt × Q	P—Q4	Q—R5 !	Kt—B3	Kt—Kt1
10 B—KB4	Kt × Kt	Kt—Q2	Kt × Ktch	B—Q3
P—QR3	P × Kt	Kt—B3	Q × Kt	B—Kt5
11 B—K2	B × P	P—KR3	O—O	P—KR3
P—Q3	R—Kt1	O—O	O—O	B—KR4
12 P × P ±	B × Kt+ (f)	P—KKt3	P—Q5	P—KKt4 ±
		Q—R4 ! = (j)	Kt—K2 =	

\* See p. 335, Diagram 141

(a) Or 5...Q—R5; 6 O—O, Kt × Kt; 7 P—Q4, Kt—Kt5; 8 P—KR3, B—Kt3; 9 P × Kt, P × KtP; 10 B—KB4 ±.

(b) Better than 7...P × P; 8 Q—Q4, Kt—Kt3; 9 Q × P, KKt—K2; 10 Q—R6, Q—Kt5; 11 Q—Kt5, Q—K3; 12 B—K3 ±. Romanovsky—Bogatyrchuk, Leningrad, 1923.

(c) If 5...Q—B3; 6 P—Q4, P × P; 7 O—O, KKt—K2; 8 B—Kt5+.

(d) Also good but less clear is 8 P—KKt4, O—O; 9 P—Kt5, Kt × Kt; 10 QP × Kt, Kt—K1; 11 P—B6, P—B3; 12 B—K2, P—Q3; 13 B—K3 ±.

(e) If 8...Q—K2; 9 QB × Kt ! followed by Q—R5ch+.

(f) 12...Q × B; 13 Q × Pch, K—R1; 14 O—O, QB × P; 15 Kt—Q2. Black's attack is not worth two Pawns.

(g) Inferior is 5 B × Kt, QP × B; 6 Kt × P, B—Q3; 7 Q—R5ch, P—Kt3; 8 Kt × KtP, Kt—B3; 9 Q—R4, R—KKt1; 10 P—K5, R × Kt; 11 P × Kt, B—K3; 12 P—B7ch, K × P; 13 Q × Q, R × Q ±.

(h) Or 6 KKt—Q2, B—Kt3 !; 7 B × Kt (if 7 P—Q5, Kt—B3 !; 8 O—O, Kt—K2 !; 9 Q—K2, P—B3; 10 P—Q6, Kt—B4; 11 Kt × P, Kt × Kt; 12 Q × Kt, Q—B3 ±. Colle—Vidmar, Bled, 1931), KtP × B; 8 Q—R5ch, K—B1; 9 Q × KP, Kt—B3; 10 O—O, B—R3; 11 R—K1, B—Q6 ±. Yates—Rabinovitch, Baden-Baden, 1925.

(i) Better than 9 Kt × KtP, Kt—B3; 10 Q—R6, R—KKt1 with enough counterplay for the Pawn.

(j) 13 Q × Q, Kt × Q !. Boleslavsky—Tolush, Moscow, 1944.

(k) On 6 O—O, BP × P; 7 P × P the correct reply is 7...B—Kt3; 8 Kt—Kt5, Kt—B3 ±, but not 7...P × Kt ?; 8 P × B, Q—B3; 9 Kt—B3, KKt—K2; 10 Kt—Q6, Kt × Kt; 11 Q × Kt+. Sir G. A. Thomas—Montgomerie, City of London championship, 1938.

(l) More enterprising but not clearly sound is 7 Kt—B3, P × P; 8 Kt—K5, Kt—B3; 9 O—O, Q—K2 !; 10 B × Kt, QP × B; 11 B—Kt5, O—O; 12 Kt × KP, Q—K3 ! ±.

Notes continued on p. 397

## CLASSICAL DEFENSE

1 P—K4, P—K4; 2 Kt—KB3, Kt—QB3; 3 B—Kt5, B—B4\*

186	187	188	189	190
4 (P—B3)			O—O (l)	
Q—B3	B—Kt3 (d)	KKt—K2 (i)	KKt—K2	Kt—Q5 (p)
5 P—Q4 (a)	O—O (e)	P—Q4 (j)	P—B3	Kt × Kt
P × P	P—Q3	P × P	B—Kt3	B × Kt
6 P—K5 !	P—Q4	P × P	P—Q4	P—B3
Q—Kt3 (b)	B—Q2	B—Kt5ch	P × P	B—Kt3
7 P × P	Kt—R3	B—Q2	P × P	P—Q4
B—Kt5ch	KKt—K2	B × Bch	P—Q4 (m)	P—QB3
8 Kt—B3	Kt—B4	Q × B	P × P	B—QB4
P—Q4	O—O	P—QR3	Kt × P	P—Q3
9 O—O	P—QR4	B—R4	R—K1ch	B—K3
Kt—K2	P × P (f)	P—Q4	B—K3	Kt—B3
10 Q—Kt3	P × P	P × P	B—Kt5	Kt—Q2
B × Kt	B—Kt5	Q × P	Q—Q3	O—O
11 P × B	P—Q5 (g)	Kt—B3	Kt—B3 (n)	P—KR3
P—QR3	B × Kt	Q—K3ch	O—O	Q—K2
12 B × Ktch ± (c)	P × B ± (h)	K—B1 ! ± (k)	Kt × Kt = (o)	Q—B3 ± (q)

\* See p. 335, Diagram 141

(a) Better than 5 O—O, KKt—K2; 6 P—Q4, P × P; 7 B—Kt5, Q—Kt3; 8 QB × Kt, B × B; 9 P × P, O—O; 10 Kt—B3, P—QR3 with a minimal disadvantage. Schiffers—Steinitz, 1896.

(b) 6...Kt × P ?; 7 Q—K2, B—Q3; 8 P × P costs Black a piece.

(c) 12...Q × B; 13 B—R3, Kt—Kt3; 14 QR—Kt1. Blackburne and Pillsbury—Schiffers and Steinitz, Nuremberg, 1896.

(d) Charousek's Variation.

(e) An alternative is 5 P—Q4, P × P; 6 P × P, QKt—K2; 7 Kt—B3, P—QB3; 8 B—Q3 (8 B—QB4, P—Q4; 9 P × P, Kt × P; 10 Kt × Kt, P × Kt =. Maroczy—Charousek, 1898), P—Q4; 9 P—K5, B—Kt5; 10 B—K3, Kt—Kt3; 11 P—KR3, B × Kt; 12 Q × B, KKt—K2; 13 O—O ±.

(f) Or 9...P—QR3; 10 Kt × B, P × Kt; 11 B—K2, Kt—Kt3; 12 B—K3, QKt—K2; 13 Q—Kt3, Kt—B5; 14 B—B4 ±. Ilyin-Zhenevsky—Vilner, Moscow, 1927.

(g) Not 11 P—R5, Kt × RP; 12 R × Kt, P—QB3+.

(h) 12...Kt—Kt1; 13 Kt × B, RP × Kt; 14 B—Q2. Cambridge Town—Hampstead, correspondence, 1918.

(i) Some other possibilities are: (1) 4...Q—K2; 5 O—O, P—B3; 6 P—Q4, B—Kt3; 7 P—QR4, P—QR3; 8 B—QB4, Kt—Q1; 9 P—R5, B—R2; 10 Q—Kt3 ±. Analysis by Steinitz. (2) 4...P—Q3; 5 P—Q4, P × P; 6 P × P, B—Kt5ch; 7 K—B1+, since Black must lose a Pawn.

(j) Also good is 5 O—O, Kt—Kt3; 6 P—Q4, P × P; 7 P × P, B—Kt3; 8 Kt—B3, O—O; 9 P—QR4, P—QR3; 10 B—QB4, P—R3; 11 P—R3, P—Q3; 12 B—K3 ±. Lasker—Steinitz, 2nd match game, 1896.

(k) 12...Q—B5ch ?; 13 K—Kt1, O—O; 14 P—Q5, R—Q1; 15 Q—K1 !, B—Kt5; 16 B—Kt3+. Alekhine—Bogoljubow, St. Petersburg, 1913.

(l) 4 Kt × P is weak because of 4...Q—Kt4 !.

(m) 7...O—O can transpose to note (j); White can also play P—Q5 and P—Q6 advantageously.

Notes continued on p. 397

## UNUSUAL DEFENSES WITHOUT 3...P-QR3

1 P-K4, P-K4; 2 Kt-KB3, Kt-QB3; 3 B-K15\*

191	192	193	194	195
3 KKt-K2 (a)		P-KKt3 (j)		
4 Kt-B3 (b)		P-Q4		Kt-B3 (r)
P-KKt3 (c)		Kt × P (k)	P × P	Kt-Q5 (s)
5 P-Q3	P-Q4 (e)	Kt × Kt	B-Kt5 (n)	B-R4
B-Kt2	P × P (f)	P × Kt	P-B3 (o)	B-Kt2
6 B-Kt5	Kt-Q5 (l)	Q × P	B-KB4 (p)	P-Q3
P-B3	B-Kt2 (g)	Q-B3	B-Kt5ch	P-QB3
7 P-K3	B-Kt5	P-K5	QKt-Q2	O-O
P-QR3	P-KR3	Q-Kt3	P-QR3	Kt-K2
8 B-R4	B-B6 (l)	Q-Q3 (l)	B-B4	Kt × Kt
P-QKt4	K-B1 (h)	P-QR3	P-Q3	P × Kt
9 B-Kt3	B × Bch	B-QB4	O-O	Kt-K2
Kt-R4	K × B	Q-R4ch	Q-K2	O-O
10 Q-Q2	O-O	Kt-B3	B-Q5	B-Kt3
Kt × B	P-Q3	Q × Pch	B-Kt5	P-Q3 (t)
11 RP × Kt	Kt × Kt	B-K3	P-B3 (l)	B-Q2
B-Kt2	Q × Kt	B-R3	P × P	B-K3 (u)
12 B-R6 ± (d)	B × Kt ± (i)	O-O+ (m)	P × P ± (q)	B × B
				P × B = (v)

\* See p. 325, Diagram 135

(a) The Cozio Defense.

(b) Best, although some of the alternatives also yield an advantage. The major possibilities are: (1) 4 P-Q4, Kt × P; 5 Kt × Kt, P × Kt; 6 Q × P (simplest: if instead 6 O-O, P-QB4; 7 P-QB3, Kt-B3; 8 P × P, P × P; 9 Kt-Q2, B-B4; 10 Kt-Kt3, B-Kt3; 11 B-KB4, O-O = Pillsbury-Cohn, 1902), Kt-B3 (or 6...P-QB3; 7 B-QB4, P-Q4; 8 P × P, Kt × P; 9 O-O, B-K3; 10 R-K1, R-KKt; 11 Kt-Q2, B-K2; 12 Kt-B3, B-B3; 13 Kt-K5 ±. Ruiz-Foutes, championship of Catalonia, 1931); 7 Q-Q5 (7 B × Kt is also good), B-K2; 8 Kt-B3, B-B3; 9 B-Q2, O-O; 10 O-O, P-QR3; 11 B-K2 ±. Blackburne-Steinitz, 1st match game, 1873. Cf. also Steinitz Defense, col. 173. (2) 4 P-B3, P-Q4; 5 P × P, Q × P leads to a form of the Ponziani favorable for Black. (3) 4 O-O, P-KKt3; 5 P-Q4, P × P; 6 Kt × P, B-Kt2; 7 P-QB3, O-O; 8 B-Kt5 (l, Kt × Kt; 9 P × Kt, P-KB3; 10 B-K3,

P-B3; 11 B-Q3, P-Q4; 12 P-B3 ±. Buerger-Goldstein, match, 1921.

(c) 4...P-Q3; 5 P-Q4 transposes to the Steinitz Defense, col. 173.

(d) 12...O-O; 13 P-R4, P-Q3; 14 O-O and White had a winning attack. Tchigorin-Pillsbury, St. Petersburg, 1895-96.

(e) Another possibility is 5 P-KR4, B-Kt2; 6 P-R5, P-KR3; 7 P-Q3 ±.

(f) Not 5...B-Kt2?; 6 P × P, Kt × P; 7 Kt × Kt, B × Kt; 8 B-KR6+.

(g) Or 6...Kt × Kt; 7 P × Kt, Q-K2ch; 8 K-B1, Kt-K4; 9 Q × P, P-KB3; 10 B-KB4, B-Kt2; 11 R-K1 ±. Johnner-Tartakower, Carlsbad, 1911.

(h) Or 8...B × B; 9 Kt × Bch, K-B1; 10 O-O, K-Kt2; 11 Kt-Q5, as in the column.

(i) Sterk-Réti, Debreczen, 1913.

(j) The Fianchetto Defense.

(k) Rubinstein's suggestion.

Notes continued on p. 397

Notes continued from p. 394

(m) Better than 5...P × P; 6 P-K5, Kt-K5; 7 P × P, B-Kt5ch; 8 K-B1 (l, Q-K2; 9 Q-B2, P-B4 (if 9...P-Q4; 10 P × P e.p., Kt × QP; 11 B × Ktch+); 10 P-KR4, B-R4; 11 P-R3, B-Kt3; 12 B-K3 ±. Albin-Steinitz, Nuremberg, 1896.

(n) If 6 P × P, KKt × P; 7 O-O, O-O; 8 Q-Q5, Kt-B4; 9 B-Kt5, Q-K1; 10 P-QKt4, Kt-K3; 11 B-KR4, Kt-K2; 12 Q-K4, Kt-Kt3 =. Rabinovitch-Tolush, Leningrad-Moscow, 1939. The column is analysis from the *Handbuch*.

Notes continued from p. 395

(n) 11 Kt-R3 is met by 11...O-O; 12 Kt-B4, Q-Kt5; 13 P-QR4, P-QR3; 14 B-Q2, Q-K2 =.

(o) Chajes-Bogoljubow, Carlsbad, 1923. Cf. col. 188.

(p) 4...B-Kt3; 5 P-B3 transposes to col. 187. Inferior alternatives are: (1) 4...P-Q3; 5 P-Q4, P × P; 6 Kt × P, B-Q2; 7 Kt-B5 (l) (if 7 B-K3, Kt-B3; 8 Kt × Kt, P × Kt; 9 B × B, P × KB; 10 B-Q4, O-O; 11 P-KB3, B-B3; 12 Kt-B3, P-Kt5; 13 Kt-K2, R-K1; 14 Q-Q2, B-Kt4 =), Q-B3 (or 7...B × Kt; 8 P × B, Q-B3; 9 R-K1ch,

Kt-K2; 10 B × Ktch, P × B; 11 Kt-B3, Q × P; 12 Kt-K4 with a strong attack. Van Gelder-Loman, match, 1919); 8 Kt-B3, KKt-K2; 9 Kt × Kt, Kt × Kt; 10 B × Bch, K × B; 11 Q-Q3, P-B3; 12 B-K3 ±. (2) 4...P-B4; 5 P × P (l, Kt-B3; 6 Kt × P, O-O; 7 P-QB3, Kt × Kt; 8 P-Q4+. Sheffield-Manchester, correspondence, 1917. (3) 4...Kt-B3; 5 Kt × P, Kt × Kt; 6 P-Q4, B-Q3; 7 P-KB4, Kt-Kt3; 8 P-K5, B-K2; 9 P-B5 ±.

(q) Rotenstein-von Hennig, Frankfurt, Haupt tourney, 1930.

Notes continued from p. 396

(l) Maroczy's improvement. If instead 8 Q × Q, RP × Q; 9 B-KB4, R-R4 (l; 10 B-Q3, P-KB3; 11 P × P, P-Q3; 12 Kt-B3, Kt × P; 13 Kt-Kt5, B-Q2 (l) =.

(m) 12...B × B; 13 KR-K1, K-Q1; 14 R × B, Q-Kt2; 15 QR-K1, Kt-R3; 16 Q-K4 with a winning attack. Roose-van Doesburgh, Hastings, 1945-46.

(n) Inferior is 5 Kt × P, B-Kt2; 6 Kt × Kt, KtP × Kt; 7 B-QB4, Kt-K2; 8 Kt-B3, P-Q3; 9 O-O, B-K3; 10 B-Kt3, O-O =. Lasker-Pillsbury, Hastings, 1895.

(o) Or 5...B-K2; 6 B × B, Q × B; 7 O-O, Kt-B3; 8 B × Kt, QP × B; 9 Q × P, O-O; 10 Kt-B3, R-Q1; 11 Q-K3 ±. Goldstein-Wilson, correspondence, 1922.

(p) 6 B-KR4 is also good.

(q) 12...B-QB4; 13 Q-Kt3. Marco-Pillsbury, Vienna, 1898.

(r) For 4 P-B3 and 4 O-O compare the corresponding lines with the interpolation of 3...P-QR3.

(s) Weaker is 4...B-Kt2; 5 P-Q3, KKt-K2 transposing to col. 191.

(t) If 10...P-Q4; 11 B-Kt5, P × P; 12 P × P, P-B4; 13 Q-Q2 ±.

(u) An improvement on 11...B-Kt5?; 12 P-KR3 (l, B-Q2; 13 Q-B1, B-K3; 14 B-R6, B × KB; 15 RP × B, P-QB4; 16 B × B, K × B; 17 Q-Q2 (l, Q-Q2; 18 P-QKt4 (l) ±. Boleslavsky-Ivanov, Sverdlovsk, 1942.

(v) If 13 Kt-B4, Q-B1; 14 Q-Kt4, P-K4 (l) ±. Analysis by L. Steiner.

## UNUSUAL DEFENSES WITHOUT 3...P-QR3

1 P-K4, P-K4; 2 Kt-KB3, Kt-QB3; 3 B-Kt5\*

196	197	198	199	200
3 P-B4 (a)				P-B3 (n)
4 Kt-B3 /			P-Q3 (k)	O-O
Kt-B3			P-Q3 (l)	KKt-K2
5 P × P (b)		QKt × P	Kt-B3	P-Q4
B-B4	P-K5	B-K2 (h)	Kt-B3	Kt-Kt3
6 O-O (c)	Kt-Kt5	P-Q4 (i)	O-O	P-QR3
O-O	P-Q4	P × P	B-K2	B-K2
7 Kt × P	P-Q3	O-O	P-QR3	B-QB4
Kt-Q5	B × P	Kt-B3	O-O	P-Q3
8 B-K2 / (d)	P × P	Kt × Ktch	B-B4ch	P-R3
R-K1	P × P	B × Kt	K-R1	B-Q2
9 Kt-B3	Q-K2	R-K1ch	Kt-KKt5	Kt-B3
P-Q4	B-QKt5	Kt-K2	Q-K1	Q-B1
10 Kt × Kt	B-Q2	Kt-Kt5	P-B4	K-R2
B × Kt	Q-K2	O-O	Kt-Q5	Kt-Q1
11 P-Q3	B × Ktch (e)	Kt × P /	B-K3	Kt-Q5
B × P	P × B	K × Kt	Kt-Kt5	B-B1
12 B-Kt5 ±	Q-B4+ (f)	Q-R5ch+ (j)	B × Kt	B-K3+ (o)
			P × B ♯ (m)	

\* See p. 325, Diagram 135

(a) Schliemann's Defense, also known as the Gambit Defense.

(b) If now 5 Q-K2?, Kt-Q5; 6 Kt × Kt, P × Kt; 7 P-K5, Kt-Kt5 ♯.

(c) A strong alternative is 6 Q-K2, Q-K2; 7 B × Kt, QP × B; 8 Q × P, Q × Q; 9 Kt × Q, O-O!; 10 O-O, B × P; 11 P-Q3, QR-K1; 12 Kt-B4 ±.

(d) But not 8 B-R4?, P-Q4; 9 Kt-K2, Q-Q3!; 10 Kt × Kt, B × Kt; 11 Kt-B3, Kt-Kt5!; 12 P-B3, R × P; 13 P-KKt3, Kt × BP / +. Work-Hoit, 1942.

(e) Or 11 Q-B4, R-Q1; 12 O-O-O+.

(f) 12...R-QKt1; 13 O-O-O, P-KR3; 14 KKt × P, Kt × Kt; 15 Kt × Kt, Q × Kt; 16 Q × Q, B × Q; 17 KR-K1, O-O; 18 R × B, B × Bch; 19 R × B. Leonhardt-Spielmann, 1906.

(g) 4...P-Q3 is refuted by 5 P-Q4. 4...Kt-Q5 is met by 5 B-B4, P-B3; 6 O-O, Kt × Ktch; 7 Q × Kt, Q-B3; 8 P-Q4!, KP × P; 9 P-K5, Q-R5;

10 Kt-K2, B-B4; 11 P-QKt4+. Bogoljubow-Réti, Stockholm, 1919.

(h) If instead 5...Kt-B3; 6 Kt × Ktch, P × Kt; 7 P-Q4, P-Q3 (or 7...P-K5; 8 Kt-Kt5!, B-Kt5ch; 9 P-B3, P × Kt; 10 Q-R5ch, K-B1; 11 B × P, Kt-K2; 12 B-QB4, P-Q4; 12 B × P!, resigns. Brinckmann-Kieninger, Ludwigshafen, 1932); 8 O-O (8 P-Q5, P-QR3; 9 B-K2, Kt-K2; 10 Kt-R4 ±. von Bardeleben-Leonhardt, Vienna, 1908. 8 P × P is weak), B-Q2; 9 R-K1, Q-K2; 10 P × P. QP × P; 11 B × Kt, B × B; 12 Kt × P!, P × Kt; 13 Q-R5ch, Q-B2 (Sergeant-Spielmann, Margate, 1938); 14 Q × Pch, K-Q2; 15 Q-Q4ch! and White wins.

(i) Less energetic, but theoretically adequate, is 6 Q-K2, Kt-B3; 7 Kt × Ktch, B × Kt; 8 P-Q4, O-O; 9 B × Kt, QP × B; 10 P × P, B-K2; 11 B-K3, Q-Q4; 12 Q-Q3, Q-B2; 13 O-O, B-K3; 14 Q-B3 ±. Budapest-Berlin, correspondence, 1937-38.

Notes continued on p. 399

Notes continued from p. 398

(j) 12...K-Kt1; 13 B-Q3, R-K1; 14 P-KKt4, P-Q3; 15 P-Kt5, B-K4; 16 B-R7ch, K-B1; 17 Q-B3ch, Kt-B4; 18 B × Kt and White won. Trifunovich-Kostich, Rogaska-Slatina, 1937.

(k) Other moves are weak, e.g., 4 P-Q4!, BP × P!; 5 Kt × P (necessary is 5 B × Kt), Kt × Kt; 6 P × Kt, P-B3; 7 B-QB4, Q-R4ch; 8 Kt-B3, Q × KP+.

(l) Slightly better than 4...P × P; 5 P × P, Kt-B3; 6 O-O, P-Q3; 7 B-Kt5, B-K2; 8 B × Kt, B × B; 9 Q-Q5!, B-Q2; 10 Kt-B3, Q-B1; 11 QR-Q1, Kt-Q1 =. S. R. Wolf-Spielmann, Vienna, 1928.

(m) Thomas-Steiner, Hastings, 1945-46.

(n) Some other weak defenses are: (1) 3... B-K2; 4 O-O, B-B3; 5 P-B3, KKt-K2; 6 P-Q4, Kt-Kt3; 7 P × P, QKt × P; 8 Kt × Kt, B × Kt; 9 P-KB4, B-Q3!; 10 B-K3, Q-K2; 11 B-Q3+.

(2) 3...B-Kt5 (Alapin's Defense); 4 P-B3, B-R4; 5 Kt-R3, B-Kt3; 6 Kt-B4, P-Q3; 7 P-Q4, P × P; 8 P-QR4!, P × P; 9 P-R5, B-QB4; 10 P-QKt4+. (3) 3...Q-B3; 4 Kt-B3, KKt-K2; 5 P-Q3, Kt-Q5; 6 Kt × Kt, P × Kt; 7 Kt-K2, P-B3; 8 B-R4, P-Q4; 9 O-O, P-KKt3; 10 P-QKt4!, Q-Q3; 11 P-QR3, B-Kt2; 12 B-Kt2, P-QKt4; 13 B-Kt3+. Bogoljubow-Ed. Lasker, New York, 1924.

(o) 12...Kt-K3; 13 Kt-Kt1. Tarrasch-Steinitz, Nuremberg, 1896.

## SCOTCH GAME

THIS IS an old opening which is rarely seen in modern tournaments. It is similar to the Center Game in that White plays the natural P-Q4 early, and it suffers from the same drawback, that Black's game is freed too early.

After the initial 1 P-K4, P-K4; 2 Kt-KB3, Kt-QB3; 3 P-Q4, P × P; 4 Kt × P leads to the Scotch Game proper, 4 B-QB4 to the Scotch Gambit, and 4 P-B3 to the Goering Gambit.

The main line is the Scotch Game proper, when Black has three replies: 4...Kt-B3, 4...Q-R5 and 4...B-B4. 4...Kt-B3 is the usual line, 4...Q-R5 is weak, 4...B-B4 is a strong alternative.

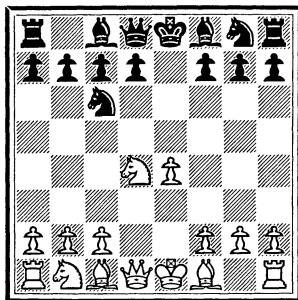
(1) 4...Kt-B3 (cols. 1-9) equalizes most easily. In the main variation in cols. 1-5 Black develops freely and has a strong Pawn in the center. But his freedom may be deceptive and he still has to continue carefully (see col. 3). Black has a further simplifying line in the Queen check in cols. 4-5. The alternative 5 Kt × Kt on White's fifth move (cols. 6-9) is not to be recommended.

(2) 4...Q-R5 (col. 10) is weak; White gets the better game by sacrificing a Pawn for quick development.

(3) 4...B-B4 (cols. 11-15) is the classical variation. It is just as good as 4...Kt-B3. The early development of the Black Queen is good for once and forces White to watch his center.

The *Scotch Gambit* (cols. 16-19) is easily met; both the accepted and the declined versions are good for Black. The *Goering Gambit* (col. 20) is theoretically unsound.

DIAGRAM 170



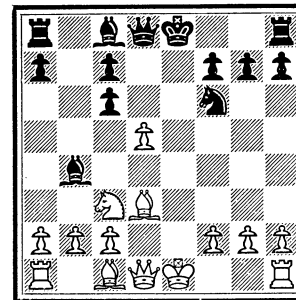
[After 4 Kt × P]

1 P-K4, P-K4; 2 Kt-KB3, Kt-QB3; 3 P-Q4, P × P; 4 Kt × P, Kt-B3; 5 Kt-QB3, B-Kt5; 6 Kt × Kt, KtP × Kt; 7 B-Q3 (a), P-Q4; 8 P × P\*

	1	2	3	4	5
8	P × P.....			Q-K2ch	
9	O-O (b)			Q-K2	
	O-O			Kt × P.....	P × P (n)
10	B-KKt5			Q × Qch	O-O
	B-K3.....	B × Kt.....	P-B3 (i)	K × Q	Q × Q
11	Q-B3 (c)	P × B	Q-B3 (j)	P-QR3	Kt × Q
	B-K2	P-KR3 (f)	B-K2	B-R4	P-B4
12	P-KR3 (d)	B-R4	QR-K1 / (k)	B-Q2	P-QB3
	R-Kt1	R-K1	R-Kt1	Kt × Kt	B-R4
13	P-QKt3	Q-B1 (g)	Kt-Q1	B × Kt	B-KB4
	P-B4	Q-Q3	R-K1	B × Bch	B-Kt3 (o)
14	QR-Q1	B × Kt	P-KR3	P × B	KR-K1
	P-Q5	Q × B	B-K3	B-K3 (m)	O-O
15	Kt-K4	Q-R3	R-K2	K-Q2	B-Q6
	Kt-Q4	Q-K2	P-B4	QR-QKt1	R-K1
16	B-Q2	Q-R5	KR-K1 ± (l)	QR-QKt1	Kt-B4
	Kt-Kt5 = (e)	P-QB4 = (h)		R-Kt3 =	B-Q2 =

\* DIAGRAM 171

cols. 1-5



[After 8 P × P]

(a) A novel attempt to get something out of this position for White is 7 B-Q2, but after 7...O-O; 8 B-Q3, P-Q4; 9 P-B3 !?, P × P; 10 Kt × P, Kt × Kt; 11 P × Kt, B-QB4; 12 Q-B3, R-Kt1 Black stands well. Alekhine-Alexander, Margate, 1937. Here Black can force a draw by 9...B × Kt; 10 B × B, P × P; 11 B × P, Kt × B etc.

(b) Or 9 B-Kt5ch, B-Q2; 10 B × Bch, Q × B; 11 O-O, O-O; 12 Q-Q3, KR-K1 =. Bogoljubow-Euwe, Carlsbad, 1929. Or here 10 Q-K2ch, Q-K2; 11 B × Bch, Kt × B; 12 Q × Qch, K × Q; 13 B-Q2, Kt-Kt3; 14 O-O-O, P-QB3 =. Sir G. A. Thomas-Alexander, Hastings, 1937-38.

(c) If here 11 B × Kt ?, Q × B; 12 Q-R5, P-Kt3; 13 Kt × P, Q-Q1 / ++, or 12 Kt × P, B × Kt; 13 Q-R5, KR-Q1 / ++.

(d) Or 12 KR-K1, P-KR3 !; 13 B × P !, P × B; 14 R × B !, P × R; 15 Q-Kt3ch, K-R1; 16 Q-Kt6 with a forced draw. Alekhine-Lasker, Moscow, 1914.

(e) Kan-Goglidse, Moscow, 1935.

(f) After 11...Q-Q3; 12 B × Kt, Q × B; 13 Q-R5, P-Kt3; 14 Q × P White can hold on to the extra Pawn, although Black may be able to draw.

(g) Or 13 P-QB4, P × P; 14 B × P, B-K3 =. If 13 Q-B3, P-Kt4; 14 B-Kt3, B-Kt5 ±.

Notes continued on p. 404



1 P—K4, P—K4; 2 Kt—KB3, Kt—QB3; 3 P—Q4, P × P; 4 Kt × P\*

	6	7	8	9	10
4 Kt—B3.....					Q—R5
5 Kt × Kt (a)					Kt—QB3 (t)
KtP × Kt					B—Kt5
6 B—Q3.....			Kt—Q2.....	P—K5	Kt—Kt5
P—Q4 (b)			B—B4 (l)	Q—K2 / (o)	Q × KPch
7 P × P.....	P—K5 (e)	B—Q3 (m)	Q—K2	B—K2	
P × P	Kt—Kt5	O—O	Kt—Q4 (p)	K—Q1	
8 O—O (c)	O—O (f)	O—O	Kt—Q2 (q)	O—O	
B—K2	B—QB4	P—Q4	B—Kt2	B × Kt	
9 Kt—B3	B—KB4 (g)	Q—B3	Kt—Kt3	Kt × B	
O—O	P—Kt4 /	Kt—Kt5	O—O—O	Q—Q5	
10 B—KB4 (d)	B—Q2 (h)	P × P	P—QB4 (r)	B—Q2	
B—K3	B—K3	Q—Q3	Kt—Kt3	P—Q3	
11 R—K1	Q—K2 (i)	Q—Kt3	B—Q2	Kt—Kt5	
Q—Q2	P—KR4 (j)	Q × Q	R—K1	Q—KR5	
12 Q—Q2	P—Kt4	RP × Q	P—B4	B—QB3	
B—Q3	B—K2	P × P	P—B3	Kt—B3	
13 Kt—K2	P—KR3	Kt—Kt3	P—QR4	Kt × QP / + (u)	
P—B4 =	Kt—R3 ≠ (k)	B—Kt3 ≠ (n)	B—R3 ≠ (s)		

\* See p. 400, Diagram 170

(a) The only good alternative to 5 Kt—B3 (cols. 1-5). If 5 P—K5, Kt × P!; 6 Q—K2, Q—K2; 7 Kt—B5 (or 7 Kt—Kt5, Kt—Q4), Q—Kt5ch; 8 Kt—B3, P—Q3+ (Schlechter), or 5 B—KKt5, B—K2 and the KP is suddenly weak, or 5 B—QB4, Kt × P!; 6 O—O, B—K2 ≠.

(b) Best. If instead 6... B—B4; 7 P—K5, Kt—Q4; 8 O—O (not 8 Q—Kt4, P—Kt3; 9 B—KR6, P—Q3; 10 Q—Kt3, Q—K2 =. Tarrasch—Schallopp, Hamburg, 1885), O—O; 9 Kt—Q2, P—Q3; 10 Kt—K4 ±.

(c) Or 8 B—Kt5ch, B—Q2; 9 B × Bch, Q × B; 10 O—O, B—K2; 11 Kt—Q2, O—O; 12 P—QKt3, KR—K1; 13 Kt—B3, Kt—K5 =. Maroczy—Janowski, London, 1899.

(d) 10 B—KKt5, B—K3 transposes to col. 1 with an extra move for Black.

(e) 7 Kt—B3, B—QKt5 transposes to cols. 1-5. If 7 Q—K2, P × P; 8 B × P, Kt × B; 9 Q × Ktch, Q—K2 =. Mieses—Teichmann, Berlin, 1924.

(f) 8 B—KB4, B—QB4; 9 O—O transposes

back to the column.

(g) If 9 P—KR3, Kt × KP!; 10 R—K1, Q—B3; 11 Q—K2, O—O!; 12 Q × Kt, Q × Pch; 13 K—R1, B × P!; 14 P × B, Q—B6ch; 15 K—R2, B—Q3+. Delmar—Lipschutz, match, 1890. Equally on 9 P—B3, Q—R5; 10 P—KR3, P—KR4! Black has a winning attack.

(h) Weaker is 10 B—Kt3, P—KR4!; 11 P—KR3, P—R5; 12 B—R2, Kt—R3; 13 Q—B3, B—K3; 14 Kt—Q2, P—Kt5 ≠.

(i) If 11 B—B3, Q—K2; 12 P—KR3, P—KR4!; 13 Kt—Q2, Kt × BP; 14 R × Kt, P—Kt5+. Mieses—Fuchs, 1923.

(j) Also good is 11... R—KKt1; 12 P—KR3, Kt—R3; 13 Q—R5, Kt—B4; 14 Q × RP, R—Kt2; 15 Q—R8ch, K—Q2 ≠. Consultants—Lasker, 1893.

(k) 14 Q × P, K—Q2. Schaum—Seibold, correspondence, 1933.

(l) Also playable is 6... P—Q4; 7 P × P, P × P; 8 B—Kt5ch, B—Q2; 9 B × Bch, Q × B; 10 O—O, O—O; 11 Kt—B3, Kt—K5 =.

Notes continued on p. 404

1 P—K4, P—K4; 2 Kt—KB3, Kt—QB3; 3 P—Q4, P × P; 4 Kt × P, B—B4; 5 B—K3 (a)

	11	12	13	14	15
5 Q—B3.....					B—Kt3
6 P—QB3 (b)					Kt—QB3
KKt—K2.....				P—Q3	P—Q3
7 B—K2.....	Kt—B2.....	Q—Q2 (g)	B—QKt5	B—K2 (l)	
P—Q4	B × B	P—Q4 (h)	B—Q2	Kt—B3	
8 O—O	Kt × B	Kt—Kt5	O—O	Q—Q2	
B × Kt	O—O (d)	B × B	KKt—K2	Kt—KKt5	
9 P × B	B—K2	Q × B (i)	Kt × Kt	B × Kt	
P × P	P—Q3	O—O	P × Kt	B × B	
10 P—Q5	O—O	Kt × BP	B × B	P—KR3	
Kt—K4	B—K3	R—Kt1	P × KB	B—Q2	
11 Q—R4ch	Kt—Q2	Kt—Q2 (j)	B—Q4	Kt—Q5	
P—B3	P—Q4	P × P	Q—Kt3	O—O	
12 Kt—B3	P × P (e)	Kt × P	Kt—Q2	O—O—O	
O—O	Kt × P	Q—K4	O—O	R—K1	
13 Kt × P	Kt × Kt	Kt—QKt5	P—KB4	P—KB3 ± (m)	
Q—Kt3 = (c)	B × Kt = (f)	Kt—Q4 ≠	P—KB3 = (k)		

(a) Not 5 Kt—B5?, P—Q4!; 6 Kt × Pch, K—B1; 7 Kt—R5, Q—R5; 8 Kt—Kt3, Kt—B3; 9 B—K2, Kt—K4!; 10 P—KR3, R—KKt1 ≠.

(b) The Blumenfeld Variation, 6 Kt—Kt5?, is refuted by 6... B × B; 7 P × B, Q—R5ch; 8 P—Kt3, Q × KP (better than 8... Q—Q1; 9 QKt—B3, P—QR3; 10 Kt—Q4, Kt—K4; 11 B—Kt2, P—Q3; 12 O—O, P—KR4; 13 Kt—B3 ±. Nimzovitch—Spielmann, match, 1905; 9 Kt × Pch, K—Q1; 11 Q—Q6, Kt—B3; 12 Kt × R, Q—B6; 13 Kt—B7, Q × KPch+, K—Q1; 10 Kt × R, Kt—B3; 11 Q—Q6, Q × R; 12 Kt—Q2, Kt—K1; 13 Q—B4, Q—Q4; 14 B—B4, Q—Q3+. Analysis by von Bardeleben and von Claparède.

(c) Alekhine and Reilly—Stoltz and Monosson, Nice, 1931.

(d) Better than 8... Q—K4; 9 Q—B3, O—O; 10 B—B4, P—Q3; 11 Kt—Q2, B—K3; 12 O—O =. Tartakower—Tarrasch, Vienna, 1922.

(e) Or 12 P—KB4, P—Q5! ≠. Tartakower—Brinckmann, Niendorf, 1927.

(f) 14 B—B3, QR—Q1. Martinez—Zukertort, 1884.

(g) Some other possibilities are: (1) 7 B—QKt5, O—O; 8 O—O, P—Q3 (or 8... B × Kt; 9 P × B, P—Q4; 10 Kt—B3, P × P); 9 Kt—R3, Q—Kt3; 10 R—K1, Kt—K4; 11 QKt—B2, P—B4; 12 P × P, Kt × P; 13 Kt × Kt, B × Kt ++. Mieses—Sergeant, Margate, 1935. (2) 7 P—KB4, Q—Kt3; 8 Q—B3, Kt × Kt; 9 P × Kt, B—Kt5ch; 10 Kt—B3, P—Q4; 11 P—K5, Q—B7+. Analysis by Steinitz. (3) 7 Kt—Q2, Kt × Kt!; 8 P—K5, Kt—B7ch; 9 Q × Kt, Q × P; 10 Kt—B4, Q—K3; 11 O—O—O, B × Bch; 12 Kt × B, Q × P; 13 Q—K4, Q—K3+.

(h) Inferior is 7... B × Kt?; 8 P × B, P—Q4; 9 Kt—B3, P × P; 10 P—Q5, Kt—K4; 11 Kt—Kt5!, O—O!; 12 Kt × BP+. Kashdan—Reshevsky, New York, 1936.

Notes continued on p. 404

## Notes continued from p. 401

(h) Blumenfeld and Pavlov—Capablanca, Moscow, 1914.

(i) 10... B-K2? at once is a mistake because of 11 B × Kt, B × B; 12 Q-R5, P-Kt3; 13 Q × QP, Q × Q? (the best chance is 13... B-K3); 14 Kt × Q, B × P; 15 QR-Kt1, B-K4; 16 KR-K1, B-Q3; 17 Kt-K7ch, B × Kt; 18 R × B+.

(j) Better than 11 Kt-K2, R-K1; 12 Kt-Q4, Q-Q3; 13 B-R4, Kt-K5; 14 P-QB3, B-QB4; 15 P-B3, Q-R3!; 16 P × Kt, Q × B; 17 Q-R4, P × P = Nimzovitch—Teichmann, Hamburg, 1910.

(k) If instead 12 KR-K1, R-Kt1;

13 QR-Kt1, P-KR3; 14 B × P, P × B; 15 Q-K3, B-Q3; 16 Q × KRP, R-Kt5!; 17 Q-Kt5ch with perpetual check. Romanovsky—Capablanca, Moscow, 1925.

(l) Spielmann—Yates, Semmering, 1926. (m) Spielmann—Rubinstein, Teplitz—Schonau, 1922.

(n) Inferior is 9... Q × Qch; 10 K × Q, P × P (somewhat better is 10... B × Kt; 11 P × B, P × P; 12 B-R3 ±); 11 Kt-Kt5!, K-Q1; 12 R-Q1, P-B3; 13 P-QB3, R-K1ch; 14 K-B1, B-B1; 15 Kt-Q4+. Spielmann—Lasker, Moscow, 1935.

(o) Spielmann—Bogoljubow, Pistyán, 1922.

## Notes continued from p. 402

(m) If 7 P-K5, Q-K2; 8 Q-K2, Kt-Q4; 9 Kt-Kt3, B-Kt3; 10 B-Q2, P-QR4; 11 P-QR4, O-O; 12 O-O-O (Tartakower—Ed. Lasker, New York, 1924), P-B3!; 13 P × P, Q × P ≠.

(n) Tartakower—Jacobson, Copenhagen, 1923.

(o) If now 6... Kt-Q4; 7 B-Q3, B-B4; 8 Q-Kt4, P-Kt3; 9 B-KKt5!, B-K2; 10 B-KR6 ±. Mieses—Janowski, Hastings, 1895.

(p) An alternative is 7... Kt-Kt1; 8 P-KKt3, P-Kt3; 9 B-Kt2, B-KKt2; 10 O-O, R-Kt1; 11 R-K1, Kt-R3; 12 Kt-Q2, O-O; 13 Kt-B3, P-B3 ≠. Mieses—Lasker, Hastings, 1895.

(q) 8 P-QB4 is met by 8... B-R3!,

8 P-QKt3 by 8... P-QR4 and 8 P-KKt3 by 8... P-Kt3, with the better of it for Black in all cases.

(r) If 10 Kt-R5, Q-Kt5ch; 11 Q-Q2, Q-K5ch+ (Knoch).

(s) Mieses—Tarrasch, 10th match game, 1916.

(t) White can get an advantage in a variety of ways: Black always wins a Pawn but is always exposed to a violent attack. E.g., 5 Kt-Kt5, Q × KPch; 6 B-K2, K-Q1; 7 O-O, P-QR3; 8 Kt(Kt1)-B3, Q-K1; 9 Kt-Q4, B-B4; 10 Kt × Ktch, KtP × Kt; 11 B-B3 ±.

(u) Schoenmann—Pulvermacher, correspondence, 1933.

## Notes continued from p. 403

(i) Or 9 P × B, O-O; 10 Kt × BP, P × P; 11 Kt × R, R-Q1; 12 Q-B1, Kt-B4; 13 P-KKt3, Q-Kt4; 14 K-B2, Kt-K4; 15 B-K2, R-Q6+. Analysis by Steinitz.

(j) If 11 Kt × P, Kt × Kt; 12 P × Kt, Kt-Kt5!; 13 P × Kt, Q × P; 14 Q-QB3, R-K1ch+. Von Gottschall's Attack.

(k) Kan—Flohr, Leningrad—Moscow, 1939.

(l) An improvement on 7 Kt-Q5, Kt-B3; 8 Kt × B, RP × Kt; 9 Kt × Kt, P × Kt; 10 B-Q3, Q-K2; 11 O-O, Q-K4 ≠. Mieses—Lasker, St. Petersburg, 1909.

(m) Spielmann—Tarrasch, Breslau, 1912.

## SCOTCH GAMBIT; GOERING GAMBIT

1 P-K4, P-K4; 2 Kt-KB3, Kt-QB3; 3 P-Q4, P × P

	16	17	18	19	20
4 B-QB4 (a)					P-B3 (p)
B-B4				B-Kt5ch	P × P (q)
5 P-B3			Kt-Kt5 (i)	P-B3	B-QB4
P × P	P-Q6		Kt-R3! (j)	P × P	P-Q3
6 Kt × P (b)	P-QKt4		Kt × BP (k)	O-O! (m)	Kt × P
P-Q3	B-Kt3		Kt × Kt	P × P (n)	B-K3
7 B-KKt5 (c)	P-QR4 (e)		B × Ktch	B × P	B × B
Q-Q2	P-QR3		K × B	P-B3	P × B
8 Q-Q2	P-R5 (f)		Q-R5ch	Q-Kt3	Q-Kt3
P-KR3	B-R2		P-Kt3	K-B1	Q-B1
9 B-R4	Q-Kt3		Q × B	P-K5	Kt-KKt5
KKt-K2	Q-K2		P-Q3	B-K2	Kt-Q1
10 O-O-O	O-O		Q-R3	B × Kt	P-B4
Kt-Kt3	Kt-B3 (g)		Q-K2	R × B	B-K2
11 B-KKt3	QKt-Q2		O-O	P × P	O-O
P-R3	O-O		Q × P	B × P	B × Kt
12 Kt-Q5	B × QP		Kt-Q2	Kt-B3	P × B
P-Kt4	P-Q3		Q-Q4	P-KKt3	Kt-K2
13 B-Kt3	P-Kt5		Q-KKt3	Kt-K4 ± (o)	Kt-Kt5
B-Kt2 = (d)	P × P = (h)		B-B4 ≠ (l)		P-K4 ≠ (r)

(a) The Scotch Gambit. 4 B-QKt5 is the variation called by Blackburne the "Mac-Lopez," best met by 4... B-B4 ≠.

(b) Or 6 B × Pch, K × B; 7 Q-Q5ch, K-B1; 8 Q × Bch, Q-K2 =. Schlechter—Spielmann, Baden, 1914.

(c) For 7 Q-Kt3 see the Center Game, p. 32, col. 12.

(d) 14 K-Kt1, O-O-O; 15 R-QB1. Analysis by Em. Lasker.

(e) Not 7 P-Kt5, Kt-R4; 8 B × P, P-Q4 ≠.

(f) Or 8 O-O, P-Q3; 9 Q-Kt3, Q-K2; 10 B-KKt5, Kt-B3; 11 QKt-Q2, O-O; 12 B × QP, Kt-K4 =. Johner—Nyholm, Baden, 1914.

(g) More precise than 10... P-Q3; 11 P-Kt5!, P × P?; 12 B × KtP, B-Q2; 13

P-R6!+. Kostich—Nielsen, Munich, 1936.

(h) Kostich—van Scheltinga, Stockholm, 1937.

(i) For 5 O-O, P-Q3; 6 P-B3 see the Center Game, p. 32, col. 12; for 5 O-O, Kt-B3; 6 P-K5 see the Two Knights Defense, Max Lange Variation, p. 453, cols. 29-36.

(j) Weak is 5... Kt-K4?; 6 Kt × BP!, Kt × Kt; 7 B × Ktch, K × B; 8 Q-R5ch ±.

(k) If 6 Q-R5, Q-B3; 7 P-B4, P-Q3; 8 P-B5, Kt-K4; 9 Kt × RP, R × Kt; 10 B-Kt5, Kt(R3)-Kt5!; 11 Q × R, Q × B+. Analysis by Steinitz.

(l) 14 Kt-B3, KR-K1; 15 Q-R4, P-KR4!. Opocensky—Nyholm, Baden, 1914.

Notes continued on p. 406

(m) Better than 6 P×P, B—R4; 7 P—K5, KKt—K2; 8 B—R3, O—O; 9 O—O, K—R1; 10 Kt—Kt5, Kt×P ♣. *Handbuch*.

(n) If 6...P—Q3; 7 P—QR3, B—R4; 8 P—QKt4, B—Kt3; 9 Q—Kt3, Q—B3; 10 Kt×P, KKt—K2; 11 B—Kt2, O—O; 12 Kt—Q5, Q—Kt3; 13 P—QR4 ±.

(o) *Handbuch*.

(p) The Goering Gambit. Cf. the Danish Gambit, p. 32, cols. 11-14.

(q) 4...P—Q4; 5 KP×P, Q×P leads into the Danish Gambit. 4...P—Q6 is a safe defense.

(r) 14 Q—B4, KKt—B3; 15 P—Kt6, P×P. Marco—Spielmann, Gothenburg, 1920.

## SICILIAN DEFENSE

THE SICILIAN is considered by many masters the strongest of the irregular defenses at Black's disposal. Its dominant theme is struggle in the opening and struggle in the middle game, so that it is not suitable for those who wish to play for a draw. However, it involves more risk than the French or 1...P—K4, and a tendency on the part of the leading masters to stay away from it has been discernible in the past few years. Botvinnik, who used to play it consistently, now rarely adopts it; and the same is true of Reshevsky, Flohr, Fine and others.

After the usual 2 Kt—KB3, Black has four replies: 2...P—K3, leading to the Scheveningen Variation and allied lines, 2...Kt—QB3 followed by the fianchetto of the KB, leading to the Dragon and its relatives, 2...P—Q3, the "modern" variation, and 2...Kt—KB3, Nimzovitch's Variation. The Scheveningen is going out of fashion; the Dragon is the most popular today.

### *Scheveningen Variation and Allied Lines*

The main variation here runs as follows:

1 P—K4	P—QB4
2 Kt—KB3	P—K3
3 P—Q4	P×P
4 Kt×P	Kt—KB3

4...P—QR3, Paulsen's Defense, is weak.

5 Kt—QB3

Other moves are inferior.

5... P—Q3

5...Kt—B3, the Sicilian Four Knights', is a strong alternative.

5...B—Kt5 is dubious.

(See Diagram 172)

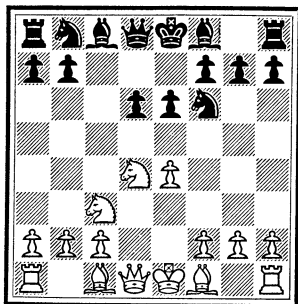
6 B—K2

White can vary in several ways.

6... Kt—B3

The position after Black's sixth move, which is crucial for the entire

DIAGRAM 172



[After 6... P-Q3]

theory of this variation, has generally ended in White's favor in recent tournaments. White may choose either the direct B-K3 followed by P-KB4, P-KKt4 and a K-side attack (cols. 1-4) or prepare it with Maroczy's K-R1. In either case the K-side assault with P-KB4, P-KKt4 and onward gives White an advantage. A rather novel attacking procedure with Q-K1 and Q-Kt3 has also been successfully used (col. 3). The important thing is that White attack; if he does not, Black counterattacks on the Q-side and as a rule gets the better of it (see col. 1 note (b) and col. 7).

6... P-QR3 (cols. 11-13) followed by developing the QKt at Q2, is no better; again the direct K-side attack is advantageous for White.

It is to be noted that it is not essential for White to prevent ... P-QKt4 in all these variations; if he does not and Black plays ... P-QKt4 early, P-QR4! in reply is very disturbing (col. 12).

On White's sixth move the direct fianchetto of the KB has much to recommend it, although here it is not quite as strong as against the Dragon (cols. 16-18). Keres's idea in col. 14 is striking, but it is not likely to stand up against closer scrutiny.

5... B-Kt5 (cols. 19-21) would be good if it were not for the reply 6 P-K5, which, because of the trap in note (g), leaves Black poorly developed.

5... Kt-B3 (cols. 22-26), the **Sicilian Four Knights'**, is a strong alternative for Black. While the latest analysis indicates that White can get a slight edge with either 6 KKt-Kt5 (cols. 22-23) or 6 P-KKt3 (col. 24) Black's game is not as bad as in the main variations of the Scheveningen.

4... P-QR3 (cols. 28-29), the **Paulsen Defense**, is weak because of the powerful 5 P-QB4.

*Dragon Variation and Allied Lines*

This is currently the most important branch of the Sicilian. The main line runs:

1 P-K4	P-QB4
2 Kt-KB3	Kt-QB3
3 P-Q4	P × P
4 Kt × P	Kt-B3

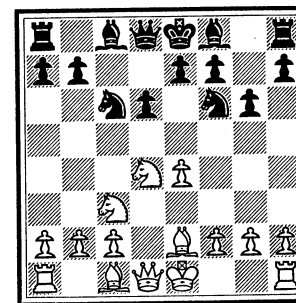
4... P-KKt3 (col. 54) allows the strong Maroczy bind 5 P-QB4!.

5 Kt-QB3	P-Q3
6 B-K2	

White has a number of alternatives.

6... P-KKt3

DIAGRAM 173



[After 6... P-KKt3]

The usual continuation now is 7 B-K3 followed by O-O and a K-side advance (cols. 31-43). The line has also been in White's favor in most recent encounters. But Black's position is more solid than in the Scheveningen, and not so readily accessible to direct assault.

After the straight developmental moves 7 B-K3, B-Kt2; 8 O-O, O-O; 9 Kt-Kt3, B-K3; 10 P-B4, Kt-QR4; 11 P-B5, B-B5 Milner-Barry's 12 P-Kt4! (col. 31) is much harder for Black to meet than the older 12 B-Q3 (cols. 32-33) which is adequately countered by Bernard's 12... B × B. Alekhine's line in col. 36 was formerly thought to be good, but did not prove to be quite satisfactory in the Horowitz-Reshevsky match in 1941.

Alternatives for White on his eighth or ninth moves all fail against an early ... P-Q4 (cols. 38-43). It is strategically essential for White to prevent ... P-Q4.

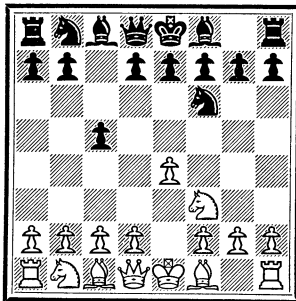
Euwe has however introduced a strong innovation on White's seventh move: to hold the center with P—B<sub>3</sub> and prepare P—QB<sub>4</sub>. This is an excellent alternative to the main line (col. 44).

On White's sixth move, he can vary in a number of ways. The most important of these is  $\delta$  B—KKt<sub>5</sub>, the **Richter Attack**. Some masters have felt this move to be so strong that they have avoided the variation (see 2... P—Q<sub>3</sub> below). But analysis indicates that quick development will equalize for Black, provided that he is willing to sacrifice the QP for an attack if necessary (cols. 47–48). Refinements such as col. 49 are not desirable. Of the other possibilities, the logical  $\delta$  KKt—K<sub>2</sub> (col. 51) is promising, but  $\delta$  P—KKt<sub>3</sub> (col. 53) is premature.

*Nimzovitch's Variation*

1 P—K<sub>4</sub>, P—QB<sub>4</sub>; 2 Kt—KB<sub>3</sub>, Kt—KB<sub>3</sub>

DIAGRAM 174



[After 2... Kt—KB<sub>3</sub>]

This is similar to Alekhine's Defense; Black exposes his Kt to the chase in the hope that White's Pawns will become weak. Black can achieve theoretical equality, but must avoid various traps (cols. 57–60).

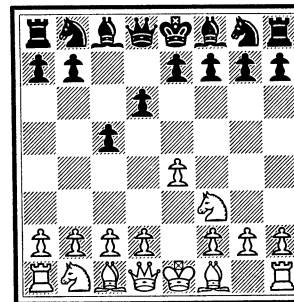
*Modern Variation*

1 P—K<sub>4</sub>, P—QB<sub>4</sub>; 2 Kt—KB<sub>3</sub>, P—Q<sub>3</sub>

(See Diagram 175)

This line is chosen chiefly to avoid the Richter Attack. But the remedy is worse than the disease. In the first place Richter's Attack need not be sidestepped (see above). And in the second place the omission of ... Kt—QB<sub>3</sub> puts so little pressure on the White center that he has a number of strong alternatives not otherwise available (cols. 61–65). An earlier P—KB<sub>3</sub>, once considered good, is less effective than the other lines (cols.

DIAGRAM 175



[After 2... P—Q<sub>3</sub>]

66–68). White has an interesting gambit possibility on his third move, 3 P—QKt<sub>4</sub>, an idea of Keres's, which is superior to the direct Wing Gambit (col. 69).

*Alternatives on White's Second Move*

Since White should prepare P—Q<sub>4</sub>, and 2 Kt—KB<sub>3</sub> does that best, none of the alternatives have great theoretical importance. But some are interesting.

2 Kt—QB<sub>3</sub> (cols. 71–75) has been played successfully by Smyslov, who has introduced some new refinements. But the old idea of a counter-attack along the QKt file is still good enough to equalize for Black.

2 P—QKt<sub>4</sub> (cols. 76–77), the **Wing Gambit**, has been revived by Marshall with an important new improvement (col. 76). Some of his analysis has not stood the test of practical play (col. 77), but the remainder has not been refuted and opens new perspectives to the first player.

Other moves are of purely theoretical interest. The first alternative in note (s) has another strikingly beautiful Alekhine combination.

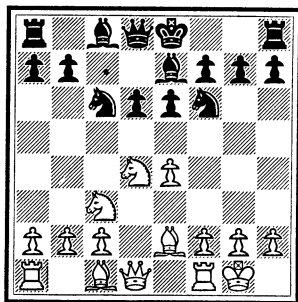
## SCHEVENINGEN VARIATION

1 P-K4, P-QB4; 2 Kt-KB3, P-K3; 3 P-Q4, P x P; 4 Kt x P, Kt-KB3; 5 Kt-QB3, P-Q3; 6 B-K2, Kt-B3; 7 O-O, B-K2

1	2	3	4	5
8 B-K3.....				P-QKt3 O-O
P-QR3 (a)				
9 Q-Q2.....	P-QR4.....	P-B4		B-Kt2 (o) Q-R4 (p)
O-O	Q-B2	O-O (i)		
10 P-B4 (b)	P-B4	Q-K1 (j)		Q-Q2 R-Q1
Q-B2	O-O (f)	B-Q2		
11 QR-Q1	Kt-Kt3	R-Q1 (k)		QR-Q1 (q) Kt x Kt
B-Q2 (c)	P-QKt3	Q-B2		
12 B-B3 (d)	B-B3	Q-Kt3.....	B-B3	Q x Kt Kt-K1
Kt-QR4	B-Kt2	Kt x Kt (l)	Kt x Kt!	
13 Q-B2	Q-K1	B x Kt	B x Kt	Q-Q3 B-Q2
Kt-B5	QR-Kt1 (g)	B-B3	P-K4!	
14 B-B1	P-Kt4	B-Q3	B-K3	P-QR3 B-KB3
QR-Q1	KR-Q1	QR-Q1	B-B3	
15 P-KKt4	Q-B2	K-R1	Q-B2	P-B4 QR-B1
K-R1	B-R1	P-QKt4	P-QKt4	
16 P-Kt5 ± (e)	P-Kt5 ± (h)	P-K5 ± (m)	KR-K1	R-B3 (r) QR-B1 ♯ (n)
			QR-B1 ♯ (n)	Q-B4ch =

## \* DIAGRAM 176

cols. 1-5



[After 7... B-K2]

(a) 8... O-O transposes back to the columns, since Black always plays ... P-QR3. The order of moves has been changed in a number of the games cited.

(b) Inferior are: (1) 10 QR-Q1, Q-B2; 11 Kt-Kt3, P-QKt4; 12 P-B3 ♯, R-

Q1; 13 Q-K1, Kt-K4; 14 Q-B2, QR-Kt1; 15 B-Q3, Kt-B5 ♯. Janowski—Em. Lasker, New York, 1924. (2) 10 Kt x Kt ♯, P x Kt; 11 KR-Q1, Q-B2; 12 P-B3, P-Q4; 13 P x P, BP x P; 14 Q-K1, QR-Kt1; 15 QR-Kt1, B-Q3 ♯. Spielmann—Euwe, Kissingen, 1928.

(c) If 11... Kt-QR4; 12 Q-Q3, P-QKt4; 13 P-QKt4!, Kt-Kt2 (not 13... Kt-B5 ♯; 14 KKt x KtP!, P x Kt; 15 Kt x P+); 14 P-QR3 (Thomas—Euwe, Noordwijk, 1938), R-Q1 (14... B-Q2 ♯; 15 P-K5!, Kt-K1; 16 Kt-B5!+); 15 B-B3, P-Q4; 16 P x P ±. 12... B-Q2 is better for Black here.

(d) White must not lose too much time. E.g., 12 Kt-Kt3 ♯, P-QKt4; 13 B-B3, QR-Kt1; 14 Q-B2 ♯, P-QR4!; 15 P-KKt4, P-R5 with satisfactory counterplay for Black. Kan—Goglidse, Moscow, 1931.

(e) 16... Kt-Kt1; 17 P-B5. Michel—Najdorf, Mar del Plata, 1944.

Notes continued on p. 414

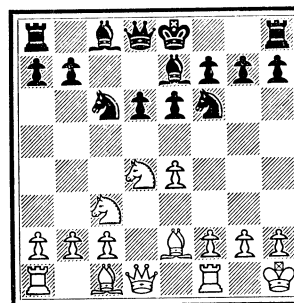
## SCHEVENINGEN VARIATION

1 P-K4, P-QB4; 2 Kt-KB3, P-K3; 3 P-Q4, P x P; 4 Kt x P, Kt-KB3; 5 Kt-QB3, P-Q3; 6 B-K2, Kt-B3; 7 O-O (a)

6	7	8	9	10
7 (B-K2).....				P-QR3
8 K-R1 (b) *				B-K3 Q-B2
P-QR3.....			O-O	
9 P-B4.....		P-QR4	P-B4	P-B4 (n)
Q-B2		Q-B2 (h)	Q-B2!	Kt-QR4
10 B-B3 (c)		P-B4	Kt-Kt3 (k)	P-B5
O-O (d)		O-O	B-Q2	Kt-B5
11 P-KKt4.....	Kt-Kt3	Kt-Kt3	B-B3	B x Kt Q x B
B-Q2 (e)	P-QKt4	Kt-QR4! (i)	Kt-QR4	
12 P-Kt5	B-K3	Kt x Kt	Kt x Kt	P x P
Kt-K1	B-Kt2	Q x Kt (4)	Q x Kt (4)	P x P?
13 Kt(Q4)-K2	Q-K1	Q-K1	P-K5 (l)	R x Kt!
R-B1	QR-B1	Q-B2	P x P	P x R
14 P-KR4	Q-B2	B-B3	P x P	Q-R5ch
P-Kt4	Kt-Q2	B-Q2	Q x KP	K-Q1
15 P-R3 ± (f)	QR-Q1	B-K3	B x P	Q-B7+ (o)
	Kt-R4 = (g)	K-R1 = (j)	QR-Q1 = (m)	

## \* DIAGRAM 177

cols. 6-9



[After 8 K-R1]

(a) An inferior continuation for White is 7 B-K3, B-Q2; 8 Q-Q2, P-QR3; 9 P-B4, Q-B2; 10 Kt-Kt3, P-QKt4; 11 B-B3, R-QKt1; 12 Kt-K2, B-K2;

13 O-O, O-O; 14 Kt-Kt3, P-QR4 / ♯. Lasker—Capablanca, Moscow, 1936.

(b) Maroczy's continuation.

(c) Another good line, but one more subject to tactical surprises, is 10 B-K3, O-O; 11 Q-K1, B-Q2; 12 R-Q1, P-QKt4; 13 P-QR3, Kt-QR4; 14 Q-Kt3, Kt-B5; 15 B-B1, KR-B1; 16 P-Kt3, Kt x RP; 17 P-K5! ±. Yates—Takacs, Kecskemet, 1927.

(d) If 10... B-Q2; 11 P-KKt4 is again best, for White must attack on the K-side. Weaker continuations after 10... B-Q2 are: (1) 11 Kt-Kt3, R-QB1; 12 B-K3, P-QKt4; 13 Q-K1, O-O; 14 Q-B2, R-Kt1; 15 QR-Q1, P-QR4 ♯. Michell—Botvinnik, Hastings, 1934-35. (2) 11 KKt-K2, R-QB1; 12 P-QKt3, P-QKt4; 13 P-QR3, P-KR4; 14 Q-K1, Kt-KKt5; 15 Q-Kt3, B-B3 =. A. Steiner—Pirc, Ujpest, 1934.

Notes continued on p. 414

## Notes continued from p. 412

(f) Or 10... B-Q2; 11 B-B3, R-QKt1; 12 Kt-Kt3, Kt-QR4; 13 Kt x Kt, Q x Kt (4); 14 Q-Q2, Q-B2; 15 P-R5 ±. Kashdan—Saemisch, Berlin, 1930.

(g) No better is 13... KR-K1; 14 R-Q1, Kt-Q2; 15 Q-Kt3, B-KB1; 16 R-B2 ±. Loevenfisch—Makogonov, Tiflis, 1937.

(h) Vajda—Knoch, Debreczen, 1925.

(i) If 9... Q-B2; 10 Q-K1 followed by R-Q1 and Q-Kt3, as in the column. Weaker, however, is 10 Q-K1, B-Q2; 11 B-B3, Kt-QR4; 12 R-Q1, R-QB1; 13 Q-B2?, Kt-B5; 14 B-B1, P-K4! =. Sosin—Botvinnik, Moscow, 1931.

(j) 10 Q-Q2 transposes to col. 1.

(k) Less precise is 11 Kt-Kt3, Q-B2; 12 K-R1, KR-Q1; 13 B-B3, P-QKt4; 14 R-B1, QR-Kt1; 15 Kt-K2, P-QR4; 16 P-Kt4, P-Q4! =. Smyslov—Kan, Moscow, 1945.

(l) Or 12... K-R1; 13 K-R1, P-QKt4; 14 P-QR3, QR-B1; 15 B-Q3, Kt-

KKt1; 16 Kt x Kt, B x Kt; 17 B-Q4, P-B3; 18 Q-R3, P-K4; 19 Kt-Q5! ±. Smyslov—Goglidse, Leningrad—Moscow, 1939.

(m) 16... P x P; 17 B x KP, Q-Kt2; 18 QR-K1, Kt-R4; 19 Q-R3. Pilnik—Bolbochan, Mar del Plata, 1943.

(n) Ragozin—Kotov, Moscow, 1945.

(o) Or 9 K-R1, B-Q2; 10 B-Kt2, P-QR3; 11 P-B4, Q-Kt3!; 12 Kt x Kt, B x Kt; 13 B-B3, KR-Q1; 14 Q-K2, Q-B2; 15 KR-K1, QR-B1 =. Kunert—Gruenfeld, Vienna, 1931.

(p) Weaker is 9... P-QR3; 10 Q-Q2, Q-B2; 11 KR-Q1, B-Q2; 12 QR-B1, QR-B1; 13 Q-K3, KR-Q1; 14 Q-Kt3, Kt-K1; 15 Kt-Kt1!, B-B3; 16 P-QB4 +. Torre—Colle, Baden-Baden, 1925.

(q) Threatening Kt x Kt followed by Kt-Q5!.

(r) Alekhine—Euwe, 9th match game, 1926—27.

## Notes continued from p. 413

(e) A possible improvement for Black is 11... K-R1; 12 P-Kt5, Kt-KKt1, e.g., 13 B-K3, B-Q2; 14 Kt-Kt3?, QR-B1; 15 R-KKt1, P-Kt4; 16 P-QR3, R-Kt1; 17 R-Kt3, P-B3 =. Michel—Najdorf, Buenos Aires, 1943. If 11... R-Q1; 12 P-Kt5, Kt-K1; 13 P-QR4 (not essential), Kt-R4; 14 P-B5, P-Q4; 15 BP x P, BP x P; 16 P x P, P-K4; 17 KKt-K2, Kt-Q3; 18 Kt-Kt3 +. Horowitz—Chernev, New York, 1944.

(f) 15... Kt-R4; 16 Kt-Kt3. Maroczy—Pirc, Sliac, 1932.

(g) Kashdan—Kotov, match U. S. A.—U.S.S.R., 1945. Note that White has no constructive plan without a K-side advance.

(h) Or 9... O-O; 10 Kt-Kt3?, Kt-QR4; 11 Kt x Kt, Q x Kt; 12 P-B4, R-Q1; 13 B-B3, B-Q2; 14 B-K3, B-B3; 15 Q-Q2, Q-Kt5! ≠. Asztalos—Bogoljubow, Bled, 1931.

(i) Stronger than 11... P-QKt3; 12 B-B3, B-Kt2; 13 B-K3, Kt-QKt5; 14 Q-K2, P-Q4; 15 P-K5, Kt-K5; 16 B x Kt ±. Maroczy—Euwe, Schevenin-

gen, 1923.

(j) 16 Q-B2, B-B3. Leonhardt—Hilse, Magdeburg, 1927.

(k) Better 10 P-KKt4 as in col. 6.

(l) Too simplifying. Again either 13 P-KKt4 or 13 Q-K1 is better.

(m) Van Doesburgh—Euwe, Zandvoort, 1936.

(n) As usual the direct K-side attack is best. Weaker lines are: (1) 9 P-QR4, Kt-QR4; 10 Q-Q3, B-Q2; 11 Kt-Kt3, Kt-B3; 12 P-B4, Kt-QKt5; 13 Q-Q2, B-B3; 14 Kt-Q4, P-Q4; 15 P-K5, Kt-K5 with chances for both sides. Sultan Khan—Pirc, Hastings, 1932—33. (2) 9 Q-K1, Kt-K4; 10 R-Q1, P-QKt4; 11 P-B4, Kt-B5; 12 B-B1, B-Kt2; 13 B-B3, R-B1; 14 P-B5, P-Kt5; 15 Kt-Kt1, P-K4 ≠. Canal—A. Steiner, Budapest, 1933.

(o) Lasker—Pirc, Moscow, 1935. If now 15... B-K2; 16 Kt-B5!, R-K1 (on 16... Q-B2; 17 Kt-QR4 wins); 17 Kt x P!, B x Kt; 18 B-Kt6ch, B-B2; 19 R-Q1ch and wins.

1 P-K4, P-QB4; 2 Kt-KB3, P-K3; 3 P-Q4, P x P; 4 Kt x P, Kt-KB3; 5 Kt-QB3, P-Q3\*

	11	12	13	14	15
6 (B-K2).....				P-KKt4!	KKt-K2 (l)
P-QR3 (a)				Kt-B3	Kt-B3
7 O-O.....	B-K3	P-QR4	P-QR4	P-Kt5	Kt-B4 (m)
Q-B2	P-QKt4	Q-B2 (i)	Q-B2 (i)	Kt x Kt?	P-QR3
8 B-K3 (b)	P-B3	P-B4	P-B4	Q x Kt	B-K2
B-K2 (c)	B-Kt2	QKt-Q2	QKt-Q2	Kt-Q2	P-QKt4
9 P-B4	Q-Q2	O-O	O-O	B-K3	P-QR3
O-O	B-K2	P-QKt3	P-QKt3	P-QR3	B-K2
10 B-B3 (d)	P-QR4! (g)	B-B3	B-B3	B-K2	O-O
QKt-Q2	P x P	B-Kt2	B-Kt2	Q-B2	O-O
11 Kt-Kt3 (e)	QKt x P	P-B5	P-B5	P-B4!	B-K3
R-Kt1	QKt-Q2	P-K4	P-K4	P-QKt3	B-Kt2
12 P-QR4	P-QB4	Kt-Kt3	Kt-Kt3	P-B5	P-B3
P-QKt3	O-O	B-K2	B-K2	Kt-K4	Q-B2
13 Q-K2	O-O	Q-K2	Q-K2	P x P	Q-K1
Kt-B4	P-Q4	O-O	O-O	P x P	QR-Q1
14 KR-B1 ± (f)	KP x P ± (h)	K-R1 ± (j)	K-R1 ± (j)	P-QR4! ± (k)	R-Q1
					Kt-K4 = (n)

## \* See p. 408, Diagram 172

(a) Sometimes known as the modernized Paulsen Defense. In the variations in cols. 11-13 Black develops his QKt at Q2; if he develops it at QB3 he transposes to the Scheveningen Variation, cols. 1-10.

(b) If 8 K-R1?, P-QKt4; 9 P-QR3, B-Kt2; 10 Q-K1, QKt-Q2; 11 B-Kt5, P-R3 (not 11... Kt x P?; 12 Kt x Kt, B x Kt; 13 B x P+); 12 B x Kt, Kt x B; 13 P-B4, B-K2 ≠. Vajda—Alekhine, Kecskemet, 1927. Or here 10 P-B3, B-K2; 11 Q-K1, O-O; 12 B-Kt5, QKt-Q2; 13 P-B4, Kt-Kt3; 14 B-Q3, P-R3; 15 B-R4, QR-B1; 16 R-B3, Kt-B5 ≠. Rethy—Flohr, Ujpest, 1934.

(c) If 8... P-QKt4; 9 P-B3, B-K2; 10 Q-Q2 ± as in col. 12.

(d) Or 10 P-QR4, P-QKt3; 11 B-B3, B-Kt2; 12 Kt-Kt3, QKt-Q2; 13 Q-K1, P-Q4!; 14 P x P, Kt x P; 15 Kt x Kt, P x Kt; 16 Q-B2 ±. Ilyin-Zhenevsky—Alatorstev, Tiflis, 1937.

(e) An alternative is 11 Q-K1, Kt-Kt3; 12 R-Q1, B-Q2; 13 P-KKt4, QR-B1;

14 P-Kt5, Kt-K1; 15 Q-B2! ±. If instead 15 Q-Kt3, Kt-B5; 16 B-B1, Q-Kt3; 17 P-Kt3, Kt-K4! =. Kan—Ragozin, Moscow, 1936.

(f) 14... B-Kt2; 15 Kt-Q2. Enoch—Bogoljubow, Berlin, 1927.

(g) Weaker is 10 P-QR3, O-O; 11 O-O, Q-B2; 12 P-KKt4, Kt-B3; 13 P-Kt5, Kt x Kt; 14 B x Kt, Kt-R4; 15 B-K3, P-K4!; 16 R-B2, P-B4 ≠. Chekhover—Kotov, Moscow, 1945.

(h) Yates—Noteboom, Prague, 1931.

(i) Two alternatives are: (1) 7... B-Q2; 8 P-R5! (an original idea), Kt-B3; 9 Kt-Kt3, B-K2; 10 O-O, O-O; 11 B-K3, Kt-QKt5; 12 B-B3, B-B3; 13 Q-K2, P-Q4; 14 KR-Q1 ±. Alekhine—Lundin, Munich, 1941. (2) 7... P-QKt3; 8 P-B4, B-Kt2; 9 B-B3, QKt-Q2; 10 O-O, B-K2? (10... R-B1; as in col. 11 is correct); 11 P-K5!, B x B; 12 Q x B, P x P; 13 Kt-B6, B-B4ch; 14 K-R1, P-K5; 15 Kt x P, Q-B2; 16 P-QKt4+. Luckis—Stahlberg, Mar del Plata, 1944.

Notes continued on p. 417

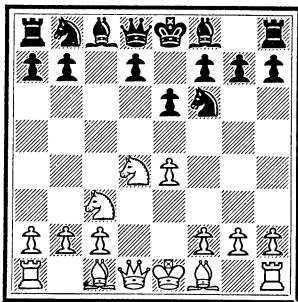
1 P-K4, P-QB4; 2 Kt-KB3, P-K3; 3 P-Q4, P x P; 4 Kt x P, Kt-KB3; 5 Kt-QB3\*\*

16	17	18	19	20
5 (P-Q3)*			B-Kt5	
6 P-KKt3			P-K5 / ... B-Q3 (i)	
Kt-B3		P-QR3	Kt-Q4 (g)	P-K4 / (j)
7 B-Kt2		B-Kt2	B-Q2	KKt-K2 (k)
Kt x Kt / ... B-K2 (b)		Q-B2	Kt x Kt	P-Q4
8 Q x Kt	O-O	O-O	P x Kt	P x P
B-K2	O-O	B-K2 (e)	B-B1 (h)	Kt x P
9 O-O	Kt x Kt (c)	K-R1	B-Q3	O-O
O-O	P x Kt	O-O	Kt-B3	Kt-QB3
10 P-Kt3	P-K5	P-B4	Kt x Kt	Kt x Kt
B-Q2	P x P	R-Q1	QP x Kt	Q x Kt
11 B-Kt2	Q x Q	P-KKt4	Q-Kt4	P-QR3
Q-R4	R x Q	P-Q4	P-KKt3	B-R4
12 KR-K1	B x P	P-K5	B-KKt5	P-QKt4
KR-Q1	R-Kt1	KKt-Q2	B-K2	B-B2
13 QR-Q1	R-Q1	Q-K2	P-KR4	R-K1
QR-B1	R x Rch	Kt-QB3	O-O	P-B4
14 P-KR3	Kt x R ± (d)	B-K3 ± (f)	O-O ±	P-QB4
Kt-K1 = (a)				Q-B2 = (l)

\* See p. 408, Diagram 172

\*\* DIAGRAM 178

cols. 16-20



[After 5 Kt-QB3]

(a) 15 Q-Q2, K-B1; 16 R-K3, B-KB3; 17 P-B4, R-B2. Konstantinopol-

sky-Kan, Sverdlovsk, 1943. Cf. also col. 5.

(b) If 7... B-Q2; 8 O-O, P-QR3; 9 B-K3, R-B1; 10 Q-K2, P-QKt4; 11 P-QR3, Kt-K4; 12 QR-Q1, Kt-B5; 13 B-B1, Kt x RP?; 14 P-K5 /, P x P; 15 Kt-B6, Q-B2; 16 Kt x KP+. Ravinsky-Panov, Moscow, 1943. Cf. also col. 18.

(c) After 9 P-Kt3, B-Q2; 10 B-Kt2, Q-R4 / (not 10... P-QR3; 11 QKt-K2, Q-R4; 12 P-QB4, Q-R4; 13 Q-Q2, KR-Q1; 14 P-KR3 ±. Bogatyrchuk-Ryumin, Moscow, 1931); 11 Q-Q2, QR-B1; 12 QR-Q1, K-R1; 13 QKt-K2, Q x P!/?; 14 R-R1, Q x B; 15 KR-Kt1, Q x Rch Black has excellent prospects. Ilyin-Zhenevsky-Lasker, Moscow, 1925.

(d) 14... Kt-Q4; 15 B-R4. Bernstein-Bogoljubow, Zurich, 1934.

Notes continued on p. 417

Notes continued from p. 415

(j) Romanovsky-Kan, Moscow, 1945.

(k) 14... B-K2; 15 P-R4 / . Keres-Bogoljubow, Salzburg, 1943.

(l) If 6 B-Q3, Kt-B3 (weaker is 6... P-QR3; 7 O-O, Q-B2; 8 K-R1, B-K2; 9 P-B4, QKt-Q2?; 10 Q-K1, P-QKt4; 11 P-QR3, B-Kt2; 12 Q-Kt3, P-Kt3; 13 B-Q2, P-KR4; 14 QR-K1 ±. Yates-Bogoljubow, Moscow, 1925); 7 KKt-K2, B-K2; 8 O-O, O-O; 9 K-R1, P-QR3; 10 P-B4, P-QKt4; 11 Kt-Kt3, B-Kt2; 12 QKt-K2, R-B1;

13 B-Q2, Kt-Kt1; 14 Kt-Kt1, QKt-Q2; 15 Q-K2, Kt-B4 ±. Yates-Verlinsky, Moscow, 1925.

(m) If now 7 P-KKt3, B-K2; 8 B-Kt2, P-QR3; 9 O-O, Q-B2; 10 P-QR4, O-O; 11 P-Kt3, R-Q1; 12 B-Kt2, Kt-QKt5; 13 Kt-R2, Kt x Kt; 14 R x Kt, P-Q4 / ±. Spielmann-Bogoljubow, Bled, 1931. Cf. cols. 16-17.

(n) Spielmann-Pirc, 1st match game, 1931.

Notes continued from p. 416

(e) Alternatives are: (1) 8... B-Q2; 9 P-KR3, Kt-B3; 10 KKt-K2 (if 10 QKt-K2, P-Q4), P-QKt4; 11 P-R3, B-K2; 12 K-R1, O-O; 13 P-KKt4, K-R1; 14 Kt-Kt3, P-Kt5; 15 P x P, QKt x P; 16 P-Kt5, Kt-Kt1; 17 P-B4 (Tolush-Kotov, Moscow, 1945) and now Black's only chance is the speculative 17... P-Q4; 18 P x P, P x P; 19 Kt x P, Kt x Kt; 20 Q x Kt, B-Kt4 with some counterplay. (2) 8... Kt-B3; 9 K-R1, B-Q2; 10 P-B4, B-K2; 11 Kt-Kt3, P-QKt4; 12 B-K3, O-O; 13 P-QR3, QR-Kt1; 14 P-Kt4 /, P-Kt5; 15 P x P, Kt x QKtP; 16 P-Kt5, Kt-K1; 17 Kt-Q4 ±. Sokolsky-Bastrikov, Sverdlovsk, 1942.

(f) 14... P-QKt4; 15 Kt x Kt, Q x Kt; 16 QR-Q1, B-Kt2; 17 P-QR3, Q-B5; 18 Q-B2. Sokolsky-Smyslov, Moscow, 1944.

(g) Forced, for if (1) 6... Q-R4 (or 6... Q-B2); 7 P x Kt /, B x Ktch; 8 P x B, Q x Pch; 9 Q-Q2 /, Q x R; 10 P-QB3, Q-Kt8; 11 B-Q3, Q-Kt3; 12 P x P, R-Kt1; 13 Q-R6++ and if (2) 6... Kt-K5; 7 Q-Kt4 /, Kt x Kt; 8 Q x P, R-B1; 9 P-QR3, Kt-Kt4ch (or 9... Q-R4; 10 Kt-Kt3, Q-Q4; 11 B-Q3, Kt-R7ch; 12 P x B, Kt x B; 13 R x Kt, Kt-B3; 14 P-KB4+. Koch-Elsner,

Berlin, 1932); 10 P x B, Kt x Kt; 11 B-KKt5, Q-Kt3; 12 B-KR6, Q x Pch; 13 P-B3, Kt-B4; 14 P x Q+. Szabo-Mikenas, Kemerli-Riga, 1939.

(h) Or 8... B-K2; 9 Q-Kt4, P-KKt3 (9... K-B1 is no better); 10 B-KR6 ±.

(i) If 6 B-K2?, Kt x P; 7 O-O, Kt-KB3+, or 7... Kt x Kt; 8 P x Kt, B-K2+.

(j) Jaffe's Variation. Inferior alternatives are: (1) 6... Kt-B3; 7 Kt x Kt, QP x Kt / (better than 7... KtP x Kt; 8 P-K5, Kt-Q4; 9 Q-Kt4, P-Kt3; 10 O-O, B x Kt; 11 P x B, P-QB4; 12 B-R3+); 8 P-K5, Kt-Q2; 9 Q-Kt4, Q-R4; 10 O-O, B x Kt; 11 P x B, Q x KP; 12 B-R3, P-QB4; 13 QR-Kt1, O-O; 14 KR-K1, Q-B2; 15 R-K3 ±. Yates-Atkins, London, 1922. (2) 6... P-Q4; 7 P-K5, Kt-K5 (not 7... Q-B2; 8 P x Kt, B x Ktch; 9 P x B, Q x Pch; 10 Q-Q2, Q x R; 11 P-QB3++); 8 B x Kt, P x B; 9 O-O, B x Kt; 10 P x B, Q-Q4; 11 Q-R5, Kt-Q2; 12 P-KB4, Q-B4; 13 Q-R3, Kt-Kt3; 14 B-K3 ±. Perlis-Jaffe, Carlsbad, 1911.

(k) Or 7 Kt-B5, O-O; 8 Kt-K3, B x Ktch; 9 P x B, P-QKt3 =.

(l) Yates-Alekhine, The Hague, 1921.



1 P-K4, P-QB4; 2 Kt-KB3, P-K3; 3 P-Q4, P x P; 4 Kt x P, Kt-KB3; 5 Kt-QB3\*

21	22	23	24	25
5 (B-Kt5)..... Kt-B3 (f)				
6 Kt-Kt5 P-Q4! (a)	KKt-Kt5 B-Kt5 (g)		P-KKt3 B-Kt5 (m)	Kt x Kt KtP x Kt (p)
7 P x P (b) P-QR3!	P-QR3 B x Ktch	B-KB4 Kt x P!	B-Kt2 P-Q4	B-Q3 (q) P-Q4
8 Q-Q4 B-K2 (c)	Kt x B P-Q4	Q-B3 P-Q4	P x P Kt x P	O-O B-K2
9 P-Q6 (d) P x Kt	P x P (h) P x P	O-O-O B x Kt	O-O! O-O (n)	Q-K2 O-O
10 Kt x P Kt-B3	B-Q3 B-Kt5	Kt-B7ch K-B1! (j)	QKt x Kt P x Kt	P-QKt3 Kt-Q2
11 Q-Q1 B-B1	P-B3 B-K3	P x B R-QKt1	P-QB3 B-K2 (o)	Kt-R4 B-B3
12 B-K3 Kt-Q4	O-O P-KR3	Kt x QP (k) P x Kt	Kt-K2 B-KKt5	R-Kt1 Kt-Kt3
13 B-B5 P-QKt3	P-B4! O-O	Q x Kt P x Q	P-KR3 B x Kt	P-K5 B-K2
14 P-QB4 P x B ♣ (e)	P-B5 ± (i) Kt x R ♣ (l)	R x Qch	Q x B ±	Kt x Kt P x Kt = (r)

\* See p. 416, Diagram 178

(a) For  $\delta \dots$  Kt-B3 see cols. 22-23.

(b) Somewhat better is 7 P-K5, KKt-Q2; 8 Q-Kt4, B-B1 but after 9 B-Kt5, Q-R4; 10 Q-QR4, Q-Kt3; 11 O-O-O, Kt-QB3 (not 11... B-B4?; 12 P-QKt4!, B-K2; 13 B x B, K x B; 14 R x P!, Q x P; 15 Kt-B7+. Mikenas-Dreiberg, Kemerl-Riga, 1939) Black's position is preferable, for if 12 P-B4?, Kt-B4!/+.

(c) If  $\delta \dots$  B-B1; 9 P x P!, P x Kt; 10 P x Pch, K-K2; 11 Q x Qch, K x Q; 12 B x P+.

(d) This sacrifice is practically forced, for if 9 Q-QR4, O-O; and if 9 Kt-R3, P x P! with advantage to Black in both cases.

(e) 15 P x Kt, Q-R4ch. Szabo-Dake, Warsaw, 1935.

(f) The Sicilian Four Knights' Game.

(g) Alternatives are: (1)  $\delta \dots$  P-Q3; 7 B-KB4, P-K4? ( $\delta \dots$  Kt-K4 is playable, although of dubious value); 8 B-Kt5, P-QR3; 9 B x Kt, P x B; 10 Kt-R3, P-B4; 11 Q-R5, P-Kt4; 12 Kt(R3) x P!, P x Kt; 13 B x P, B-QKt2; 14 B-B4, Q-B3; 15 Kt-Q5+. Tarrasch-Janowski, Vienna, 1898. (2)  $\delta \dots$  P-QR3?; 7 Kt-Q6ch, B x Kt; 8 Q x B, Q-K2; 9 B-KB4, Kt-KR4; 10 Q x Qch, K x Q; 11 B-K3, P-QKt4; 12 O-O-O ±. Kashdan-Vidmar, Prague, 1931.

(h) White can also choose the quiet alternative 9 B-Q3, P x P; 10 Kt x P, Kt x Kt; 11 B x Kt, Q x Qch; 12 K x Q, B-Q2; 13 B-K3, O-O-O; 14 K-B1, P-QKt3; 15 P-QR4 ±. John-Saemisch, Hamburg, 1921.

(i) 14... B-Q2; 15 K-R1, Kt-K4; 16 B-K2, B-B3; 17 Q-Q4, R-K1. Steiner-Goldstein, New South Wales, 1944.

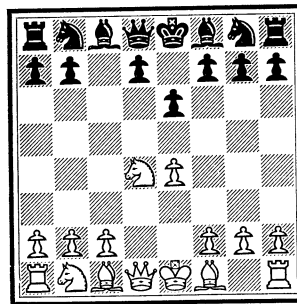
Notes continued on p. 420

1 P-K4, P-QB4; 2 Kt-KB3, P-K3; 3 P-Q4 (a)

26	27	28	29	30
3 (P x P).....				P-Q4 (o)
4 (Kt x P)* (Kt-KB3).....		P-QR3 (j)		KP x P KP x P
5 (Kt-QB3)... (Kt-B3)	B-Q3 (e) Kt-B3 (f)	P-QB4!..... Kt-QB3	Kt-QB3 Q-B2 (m)	B-K2 Kt-KB3
6 B-K2 (b) B-Kt5	Kt x Kt QP x Kt (g)	Kt-QB3 P-Q3 (k)	B-Q3 Kt-KB3	O-O B-K2
7 O-O (c) B x Kt	O-O P-K4	B-K2 Kt-B3	O-O B-K2	P x P O-O
8 P x B Kt x P	Kt-Q2 B-K3 (h)	O-O Q-B2	Q-B3! O-O	QKt-Q2 B x P
9 B-B3 P-Q4	Q-K2 B-QB4	P-QKt3 B-K2	R-K1 P-Q3	Kt-Kt3 B-K2
10 Kt x Kt P x Kt	Kt-B3 B-KKt5	B-Kt2 O-O	Q-Kt3 R-Q1	B-KKt5 P-KR3
11 B x Kt P x B	B-K3 B x B	Kt-B2 R-Q1	B-R6 Kt-K1	B-R4 Kt-B3
12 Q x Qch K x Q = (d)	Q x B Q-K2 = (i)	Kt-K3+ (l)	Kt-B5! ± (n)	P-B3 ±

\* DIAGRAM 179

cols. 26-29



[After 4 Kt x P]

(a) If 3 P-B4, Kt-QB3; 4 Kt-B3 (for 4 P-Q4, P x P; 5 Kt x P see note (j)), Kt-Q5; 5 P-Q3, Kt-K2; 6 B-K3, KKt-B3; 7 P-KKt3, P-KKt3; 8 B-Kt2, B-Kt2; 9 Q-Q2, O-O; 10 P-

KR4, P-KR4; 11 B-Kt5, P-B3 =. Willman-Fine, Hamilton, 1941.

(b) Inferior is 6 P-QR3, Q-B2; 7 B-K3, P-QR3; 8 B-K2, P-QKt4; 9 O-O, B-Kt2; 10 P-B4? (better 10 P-B3), B-B4!; 11 P-K5, Q-Kt3; 12 B-B3 (if 12 P x Kt, B x Kt; 13 B x B, Kt x B; 14 P x P, Kt x Bch; 15 K-R1, R-KKt1; 16 Q x Kt, R x P ♣), B x Kt; 13 B x B, Kt x B ♣. Green-Purdy, Sydney, 1938-39.

(c) If 7 Kt x Kt, KtP x Kt; 8 O-O, P-Q4; 9 B-KKt5, P-KR3; 10 B x Kt, Q x B; 11 P x P, KP x P; 12 Q-K1 (threatening Kt x QP), B-K2 ♣. A. Steiner-Walter, Győr, 1924.

(d) Igel-Beutum, Vienna, 1928.

(e) Or 5 Kt-Q2, P-Q4; 6 P-K5, KKt-Q2; 7 QKt-B3, Kt-QB3; 8 Kt x Kt, P x Kt; 9 B-Q3, Kt-B4; 10 O-O, B-K2; 11 B-K3, Kt x B =. Spielmann-List, Berlin, 1926.

Notes continued on p. 420

## Notes continued from p. 418

(j) Not  $10 \dots K-K2$ ;  $11 P \times B$ ,  $P-KKt4$ ?;  $12 Q \times Kt$ ,  $Q \times Kt$ ;  $13 B \times Pch$ ,  $P-B3$ ;  $14 R \times P$ ,  $P \times B$ ;  $15 R \times P$ ,  $B-Q2$ ;  $16 R-K7ch+$ . Pilnik-Villegas, Mar del Plata, 1944.

(k) If  $12 Kt-Kt5$ ,  $Q-R4$ ;  $13 B \times R$ ,  $Q \times RP$ ;  $14 B-Q6ch$ ,  $K-Kt1$ ;  $15 Kt-R3$ ,  $Kt \times B$ ;  $16 Kt-Kt1$ ,  $Kt-K4++$ .

(l)  $15 B \times R$ ,  $P-QR3$ . Becker-Asztalos, Bad Tueffer, 1929.

(m)  $6 \dots P-Q3$  transposes to cols. 16-17. If  $6 \dots P-Q4$ ;  $7 B-Kt2$ ,  $P \times P$ ;  $8 Kt \times Kt$ ,  $Q \times Qch$ ;  $9 K \times Q$ ,  $P \times Kt$ ;  $10 Kt \times P \pm$ .

(n) Not  $9 \dots KKt \times Kt$ ;  $10 P \times Kt$ ,  $B \times P$ ;  $11 Kt \times Kt$ ,  $Q \times Q$ ;  $12 R \times Q$ ,  $B-Q2$ ;  $13 R-Kt1 \pm$ . Hasenker-Mieses, Hastings, 1945-46.

## Notes continued from p. 419

(f) Alternatives are: (1)  $5 \dots P-QR3$ ;  $6 O-O$ ,  $Q-B2$ ;  $7 Q-K2$ ,  $P-Q4$ ;  $8 Kt-Q2$ ,  $Kt-B3$ ;  $9 Kt \times Kt$ ,  $P \times Kt$ ;  $10 P-QKt3$ ,  $B-Q3$ ;  $11 P-KR3$ ,  $O-O$  = Thomas-Pirc, Ujpest, 1934. (2)  $5 \dots P-Q3$ ?;  $6 O-O$ ,  $B-K2$ ;  $7 P-QB4$ ,  $QKt-Q2$ ;  $8 Kt-QB3$ ,  $P-QR3$ ;  $9 B-K3$ ,  $Q-B2$ ;  $10 R-B1$ ,  $P-QKt3$ ;  $11 P-B3$ ,  $B-Kt2$ ;  $12 Q-K1$ ,  $O-O$ ;  $13 Q-B2 \pm$ . Treybal-Flohr, Ujpest, 1934.

(g) Also good is  $6 \dots KtP \times Kt$ ;  $7 O-O$ ,  $P-Q4$ ;  $8 Kt-Q2$ ,  $B-K2$ ;  $9 Q-K2$ ,  $O-O$ ;  $10 P-KB4$ ,  $Kt-Q2$ ;  $11 Kt-Kt3$ ,  $P-QR4$ ;  $12 B-K3$ ,  $P-R5$ ;  $13 Kt-Q2$ ,  $Kt-B4$  = Foltys-L. Steiner, Maehrisch-Ostrau, 1933.

(h) Or  $8 \dots Q-B2$ ;  $9 P-QKt3$ ,  $B-QB4$ ;  $10 B-Kt2$ ,  $B-KKt5$ ;  $11 B-K2$ ,  $B-K3$  (but not  $11 \dots P-KR4$ ?;  $12 Kt-B4$ ,  $R-Q1$ ;  $13 Q-K1$ ,  $Kt-Q2$ ;  $14 B \times B!$ ,  $P \times B$ ;  $15 P-Kt4 \pm$ . Thomas-Botvinnik, Hastings, 1934-35);  $12 Kt-B3$ ,  $B-Q3$ ;  $13 Q-Q3$ ,  $O-O$ ;  $14 QR-Q1$ ,  $QR-Q1$  =

(i) Thomas-Euwe, Hastings, 1938-39.

(j) The Paulsen Defense. On  $4 \dots Kt-QB3$ ;  $5 Kt-QB3$  is best. If, however,  $5 P-QB4$  (after  $4 \dots Kt-QB3$ ),  $Kt-B3$  ( $5 \dots Q-R5$ ;  $6 Kt-QB3$ ,  $B-Kt5$ ;  $7 Kt-Kt5$ ,  $Q \times KPch$ ;  $8 B-K2$ ,  $Q-K4$ ;  $9 P-B4$ ,  $Q-Kt1$ ;  $10 P-QR3$ ,  $B-K2$ ;  $11 Kt-$

(o) Alexander-Mieses, 1941.

(p) Weaker is  $6 \dots QP \times Kt$ ;  $7 Q \times Qch$ ,  $K \times Q$ ;  $8 P-K5$ ,  $Kt-Q2$ ;  $9 P-B4$ ,  $B-Kt5$ ;  $10 B-Q2$ ,  $P-QKt3$ ;  $11 O-O-O$ ,  $B-Kt2$ ;  $12 Kt-K4$ ,  $B-K2$ ;  $13 B-K3$ ,  $K-B2$ ;  $14 B-K2 \pm$ . Opocensky-Hasenfuss, Folkestone, 1933.

(q) Or  $7 P-K5$ ,  $Kt-Q4$ ;  $8 Kt-K4$ ,  $Q-B2$  ( $8 \dots P-KB4$ ;  $9 P \times P$  e.p.,  $Kt \times P$ ;  $10 Kt-Q6ch$ ,  $B \times Kt$ ;  $11 Q \times B$ ,  $Q-R4ch$ ;  $12 B-Q2$ ,  $Q-Q4$  = is also good. Yates-Em. Lasker, New York, 1924. Or here  $11 \dots Q-Kt3$ ;  $12 B-Q3$ ,  $P-B4$  =);  $9 P-KB4$ ,  $P-KB4!$ ;  $10 P \times P$  e.p.,  $Kt \times P(B3)$ ;  $11 Kt \times Ktch$ ,  $P \times Kt$ ;  $12 Q-R5ch$ ,  $K-Q1$  = (Euwe).

(r) Treybal-Tarrasch, Baden-Baden, 1925.

$K4 \pm$ . Spielmann-Tartakower, Vienna 1928);  $6 Kt-QB3$ ,  $B-Kt5$ ;  $7 Kt \times Kt$  (if  $7 P-B3$ ,  $P-Q4!$  = Teller-Tartakower, Hastings, 1927-28),  $KtP \times Kt$ ;  $8 B-Q3$ ,  $P-K4$ ;  $9 O-O$ ,  $O-O$ ;  $10 B-Q2$ ,  $B-K2$ ;  $11 Q-K2$ ,  $P-Q3$ ;  $12 P-QKt4$ ,  $B-Kt5$ ;  $13 P-B3$ ,  $B-K3$ ;  $14 P-QR4$ ,  $P-Q4$  = Czerniak-Najdorf, Mar del Plata, 1942.

(k) On  $6 \dots B-Kt5$ ;  $7 B-Q3$  retains the advantage, while if  $6 \dots Q-B2$ ;  $7 P-QR3$ ,  $B-K2$ ;  $8 B-K2$ ,  $O-O$ ;  $9 O-O$ ,  $P-Q3$ ;  $10 B-K3$ ,  $QKt-Q2$ ;  $11 R-B1$ ,  $P-QKt3$ ;  $12 P-QKt4$ ,  $B-Kt2$ ;  $13 P-B3$ ,  $QR-B1$ ;  $14 Q-K1$ ,  $Q-Kt1$ ;  $15 Q-B2+$ . Spielmann-Tartakower, Marienbad, 1925.

(l) Alekhine-Erdelyi, Prague, 1931.

(m) Black's best course is to transpose to the Scheveningen with  $5 \dots P-Q3$ . If  $5 \dots P-QKt4$ ;  $6 B-Q3$ ,  $B-Kt2$ ;  $7 O-O$ ,  $P-Q3$ ;  $8 K-R1$ ,  $Kt-KB3$ ;  $9 P-QR3$ ,  $QKt-Q2$ ;  $10 P-B4$ ,  $B-K2$ ;  $11 Q-K2$ ,  $Q-B2$ ;  $12 B-Q2$ ,  $O-O$ ;  $13 R-B3 \pm$ . Bogoljubow-Rubinstein, London, 1922.

(n)  $12 \dots B-B1$ ;  $13 Kt-K3$ ,  $Kt-QB3$ ;  $14 P-B4$ . Bogoljubow-Dreiberg, Kemerri-Riga, 1939.

(o) Marshall's Variation. The column is R6ti-Kostich, Teplitz-Schoenau, 1922.

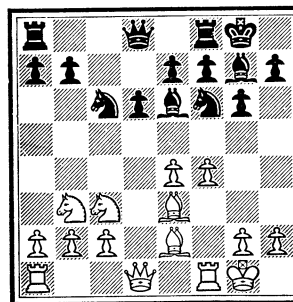
## DRAGON VARIATION

$1 P-K4$ ,  $P-QB4$ ;  $2 Kt-KB3$ ,  $Kt-QB3$ ;  $3 P-Q4$ ,  $P \times P$ ;  $4 Kt \times P$ ,  $Kt-B3$ ;  $5 Kt-QB3$ ,  $P-Q3$ ;  $6 B-K2$ ,  $P-KKt3$ ;  $7 B-K3$ ,  $B-Kt2$ ;  $8 O-O$ ,  $O-O$ ;  $9 Kt-Kt3$ ,  $B-K3$ ;  $10 P-B4$  (a)\*

	31	32	33	34	35
10	$Kt-QR4$			$Q-B1$	$Kt-Q2$ (p)
11	$P-B5!$ (b)			$P-KR3$	$P-B5$
	$B-B5!$			$R-Q1$ (m)	$QB \times Kt$
12	$P-Kt4!$ (c)	$B-Q3$		$B-B3$ (n)	$RP \times B$
	$Kt-Q2$	$B \times B!$ (e)	$Kt \times Kt$ (j)	$Kt-Q2$	$Kt-B4$
13	$Kt \times Kt$	$P \times B$	$RP \times Kt$	$Kt-Q5!?$	$B-B3$
	$B \times B$	$P-Q4!$ (f)	$B \times B$	$B \times KtP$	$Kt-K4$
14	$Q \times B$	$Kt \times Kt$ (g)	$P \times B$	$R-Kt1$	$Kt-Q5$
	$Q \times Kt$	$Q \times Kt$	$P-Q4$	$B-Kt2$	$P-K3$ (q)
15	$Kt-Q5$	$P-K5$ (h)	$B-Q4!$	$P-B4$	$Kt-B4$
	$KR-K1$	$P-Q5!$	$P \times KP$	$R-K1$	$Q-K2$
16	$Q-B2$	$B \times P$	$QP \times P$	$Q-Q2$	$P-QKt4$
	$Kt-K4$	$Kt-Q2$	$P-QR3$ (k)	$Q-Q1$	$Kt(B4)-Q2$
17	$P \times P$	$P-B6$	$P-K5$	$B-K2$	$Q-K2$
	$RP \times P$	$P \times P$	$Kt-K1$	$P-B4$	$KR-B1$
18	$B-Q4 \pm$ (d)	$P \times P$	$P-QKt4 \pm$ (l)	$P \times P$	$P-B3 \pm$
		$B \times P!$ = (i)		$B \times P$ = (o)	

## \* DIAGRAM 180

cols. 31-35

[After  $10 P-B4$ ]

(a) If  $10 P-B3$ ,  $P-Q4!$  equalizes at once:  $11 P \times P$ ,  $Kt \times P$ ;  $12 Kt \times Kt$ ,  $Q \times Kt$ ;  $13 Q \times Q$ ,  $B \times Q$  with an even ending. Schoenmann-Rellstab, Hamburg, 1932.

(b)  $11 Kt \times Kt$  leads to no advantage:  $11 \dots Q \times Kt$ ;  $12 B-B3$  and now: (1)  $12 \dots B-B5$ ;  $13 R-K1$ ,  $KR-Q1$ ;  $14 Q-Q2$ ,  $Q-B2$ ;  $15 QR-B1$ ,  $P-K4!$ ;  $16 P \times P$  (not  $16 P-QKt3?$ ,  $P-Q4!$  +). Rausser-Botvinnik, Leningrad, 1933),  $P \times P$  =.

(2)  $12 \dots QR-B1$ ;  $13 Kt-Q5$ ,  $B \times Kt$ ;  $14 P \times B$ ,  $Kt-Q2$ ;  $15 P-B3$ ,  $Kt-Kt3$ ;  $16 B-B2$ ,  $R-B2$  = L. Steiner-Winter, Lodz, 1935.

Notes continued on p. 422

Notes continued from p. 421

(c) Less precise is  $12 Kt \times Kt, B \times B; 13 Q \times B$  ( $13 Kt \times P$  leads to nothing after  $13... B \times Q; 14 Kt \times Q, B \times P; 15 Kt-B6, KR-K1 =$ . Lasker—Ryumin, Moscow, 1936),  $Q \times Kt; 14 P-KKt4, Q-Kt5!$  ( $14... Kt-Q2$  transposes back to the column, while if  $14... P-KR3; 15 K-R1, QR-B1; 16 P-Kt5, RP \times P; 17 B \times KtP, KR-K1; 18 Q-Kt2, K-R2; 19 P \times P ch, P \times P; 20 Kt-Q5 \pm$ . Rabinovitch—Lissitsin, Leningrad, 1939);  $15 QR-Q1, KR-K1; 16 B-Q4!, Kt-Q2; 17 B \times B, K \times B; 18 Q-B3, P-KB3; 19 P-Kt5$  and Black has more counterplay than in the column. Campbell—Shaw, correspondence, 1941. If  $12 P-K5?, B \times B; 13 Q \times B, P \times KP; 14 QR-Q1, Q-B2; 15 Kt-Kt5, Q-B5+$ .

(d) Milner-Barry—Foltys, Buenos Aires, 1939.

(e) A move suggested by the English amateur H. D'O. Bernard.

(f) Less accurate is  $13... P-QR3; 14 P-Kt4, Kt \times Kt; 15 P \times Kt, Kt-Q2; 16 P-Q4, P-K3$  (Sulik—Bolbochan, Mar del Plata, 1941);  $17 P-Kt5, KP \times P; 18 P \times P, P-B3; 19 P \times KtP, RP \times P; 20 Q-B3+$ .

(g) The alternatives are: (1)  $14 P-K5, Kt \times Kt; 15 P \times Kt(B6), B \times P; 16 Q \times Kt, P-Q5; 17 B-R6, P \times Kt; 18 B \times R, P \times KtP; 19 QR-Kt1, Q-Q5 ch \mp$ . (2)  $14 B-Q4, Kt-B3; 15 B \times Kt, B \times B; 16 Kt \times P, B \times P =$ . (3)  $14 Kt-Q4, P \times KP; 15 QP \times P, Kt-B5 \mp$  (Marchisotti).

(h) If now  $15 B-Q4?$  (cf. col. 33),  $QP \times P; 16 QP \times P, QR-Q1+$ .

(i)  $19 B \times B, Q-Kt3 ch; 20 K-R1, Kt \times B; 21 Q-B3, K-Kt2; 22 QR-K1, QR-Q1; 23 R-K7, R-Q2$ . Analysis by Marchisotti.

(j) Other inferior continuations are: (1)  $12... P-QKt4; 13 Kt \times P, P-Q4; 14 Kt \times$

$Kt, Q \times Kt; 15 B \times B, P \times B; 16 Kt-B3, QR-Kt1; 17 R-Kt1 \pm$ . Stahlberg—Iliesco, Mar del Plata, 1942. (2)  $12... P-Q4; 13 P-K5, Kt \times Kt; 14 KP \times Kt!, B \times P; 15 RP \times Kt, B \times B; 16 Q \times B, P-Q5; 17 P \times P, P \times Kt; 18 P \times BP ch, R \times P; 19 P \times P \pm$ . Kashdan—Denker, New York, 1941.

(k) Or  $16... Q-B2; 17 P-K5, QR-Q1!; 18 P \times Kt, B \times P$  (Spielmann—Petrov, Riga, 1934);  $19 R-R4!, P-QKt4; 20 Kt \times P, Q-Q2; 21 Q-K2, P-QR3; 22 B \times B, P \times Kt; 23 B \times P, P \times R; 24 B \times KR \pm$ . Analysis by Spielmann. If here  $17... KR-Q1?; 18 P \times P, RP \times P; 19 P \times Kt, B \times P; 20 R \times B!, P \times R; 21 Q-Kt4+$ . Denker—Gonzalez, New York, 1945.

(l)  $18... Kt-B2; 19 P-B6, P \times P; 20 P \times P, B-R3; 21 B-Kt6$ . Spielmann—Landau, 5th match game, 1938.

(m) Weaker choices are: (1)  $11... P-QR4; 12 Kt-Q4, Kt \times Kt; 13 B \times Kt, B-B5; 14 B-Q3, P-K4; 15 P \times P, P \times P; 16 B-K3, Q-B3; 17 B-Kt5 \pm$ . Alexander—Euwe, The Hague, 1939. (2)  $11... Kt-K1; 12 Q-Q2, P-B4; 13 P \times P, P \times P; 14 QR-K1, K-R1; 15 Kt-Q4, B-Kt1; 16 P-KKt4!+$ . Réti—Tartakower, New York, 1924.

(n) Not  $12 K-R2?, P-Q4!; 13 P-K5, Kt-K5; 14 Kt-Kt5, P-Kt4! \mp$ . Thomas—Flohr, Bournemouth, 1939.

(o) Smyslov—Veresov, Moscow, 1944.

(p) Or  $10... P-QR3; 11 B-B3, Q-B2; 12 Kt-Q5, B \times Kt; 13 P \times B, Kt-Kt1; 14 R-K1, R-K1; 15 Q-Q2, QKt-Q2; 16 R-K2 \pm$ . Szabo—Gygli, Warsaw, 1935.

(q) Better than  $14... Kt \times B ch; 15 Q \times Kt, Kt-Q2; 16 P-B3, Kt-B3?; 17 B \times P, Kt \times Kt; 18 P \times Kt \pm$ . Aitken—Denker, Hastings, 1945-46.

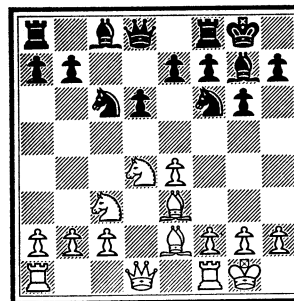
## DRAGON VARIATION

$1 P-K4, P-QB4; 2 Kt-KB3, Kt-QB3; 3 P-Q4, P \times P; 4 Kt \times P, Kt-B3; 5 Kt-QB3, P-Q3; 6 B-K2, P-KKt3; 7 B-K3, B-Kt2; 8 O-O, O-O$  (a)\*

	36	37	38	39	40
9	$Kt-Kt3$	.....	$P-KR3$	.....	$Q-Q2$ (o)
	$P-QR4$	.....	$P-Q4!$ (h)	$Q-Kt3!$	$P-Q4!$ (p)
10	$P-QR4$	$P-B4$ (e)	$P \times P$	$Q-Q3!$ (l)	$P \times P$
	$B-K3$	$B-Q2$	$Kt \times P$ (i)	$Kt-KKt5!$ (m)	$Kt \times P$
11	$Kt-Q4$	$B-B3$	$QKt \times Kt$	$Kt-Q5$	$QKt \times Kt$ (q)
	$P-Q4!$ (b)	$R-B1$	$Q \times Kt$	$B \times Kt!$	$Kt \times Kt$ (r)
12	$Kt \times B$ (c)	$Kt-Q5$ (f)	$B-B3$	$Kt \times Q$	$B-QB4$
	$P \times Kt$	$Kt \times Kt$	$Q-QR4!$ (j)	$B \times B ch$	$Kt-B4$
13	$P \times P$	$P \times Kt$	$Kt \times Kt$	$K-R1$	$QR-Q1$
	$P \times P$	$Kt-R4$	$P \times Kt$	$B \times Kt$	$B-K3$
14	$Kt-Kt5$	$Kt \times Kt$	$B \times BP$	$B \times Kt$	$Q-Kt4$
	$P-K4$	$Q \times Kt$	$R-Kt1$	$B \times B$	$Q-B1$
15	$P-QB3$	$P-B3$	$Q-Q5$	$P-B5$	$B-B5$
	$K-R1$	$KR-K1$	$Q-B2$	$B-KR4$ (n)	$K-R1$
16	$Q-Kt3 \pm$ (d)	$Q-Q2$	$B-R4$	$QR-K1$	$B-Kt3$
		$P-QKt4 =$ (g)	$B \times KtP \mp$ (k)	$P-B3 =$	$P-QR4 =$ (s)

## \* DIAGRAM 181

cols. 36-40



[After 8... O-O]

(a) If  $8... P-Q4?; 9 P \times P, Kt \times P; 10 QKt \times Kt, Q \times Kt; 11 B-B3, Q-B5; 12 Kt \times Kt, P \times Kt; 13 P-QKt3, Q-B6; 14 Q-Q3!, Q \times Q; 15 P \times Q, B \times R; 16 B \times P ch+$ . Or  $8... Kt-KKt5??; 9 B \times Kt, B \times B; 10 Kt \times Kt++$ .

(b) Or  $11... Kt \times Kt; 12 B \times Kt, R-$

$B1; 13 Q-Q2, B-B5; 14 QR-Q1, Q-B2; 15 KR-K1, KR-Q1; 16 P-R3, Q-B3; 17 Q-K3, B \times B; 18 R \times B, Kt-Q2; 19 Kt-Q5 \pm$ . Horowitz—Reshevsky, 4th match game, 1941.

(c) An improvement on  $12 P \times P, B \times P; 13 Kt \times B, KKt \times Kt; 14 Kt \times Kt, P \times Kt; 15 B-Q4, P-K4; 16 B-B5, R-K1 =$ . Spielmann—Alekhine, Margate, 1938.

(d) Horowitz—Reshevsky, 2nd match game, 1941.

(e) If  $10 P-QR4?, B-K3; 11 P-B4, R-B1; 12 B-B3, Kt-Q2; 13 K-R1, Kt-Kt3; 14 P-B5, B-B5 \mp$ . Thomas—Petrov, Prague, 1931.

(f)  $12 P-Kt4$  is more aggressive.

(g) Thomas—Alekhine, Nottingham, 1936.

(h) Better than  $9... B-Q2; 10 Q-Q2, R-B1; 11 QR-Q1, P-QR3; 12 P-B4, Q-B2; 13 Kt-B3!, KR-Q1; 14 KR-K1, Q-R4; 15 B-B1 \pm$ . Zinner—Gülz, Braunau, 1925.

Notes continued on p. 426

1 P-K4, P-QB4; 2 Kt-KB3, Kt-QB3; 3 P-Q4, P x P; 4 Kt x P, Kt-B3; 5 Kt-QB3, P-Q3; 6 B-K2, P-KKt3\*

	41	42	43	44	45
7 (B-K3).....				O-O	
(B-Kt2)				B-Kt2	
8 Kt-Kt3.....	Q-Q2.....	P-B3 (i)		Kt-Kt3	
B-K3	O-O (f)	O-O		O-O	
9 P-B4 (a)	O-O-O (g)	Kt-Kt3 (j)	P-B3 !.....	P-B4	
O-O	KKt-Kt5 (h)	P-Q4 ! (k)	B-K3 (n)	P-QKt4 ! (p)	
10 P-Kt4	B x Kt	P x P	Kt-Q5 !	B-B3	
P-Q4 ! (b)	B x B	Kt-QKt5	P-QKt4 !	Q-Kt3ch	
11 P-B5 (c)	P-B3	P-Q6 (l)	P-QR4 !	K-R1	
B-B1 !	Kt x Kt	Q x P	P x P	P-Kt5	
12 P x QP	B x Kt	B-B5	R x P	Kt-Q5	
Kt-Kt5	B-K3	Q x Qch	B x Kt	Kt x Kt	
13 P-Q6 ! (d)	P-KR4	R x Q !	P x B	P x Kt	
Q x P !	P-KR3	Kt-B3	Q-Kt3ch	Kt-R4	
14 B-B5	B x B	B-Kt5	K-R1	R-K1	
Q-B5 !	K x B	Kt-Q2 !	Kt-Kt1 (o)	Kt x Kt	
15 R-KB1	Kt-Q5	B-R3	P-QB4 ±	RP x Kt	
Q x RP = (e)	R-B1 =	Kt(Q2)-K4 = (m)		Q-B2 =	

\* See p. 409, Diagram 173

(a) Or 9 Q-Q2, P-Q4 !; 10 O-O-O, Kt x P; 11 Kt x Kt, P x Kt; 12 Q x Qch, R x Q; 13 Kt-B5, B-QB1; 14 R x Rch, K x R; 15 Kt x KP, K-B2 =. Milner-Barry—Landau, Hastings, 1938-39.

(b) If 10...Kt-QR4; 11 P-Kt5, Kt-K1; 12 Q-Q2, R-B1; 13 B-Q4, Kt-B5; 14 B x Kt, R x B; 15 O-O-O, Q-Q2; 16 Q-Q3+. Kan—Botvinnik, Moscow, 1936.

(c) Or 11 P-K5, P-Q5 !; 12 Kt x P, Kt x Kt; 13 B x Kt, Kt x P ! =. Loevenfisch—Botvinnik, Moscow, 1936.

(d) Best. If 13 P x P, RP x P !; 14 B-B3, Kt x KtP !; 15 B x Kt, B x B; 16 Q x B, B x Ktch; 17 P x B, Kt x Pch; 18 K-K2, Kt x R; 19 R x Kt, Q x P+, and if 13 B-B3, P x P; 14 P-Kt5, Kt-Kt5 ! ±. Bondarevsky—Alatortsev, Tiflis, 1937.

(e) 16 B x Kt, Kt x P !; 17 B x Kt, Q-Kt6ch; 18 R-B2, Q-Kt8ch; 19 R-

Br. Drawn. Alekhine—Botvinnik, Nottingham, 1936.

(f) 8...Kt-KKt5 is premature because of 9 B x Kt, B x B; 10 Kt-Q5 (another possibility is 10 P-B3, B-Q2; 11 Kt x Kt, P x Kt; 12 B-Q4, P-B3; 13 P-KR4, P-KR4; 14 P-KKt4 !, P x P; 15 Q-Kt2 with a strong attack. Van den Bosch—Thomas, Prague, 1931), O-O; 11 P-QB4, B-Q2; 12 O-O, P-B4 (better 12...Kt x Kt and ...B-QB3); 13 P x P, B x P; 14 Kt x B, R x Kt; 15 QR-Q1 ±. Bogatyrychuk—Botvinnik, Leningrad, 1933.

(g) Weaker alternatives are: (1) 9 Kt-Kt3, B-K3; 10 B-KR6, B x B; 11 Q x B, Q-Kt3 !; 12 Q-Q2, KR-Q1; 13 P-KR3, P-Q4; 14 P x P, B x QP; 15 Q-Kt5, Kt-Q5 ±. Horowitz—Reshevsky, New York, 1938. (2) 9 R-Q1, P-Q4 !; 10 Kt x Kt, P x Kt; 11 O-O, Q-B2; 12 P x P, P x P; 13 Kt-Kt5, Q-Kt2 ±. Tylor—Foltys, Margate, 1937.

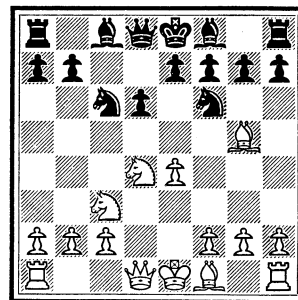
Notes continued on p. 426

1 P-K4, P-QB4; 2 Kt-KB3, Kt-QB3; 3 P-Q4, P x P; 4 Kt x P, Kt-B3; 5 Kt-QB3, P-Q3

	RICHTER ATTACK				
	46	47	48	49	50
6 (B-K2).....	B-KKt5 (d)*				
P-K4 (a)	P-K3 (e)				
7 Kt-B3 (b)	Q-Q2.....				B-Kt5 (o)
P-KR3	B-K2.....			P-QR3	B-Q2
8 O-O	O-O-O			O-O-O	O-O
B-K2	O-O.....	P-QR3		B-Q2 (l)	B-K2
9 B-K3	P-B4 (f)	B x Kt		P-B4	K-R1
O-O	P-QR3 (g)	P x B		P-R3	P-KR3
10 Q-Q2	B-K2	P-B4		B-R4 !	B-K3
B-K3	B-Q2	B-Q2		B-K2 (m)	O-O(p)
11 QR-Q1	Kt-Kt3	P-B5		B-K2	P-B4
R-K1	R-B1 (h)	Kt x Kt		Q-B2	Kt x Kt
12 P-KR3	B-B3	Q x Kt		B-B2	Q x Kt
R-QB1	R-B2	Q-R4		R-QB1	B x B
13 Kt-R2	P-Kt4	B-K2 (j)		Kt-Kt3	Kt x B
Kt-QR4	P-Kt4	Q-B4 !		P-QKt4	P-Q4 !
14 Q-K1 ± (c)	B x Kt	Q-Q2		B-B3	P-K5
	P x B ± (i)	P-KR4 ! = (k)		Kt-QR4 = (n)	Kt-K5 ±

\* DIAGRAM 182

cols. 47-50



[After 6 B-KKt5]

(a) 6...P-K3 transposes to the Scheveningen Variation, cols. 1-10.

(b) The alternative is 7 Kt-Kt3, B-K2; 8 O-O, O-O; 9 P-B4, P x P; 10 B x P, B-K3; 11 B-Q3, Kt-K4; 12 K-R1, Q-Kt3; 13 Q-K2, Kt x B; 14 P x Kt, B x Kt; 15 B-K3 ±. Botvinnik—Bole-

slavsky, Sverdlovsk, 1943.

(c) 14...Kt-B5; 15 B-B1. Loevenfisch—Boleslavsky, Kuibyshev, 1943.

(d) The Richter Attack.

(e) Forced, for if 6...Q-R4; 7 B x Kt, KtP x B; 8 B-Kt5, B-Q2; 9 O-O, O-O-O; 10 Kt-Kt3, Q-Kt3; 11 P-QR4, P-QR4; 12 Kt-Q5, Q-R2; 13 Q-Q2, R-Kt1; 14 K-R1, P-B4; 15 P-KB3+. Alekhine—Frentz, Paris, 1933.

(f) If 9 KKt-Kt5, Q-R4 ! and the Pawn cannot well be taken, e.g., 10 B x Kt, B x B; 11 Q x P ?, P-QR3 !+, or 11 Kt x QP ?, R-Q1; 12 P-B4, P-K4 ±. Similarly, if 9 B x Kt ?, B x B; 10 Kt x Kt, P x Kt; 11 Q x P, Q-R4; 12 B-B4, B-R3; 13 B x B, B x Kt ±. Keres—Heinicke, Bad Nauheim, 1936.

(g) If 9...Kt x Kt; 10 Q x Kt, Q-R4; 11 B-B4, P-KR3; 12 B-R4, P-R3; 13 P-K5, P x P; 14 P x P, B-B4; 15 Q-B4, Kt-Q2; 16 Kt-K4 !+. Prins—Devos, Maastricht, 1946.

Notes continued on p. 427

## Notes continued from p. 423

- (i) Or  $10...Kt-QKt5$ ;  $11 P-Q6$ ,  $Q \times P$ ;  $12 QKt-Kt5$  (weaker  $12 KKt-Kt5$ ,  $Q-Kt1$ ;  $13 B-B3$ ,  $B-K3$ ;  $14 B-B5$ ,  $Kt-B3$ ;  $15 Q-K2$ ,  $Kt-Q2 \mp$ . Treybal-Petrow, Folkestone, 1933),  $Q-Kt1$ ;  $13 P-QB4 =$ . Weenink-Réti, match, 1928.
- (j) More aggressive than  $12...Q-B5$ ;  $13 Kt \times Kt$ ,  $P \times Kt$ ;  $14 P-B3$ ,  $B-K3 =$ . Tarrasch-Lipke, Vienna, 1898.
- (k) Ravinsky-Lissitsin, Moscow, 1944.
- (l) An alternative is the speculative  $10 P-K5$ ,  $P \times P$ ;  $11 P \times P$ ,  $Kt \times P$ ;  $12 Kt-B5$ ,  $Q-K3$ ;  $13 Kt \times B$ ,  $K \times Kt$ ;  $14 Q-Q2$  with some attack for the Pawn.
- (m) Weaker is  $10...Q-B2$ ;  $11 P-QR3$ ,  $B-Q2$ ;  $12 Kt(B3)-Kt5$ ,  $Q-B1$ ;  $13 P-B4$ ,  $B-Kt5$ ;  $14 Kt \times Kt$ ,  $P \times Kt$ ;  $15 Kt-B3 \pm$ . Treybal-Flohr, Muenchengratz, 1933. And if  $10...Q \times P?$ ;  $11 Kt \times Kt$ ,  $P \times Kt$ ;  $12 QR-Kt1$ ,  $Q-R6$ ;  $13 Kt-Q5/+$ .
- (n) Ahues-Richter, Berlin, 1930.
- (o) Against other moves  $...P-Q4$  is always a strong reply. E.g., (1)  $9 K-R1?$ ,  $P-Q4!$ ;  $10 P \times P$ ,  $Kt \times P$ ;  $11 QKt \times Kt$ ,  $Q \times Kt$ ;  $12 B-B3$ ,  $Q-B5$ ;  $13 P-B3?$ ,  $Kt \times Kt$ ;  $14 P \times Kt$ ,  $B-K3 \mp$ . Vajda-Kmoch, Prague, 1931. (2)  $9 P-B3$ ,  $P-Q4!$ ;  $10 P \times P$ ,  $Kt \times P$ ;  $11 QKt$

$\times Kt$ ,  $Q \times Kt$ ;  $12 Kt \times Kt$ ,  $Q \times Kt$ ;  $13 P-B3$ ,  $B-K3 =$ . Barth-Flohr, Zwickau, 1939.

(p) The theoretically most desirable reply. Other possibilities are: (1)  $9...B-Q2$ ;  $10 QR-Q1$ ,  $P-QR3$ ;  $11 P-B3$ ,  $R-B1$ ;  $12 K-R1$ ,  $Kt-QR4$ ;  $13 B-R6$ ,  $Kt-B5$ ;  $14 B \times Kt$ ,  $R \times B$ ;  $15 B \times B$ ,  $K \times B =$ . Nimzovitch-Tartakower, Bled, 1931. (2)  $9...Kt-KKt5$ ;  $10 B \times Kt$ ,  $B \times B$ ;  $11 P-B4$ ,  $B-K3!$  (if  $11...B-Q2$ ;  $12 QR-Q1$ ,  $R-B1$ ;  $13 Kt-Q5$ ,  $Kt \times Kt$ ;  $14 B \times Kt$ ,  $B \times Bch$ ;  $15 Q \times B$ ,  $R \times P$ ;  $16 P-B5!$  with a strong attack. Richter-Petrow, Bad Harzburg, 1938);  $12 P-QKt3$ ,  $R-B1$ ;  $13 QKt-K2$ ,  $P-QKt4!$ ;  $14 QR-B1$ ,  $Kt \times Kt$ ;  $15 B \times Kt$ ,  $B \times Bch =$ . Zollner-Gilg, Gablonz, 1938.

(q) If instead  $11 KKt \times Kt$ ,  $P \times Kt$ ;  $12 Kt \times Kt$ ,  $P \times Kt$ ;  $13 QR-Q1$ ,  $Q-B2$ ;  $14 Q \times P$ ,  $B-K3$ ;  $15 Q-QB5$ ,  $KR-B1 \mp$ . Tylor-Landau, Hastings, 1938-39.

(r) Necessary, for if  $11...Q \times Kt?$ ;  $12 B-B3$ ,  $Q-B5$ ;  $13 P-QKt3$ ,  $Q-R3$ ;  $14 Kt \times Kt$ ,  $P \times Kt$ ;  $15 B-R6 \pm$ . L. Steiner.

(s)  $17 Q-R3$ ,  $P-R5$ ;  $18 B-B4$ ,  $Kt-Q3$ ;  $19 B-K2$ ,  $B \times Kt$ ;  $20 R \times B$ ,  $Q-K3$ . Pilnik-Iliesco, Mar del Plata, 1943.

## Notes continued from p. 424

- (h)  $9...R-K1$  leads to variations analogous to those in col. 65. If  $9...B-Q2$ ;  $10 P-B3$ ,  $R-B1$ ;  $11 P-KKt4$ ,  $Kt-K4$ ;  $12 P-KR4$ ,  $Kt-B5$ ;  $13 B \times Kt$ ,  $R \times B$ ;  $14 P-R5$ ,  $Q-R4$ ;  $15 Kt-Kt3 \pm$ . Michel-Engels, Mar del Plata, 1941.
- (i) Or  $8 P-KR3$ ,  $O-O$ ;  $9 Q-Q2$ ,  $P-Q4!$ ;  $10 P \times P$ ,  $Kt \times P$ ;  $11 QKt \times Kt$ ,  $Kt \times Kt$ ;  $12 B \times Kt$ ,  $Q \times Kt$ ;  $13 B \times B$ ,  $Q \times KtP \mp$ . Tartakower-Denker, Hastings, 1945-46.
- (j) Again if  $9 Q-Q2$ ,  $P-Q4$ ;  $10 Kt \times Kt$ ,  $P \times Kt$ ;  $11 P-K5$ ,  $Kt-Q2$ ;  $12 P-B4$ ,  $P-K3$ ;  $13 O-O$ ,  $Q-R4$ ;  $14 P-QR3$ ,  $Q-B2$ ;  $15 P-QKt4$ ,  $P-B3 =$ . L. Steiner-Herzog, Machrisch-Ostrau, 1933.
- (k) An improvement on  $9...B-K3$ ;  $10 Kt-Q5$ ,  $B \times Kt$ ;  $11 P \times B$ ,  $Kt-Kt5$ ;

$12 P-QB4$ ,  $Q-B1$ ;  $13 Q-Q2 \pm$ . Belavienetz-Tolush, Leningrad-Moscow, 1939.

(l) If  $11 B-QB4$ ,  $Q-B2!$ ;  $12 B-K2$  (or  $12 Kt-Q2$ ,  $R-Q1$ ),  $R-Q1 \mp$ .

(m)  $16 Kt-Q5$ ,  $P-QR3!$ ;  $17 B-K2$ ,  $B-B4$ ;  $18 P-B3$ ,  $KR-Q1$ . Belavienetz-Loevenfisch, Leningrad-Moscow, 1939.

(n) If now  $9...P-Q4?$ ;  $10 Kt \times P$ ,  $Kt \times Kt$ ;  $11 P \times Kt$ ,  $Kt-Kt5$ ;  $12 P-QB4+$ .

(o) Not  $14...Kt-QKt5$  (Euwe-Landau, 4th match game, 1939);  $15 R-R5!+$ .

(p) Rauser's suggestion. If now  $10 Kt \times P$ ,  $Kt \times P$  and if  $10 B \times P$ ,  $Kt \times P$ ;  $11 B \times Kt$ ,  $Q-Kt3ch$  and Black stands well in both cases. Some alternatives to the text are: (1)  $9...B-K3$ ;  $10 P-B5$ ,  $B \times Kt$ ;  $11 RP \times B$ ,  $Q-Kt3ch$ ;  $12 K-R1$ ,  $Kt-$

## Additional notes continued from p. 424

$K4$ ;  $13 P-KKt4$ ,  $Q-B3$ ;  $14 R-R4!$ ,  $P \times P$ ;  $15 Kt-Q5! \pm$ . Romanovsky-Rabinovitch, Moscow, 1935. (2)  $9...B-Q2$ ;  $10 P-Kt4!$  (or  $10 B-B3$ ,  $R-B1$ ;  $11 K-R1$ ,  $P-QR3$ ;  $12 P-QR4$ ,  $Kt-QR4?$ ;  $13 P-K5!$ ,  $Kt-K1$ ;  $14 Kt \times Kt+$ . Alekhine-Desler, Hamburg, 1930),  $Q-B1$ ;  $11 P-Kt5$ ,  $Kt-K1$ ;  $12 Kt-Q5$ ,  $P-B4$ ;  $13 P-K5!$ ,  $P \times P$ ;  $14 Kt-B5$ ,  $P-$

$K3$ ;  $15 Kt-Kt6+$ . Keres-Grau, Warsaw, 1935. (3)  $9...P-QR3$ ;  $10 B-B3$ ,  $Q-B2$ ;  $11 R-K1$ ,  $P-K3!$ ;  $12 B-K3$ ,  $P-QKt4$ ;  $13 Q-Q2$ ,  $B-Kt2$ ;  $14 P-QR4$ ,  $P-Kt5$ ;  $15 Kt-K2$ ,  $Kt-QR4!$ ;  $16 Q \times KtP$ ,  $Kt-B5$  with chances for both sides. Tartakower-Najdorf, 3rd match game, 1935.

## Notes continued from p. 425

(h) Inferior is  $11...Q-Kt3$ ;  $12 B-B3$ ,  $KR-Q1$ ;  $13 Q-K2$ ,  $Kt-K1$ ;  $14 B \times B$ ,  $Kt \times B$ ;  $15 R-Q2$ ,  $P-QR4$ ;  $16 Kt-Q4$ ,  $Kt-B2$ ;  $17 KR-Q1 \pm$ . Ravinsky-Lissitsin, Sverdlovsk, 1943.

(i)  $15 P-KR4$ ,  $P-Kt5$ ;  $16 Kt-K2$ ,  $P-QR4$ ;  $17 P-Kt5$ ,  $P-R5$ . Seidman-Denker, Hamilton, 1941.

(j) Better than  $13 P \times P$ ,  $P \times P$ ;  $14 B-B4$ ,  $O-O-O$ ;  $15 K-Kt1$ ,  $K-Kt1$ ;  $16 Kt-K2$ ,  $R-QB1 \mp$ . Goglidse-Pirc, Moscow, 1935.

(k)  $15 KR-K1$ ,  $O-O-O$ . Bluemich-Engels, Aix-la-Chapelle, 1935.

(l) If instead  $8...P-R3$ ;  $9 B-KB4!$ ,  $P-Q4$  (on other moves White wins a Pawn);  $10 P \times P$ ,  $P \times P$ ;  $11 P-QR3$ ,  $B-K2$ ;  $12 B-K2$ ,  $O-O$ ;  $13 B-B3 \pm$ . Analysis by Coy.

(m) But not  $10...Kt \times P?$ ;  $11 Q-K1!$ ,  $Kt-B3$ ;  $12 Kt-B5!$ ,  $Q-R4$ ;  $13 Kt \times QPch$ ,  $B \times Kt$ ;  $14 R \times B \pm$ . Ivashin-Ilivitsky, Gorky, 1945.

(n)  $15 Kt \times Kt$ ,  $Q \times Kt$ ;  $16 K-Kt1$ ,  $P-Kt5$ ;  $17 Kt-K2$ ,  $P-K4!$ . Szabo-Lundin, Groningen, 1946.

(o) Some alternatives are: (1)  $7 Kt \times Kt$ ,  $P \times Kt$ ;  $8 P-K5$ ,  $P \times P$  (or  $8...Q-R4$ ;  $9 B \times Kt$ ,  $P \times B$ ;  $10 P \times QP$ ,  $Q-K4ch$ ;  $11 Q-K2$ ,  $B \times P$ ;  $12 O-O-O$ ,  $R-QKt1 =$ ; if here  $9 B-Kt5$ ,  $P \times B$ ;  $10 P \times Kt$ ,  $P-Kt5$ ;  $11 Q-B3$ ,  $Q-K4ch!+$ );  $9 Q-B3$ ,  $B-Q2$ ;  $10 O-O-O$ ,  $B-K2$ ;  $11 B \times Kt$ ,  $P \times B$ ;  $12 Q-Kt3 =$ . Analysis by Euwe. (2)  $7 Kt-Kt3$ ,  $P-QR3$ ;  $8 Q-Q2$ ,  $P-R3!$ ;  $9 B-R4$ ,  $Kt \times P!$ ;  $10 Kt \times Kt$ ,  $Q \times B$ ;  $11 Kt \times Pch$ ,  $B \times Kt$ ;  $12 Q \times B$ ,  $Q-Kt5ch =$ . But not here  $8...O-O?$ ;  $9 O-O-O$ ,  $Kt-QR4$ ;  $10 K-Kt1$ ,  $Kt \times Kt$ ;  $11 RP \times Kt$ ,  $Kt-K1$ ;  $12 B \times B$ ,  $Q \times B$ ;  $13 Kt-Kt5+$ . Alekhine-P. Frydman, Podebrady, 1936.

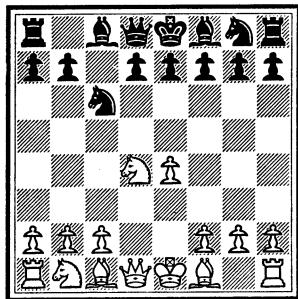
(p) An improvement on  $10...P-R3$ ;  $11 B-K2$ ,  $P-K4?$ ;  $12 Kt-Kt3 \pm$ . Romanovsky-Botvinnik, Moscow, 1945. The column is suggested by Botvinnik.

1 P-K4, P-QB4; 2 Kt-KB3, Kt-QB3; 3 P-Q4, P x P; 4 Kt x P\*

	51	52	53	54	55
4 (Kt-B3).....				P-KKt3.....	Q-B2 (p)
5 (Kt-QB3) (P-Q3) (a)				P-QB4 / (k) B-Kt2	Kt-Kt5 / (q) Q-Kt1
6 KKt-K2.....	B-QB4.....	P-KKt3 (g)	Kt-B2 (l)	P-QB4	Kt-B3
P-KKt3	P-K3 / (e)	B-Kt5	Kt-B3		
7 P-KKt3	O-O	Kt x Kt (h)	Kt-B3	Kt(Kt5)-B3	
B-Kt2 (b)	B-K2	P x Kt (i)	P-Q3	P-K3	
8 B-Kt2	B-K3	Q-Q3	B-K2	B-K3	
O-O	O-O	Kt-Q2	Kt-Q2	B-K2	
9 O-O	P-B3	P-B4	Q-Q2 (m)	B-K2	
B-Q2	P-QR3	P-Kt3	Kt-B4 (n)	O-O	
10 P-KR3 (c)	P-QR4	B-K3	P-QKt4	O-O	
P-QR3	B-Q2	B-Kt2	Kt-K3	R-Q1	
11 Kt-Q5	Q-K2	B-Kt2	B-Kt2	P-QR3 /	
Kt x Kt	Q-B2	Q-R4	O-O	P-QKt3	
12 P x Kt	Kt x Kt	O-O	O-O	P-QKt4	
Kt-K4	B x Kt	O-O	Kt(B3)-Q5	B-Kt2	
13 Kt-Q4 ± (d)	KR-Q1 QR-B1 ± (f)	P-KR3 B-K3 ± (j)	Kt x Kt ± (o)	P-B4+ (r)	

## \* DIAGRAM 183

cols. 51-55



[After 4 Kt x P]

(a) Two unusual replies are: (1) 5... Q-R4; 6 Kt-Kt3, Q-B2; 7 B-K2, P-K3; 8 O-O, P-QR3; 9 P-QR3, B-K2; 10 P-B4, O-O; 11 B-B3 ±. Maroczy-A. Steiner, Budapest, 1932. (2) 5... P-QR3; 6 Kt x Kt, QP x Kt; 7 Q x Qch, K x Q; 8 B-KB4, K-K1; 9 P-B3, B-K3; 10 P-QR4, P-QR4; 11 Kt-K2, B-B5; 12

O-O-O, P-K3; 13 Kt-Q4, B x B; 14 KR x B ±. Botvinnik-Flohr, Moscow, 1935.

(b) Not 7... B-Kt5; 8 B-Kt2, Kt-K4; 9 P-B4 /, Kt-B6ch?; 10 K-B2+ + +.

(c) 10 P-Kt3 is also strong; if then 10... P-QKt4?; 11 Kt x P /, Kt x P; 12 B x Kt, B x R; 13 P-QB3, Q-R4; 14 P-QR4, P-QR3; 15 P-QKt4, Kt x P; 16 P x Kt, Q x KtP; 17 B x R+. Fine-Denker, New York, 1942.

(d) Bronstein-Boleslavsky, Moscow, 1944.

(e) Simplest and best. If instead 6... P-KKt3; 7 Kt x Kt, P x Kt; 8 P-K5, Kt-Kt5; 9 B-B4 / (after 9 P-K6, P-KB4; 10 O-O, KB-Kt2 Black has adequate counterplay. Schlechter-Lasker, 7th match game, 1910), Q-Kt3; 10 Q-B3, B-B4; 11 P x P, P x P; 12 O-O, O-O-O; 13 KR-K1, P-Q4; 14 P-KR3+. Roedl-Engels, 2nd match game, 1930.

(f) 14 B-Kt3, P-Q4 /. Spielmann-Euwe, Scheveningen, 1923.

Notes continued on p. 429

Notes continued from p. 428

(g) Some other continuations seldom encountered are: (1) 6 P-KR3, P-KKt3; 7 B-K3, B-Kt2; 8 P-KKt4, O-O; 9 P-Kt5, Kt-Q2; 10 P-KR4, Q-R4; 11 P-B4, Kt x Kt; 12 B x Kt, P-K4; 13 P x P, Kt x P; 14 B-K2, Q-Kt5; 15 P-QR3, Q x B / ±. Réti-Saemisch, Kiel, 1921. (2) 6 Kt x Kt, P x Kt; 7 B-Q3, P-Kt3; 8 O-O, KB-Kt2; 9 Q-K2, O-O; 10 P-KR3, P-K4; 11 B-K3, P-Q4 /; 12 B-B5, R-K1; 13 P-KKt4 /, P-Q5+. Henneberger-Flohr, Lieberwerda, 1934. (3) 6 P-B3, P-KKt3; 7 B-K3, B-Kt2; 8 Q-Q2, O-O; 9 O-O-O, Kt x Kt /; 10 B x Kt, B-K3; 11 K-Kt1, R-B1; 12 P-KR4, Kt-R4; 13 B x B, K x B; 14 Kt-Q5, B x Kt; 15 P x B, Kt-Kt6 =. Rauser-Chekhov, Leningrad, 1936. (4) 6 B-QKt5, B-Q2; 7 O-O, P-KKt3 with an easy game; White's KB is misplaced. Cf. col. 50.

(h) Or 7 P-B3, B-Q2; 8 B-K3, P-KKt3; 9 Q-Q2 (Apscheneek-Gilg, Prague, 1931), P-KR4 / ±.

(i) 7... B x Q; 8 Kt x Q, B-B6; 9 Kt x BP /, K x Kt; 10 R-KKt1, Kt x P; 11 Kt x Kt, B x Kt; 12 B-Q3 = is too simplifying.

(j) 14 B-Q4, B x Bch; 15 Q x B, Q-Kt3; 16 Q x Q, P x Q. Thomas-Euwe, Bournemouth, 1939.

(k) The Maroczy Variation.

(l) White can get an advantage in a variety of ways. Some other possibilities are: (1) 6 B-K3, Kt-B3; 7 Kt-QB3, P-Q3 (or 7... Kt-KKt5; 8 Q x Kt, Kt x Kt; 9 Q-Q1, Kt-B3; 10 Q-Q2 ±); 8 B-K2, O-O; 9 O-O, B-Q2; 10 P-KR3, R-B1; 11 Q-Q2, P-QR3; 12 QR-B1, Kt x

Kt; 13 B x Kt, B-B3; 14 Q-K3 ±. Kashdan-Apscheneek, Folkestone, 1933. (2) 6 Kt-Kt3, Kt-B3; 7 Kt-B3, P-Q3; 8 B-K2, O-O; 9 B-K3, B-K3; 10 P-B3, Kt-Q2; 11 Q-Q2, KKt-K4; 12 Kt-Q5, P-B4; 13 P x P, B x P; 14 O-O ±. Tartakower-Rosselli, Baden-Baden, 1925.

(m) After 9 O-O, O-O; 10 B-K3, Kt-B4; 11 Kt-Q4, B-Q2; 12 Q-Q2, R-B1; 13 QR-Q1, R-K1; 14 K-R1, Q-R4 Black has excellent counter-chances. Nimzovitch-Capablanca, Carlsbad, 1929.

(n) Or 9... O-O; 10 O-O, Kt-B4; 11 P-B3, Q-R4?; 12 P-QKt4 /, Kt x KtP; 13 Kt-Q5 /, B x R; 14 Kt x B+. Euwe-Landau, 5th match game, 1934.

(o) 13... Kt x Kt; 14 B-Q1. Flohr-Engels, Sliac, 1932.

(p) Another inadequate defense is 4... P-K4; 5 Kt-Kt5 (or 5 Kt-Kt3, or 5 Kt-KB3 as in col. 46), P-Q3; 6 QKt-B3, P-QR3; 7 Kt-R3, Kt-B3; 8 B-KKt5, B-K2; 9 Kt-B4, Kt-Q5; 10 B x Kt, B x B; 11 Kt-Q5, P-QKt4; 12 Kt(B4)-Kt6, R-QKt1; 13 P-QB3, Kt-K3; 14 Kt x B, R x Kt; 15 P-QR4+. Michel-Pelikan, Mar del Plata, 1943.

(q) An improvement on 5 Kt-QB3, P-K3; 6 B-K2, Kt-B3; 7 O-O, P-QR3; 8 P-QR3, P-QKt4; 9 B-K3, B-Kt2; 10 P-B4, B-B4; 11 Q-Q3, Q-Kt3; 12 QR-Q1, P-Q4; 13 P x P, Kt x Kt; 14 B x Kt, O-O-O! =. Kan-Flohr, Moscow, 1935.

(r) 13... P-Q3; 14 R-R2. Kan-Flohr, Moscow, 1936.

1 P-K4, P-QB4; 2 Kt-KB3\*

56	57	58	59	60
2 (Kt-QB3)..... Kt-KB3 (e)				
3 (P-Q4) (a) (P × P)	P-K5..... Kt-Q4		Kt-B3 P-Q4? (n)	
4 (Kt × P) P-Q4	Kt-B3..... Kt × Kt!.....	P-B4 (l) P-K3	P × P Kt × P	
5 P × P (b) Q × P	QP × Kt P-Q4	Kt × Kt P × Kt	P-Q4 P × P	B-Kt5ch (o) B-Q2 (p)
6 B-K3! Kt × Kt (c)	P × P e.p. (f) Q × P!	P-Q4 P-Q3	Q × P Kt-B3	Kt-K5! B × B
7 Kt-B3! Kt-B6ch	Q × Q P × Q	B-Kt5! Q-R4ch (h)	Q-K4 P-Q4	Q-B3! P-B3
8 P × Kt Q × Qch	P-B4 B-B4! (g)	P-B3 P × QP	P × P e.p. Q × P	Kt × B P × Kt (q)
9 R × Q B-Q2	B-Q3 B × B	B-Q3! P × KP (i)	Kt-B3 Q-Kt3	Q × Kt Q × Q
10 B-QKt5! (d) B-B3	P × B Kt-B3	Kt × KP Q-B2 (j)	Q × Q RP × Q	Kt-B7ch Kt-B3
11 B × Bch P × B	B-B4 O-O-O	O-O B-Q3	B-B4 Kt-K3	Kt × Q Kt-B3
12 K-K2 ± B-K2 =	O-O-O B-K2 =	P × P ± (k)	B-Kt3 B-Q2 = (m)	P-Q3 ±

\* See p. 410, Diagram 174

(a) Other moves allow Black to equalize fairly easily by strengthening his center. *E.g.*, (1) 3 B-K2, Kt-B3; 4 Kt-B3, P-Q4; 5 P-K5, Kt-Q2; 6 Kt × P, KKt × P; 7 Kt × Kt, Kt × Kt; 8 P-Q4, Q × Kt; 9 P × Kt, Q × Qch =. Romanovsky—Botvinnik, Leningrad, 1934. (2) 3 Kt-B3, P-K4!; 4 B-B4, P-Q3; 5 P-KR3, B-K3; 6 P-Q3, B-K2; 7 O-O, P-KR3; 8 Kt-Q5, Kt-B3 =. L. Steiner—Nimzovitch, Dresden, 1926. (3) 3 B-Kt5, Q-B2 (3... P-KKt3 is also good); 4 B × Kt, QP × B; 5 P-Q3, Kt-B3; 6 Q-K2, P-KKt3; 7 O-O, B-Kt2; 8 R-K1, O-O; 9 Kt-B3, R-Q1; 10 P-KR3, Kt-Q2; 11 P-K5, Kt-B1; 12 B-B4, Kt-K3 =. Henneberger—Flohr, Zurich, 1934. (b) Also possible is 5 B-QKt5, P × P; 6 O-O! (but not 6 Kt × Kt, Q × Qch; 7 K × Q; 8 P-QR3; 8 Kt-Q4 dis ch, P × B; 9 Kt × P, B-Kt5ch; 10 K-K1, R-Q1; 11 QKt-B3, P-K4; 12 P-KR3, B-

R4 =. Von Holzhausen—Nimzovitch, Dresden, 1926), B-Q2; 7 Kt × Kt, B × Kt; 8 B × Bch, P × B; 9 Q-K2 (Ritson Morry—Wood, Blackpool, 1945), Kt-B3 (if 9... P-KB4; 10 P-KB3+); 10 Kt-B3, P-K3; 11 Kt × P ±.

(c) If 6... P-K4; 7 Kt-QB3, B-QKt5; 8 Kt-Kt5+.

(d) Steiner's improvement on 10 Kt-Kt5, R-B1; 11 B × P, R × P; 12 B-Kt6, Kt-B3; 13 Kt-B7ch, K-Q1; 14 Kt-Kt5ch, K-K1; 15 B-Q4, P-K4! =. Steiner—Goldstein, New South Wales championship, 1943.

(e) Nimzovitch's Variation, resembling Alekhine's Defense.

(f) If 6 B-KB4, Kt-B3 =.

(g) Weaker is 8... B-K3; 9 B-B4, Kt-B3; 10 O-O-O, O-O-O; 11 Kt-Kt5 ±. Van Nuess—Hussong, 1927.

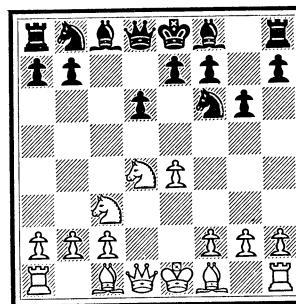
Notes continued on p. 433

1 P-K4, P-QB4; 2 Kt-KB3, P-Q3 (a); 3 P-Q4, P × P; 4 Kt × P, Kt-KB3; 5 Kt-QB3, P-KKt3 (b)\*

61	62	63	64	65
6 P-B4! Kt-B3 (c)	P-KR3..... B-Kt2	P-KKt3..... B-Kt2 (h)	B-K3..... B-Kt2	B-Kt5 (k) B-Kt2
7 Kt × Kt P × Kt	B-K3 Kt-B3	B-Kt2 O-O	P-B3 P-QR3	Q-Q2 Kt-B3
8 P-K5 P × P	Q-Q2 O-O	P-KR3 Kt-B3	Q-Q2 Kt-B3	O-O-O (l) O-O (m)
9 Q × Qch K × Q	O-O-O Kt × Kt (e)	KKt-K2 P-QR3	Kt-Kt3 P-R3	Kt-Kt3 (n) B-K3
10 P × P Kt-Q2 (d)	B × Kt B-K3	O-O Kt-K4	P-QR4 Kt-QR4	K-Kt1 R-B1
11 B-KB4 KB-Kt2	K-Kt1 Q-B2	K-R2 B-Q2	R-R3! B-Q2	P-B3 R-K1
12 O-O-O K-K1	P-KKt4 QR-B1	P-B4 Kt-B5	B-K2 R-QB1	P-Kt4 Kt-K4
13 R-K1 Kt-B4	B-Kt2 P-QKt4	P-Kt3 Kt-QR4	O-O Kt-B5	B-K2 KKt-Q2
14 B-K2 B-Q2	P-R3 (f) R-Kt1	B-K3 R-B1	B × Kt R × B	B-KR6 B-R1
15 B-B3 ±	Kt-Q5 ± (g)	Q-Q2 ± (i)	P-R5! ± (j)	P-KR4 Kt-Kt3 = (o)

\* DIAGRAM 184

cols. 61-65



[After 5... P-KKt3]

(a) This order of moves is frequently adopted to avoid the Richter Attack. Black

can transpose to the regular variations at any point before his 6th move by playing ... Kt-QB3.

(b) Black's last chance to transpose to the Dragon Variation satisfactorily with ... Kt-QB3.

(c) Or (1) 6... QKt-Q2; 7 B-K2, B-Kt2; 8 B-K3, O-O; 9 O-O, P-QR3; 10 B-B3, Q-B2; 11 K-R1, R-Kt1; 12 P-QR4, P-Kt3; 13 P-K5!, P × P; 14 Kt-B6 ±. Horowitz—Reshevsky, New York, 1944. (2) 6... B-Kt2; 7 P-K5!, Kt-Kt5 (if 7... P × P?; 8 P × P, Kt-Kt5; 9 B-Kt5ch wins); 8 B-Kt5ch, K-B1 (if 8... B-Q2; 9 Q × Kt!); 9 P-KR3, Kt-KR3; 10 B-K3, Kt-B3; 11 P × P, Kt × Kt; 12 B × Kt, Q × P; 13 B × Bch, K × B; 14 Q × Q, P × Q; 15 O-O-O+. Loevenfisch—Rabinovitch, U.S.S.R. championship, 1939.

Notes continued on p. 433

1 P-K4, P-QB4; 2 Kt-KB3, P-Q3 (a) \*

66	67	68	69	70
3 (P-Q4)..... (P × P)			P-QKt4..... P × P (l)	P-B3 (q) Kt-KB3
4 (Kt × P) (Kt-KB3)			P-Q4 Kt-KB3	P-K5 (r) P × P
5 P-KB3 P-K4 /.....		Kt-B3	P-Q3 P-Q4	Kt × P Kt-B3? (s)
6 B-Kt5ch.... B-Q2 (b)	Kt-Kt5 (f) P-QR3	P-QB4 P-KKt3 (i)	QKt-Q2 P × P (m)	Kt × Kt P × Kt
7 B × Bch QKt × B (c)	Kt(Kt5)-B3 B-K3	Kt-B3 B-Kt2	Kt × P QKt-Q2	B-B4 B-B4
8 Kt-B5 P-Q4 /	Kt-Q5 (g) Kt × Kt	B-K3 Kt-Q2 (j)	Kt(K4)-Kt5 (n) Q-B2	P-Q3 P-K3
9 P × P Kt-Kt3 / (d)	P × Kt B-B4	Q-Q2 Kt × Kt	P-B4 / P-KR3 (o)	Q-B3 Q-Q2
10 O-O (e) B-B4ch	B-Q3 B-Kt3	B × Kt B × B	Kt-R3 P-KKt4	P-KR3 B-K2
11 K-R1 O-O	O-O B-K2	Q × B O-O	Kt(R3)-Kt1 B-Kt2	Kt-Q2 R-Q1
12 Kt-B3 KKt × P =	P-QB4 Kt-Q2 = (h)	Kt-Q5 Kt-Kt3 / = (k)	Kt-K2 ± (p)	O-O / ± (t)

\* See p. 411, Diagram 175

(a) A new try is 2... P-QKt3; 3 P-Q4, P × P; 4 Kt × P, B-Kt2; 5 Kt-QB3, P-Kt3; 6 B-K2, B-Kt2; 7 O-O, Kt-QB3; 8 B-K3, Kt-B3; 9 P-B4, O-O; 10 B-B3, Kt-QR4; 11 P-K5+. Purdy—L. Steiner, New South Wales championship, 1944.

(b) If instead 6... QKt-Q2; 7 Kt-Kt3, P-QR3; 8 B-K2 ± because ... P-Q4 cannot be played.

(c) If 7... Q × B; 8 Kt-B5, P-Q4; 9 B-Kt5, Kt-B3; 10 B × Kt, P × B (Koshnitsky—Purdy, Sydney, 1938-39); 11 O-O, P × P; 12 P × P, B-B4ch; 13 K-R1, Q × Q; 14 R × Q, Kt-Q5; 15 Kt × Kt, B × Kt; 16 P-B3, B-Kt3; 17 Kt-Q2 ±.

(d) Inferior is 9... Q-R4ch; 10 Kt-B3, Kt-Kt3; 11 P-Q6! (more precise than 11 Q-K2, O-O-O; 12 O-O, as in Bök—Solmanis, Kemerí—Riga, 1939, when 12... KKt × P / is strong), O-O—

O; 12 B-Kt5, Kt-B5; 13 B × Kt, P × B; 14 Q-Q5, Q × Q; 15 Kt × Q, Kt × QP; 16 Kt × Ktch ±.

(e) If 10 B-Kt5, Q-Q2 /; 11 B × Kt, Q × Kt /; 12 B-R4, B-B4 (12... Q-Q2 =); 13 Kt-B3, O-O ≠, and if 10 P-QB4??, Kt × BP; 11 Q-R4ch, Q-Q2; 12 Q × Kt, R-B1 /+ +.

(f) Also inadequate is 6 Kt-Kt3, P-Q4; 7 B-Kt5, B-K3 (an alternative is 7... P-Q5; 8 P-B3, Kt-B3; 9 B-Kt5, Q-Kt3; 10 B × Ktch, P × B; 11 P × P, B-R3; 12 P × P, R-Q1; 13 Q-B1, P-R3; 14 B-K3, Q-Kt4 with wild complications and chances for both sides. Khavin—Veressov, Moscow, 1944); 8 P × P, Q × P; 9 QKt-Q2, Kt-B3; 10 B-QB4, Q-Q2; 11 Q-K2, B-K2; 12 O-O, Kt-Q4 ≠. Prins—Denker, Hastings, 1945-46.

(g) Or 8 B-Kt5, B-K2; 9 B × Kt, B × B; 10 Kt-Q5, B-Kt4 =. Spielmann—Landau, 1st match game, 1938.

Notes continued on p. 434

Notes continued from p. 430

(h) Better is 7... Q-Kt3; 8 P × BP, P × BP; 9 Q × P, B-K3; 10 B-Kt5ch /, Kt-B3; 11 B × Ktch, P × B; 12 Q-Q2, P-KR3 (Foltys—Seitz, Lodz, 1938), but after 13 B-R4, P-Kt4; 14 B-Kt3, Q × P; 15 O-O White's game remains preferable.

(i) If instead 9... P × BP; 10 O-O, Kt-B3 (not 10... P × KtP?; 11 R-Kt1, P × P; 12 Kt × P, B-Q3; 13 Kt × P /, K × Kt; 14 Q-R5ch with a winning position. Keres—Winter, Warsaw, 1935); 11 R-K1, B-K3; 12 KtP × P, P × P; 13 Kt × P, Kt × Kt; 14 R × Kt, B-Q3; 15 R × Bch /, P × R; 16 Q-R5ch, K-B1; 17 R-K1 with an overwhelming attack.

(j) Or 10... Kt-B3; 11 O-O / ±.

(k) 12... O-O; 13 Q-R5 / (an improvement on 13 R-B1, Kt-B3; 14 B-B6, as in Eliskases—P. Frydman, Lodz, 1938, when 14... P × B; 15 Q-R5, P-B4 forces White to take a draw by perpetual check), P-B4 (or 13... P-KKt3; 14 Q-R4 /, B × Kt; 15 P × B, Q × P; 16 QR-K1, Q-B2; 17 B-B6+); 14 QR-B1, Kt-B3; 15 KR-K1 with a powerful attack. Analysis by Eliskases.

(l) If 4 P-Q4, P × P; 5 Q × P (simpler is 5 Kt × P, P-K3; 6 B-QB4, Kt-Kt3; 7 B-Kt3, Kt-B3; 8 Kt-KB3, P-Q4; 9

P × P e.p., B × P; 10 Kt-B3, O-O =), P-K3 /; 6 P-B4, Kt-QB3; 7 Q-Q1?, KKt-K2 /; 8 B-Q2, Kt-Kt3; 9 Q-K2, Q-B2; 10 B-B3, P-Kt3; 11 P-KR4, P-Q3; 12 P × P, B × P ≠. Euwe—Rubinstein, The Hague, 1921.

(m) O'Hanlon—Kostich, Hastings, 1921.

(n) Correct is 3... P-Q3; 4 P-Q4 transposing into more regular variations.

(o) Better than either 5 Kt-K5, Kt × Kt; 6 KtP × Kt, Q-B2; 7 B-Kt5ch, Kt-Q2; 8 Q-K2, P-K3; 9 O-O, B-Q3; 10 R-K1, O-O; 11 P-Q4, P × P; 12 P × P, Kt × Kt = (Tarrasch—Tartakower, Berlin, 1928), or 5 P-Q4, Kt × Kt; 6 P × Kt, P-K3; 7 B-Q3, Kt-Q2; 8 O-O, B-K2; 9 Q-K2, Kt-B3; 10 B-Kt5ch, B-Q2; 11 Kt-K5, O-O =. Kashdan—A. Steiner, The Hague, 1928.

(p) No better is 5... Kt-B3; 6 O-O, B-Kt5; 7 P-KR3, Kt × Kt; 8 KtP × Kt, B-Q2; 9 P-Q4, P-K3; 10 P-Q5, P × P; 11 Q × P, B-K2; 12 R-Q1, P-QR3; 13 Kt-Kt5, O-O; 14 B-Q3, P-KKt3; 15 Kt × RP, B-K3; 16 Q × Q, KR × Q; 17 Kt-Kt5+. Michel—Piazzini, Buenos Aires, 1944.

(q) If 8... Kt-R3; 9 Q-R5ch, P-Kt3; 10 Kt × KtP+.

Notes continued from p. 431

(d) Better than 10... Kt-Kt5; 11 B-KB4, KB-Kt2; 12 O-O—Och, K-B2 / (if 12... K-K1?; 13 Kt-Kt5 /+ +. Clarke—Dake, San Francisco, 1943); 13 P-K6, dis ch, B-K4; 14 B × Bch, Kt × B; 15 P × P ±.

(e) If 9... P-Q4; 10 Kt × Kt, P × Kt; 11 P × P, P × P; 12 Kt × P, Kt × Kt; 13 Q × Kt, R-Kt1; 14 P-QKt3 /+ (Denker).

(f) Not 14 Kt × P, B × Pch /; 15 K-B1, Q-Q2; 16 Kt × RP, R-B2; 17 Q-R5, B-Kt6; 18 R-Q2, R-R1 /+ (Denker).

(g) Adams—Reshevsky, Hollywood, 1945.

(h) If now 6... B-Kt5 (cf. col. 53); 7 Q-Q3, Q-B1; 8 B-Kt2, B-Kt2; 9 P-K5 / (9 P-KR3, as in Adams—Suesman, Boston, 1944, is also strong), P × P; 10 Q-Kt5ch, B-Q2; 11 B × P /, Q-B2; 12

Kt-Q5, Kt × Kt; 13 Q × Kt, P × Kt; 14 B × R+. Alexander—Vlagma, Maastricht, 1946.

(i) Bronstein—Sajtar, match Moscow—Prague, 1946.

(j) 15... Q-B1; 16 Kt-Q4. Medina—Alekhine, Gijon, 1945.

(k) 6 P-B3 is a strong alternative; if then 6... B-Kt2; 7 B-K2, O-O; 8 Kt-Kt3 / transposes to col. 44. Some other possibilities are: (1) 6 P-B3, B-Kt2; 7 B-K3, O-O; 8 Q-Q2, Kt-B3; 9 O-O-O, B-Q2; 10 P-KKt4, R-B1; 11 K-Kt1, Kt-K4; 12 P-KR4, Kt-B5; 13 B × Kt, R × B; 14 P-R5 ±. Beach—Tartakower, London, 1945. (2) 6 B-K2, B-Kt2; 7 B-K3, O-O; 8 P-B4, P-QR3; 9 B-B3, Q-B2; 10 Kt-Q5, Kt × Kt; 11 P × Kt, P-QKt4; 12 P-KR4, Kt-Q2; 13 P-R5,



## Additional notes continued from p. 431

Kt—Kt3 ±. Bronstein—Goldberg, Moscow, 1945.

(l) Safer but less promising is 8 Kt—Kt3, O—O; 9 B—KR6, P—QR4; 10 B × B, K × B; 11 P—QR4, B—K3; 12 Kt—Q4, Kt × Kt =. Keres—Reshevsky, Hastings, 1937—38. Or here 9 B—K2, B—Q2; 10 O—O, R—K1; 11 QR—Q1, R—QB1; 12 K—R1, P—QR3; 13 P—B4, B—K3 =. Rabinovitch—Kan, Tiflis, 1937.

(m) If 8... Kt × P; 9 QKt × Kt, Kt ×

Kt; 10 Kt—B6ch!, P × Kt; 11 Q × Kt, O—O; 12 B—KB4 ±. Rauser—Ragosin, Leningrad, 1936.

(n) Weaker is 9 Kt × Kt, P × Kt; 10 P—K5, Kt—K1; 11 P × P, Kt × P; 12 B × P, Q × B; 13 Q × Kt, Q—Kt4ch; 14 Q—Q2, Q—QR4; 15 B—B4, R—Kt1 with a strong attack for Black. Rauser—Kan, Leningrad, 1936.

(o) Panov—Kan, Tiflis, 1937.

## Notes continued from p. 432

(h) Fine—Eliskases, Semmering—Baden, 1937.

(i) Not 6... P—K3?; 7 Kt—B3, B—K2; 8 Kt—B2, O—O; 9 B—K2, Q—B2; 10 O—O, R—Q1; 11 B—B4!, Kt—K4; 12 Kt—Kt5 ±. Euwe—Winter, Amsterdam, 1937.

(j) Or 8... O—O; 9 Q—Q2, Q—R4!/?; 10 Kt—Kt3, Q—Kt5; 11 Q—QB2, Kt—Q2; 12 B—Q2, Kt—B4; 13 Kt × Kt, Q × Kt (4) with chances for both sides. Keres—Capablanca, Semmering—Baden, 1937.

(k) Keres—Landau, Noordwijk, 1938.

(l) Weak is 3... Kt—KB3; 4 P × P, Kt × P; 5 P × P, Kt × QP; 6 B—Kt2, B—Kt5; 7 B—K2, P—K3; 8 O—O, Kt—B3; 9 Kt—K5 ±. Spielmann—Landau, 3rd match game, 1938.

(m) After 6... P—K3; 7 O—O, Kt—B3; 8 R—K1, B—K2; 9 P—K5, Kt—Q2; 10 Kt—B1, O—O; 11 Kt—Kt3 Black's position remains cramped.

(n) An alternative is 8 O—O, Kt × Kt?; 9 B × Kt, P—KKt3; 10 R—Kt1, Kt—B3; 11 B—Q3, Kt—Q4; 12 Kt—K5 ±. Spielmann—de Haas, Amsterdam, 1938.

(o) If 9... P × P e.p.!?; 10 Q—Kt3!, P—K3; 11 Kt × BP!! and wins.

(p) Keres—Eliskases, Semmering—Baden, 1937. White won, but Black's defense was far from faultless.

(q) Some less common alternatives are: (1) 3 P—B4, P—K4!; 4 Kt—B3 (a gambit possibility is 4 P—QKt4, P × P; 5 P—Q4, B—Kt5; 6 B—K3, B × Kt; 7 P × B, P—KKt3; 8 Q—R4ch, Kt—B3; 9 P—Q5, Q—R4; 10 Q × Q, Kt × Q; 11 B—Q2 =. Gurnhill—Wood, Blackpool, 1945), P—B4; 5 P—Q3, Kt—KB3; 6 B—K2, Kt—B3; 7 P × P, B × P; 8 Kt—KR4, B—K3; 9 P—B4, P × P; 10 B × P, B—K2; 11 O—O, O—O; 12 Q—Q2, P—Q4 =. Grob—Rosolimo, Paris, 1939. (2) 3 P—Q3, P—KKt3; 4 B—K2, B—Kt2; 5 QKt—Q2, QKt—B3; 6 P—B3, P—K4; 7 Kt—B1, KKt—K2; 8 P—KR4, P—KR3; 9 Kt—K3, P—Q4; 10 P—B4!, P—Q5; 11 Kt—Q5, P—B4 =. Panov—Rabinovitch, U.S.S.R. championship, 1939. (3) 3 B—Kt5ch, Kt—Q2? (3... B—Q2 =); 4 P—Q4, P × P; 5 Q × P, Kt—B3; 6 B—Kt5!, Q—R4ch; 7 Kt—B3, P—QR3; 8 P—QKt4, Q—Q1; 9 B × KKt, KtP × B; 10 B × Ktch, B × B; 11 Kt—Q5 ±. Lilienthal—Kotov, U.S.S.R. championship, 1940.

(r) Or 4 B—Q3, Kt—B3; 5 O—O, P—KKt3; 6 B—B2, B—Kt5; 7 P—KR3, B × Kt; 8 Q × B, B—Kt2; 9 Q—K2, O—O; 10 P—Q3, P—QKt4; 11 B—K3, R—B1 =. Czerniak—Stahlberg, Mar del Plata, 1943.

(s) Correct is 5... QKt—Q2 with about even chances.

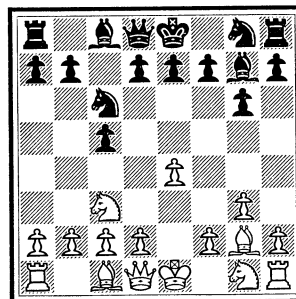
(t) Alekhine—Zwetkoff, Buenos Aires, 1939.

1 P—K4, P—QB4; 2 Kt—QB3, Kt—QB3; 3 P—KKt3 (a), P—KKt3; 4 B—Kt2, B—Kt2\*

	71	72	73	74	75
5 P—Q3.....					KKt—K2
P—K3.....				P—Q3	P—K3
6 B—K3				KKt—K2 (j)	Kt—B4
Q—R4!.....	Kt—Q5			R—Kt1 (k)	KKt—K2
7 Kt—K2	QKt—K2.....	KKt—K2	O—O (l)		P—KR4
Kt—Q5	P—Q3 (c)	Kt—K2	P—QKt4		P—KR3
8 O—O	P—QB3	O—O	Kt—Q5		P—Q3
Kt—K2	Kt × Kt (d)	O—O (f)	P—K3		P—Q3
9 K—R1	Kt × Kt	Q—Q2	Kt—K3		B—Q2
O—O	Kt—K2	KKt—B3 (g)	KKt—K2		R—QKt1
10 P—QR3	P—Q4	Kt—Q1 (h)	P—QB3		Q—B1
KKt—B3	Q—B2!	Q—R4	P—Kt5		P—QKt4
11 R—QKt1	Q—Q2	P—QB3	B—Q2		Kt—Q1
P—Q3	B—Q2	Kt × Ktch	O—O		P—QR4
12 P—QKt4	O—O	Q × Kt	Q—B1		Kt—K3
Q—Q1	P—QKt4	P—Q3	P × P		P—R5
13 Q—Q2	B—R6 (e)	K—R1	P × P		P—R3
R—Kt1	O—O	B—Q2 (i)	B—QR3		Kt—Q5
14 B—Kt5	B × B	P—KB4	Q—B2		Q—Q1
Q—K1 = (b)	K × B =	P—B4 =	Q—R4 ± (m)		B—Kt2 ± (n)

## \* DIAGRAM 185

cols. 71-75



[After 4... B—Kt2]

(a) A new try is 3 P—B4, P—K3; 4 Kt—B3, P—Q4; 5 B—Kt5, P—QR3?; 6 B × Ktch, P × B; 7 P—K5, Kt—K2; 8 P—Q3 ±. Vinken—Soultanbeieff, Maastricht, 1945. 5... KKt—K2 is correct here.

(b) 15 Kt—Kt1 (if 15 B—B4, P—K4; 16 B—K3, B—K3; 17 P × P, P × P; 18 Kt—Q5, B × Kt; 19 P × B, Kt—K2 =), P—Kt4; 16 Kt—Q1, P—B5!/. Smyslov—Boleslavsky, Trade Unions championship, U.S.S.R., 1945.

(c) If 7... Kt × Kt; 8 Kt × Kt, B × P?; 9 R—QKt1, B—Kt2 (not 9... Q—R4ch?; 10 B—Q2, Q × P; 11 R × B!, Q × R; 12 B—QB3+); 10 B × P ±. An alternative is 7... Kt—K2; 8 P—QB3, Kt × Kt; 9 Kt × Kt, P—Kt3; 10 Q—Q2, O—O; 11 B—R6, B—Kt2; 12 P—KR4, P—B3; 13 B × B, K × B; 14 P—R5, P—KKt4; 15 O—O—O ±. Smyslov—Kamishov, Moscow, 1946.

(d) Inferior is 8... Kt—QB3; 9 P—Q4, P × P; 10 Kt × P, Kt × Kt; 11 B × Kt, P—K4; 12 B—K3, Kt—K2; 13 Kt—K2, O—O; 14 O—O, B—K3; 15 Q—Q2, Q—B2; 16 KR—B1! ±. Smyslov—Denker, match U.S.S.R.—U. S. A., 1946.

Notes continued on p. 436

Notes continued from p. 435

(e) Not 13 P-QKt4?, P-B5!; 14 P-Q5, P×P; 15 P×P, Kt-B4; 16 Kt-Q4, Kt×B!; 17 Q×Ktch, K-B1 ♯. Smyslov—Chistyakov, Moscow, 1946.

(f) Weaker continuations are: (1) 8...P-Q3; 9 P-B4, R-QKt1 (9...P-B4 is still best); 10 R-Kt1, KKt-B3; 11 P-QR3, Q-R4?; 12 B-Q2, Q-B2; 13 P-QKt4, P-Kt3; 14 K-R1, B-Kt2; 15 P×P, KtP×P; 16 P-B5!±. Smyslov—Opocensky, match Moscow—Prague, 1946. (2) 8...KKt-B3; 9 Q-Q2, Q-R4?; 10 Kt-B1!, P-Q3; 11 Kt-Kt3, Q-B2; 12 P-B4, Kt-K2; 13 QR-K1, B-Q2; 14 Q-B2!, Kt×Kt; 15 RP×Kt, QR-B1; 16 P-B5!±. Kofman—Kogan, Kiev, 1945.

(g) But not 9...P-Q4?; 10 P×P, P×P; 11 B-Kt5! (or 11 Kt-B4±), P-B3; 12 B-K3, Kt×Ktch; 13 Kt×Kt, P-Q5; 14 B-R6±. Korchmar—Bonch-Osmolovsky, Moscow, 1943.

(h) On 10 P-B4, P-B4! is best. Cf. note

(k).

(i) Ryumin—Kyrillov, Moscow, 1931.

(j) On 6 Kt-B3 Black should proceed with ...R-QKt1 and the Q-side advance as in the column. Weaker is 6...P-K3; 7 B-Kt5, KKt-K2; 8 Q-Q2, P-KR3?; 9 B-K3, P-K4?; 10 O-O, B-K3; 11 Kt-K1, Q-Q2; 12 P-QR3, B-R6; 13 P-B4, Kt-Q5; 14 R-Kt1±. Smyslov—Kotov, Moscow, 1943.

(k) Also good is 6...Kt-B3; 7 O-O, O-O; 8 P-KR3, Kt-K1; 9 B-K3, Kt-Q5; 10 P-B4, P-B4!; 11 K-R2, R-Kt1; 12 P-QR4, Kt-B2; 13 P×P, Kt×P(B4); 14 B-Kt1, P-K4=. Alexander—Pirc, Hastings, 1932-33.

(l) Or 7 B-K3, P-QKt4; 8 Q-Q2, P-Kt5; 9 Kt-Q1, B-QR3; 10 P-KB4, Q-B2 ♯. Mieses—Euwe, Bournemouth, 1939.

(m) Nilsson—Euwe, The Hague, 1928.

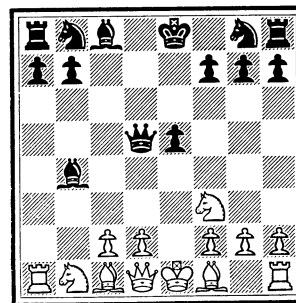
(n) Ulvestad—Bronstein, match U. S. A.—U.S.S.R., 1946.

1 P-K4, P-QB4

	76	77	78	79	80
2 P-QKt4 (a).....			Kt-K2.....	P-KKt3.....	P-KB4 (s)
P×P			P-Q3 (m)	P-Q4!	Kt-QB3
3 P-QR3			P-KKt3	B-Kt2 (p)	P-Q3
P-Q4! (b)			P-KKt3	P×P	P-KKt3
4 KP×P (c)			B-Kt2	Kt-QB3 (q)	P-B4
Q×P			B-Kt2	P-B4	B-Kt2
5 Kt-KB3! (d)			P-QB3	P-B3	Kt-QB3
P-K4 (e)			QKt-B3	P×P	P-Q3
6 P×P			P-Q4	Kt×P	B-K2
B×P*			P-K3 (n)	Kt-QB3	Kt-B3
7 Kt-R3.....	P-B3 (g)		O-O	O-O	Kt-B3
P-K5	B-QB4! (h)		KKt-K2	P-K4	B-Kt5
8 Kt-QKt5	Kt-R3		P-QR3	P-Q3	B-K3
K-Q1	Kt-KB3! (i)		O-O	B-K2	O-O
9 KKt-Q4	Kt-QKt5		P-QKt4	Q-K2	O-O
Kt-QB3	O-O!		P×QP (o)	Kt-B3 (r)	Kt-Q2
10 P-QB4	B-K2 (j)		P×P	K-R1	KKt-Kt5
Q-Q2	P-K5! (k)		Q-Kt3	Kt-Q5	B×B
11 B-Kt2	KKt-Q4		B-K3	Q-Q2	Q×B
Kt-B3	Kt-B3!		P-Q4	Kt×Kt	Kt-Q5
12 Q-R4± (f)	Kt-B7		P-K5	B×Kt	B×Kt
	Q-Kt4+ (l)		P-QR4 ♯	O-O ♯	B×Bch = (t)

## \* DIAGRAM 186

cols. 76-80



[After 6...B×P]

(a) The Wing Gambit. Cf. also col. 69.

(b) Best. Inferior alternatives are: (1) 3...P×P; 4 Kt×P, P-Q3; 5 B-Kt2, Kt-QB3; 6 P-Q4, Kt-B3; 7 B-Q3, P-K3; 8 Kt-B3, B-K2; 9 O-O±. Marshall—

Saemisch, Baden-Baden, 1925. If here 4...P-Q4; 5 P×P, Q×P; 6 B-Kt2, Kt-QB3; 7 Kt-Kt5, Q-Q1; 8 Q-B3, P-K4; 9 B-B4, Kt-B3; 10 Q-QKt3+. Spielmann—Saemisch, Carlsbad, 1923. (2) 3...P-K4; 4 P×P, B×P; 5 P-QB3, B-B4; 6 Kt-KB3, Kt-QB3; 7 B-B4, P-Q3; 8 P-Q4, P×P; 9 P×P, B-Kt3; 10 O-O, B-Kt5; 11 Q-Kt3±. Marshall—Verlinsky, Moscow, 1925. (3) 3...P-K3; 4 P×P, B×P; 5 P-QB3, B-K2; 6 P-Q4, P-Q3; 7 P-KB4, P-Q4; 8 P-K5, Kt-KR3; 9 B-Q3, P-B4; 10 P×P e.p.±. Spielmann—Koenig, Vienna, 1922.

(c) Better than 4 P-K5, Kt-QB3; 5 P-Q4, Q-B2; 6 Kt-KB3, B-Kt5; 7 P×P, Kt×KtP; 8 P-B3, Kt-QB3; 9 Kt-R3, P-QR3; 10 B-K2, P-K3; 11 O-O, R-Q1; 12 Q-R4, Kt-K2+. Yates—Buerger, London, 1926.

Notes continued on p. 438

Notes continued from p. 437

(d) Marshall's improvement on the older 5 B-Kt2, P-K4; 6 P×P, B×P; 7 Kt-QB3, B×Kt; 8 B×B, Kt-QB3; 9 Kt-B3, KKt-K2; 10 B-K2, O-O; 11 O-O, P-B3+. Spielmann-Saemisch, Marienbad, 1925.

(e) Black can get a solid but somewhat cramped game with 5...P-K3.

(f) Analysis by Marshall.

(g) Marshall also suggested 7 B-R3, Kt-QB3; 8 B×B, Kt×B; 9 Kt-B3, Q-B4; 10 B-Kt5ch, Kt-B3; 11 R-R5, P-B3; 12 Q-R1, Kt-K2; 13 Kt-K4, Q×P; 14 P-Q3! with advantage to White.

(h) Better than 7...B-K2; 8 Kt-R3, Kt-QB3; 9 Kt-QKt5, Q-Q1; 10 B-B4, Kt-B3; 11 Q-Kt3, P-K5; 12 B×Pch+. Rossetto-Bolbochan, Mar del Plata, 1943.

(i) An improvement on 8...P-K5; 9 Kt-QKt5, K-Q1; 10 KKt-Q4, QKt-B3; 11 Q-R4, Kt-B3; 12 B-R3± (Marshall).

(j) If 10 Kt-B7, B×Pch!+.

(k) Not 10...B-Kt3; 11 B-R3, R-Q1; 12 P-B4, Q-B3; 13 P-B5, B-B2; 14 O-O, QKt-Q2; 15 P-Q4, P-K5; 16 Kt-Kt5+. Rossetto-Iliesco, Mar del Plata, 1943.

(l) 13 Kt×R (or 13 Kt×Kt, Q×P; 14 R-B1, P×Kt; 15 Kt×R, Kt-Kt5+), Q×P; 14 R-B1, Kt-K4 with an overwhelming attack, e.g., 15 P-Q3, B-KR6; 16 P×P, Kt×P; 17 Q-B2, B×Kt; 18 P×B, Kt-B6ch; 19 K-Q1, Kt×QP and wins.

(m) Or 2...Kt-KB3; 3 QKt-B3, Kt-B3; 4 P-Q4 transposing to the regular lines.

(n) Weaker is 6...P-K4; 7 P×BP, P×P; 8 O-O, B-K3; 9 B-K3, Q×Q; 10 R×Q, P-Kt3; 11 Kt-R3, R-Q1; 12 Kt-Kt5, B-B5; 13 Kt-B7ch, K-K2; 14 Kt-Q5ch!±. Capablanca-Wheatcroft, Margate, 1939.

(o) Not 9...P-Kt3; 10 Q-Q3, B-Kt2;

11 B-K3, P×QP; 12 P×P, P-Q4; 13 P-K5, R-B1; 14 P-B4±. Smyslov-Yudovitch, Moscow, 1938.

(p) To play a gambit. The alternative is 3 P×P, Q×P; 4 Kt-KB3, B-Kt5; 5 B-Kt2, Kt-QB3 (or 5...Q-K5ch=); 6 P-KR3, B-B4; 7 O-O, Q-Q2; 8 K-R2, O-O-O; 9 P-Q3, P-K4; 10 Kt-B3, P-B3±. Tartakower and others—Alekhine and others, Paris, 1933.

(q) If 4 B×P, Kt-KB3; 5 B-Kt2, B-Kt5; 6 Kt-K2, Kt-B3±.

(r) But not 9...B-B3?; 10 B-K3, Q-Q3?; 11 Kt-QKt5, Q-K2; 12 Q-B2, Kt-Q5; 13 QKt×Kt, BP×Kt; 14 B×P!+. Spielmann-Bogoljubow, 7th match game, 1932.

(s) Some alternatives are: (1) 2 P-QB3, P-Q4 (2...P-K3 = is also good); 3 P×P, Q×P; 4 P-Q4, Kt-QB3; 5 Kt-B3, B-Kt5; 6 B-K2, P×P; 7 P×P, P-K3; 8 Kt-B3, B-Kt5; 9 O-O, Q-QR4; 10 P-QR3, Kt-B3?; 11 P-Q5!, P×P; 12 P×B!, Q×R; 13 Kt-Q2!!!, B×B; 14 Q×Bch, Kt-K2; 15 R-K1, O-O; 16 Kt-Kt3+!. Alekhine-Podgorny, Prague, 1943. (2) 2 P-Q3, P-K3; 3 P-QB3, P-Q4; 4 Kt-Q2, Kt-QB3; 5 P-KB4, B-Q3; 6 Q-B3, KKt-K2; 7 Kt-K2, O-O; 8 P-KKt4, P-B4!; 9 KtP×P (9 P-K5 is better), QP×P; 10 QP×P, P×P; 11 Kt-KKt3, P×P+. S. R. Wolf-Spielmann, Vienna, 1932. (3) 2 P-Q4, P×P; 3 Q×P (on 3 Kt-KB3 Black does best to transpose to regular variations; the attempt to hold on to the Pawn gives White a strong attack), QKt-B3; 4 Q-K3, Kt-B3; 5 P-QB4, P-K3; 6 P-KKt3, B-K2; 7 Kt-QB3, P-Q4; 8 KP×P, P×P; 9 P×P, Kt×P; 10 Q-Q2, B-K3±. Mieses-Tarrasch, Berlin, 1920.

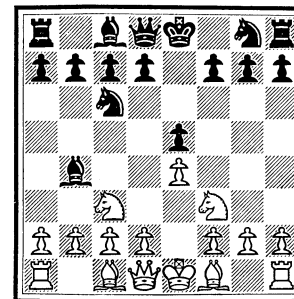
(t) Nimzovitch—Capablanca, Berlin, 1928.

## THREE KNIGHTS' GAME

THIS OPENING is an attempt to avoid the equalizing possibilities of the Four Knights'. It was played by Alekhine occasionally but is theoretically unsatisfactory.

There are two branches after 1 P-K4, P-K4; 2 Kt-KB3, depending on whether Black plays out his QKt or his KKt. After 2...Kt-QB3; 3 Kt-B3 Black has nothing better than 3...Kt-B3, which is the Four Knights'. 3...B-Kt5 (cols. 1-5), the most important try, is advantageously met by 4 Kt-Q5 (cols. 1-4).

DIAGRAM 187



[After 3...B-Kt5]

After 2...Kt-KB3; 3 Kt-B3 is an inferior move (see Petroff's Defense) and 3...B-Kt5 is sufficient for equality (cols. 9-10). The game cited in note (j) is one of the last that Alekhine played.

1 P—K4, P—K4; 2 Kt—KB3, Kt—QB3; 3 Kt—B3, B—Kt5

	1	2	3	4	5
4	Kt—Q5.....				B—B4 (m)
	Kt—B3.....		B—K2.....	B—R4 (i)	Kt—B3
5	Kt × B.....	B—B4 (d)	P—Q4	B—B4	O—O
	Kt × Kt	O—O	P × P (g)	Kt—B3	O—O
6	Kt × P (a)	P—B3	Kt × P	P—B3 (j)	P—Q3
	Q—K2 (b)	B—K2	Kt × Kt	P—Q3	B × Kt
7	P—Q4	Kt × Ktch (e)	Q × Kt	P—Q3	P × B
	P—Q3	B × Kt	Kt—B3	Kt × Kt (k)	P—Q4
8	P—QR3	P—Q3	Kt × B	P × Kt	P × P
	P × Kt	P—Q3	Q × Kt	Kt—K2	Kt × P
9	P × Kt	P—QR3	B—Q3	P—Q4	P—KR3
	Kt × P (c)	P—QR3	P—B4	P × P	Kt × P
10	P × P	O—O	Q—K3	Q—R4ch	Q—Q2
	Q × P	B—Q2	P—Q4	P—B3	Kt—Q5
11	Q—K2	B—Kt3	P × P	P × BP	Kt × P
	Q—K3	Kt—K2	Kt × P	KtP × P	Kt(B6)—K7ch
12	P—KB3 ±	P—Q4 ± (f)	Q × Qch ± (h)	Kt × P ± (l)	K—R2
					Kt × B = (n)

(a) Weaker alternatives are: (1) 6 P—B3, Kt—B3; 7 P—Q4 (or 7 Q—B2, O—O; 8 B—K2, P—Q3 = as in Maroczy—Alekhine, London, 1932), P × P; 8 P—K5, Kt—K5; 9 P × P, P—Q4; 10 B—K2, O—O; 11 O—O, P—B3 =. Schlechter—Teichmann, Pistyan, 1912. (2) 6 P—Q4, P—Q4; 7 Kt × P, P × P; 8 P—QB3, QKt—Q4; 9 B—QB4, O—O; 10 O—O, B—K3; 11 P—B3, Q—Q3 =. Forgacs—Schlechter, San Sebastian, 1912. (3) 6 B—B4, P—Q4; 7 P × P, P—K5; 8 Kt—K5, O—O; 9 O—O, B—B4; 10 P—Q4, P × P e.p.; 11 Kt × QP, KKt × P =. Henneberger—Alekhine, Berne, 1932.

(b) If 6...P—Q3; 7 Kt—Q3 and White can hold on to the Pawn.

(c) Better than 9...P × P; 10 Q × P, or 9...Q × Pch; 10 P—B3, Q—K2; 11 P × P, Q × P; 12 P—B3 ±.

(d) Playing the Rubinstein Defense to the Four Knights' Game with a move in hand. 5 B—Kt5?, Kt × Kt leads to easy equality; cf. the Four Knights' Game, p. 65, col. 26.

(e) Weaker is 7 Kt × Bch, Q × Kt; 8 O—O, P—Q3; 8 Q—K2, Kt—QR4; 10 B—Q3,

Kt—R4!; 11 B—B2, Kt—KB5; 12 Q—Kt5, Kt—B3 =. Tylor—Alekhine, Hastings, 1933-34.

(f) Maroczy—Gruenfeld, Vienna, 1920.

(g) Or 5...P—Q3; 6 B—QKt5, P × P; 7 Kt × P, B—Q2; 8 O—O, Kt—B3; 9 R—K1, O—O, 10 B × Kt, P × B; 11 Kt × Bch, Q × Kt; 12 B—Kt5 ±. Znosko-Borovsky—Alekhine, London, 1922.

(h) Alekhine—Tartakower, New York, 1924.

(i) Another possibility is 4...B—B4; 5 B—B4, P—Q3; 6 P—B3, P—QR3; 7 P—KR3, P—R3; 8 P—Q4, P × P; 9 P × P, B—R2; 10 O—O ±. Maroczy—Chajes, Carlsbad, 1923.

(j) Better than 6 O—O, P—Q3; 7 P—Q4, B—KKt5!; 8 P × P, QKt × P; 9 B—K2, B × Kt; 10 B × B, Kt × Kt; 11 P × Kt, O—O =. Cortlever—Flohr, Amsterdam, 1939.

(k) If 7...P—KR3; 8 O—O, O—O; 9 P—QR4, P—QR3; 10 P—QKt4, B—Kt3; 11 Kt × B ±. Alekhine—Cohn, Carlsbad, 1911.

Notes continued on p. 441

Notes continued from p. 440

(l) 12...O—O; 13 O—O, B—Q2; 14 R—K1. Leonhardt—Tarrasch, Hamburg, 1910.  
(m) Or (1) 4 B—Kt5, KKt—K2 (better is 4...Kt—B3 transposing to the Four Knights'); 5 P—Q4, P × P; 6 Kt × P, O—O; 7 O—O, P—Q3; 8 B—Kt5, P—B3; 9 B—K3, K—R1; 10 QKt—K2, B—Q2; 11 B—QB4 ±. Krusberg—Przeziorka, Prague,

1931. (2) 4 P—QR3?, B × Kt; 5 QP × B, P—Q3; 6 B—QB4, Kt—B3; 7 Q—Q3, B—K3; 8 P—R3, P—QR3; 9 Kt—Kt5?, B × B; 10 Q × B, P—Q4; 11 P × P, Q × P; 12 Q × Q, Kt × Q =. Flohr—Alekhine, Prague, 1931.

(n) Leonhardt—Schlechter, San Sebastian, 1911. Cf. Vienna Game, p. 459, cols. 4-5.

## 1 P-K4, P-K4; 2 Kt-KB3

	6	7	8	9	10
2	(Kt-QB3)			Kt-KB3	
3	(Kt-B3) B-B4	P-KKt3	P-B4 <sup>g</sup> (g)	Kt-B3 (i) B-Kt5	
4	Kt × P / Kt × Kt (a)	P-Q4 P × P (c)	P-Q4 BP × P	Kt × P O-O!	B-B4 P-Q3 (l)
5	P-Q4 B-Q3	Kt × P (d) B-Kt2	KKt × P Kt-B3	B-K2 (j) R-K1	Kt-Q5 Kt × Kt
6	P × Kt B × P	B-K3 KKt-K2	B-QB4 P-Q4	Kt-Q3 B × Kt	B × Kt O-O
7	P-B4 B × Ktch	Q-Q2 / (e) P-KR3	Kt × QP / Kt × Kt	QP × B Kt × P	P-B3 B-R4
8	P × B P-Q3	O-O-O P-Q3	Q-R5ch P-Kt3	O-O P-Q3	P-Q3 P-B3
9	Q-Q4 Q-R5ch	B-K2 B-Q2	Kt × P P × Kt	Kt-B4 Kt-Q2	B-Kt5 Q-K1
10	P-Kt3 Q-K2	P-KR3 Kt × Kt	Q × Pch K-Q2	B-K3 Kt-K4	B-Kt3 K-R1
11	B-KKt2 ± (b)	B × Kt ± (f)	B × Kt+ (h)	P-B3 Kt-KB3 = (k)	Q-K2 Kt-R3 / ♯ (m)

(a) Or 4... B × Pch; 5 K × B, Kt × Kt; 6 P-Q4, Kt-QB3; 7 B-K3, P-Q3; 8 B-K2, Kt-B3; 9 R-KB1 ±. Capablanca-Liebenstein, New York, 1913.

(b) Paulsen-Anderssen, match, 1877.

(c) Not 4... B-Kt2; 5 P × P, Kt × P; 6 Kt × Kt, B × Kt; 7 P-B4 ±.

(d) Also good is 5 Kt-Q5, B-Kt2; 6 B-KKt5, QKt-K2 (or 6... P-B3; 7 B-KB4 ±); 7 P-K5, P-KR3; 8 B × Kt, Kt × B; 9 Q × P, Kt × Kt; 10 Q × Kt, P-QB3; 11 Q-Q6, B-B1; 12 Q-Q4, Q-Kt3; 13 O-O-O ±. Alekhine-Bogoljubow, Dresden, 1936.

(e) Not 7 B-QB4, O-O; 8 Q-Q2, Kt-K4; 9 B-K2, P-Q4! =. Teichmann-Tartakower, Hamburg, 1910.

(f) Weenink-Kmoch, London, 1927.

(g) 3... B-K2 transposes into the Hungarian Defense after 4 P-Q4, P-Q3; 5 B-QB4; into the Ruy Lopez, Steinitz Defense, after 4 P-Q4, P-Q3; 5 B-QKt5; and into Philidor's Defense after 4 P-Q4, P × P; 5 Kt × P, P-Q3.

(h) Breyer-Balla, Pistyan, 1912. Black has no good defense, e.g., 11... Q-K1; 12 B-B7, Q-K2; 13 B-Kt5, or 11... Kt × P; 12 P-QB3!, Kt-B7ch; 13 K-K2, P-B3; 14 B-Kt5, B-K2; 15 B × Pch!, K-B2; 16 QR-Q1.

(i) This position may be reached through the Vienna Game or Petroff's Defense. For other replies on White's third move see Petroff's Defense.

(j) If 5 P-Q3, P-Q4; 6 P-QR3, B × Ktch; 7 P × B, R-K1; 8 P-KB4, P × P; 9 P-Q4, Kt-Q4; 10 P-B4, Kt-K2; 11 B-K2, Kt-B4 ♯. Lupi-Alekhine, match, 1946.

(k) Tarrasch-Gruenfeld, Vienna, 1922.

(l) Better than 4... O-O; 5 P-Q3, P-B3; 6 O-O, P-Q4; 7 B-Kt3, B-Kt5; 8 P-KR3, B-KR4 (simpler 8... P × P); 9 Q-K2, P-Q5; 10 Kt-Kt1, QKt-Q2; 11 P-B3 ±. Yates-Olland, Hastings, 1919.

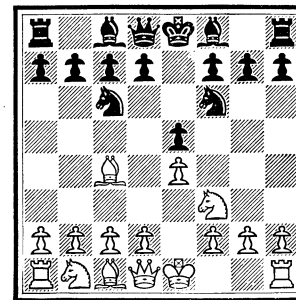
(m) 12 Kt-R4, Kt-B4; 13 B-K3, Kt × B; 14 P × Kt, B-Q1. Becker-Euwe, Carlsbad, 1929.

## TWO KNIGHTS' DEFENSE

THIS OPENING, known in German as the Preussisch, is an enterprising alternative to the Giuoco Piano. It is essentially a gambit involving the sacrifice of a Pawn for quick development. Since the well-known Fine-Reshevsky game at New York in 1940, where White established a winning superiority very quickly with one of the main variations, it has come in for a good deal of analysis, especially by American masters. Pinkus in particular has contributed some striking improvements which invalidate much of past theory.

After the initial 1 P-K4, P-K4; 2 Kt-KB3, Kt-QB3; 3 B-B4, Kt-B3 White has three main choices: 4 Kt-Kt5 (in effect accepting the gambit), 4 P-Q4 and 4 Kt-B3. 4 Kt-Kt5, which Tarrasch contemptuously referred to as a duffer's move, has been deprived of much of its sting, but is still White's strongest line.

DIAGRAM 188



[After 3... Kt-B3]

(1) 4 Kt-Kt5 (cols. 1-20) is played to win a Pawn. 4... P-Q4 is forced (inferior alternatives are handled in col. 20) and now after 5 P × P Black has four choices: 5... Kt × P, 5... Kt-QR4, 5... P-QKt4 and 5... Kt-Q5. 5... Kt-QR4 has always been considered a playable gambit, but as a result of Pinkus's analysis 5... Kt × P is respectable for the first time.

(i) 5... Kt × P (cols. 1-4) looks bad but if it is to be refuted new lines will have to be found. The Fegatello Attack 6 Kt × BP (cols. 3-4) is unsound; it does not apply enough heat to the Black position. 6 P-Q4

(cols. 1-2) is the traditional refutation, but fails against Pinkus's suggestion  $\delta \dots B-Kt5ch!$ , which deprives White's QKt of its best square.

(ii)  $5 \dots Kt-Q5$  (col. 5), *Fritz's Variation*, is inadequate against  $6 P-QB3$ .

(iii)  $5 \dots Kt-QR4$  (cols. 6-17) is the usual line. White now has two main choices:  $6 B-Kt5ch$  and  $6 P-Q3$ .  $6 B-Kt5ch$  (cols. 6-11) is the stronger of the two and the one most likely to yield an advantage. In the main line in col. 6, White, aware that he is defending a gambit, follows the prescribed rule and returns the extra material for better development. The older  $11 P-Q4$  is met by  $11 \dots P \times P$  e.p. which keeps the position open. Black has a plausible alternative in the continuation of the gambit in col. 10.  $6 P-Q3$  (cols. 12-17) is weaker; Black gets at least equality in the chief lines and often a clear advantage.

(iv)  $5 \dots P-QKt4$  (cols. 18-19), *Ulvestad's Variation*, is a new move which has not been tried much in practise. The analysis in col. 18 is the theoretical refutation; col. 19 is less clear.

(2)  $4 P-Q4$  (cols. 21-38) is an inferior line which gives Black an advantage in most cases. After  $4 \dots P \times P$ ;  $5 O-O$  Black has the choice of  $5 \dots Kt \times P$  and  $5 \dots B-B4$  ( $5 \dots P-Q3$ , col. 28, is weak).

(i)  $5 \dots Kt \times P$  (cols. 21-27) is based on the main variations in cols. 21-25, where Black can achieve equality in a variety of ways. The line in col. 21 actually ends in a Black advantage after many vicissitudes, but perfect defense is necessary. Canal's Variation (cols. 26-27) is unsound.

(ii)  $5 \dots B-B4$  (cols. 29-36) leads to the complicated and difficult *Max Lange Attack* after  $6 P-K5$ ,  $P-Q4$ . It should, however, be noted that Black can get an advantage with the old  $6 \dots Kt-KKt5$  (col. 29), so that to allow the attack is theoretically unnecessary. But even if Black does permit the Max Lange he should get the better of it. The game Marshall-Tarrasch, Hamburg, 1910 established the variation as almost a win for White, but recent analysis has completely demolished this view. The main lines are seen in cols. 31-32. There both the new move  $15 \dots B-Kt5$ , discovered independently by Szabo and the Los Angeles amateur George Croy, and the older  $15 \dots P-Q6$ , rehabilitated by analysis and correspondence games of the German theoretician Seibold, give Black an advantage. Unless he can improve on this analysis White has nothing better than the draw in col. 36, but he has that.

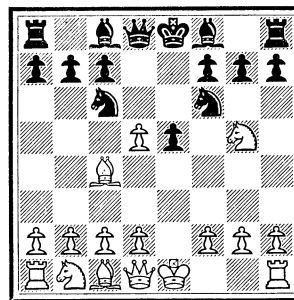
(3)  $4 Kt-B3$  (cols. 39-40) allows the theoretically strong reply  $4 \dots Kt \times P$ , and gives Black easy equality.

1  $P-K4$ ,  $P-K4$ ; 2  $Kt-KB3$ ,  $Kt-QB3$ ; 3  $B-B4$ ,  $Kt-B3$ ; 4  $Kt-Kt5$ ,  $P-Q4$ ; 5  $P \times P^*$

	1	2	3	4	5
5	$Kt \times P!$				$Kt-Q5$ (o)
6	$P-Q4$		$Kt \times BP?$ (h)		$P-QB3$ (p)
	$B-Kt5ch!$ (a)		$K \times Kt$		$Kt-B4$ (q)
7	$P-B3$ (b)		$Q-B3ch$		$O-O!$ (r)
	$B-K2$		$K-K3$		$Kt-Q3$ (s)
8	$Kt \times BP$	$P \times P$ (e)	$Kt-B3$		$B-Kt3$
	$K \times Kt$	$B \times Kt$	$Kt-Kt5!$ (i)		$P-KR3$
9	$Q-B3ch$	$B \times Kt$	$Q-K4$	$P-QR3$ (l)	$Kt-B3$
	$K-K3$	$B \times B$ (f)	$P-B3!$	$Kt \times Pch$	$P-K5$
10	$O-O$	$B \times Ktch$	$P-Q4$ (j)	$K-Q1$	$Kt-K5$
	$Kt-R4$ (c)	$P \times B$	$K-Q2!$	$Kt \times R$ (m)	$B-K2$
11	$Q-Kt4ch$	$Q \times B$	$Kt \times Kt$	$Kt \times Kt$	$P-Q3$
	$K-B2$	$B-R3$	$P \times Kt$	$K-Q2!$	$O-O$
12	$Q-B3ch$	$Q-K3$	$B \times P$	$Q-B7ch$	$Kt-Q2$
	$K-K3$	$O-O$	$Kt \times B$	$B-K2$	$P \times P$
13	$Q-Kt4ch$	$Kt-Q2$	$Q \times Ktch$	$Q \times P$	$Kt \times QP+$
	$K-B2 =$ (d)	$R-K1 =$ (g)	$K-B2 \mp$ (k)	$Q-B1+$ (n)	

## \* DIAGRAM 189

cols. 1-5

[After  $5 \dots P \times P$ ]

(a) Pinkus's new move. The older alternatives are: (1)  $6 \dots P \times P$ ; 7  $O-O$ ,  $B-K3$ ; 8  $R-K1$ ,  $Q-Q2$ ; 9  $Kt \times BP!$ ,  $K \times Kt$ ; 10  $Q-B3ch$ ,  $K-Kt3$  (or  $10 \dots K-Kt1$ ; 11  $R \times B!$ ); 11  $R \times Bch!$ ,  $Q \times R$ ; 12  $B-Q3ch$  and mate next. (2)  $6 \dots B-K3$ ; 7  $Kt \times B$ ,  $P \times Kt$ ; 8  $P \times P$ ,  $Kt \times P$ ; 9  $Q-R5ch$ ,  $Kt-B2$ ; 10  $O-O$ ,  $B-K2$ ; 11  $R-K1$ ,  $Q-Q2$ ; 12  $Q-Kt4+$ .

(b) If 7  $Kt-B3$ ,  $Kt \times Kt$  (7...  $O-O$ ; 8  $O-O$ ,  $Kt-B3 =$ ); 8  $B \times Pch$ ,  $K-B1$ ; 9  $P \times Kt$ ,  $B \times Pch$ ; 10  $K-B1$ ,  $Q \times P$ ; 11  $Q-B3$ ,  $B-KKt5$ ; 12  $Kt-K6ch$ ,  $K-K2$ ; 13  $B-Kt5ch$ ,  $K-Q2$ ; 14  $Kt-B5ch$ ,  $K-B1$ ; 15  $R-Q1$ ,  $Q \times Kt$ ; 16  $Q \times Bch$ ,  $K-Kt1$ ; 17  $B-K3$ ,  $Kt-Q5$ ; 18  $B \times Kt$ ,  $B \times B$ ; 19  $Q \times P$ ,  $R-KB1+$ . Analysis by Pinkus.

(c) It is very dangerous for Black to avoid the draw. If, e.g., 10...  $B-B1$ ; 11  $R-Q1$ ,  $QKt-K2$ ; 12  $B-KKt5$ ,  $P-B3$ ; 13  $P \times P$ ,  $Q-K1$ ; 14  $Kt-Q2 \pm$ .

(d) Neither side can do better than a draw by perpetual check.

(e) Or 8  $Q-R5$ ,  $P-KKt3$ ; 9  $Q-B3$ ,  $B \times Kt$ ; 10  $B \times Kt$ ,  $O-O$ ; 11  $O-O$ ,  $B \times B$ ; 12  $R \times B$ ,  $Q-Kt4$ ; 13  $Kt-R3$ ,  $B-Q2 =$  (Pinkus).

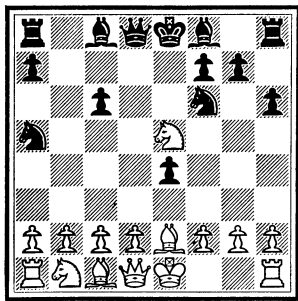
(f) If instead 9...  $Kt \times P$ ; 10  $B \times B!$  (not 10  $P-KB4?$ ,  $B-R5ch \mp$ ),  $Q \times QB$ ; 11  $O-O$ ,  $Q-B3$ ; 12  $P-KB4$ ,  $Q-Kt3ch$ ; 13  $K-R1$ ,  $Kt-Kt5$ ; 14  $Q-K2ch$ ,  $K-B1$ ; 15  $B-B3 \pm$ .

Notes continued on p. 448

1 P-K4, P-K4; 2 Kt-KB3, Kt-QB3; 3 B-B4, Kt-B3; 4 Kt-Kt5, P-Q4; 5 P x P, Kt-QR4; 6 B-Kt5ch, P-B3; 7 P x P, P x P; 8 B-K2, P-KR3; 9 Kt-KB3 (a), P-K5; 10 Kt-K5\*

6	7	8	9	10
10 B-Q3.....				B-QB4 (o)
11 P-KB4!		P-Q4 (g)		P-QB3
O-O (b).....	P x P e.p. (e)	P x P e.p.!	Q-B2	Q-B2!
12 O-O!	Kt x P(B3)	Kt x QP	B-Q2! (j)	P-KB4 (p)
Q-B2	Kt-Kt5	Q-B2	O-O (k)	Kt-Kt2
13 Kt-QB3! (c)	O-O	B-K3 (h)	Kt-R3!	P-Q4
B x Kt	Q-B2	P-B4!	B-K3	P x P e.p.
14 P x B	P-KR3	Kt-B3	O-O	Q x P
Q x P	B-R7ch	Kt-B5	Kt-Kt2	O-O
15 P-Q4	K-R1	Q-B1	Q-B1 (l)	Kt-Q2
P x P e.p.	P-R4	O-O	KR-Q1 (m)	Kt-Q3
16 Q x P	P-Q4	B-B4	QKt-B4	B-B3
Kt-Kt5	B-Kt6	Kt x P!	QB x Kt	B-B4
17 R-B4 ± (d)	B-Q3 ± (f)	B x B	B x B ± (n)	Q-K2
		Kt x Ktch = (i)		Kt-Q4 = (q)

\* DIAGRAM 190  
cols. 6-10



[After 10 Kt-K5]

(a) If 9 Kt-KR3 (Steinitz), B-QB4!; 10 O-O, O-O; 11 P-Q3, Kt-Kt2! 12 K-R1, P-Kt4; 13 P-QB3, B-Kt3; 14 B-K3, Kt-Q4 ±. Makovetz-Charousek, Budapest, 1896.

(b) Better than 11...Q-B2; 12 O-O, B x Kt; 13 P x B, Q x P; 14 P-Q4, Q-K2; 15 P-QKt3!, Kt-Kt2; 16 B-R3 ±. Seidman-Finkelstein, New York, 1945.

(c) The point. 13 P-Q4 transposes to col. 9 note (j).

(d) 17...Q-B4ch; 18 Q-Q4, Q x Qch; 19 R x Q with a much superior endgame. An alternative here is 17 B-B4, Q-B4ch; 18 K-R1, Kt-B7ch; 19 R x Kt, Q x R; 20 R-KB1, Q-R5; 21 Q-Q6 (Fine-Reshevsky, New York, 1940), B-K3 but Black can still defend himself.

(e) On Steinitz's recommendation, 11...P-Kt4, White can reply 12 P-Q4, P x P; 13 B x P, Kt-Q4; 14 O-O! ± (not 14 Q-Q2, Q-Kt3; 15 P-QKt3, P-K6 ±), e.g., 14...Q-Kt3; 15 Kt-QB3!, Kt x B; 16 R x Kt, B x Kt; 17 R x KP, P-B3; 18 K-R1, B-B4; 19 P x B, B x R; 20 B-R5ch and wins.

(f) 17...B-K3; 18 Q-K2, O-O-O (Leonhardt-von Holzhausen, Leipzig, 1898); 19 P-B4.

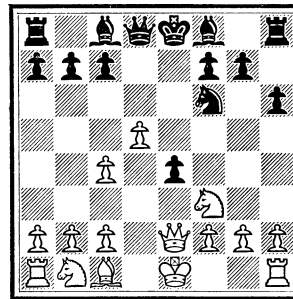
(g) Inferior is 11 Kt-Kt4, Kt x Kt; 12 B x Kt, Q-R5; 13 B x B, R x B; 14 Q-K2, O-O; 15 Kt-B3, QR-K1 ±, or 11 Kt-B4, Kt x Kt; 12 B x Kt, Kt-Kt5; 13 Q-K2, O-O; 14 P-KR3, Q-R5; 15 P-KKt3, B x P; 16 P x B, Q x Pch; 17 K-B1, Kt-K4! ± (Steinitz).

Notes continued on p. 448

1 P-K4, P-K4; 2 Kt-KB3, Kt-QB3; 3 B-B4, Kt-B3; 4 Kt-Kt5, P-Q4; 5 P x P, Kt-QR4

11	12	13	14	15
6 (B-Kt5ch)...	P-Q3 (d)			
(P-B3)	P-KR3			
7 (P x P)	Kt-KB3			
(P x P)	P-K5			
8 Q-B3	Q-K2			
Q-B2! (a)	Kt x B			
9 B-K2 (b)	P x Kt*			
B-Q3	B-QB4.....			B-Q3 (o)
10 Kt-B3	KKt-Q2.....	P-KR3.....	P-B3	P-KR3
O-O	O-O	O-O	P-QKt4! (l)	O-O
11 P-Q3	Kt-Kt3	Kt-R2 (h)	P-QKt4 (m)	Kt-Q4
R-Kt1	B-Kt5!	P-QKt4! (i)	B-K2	R-K1 (p)
12 KKt-K4	Q-B1	P x P (j)	KKt-Q2	B-K3
Kt x Kt	B-Kt5ch	Kt x P	B-Kt5	B-K4
13 Kt x Kt	Kt-B3 (e)	O-O	P-B3	Q-Q2
B-K2	P-B3 (f)	Q-K2	KP x P	B-Q2
14 Kt-Kt3	P-KR3	P-R3	KtP x P	Kt-QB3
P-KB4	B-KR4	P-B4	B-R4	P-B3
15 O-O	P-Kt4	P-B4	P x P	P x P
B-K3 ± (c)	B-Kt3 ± (g)	P-K6! ± (k)	O-O ± (n)	P x P = (q)

\* DIAGRAM 191  
cols. 12-15



[After 9 P x P]

(a) By far the best. Inferior alternatives are (1) 8...P x B; 9 Q x R, B-QB4; 10 O-O, O-O; 11 P-QKt4!, B x P; 12 Kt-QB3+. Bogoljubow-Euwe, 3rd match game, 1941. (2) 8...B-Q2; 9 B-Q3, B-K2; 10 Kt-B3, P-KR3; 11 KKt-K4, Kt x Kt; 12 B x Kt, O-O; 13 B-B5, Q-B1; 14 B x B, Q x B; 15 P-Q3 ±. Rossetto-Isain, Montevideo, 1941.

(b) Or 9 B-Q3, P-KR3; 10 Kt-K4, Kt-Q4; 11 QKt-B3, Kt-KB5; 12 Kt-Kt3, B-K3; 13 B-B5, P-Kt3; 14 B x B, Kt x B; 15 P-Q3, B-Kt2 ±. Green-Nielsen, Australia, 1936.

(c) Bird and Burn-Nillsbury and Schiffers, Nuremberg, 1896.

(d) 6 P-QKt3 is a suggestion by S. Mlotkowski.

Notes continued on p. 449

Notes continued from p. 445

(g) Black has enough for the Pawn. The column is analysis by Pinkus.

(h) The Fegatello attack.

(i) Not  $8 \dots Kt-K2$ ;  $9 P-Q4$ ,  $P-B3$ ;  $10 B-KKt5$ ,  $P-KR3$ ;  $11 B \times Kt$ ,  $B \times B$ ;  $12 O-O$ ,  $R-B1$ ;  $13 Q-K4$ ,  $B-Kt4ch$ ;  $14 K-Kt1$ ,  $R-B5$ ;  $15 Q \times Pch$ ,  $K-B2$ ;  $16 Kt \times Kt+$ . Analysis by Bardeleben and Mieses.

(j) Or  $10 P-QR3$ ,  $Kt-R3$ ;  $11 P-Q4$ ,  $Kt-B2!$ ;  $12 P-B4$ ,  $K-B2$ ;  $13 BP \times P$ ,  $K-Kt1$  (or  $13 \dots K-K1$ );  $14 O-O$ ,  $B-K3$ ;  $15 Q-B3$ ,  $Q-R5+$ . Pinkus.

(k)  $14 Q \times Qch$ ,  $K \times Q$ ;  $15 P \times P$ ,  $B-KB4$ . Analysis by Leonhardt.

(l) Other possibilities are no better, e.g.,  $9 O-O$ ,  $P-B3$ ;  $10 P-Q4$ ,  $K-Q3$ ;  $11 P \times Pch$ ,  $K-B2$ ;  $12 R-Q1$ ,  $B-K3$ ;  $13 P-QR3$ ,  $Q-R5+$  (Pinkus), or  $9 P-Q4$ ,  $Kt \times Pch$ ;  $10 K-Q1$ ,  $Kt \times P$ ;  $11 B \times Ktch$ ,  $K-Q3$ ;  $12 Q-B7$ ,  $K-B4$ ;  $13 B-K3$ ,  $K-Kt3 \mp$  (Steinitz), or here  $9 \dots P-B3$ ;  $10 Q-K4$  transposing to col. 3.

(m)  $10 \dots Kt-Q5$  is a playable alternative, e.g.,  $11 B \times Ktch$ ,  $K-Q3$ ;  $12 Q-B7$ ,  $Q-K2$ ;  $13 Kt-K4ch$ ,  $K-Q2 \mp$ .

(n)  $14 Q \times KP$ ,  $B-Q3$ ;  $15 Kt-B6ch$ ,

$K-Q1$ ;  $16 Q-KKt5$ ,  $P-KR3$ ;  $17 Q-R4$ ,  $B-KB4++$  (Pinkus).

(o) Fritz's Variation.

(p) Or  $6 P-Q6$ ,  $Q \times P$ ;  $7 B \times Pch$ ,  $K-K2$ ;  $8 B-Kt3$ ,  $Kt \times B$ ;  $9 RP \times Kt$ ,  $P-KR3$ ;  $10 Kt-KB3$ ,  $P-K5$ ;  $11 Kt-Kt1$ ,  $K-B2$ ;  $12 Kt-QB3$ ,  $Q-B3$ ;  $13 Q-K2$ ,  $B-QB4 =$ . Bogoljubow—Rubinstein, Stockholm, 1919.

(q) Inferior is  $6 \dots P-Kt4$ ;  $7 B-B1!$ ,  $Kt \times P$ ;  $8 Kt-K4!$ ,  $Kt-K3$  (or  $8 \dots Q-R5$ ;  $9 Kt-Kt3$ ,  $B-KKt5$ ;  $10 P-B3$ ,  $Kt-B4$ ;  $11 Q-K2!/+$ );  $9 B \times Pch$ ,  $B-Q2$ ;  $10 B \times Bch$ ,  $Q \times B$ ;  $11 O-O$ ,  $B-K2$ ;  $12 P-Q4$ ,  $P \times P$ ;  $13 P \times P$ ,  $O-O$ ;  $14 QKt-B3+$ . If here  $7 \dots P-KR3$ ;  $8 P \times Kt$ ,  $P \times Kt$ ;  $9 P \times P$ ,  $Kt \times P$ ;  $10 B \times Pch$ ,  $B-Q2$  (Reinhardt—Brinckmann, Aix-la-Chapelle, 1935);  $11 Q-R4+$ .

(r) Better than  $7 P-Q4$ ,  $P \times P$ ;  $8 O-O$ ,  $Kt-Q3$ ;  $9 B-Kt3!$  (not  $9 Q \times P$ ,  $P-KR3!$ ),  $P \times P$ ;  $10 QKt \times P$ ,  $B-K2$ ;  $11 B-KB4$ ,  $O-O$ ;  $12 Kt-B3$ ,  $B-B4$ ;  $13 Kt-Q4 \pm$ .

(s) Or  $7 \dots Kt \times P$ ;  $8 R-K1$ ,  $Q \times Kt$ ;  $9 B \times Kt$ ,  $B-Q3$ ;  $10 P-Q4+$ . Or  $7 \dots P-KR3$ ;  $8 Kt-B3$ ,  $P-K5$ ;  $9 R-K1$ ,  $B-K2$ ;  $10 Kt-K5$ ,  $O-O$ ;  $11 P-Q3+$ .

$P \times P$  e.p.;  $13 B \times P!$ ,  $B \times Kt$ ;  $14 P \times B$ ,  $Q \times Pch$ ;  $15 Q-K2 \pm$ . Likewise if  $12 B-KB4$ ,  $O-O$ ;  $13 B-Kt3$ ,  $R-Kt1$ ;  $14 P-Kt3$ ,  $P-B4$ ;  $15 P-QB3$ ,  $P \times P$ ;  $16 P \times P$ ,  $Kt-Q4 \mp$ . Demeter—Kostich, Gyula, 1921.

(k) If  $12 \dots B \times Kt$ ;  $13 P \times B$ ,  $Q \times P$ ;  $14 B-QB3$ ,  $Q-KKt4$ ;  $15 Q-Q6!$ ,  $B-Q2$ ;  $16 Kt-Q2 \pm$ . Becker—Johner, match, 1936.

(l) Good alternatives are  $15 P-KB4$ ,  $15 B-QB4$  and  $15 K-R1$ .

(m) Slightly better is  $15 \dots QR-Q1$  but after  $16 QKt-B4$ ,  $QB \times Kt$ ;  $17 B \times B$ ,  $P-B4$ ;  $18 P-QB3$  White still retains the upper hand.

(n)  $17 \dots B \times Kt$ ;  $18 P \times B$ ,  $Q \times P$ ;  $19 B-B4$ . Bogoljubow—Zimmermann, Zurich, 1928.

(o)  $10 \dots Q-B2$  transposes back to col-

Additional notes continued from p. 446

umns 6-9 after both  $11 P-KB4$  and  $P-Q4$ .  $10 \dots Q-Q5$  is weak because of  $11 P-KB4$ ,  $B-QB4$ ;  $12 R-B1$ ,  $B-Kt3$ ;  $13 P-B3$ ,  $Q-Q3$ ;  $14 P-QKt4$ ,  $Kt-Kt2$ ;  $15 P-Q4$ ,  $P \times P$  e.p.;  $16 Q \times P \pm$ . Duchrssen—Pernreder, Berlin, 1929.

(p) An attempt to get an advantage.  $12 P-Q4$ ,  $P \times P$  e.p.;  $13 Kt \times P(Q3)$ ,  $B-Q3$  is much like col. 8.

(q)  $18 Kt-Kt3$ ,  $B-QKt3$ . Fine—Steiner, 4th match game, 1944. Black's attack is worth the Pawn.

Notes continued from p. 447

(e) If  $13 P-B3$ ,  $B-K2!$  (weaker is  $13 \dots B-Q3$ ;  $14 P-KR3$ ,  $B-R4$ ;  $15 P-Kt4$ ,  $B-Kt3$ ;  $16 B-K3$ ,  $Kt-Q2$ ;  $17 QKt-Q2$ ,  $P-KB4$ ;  $18 P \times P$ ,  $B-R4$ ;  $19 Kt \times P!$ ). Tartakower—Bogoljubow, Bad Homburg, 1927);  $14 P-KR3$ ,  $B-R4$ ;  $15 P-Kt4$ ,  $B-Kt3$ ;  $16 B-K3$ ,  $Kt-Q2$ ;  $17 QKt-Q2$ ,  $Kt-K4$ ;  $18 O-O-O$ ,  $P-Kt4!$ ;  $19 P \times P$ ,  $Kt-Q6ch$ ;  $20 K-Kt1$ ,  $Q \times P \mp$ . Salwe—Marshall, Vienna, 1908. If  $13 B-Q2$ ,  $B \times Bch$ ;  $14 QKt \times B$ ,  $R-K1$ ;  $15 P-KR3$ ,  $P-K6!$ +

(f) An improvement on  $13 \dots P-QKt4$ ;  $14 P-KR3$ ,  $B-KR4$ ;  $15 P-Kt4$ ,  $B-Kt3$ ;  $16 B-Q2 =$ . Tartakower.

(g)  $16 P \times P$ ,  $P \times P$ ;  $17 B-Q2?$ ,  $P-K6!$ ;  $18 P \times P$ ,  $B \times Kt$ ;  $19 P \times B$ ,  $B \times P+$ . Luckis—Keres, Buenos Aires, 1939.

(h) If now  $11 KKt-Q2$ ,  $P-K6!$ ;  $12 P \times P$ ,  $B \times KP \mp$ .

(i) Better than  $11 \dots P-K6$ ;  $12 B \times P$ ,  $B \times B$ ;  $13 P \times B$ ,  $Kt-K5$ ;  $14 O-O!$ ,  $Kt-Kt6$ ;  $15 Q-Q3 =$  (Steinitz).

(j) Or  $12 Kt-QB3$ ,  $P \times P$ ;  $13 Q \times BP$ ,  $Q-Q3 \mp$ , or  $12 P-QKt3$ ,  $P \times P$ ;  $13 P \times P$ ,  $B-R3$ ;  $14 O-O$ ,  $P-B3$ ;  $15 P \times P$ ,  $Q-Q5 \mp$ . Bird—Tchigorin, New York, 1889.

(k)  $16 P \times P$ ,  $Kt \times P$ ;  $17 B \times Kt$ ,  $B \times Bch$ ;  $18 K-R1$ ,  $B-Kt2$  with a strong attack. Grob—Euwe, Zurich, 1934.

(l) More aggressive than  $10 \dots O-O$ ;  $11 Kt-Q4$ ,  $B-KKt5$ ;  $12 Q-B2$ ,  $R-K1$  (or  $12 \dots B \times Kt$ ;  $12 P \times B$ ,  $P-QKt4$ ;  $14 P-QKt3 =$ , as in Koch—Schlage, Berlin, 1929);  $13 B-K3$ ,  $Q-K2$ ;  $14 P-KR3$ ,  $B-Q2$ ;  $15 Kt-Q2$  with an adequate defense for White. Salwe—Vidmar, Carlsbad, 1907.

(m) Or  $11 P-QKt3$ ,  $P \times P$ ;  $12 P \times P$ ,  $O-O$ ;  $13 Kt-Q4$ ,  $B-KKt5$ ;  $14 Q-B2$ ,  $B \times Kt$ ;  $15 P \times B$ ,  $P-B3 \mp$ . Koch—Pahl, Berlin, 1928.

(n)  $16 O-O$ ,  $R-K1$ ;  $17 Q-B4$ ,  $B-Q3$ ;  $18 Q-R4$ ,  $R-K7$ . Grob—Keres, Dresden, 1936.

(o) For  $9 \dots B-K2$  see cols. 16-17. Inferior is  $9 \dots B-Kt5ch?$ ;  $10 P-B3$ ,  $B-Q3$ ;  $11 Kt-Q4$ ,  $O-O$ ;  $12 P-KR3$ ,  $R-K1$ ;  $13 B-K3$ ,  $Kt-Q2$ ;  $14 Kt-Q2 \pm$ . Tartakower—Yates, The Hague, 1921.

(p) Better than  $11 \dots P-B3$ ;  $12 P \times P$ ,  $P \times P$ ;  $13 Kt-QB3$ ,  $Q-Kt3$ ;  $14 Kt-Kt3$ ,  $B-K3$ ;  $15 O-O$ ,  $Q-R3$  (Tartakower—Réti, Homburg, 1927);  $16 Kt-Q2 \pm$ .

(q) Grob—Lundin, Ostend, 1936.



1 P-K4, P-K4; 2 Kt-KB3, Kt-QB3; 3 B-B4, Kt-B3; 4 Kt-Kt5

	16	17	18	19	20
4 (P-Q4)					B-B4 (o)
5 (P × P)					P-Q4 / (p)
(Kt-QR4)			P-Kt4 (e)		B × P (q)
6 (P-Q3)			B-B1 !	B × P (k)	P-QB3 !
(P-KR3)			Kt × P	Q × P	B-Kt3
7 (Kt-KB3)			B × P	B × Ktch	Kt × BP
(P-K5)			B-Kt2	♢ × B	B × Pch
8 (Q-K2)			P-Q4	O-O (l)	K-B1 (r)
(Kt × B)			P × P	B-Kt2	Q-K2
9 (P × Kt)			O-O (f)	Q-B3	Kt × R
B-K2 (a)			B-K2 (g)	P-K5 !	B-Kt3 (s)
10 KKt-Q2	Kt-Q4		Q-R5 (h)	Q-QKt3	B-B7ch
B-KKt5	P-B3		P-Kt3	O-O-O !	K-B1
11 Q-K3	Kt-QB3		Q-R6	Q-R3ch (m)	Q-B3
O-O	P × P (c)		Q-Q2	K-Kt1	P-Q4
12 P-KR3	P × P		Q-Kt7	Kt-QB3 (n)	B-Kt5
B-KB4	O-O		O-O-O	R-Q2	P × P
13 P-KKt4	O-O		Q × BP (i)	R-K1	Q-Kt3
B-R2	B-KKt5		KR-B1	B-Kt5	B-KB4
14 Kt-QB3 ± (b)	Q-K3	Q-K6+ (j)	P-Q3		K-K1+ (t)
	Kt × P = (d)		P × P =		

\* See p. 447, Diagram 191

(a) Maroczy's Variation.

(b) 14... P-QKt3; 15 Kt-Kt3, R-K1; 16 B-Q2. Analysis by Tartakower.

(c) Inferior is 11... B-KKt5; 12 P-B3 !, KP × P; 13 KtP × P, B-KR6 (if 13... B-R4 ?; 14 P-Q6 !, Q × P; 15 Kt-B5+); 14 R-KKt1, Q-Kt3; 15 Q-Q3, O-O-O; 16 R-Kt3, B-QB4; 17 B-K3, KR-K1; 18 O-O-O, resigns (if 18... B-Q2; 19 Kt-R4+). Duehrssen—Demetriescu, Berlin, 1924.

(d) 15 Q × KP, Kt × Kt; 16 P × Kt, Q-Q2.

(e) Ulvestad's Variation.

(f) Less clear is 9 Q × P, Q-K2ch; 10 Q-K4, Q × Qch; 11 Kt × Q, O-O-O, or 9 Q-B3, B-Kt5ch.

(g) Not 9... P-KR3 ?; 10 Q-R5 !, P-Kt3; 11 R-K1ch, B-K2; 12 Q-R3, K-B1; 13 Kt × P !, K × Kt; 14 Q-K6ch, K-Kt2; 15 B × Kt+. Berliner—Ponce, Washington, 1945.

(h) A simpler line is 10 Kt-KB3, O-O; 11 B × Kt, B × B; 12 Kt × P, B-Kt2; 13 Kt-B5, B-KB3; 14 Q-Kt4, K-R1 but Black's two B's and excellent development provide counterplay.

(i) Not 13 Kt × BP ?, B-B3 !+.

(j) 14... P-KR3; 15 Q × Qch, K × Q; 16 Kt-KB3, B-B3; 17 R-Q1 and Black's compensation is inadequate.

(k) Weak is 6 P × Kt, P × B; 7 Q-K2, Q-Q4; 8 P-B4, P-KR3; 9 Q × Pch, Q × Q; 10 P × Q, P × Kt; 11 P × Kt, P × P; 12 Kt-B3, B-Q3; 13 Kt-Q5, B-K4 ♣. Steiner—Mieses, Hastings, 1945-46.

(l) If instead 8 Q-B3, P-K5; 9 Q-QKt3, B-QB4 !; 10 P-Q4 !, P × P e.p.; 11 Q × Pch, K-Q1; 12 O-O, B-Kt2; 13 Kt-KB3, R-KB1; 14 Q-Kt3, Kt-Kt5; 15 Q × Pch, K-B1 and Black has a fierce attack where White can probably do no better than draw.

Notes continued on p. 451

Notes continued from p. 450

(m) Not 11 Kt × BP, P-K6 !; 12 P-KB3, P-K7; 13 R-K1, B-B4ch; 14 K-R1, QR-K1; 15 Kt × R, B-B7+.

(n) If now 12 Kt × BP, R-Q4 !; 13 Kt × R, R-KR4 with a strong attack, e.g. 14 Q-QB3, Q-Q3; 15 P-KR3 ?, Kt-Kt5 !; 16 Q-KKt3, Q × Q; 17 P × Q, B-B4ch; 18 K-R1, R × Pch !; 19 P × R, P-K6ch ±. The column is Kan—Konstantinopolsky, Moscow, 1945.

(o) The Wilkes-Barre Variation, so called because it has been played and analyzed by the Wilkes-Barre C. C. of Pennsylvania. 4... Kt × P ? (Lewis's Variation) is refuted by 5 B × Pch, K-K2; 6 P-Q4 !, P-Q3; 7 B-Kt3, Kt-B3; 8 Kt-B7, Q-K1; 9 P × P, P × P; 10 Kt × R+, or here 6... P-Q4; 7 P-KB3, Kt-Q3; 8 B × P, Kt × P; 9 P-B3, Kt(Q5)-B4; 10 Q-K2, K-B3; 11 Kt-K4ch+.

(p) 5 Kt × BP may be good, but after 5... B × Pch; 6 K × B (or 6 K-B1, Q-K2; 7 Kt × R, P-Q4; 8 P × P, Kt-Q5;

9 P-B3, B-Kt5; 10 Q-R4ch, Kt-Q2 ♣. Mikyskas—Traxler, 1896), Kt × Pch; 7 K-Kt1, Q-R5; 8 P-KKt3, Kt × KtP Black has an attack with unclear complications. 5 B × Pch is less satisfactory because of 5... K-K2; 6 B-Kt3, R-B1; 7 O-O, P-Q3; 8 P-Q3, P-KR3; 9 Kt-KB3, Q-K1; 10 P-KR3, Q-Kt3 ♣.

(q) If 5... P-Q4; 6 B × P, Kt × B; 7 P × B !, KKt-Kt5; 8 P-QR3, Q × Qch; 9 K × Q, Kt-R3; 10 P-QKt4+.

(r) 8 K × B, Kt × Pch; 9 K-Kt1, Q-R5; 10 P-KKt3, Kt × KtP; 11 P × Kt, Q × Pch; 12 K-B1, R-B1 again gives Black strong counterplay, or here 10 B-K3, R-B1; 11 Kt-R3, R × Kt with enough compensation.

(s) Or 9... Kt × P; 10 Q-R5ch, P-Kt3; 11 Kt × P+, or 9... P-Q4; 10 P × P, B-Kt5; 11 B-K2++ (Pinkus).

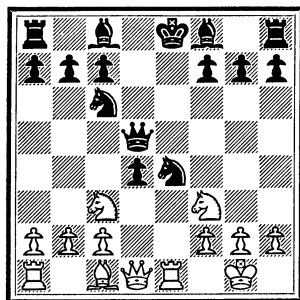
(t) 14... R-Q1; 15 R-B1, Q-Q2; 16 Kt-R3. Analysis by Pinkus.

1 P—K4, P—K4; 2 Kt—KB3, Kt—QB3; 3 B—B4, Kt—B3; 4 P—Q4, P × P; 5 O—O, Kt × P; 6 R—K1, P—Q4; 7 B × P, Q × B; 8 Kt—B3\*

21	22	23	24	25
8 Q—QR4.....				Q—Q1 (p)
9 Kt × Kt (a)				R × Ktch
B—K3 (b)				B—K2
10 QKt—Kt5.....		B—Kt5 (k)	Kt × P	
O—O—O		P—KR3 (l)	P—B4!	
11 Kt × B		B—R4	R—B4 (q)	
P × Kt		KB—Kt5 (m)	O—O	
12 R × P			R—K2	Kt × Kt
Q—KB4.....	B—Q3.....	B—K2 (i)	P—KKt4	Q × Qch
13 Q—K2	B—Kt5 (f)	Kt—K5!	P—QR3	Kt × Q
P—KR3	QR—K1 (g)	Kt × Kt	B—K2	P × Kt
14 B—Q2 (c)	Q—K1	R × B	B—Kt3 (n)	R—B4
Q × P	Q × Qch	R—Q2	O—O—O	B—Q3 (r)
15 R—QB1	QR × Q	R × R	P—Kt4	B—K3
Q × P	R × R	Kt × R	Q—Q4	P—B5
16 KR × Kt	R × R	B—B4	Q—K1	B—Q4
P × R	K—Q2	R—K1	P—KR4	R—B4
17 Q—K6ch (d)	R—K4	P—KR3 ± (j)	P—KR4	P—KKt4
K—Kt1 ± (e)	R—K1 = (h)		B—Kt5 ± (o)	R—KKt4 = (s)

## \* DIAGRAM 192

cols. 21—25



[After 8 Kt—B3]

(a) If 9 Kt × P, Kt × Kt; 10 Q × Kt, P—KB4; 11 B—Q2! (an improvement on 11 B—Kt5, Q—B4; 12 Q—Q8ch, K—B2; 13 Kt × Kt, P × Kt; 14 QR—Q1, B—Q3!+. Euwe—Réti, Amsterdam, 1920),

Q—Kt3; 12 Q × Q, RP × Q; 13 P—B3, B—B4ch; 14 K—R1, B—K3; 15 P × Kt, O—O—O ±. Inadvisable here is 11... Q—B4, to hold on to the piece, because of 12 Q—R4ch, B—Q2; 13 Kt × Kt, P × Kt; 14 Q × Pch, K—B2; 15 Q × KtP with a very strong attack, e.g., 15... B—Q3?; 16 Q—Kt3ch, K—B3; 17 B—B3ch, K—Kt3; 18 R—K6ch, K—B4; 19 R—R6!, resigns. Gorak—Batik, correspondence, 1929. Inferior is 9 R × Ktch, B—K3; 10 Kt × P, O—O—O; 11 B—K3, B—KB4+.

(b) After 9... B—K2; 10 B—Kt5 Black gets equality at best.

(c) Not 14 Kt—R4, P—Q6!; 15 P × P, Q × P; 16 Q × Q, R × Q; 17 B—K3, B—Q3 ±.

(d) Weak is 17 Kt—K5, R—K1; 18 Q—R6ch, Q—Kt2; 19 Q—K2, B—R6; 20 R—K1, Q—Kt4+. Kostich—Vidmar, Bled, 1931.

Notes continued on p. 454

1 P—K4, P—K4; 2 Kt—KB3, Kt—QB3; 3 B—B4, Kt—B3; 4 P—Q4, P × P; 5 O—O

26	27	28	29	30
5 (Kt × P).....		P—Q3.....	B—B4 (i)	
6 (R—K1)		Kt × P	P—K5 (j)	
(P—Q4) (a)		B—K2	Kt—KKt5.....	P—Q4
7 Kt—B3 (b)		Kt—QB3	B—B4 (k)	B—QKt5
P × Kt!.....	P × B (d)	O—O	O—O (l)	Kt—K5
8 B × P	R × Ktch	P—QKt3 (g)	P—KR3	Kt × P
B—K3!	B—K3 (e)	B—Q2	Kt—R3	B—Q2
9 B × Ktch (c)	Kt × P	B—Kt2	B × Kt	Kt—Kt3
P × B	Kt × Kt	R—K1	P × B	Kt—K2
10 Q × Qch	R × Kt	Q—Q2	P—B3	B—Q3
R × Q	B—Q3 (f)	Kt—K4	P—Q4	B—Kt3
11 R × Kt	B—B4	B—K2	P × P e.p.	B × Kt
R—Q8ch	O—O	P—B3	Q × P	P × B
12 R—K1	B × B	P—B4	Q—B1	Kt—B3
R × Rch	P × B	Kt—Kt3	B—B4	B—B3
13 Kt × R	R × QP	QR—K1	QKt—Q2	Q—K2
P × P	Q—K2	KB—B1	P × P	Kt—Kt3
14 B × P	Q—Q4	B—Q3 ± (h)	P × P	R—Q1
P—B3 ±	KR—Q1 =		QR—K1 ±	Q—B1 ± (m)

(a) This move is forced, for if 6... P—B4?; 7 B—KKt5, B—K2; 8 B × B, Kt × B; 9 Q × P+ (Cederlind—Anderson, correspondence, 1941), or 6... B—K2?; 7 R × Kt, P—Q4; 8 R × Bch, Kt × R; 9 B—Kt3+.

(b) The Canal Variation.

(c) If 9 R × Kt, Kt—K2!+. Or 9 B × Kt, B—QKt5+ (Euwe).

(d) A better defense is 7... B—K3; 8 Kt × Kt, P × B; 9 KKt—Kt5, B—K2; 10 Kt × B, P × Kt; 11 Q—R5ch, P—Kt3; 12 Q—QKt5, O—O; 13 Q × BP, Q—Q4 ±.

(e) 8... B—K2 transposes to col. 25.

(f) Better than 10... Q—B1?; 11 B—Kt5, B—Q3; 12 Kt—K4, O—O; 13 Kt—B6ch!, P × Kt; 14 B × P, B—K4; 15 B × B ±. Canal—Johner, Trieste, 1923.

(g) 8 Kt—B5 is weaker because of 8... B × Kt; 9 P × B, Q—Q2 =. 8 P—KR3

is a good alternative to the text, e.g., 8... Kt × Kt (better 8... Kt—K4); 9 Q × Kt, B—K3; 10 B × B, P × B; 11 P—K5, Kt—Q2; 12 P × P, P × P; 13 B—K3, P—Q4; 14 KR—K1 ±. Tarrasch—Taubenhaus, Ostend, 1905.

(h) Euwe—Geus, The Hague, 1925.

(i) Weak is 5... B—K2; 6 Kt × P, Kt × P (6... P—Q3 transposes into col. 28); 7 Kt—B5, P—Q4; 8 Kt × Pch, K—B1; 9 B—KR6, K—Kt1; 10 Q × P, Q × Q; 11 B × Q, Kt—B3; 12 B × Kt, P × B; 13 R—K1, B—B1; 14 Kt—K8!+ (Krause).

(j) 6 R—K1, P—Q3; 7 P—B3 transposes into either the Scotch Game with 7... P—Q6, or the Center Game with 7... P × P.

Notes continued on p. 454

## Notes continued from p. 452

(e) 18 Q-K4, P-Q6; 19 Kt-K5, Q-Kt2; 20 Kt x Pch, K-R1; 21 Q-QR4, R-K1; 22 P-Kt3 (if 22 Kt-R5, Q-K5; 23 Kt-B4, B-B4; 24 Q-R5, B-Kt3+. Von Feilitzsch-Diner, correspondence, 1935), R-K7; 23 R-B3, R x B; 24 R-Kt3, B-B4; 25 R x Q, K x R; 26 Kt-R5ch, K-B1. Here White has a probable draw with 27 Q-Kt4ch, K-Kt1; 28 Q-K4, but no better. Analysis by Tartakower.

(f) An improvement on 13 Q-K2, Q-R4; 14 P-KR3, QR-K1; 15 B-Q2, Kt-K4!; 16 R x Rch, R x R; 17 R-Q1, Kt x Ktch; 18 Q x Kt, Q x Q; 19 P x Q, P-B4+. Tartakower and others—Oskam and others, Rotterdam, 1933.

(g) If instead 13...QR-B1 (threatening...R x Kt); 14 Q-K2!, P-KR3; 15 B-Q2, Q-KB4; 16 Q-K4, Q x Q; 17 R x Q, B-B4; 18 P-QR3 ±. Cruz-Kashdan, Hamilton, 1941.

(h) 18 R-R4, P-KR3; 19 B-Q2, B-K2; 20 R-Kt4, B-B3.

(i) Another inferior defense is 12...Q-Q4; 13 Q-K2, P-KR3! (essential; if 13...P-Q6; 14 P x P, Q x QP; 15 B-Kt5! ±); 14 B-B4, e.g., 14...P-KKt4; 15 B-Kt3, P-Q6; 16 P x P, P-Kt5; 17 R x Kt!, P x R; 18 Kt-K5, P-KR4; 19 P-Q4, K-Kt2; 20 R-QB1, R-K1; 21 R-B3 with a powerful attack. Tartakower—A. Steiner, Budapest, 1921.

(j) 17...Q-KB4; 18 B-Kt3, Q-K5; 19 Q-Q2, P-QKt3; 20 P-Kt4, Kt-B3; 21 R-Q1. Tartakower—Tarrasch, Gothenburg, 1920.

## Notes continued from p. 453

(k) The most promising line, but there is nothing that is really good for White. Some alternatives are: (1) 7 P-KR3, KKt x KP; 8 Kt x Kt, Kt x Kt; 9 R-K1, P-Q3; 10 P-B4, P-Q6 dis ch; 11 K-R2, Q-R5! (Steinitz). (2) 7 P-B3, P-Q4!; 8 P x P e.p., Q x P; 9 R-K1ch, B-K3; 10 B x B, P x B; 11 P-KR3, Kt x P!; 12 K x Kt, P x P dis ch; 13 K-B1, Q x Q; 14 R x Q, P-B7+. (3) 7 Q-K1, P-Q4!; 8 P x P e.p. ch, K-B1; 9 P x P, Q x P; 10 Q-K4, Kt-B3; 11 Q-R4, B-KKt5; 12 Kt-Kt5,

(k) Other continuations are also weak, e.g., 10 KKt-Kt5, O-O-O; 11 Kt x B, P x Kt; 12 Kt-Kt5, B-Kt5; 13 R x P, P-KR3! ±, or 10 B-Q2, B-Kt5; 11 B x B, Q x B; 12 Kt(K4)-Kt5, O-O-O; 13 Kt x B, P x Kt; 14 Kt-Kt5, QR-K1; 15 Kt x KP, R-K2 ±.

(l) A good alternative is 10...B-QKt5; 11 R-K2, O-O; 12 P-QR3, B-Q3!; 13 Kt x B, P x Kt; 14 B-B4, B-Kt5 ±. Cortlever—Euwe, Amsterdam, 1938.

(m) But not 11...P-KKt4; 12 Kt-B6ch, K-K2; 13 P-QKt4!, Q-KB4; 14 P-Kt5 with a very strong attack (the Jordansky Variation).

(n) No better is 14 P-QKt4, Q-Q4; 15 P-B4, Q x P; 16 R-B1, Q-Q4; 17 B-Kt3, O-O-O; 18 Kt-B5, B-Q3 ±. Romanovsky—Belavienetz, Leningrad—Moscow, 1939.

(o) Medina—Keres, Madrid, 1943.

(p) 8...Q-KR4 also leads to an even game, e.g., 9 Kt x Kt, B-K3; 10 B-Kt5, B-QKt5; 11 Kt x P, Q x Q; 12 KR x Q, Kt x Kt =. 8...Q-B5? is refuted by 9 Kt-Q2, Q-R3; 10 Kt-Q5, Q-R4; 11 P-QB4! ± (Schlechter). 8...Q-KB4 is weaker because of 9 Kt x Kt, B-K2; 10 B-Kt5, B-K3; 11 B x B, K x B; 12 Kt x P ±.

(q) If 11 B-R6?, P x R; 12 B x P, Kt x Kt; 13 Q-R5ch, K-Q2; 14 B x Kt, R-B1; 15 R-Q1, B-Q3+ (Tarrasch).

(r) Or 14...R-K1; 15 B-B4, B-R3; 16 R x P, B-Kt2 with a forced draw.

(s) Ragozin—Botvinnik, Leningrad, 1930.

R-K1; 13 Kt x BP, Kt-QR4! ±. Olsson—Réti, Stockholm, 1919. (4) 7 B x Pch, K x B; 8 Kt-Kt5ch, K-Kt1; 9 Q x Kt, P-Q4 ±. (5) 7 R-K1, P-Q6!; 8 B x Pch, K-B1!; 9 Q x P?, B x Pch; 10 K-B1, B x R; 11 Q-B5, KKt x KP!; 12 B-Kt5, Kt-K2; 13 B x Ktch, Q x B; 14 Kt x Kt, Q-B3+.

(l) Réti's recommendation, 7...P-Q3; 8 P x P, B x P; 9 R-K1ch, K-B1! ±, is also good.

(m) 15 Kt x KP, Q-B4; 16 Kt-Kt3, Q x KP. Analysis by Lasker.

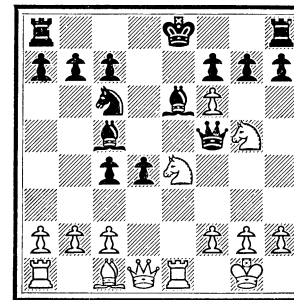
## MAX LANGE ATTACK

1 P-K4, P-K4; 2 Kt-KB3, Kt-QB3; 3 B-B4, Kt-B3; 4 P-Q4, P x P; 5 O-O, B-B4; 6 P-K5, P-Q4; 7 P x Kt, P x B; 8 R-K1ch, B-K3 (a); 9 Kt-Kt5 (b), Q-Q4 (c); 10 Kt-QB3, Q-B4; 11 QKt-K4 (d)\*

	3 <sup>1</sup>	3 <sup>2</sup>	33	34	35
11	O-O-O				B-KB1 (l)
12	KKt x B P x Kt		P-KKt4 Q-K4	Kt x BP! (m) K x Kt	
13	P-KKt4 Q-K4		Kt-KB3 (k) Q-Q4	Kt-Kt5ch K-Kt3.....	K-Kt1
14	P x P KR-Kt1		P x P B x P!	P x P B x P	P-KKt4 Q-Q4 (o)
15	B-R6! B-Kt5!.....	P-Q6	P x R = Q R x Q	R x Bch B-B3	Kt x B (p) R-B1
16	R-K2 (e) P-Q6	P-B3 P-Q7 (g)	Kt-B6 Q x Kt	P-KKt4 Q-Q4	Kt-B4 Q-B2 (q)
17	R-K3 Q x QKtP	R-K2 R-Q6	Kt x B Q x Q	Kt-R3! K-B2	P x P B x P
18	P x P R x KtP!	Q-KB1 (h) B-Kt3 (i)	R x Q R-Kt1	Kt-B4 Q-QB4	Kt-R5 P-KR3
19	B x R Q x B ± (f)	R-Q1 Kt-Q1 ± (j)	P-KR3 P-KR4 =	Q-B3! + (n)	P-B4 ± (r)

## \* DIAGRAM 193

cols. 31-35



[After 11 QKt-K4]

(a) An alternative is 8...K-B1; 9 B-Kt5, P x P; 10 B-R6ch, K-Kt1; 11 Kt-B3, B-B1! and Black's defense is adequate, e.g., 12 B x B, K x B; 13 Kt-QKt5, B-K3; 14 QKt x QP (14 Q-Q2, R-KKt1), Kt x Kt; 15 Kt x Kt, Q-

Q4!; 16 Q-Q2, R-KKt1 =.

(b) If 9 P x P, R-KKt1; 10 B-Kt5, B-K2; 11 B x B, Q x B! (but not 11...K x B; 12 R-K4!, P-B4; 13 R-R4, K-B2; 14 R x RP ±. Fahrni—Tartakower, Baden, 1914. Cf. also col. 36); 12 P-B3, O-O-O; 13 P x P, R x KtP; 14 Kt-B3, Kt-Kt5 ± (Tartakower).

(c) The threat was Kt x B followed by Q-R5ch+. 9...P-KKt3 (Loman's Defense) is unsound because of 10 Kt-Q2 (10 Q-B3 also refutes the move), e.g., 10...Q-Q4; 11 QKt-K4, O-O-O; 12 Kt x QB, P x Kt; 13 Kt x B, Q x Kt; 14 B-R6, Q-B4; 15 Q-B3!, P-K4; 16 P-B7+. Olson—Spielmann, Stockholm, 1920.

(d) Inadequate is 11 P-KKt4, Q-Kt3; 12 QKt-K4, B-Kt3; 13 P-B4, O-O-O!; 14 P-B5, B x P; 15 P x B, Q x P(B4) ±. Blackburne—Teichmann, Nuremberg, 1896.

Notes continued on p. 457

1 P—K4, P—K4; 2 Kt—KB3, Kt—QB3; 3 B—B4, Kt—B3\*

	36	37	38	39	40
4 (P—Q4)..... (P × P)				Kt—B3 (j) Kt × P!	
5 (O—O)..... (B—B4)	P—K5 P—Q4		Kt—Kt5 P—Q4! (f)	Kt × Kt (k) P—Q4	
6 (P—K5) (P—Q4)	B—QKt5 Kt—K5	P × P Q—K2ch! (g)	P × P Q × Kt	B—Q3 (l) P × Kt	
7 (P × Kt) (P × B)	Kt × P B—Q2 (c)	K—B1 (h) Kt—K4	B × P B—KKt5.....	B—Q3	
8 P × P R—KKt1	B × Kt (d) P × B	Q × P Kt × B (i)	P—KR3 B × Kt	P—Q4 Kt × P (n)	
9 B—Kt5 P—B3 (a)	O—O B—QB4	Q × Kt (B4) Q—B4	Q × B Q—Q2	Kt × Kt P × Kt	
10 R—K1ch K—B2	P—KB3 Kt—Kt4	Q × Q B × Q	B × Kt P × B	Q × P O—O	
11 Kt—K5ch Kt × Kt	P—B3 O—O	P—QB4 B—B4	O—O B—B4	B—K3 Q—K2	
12 R × Kt B—K2	B—K3 P—B3	K—K2 O—O	Q—KKt3 P—B3	O—O—O R—K1	
13 Q—R5ch K × P = (b)	P × P Q × P ≠ (e)	R—Q1 KR—K1ch ≠	P—Q3 O—O = (m)	KR—K1 (o) B—K3 ≠ (p)	

\* See p. 443, Diagram 188

(a) If now 9... B—K2; 10 B × B, Q × B (or 10... K × B; 11 R—K1ch, B—K3; 12 R—K4!±); 11 Kt × P, R × P; 12 R—K1+. Cf. p. 455, note (b).

(b) 14 Q—R6ch, K—B2; 15 Q × RPch, R—Kt2; 16 Q—R5ch and draws.

(c) If 7... B—QB4; 8 B—K3!, B—Q2; 9 B × Kt, P × B; 10 P—KB3, B × Kt =, but not 8 Kt × Kt!, B × Pch; 9 K—B1, Q—R5!; 10 Q—K2, O—O; 11 B—K3, P × Kt; 12 B × BP, B—Kt5; 13 Q—Q3, QR—Q1+ (Keidanz).

(d) Or 8 Kt—Kt3, Q—R5!; 9 O—O, O—O—O; 10 B × Kt, B × B; 11 Kt—B3, P—B3; 12 Kt × Kt, P × Kt; 13 Q—K2, R—Q4; 14 P—K6, B—Q3 ≠. Tartakower—Réti, Baden, 1914.

(e) Ragošin—Reshevsky, Leningrad—Moscow, 1939.

(f) More aggressive than 5... Kt—K4; 6 Q × P, Kt × B; 7 Q × Kt (B4), P—Q4; 8 P × P, Q × P =. Torre—Marshall, New

York, 1925. If here 6 B—Kt3, P—KR3; 7 P—KB4, P × Kt; 8 P × Kt, Kt × P; 9 O—O (9 Q × P, Kt—B4 ≠), P—Q4; 10 P × P e.p., Q × P; 11 B × Pch, K—Q1 ≠. Kan—Loevenfisch, Leningrad, 1933.

(g) If 6... Kt—K4; 7 Q × P, Kt × B; 8 Q × QKt, Q × P =. And if 6... Kt × P; 7 O—O, B—K3; 8 R—K1! (better than 8 P—B4, Kt—K6; 9 Kt × B, P × Kt; 10 B × Kt, P × B; 11 Q—Kt4, Q—B3; 12 Kt—B3, P—KR4 =. Milner-Barry—Alexander, 1st match game, 1941), Q—Q2; 9 Kt × BP!, K × Kt; 10 Q—B3ch, K—Kt1; 11 R × B!+.

(h) Or 7 Q—K2, Kt—K4; 8 B—Kt5ch, P—B3; 9 P × P, P × P; 10 B—Q3, Kt × Bch ≠.

(i) Also good is 8... P—KR3; 9 Kt—K4, Kt × B; 10 Kt × Ktch, Q × Kt; 11 Q × Kt, B—Q3; 12 Q—K2ch, K—B1 ≠. Szabo—Kostich, Llyublyana, 1938.

Notes continued on p. 457

Notes continued from p. 455

(e) 16 P—B4, Q—QKt4! is no better, e.g., 17 R—KB1, P—Q6; 18 Kt—B6, B—B4ch; 19 K—R1, Kt—Q5; 20 P—KR4, Q—B3ch; 21 K—R2, P × P+, or 17 Kt—B6, P—Q6; 18 Kt × R, Q—B4ch; 19 K—Kt2, B × R; 20 Q × B, Q—Q4ch; 21 K—Kt3, R × Kt; 22 R—Q1, Kt—Q5+ (Croy).

(f) Feldmann—Szabo, Budapest, 1946. Continued 20 R—B1, Kt—K4; 21 Q—R4, P × P!; 22 Q × B, Q × Pch; 23 R—Kt3, P—Q7!.

(g) More aggressive than 16... B—K2; 17 Q—B3!, Q—Q4; 18 Q—B7, B—R5; 19 QR—Q1, Kt—K4; 20 Q—B4, Kt—Kt3; 21 Q—B7, Kt—K4 =. Von Feilitzsch—Seibold, 1933. Inferior is 16... B—Q3; 17 P—B4, Q—Q4; 18 Q—B3, B—K2; 19 P—Kt5, Q—KB4, 20 Kt—Kt3, Q—B2; 21 Q—Kt4!+. Marshall—Tarrasch, Hamburg, 1910.

(h) If 18 Kt × B, Q × Kt; 19 R × P (Q2), Kt—K4; 20 R × R, P × R; 21 Q—R4, Q—Q4; 22 Q—KB4, Kt—B6ch; 23 K—B1, R—Q1; 24 Q—B8, P—Q7; 25 R—Q1, Kt × Pch++ (Seibold).

(i) Marshall suggests 18... Q—Q4; 19 R—Q1, Kt—K4; 20 Kt—B6, Q—B6; 21 Kt × R, Q × KtPch; 22 K—R1, Q—B6ch =.

(j) 20 P—Kt5, Kt—B2; 21 Kt—Kt3!, Q—Q4!; 22 Q—R3, Kt—K4. Seibold.

(k) 13 Kt × QB transposes to cols. 31—32.

(l) Rubinstein's Defense. Other replies are weak, e.g., 11... B—Kt3; 12 P × P, R—KKt1; 13 P—KKt4, Q—Kt3; 14 Kt × B, P × Kt; 15 B—Kt5, R × P; 16 Q—B3, K—Q2; 17 Kt—B6ch, K—B1; 18 R × P+.

(m) If 12 P—KKt4, Q × KtPch!; 13 Q × Q, B × Q; 14 P × P, B × P; 15 Kt—B6ch, K—B1; 17 KKt × Pch, R × Kt; 18 Kt × Rch, K—Kt1; 19 Kt—Kt5, Kt—Kt5 ≠.

(n) 19... KR—KB1; 20 Kt—Q3!, P × Kt; 21 R × Bch, K—K2; 22 R × R, R × R; 23 Q—K4ch.

(o) Or 14... Q—Kt3; 15 P × P, KB × P; 16 R × B, B—B3; 17 Kt—K4, R—KB1; 18 P—Kt5+ (Tarrasch).

(p) 15 R × B is also strong, e.g., P × P; 16 R × P followed by R—B5 (Tarrasch)

(q) Or 16... Q—Q2; 17 Q—K2, P—QKt4; 18 P—QR4, P—QR3; 19 RP × P, RP × P; 20 P—Kt3+.

(r) 19... K—R2; 20 Q—B3, KR—K1; 21 B—Q2. Analysis by Tartakower in *Wiener Schachzeitung*, 1924.

Notes continued from p. 456

(j) If 4 O—O, Kt × P; 5 B—Q5 (other moves lead to an advantage for Black), Kt—B3 =. On 4 P—Q3, B—B4 transposes into the Giuoco Piano. If on 4 P—Q3, P—Q4; 5 P × P, Kt × P; 6 O—O, B—KKt5; 7 P—KR3, B × Kt; 8 Q × B, Kt—Q5!; 9 Q—Q1, P—QKt4; 10 B—Kt3, Kt × B; 11 RP × Kt, B—B4; 12 Kt—B3 ±.

(k) Best, for if 5 B × Pch, K × B; 6 Kt × Kt, P—Q4; 7 QKt—Kt5ch, K—Kt1 ≠, or 5 O—O?, Kt × Kt; 6 QP × Kt, B—K2+ (Cf. Bishop's Opening, p. 14, col. 6, note (a)).

(l) Forced, for if 6 B—Kt5, P × Kt;

7 Kt × P, Q—Kt4!; 8 B × Ktch, P × B; 9 P—Q4, Q × P+.

(m) Analysis by Krause.

(n) Or 8... P × P; 9 B × Ktch, P × B; 10 Q × P, O—O; 11 O—O, P—QB4; 12 Q—B3, B—Kt2; 13 P—QKt3, Q—Q2; 14 B—Kt2, P—KB3; 15 QR—Q1, Q—B4; 16 Q—B4ch, K—R1; 17 Kt—R4 (Tartakower—Bogoljubov, Pistyán, 1922), Q—K5! =.

(o) Or 13 B—Q5, B—K4; 14 Q—QR4, P—B3 ≠. Tartakower—Atkins, London, 1922.

(p) Tarrasch—Marshall, Breslau, 1912.

VIENNA GAME

**T**HIS OPENING, like the King's Gambit, into which it may transpose at several points, is played with a view to a quick attack against the enemy King position. But Black has a number of good defenses. While there are numerous traps to be avoided, on the whole Black can equalize easily and frequently gets an advantage.

After the initial 1 P-K4, P-K4; 2 Kt-QB3, Kt-KB3 is best for Black. White then may play 3 B-B4, 3 P-KKt3 or 3 P-B4.

(1) 3 B-B4 (cols. 1-9) can be adequately met in various ways.

(i) 3...Kt x P (cols. 1-3) is the most logical and the most aggressive. The critical attack in col. 1 has never been exhaustively analyzed, but what there is is decidedly in Black's favor. Adams has improved upon an Alekhine-Euwe variation in col. 2. White can force a quick draw with the line in col. 3.

(ii) 3...Kt-B3 (cols. 4-5) is also good. Black can either go in for the complications in col. 4 or choose the simple line in col. 5.

(iii) 3...B-B4 (cols. 6-8) is safe and sound. The variations similar to the King's Gambit Declined (cols. 6-7) need not be feared, but White's game is slightly more comfortable in col. 8.

(iv) 3...P-Q3 (col. 9) is another playable reply, as is 3...P-B3 (col. 9, note (o)).

(2) 3 P-KKt3 (col. 10) fails against 3...P-Q4.

(3) 3 P-B4 (cols. 11-21) was one of Spielmann's favorite lines. After the natural 3...P-Q4; 4 BP x P (Steinitz's 4 P-Q3 is met by 4...P x BP!—col. 21), Kt x P and now after 5 Kt-B3 (cols. 11-17) Black has a number of equalizing lines while after 5 Q-B3 (cols. 18-19) or 5 P-Q3 (col. 20) Black can get the better of it.

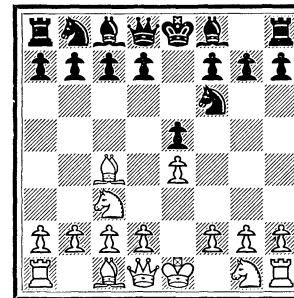
Replies other than 2...Kt-KB3 are inferior. On 2...Kt-QB3 (cols. 23-30) the K-fianchetto gives White a minimal advantage. The gambits with 3 P-B4 after 2...Kt-QB3 (cols. 26-30) are spectacular but unsound.

1 P-K4, P-K4; 2 Kt-QB3, Kt-KB3; 3 B-B4\*

	1	2	3	4	5
3	Kt x P.....			Kt-B3	
4	Q-R5! Kt-Q3!			P-Q3 (h) B-Kt5.....	Kt-QR4 (m)
5	B-Kt3..... Kt-B3!.....	B-K2	Q x KPch Q-K2	B-KKt5 (i) P-KR3 (j)	Q-B3 Kt x B
6	Kt-Kt5 (a) P-KKt3	Q x KP! (e) O-O	Q x Qch B x Q	B x Kt B x Ktch!	P x Kt B-Kt5
7	Q-B3 P-B4	P-Q4 Kt-K1	B-Kt3 Kt-B4	P x B Q x B	Kt-K2 P-Q3
8	Q-Q5 Q-K2 (b)	KKt-K2 P-B3	Kt-B3 P-QB3	Kt-K2 P-Q3	P-KR3 B-K3
9	Kt x Pch K-Q1	P-Q5! P-Q3	O-O P-Q4	O-O (k) P-KKt4	P-QKt3 P-KR3
10	Kt x R P-Kt3	Q-B4 Kt-B3	R-K1 O-O (g)	P-Q4 P-KR4	B-Kt2 Q-K2
11	P-Q3 (c) B-QKt2	P-KR3 QKt-Q2	P-Q4 B-B3	P-B3 (l) P-R5	P-Kt4 P-KR4
12	P-KR4 P-B5! ± (d)	B-K3 ± (f)	Kt-K2 B-K3 =	Q-Q3 Kt-K2 ±	O-O-O O-O-O ± (n)

\* DIAGRAM 194

cols. 1-5



[After 3 B-B4]

attack, e.g., 9 Kt x Pch, K-Q1; 10 Kt x R, P-Kt3; 11 Q-B3, B-QKt2; 12 P-KR4, Kt-Q5; 13 Q-R3, B-KR3; 14 P-Q3, B x B; 15 R x B, P-K5; 16 Kt-K2, P x P; 17 Kt x Kt, P-Q7ch!+. Vyakhirev-Verlinsky, St. Petersburg, 1909.

(c) There is nothing better. If e.g., 11 Kt x P, P x Kt; 12 Q-B3, B-QKt2; 13 Q-Q1, Kt-Q5; 14 Kt-B3, B x Kt; 15 P x B, P-K5 ±.

(d) Black's attack is easily worth the material sacrificed. Two typical continuations are: (1) 13 Q-B3, Kt-Q5; 14 Q-R3, B-KR3; 15 B-Q2, P-K5; 16 O-O-O, P-K6; 17 B-B3, P x P; 18 Kt-B3, Kt-K7ch; 19 K-Kt1, Kt x Bch; 20 P x Kt, Kt-Kt4+. Adams-Lyman, Boston, 1946. (2) 13 Kt x P, P x Kt; 14 Q-B3, Kt-Q5; 15 Q-Kt4, B-KR3; 16 Kt-B3, Kt x Ktch; 17 P x Kt, P-K5; 18 BP x P, B x P; 19 O-O, B-B4+. Granston-Jackson, correspondence, 1936.

(a) If instead 6 P-Q3, B-K2; 7 Kt-B3, O-O; 8 Kt-KKt5, P-KR3!; 9 P-KR4, Kt-Q5!; 10 B-Q5, Kt-K3 ±, or 6...P-KKt3; 7 Q-K2, B-Kt2; 8 Kt-B3, Kt-B4 ± (V. Kahn).

(b) 8...Q-B3 also gives Black a strong

Notes continued on p. 461

## 1 P—K4, P—K4; 2 Kt—QB3, Kt—KB3

	6	7	8	9	10
3 (B—B4).....					P—KKt3
B—B4.....				P—Q3 (n)	P—Q4 (p)
4 P—Q3				P—Q3	P × P
P—Q3				P—B3	Kt × P
5 P—B4 (a).....		B—K3		P—B4	B—Kt2
B—K3.....	Kt—B3 (d)	Kt—B3		P—QKt4	B—K3 (q)
6 B × B (b)	P—B5 (e)	B × B		B—Kt3	KKt—K2
P × B	Kt—Q5 (f)	P × B		P—QR4	P—QB4 ! (r)
7 P × P	Kt—B3 (g)	KKt—K2		P—QR4	O—O
P × P	P—B3	Kt—QR4 (k)		P—Kt5	Kt—QB3
8 Q—K2	Kt × Kt	B—Kt3		QKt—K2	P—Q3
Kt—B3	B × Kt	Kt × B		B—K3	B—K2
9 B—K3	Q—B3	RP × Kt		B × B	P—B4
B × B	P—QKt4 (h)	O—O		P × B	P × P
10 Q × B	B—Kt3	O—O		Kt—KB3	Kt × P
O—O	P—QR4	Kt—Kt5 (l)		P × P	Kt × Kt (B5)
11 Q—R3	P—QR3	P—R3		B × P	B × Kt
Kt—Q5	P—R5	Kt—R3		P—K4	Q—Q2
12 O—O—O	B—R2 (i)	P—B4 ± (m)		B—Kt5	Q—Q2
Q—Q3 = (c)	Q—B2 = (j)			B—K2 = (o)	O—O ♯

(a) 5 Kt—B3, Kt—B3 transposes to the Giuoco Piano.

(b) Alternatives are: (1) 6 B—Kt3, Kt—B3; 7 P—B5, B × B; 8 RP × B, P—KR3; 9 B—Q2, P—Q4; 10 P × P, Kt × P; 11 Q—Kt4, K—B1 =. Mieses—von Scheve, Monte Carlo, 1901. (2) 6 P—B5, B × B; 7 P × B, QKt—Q2; 8 Q—B3, P—B3; 9 KKt—K2, Kt—Kt3; 10 P—QKt3, P—Q4; 11 BP × P, P × P; 12 B—Kt5, P—Q5 ♯. Spielmann—Eliskases, 9th match game, 1932.

(c) Spielmann—Tarrasch, Bad Kissingen, 1928.

(d) For 5... B—KKt5; 6 Kt—B3 see the King's Gambit Declined. 5... Kt—Kt5 ♯ is weak because of 6 P—B5 !, P—KR4 (or 6... Kt—B7; 7 Q—R5, O—O; 8 B—KKt5, Q—Q2; 9 Kt—Q5+); 7 Kt—R3, Q—R5ch; 8 K—B1, B—K6; 9 Kt—Q5, B × B; 10 Q × B, K—Q2; 11 Q—Kt5 ±.

(e) 6 Kt—B3 transposes to the King's Gambit Declined, p. 118, cols. 1-5.

(f) Less satisfactory is 6... Kt—QR4; 7 Q—B3, Kt × B; 8 P × Kt, B—Q2; 9 KKt—K2, B—B3; 10 P—QR3, P—QR4; 11 P—KKt4, Q—K2; 12 B—Q2, Kt—Q2; 13 P—KR4 ±. Blake—Black, cable match, 1910.

(g) Better than 7 B—Kt5, P—B3; 8 P—QR3, P—Kt4; 9 B—R2, Q—Kt3; 10 Kt—B3, P—QR4; 11 R—KB1, P—R5; 12 Kt × Kt, B × Kt; 13 B × Kt, P × B; 14 Q—R5, R—B1 ♯. Spielmann—Johner, Vienna, 1908.

(h) Weaker is 9... P—Q4; 10 P × P, B × Ktch; 11 P × B, P × P; 12 B—Kt3, Q—R4; 13 O—O !, Q × BP; 14 B—Kt5 ±.

(i) Blake—Michell, City of London Championship, 1913, which continued 12... B × Ktch; 13 P × B, B—Kt2; 14 B—Q2 ±.

Notes continued on p. 461

## Notes continued from p. 459

(e) An improvement on 6 Kt—B3, Kt—B3; 7 Kt × P, O—O !; 8 Kt—Q5, Kt—Q5; 9 O—O, Kt × B; 10 RP × Kt, Kt—K1; 11 P—Q4, P—Q3; 12 Kt—KB3, B—K3 = (Alekhine). Inferior here is 7... Kt × Kt ?; 8 Q × Kt, O—O; 9 Kt—Q5 !, R—K1; 10 O—O, B—B1; 11 Q—B4, P—QB3; 12 Kt—K3, Q—R4; 13 P—Q4 ±. Alekhine—Euwe, 27th match game, 1935.

(f) Adams—Gates, Boyleston, 1945.

(g) Saemisch—Rubinstein, Hanover, 1926. If now 11 P—Kt4 ♯, Kt—R5 !; 12 R × B, Kt × Ktch; 13 K—Kt2, Kt—Q5 ♯ (Knoch).

(h) If 4 P—B4, Kt × P; 5 Kt—B3, Kt—Q3 (not 5... Kt × Kt; 6 QP × Kt, P × P; 7 B × P with a good attack); 6 B—Kt3, P—K5; 7 Kt—KKt5, P—KR3; 8 KKt × KP, Kt × Kt; 9 Q—K2 (Bogoljubow—Romanovsky, match, 1924), Kt—Q5; 10 Q × Ktch, Q—K2 ♯.

(i) The only line of any promise. If 5 Kt—

K2, P—Q4; 6 P × P, Kt × P; 7 B × Kt, Q × B; 8 O—O, Q—R4; 9 P—QR3, O—O; 10 B—K3, B × Kt; 11 Kt × B, Kt—Q5 = (Spielmann—Réti, Dortmund, 1928), or 5 B—Q2, O—O; 6 KKt—K2, P—Q3; 7 O—O, B—K3; 8 P—B4, B × B; 9 P × B, P × P =.

(j) After 5... P—Q3; 6 Kt—K2 White's Pawn position will not be disrupted.

(k) Or 9 Q—Q2, P—KKt4; 10 P—Q4, Kt—K2; 11 P × P, P × P; 12 R—Q1, Kt—Kt3; 13 B—Kt5ch, P—B3; 14 B—B4, Kt—R5 ♯. Milner-Barry—Alekhine, London, 1932.

(l) Better than 11 R—Kt1, P—R5; 12 Q—Q3, Kt—K2; 13 B—Kt5ch, K—B1 !; 14 P × P, P × P; 15 Q—Q8ch, K—Kt2; 16 Q × P, P—R6 ♯. Spielmann—Bogoljubow, Berlin, 1920.

(m) 4... B—B4 transposes to cols. 6-8.

(n) Adams—Pinkus, New York, 1944.

## Notes continued from p. 460

(j) 13 Kt—K2, B—Kt3; 14 B—K3, B—Kt2; 15 P—R3, P—Q4.

(k) 7... O—O followed by an eventual ... Kt—Q5 was better (Bogoljubow).

(l) Preferable is 10... Kt—Q2.

(m) 12... P × P; 13 Kt × P, P—KB3; 14 Q—B3. Tartakower—Rubinstein, Moscow, 1925.

(n) Another playable defense is 3... P—B3; 4 Q—K2, B—B4; 5 P—Q3, P—Q3; 6 P—B4, B—KKt5; 7 Kt—B3, QKt—Q2; 8 P—B5, Q—K2; 9 P—KR3, B × Kt; 10 Q × B, P—KR3; 11 P—R3, Kt—Kt3; 12 B—Kt3, P—Q4 =. Blake—Drewitt, Hastings, 1923.

(o) Mieses—Tartakower, Hastings, 1945—

46.

(p) For the weaker 3... Kt—B3 see cols. 23-24.

(q) Or 5... Kt × Kt; 6 KtP × Kt, B—QB4; 7 Kt—K2, Kt—B3; 8 O—O, O—O; 9 P—Q3, B—K3 =. Tartakower—Spielmann, Vienna, 1913.

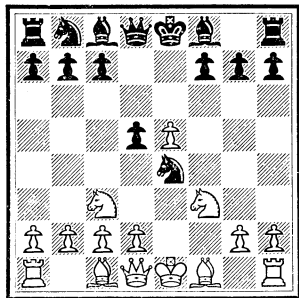
(r) More energetic than 6... Kt—QB3; 7 P—Q3, B—K2; 8 O—O, O—O; 9 P—B4, P × P; 10 Kt × P =. Weaker for White here is 7 P—Q4, Kt × Kt; 8 B × Ktch, P × B; 9 P × Kt, Q—Q4 !; 10 R—KKt1, B—Q3; 11 Q—Q3, O—O ♯. Tartakower—Gruenfeld, Vienna, 1922. Or 7 O—O, B—K2; 8 P—Q4, Kt × Kt; 9 P × Kt, B—Q4; 10 P—B3, O—O; 11 B—K3, Q—Q3 ♯. Mueller—Gruenfeld, Margate, 1923.

1 P-K4, P-K4; 2 Kt-QB3, Kt-KB3; 3 P-B4, P-Q4!; 4 BP × P, Kt × P; 5 Kt-B3\*

	11	12	13	14	15
5	B-K2		B-QB4	B-KKt5	Kt-QB3
6	P-Q4	P-Q3 (e)	P-Q4 (i)	Q-K2 (m)	B-Kt5! (p)
	O-O (a)	Kt × Kt	B-QKt5	Kt × Kt (n)	B-QKt5
7	B-Q3	P × Kt	Q-Q3 (j)	KtP × Kt (o)	Q-K2
	P-KB4	O-O	P-QB4	P-QB4	B × Kt
8	P × P e.p.	P-Q4 (f)	P × P	Q-B2	QP × B
	B × P! (b)	P-KB3! (g)	Kt × P	Kt-B3	O-O
9	O-O	B-Q3	Q-K3	B-Kt5	B-KB4
	Kt-B3	P × P	Kt-B3	B-K2	Kt-K2
10	Kt × Kt (c)	Kt × P	B-Kt5	O-O	P-KR3
	P × Kt	B-KB4 (h)	Kt-K3	O-O	Kt-KB4
11	B × P	O-O	P-QR3	P-Q4	R-KKt1
	Kt × P	B × B	B-R4	P × P	Kt(B4)-Kt6
12	Kt-Kt5	R × Rch	P-QKt4	B × Kt	Q-K3
	B-B4!	B × R	B-Kt3	P × B	P-QB3
13	P-B3	Q × B	Q-Q3	P × P	B-Q3
	B × Kt	Kt-Q2	O-O	P-B3	Kt-KB4
14	QB × B	B-B4	Q × P (k)	Q-Kt3	Q-K2 ± (q)
	Q × B = (d)	Kt × Kt =	KKt-Q5 = (l)	Q-Q2 =	

## \* DIAGRAM 195

cols. 11-15



[After 5 Kt-B3]

(a) An alternative is 6... P-KB4; 7 P × P e.p., B × P; 8 B-Q3, B-B4; 9 Q-K2, O-O; 10 Kt × P!, Kt-B3!; 11 Kt × Bch, Q × Kt; 12 O-O, Kt × P =. Christoffel—Euwe, Hastings, 1945-46.

(b) Much better than 8... Kt × P; 9 O-O, Kt-B3; 10 B-KKt5, B-KKt5; 11 Q-K1, P-KR3; 12 B-Q2, B × Kt; 13 R × B, Kt × P; 14 R-Kt3, B-B4; 15 K-R1 ±. Spielmann—Maroczy, Tepplitz—Schoenau, 1922.

(c) Or: (1) 10 Kt-K2, Kt-Kt5! (10... Kt-K2 is also sufficient); 11 B-QKt5, B-Q2; 12 B × B, Q × B =. (2) 10 B-K3, B-B4; 11 Q-K1, B-Kt3; 12 Kt-K2, Q-K2; 13 Kt-B4, B-B2 =. Spielmann—von Holzhausen, Berlin, 1926.

(d) 15 Q × Kt. Spielmann—Réti, Vienna, 1922.

(e) Inferior is 6 Q-K2, P-KB4; 7 P-Q3, Kt-B4; 8 P-Q4, Kt-K5; 9 B-B4, O-O; 10 P-KR4 (Spielmann—Teichmann, Tepplitz—Schoenau, 1922), B-Kt5!; 11 Q-K3, P-B4; 12 Kt-Q2, P × P; 13 Q × P, B × Kt; 14 P × B, Kt-QB3 ≠ (Gruenfeld).

Notes continued on p. 464

1 P-K4, P-K4; 2 Kt-QB3, Kt-KB3; 3 P-B4, P-Q4; 4 BP × P, Kt × P

	16	17	18	19	20
5	(Kt-B3)		Q-B3		P-Q3
	B-QKt5		P-KB4	Kt-QB3 (i)	Kt × Kt (o)
6	Q-K2!	B-K2	P-Q3 (f)	B-Kt5 (j)	P × Kt
	Kt × Kt (a)	O-O (c)	Kt × Kt	Kt × Kt	P-Q5!
7	QP × Kt	O-O	P × Kt	KtP × Kt	Kt-B3
	B-K2	Kt-QB3	P-Q5	Q-R5ch (k)	P-QB4 (p)
8	B-B4	Q-K1	Q-Kt3 (g)	P-Kt3	B-K2
	P-QB4	B-Kt5 (d)	Kt-B3	Q-K5ch	B-K2
9	O-O-O!	P-Q3	B-K2	Q × Q	O-O
	Kt-B3	P-Q5	B-K3	P × Q	O-O
10	Q-B2	P × Kt	B-B3	B × Ktch	Q-K1
	B-K3	P × Kt	Q-Q2	P × B	P-B3
11	Q-Kt3	P × P	Kt-K2	Kt-K2	KP × P (q)
	P-KKt3	B-B4ch	B-B4	B-K2!	B × P
12	Kt-Kt5	K-R1	P-B4	R-B1 (l)	P-B4
	Q-Kt3	B × Kt	O-O	O-O	Q-K2
13	Kt × B	B × B	O-O	R-B4	Q-B2
	P × Kt	Kt × P	B × P!	P-B3! (m)	Kt-B3
14	B-K2 ± (b)	Q-Kt3	Kt-B4	R × KP	Kt-Kt5!
		Kt-Kt3 ≠ (e)	B-K3 ≠ (h)	B-KB4 ≠ (n)	B-Q2 / ≠ (r)

(a) If 6... B × Kt; 7 KtP × B, O-O; 8 Q-K3, P-KB4; 9 P-B4, P-B3; 10 P-Q3, Q-R4ch; 11 B-Q2, Kt × B; 12 Q × Kt, Q × Qch; 13 Kt × Q ±.

(b) 14... Kt-Q1; 15 P-KR4. Spielmann—Yates, Prague, 1931.

(c) Better than 6... P-QB3; 7 O-O, Q-Kt3ch; 8 P-Q4!, Kt × Kt; 9 P × Kt, B × P; 10 B-R3! with a good attack. Flamberg and Rabinovitch—Bogoljubow and Vainstein, 1915.

(d) An alternative is 8... B-B4ch; 9 K-R1, Kt-Q5; 10 B-Q1, P-B4; 11 P-Q3, Kt × QKt; 12 P × Kt, Kt-K3; 13 P-Q4, B-K2; 14 B-K2, P-KKt4; 15 B-Q3, P-Kt5 with attacking possibilities. If 8... P-B3; 9 Kt × Kt, P × Kt; 10 B-B4ch, K-R1; 11 Q × P, B-B4ch; 12 K-R1, P × P; 13 P-Q3, B-B4 =. Here 13 Kt × P, R × Rch; 14 B × R, Q-B3; 15

Kt-B3, B-B4 ≠ is unfavorable for White.

(e) Analysis by S. Mlotkowski.

(f) Or 6 P × P e.p., Kt × BP; 7 P-Q4, B-K2; 8 B-Q3, O-O; 9 KKt-K2, Kt-K5 ≠, or 6 KKt-K2, Kt-QB3; 7 P-Q4, Kt-Kt5; 8 K-Q1, P-B4 ≠.

(g) If 8 Q-B4, Kt-B3; 9 Kt-B3, B-B4; 10 B-Kt2, P × P; 11 B × P, B-K3; 12 P-QR3, Q-K2; 13 B-Kt2, O-O-O ≠. Schraeder—Ed. Lasker, Chicago, 1916. Or 8 Q-B2, P × P; 9 P-Q4, B-K3; 10 B-Q3, B-K2; 11 Kt-K2, O-O; 12 O-O, Kt-B3; 13 B-K3, Kt-Kt5; 14 Kt × P, Kt × B; 15 P × Kt, P-B5! ≠. Tartakower—Lilienthal, Paris, 1933.

Notes continued on p. 464

## Notes continued from p. 462

(f) Better than  $\delta$  B—K2, P—KB3;  $\rho$  P × P, B × P;  $10$  P—Q4, B—R5ch;  $11$  P—Kt3, B—K2;  $12$  O—O, B—KR6 ♣. Sultan Khan—Weenink, Liège, 1930.

(g) More precise than  $\delta$ ... P—QB4;  $\rho$  B—Q3, Kt—B3;  $10$  O—O, B—Kt5;  $11$  B—K3, P—B3;  $12$  KP × P, B × P;  $13$  P × P / ±. Willman—Moskowitz, New York, 1944.

(h) Spielmann—Kaufmann, 1917.

(i) Alekhine suggests  $\delta$  Q—K2, B—B4;  $7$  Kt—Q1 followed by P—Q3.

(j) If  $7$  B—Q2, B × Kt (weaker is  $7$ ... P—QB4;  $8$  Kt × Kt, P × Kt;  $\rho$  B × B, P × B;  $10$  B—Kt5ch / ±);  $8$  P × B, O—O;  $\rho$  B—Q3, P—QB4;  $10$  O—O, Kt × B;  $11$  Q × Kt, P—B5;  $12$  B—K2, Kt—B3 followed by ... P—B3 ♣. The sacrifice  $7$  B—Q3 is unsound:  $7$ ... Kt × Kt;  $8$  P × Kt, B × Pch;  $\rho$  B—Q2, B × R;  $10$  Q × B, B—Kt5+.

(k) If  $14$  Kt × P?, Kt × KP!;  $15$  Kt × Kt, B—Q5+ (Alekhine).

(l) Spielmann—Marshall, New York, 1927.

(m) Weaker is  $\delta$  B—K2, B × Kt;  $7$  B ×

B, Kt—QB3!;  $\delta$  P—Q3, Q—R5ch;  $\rho$  P—Kt3, Kt × KtP;  $10$  P × Kt, Q × Pch;  $11$  K—B1, B—B4;  $12$  P—Q4, Kt × KP / ♣. Wolf—Vidmar, Carlsbad, 1907.

(n) An alternative is  $\delta$ ... Kt—Kt4;  $7$  P—KR4, Kt × Ktch;  $\delta$  P × Kt, B—K3;  $\rho$  P—Q4, Kt—B3;  $10$  B—K3, B—K2;  $11$  Q—B2, Q—Q2 =. Alekhine—consultants, Berlin, 1921. Weak is  $\delta$ ... Kt—QB3?;  $7$  Kt × Kt, Kt—Q5;  $8$  Q—Q3, B × Kt;  $9$  Kt—Kt3 /+.

(o) Or  $7$  QP × Kt, P—QB3;  $8$  B—B4, Kt—Q2;  $\rho$  O—O—O, Q—R4;  $10$  K—Kt1, O—O—O =.

(p) Weaker is  $\delta$  Q—K2?, B—KB4!;  $7$  Q—Kt5, P—QR3! ( $7$ ... Kt—B4;  $8$  P—Q4!, P—QR3;  $\rho$  Q—K2, as in Kan—Botvinnik, Moscow, 1935, gives White a strong attack);  $8$  Q × KtP, Kt—Kt5!;  $\rho$  Kt × Kt, P × Kt;  $10$  Kt—Q4, R—QKt1;  $11$  Q—R7, B—B4!;  $12$  Q × B, Q × Kt;  $13$  Q × Q, Kt × Pch;  $14$  K—B2, Kt × Q ♣. Analysis by Rabinovitch.

(q) Tarrasch—Schiffers, Hastings, 1895.

## Notes continued from p. 463

(h) Spielmann—Romanovsky, Moscow, 1925. On  $15$  R—Kt1, Kt—Q1! is best.

(i)  $5$ ... Kt × Kt is disadvantageous for Black.

(j) Not  $\delta$  Kt × Kt?, Kt—Q5;  $7$  Q—B4, P × Kt;  $8$  B—B4, B—KB4;  $\rho$  P—B3, P—KKt4;  $10$  B × Pch, K × B;  $11$  Q—B2, P—K6 /+. Boros—Lilienthal, Budapest, 1933.

(k) If  $7$ ... B—K2;  $8$  P—Q4, O—O;  $\rho$  B—Q3, P—B3;  $10$  Q—R5, P—KKt3;  $11$  B × P with a draw by perpetual check. Hromadka—Lasker, Maehrisch—Ostrau, 1923.

(l) Or  $12$  Kt—Q4, B—Q2;  $13$  R—QKt1, O—O;  $14$  R—B1, QR—Kt1;  $15$  R × R, R × R;  $16$  Kt—Kt3, R—Kt4 ♣. Stern—Tarrasch, Munich, 1932.

(m) Hromadka—Spielmann, Trentschin—Teplitz, 1928. If now  $14$  P × P, B × P;  $15$  R × P, B—B4;  $16$  R—QB4, QB × P;  $17$  R × P, QR—Kt1+ (Knoch).

(n)  $15$  R—QB4, P × P;  $16$  R × P, B—Q3. Analysis by Knoch.

(o) Not  $5$ ... Q—R5ch?;  $\delta$  P—Kt3, Kt × P;  $7$  Kt—B3, Q—R4;  $8$  Kt × P+ (Wurzburger's Trap). E.g.,  $\delta$ ... B—Kt5;  $\rho$  B—Kt2, Kt × R;  $10$  Kt × Pch, K—Q2;  $11$  Kt × R, Kt—B3;  $12$  B—K3 (or  $12$  P—Q4, B × Kt;  $13$  Q × B, Q × Q;  $14$  B × Q, Kt × QP;  $15$  B—K4+), P—B3;  $13$  P—Q4, P × P;  $14$  P—Q5!+. Milner-Barry—Sergeant, Margate, 1938.

(p) Also good is  $7$ ... Kt—B3;  $8$  B—K2, B—QB4;  $\rho$  O—O?, P × P dis ch;  $10$  K—R1, B—K3;  $11$  Q—K1, Q—Q4 ♣. Alexander—Fairhurst, British Championship, 1932. If here  $8$  B—Kt5, B—K2;  $\rho$  B × B, Q × B;  $10$  P × P, Kt × QP! ♣. Milner-Barry—Pirc, Hastings, 1938—39.

(q) Equally insufficient is  $11$  Q—Kt3, BP × P;  $12$  B—R6, B—B3 ♣. Milner-Barry—Alexander, Worcester, 1931.

(r) More enterprising than  $14$ ... B × Kt;  $15$  Q × Rch, Q × Q;  $16$  R × Qch, K × R;  $17$  B × B, B—K3 = (not  $17$ ... Kt—Kt5;  $18$  R—B1ch, K—K1;  $19$  R—K1 / ±).

## 1 P—K4, P—K4; 2 Kt—QB3

	21	22	23	24	25
2 (Kt—KB3)...	B—B4		Kt—QB3 (i)		
3 (P—B4)	Kt—B3!	P—KKt3		B—B4	
(P—Q4)	P—Q3 (e)	B—B4		B—B4 (m)	
4 P—Q3 (a)	P—Q4! (f)	B—Kt2		Q—Kt4	
P × BP! (b)	P × P	P—Q3	P—QR3	P—KKt3 (n)	
5 P × P (c)	Kt × P	Kt—R4 (j)	KKt—K2	Q—Kt3	
B—QKt5	Kt—KB3 (g)	Kt—B3	P—Q3	P—Q3	
6 B × P	B—Kt5	Kt × B	O—O	P—Q3	
Kt × P	P—KR3	P × Kt	P—KR4	Kt—Q5	
7 B—Q2	B—R4	P—Q3	P—KR3	B—Kt3	
B × Kt	Kt—B3	O—O	B—K3	B—K3	
8 P × B	Kt × Kt	Kt—K2	P—Q3	B—Kt5	
O—O	P × Kt	B—K3	Q—Q2	Q—Q2	
9 Kt—B3	B—Q3	P—Kt3	K—R2	O—O—O	
R—K1ch	Q—K2	Q—Q2	Kt—R3	B × B	
10 B—K2	O—O	O—O	P—B3	RP × B	
Q—K2	Q—K4	B—R6	P—B3	P—KB3	
11 P—B4 (d)	Kt—R4	P—KB4	Kt—Q5	B—K3	
Kt—KB3	B—Kt3	B × B	B × Kt	O—O—O	
12 B—Kt5	B—Kt3 ± (h)	K × B ± (k)	P × B ± (l)	KKt—K2	
B—Kt5 ♣				Kt—K2 = (o)	

(a) Steinitz's Variation. If  $4$  KP × P, Kt × P ( $4$ ... P × P is also strong.  $4$ ... P—K5 transposes to an unsatisfactory variation of the Falkbeer Counter Gambit);  $5$  Kt × Kt, Q × Kt;  $6$  P × P, Kt—B3;  $7$  Kt—B3, B—KKt5;  $8$  B—K2, Kt × P =.

(b) Best. The alternatives are: (1)  $4$ ... Kt—B3;  $5$  P × KP, QKt × P;  $6$  P—Q4, Kt—Kt3 (or  $6$ ... Kt—B3;  $7$  P—K5 ±, as in Horowitz—Maderna, Warsaw, 1935);  $7$  P—K5, Kt—K5;  $8$  Kt × Kt, P × Kt;  $\rho$  P—B3, P—QB4;  $10$  B—Kt5ch, B—Q2;  $11$  Q—R4 ±. (2)  $4$ ... P—Q5;  $5$  Kt—Kt1!, Kt—B3;  $6$  Kt—KB3, B—Kt5;  $7$  B—K2, B × Kt;  $8$  B × B, B—Q3;  $\rho$  P × P, QKt × P;  $10$  O—O, Q—Q2;  $11$  B—Kt5, KKt—Kt5;  $12$  B × Kt!, Kt × B;  $13$  P—KR3 ±. Charousek—Pillsbury, Budapest, 1896. (3)  $4$ ... B—QKt5;  $5$  BP × P, Kt × P!;  $6$  P × Kt, Q—R5ch;  $7$  K—K2, B × Kt;  $8$  P × B, B—Kt5ch;  $\rho$  Kt—B3, P ×

P;  $10$  Q—Q4, B—R4;  $11$  K—K3, B × Kt;  $12$  P × B, Q—K8ch;  $13$  K—B4, Q—R5ch with a draw by perpetual check.

(c) If  $5$  P—K5, P—Q5! ♣.

(d) Spielmann—Lasker, St. Petersburg, 1909.

(e) If  $3$ ... Kt—QB3;  $4$  Kt × P / ±.

(f) Weaker is  $4$  Kt—QR4, B—Kt3;  $5$  Kt × B, RP × Kt;  $6$  P—Q4, P × P;  $7$  Q × P, Q—B3;  $8$  B—Kt5, Q × Q;  $\rho$  Kt × Q, B—Q2 =. Kan—Capablanca, Moscow, 1936.

(g) Other moves are no better, e.g.,  $5$ ... Kt—QB3;  $6$  B—K3, B—Kt3;  $7$  Q—Q2!, KKt—K2;  $8$  O—O—O, O—O;  $\rho$  B—K2, Kt × Kt;  $10$  B × Kt, Kt—B3;  $11$  B—K3, B—K3;  $12$  P—B4 ±. Spielmann—Thomas, Baden-Baden, 1925.

(h) Horowitz—Kupchik, Syracuse, 1934.

Notes continued on p. 467

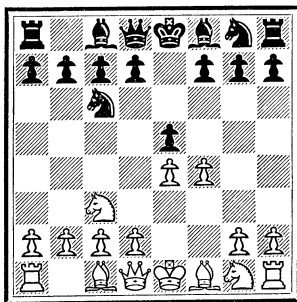


## VIENNA GAMBIT

1 P—K4, P—K4; 2 Kt—QB3, Kt—QB3; 3 P—B4\*

	26	27	28	29	30
3	P × P.....				B—B4
4	Kt—B3..... P—KKt4 (a)			P—Q4 (l) Q—R5ch	P × P? (q) P—Q3 /
5	P—Q4 (b)..... P—Kt5! (c)		P—KR4 P—Kt5	K—K2 P—Q3 (m)	P × P Q × P
6	B—B4 P × Kt		Kt—KKt5 (i) P—KR3	Kt—B3 B—Kt5	Kt—B3 B—KKt5
7	O—O P—Q4..... Kt × P!		Kt × P K × Kt	B × P P—B4! (n)	Kt—K2 O—O—O
8	KP × P B—KKt5	B × Pch (g) K × B	P—Q4 P—B6 (j)	K—K3 (o) Q—K2	P—B3 P—B4
9	R—K1ch (d) KKt—K2	B × P P—B4!	B—B4ch P—Q4	B—Q3 Kt—B3	P—Q4 P × P
10	Kt—K4! (e) B—Kt2	B—K5 B—Kt2	B × Pch K—K1	B—KKt5 O—O—O	Kt—Kt5 Q—K2
11	P × P Kt—R4	R × Pch Kt × Rch	P × P B—K2	B × Kt Q × B	Q—B2 P—K6
12	B—B1 B—R4 † (f)	Q × Ktch Kt—B3++ (h)	B—K3 B × Pch+ (k)	Kt—Q5 Q—R3ch † (p)	Q—K4 Q × Kt+ (r)

\* DIAGRAM 196  
cols. 26–30



[After 3 P—B4]

(a) 4...Kt—B3 transposes to the King's Gambit, but because of the interposition of the two Kt moves Black has no reason to avoid ...P—KKt4.

(b) The Pierce Gambit.

(c) Other moves are weak, e.g., 5...B—

Kt2; 6 P—Q5, Kt—K4; 7 P—Q6!, Kt × Ktch; 8 Q × Kt, P × P; 9 P—KR4, P—KR3; 10 B—B4, P—Q4; 11 Kt × P, Kt—B3; 12 P × P, P × P; 13 R × Rch, B × R; 14 Q—B3! ±. Paulsen—Englisch, Frankfurt, 1887.

(d) Alternatives are: (1) 9 Q—K1ch, B—K2; 10 B × P, Kt × P; 11 B—K5, Kt—K7ch; 12 Kt × Kt, P × Kt; 13 KB × P, B × B; 14 Q × B, P—KB3+. (2) 9 P × Kt (the Rushmere Attack), P—B7ch; 10 R × P, B × Q; 11 P × P, B—KKt5; 12 B—Kt5ch, B—Q2; 13 Kt—Q5, R—Kt1; 14 B × P, R × P; 15 R—K1ch, B—K2; 16 R × Bch, Q × R!+. Analysis by Motkowsky and Pierce.

(e) If 10 P × P, B—R6; 11 B × P, R—Kt1ch; 12 B—Kt3, Kt—R4; 13 B—Kt5ch, P—B3; 14 Kt—K4, B—Kt2; 15 K—R1, Q × P; 16 P—QB4, Q—Q2+. Milner-Barry—Alexander, Cambridge, 1932. The only tournament example of the Pierce Gambit for more than sixty years!

Notes continued on p. 467

Notes continued from p. 465

(i) The Max Lange Defense. 2...P—KB4? is refuted by 3 P × P!+. 2...B—Kt5; 3 Kt—Q5 ± is inferior for Black.

(j) Or 5 P—Q3, P—KR4; 6 P—KR3, B—K3; 7 Kt—B3, Q—Q2; 8 Kt—KKt5, Kt—Q5; 9 B—K3, Kt—K2; 10 Q—Q2, P—KB3; 11 Kt × B, Kt × Kt; 12 O—O—O ±. Blake—Saunders, London, 1921.

(k) Mieses—Alapin, Vienna, 1908. If 12...

Kt—K1; 13 P—B5.

(l) 12...Kt—K2; 13 P—Q4. Tarrasch—Janowski, Budapest, 1896.

(m) For 3...Kt—B3 see cols. 4–5.

(n) Best. If 4...Q—B3?; 5 Kt—Q5!, Q × Pch; 6 K—Q1, K—B1; 7 Kt—R3, Q—Q5; 8 P—Q3, P—Q3; 9 Q—B3, B × Kt; 10 R—B1!+.

(o) Spielmann—Tarrasch, Vienna, 1922.

Notes continued from p. 466

(f) 13 P—B4, R—KKt1; 14 K—B2, P—Kt4; 15 Kt—B5, K—B1! (Bardeleben).

(g) If 8 Q × Kt, Q—Kt4!+.

(h) 13 Kt—Q5, P—Q3; 14 B—B3, R—B1; 15 R—KB1, K—Kt1; 16 Kt × Ktch, K—R1. Analysis by Pierce.

(i) The Hampe—Allgaier Gambit.

(j) Also good is 8...P—Q4; 9 B × P, B—Kt5; 10 P—K5, B—K3; 11 B—K2, Q—Q2; 12 O—O, K—Kt2+.

(k) 13 K—Q2, B—Kt4; 14 P—B4, B—B3; 15 P—K5, B—Kt2; 16 Q—K2, KKt—K2.

(l) The Steinitz Gambit.

(m) An alternative is 5...P—Q4; 6 P × P, B—Kt5ch!; 7 Kt—B3, O—O—O; 8 P ×

Kt, B—QB4; 9 Q—K1, Q—R4!; 10 P × Pch, K—Kt1; 11 K—Q1, B × P; 12 B—Q2, B × Kt+. Steinitz—Liverpool, correspondence, 1898–99.

(n) Not 7...O—O—O; 8 K—K3!, Q—R4; 9 B—K2, Q—R4; 10 P—KR3, B × Kt; 11 K × B, Q—R4ch; 12 K—K3! ±. Steinitz—Paulsen, Baden-Baden, 1870.

(o) Or 8 P—K5, B × Ktch; 9 K × B, Q—Kt5ch; 10 K—K3, P × P+ (von Schmidt).

(p) Analysis by Dr. E. von Schmidt.

(q) White should transpose into the King's Gambit Declined with 4 Kt—B3.

(r) 13 B × P, Q—R5ch!. Spielmann—Schlechter, Vienna, 1914.

## INDEX

(Unless otherwise specified numbers refer to pages)

- Alapin's Opening, 105, col. 10
- Albin Counter Gambit (Queen's Gambit), 220
- Alekhine's Defense, 1
- Allgaier Gambit (King's Gambit), 113
- Anderssen's Opening, 108, col. 20, note (n)
- Benoni Counter Gambit (Queen's Pawn Game), 296
- Bird's Opening, 8
- Bishop's Gambit (King's Gambit), 116
- Bishop's Opening, 12
- Blumenfeld Counter Gambit (Queen's Pawn Game), 293
- Bogoljubow Variation (Queen's Pawn Game), 266
- Breyer Gambit (King's Gambit), 117, col. 23
- Budapest Defense (Queen's Pawn Game), 291
- Caro-Kann Defense, 16
- Panov-Botvinnik Attack, 21
- Catalan System (Réti Opening), 314
- Center Game, 28
- Center Counter Defense, 35
- Colle System (Queen's Pawn Game), 234
- Cunningham Gambit (King's Gambit), 115, col. 15
- Danish Gambit (Center Game), 31
- Dutch Defense (Queen's Pawn Game), 299
- Staunton Gambit, 304
- English Opening, 39
- Evans Gambit, 50
- Lasker's Defense, 51, col. 1
- Falkbeer Counter Gambit (King's Gambit), 122
- Four Knights' Game, 56
- Metger Variation, 58
- Nimzovitch Variation, 64, col. 23
- Rubinstein Defense, 66
- French Defense, 71
- Albin-Chatard Attack—see Alekhine's Attack
- Alekhine's Attack, 76
- Exchange Variation, 73
- McCutcheon Variation, 77
- Rubinstein Variation, 85
- Tchigorin's Variation, 91, col. 58
- From Gambit (Bird's Opening), 10
- Greco Counter Gambit—see Latvian Gambit
- Gruenfeld Defense (Queen's Pawn Game), 279
- Giuoco Piano, 93
- Canal Variation, 101
- Moeller Attack, 94
- Hungarian Defense, 105
- Irregular Openings, 103
- Keres Gambit (King's Gambit), 117, col. 24
- Kieseritzky Gambit (King's Gambit), 113
- King's Gambit, 110
- Becker's Defense, 115, col. 15, note (n)
- King's Indian Defense (Queen's Pawn Game), 271
- Latvian Gambit, 107
- Lesser Bishop's Gambit (King's Gambit), 117, col. 22
- Max Lange Attack (Two Knights' Defense), 455
- Muzio Gambit (King's Gambit), 115, col. 14
- Nimzo-Indian Defense (Queen's Pawn Game), 239
- Milner-Barry Variation—see Zurich Variation
- Rubinstein Variation, 251
- Saemisch Variation, 256
- Zurich Variation, 245
- Nimzovitch's Attack (Reti Opening), 322
- Nimzovitch's Defense, 126
- Old Indian Defense—see Tchigorin's Defense
- Pernau Gambit—see Keres Gambit
- Petroff's Defense, 129
- Philidor's Defense, 135
- Pierce Gambit (Vienna Game), 466
- Polish Opening, 108, col. 18
- Ponziani's Opening, 139
- Queen's Gambit, 143
- Queen's Gambit Accepted (Queen's Gambit), 157
- Queen's Gambit Declined (Queen's Gambit), 163
- Cambridge Springs Defense, 173
- Exchange Variation, 179
- Janowski's Defense, 196, col. 106
- Lasker's Defense, 182
- Manhattan Variation, 177
- Orthodox Defense, 163
- Ragosin System, 186
- Tarrasch Defense, 191
- Tartakower's Variation, 185
- Vienna Variation, 198
- Queen's Indian Defense (Queen's Pawn Game), 260
- Queen's Knight's Opening, 108, col. 20
- Queen's Pawn Counter-Gambit, 105, col. 9
- Queen's Pawn Game, 222
- Reti Opening, 306
- Ruy Lopez, 325
- Alapin's Defense, 398, col. 200, note (n)
- Berlin Defense, 382
- Rio de Janeiro Variation, 382, col. 142
- Bird's Defense, 392
- Classical Defense, 394
- Cozio Defense, 396
- Fianchetto Defense, 396
- Gambit Defense—see Schlie-  
mann's Defense

- Morphy Defense, 337  
 Open Game, 337  
   Breslau Variation, 342  
 Strong Point Variation, 348  
   Exchange Variation, 381  
   Marshall Variation, 358  
   Moeller Defense, 366  
   Steinitz Defense Deferred, 373  
   Steinitz System, 368  
   Unusual Defenses with 3 . . . P-QR3, 379  
   Worrall Attack, 360  
 Schliemann's Defense, 398  
 Steinitz Defense, 387  
  
 Saragossa Opening, 108, col. 16  
 Scotch Game, 400  
   Goering Gambit, 405, col. 20  
   Scotch Gambit, 405  
 Sicilian Defense, 407  
   Dragon Variation, 421  
   Nimzovitch's Variation, 430  
   Paulsen Defense, 419  
   Richter Attack, 425  
   Scheveningen Variation, 412  
   Sicilian Four Knights' Game, 418  
   Wing Gambit, 437  
   Wing Gambit Deferred, 432, col. 69  
   Slav Defense (Queen's Gambit), 200  
     Exchange Variation, 218  
     Meran Variation, 208  
     Semi-Slav Defense, 214, col. 165  
   Steinitz Gambit (Vienna Game), 466, col. 29  
   Stonewall Variation (Queen's Pawn Game), 238  
   Tchigorin's Defense (Queen's Pawn Game), 288  
   Three Knights' Game, 439  
   Two Knights' Defense, 443  
     Fegatello Attack, 445  
     Ulvestad's Variation, 450  
  
 van't Kruys Opening, 108, col. 19  
 Vienna Gambit (Vienna Game), 466  
 Vienna Game, 458  
  
 Willemson Gambit—see Keres Gambit  
 Winawer's Counter-Gambit (Slav Defense), 218, col. 171